

---

# Dewey Decimal Classification and Relative Index

---

Devised by Melvil Dewey

## EDITION 23

Edited by

Joan S. Mitchell, Editor in Chief

Julianne Beall, Assistant Editor

Rebecca Green, Assistant Editor

Giles Martin, Assistant Editor

Michael Panzer, Assistant Editor

## VOLUME 2

Schedules 000–599

OCLC

OCLC Online Computer Library Center, Inc.

Dublin, Ohio

2011

© 2011 OCLC Online Computer Library Center, Inc. ("OCLC")

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of OCLC.

Previous editions of the Dewey Decimal Classification:

Copyright 1876, 1885, 1911, 1913, 1915, 1919

by Melvil Dewey

Copyright 1888, 1891, 1894, 1899

by Library Bureau

Copyright 1922, 1927, 1932, 1942, 1952, 1958

by Lake Placid Club Education Foundation

Copyright 1951, 1965, 1967, 1971

by Forest Press, Inc.

© 1979 by Forest Press

A Division of the Lake Placid Education Foundation

© 1989, 1996, 2003

OCLC Online Computer Library Center, Inc.

All copyright rights in Edition 23 and all previous editions of the Dewey Decimal Classification system are owned by OCLC. DDC, Dewey, Dewey Decimal Classification, and WebDewey are registered trademarks and/or service marks of OCLC. Licensing information regarding the Dewey Decimal Classification system is available at [www.oclc.org/dewey](http://www.oclc.org/dewey).

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

**Dewey, Melvil, 1851-1931.**

Dewey decimal classification and relative index / devised by Melvil Dewey. — Ed. 23 / edited by Joan S. Mitchell, Editor in Chief ; Julianne Beall, Assistant Editor ; Rebecca Green, Assistant Editor ; Giles Martin, Assistant Editor ; Michael Panzer, Assistant Editor.

v. cm.

Includes bibliographical references and index.

Contents: v. 1. Manual. Tables — v. 2. Schedules 000-599 — v. 3. Schedules 600-999 — v. 4.

Relative index.

ISBN-13: 978-1-910608-81-4 (set : alk. paper)

ISBN-10: 1-910608-81-5 (set : alk. paper)

ISBN-13: 978-1-910608-80-7 (vol. 1 : alk. paper)

ISBN-10: 1-910608-80-7 (vol. 1 : alk. paper)

[etc.]

I. Classification, Dewey decimal. I. Mitchell, Joan S. II. Beall, Julianne, 1946- III. Green, Rebecca, 1952- IV. Martin, Giles. V. Panzer, Michael. VI. Title.

Z696.D52 2011

025.4'31—dc22

2011001112

OCLC Online Computer Library Center, Inc.

6565 Kilgour Place

Dublin, OH 43017-3395 USA

[www.oclc.org/dewey](http://www.oclc.org/dewey)



The paper used in this publication meets the requirements of ANSI/NISO Z39.48-1992 (Permanence of Paper).

ISBN-13: (set) 978-1-910608-81-4; v. 1 978-1-910608-80-7;  
v. 2 978-1-910608-76-0; v. 3 978-1-910608-79-1; v. 4 978-1-910608-78-4

ISBN-10: (set) 1-910608-81-5; v. 1 1-910608-80-7; v. 2 1-910608-76-9;  
v. 3 1-910608-79-3; v. 4 1-910608-78-5



Recycled paper

# Summaries

## First Summary *The Ten Main Classes*

- 000**    **Computer science, information & general works**
- 100**    **Philosophy & psychology**
- 200**    **Religion**
- 300**    **Social sciences**
- 400**    **Language**
- 500**    **Science**
- 600**    **Technology**
- 700**    **Arts & recreation**
- 800**    **Literature**
- 900**    **History & geography**

*Consult schedules for complete and exact headings*

## Second Summary

### *The Hundred Divisions*

000 Computer science, knowledge & systems	500 Science
010 Bibliographies	510 Mathematics
020 Library & information sciences	520 Astronomy
030 Encyclopedias & books of facts	530 Physics
040 [Unassigned]	540 Chemistry
050 Magazines, journals & serials	550 Earth sciences & geology
060 Associations, organizations & museums	560 Fossils & prehistoric life
070 News media, journalism & publishing	570 Biology
080 Quotations	580 Plants (Botany)
090 Manuscripts & rare books	590 Animals (Zoology)
100 Philosophy	600 Technology
110 Metaphysics	610 Medicine & health
120 Epistemology	620 Engineering
130 Parapsychology & occultism	630 Agriculture
140 Philosophical schools of thought	640 Home & family management
150 Psychology	650 Management & public relations
160 Philosophical logic	660 Chemical engineering
170 Ethics	670 Manufacturing
180 Ancient, medieval & eastern philosophy	680 Manufacture for specific uses
190 Modern western philosophy	690 Construction of buildings
200 Religion	700 Arts
210 Philosophy & theory of religion	710 Area planning & landscape architecture
220 The Bible	720 Architecture
230 Christianity	730 Sculpture, ceramics & metalwork
240 Christian practice & observance	740 Graphic arts & decorative arts
250 Christian pastoral practice & religious orders	750 Painting
260 Christian organization, social work & worship	760 Printmaking & prints
270 History of Christianity	770 Photography, computer art, film, video
280 Christian denominations	780 Music
290 Other religions	790 Sports, games & entertainment
300 Social sciences, sociology & anthropology	800 Literature, rhetoric & criticism
310 Statistics	810 American literature in English
320 Political science	820 English & Old English literatures
330 Economics	830 German & related literatures
340 Law	840 French & related literatures
350 Public administration & military science	850 Italian, Romanian & related literatures
360 Social problems & social services	860 Spanish, Portuguese, Galician literatures
370 Education	870 Latin & Italic literatures
380 Commerce, communications & transportation	880 Classical & modern Greek literatures
390 Customs, etiquette & folklore	890 Other literatures
400 Language	900 History
410 Linguistics	910 Geography & travel
420 English & Old English languages	920 Biography & genealogy
430 German & related languages	930 History of ancient world (to ca. 499)
440 French & related languages	940 History of Europe
450 Italian, Romanian & related languages	950 History of Asia
460 Spanish, Portuguese, Galician	960 History of Africa
470 Latin & Italic languages	970 History of North America
480 Classical & modern Greek languages	980 History of South America
490 Other languages	990 History of other areas

*Consult schedules for complete and exact headings*

# Third Summary

## *The Thousand Sections*

- 000 Computer science, information & general works**
- 001 Knowledge
  - 002 The book
  - 003 Systems
  - 004 Computer science
  - 005 Computer programming, programs & data
  - 006 Special computer methods
  - 007 [Unassigned]
  - 008 [Unassigned]
  - 009 [Unassigned]
- 010 Bibliography**
- 011 Bibliographies & catalogs
  - 012 Bibliographies & catalogs of individuals
  - 013 [Unassigned]
  - 014 Of anonymous & pseudonymous works
  - 015 Of works from specific places
  - 016 Of works on specific subjects
  - 017 General subject catalogs
  - 018 [Unassigned]
  - 019 [Unassigned]
- 020 Library & information sciences**
- 021 Library relationships
  - 022 Administration of physical plant
  - 023 Personnel management
  - 024 [Unassigned]
  - 025 Library operations
  - 026 Libraries for specific subjects
  - 027 General libraries
  - 028 Reading & use of other information media
  - 029 [Unassigned]
- 030 General encyclopedic works**
- 031 Encyclopedias in American English
  - 032 Encyclopedias in English
  - 033 In other Germanic languages
  - 034 Encyclopedias in French, Occitan & Catalan
  - 035 In Italian, Romanian & related languages
  - 036 Encyclopedias in Spanish, Portuguese & Galician
  - 037 Encyclopedias in Slavic languages
  - 038 Encyclopedias in Scandinavian languages
  - 039 Encyclopedias in other languages
- 040 [Unassigned]**
- 041 [Unassigned]
  - 042 [Unassigned]
  - 043 [Unassigned]
  - 044 [Unassigned]
  - 045 [Unassigned]
  - 046 [Unassigned]
  - 047 [Unassigned]
  - 048 [Unassigned]
  - 049 [Unassigned]
- 050 General serial publications**
- 051 Serials in American English
  - 052 Serials in English
  - 053 Serials in other Germanic languages
  - 054 Serials in French, Occitan & Catalan
  - 055 In Italian, Romanian & related languages
  - 056 Serials in Spanish, Portuguese & Galician
  - 057 Serials in Slavic languages
  - 058 Serials in Scandinavian languages
  - 059 Serials in other languages
- 060 General organizations & museum science**
- 061 Organizations in North America
  - 062 Organizations in British Isles
  - 063 Organizations in Germany; in central Europe
  - 064 Organizations in France & Monaco
  - 065 In Italy, San Marino, Vatican City, Malta
  - 066 In Spain, Andorra, Gibraltar, Portugal
  - 067 Organizations in Russia; in eastern Europe
  - 068 Organizations in other geographic areas
  - 069 Museum science
- 070 News media, journalism & publishing**
- 071 Newspapers in North America
  - 072 Newspapers in British Isles
  - 073 Newspapers in Germany; in central Europe
  - 074 Newspapers in France & Monaco
  - 075 In Italy, San Marino, Vatican City, Malta
  - 076 In Spain, Andorra, Gibraltar, Portugal
  - 077 Newspapers in Russia; in eastern Europe
  - 078 Newspapers in Scandinavia
  - 079 Newspapers in other geographic areas
- 080 General collections**
- 081 Collections in American English
  - 082 Collections in English
  - 083 Collections in other Germanic languages
  - 084 Collections in French, Occitan & Catalan
  - 085 In Italian, Romanian & related languages
  - 086 Collections in Spanish, Portuguese & Galician
  - 087 Collections in Slavic languages
  - 088 Collections in Scandinavian languages
  - 089 Collections in other languages
- 090 Manuscripts & rare books**
- 091 Manuscripts
  - 092 Block books
  - 093 Incunabula
  - 094 Printed books
  - 095 Books notable for bindings
  - 096 Books notable for illustrations
  - 097 Books notable for ownership or origin
  - 098 Prohibited works, forgeries & hoaxes
  - 099 Books notable for format

*Consult schedules for complete and exact headings*

## **Philosophy & psychology**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>100 Philosophy &amp; psychology</b>             | <b>150 Psychology</b>                                 |
| 101 Theory of philosophy                           | 151 [Unassigned]                                      |
| 102 Miscellany                                     | 152 Perception, movement, emotions & drives           |
| 103 Dictionaries & encyclopedias                   | 153 Mental processes & intelligence                   |
| 104 [Unassigned]                                   | 154 Subconscious & altered states                     |
| 105 Serial publications                            | 155 Differential & developmental psychology           |
| 106 Organizations & management                     | 156 Comparative psychology                            |
| 107 Education, research & related topics           | 157 [Unassigned]                                      |
| 108 Groups of people                               | 158 Applied psychology                                |
| 109 Historical & collected biography               | 159 [Unassigned]                                      |
| <b>110 Metaphysics</b>                             | <b>160 Philosophical logic</b>                        |
| 111 Ontology                                       | 161 Induction   |
| 112 [Unassigned]                                   | 162 Deduction   |
| 113 Cosmology                                      | 163 [Unassigned]                                      |
| 114 Space  | 164 [Unassigned]                                      |
| 115 Time   | 165 Fallacies & sources of error                      |
| 116 Change   | 166 Syllogisms  |
| 117 Structure                                      | 167 Hypotheses  |
| 118 Force & energy                                 | 168 Argument & persuasion                             |
| 119 Number & quantity                              | 169 Analogy   |
| <b>120 Epistemology, causation &amp; humankind</b> | <b>170 Ethics</b>                                     |
| 121 Epistemology                                   | 171 Ethical systems                                   |
| 122 Causation                                      | 172 Political ethics                                  |
| 123 Determinism & indeterminism                    | 173 Ethics of family relationships                    |
| 124 Teleology                                      | 174 Occupational ethics                               |
| 125 [Unassigned]                                   | 175 Ethics of recreation & leisure                    |
| 126 The self                                       | 176 Ethics of sex & reproduction                      |
| 127 The unconscious & the subconscious             | 177 Ethics of social relations                        |
| 128 Humankind                                      | 178 Ethics of consumption                             |
| 129 Origin & destiny of individual souls           | 179 Other ethical norms                               |
| <b>130 Parapsychology &amp; occultism</b>          | <b>180 Ancient, medieval &amp; eastern philosophy</b> |
| 131 Parapsychological & occult methods             | 181 Eastern philosophy                                |
| 132 [Unassigned]                                   | 182 Pre-Socratic Greek philosophies                   |
| 133 Specific topics in parapsychology & occultism  | 183 Socratic & related philosophies                   |
| 134 [Unassigned]                                   | 184 Platonic philosophy                               |
| 135 Dreams & mysteries                             | 185 Aristotelian philosophy                           |
| 136 [Unassigned]                                   | 186 Skeptic & Neoplatonic philosophies                |
| 137 Divinatory graphology                          | 187 Epicurean philosophy                              |
| 138 Physiognomy                                    | 188 Stoic philosophy                                  |
| 139 Phrenology                                     | 189 Medieval western philosophy                       |
| <b>140 Specific philosophical schools</b>          | <b>190 Modern western philosophy</b>                  |
| 141 Idealism & related systems                     | 191 Philosophy of United States & Canada              |
| 142 Critical philosophy                            | 192 Philosophy of British Isles                       |
| 143 Bergsonism & intuitionism                      | 193 Philosophy of Germany & Austria                   |
| 144 Humanism & related systems                     | 194 Philosophy of France                              |
| 145 Sensationalism                                 | 195 Philosophy of Italy                               |
| 146 Naturalism & related systems                   | 196 Philosophy of Spain & Portugal                    |
| 147 Pantheism & related systems                    | 197 Philosophy of Russia                              |
| 148 Eclecticism, liberalism & traditionalism       | 198 Philosophy of Scandinavia                         |
| 149 Other philosophical systems                    | 199 Philosophy in other geographic areas              |

*Consult schedules for complete and exact headings*

## Religion

### 200 Religion

- 201 Religious mythology & social theology
- 202 Doctrines
- 203 Public worship & other practices
- 204 Religious experience, life & practice
- 205 Religious ethics
- 206 Leaders & organization
- 207 Missions & religious education
- 208 Sources
- 209 Sects & reform movements

### 210 Philosophy & theory of religion

- 211 Concepts of God
- 212 Existence, knowability & attributes of God
- 213 Creation
- 214 Theodicy
- 215 Science & religion
- 216 [Unassigned]
- 217 [Unassigned]
- 218 Humankind
- 219 [Unassigned]

### 220 Bible

- 221 Old Testament (Tanakh)
- 222 Historical books of Old Testament
- 223 Poetic books of Old Testament
- 224 Prophetic books of Old Testament
- 225 New Testament
- 226 Gospels & Acts
- 227 Epistles
- 228 Revelation (Apocalypse)
- 229 Apocrypha & pseudepigrapha

### 230 Christianity

- 231 God
- 232 Jesus Christ & his family
- 233 Humankind
- 234 Salvation & grace
- 235 Spiritual beings
- 236 Eschatology
- 237 [Unassigned]
- 238 Creeds & catechisms
- 239 Apologetics & polemics

### 240 Christian moral & devotional theology

- 241 Christian ethics
- 242 Devotional literature
- 243 Evangelistic writings for individuals
- 244 [Unassigned]
- 245 [Unassigned]
- 246 Use of art in Christianity
- 247 Church furnishings & articles
- 248 Christian experience, practice & life
- 249 Christian observances in family life

### 250 Christian orders & local church

- 251 Preaching
- 252 Texts of sermons
- 253 Pastoral office & work
- 254 Parish administration
- 255 Religious congregations & orders
- 256 [Unassigned]
- 257 [Unassigned]
- 258 [Unassigned]
- 259 Pastoral care of families & groups of people

### 260 Social & ecclesiastical theology

- 261 Social theology
- 262 Ecclesiology
- 263 Days, times & places of observance
- 264 Public worship
- 265 Sacraments, other rites & acts
- 266 Missions
- 267 Associations for religious work
- 268 Religious education
- 269 Spiritual renewal

### 270 History, geography, biography of Christianity

- 271 Religious orders in church history
- 272 Persecutions in church history
- 273 Doctrinal controversies & heresies
- 274 History of Christianity in Europe
- 275 History of Christianity in Asia
- 276 History of Christianity in Africa
- 277 History of Christianity in North America
- 278 History of Christianity in South America
- 279 History of Christianity in other areas

### 280 Christian denominations & sects

- 281 Early church & Eastern churches
- 282 Roman Catholic Church
- 283 Anglican churches
- 284 Protestants of Continental origin
- 285 Presbyterian, Reformed & Congregational
- 286 Baptist, Disciples of Christ & Adventist
- 287 Methodist & related churches
- 288 [Unassigned]
- 289 Other denominations & sects

### 290 Other religions

- 291 [Unassigned]
- 292 Greek & Roman religion
- 293 Germanic religion
- 294 Religions of Indic origin
- 295 Zoroastrianism
- 296 Judaism
- 297 Islam, Babism & Bahai Faith
- 298 (Optional number)
- 299 Religions not provided for elsewhere

*Consult schedules for complete and exact headings*

## Social sciences

### **300 Social sciences**

- 301 Sociology & anthropology
- 302 Social interaction
- 303 Social processes
- 304 Factors affecting social behavior
- 305 Groups of people
- 306 Culture & institutions
- 307 Communities
- 308 [Unassigned]
- 309 [Unassigned]

### **310 Collections of general statistics**

- 311 [Unassigned]
- 312 [Unassigned]
- 313 [Unassigned]
- 314 General statistics of Europe
- 315 General statistics of Asia
- 316 General statistics of Africa
- 317 General statistics of North America
- 318 General statistics of South America
- 319 General statistics of other areas

### **320 Political science**

- 321 Systems of governments & states
- 322 Relation of state to organized groups
- 323 Civil & political rights
- 324 The political process
- 325 International migration & colonization
- 326 Slavery & emancipation
- 327 International relations
- 328 The legislative process
- 329 [Unassigned]

### **330 Economics**

- 331 Labor economics
- 332 Financial economics
- 333 Economics of land & energy
- 334 Cooperatives
- 335 Socialism & related systems
- 336 Public finance
- 337 International economics
- 338 Production
- 339 Macroeconomics & related topics

### **340 Law**

- 341 Law of nations
- 342 Constitutional & administrative law
- 343 Military, tax, trade & industrial law
- 344 Labor, social, education & cultural law
- 345 Criminal law
- 346 Private law
- 347 Procedure & courts
- 348 Laws, regulations & cases
- 349 Law of specific jurisdictions & areas

### **350 Public administration & military science**

- 351 Public administration
- 352 General considerations of public administration
- 353 Specific fields of public administration
- 354 Administration of economy & environment
- 355 Military science
- 356 Infantry forces & warfare
- 357 Mounted forces & warfare
- 358 Air & other specialized forces
- 359 Sea forces & warfare

### **360 Social problems & services; associations**

- 361 Social problems & services
- 362 Social problems of groups of people
- 363 Other social problems & services
- 364 Criminology
- 365 Penal & related institutions
- 366 Secret associations & societies
- 367 General clubs
- 368 Insurance
- 369 Associations

### **370 Education**

- 371 Schools & their activities; special education
- 372 Primary education
- 373 Secondary education
- 374 Adult education
- 375 Curricula
- 376 [Unassigned]
- 377 [Unassigned]
- 378 Higher education
- 379 Public policy issues in education

### **380 Commerce, communications & transportation**

- 381 Commerce
- 382 International commerce
- 383 Postal communication
- 384 Communications
- 385 Railroad transportation
- 386 Inland waterway & ferry transportation
- 387 Water, air & space transportation
- 388 Transportation
- 389 Metrology & standardization

### **390 Customs, etiquette & folklore**

- 391 Costume & personal appearance
- 392 Customs of life cycle & domestic life
- 393 Death customs
- 394 General customs
- 395 Etiquette (Manners)
- 396 [Unassigned]
- 397 [Unassigned]
- 398 Folklore
- 399 Customs of war & diplomacy

*Consult schedules for complete and exact headings*

## Language

- 400 Language**  
401 Philosophy & theory; international languages  
402 Miscellany  
403 Dictionaries & encyclopedias  
404 Special topics  
405 Serial publications  
406 Organizations & management  
407 Education, research & related topics  
408 Groups of people  
409 Geographic treatment & biography
- 410 Linguistics**  
411 Writing systems  
412 Etymology  
413 Dictionaries  
414 Phonology & phonetics  
415 Grammar  
416 [Unassigned]  
417 Dialectology & historical linguistics  
418 Standard usage  
419 Sign languages
- 420 English & Old English**  
421 English writing system & phonology  
422 English etymology  
423 English dictionaries  
424 [Unassigned]  
425 English grammar  
426 [Unassigned]  
427 English language variations  
428 Standard English usage  
429 Old English (Anglo-Saxon)
- 430 German & related languages**  
431 German writing systems & phonology  
432 German etymology  
433 German dictionaries  
434 [Unassigned]  
435 German grammar  
436 [Unassigned]  
437 German language variations  
438 Standard German usage  
439 Other Germanic languages
- 440 French & related languages**  
441 French writing systems & phonology  
442 French etymology  
443 French dictionaries  
444 [Unassigned]  
445 French grammar  
446 [Unassigned]  
447 French language variations  
448 Standard French usage  
449 Occitan & Catalan
- 450 Italian, Romanian & related languages**  
451 Italian writing systems & phonology  
452 Italian etymology  
453 Italian dictionaries  
454 [Unassigned]  
455 Italian grammar  
456 [Unassigned]  
457 Italian language variations  
458 Standard Italian usage  
459 Romanian & related languages
- 460 Spanish, Portuguese, Galician**  
461 Spanish writing systems & phonology  
462 Spanish etymology  
463 Spanish dictionaries  
464 [Unassigned]  
465 Spanish grammar  
466 [Unassigned]  
467 Spanish language variations  
468 Standard Spanish usage  
469 Portuguese & Galician
- 470 Latin & related Italic languages**  
471 Classical Latin writing & phonology  
472 Classical Latin etymology  
473 Classical Latin dictionaries  
474 [Unassigned]  
475 Classical Latin grammar  
476 [Unassigned]  
477 Old, postclassical & Vulgar Latin  
478 Classical Latin usage  
479 Other Italic languages
- 480 Classical Greek & related languages**  
481 Classical Greek writing & phonology  
482 Classical Greek etymology  
483 Classical Greek dictionaries  
484 [Unassigned]  
485 Classical Greek grammar  
486 [Unassigned]  
487 Preclassical & postclassical Greek  
488 Classical Greek usage  
489 Other Hellenic languages
- 490 Other languages**  
491 East Indo-European & Celtic languages  
492 Afro-Asiatic languages  
493 Non-Semitic Afro-Asiatic languages  
494 Altaic, Uralic, Hyperborean & Dravidian  
495 Languages of East & Southeast Asia  
496 African languages  
497 North American native languages  
498 South American native languages  
499 Austronesian & other languages

*Consult schedules for complete and exact headings*

## Science

### **500 Natural sciences & mathematics**

- 501 Philosophy & theory
- 502 Miscellany
- 503 Dictionaries & encyclopedias
- 504 [Unassigned]
- 505 Serial publications
- 506 Organizations & management
- 507 Education, research & related topics
- 508 Natural history
- 509 History, geographic treatment, biography

### **510 Mathematics**

- 511 General principles of mathematics
- 512 Algebra
- 513 Arithmetic
- 514 Topology
- 515 Analysis
- 516 Geometry
- 517 [Unassigned]
- 518 Numerical analysis
- 519 Probabilities & applied mathematics

### **520 Astronomy & allied sciences**

- 521 Celestial mechanics
- 522 Techniques, equipment & materials
- 523 Specific celestial bodies & phenomena
- 524 [Unassigned]
- 525 Earth (Astronomical geography)
- 526 Mathematical geography
- 527 Celestial navigation
- 528 Ephemerides
- 529 Chronology

### **530 Physics**

- 531 Classical mechanics
- 532 Fluid mechanics
- 533 Gas mechanics
- 534 Sound & related vibrations
- 535 Light & related radiation
- 536 Heat
- 537 Electricity & electronics
- 538 Magnetism
- 539 Modern physics

### **540 Chemistry & allied sciences**

- 541 Physical chemistry
- 542 Techniques, equipment & materials
- 543 Analytical chemistry
- 544 [Unassigned]
- 545 [Unassigned]
- 546 Inorganic chemistry
- 547 Organic chemistry
- 548 Crystallography
- 549 Mineralogy

### **550 Earth sciences**

- 551 Geology, hydrology & meteorology
- 552 Petrology
- 553 Economic geology
- 554 Earth sciences of Europe
- 555 Earth sciences of Asia
- 556 Earth sciences of Africa
- 557 Earth sciences of North America
- 558 Earth sciences of South America
- 559 Earth sciences of other areas

### **560 Paleontology**

- 561 Paleobotany; fossil microorganisms
- 562 Fossil invertebrates
- 563 Fossil marine & seashore invertebrates
- 564 Fossil mollusks & molluscoids
- 565 Fossil arthropods
- 566 Fossil chordates
- 567 Fossil cold-blooded vertebrates
- 568 Fossil birds
- 569 Fossil mammals

### **570 Biology**

- 571 Physiology & related subjects
- 572 Biochemistry
- 573 Specific physiological systems in animals
- 574 [Unassigned]
- 575 Specific parts of & systems in plants
- 576 Genetics & evolution
- 577 Ecology
- 578 Natural history of organisms
- 579 Microorganisms, fungi & algae

### **580 Plants (Botany)**

- 581 Specific topics in natural history
- 582 Plants noted for characteristics & flowers
- 583 Dicotyledons
- 584 Monocotyledons
- 585 Gymnosperms
- 586 Seedless plants
- 587 Vascular seedless plants
- 588 Bryophytes
- 589 [Unassigned]

### **590 Animals (Zoology)**

- 591 Specific topics in natural history
- 592 Invertebrates
- 593 Marine & seashore invertebrates
- 594 Mollusks & molluscoids
- 595 Arthropods
- 596 Chordates
- 597 Cold-blooded vertebrates
- 598 Birds
- 599 Mammals

*Consult schedules for complete and exact headings*

## Technology

### 600 Technology

- 601 Philosophy & theory
- 602 Miscellany
- 603 Dictionaries & encyclopedias
- 604 Special topics
- 605 Serial publications
- 606 Organizations
- 607 Education, research & related topics
- 608 Patents
- 609 History, geographic treatment, biography

### 610 Medicine & health

- 611 Human anatomy, cytology & histology
- 612 Human physiology
- 613 Personal health & safety
- 614 Incidence & prevention of disease
- 615 Pharmacology & therapeutics
- 616 Diseases
- 617 Surgery & related medical specialties
- 618 Gynecology, obstetrics, pediatrics & geriatrics
- 619 [Unassigned]

### 620 Engineering & allied operations

- 621 Applied physics
- 622 Mining & related operations
- 623 Military & nautical engineering
- 624 Civil engineering
- 625 Engineering of railroads & roads
- 626 [Unassigned]
- 627 Hydraulic engineering
- 628 Sanitary engineering
- 629 Other branches of engineering

### 630 Agriculture & related technologies

- 631 Techniques, equipment & materials
- 632 Plant injuries, diseases & pests
- 633 Field & plantation crops
- 634 Orchards, fruits & forestry
- 635 Garden crops (Horticulture)
- 636 Animal husbandry
- 637 Processing dairy & related products
- 638 Insect culture
- 639 Hunting, fishing & conservation

### 640 Home & family management

- 641 Food & drink
- 642 Meals & table service
- 643 Housing & household equipment
- 644 Household utilities
- 645 Household furnishings
- 646 Sewing, clothing & personal living
- 647 Management of public households
- 648 Housekeeping
- 649 Child rearing & home care of people

### 650 Management & auxiliary services

- 651 Office services
- 652 Processes of written communication
- 653 Shorthand
- 654 [Unassigned]
- 655 [Unassigned]
- 656 [Unassigned]
- 657 Accounting
- 658 General management
- 659 Advertising & public relations

### 660 Chemical engineering

- 661 Industrial chemicals
- 662 Explosives, fuels & related products
- 663 Beverage technology
- 664 Food technology
- 665 Industrial oils, fats, waxes & gases
- 666 Ceramic & allied technologies
- 667 Cleaning, color & coating technologies
- 668 Technology of other organic products
- 669 Metallurgy

### 670 Manufacturing

- 671 Metalworking & primary metal products
- 672 Iron, steel & other iron alloys
- 673 Nonferrous metals
- 674 Lumber processing, wood products & cork
- 675 Leather & fur processing
- 676 Pulp & paper technology
- 677 Textiles
- 678 Elastomers & elastomer products
- 679 Other products of specific materials

### 680 Manufacture for specific uses

- 681 Precision instruments & other devices
- 682 Small forge work (Blacksmithing)
- 683 Hardware & household appliances
- 684 Furnishings & home workshops
- 685 Leather, fur goods & related products
- 686 Printing & related activities
- 687 Clothing & accessories
- 688 Other final products & packaging
- 689 [Unassigned]

### 690 Construction of buildings

- 691 Building materials
- 692 Auxiliary construction practices
- 693 Specific materials & purposes
- 694 Wood construction
- 695 Roof covering
- 696 Utilities
- 697 Heating, ventilating & air-conditioning
- 698 Detail finishing
- 699 [Unassigned]

*Consult schedules for complete and exact headings*

## **Arts & recreation**

- 700 The arts; fine & decorative arts**  
701 Philosophy of fine & decorative arts  
702 Miscellany of fine & decorative arts  
703 Dictionaries of fine & decorative arts  
704 Special topics in fine & decorative arts  
705 Serial publications of fine & decorative arts  
706 Organizations & management  
707 Education, research & related topics  
708 Galleries, museums & private collections  
709 History, geographic treatment & biography
- 710 Area planning & landscape architecture**  
711 Area planning  
712 Landscape architecture  
713 Landscape architecture of trafficways  
714 Water features  
715 Woody plants  
716 Herbaceous plants  
717 Structures in landscape architecture  
718 Landscape design of cemeteries  
719 Natural landscapes
- 720 Architecture**  
721 Architectural materials & structural elements  
722 Architecture to ca. 300  
723 Architecture from ca. 300 to 1399  
724 Architecture from 1400  
725 Public structures  
726 Buildings for religious purposes  
727 Buildings for education & research  
728 Residential & related buildings  
729 Design & decoration
- 730 Sculpture & related arts**  
731 Processes, forms & subjects of sculpture  
732 Sculpture to ca. 500  
733 Greek, Etruscan & Roman sculpture  
734 Sculpture from ca. 500 to 1399  
735 Sculpture from 1400  
736 Carving & carvings  
737 Numismatics & sigillography  
738 Ceramic arts  
739 Art metalwork
- 740 Graphic arts & decorative arts**  
741 Drawing & drawings  
742 Perspective  
743 Drawing & drawings by subject  
744 [Unassigned]  
745 Decorative arts  
746 Textile arts  
747 Interior decoration  
748 Glass  
749 Furniture & accessories
- 750 Painting & paintings**  
751 Techniques, equipment, materials & forms  
752 Color  
753 Symbolism, allegory, mythology & legend  
754 Genre paintings  
755 Religion  
756 [Unassigned]  
757 Human figures  
758 Other subjects  
759 History, geographic treatment, biography
- 760 Printmaking & prints**  
761 Relief processes (Block printing)  
762 [Unassigned]  
763 Lithographic processes  
764 Chromolithography & serigraphy  
765 Metal engraving  
766 Mezzotinting, aquatinting & related processes  
767 Etching & drypoint  
768 [Unassigned]  
769 Prints
- 770 Photography, computer art, film, video**  
771 Techniques, equipment & materials  
772 Metallic salt processes  
773 Pigment processes of printing  
774 Holography  
775 [Unassigned]  
776 Computer art (Digital art)  
777 Cinematography and videography  
778 Fields & kinds of photography  
779 Photographic images
- 780 Music**  
781 General principles & musical forms  
782 Vocal music  
783 Music for single voices  
784 Instruments & instrumental ensembles  
785 Ensembles with one instrument per part  
786 Keyboard & other instruments  
787 Stringed instruments  
788 Wind instruments  
789 (Optional number)
- 790 Recreational & performing arts**  
791 Public performances  
792 Stage presentations  
793 Indoor games & amusements  
794 Indoor games of skill  
795 Games of chance  
796 Athletic & outdoor sports & games  
797 Aquatic & air sports  
798 Equestrian sports & animal racing  
799 Fishing, hunting & shooting

*Consult schedules for complete and exact headings*

## Literature

### 800 Literature & rhetoric

- 801 Philosophy & theory
- 802 Miscellany
- 803 Dictionaries & encyclopedias
- 804 [Unassigned]
- 805 Serial publications
- 806 Organizations & management
- 807 Education, research & related topics
- 808 Rhetoric & collections of literature
- 809 History, description & criticism

### 810 American literature in English

- 811 American poetry in English
- 812 American drama in English
- 813 American fiction in English
- 814 American essays in English
- 815 American speeches in English
- 816 American letters in English
- 817 American humor & satire in English
- 818 American miscellaneous writings
- 819 (Optional number)

### 820 English & Old English literatures

- 821 English poetry
- 822 English drama
- 823 English fiction
- 824 English essays
- 825 English speeches
- 826 English letters
- 827 English humor & satire
- 828 English miscellaneous writings
- 829 Old English (Anglo-Saxon)

### 830 German & related literatures

- 831 German poetry
- 832 German drama
- 833 German fiction
- 834 German essays
- 835 German speeches
- 836 German letters
- 837 German humor & satire
- 838 German miscellaneous writings
- 839 Other Germanic literatures

### 840 French & related literatures

- 841 French poetry
- 842 French drama
- 843 French fiction
- 844 French essays
- 845 French speeches
- 846 French letters
- 847 French humor & satire
- 848 French miscellaneous writings
- 849 Occitan & Catalan literatures

### 850 Italian, Romanian & related literatures

- 851 Italian poetry
- 852 Italian drama
- 853 Italian fiction
- 854 Italian essays
- 855 Italian speeches
- 856 Italian letters
- 857 Italian humor & satire
- 858 Italian miscellaneous writings
- 859 Romanian & related literatures

### 860 Spanish, Portuguese, Galician literatures

- 861 Spanish poetry
- 862 Spanish drama
- 863 Spanish fiction
- 864 Spanish essays
- 865 Spanish speeches
- 866 Spanish letters
- 867 Spanish humor & satire
- 868 Spanish miscellaneous writings
- 869 Portuguese & Galician literature

### 870 Latin & Italic literatures

- 871 Latin poetry
- 872 Latin dramatic poetry & drama
- 873 Latin epic poetry & fiction
- 874 Latin lyric poetry
- 875 Latin speeches
- 876 Latin letters
- 877 Latin humor & satire
- 878 Latin miscellaneous writings
- 879 Literatures of other Italic languages

### 880 Classical Greek & related literatures

- 881 Classical Greek poetry
- 882 Classical Greek dramatic poetry & drama
- 883 Classical Greek epic poetry & fiction
- 884 Classical Greek lyric poetry
- 885 Classical Greek speeches
- 886 Classical Greek letters
- 887 Classical Greek humor & satire
- 888 Classical Greek miscellaneous writings
- 889 Modern Greek literature

### 890 Literatures of other languages

- 891 East Indo-European & Celtic literatures
- 892 Afro-Asiatic literatures
- 893 Non-Semitic Afro-Asiatic literatures
- 894 Altaic, Uralic, Hyperborean & Dravidian
- 895 Literatures of East & Southeast Asia
- 896 African literatures
- 897 North American native literatures
- 898 South American native literatures
- 899 Austronesian & other literatures

## History & geography

### **900 History & geography**

- 901 Philosophy & theory
- 902 Miscellany
- 903 Dictionaries & encyclopedias
- 904 Collected accounts of events
- 905 Serial publications
- 906 Organizations & management
- 907 Education, research & related topics
- 908 Groups of people
- 909 World history

### **910 Geography & travel**

- 911 Historical geography
- 912 Atlases, maps, charts & plans
- 913 Geography of & travel in ancient world
- 914 Geography of & travel in Europe
- 915 Geography of & travel in Asia
- 916 Geography of & travel in Africa
- 917 Geography of & travel in North America
- 918 Geography of & travel in South America
- 919 Geography of & travel in other areas

### **920 Biography, genealogy & insignia**

- 921 (Optional number)
- 922 (Optional number)
- 923 (Optional number)
- 924 (Optional number)
- 925 (Optional number)
- 926 (Optional number)
- 927 (Optional number)
- 928 (Optional number)
- 929 Genealogy, names & insignia

### **930 History of ancient world to ca. 499**

- 931 China to 420
- 932 Egypt to 640
- 933 Palestine to 70
- 934 South Asia to 647
- 935 Mesopotamia & Iranian Plateau to 637
- 936 Europe north & west of Italy to ca. 499
- 937 Italy & adjacent territories to 476
- 938 Greece to 323
- 939 Other parts of ancient world to ca. 640

### **940 History of Europe**

- 941 British Isles
- 942 England & Wales
- 943 Germany & central Europe
- 944 France & Monaco
- 945 Italy, San Marino, Vatican City, Malta
- 946 Spain, Andorra, Gibraltar, Portugal
- 947 Russia & eastern Europe
- 948 Scandinavia
- 949 Other parts of Europe

### **950 History of Asia**

- 951 China & adjacent areas
- 952 Japan
- 953 Arabian Peninsula & adjacent areas
- 954 India & south Asia
- 955 Iran
- 956 Middle East (Near East)
- 957 Siberia (Asiatic Russia)
- 958 Central Asia
- 959 Southeast Asia

### **960 History of Africa**

- 961 Tunisia & Libya
- 962 Egypt & Sudan
- 963 Ethiopia & Eritrea
- 964 Morocco & adjacent areas
- 965 Algeria
- 966 West Africa & offshore islands
- 967 Central Africa & offshore islands
- 968 Republic of South Africa & southern Africa
- 969 South Indian Ocean islands

### **970 History of North America**

- 971 Canada
- 972 Mexico, Central America, West Indies, Bermuda
- 973 United States
- 974 Northeastern United States
- 975 Southeastern United States
- 976 South central United States
- 977 North central United States
- 978 Western United States
- 979 Great Basin & Pacific Slope region

### **980 History of South America**

- 981 Brazil
- 982 Argentina
- 983 Chile
- 984 Bolivia
- 985 Peru
- 986 Colombia & Ecuador
- 987 Venezuela
- 988 Guiana
- 989 Paraguay & Uruguay

### **990 History of other areas**

- 991 [Unassigned]
- 992 [Unassigned]
- 993 New Zealand
- 994 Australia
- 995 New Guinea & Melanesia
- 996 Polynesia & other Pacific Ocean islands
- 997 Atlantic Ocean islands
- 998 Arctic islands & Antarctica
- 999 Extraterrestrial worlds

*Consult schedules for complete and exact headings*

# Schedules



# 000

---

---

## 000 Computer science, information, general works

### SUMMARY

- 000 Computer science, information, general works
  - 001 Knowledge
  - 002 The book
  - 003 Systems
  - 004 Computer science
  - 005 Computer programming, programs, data
  - 006 Special computer methods
  
- 010 Bibliography
  - .4 Special topics of bibliography
  - 011 Bibliographies and catalogs
  - 012 Bibliographies and catalogs of individuals
  - 014 Bibliographies and catalogs of anonymous and pseudonymous works
  - 015 Bibliographies and catalogs of works from specific places
  - 016 Bibliographies and catalogs of works on specific subjects
  - 017 General bibliographies and catalogs of works held in specific collections or offered for sale
  
- 020 Library and information sciences
  - .1-9 Standard subdivisions
  - 021 Relationships of libraries, archives, information centers
  - 022 Administration of physical plant
  - 023 Personnel management (Human resource management)
  - 025 Operations of libraries, archives, information centers
  - 026 Libraries, archives, information centers devoted to specific subjects
  - 027 General libraries, archives, information centers
  - 028 Reading and use of other information media
  
- 030 General encyclopedic works
  - .9 History, geographic treatment, biography
  - 031 General encyclopedic works in American English
  - 032 General encyclopedic works in English
  - 033 General encyclopedic works in other Germanic languages
  - 034 General encyclopedic works in French, Occitan, Catalan
  - 035 General encyclopedic works in Italian, Dalmatian, Romanian, Rhaetian, Sardinian, Corsican
  - 036 General encyclopedic works in Spanish, Portuguese, Galician
  - 037 General encyclopedic works in Slavic languages
  - 038 General encyclopedic works in Scandinavian languages
  - 039 General encyclopedic works in other languages

- 050      **General serial publications**
- .9      **History, geographic treatment, biography**
- 051      **General serial publications in American English**
- 052      **General serial publications in English**
- 053      **General serial publications in other Germanic languages**
- 054      **General serial publications in French, Occitan, Catalan**
- 055      **General serial publications in Italian, Dalmatian, Romanian, Rhaetian, Sardinian, Corsican**
- 056      **General serial publications in Spanish, Portuguese, Galician**
- 057      **General serial publications in Slavic languages**
- 058      **General serial publications in Scandinavian languages**
- 059      **General serial publications in other languages**
  
- 060      **General organizations and museology**
- .1–.9    **Standard subdivisions and special topics of general organizations**
- 061      **General organizations in North America**
- 062      **General organizations in British Isles**
- 063      **General organizations in Germany and neighboring central European countries**
- 064      **General organizations in France and Monaco**
- 065      **General organizations in Italy, San Marino, Vatican City, Malta**
- 066      **General organizations in Spain, Andorra, Gibraltar, Portugal**
- 067      **General organizations in Russia and neighboring east European countries**
- 068      **General organizations in other geographic areas**
- 069      **Museology (Museum science)**
  
- 070      **Documentary media, educational media, news media; journalism; publishing**
- .01–.09    **Standard subdivisions**
- .1–.9      **[Documentary media, educational media, news media; journalism; publishing]**
- 071      **Journalism and newspapers in North America**
- 072      **Journalism and newspapers in British Isles**
- 073      **Journalism and newspapers in Germany and neighboring central European countries**
- 074      **Journalism and newspapers in France and Monaco**
- 075      **Journalism and newspapers in Italy, San Marino, Vatican City, Malta**
- 076      **Journalism and newspapers in Spain, Andorra, Gibraltar, Portugal**
- 077      **Journalism and newspapers in Russia and neighboring east European countries**
- 078      **Journalism and newspapers in Scandinavia**
- 079      **Journalism and newspapers in other geographic areas**
  
- 080      **General collections**
- .9      **History, geographic treatment, biography**
- 081      **General collections in American English**
- 082      **General collections in English**
- 083      **General collections in other Germanic languages**
- 084      **General collections in French, Occitan, Catalan**
- 085      **General collections in Italian, Dalmatian, Romanian, Rhaetian, Sardinian, Corsican**
- 086      **General collections in Spanish, Portuguese, Galician**
- 087      **General collections in Slavic languages**
- 088      **General collections in Scandinavian languages**
- 089      **General collections in other languages**

090	Manuscripts, rare books, other rare printed materials
091	Manuscripts
092	Block books
093	Incunabula
094	Printed books
095	Books notable for bindings
096	Books notable for illustrations and materials
097	Books notable for ownership or origin
098	Prohibited works, forgeries, hoaxes
099	Books notable for format

## 001 Knowledge

Description and critical appraisal of intellectual activity in general

Including interdisciplinary works on consultants

Class here discussion of ideas from many fields; interdisciplinary approach to knowledge

Class epistemology in 121. Class a compilation of knowledge in a specific form with the form, e.g., encyclopedias 030

*For consultants or use of consultants in a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., library consultants 023.2, engineering consultants 620, use of consultants in management 658.46*

*See Manual at 500 vs. 001*

### .01 Theory of knowledge

Do not use for philosophy of knowledge, philosophical works on theory of knowledge; class in 121

### .1 Intellectual life

Nature and value

*For scholarship and learning, see 001.2*

*See also 900 for broad description of intellectual situation and condition*

### .2 Scholarship and learning

Intellectual activity directed toward increase of knowledge

Class methods of study and teaching in 371.3. Class a specific branch of scholarship and learning with the branch, e.g., scholarship in the humanities 001.3, in history 900

*For research, see 001.4*

*See Manual at 500 vs. 001*

### .3 Humanities

Including relative value of science versus the humanities

Class here government policy on humanities

- .4 Research**
- Class here action research, evaluation research, works discussing what research is
- Class research in a specific subject with the subject, plus notation 072 from Table 1, e.g., research in linguistics 410.72; class results of research in a specific subject with the subject without notation 072 from Table 1, e.g., results of research in linguistics 410 (*not* 410.72)
- See Manual at 500 vs. 001*
- .42 Research methods**
- Class here qualitative research, quantitative research, scientific method
- Class operations research in 003; class computer modeling and simulation in 003.3
- For descriptive and experimental methods, see 001.43*
- .422 Statistical methods**
- See also 310 for collections of general statistical data; also notation 021 from Table 1 for statistics on a specific subject*
- See Manual at 519.5, T1—015195 vs. 001.422, T1—0727*
- .422 6 Presentation of statistical data**
- Class here graphic presentation
- .43 Descriptive and experimental methods**
- [.432] Historical research**
- Case studies relocated to 001.433; interdisciplinary works on historical research relocated to 907.2
- .433 Descriptive research**
- Including case studies [*formerly* 001.432]; sampling techniques; surveys, questionnaires, field work, observation, interviews
- Class here data collection
- For analysis of statistical data, see 001.422; for presentation of statistical data, see 001.4226*
- See also 310.723 for methods of collecting general social statistical data*
- .434 Experimental method**

- .44           Support of and incentives for research
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Class here awards, bursaries, certificates, competitions, contests, fellowships and scholarships, financial support, grants, honors, medals, prizes
- Class student finance in higher education in 378.3. Class support of and incentives for research in a specific subject with the subject, plus notation 079 from Table 1, e.g., research awards in mechanical engineering 621.079
- See also 929.81 for orders and decorations*
- .9           Controversial knowledge**
- Including well-established phenomena for which explanations are controversial; the end of the world
- Class here interdisciplinary works on controversial knowledge, parapsychology, occultism
- For parapsychology and occultism, see 130. For controversial knowledge concerning a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., paranatural and legendary phenomena as subjects of folklore 398.4, Piltdown man hoax 569.9, controversial medical remedies 615.856, an alleged conspiracy to assassinate John F. Kennedy 973.922*
- See Manual at 001.9 and 130*
- .94           Mysteries
- Reported phenomena not explained, not fully verified
- Including Atlantis, Bermuda Triangle, pyramid power
- Class here nonastronomical extraterrestrial influences on earth
- See also 900 for Atlantis as a subject of archaeology*
- .942          Unidentified flying objects (UFOs)
- Variant name: flying saucers
- Class here human-alien encounters
- .944          Monsters and related phenomena
- Including abominable snowman, Loch Ness monster
- See also 590 for animals whose reality is not controversial*
- .95          Deceptions and hoaxes
- Class a hoax that influenced history with the hoax in 900, e.g., False Dmitri 947.045
- .96          Errors, delusions, superstitions

**002 The book**

Including interdisciplinary works on chapbooks [*formerly* 398.5]

Class here historical bibliography, interdisciplinary works on the book

Class comprehensive works on historical and analytical bibliography in 010.42

*For book publishing, see 070.5; for rare books, see 090; for social aspects of the book, see 302.232; for book arts, see 686. For chapbooks with content limited to a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., murder 364.1523, anonymous jokes from oral tradition 398.7, 18th-century English fiction 823.5*

[.021 6] Lists, inventories, catalogs

Do not use; class in 010

.029 Commercial miscellany

Do not use for trade catalogs and directories; class in 010

.074 Museums, collections, exhibits

Class catalogs and lists in 010

**003 Systems**

Class here operations research; systems theory, analysis, design, optimization; models (simulations) applied to real-world systems

Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 003 in the number coming last, e.g., control of discrete-time linear systems 003.830115 (*not* 003.5 or 003.74)

Class simulation in education in 371.397; class use of systems analysis and operations research in management in 658.4032. Class systems in a specific subject with the subject, plus notation 011 from Table 1, e.g., systems theory in the social sciences 300.11

*See also 004.21 for analysis and design of computer-based systems; also 511.8 for mathematical models not applied to real-world systems; also 519.7 for mathematical programming not applied to real-world systems*

*See Manual at 510, T1—0151 vs. 003, T1—011*

[.028 5] Computer applications

Do not use; class in 003.3

**.1 System identification**

Determining a mathematical model for a system by observing its input-output relationships

**.2 Forecasting and forecasts**

Class here interdisciplinary works on forecasting

*For forecasting by parapsychological and occult means, see 133.3; for social forecasting, see 303.49. For forecasting in a particular kind of system, see the system in 003.7—003.8, e.g., forecasting in stochastic systems 003.760112*

- .209 History, geographic treatment, biography of forecasting as a discipline  
*For forecasting and forecasts for specific areas, see 303.491–303.499*
- .3 Computer modeling and simulation**  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
 Class here computer applications in systems, computer implementation of mathematical models of systems, interdisciplinary works on computer modeling and simulation  
 Add to base number 003.3 the numbers following 00 in 004–006, e.g., computer simulation languages 003.3513  
*For computer modeling and simulation applied to a specific subject, see the subject, plus notation 0113 from Table 1, e.g., computer modeling in economics 330.0113*
- .5 Theory of communication and control**  
 In living and nonliving systems  
 Including bionics  
 Class here cybernetics, interdisciplinary works on control and stability of systems  
 Class social aspects of and interdisciplinary works on communication in systems in 302.2  
*For artificial intelligence, see 006.3; for control theory in automation engineering, see 629.8312. For control and stability of systems in a specific subject, see the subject, plus notation 0115 from Table 1, e.g., control and stability of systems in general engineering 620.00115*
- .52 Perception theory  
 Class computer vision in 006.37; class psychology of human perception in 153.7; class perception in animals in 573.87  
*See also 006.4 for computer pattern recognition*
- .54 Information theory  
 Theory concerning measurement of quantities of information; accuracy in transmission of messages subject to noise (unwanted, usually random, signals), distortion, and transmission failure; and methods of coding for efficient, accurate transmission  
 Class here coding theory  
 Class information theory in communications engineering in 621.3822, without using notation 01154 from Table 1; class coding for purpose of limiting access to information (cryptography) in 652.8. Class information theory in communications engineering of a specific kind of communications with the kind, without using notation 01154 from Table 1, e.g., radio 621.384; class information theory in any other specific subject with the subject, plus notation 01154 from Table 1, e.g., information theory in economics 330.01154

- .56        Decision theory  
               *See also 153.83 for decision theory in psychology; also 511.65 for decision theory in combinatorial analysis; also 658.40301 for decision theory in management*
- .7         **Kinds of systems**  
               Systems distinguished by type or equations used to model them  
               Including deterministic, hierarchical, lumped-parameter, self-organizing, small-scale systems  
               *For systems distinguished in relation to time, see 003.8*
- .71        Large-scale systems  
               Limited to works emphasizing that the systems are large
- .72        Networks  
               Class here network theory  
               *For purely mathematical treatment of networks without reference to real-world systems, see 511.5*
- .74        Linear systems
- .75        Nonlinear systems
- .76        Stochastic systems
- .78        Distributed-parameter systems
- .8         **Systems distinguished in relation to time**  
               Including continuous-time, instantaneous (zero-memory), time-invariant, time-varying systems
- .83        Discrete-time systems
- .85        Dynamic systems  
               Systems in which response depends upon past values of excitation as well as current excitation
- .857      Chaotic systems  
               Class here chaotic behavior in systems

>         **004–006 Computer science; computer programming, programs, data; special computer methods**

Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 004–006 in the number coming last, e.g., external storage for personal computers 004.56 (*not* 004.16), data security in client-server computing 005.8 (*not* 004.36), natural language processing in full-text database management systems 006.35 (*not* 005.759)

Class comprehensive works in 004

## 004 Computer science

Class here data processing; selection and use of computer hardware; electronic computers; electronic digital computers; computer systems (computers, their peripheral devices, their operating systems); cyberinfrastructure; central processing units; computer reliability; interactive, online processing; mobile computing; comprehensive works on hardware and programs in electronic data processing

Class computer modeling and simulation in 003.3. Class computer applications in a specific subject with the subject, plus notation 0285 from Table 1, e.g., computer applications in banking 332.10285

*For computer programming, programs, data, see 005; for special computer methods, see 006; for engineering, manufacture, repair of computers, see 621.39. For a specific aspect of mobile computing, see the aspect, e.g., handheld computing devices 004.167, wireless communications 004.6, mobile operating systems for handheld computing devices 005.446*

*See also 025.04 for automated information storage and retrieval; also 303.4834 for computers as a cause of social change; also 343.0999 for computer law; also 364.168 for financial and business computer crimes; also 371.334 for computer-assisted instruction (CAI); also 658.05 for data processing in management; also 794.8 for computer games*

*See Manual at 004–006 vs. 621.39; also at 004 vs. 005; also at 510, T1–0151 vs. 004–006, T1–0285*

### SUMMARY

- |            |   |
|------------|---|
| 004.01–.09 | <b>Standard subdivisions</b>  |
| .1         | <b>General works on specific types of computers</b>   |
| .2         | <b>Systems analysis and design, computer architecture, performance evaluation</b>   |
| .3         | <b>Processing modes</b>   |
| .5         | <b>Storage</b>  |
| .6         | <b>Interfacing and communications</b>   |
| .7         | <b>Peripherals</b>  |
| .9         | <b>Nonelectronic data processing</b>  |
| .015 1     | Mathematical principles<br>Class here computer mathematics<br><i>See Manual at 004.0151 vs. 511.1, 511.35</i>   |
| .019       | Psychological principles<br>Class here human-computer interaction, human factors, usability<br>Apply notation 019 from Table 1 as modified here throughout 004–006, e.g., human factors in user interfaces 005.437019 |
| .028       | Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials  |
| [.028 7]   | Testing and measurement<br>Do not use; class in 004.24  |

**.1 General works on specific types of computers**

Class here specific types of processors, computer systems based on specific types of computers

Class specific types of computers, processors, computer systems distinguished by their processing modes in 004.3; class programmable calculators in 510.28541

*See Manual at 004.1; also at 004.1 vs. 004.24; also at 004.1 vs. 004.3*

Embedded computer systems relocated to 006.22

**> 004.11–004.16 Digital computers**

Multifunctional digital devices are classed with their predominant function, e.g., personal digital assistants (PDAs), which often include mobile phone and portable media player capabilities in addition to their baseline computing capabilities, with handheld computing devices 004.167. However, a work that focuses on a specific function other than the predominant function is classed with the specific function, e.g., audio recording using a personal computer 006.5

Class comprehensive works in 004

*See Manual at 004.11–004.16*

**.11 \*Supercomputers**

Class massively parallel supercomputers in 004.35

**.12 \*Mainframe computers**

Class here large-scale digital computers

*For supercomputers, see 004.11; for midrange computers, see 004.14*

**.125 Specific mainframe computers**

Arrange alphabetically by name of computer or processor, e.g., IBM System z9<sup>®</sup>

**.14 \*Midrange computers**

Class here minicomputers, server class computers

Class comprehensive works on midrange and personal computers in 004.16

**.145 Specific midrange computers**

Arrange alphabetically by name of computer or processor, e.g., Dell PowerEdge<sup>®</sup> 1955

**.16 \*Personal computers**

Former heading: Microcomputers

Class here specific types of personal computers; comprehensive works on midrange and personal computers

*For midrange computers, see 004.14*

\*Use notation 019 from Table 1 as modified at 004.019

- .165            Specific personal computers  
                   Arrange alphabetically by name of computer or processor, e.g., Apple  
                   iMac<sup>®</sup>  
                   Specific handheld computing devices relocated to 004.1675
- .167            \*Handheld computing devices  
                   Class here specific types of handheld computing devices
- .167 5          Specific handheld computing devices [*formerly* 004.165]  
                   Arrange alphabetically by name of computer or processor, e.g.,  
                   BlackBerry<sup>®</sup>
- .19            \*Hybrid and analog computers  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   *For nonelectronic analog computers, see 004.9*
- .2            **\*Systems analysis and design, computer architecture, performance  
                   evaluation**
- .21            \*Systems analysis and design  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Class here analysis of a user's problem preparatory to developing a  
                   computer system to solve it  
                   Class communications network design and architecture in 004.65  
                   *For software systems analysis and design, see 005.12; for database  
                   design and architecture, see 005.74*  
                   *See also 003 for interdisciplinary works on systems analysis and design;  
                   also 658.4032 for management use of systems analysis*  
                   *See Manual at 004.21 vs. 004.22, 621.392*
- .22            \*Computer architecture  
                   *See Manual at 004.21 vs. 004.22, 621.392*
- .24            \*Performance evaluation  
                   Class here performance measurement and evaluation to aid in designing or  
                   improving the performance of a computer system  
                   Class performance evaluation as a consideration in purchasing a specific  
                   item with the item in 004, plus notation 029 from Table 1, e.g., evaluating  
                   personal computers for purchase 004.16029  
                   *See also 004.0685 for management techniques to ensure quality control  
                   in data processing*  
                   *See Manual at 004.1 vs. 004.24*

\*Use notation 019 from Table 1 as modified at 004.019

- .25        Systems analysis and design, computer architecture, performance evaluation of specific types of electronic computers
- Add to base number 004.25 the numbers following 004.1 in 004.11–004.19, e.g., architecture of personal computers 004.256
- For systems analysis and design, computer architecture, performance evaluation of specific types of computers distinguished by processing mode, see 004.3*
- .3         **\*Processing modes**
- Including batch, offline, pipeline processing; CISC (complex instruction set computing), RISC (reduced instruction set computing); multiprogramming, time-sharing
- Class here computers, processors, computer systems distinguished by their processing modes; centralized processing
- Class comprehensive works on multiprogramming, on time-sharing in 005.434
- See Manual at 004.1 vs. 004.3*
- .33        **\*Real-time processing**
- Limited to processing defined by predictability constraints and timing deadlines
- Including systems analysis and design, computer architecture, performance evaluation of real-time computers
- Class interactive, online, real-time data processing covering immediate processing of input or an immediate response to a user's action in 004
- .35        **\*Multiprocessing**
- Including systems analysis and design, computer architecture, performance evaluation; array processing, associative processing, dataflow computation
- Class here cluster computing, massively parallel supercomputers, parallel processing
- Class comprehensive works on associative processing and memory in 004.5; class programming for multiprocessor computers in 005.275
- .357      **Specific multiprocessor computers**
- Including systems analysis and design, computer architecture, performance evaluation of specific multiprocessor computers
- Arrange alphabetically by name of computer or processor, e.g., Inmos Transputer<sup>®</sup>

\*Use notation 019 from Table 1 as modified at 004.019

- .36      **\*Distributed processing**  
           Including systems analysis and design, computer architecture, performance evaluation  
           Class here client-server computing, web servers, grid computing  
           Class web services in 006.78  
           *See also 004.6 for computer communications networks; also 005.758 for distributed databases*
- .5        **\*Storage**  
           Including hardware aspects of virtual memory; comprehensive works on associative (content-addressable) memory and associative processing  
           Class comprehensive works on virtual memory in 005.435  
           *For associative processing, see 004.35*
- .53      **\*Internal storage (Main memory)**  
           Including metal-oxide-semiconductor (MOS), semiconductor bipolar, thin-film memory; random-access memory (RAM); read-only memory (ROM)  
           Class CD-ROM (compact disc read-only memory) in 004.565  
           *See also 005.18 for microprogramming and microprograms*
- .56      **\*External storage (Auxiliary storage)**  
           Including punched cards
- .563     **\*Magnetic storage**  
           Including floppy disks, floppy disk drives; magnetic tapes, e.g., cartridges, cassettes, reel-to-reel tapes; tape drives  
           Class here hard disks, hard disk drives; magnetic bubble memory
- .565     **\*Optical storage**  
           Including CD-ROM (compact disc read-only memory), DVD, WORM (write once read many) discs and drives
- .568     **\*Semiconductor storage**  
           Class here solid-state storage; flash drives, memory cards

\*Use notation 019 from Table 1 as modified at 004.019

**.6 \*Interfacing and communications**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here data communications; internetworking, interoperability; wired communications, wireless communications; interdisciplinary works on computer communications

Class data, programs, programming in interfacing and communications in 005.7; class security measures in interfacing and communications in 005.8

*For interdisciplinary works on telecommunication, see 384; for social aspects of computer communications, see 302.231; for economic and related aspects of providing computer communications to the public, see 384.3*

*See also 004.36 for distributed processing*

*See Manual at 004.6 vs. 005.71; also at 004.6 vs. 384.3; also at 004.6 vs. 621.382, 621.3981*

[.602 18] Standards

Do not use; class in 004.62

**.61 Interfacing and communications for specific types of electronic computers**

[.610 1–.610 9] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 004.601–004.609

**.611–.616 \*Digital computers**

Add to base number 004.61 the numbers following 004.1 in 004.11–004.16, e.g., interfacing and communications for personal computers 004.616

**.618 \*Computers distinguished by processing modes**

Add to base number 004.618 the numbers following 004.3 in 004.33–004.36, e.g., parallel processing computers 004.6185

**.619 \*Hybrid and analog computers**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

**.62 \*Interfacing and communications protocols**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Variant name for protocols: standards

Class protocols for specific aspects of interfacing and communications with the aspect, e.g., protocols for error-correcting codes 005.717

[.620 218] Standards

Do not use; class in 004.62



- .68      **\*Local-area networks**  
           Including baseband and broadband local-area networks, high-speed local networks  
           Class here personal-area networks
- .682      **\*Intranets**
- .69      **Specific kinds of computer communications**  
           Class computer communications in multimedia systems with the system, e.g., online social networks 006.754
- [.690 1--.690 9]      **Standard subdivisions**  
           Do not use; class in 004.601--004.609
- .692      **\*Electronic mail**  
           Class here instant messaging; point-to-point communications  
           Class e-mail lists in 004.693
- .693      **\*Discussion groups**  
           Class here chat groups, electronic bulletin boards, e-mail lists, newsgroups; broadcast communications  
           Class electronic mail in 004.692
- .695      **\*Internet telephony**
- [.696]      **Videotex**  
           Number discontinued; class in 004.69
- .7      **\*Peripherals**  
           Including peripherals for analog, digital, hybrid computers; peripherals for computers distinguished by processing modes  
           Class peripheral storage in 004.56; class ergonomic engineering of computer peripherals in 621.3984  
           *See also 004.64 for communications devices*
- .75      **\*Peripherals combining input and output functions**  
           Class here computer terminals  
           Class tape and disk devices in 004.56
- .76      **\*Input peripherals**  
           Including keyboards  
           Class input devices that utilize pattern recognition methods in 006.4. Class a special-purpose input device with the purpose, e.g., graphics input devices 006.62, game paddles 688.748  
           *See also 005.72 for data entry*

\*Use notation 019 from Table 1 as modified at 004.019

**.77 \*Output peripherals**

Including monitors (video display screens), printers

Class output peripherals that utilize computer sound synthesis in 006.5; class computer graphics output devices in 006.62

*See also 005.43 for monitors (software control programs); also 005.18 for monitors (firmware control programs)*

**.9 \*Nonelectronic data processing**

Automatic and nonautomatic

Including nonelectronic analog computers; nonelectronic punched-card data processing, e.g., pre-computer use of Hollerith cards

Class comprehensive works on analog computers in 004.19

**005 \*Computer programming, programs, data**

Class here software compatibility, portability, reliability, reusability

Class computer programming, programs, data for special computer methods in 006; class comprehensive works on hardware and programs in electronic data processing in 004

*See Manual at 004-006 vs. 621.39; also at 004 vs. 005; also at 510, T1-0151 vs. 004-006, T1-0285*

**SUMMARY**

<b>005.019</b>	<b>Psychological principles</b>
.1	<b>Programming</b>
.2	<b>Programming for specific types of computers, for specific operating systems, for specific user interfaces</b>
.3	<b>Programs</b>
.4	<b>Systems programming and programs</b>
.5	<b>General purpose application programs</b>
.7	<b>Data in computer systems</b>
.8	<b>Data security</b>

**.019 Psychological principles**

Class here usability

**> 005.1-005.5 Computer programming and programs**

Class comprehensive works in 005

\*Use notation 019 from Table 1 as modified at 004.019

**.1 \*Programming**

Class here application frameworks, application programming, computer algorithms, integrated development environments, software engineering

Class algorithms discussed solely from a theoretical perspective, without regard to computer implementation, in 518.1. Class a specific application of programming within computer science with the application in 005.4–005.8 or 006, e.g., programming of computer graphics 006.66

*For programming for specific types of computers, for specific operating systems, for specific user interfaces, see 005.2*

*See Manual at 005.1–005.2 vs. 005.42; also at 005.1 vs. 005.3*

**SUMMARY**

- |              |  |
|--------------|--|
| 005.101–.109 | <b>Standard subdivisions</b>                         |
| .11          | <b>Special programming techniques</b>                |
| .12          | <b>Software systems analysis and design</b>          |
| .13          | <b>Programming languages</b>                         |
| .14          | <b>Verification, testing, measurement, debugging</b> |
| .15          | <b>Preparation of program documentation</b>          |
| .16          | <b>Program maintenance</b>                           |
| .18          | <b>Microprogramming and microprograms</b>            |
- .101           Philosophy and theory
- Do not use notation 01 from Table 1 here or with subdivisions of 005.1–005.2 for general discussions of logic in programming
- See also 005.131 for the symbolic (mathematical) logic of programming languages*
- See Manual at 005.101*
- .102           Miscellany
- .102 8           Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
- Class special techniques in 005.11
- [.102 87]           Testing and measurement
- Do not use; class in 005.14
- [.102 88]           Maintenance and repair
- Do not use; class in 005.16
- .11           †\*Special programming techniques
- Class real-time programming in 005.273; class parallel programming in 005.275. Class special programming techniques applied to a specific phase of programming with the phase, e.g., works on functional program design 005.12, works on functional programming with a specific programming language 005.133

\*Use notation 019 from Table 1 as modified at 004.019

†Do not use notation 01 from Table 1 for general discussion of logic in programming; see Manual at 005.101

- .112 †\*Modular programming
- .113 †\*Structured programming
- .114 †\*Functional programming
- .115 †\*Logic programming
- .116 †\*Constraint programming
- .117 †\*Object-oriented programming
- .118 †\*Visual programming
- .12 †\*Software systems analysis and design
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Class here analysis of a user's problem preparatory to developing a software system to solve it
- .120 28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
- Including use of flow-charting and flow charts as aids in program design
- See also 005.15028 for preparation of flow charts as program documentation*
- .13 †\*Programming languages
- Including application generators, nonprocedural (declarative) languages, text editors specially designed to assist in coding programs
- Class here coding of programs
- Class comprehensive works on text editors in 005.52
- See also 005.434 for job control languages*
- [.130 151] Mathematical principles
- Do not use; class in 005.131
- .131 †\*Symbolic logic (Mathematical logic)
- Class here mathematical principles of programming languages, e.g., automata, formal languages, grammars, recursive functions applied to programming languages
- Class mathematical principles of programming in 005.10151. Class the mathematical principles of programming languages applied to the development of a programming language translator with the translator in 005.45, plus notation 015113 from Table 1, e.g., theory of formal languages applied to development of compilers 005.453015113
- See also 005.1 for general works about logic in programming*

\*Use notation 019 from Table 1 as modified at 004.019

†Do not use notation 01 from Table 1 for general discussion of logic in programming; see Manual at 005.101

- .133            Specific programming languages
- Class here comprehensive works on programming with specific programming languages
- Arrange alphabetically by name of programming language, e.g., C++
- Class specific microprogramming languages in 005.18
- For specific machine and assembly languages, see 005.2*
- See also 005.45 for programming language translators for specific programming languages*
- .136            †\*Machine and assembly languages
- Class specific machine and assembly languages in 005.2
- For assemblers, see 005.456*
- .14             †\*Verification, testing, measurement, debugging
- Including software metrics
- Class a specific application of software metrics with the application, plus notation 0285514 from Table 1, e.g., software metrics applied to parallel programming 005.2750285514
- .15             †\*Preparation of program documentation
- Including development of online help
- Class here preparation of software documentation
- See also 005.12 for preparation of program design specifications and other technical documentation as an aid in program design; also 005.3 for program documentation itself; also 808.066005 for technical writing in preparation of program documentation*
- See Manual at 005.15 vs. 808.066005*
- .16             †\*Program maintenance
- Class here software maintenance
- .18             †\*Microprogramming and microprograms
- Microprogramming means writing programs in which each instruction specifies a minute operation of the computer
- Including firmware viewed as microprograms, firmware development, microassembly languages, microcode
- Class firmware viewed as hardware in 004; class programming for personal computers in 005.26; class programs for personal computers in 005.36

\*Use notation 019 from Table 1 as modified at 004.019

†Do not use notation 01 from Table 1 for general discussion of logic in programming; see Manual at 005.101

- .2 Programming for specific types of computers, for specific operating systems, for specific user interfaces**  
 Class here specific machine and assembly languages  
*See Manual at 005.1 vs. 005.3; also at 005.1–005.2 vs. 005.42*
- .21 †\*Programming for supercomputers**
- .22 †\*Programming for mainframe computers**  
 Add to base number 005.22 the numbers following 005.26 in 005.262–005.269, e.g., programming for the IBM System/390® 005.225
- .24 †\*Programming for midrange computers**  
 Class here programming for minicomputers, server class computers  
 Add to base number 005.24 the numbers following 005.26 in 005.262–005.269, e.g., programming for the Dell PowerEdge®1955 005.245  
 Class comprehensive works on programming for midrange and personal computers in 005.26
- .25 †\*Programming for handheld computing devices**  
 Class here programming for specific types of handheld computing devices  
 Add to base number 005.25 the numbers following 005.26 in 005.262–005.269, e.g., programming for Palm OS® 005.258
- .26 †\*Programming for personal computers**  
 Class here programming for specific types of personal computers; comprehensive works on programming for midrange and personal computers  
*For programming for midrange computers, see 005.24; for programming for handheld computing devices, see 005.25*
- .262 Programming in specific programming languages**  
 Arrange alphabetically by name of programming language, e.g., C++
- .265 Programming for specific computers**  
 Class here programming for specific processors, for computer systems based on specific computers  
 Arrange alphabetically by name of computer, e.g., Apple iMac®  
*See Manual at 005.268 vs. 005.265, 005.269*

\*Use notation 019 from Table 1 as modified at 004.019

†Do not use notation 01 from Table 1 for general discussion of logic in programming; see Manual at 005.101

- .268            Programming for specific operating systems
- Writing programs that run on specific operating systems
- Arrange alphabetically by name of operating system, e.g., Linux®
- Class programming for a specific operating system where the operating system is the only operating system that runs on a specific computer in 005.265
- See Manual at 005.268 vs. 005.265, 005.269*
- .269            Programming for specific user interfaces
- Writing programs that run on specific user interfaces other than the native interface of the operating system
- Arrange alphabetically by name of user interface, e.g., Microsoft Windows®
- Class programming for the native interface of an operating system (interface bound inseparably with the operating system) in 005.268
- See Manual at 005.268 vs. 005.265, 005.269; also at 005.269 and 005.284, 005.3684, 005.384*
- .27            †\*Programming for processing modes
- .273           †\*Programming for real-time computer systems
- Add to base number 005.273 the numbers following 005.26 in 005.262–005.269, e.g., programming in Ada for real-time computers 005.2732
- .275           †\*Programming for multiprocessor computers
- Class here concurrent, parallel programming
- Add to base number 005.275 the numbers following 005.26 in 005.262–005.269, e.g., programming in Java 005.2752
- .276           †\*Programming for distributed computing
- Add to base number 005.276 the numbers following 005.26 in 005.262–005.269, e.g., programming for Unix® client-server computing 005.2768
- See also 006.76 for Internet programming, web programming*
- .28            Programming for specific operating systems and for specific user interfaces
- Not limited by type of computer
- .282           Programming for specific operating systems
- Arrange alphabetically by name of operating system, e.g., Unix®

\*Use notation 019 from Table 1 as modified at 004.019

†Do not use notation 01 from Table 1 for general discussion of logic in programming; see Manual at 005.101

- .284            **Programming for specific user interfaces**  
                   Writing programs that run on specific user interfaces other than the native interface of the operating system  
                   Arrange alphabetically by name of user interface, e.g., Motif®  
                   Class programming for the native interface of an operating system (interface bound inseparably with the operating system) in 005.282  
                   *See Manual at 005.269 and 005.284, 005.3684, 005.384*

- .29            †\*Programming for hybrid and analog computers

**.3            \*Programs**

Software, firmware, middleware

Class here application programs, collections of programs, software documentation, software packages, comprehensive works on software and firmware, on applications and systems programs

Class programs for a specific application in computer science with the application in 005–006, e.g., programs for computer graphics 006.68; class collections of programs of a specific kind with the kind, e.g., collections of general purpose application software 005.5; class online help in specific kinds of programs with the kind, e.g., online help in programs for personal computers 005.36

*For firmware, see 005.18; for systems programs, see 005.43*

*See also 005.15 for preparation of program documentation*

*See Manual at 005.3; also at 005.1 vs. 005.3; also at 005.3, 005.5 vs. 005.43–005.45*

**SUMMARY**

- |         |   |
|---------|---|
| 005.302 | <b>Miscellany</b>   |
| .31     | <b>Programs for supercomputers</b>  |
| .32     | <b>Programs for mainframe computers</b>   |
| .34     | <b>Programs for midrange computers</b>  |
| .36     | <b>Programs for personal computers</b>  |
| .37     | <b>Programs for specific processing modes</b>                                   |
| .38     | <b>Programs for specific operating systems and for specific user interfaces</b> |
| .39     | <b>Programs for hybrid and analog computers</b>                                 |
| .302 18 | <b>Standards</b>  |

*See also 005.10218 for standards for programming; also 005.150218 for standards for preparation of software documentation*

\*Use notation 019 from Table 1 as modified at 004.019

†Do not use notation 01 from Table 1 for general discussion of logic in programming; see Manual at 005.101

.302 87                    Testing and measurement  
                                  Do not use for software metrics, quality assurance, reliability,  
                                  testing, verification; class in 005.14  
                                  Class here usability testing, software evaluation as an aid in  
                                  selection

[.302 88]                    Maintenance and repair  
                                  Do not use; class in 005.16

.302 9                      Commercial miscellany  
                                  *See Manual at 011.39 vs. 005.3029, 016.0053, 025.0422*

>                            005.31–005.36 Programs for digital computers

                                 Class comprehensive works in 005.3

.31                        \*Programs for supercomputers

.32                        \*Programs for mainframe computers

                                 Add to base number 005.32 the numbers following 005.36 in  
                                  005.362–005.368, e.g., programs for IBM System/390® 005.325

.34                        \*Programs for midrange computers

                                 Class here programs for minicomputers, server class computers

                                 Add to base number 005.34 the numbers following 005.36 in  
                                  005.362–005.368, e.g., programs in Java® 005.342

                                 Class comprehensive works on programs for midrange and personal  
                                  computers in 005.36

.36                        \*Programs for personal computers

                                 Including programs for handheld computing devices

                                 Class here programs for specific types of personal computers;  
                                  comprehensive works on programs for midrange and personal computers

*For programs for midrange computers, see 005.34*

.362                      Programs in specific programming languages

                                 Limited to programs and works about programs where the material being  
                                  classified emphasizes the programming language

                                 Arrange alphabetically by name of programming language, e.g., BASIC

\*Use notation 019 from Table 1 as modified at 004.019

- .365            Programs for specific computers  
                   Class here programs for specific processors, programs for computer systems based on specific computers  
                   Arrange alphabetically by name of computer or processor, e.g., Apple iMac<sup>®</sup>  
                   *See Manual at 005.3682 vs. 005.365, 005.3684*
- .368            Programs for specific operating systems and for specific user interfaces
- .368 2           Programs for specific operating systems  
                   Arrange alphabetically by name of operating system, e.g., MS-DOS<sup>®</sup>  
                   Class programs for a specific operating system where the operating system is the only operating system that runs on a specific computer in 005.365  
                   *See Manual at 005.3682 vs. 005.365, 005.3684*
- .368 4           Programs for specific user interfaces  
                   Programs that run on specific user interfaces other than the native interface of the operating system  
                   Arrange alphabetically by name of user interface, e.g., Microsoft Windows<sup>®</sup> programs  
                   Class programs that run on the native interface of an operating system (interface bound inseparably with the operating system) in 005.3682  
                   *See Manual at 005.269 and 005.284, 005.3684, 005.384; also at 005.3682 vs. 005.365, 005.3684*
- .37            Programs for specific processing modes
- .373            \*Programs for real-time computer systems
- .375            \*Programs for multiprocessor computers
- .376            \*Programs for distributed computing  
                   Class here client-server applications, web server programs, groupware  
                   Add to base number 005.376 the numbers following 005.36 in 005.362–005.368, e.g., programs in Java<sup>®</sup> 005.3762
- .38            Programs for specific operating systems and for specific user interfaces  
                   Not limited by type of computer
- .382            Programs for specific operating systems  
                   Arrange alphabetically by name of operating system, e.g., Unix<sup>®</sup>

\*Use notation 019 from Table 1 as modified at 004.019

- .384            Programs for specific user interfaces
- Programs that run on specific user interfaces other than the native interface of the operating system
- Arrange alphabetically by name of user interface, e.g., Motif<sup>®</sup>
- Class programs that run on the native interface of an operating system (interface bound inseparably with the operating system) in 005.382
- See Manual at 005.269 and 005.284, 005.3684, 005.384*

- .39            \*Programs for hybrid and analog computers
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

- .4            \*Systems programming and programs
- Class programming and programs for interfacing and data communications in 005.71; class programming and programs for internal management of data files and databases in 005.74
- See Manual at 005.1 vs. 005.3*

### SUMMARY

- |        |  |
|--------|--|
| 005.42 | <b>Systems programming</b>                               |
| .43    | <b>Systems programs</b>                                  |
| .44    | <b>Operating systems for specific types of computers</b> |
| .45    | <b>Programming language translators</b>                  |
- .42            \*Systems programming
- Writing systems programs
- Class here programming to produce operating systems
- Class programming for specific aspects of operating systems with the aspect, e.g., programming for communications 005.711; class programming for other specific kinds of systems programs with the kind, e.g., programming for compilers 005.453
- See also 005.43 for systems programming (system administration using expertise in systems software to keep a computer system functioning effectively)*
- See Manual at 005.1–005.2 vs. 005.42*
- .422           Systems programming for specific types of computers, for specific operating systems, for specific user interfaces
- Add to base number 005.422 the numbers following 005.2 in 005.21–005.29, e.g., systems programming for Unix-based systems 005.42282
- .428           \*Programming of user interfaces
- Add to base number 005.428 the numbers following 005.2 in 005.21–005.29, e.g., programming of user interfaces for Unix-based systems 005.42882

\*Use notation 019 from Table 1 as modified at 004.019

## .43 \*Systems programs

Class here operating systems, system administration (using expertise in systems programs to keep computer systems functioning efficiently), systems software, utility programs

Class programming for operating systems in 005.42; class text editors in 005.52. Class a specific application of systems programs with the application, e.g., programming language translators 005.45, computer interfacing and device drivers 005.71, computer security 005.8

*For operating systems for specific types of computers, see 005.44*

*See Manual at 005.3, 005.5 vs. 005.43–005.45*

## .432 Specific operating systems

Not limited by type of computer

Arrange alphabetically by name of operating system, e.g., Unix<sup>®</sup>

## .434 \*Process management

Including process management programming, job control languages

Class here comprehensive works on multiprogramming (multitasking)

Add to base number 005.434 the numbers following 005.3 in 005.31–005.39, e.g., multitasking for Apple iMac<sup>®</sup> 005.43465

Class job control languages for a specific type of computer with the type, e.g., job control languages for mainframe computers 005.4342

*For hardware aspects of multiprogramming, see 004.3*

## .435 \*Memory management programs

Including memory management programming, comprehensive works on virtual memory

Add to base number 005.435 the numbers following 005.3 in 005.31–005.39, e.g., memory managers for Apple iMac<sup>®</sup> 005.43565

*For hardware aspects of virtual memory, see 004.5*

## .436 \*File system management programs

Including file system management programming

Add to base number 005.436 the numbers following 005.3 in 005.31–005.39, e.g., file system management programs for Apple iMac<sup>®</sup> 005.43665

*For data backup and recovery, see 005.86*

*See Manual at 005.74 vs. 005.436*

\*Use notation 019 from Table 1 as modified at 004.019

- .437      **\*User interfaces**  
           Class here graphical user interfaces, windowing programs  
           Add to base number 005.437 the numbers following 005.3 in 005.31–005.39, e.g., KDE<sup>®</sup> 005.4376; however, for specific user interfaces not limited by type of computer, see 005.438
- .438      **Specific user interfaces**  
           Not limited by type of computer  
           Arrange alphabetically by name of user interface, e.g., Motif<sup>®</sup>
- .44        **Operating systems for specific types of computers**  
           Add to base number 005.44 the numbers following 005.3 in 005.31–005.39, e.g., operating systems for web servers 005.4476  
           Class specific systems functions of operating systems for specific types of computers in 005.434–005.436  
           *See Manual at 005.3, 005.5 vs. 005.43–005.45*
- .45        **\*Programming language translators**  
           Class here code generators, macro processors, parsers, translators for specific programming languages  
           Class translators for microprogramming languages in 005.18  
           *See also 418.02028553 for programs to translate natural languages into other natural languages*  
           *See Manual at 005.3, 005.5 vs. 005.43–005.45*
- .452      **\*Interpreters**
- .453      **\*Compilers**
- .456      **\*Assemblers**
- .5        \*General purpose application programs**  
           Programs and integrated software packages that can be used in a wide range of applications  
           Class here integrated programs, specific programs with interdisciplinary applications  
           Arrange alphabetically by name of program or software package, e.g., OpenOffice.org<sup>®</sup>  
           Class database software in 005.74  
           *See Manual at 005.1 vs. 005.3; also at 005.3, 005.5 vs. 005.43–005.45*

\*Use notation 019 from Table 1 as modified at 004.019

- .52      **\*Word processing**  
           Including grammar checkers, spelling checkers, style checkers  
           Class here desktop publishing software, text editors, text processing  
           Arrange alphabetically by name of program or software package, e.g., Corel  
           WordPerfect®  
           Class works on desktop publishing that emphasize typography in 686.22
- .54      **\*Electronic spreadsheets**  
           Arrange alphabetically by name of program or software package, e.g.,  
           Microsoft Excel®
- .55      **\*Statistical programs**  
           Class here statistical software  
           Arrange alphabetically by name of program or software package, e.g.,  
           SAS/STAT®
- .57      **\*Personal information management programs**  
           Software that typically includes an address book, a calendar or diary,  
           electronic mail software, a meeting scheduler, and a time or task manager  
           Arrange alphabetically by name of program or software package, e.g.,  
           Microsoft Outlook®
- .58      **\*Presentation software**  
           Class here business presentation software  
           Arrange alphabetically by name of program or software package, e.g.,  
           Microsoft PowerPoint®
- .7       **\*Data in computer systems**  
           *For data security, see 005.8*  
           *See Manual at 005.1 vs. 005.3*

### SUMMARY

- 005.71      **Data communications**  
 .72        **Data preparation and representation**  
 .73        **Data structures**  
 .74        **Data files and databases**  
 .75        **Specific types of data files and databases**

- .71        **Data communications**  
           Class here computer communications; device drivers, interfacing,  
           interprocess communications  
           *See also 004.6 for hardware for interfacing and data communications;*  
           *also 005.437 for user interfaces*  
           *See Manual at 004.6 vs. 005.71*

\*Use notation 019 from Table 1 as modified at 004.019

- .711      \*Programming  
                   *For programming for specific types of computers, see 005.712*
- .712      Programming for specific types of computers, for specific operating systems, for specific user interfaces  
                   Add to base number 005.712 the numbers following 005.2 in 005.21–005.29, e.g., programming personal computers for data communications 005.7126
- .713      \*Programs  
                   Add to base number 005.713 the numbers following 005.3 in 005.31–005.39, e.g., communications programs for personal computers 005.7136
- .717      \*Error-correcting codes [*formerly* 005.72]  
                   *See also 005.72 for data validation*
- .72        \*Data preparation and representation  
                   Class here file formats [*formerly* 005.741]; conversion to machine-readable form, data entry and validation; document formats, record formats  
                   Class computer input devices in 004.76; class data validation in file processing in 005.74  
                   *For data representation through data structures, see 005.73; for data representation through file organization, see 005.741; for data encryption and ciphers, see 005.82; for markup languages, see 006.74*  
                   *See also 006.7 for information architecture, web page design, web site development*  
                   Error-correcting codes relocated to 005.717
- .722      \*Character sets  
                   Including ASCII, Unicode
- .726      \*Programs  
                   Including portable document software
- .73        \*Data structures

.74      \*Data files and databases

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Including data validation in file processing

Class here data file processing, data file and database management

Class comprehensive works on data validation in 005.72; class interdisciplinary works on computer and information science aspects of databases in 025.04. Class data files and databases with regard to their subject content with the subject, e.g., encyclopedic databases 030, nonbibliographic medical databases 610

*For specific types of data files and databases, see 005.75*

*See Manual at 005.74 vs. 005.436; also at 025.04, 025.06 vs. 005.74*

Data mining relocated to 006.312

.740 151 13

Mathematical logic

Class here logic databases, deductive databases [*both formerly 006.33*]

.740 285

Computer applications

.740 285 467 8

Internet

Class here comprehensive works on web databases

*For web databases as information storage and retrieval systems, see 025.0422*

.740 6

Organizations and management

.740 68

Management

Do not use notation 068 from Table 1 for file management or database management (computer programs that enable operation of files or databases); class in 005.74

Class here management of organizations concerned with databases, e.g., firms that create them

.741

\*File organization and access methods

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Including hashing, merging, search algorithms, search trees, sort algorithms, sorting

Data file formats relocated to 005.72

.742

\*Data dictionaries and directories

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

\*Use notation 019 from Table 1 as modified at 004.019

- .743        \*Database design and architecture  
                  Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                  Class here data modeling, data models
- .745        \*Data warehousing  
                  Class here transaction processing systems
- .746        \*Data compression  
                  Variant names: data compaction, file compression  
                  *For the compression of sound files, see 006.5; for the compression of graphic files, see 006.6*
- .75         Specific types of data files and databases  
                  Including centralized files and databases; flat-file databases
- .753        \*Temporal, spatial, constraint databases
- 
- >            005.754–005.757 Databases based on specific data models  
                  Class distributed versions of databases in 005.758; class comprehensive works on databases in 005.74; class comprehensive works on data models in 005.743
- .754        \*Network databases  
                  Database management systems that conform to the standards developed by CODASYL (Conference on Data Systems Languages)
- .755        \*Hierarchical databases
- .756        \*Relational databases  
                  Class here object-relational databases [*formerly* 005.757]
- .756 5       Specific relational database management systems  
                  Arrange alphabetically by name of database management system, e.g., Oracle<sup>®</sup>
- .757        \*Object-oriented databases  
                  Object-relational databases relocated to 005.756
- .757 5       Specific object-oriented database management systems  
                  Arrange alphabetically by name of database management system, e.g., Objectivity/DB<sup>®</sup>
- .758        \*Distributed data files and databases  
                  Class here data files and databases used in client/server computing  
                  *See also 004.36 for distributed processing*

\*Use notation 019 from Table I as modified at 004.019

- .758 5            Specific distributed database management systems  
                   Arrange alphabetically by name of database management system, e.g.,  
                   IBM DB2<sup>®</sup>
- .759            \*Full-text database management systems  
                   Database management systems designed to manage records consisting  
                   largely or exclusively of free-form text  
                   Including hypertext databases, specific full-text database management  
                   systems
- .8            \*Data security**  
                   Including digital rights management, electronic signatures  
                   Class here access control, computer network security, firewalls;  
                   interdisciplinary works on computer security  
                   Class electronic signatures involving encryption in 005.82  
                   *For a specific aspect of computer security, see the aspect, e.g., management  
                   of computer security 658.478*
- .82            \*Data encryption  
                   Including digital signatures (electronic signatures involving cryptography)  
                   Class here ciphers  
                   Class comprehensive works on electronic signatures in 005.8; class  
                   interdisciplinary works on cryptography in 652.8
- .84            \*Malware  
                   Including computer viruses, spyware, Trojan horses, worms
- .86            \*Data backup and recovery  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for data backup and recovery together, for  
                   data backup alone

## 006            \*Special computer methods

Not otherwise provided for

Class here programs, programming, selection and use of hardware in relation to  
 special computer methods

*See also 003.3 for computer modeling and simulation; also notation 0113 from  
 Table 1 for computer modeling and simulation in a specific subject; also 004.6  
 for computer communications; also 005.74 for file and database management;  
 also 005.8 for data security; also 629.89 for special methods in automatic  
 control engineering*

*See Manual at 004-006 vs. 621.39; also at 005.1 vs. 005.3; also at 510,  
 T1-0151 vs. 004-006, T1-0285*

\*Use notation 019 from Table 1 as modified at 004.019

## SUMMARY

- 006.2      **Special-purpose systems**  
 .3      **Artificial intelligence**  
 .4      **Computer pattern recognition**  
 .5      **Digital audio**  
 .6      **Computer graphics**  
 .7      **Multimedia systems**  
 .8      **Augmented and virtual reality**
- .2      \*Special-purpose systems**  
         Including automatic data collection
- .22      \*Embedded computer systems [*formerly* 004.1]  
         *For a specific aspect of embedded computer systems, see the aspect, e.g., systems analysis and design of embedded computer systems 004.21, software for embedded systems 005.3*
- .24      \*Automatic identification and data capture (AIDC)  
         Including magnetic stripe encoding  
         Class here interdisciplinary works on automatic identification and data capture  
         *For optical character recognition, see 006.424; for speaker recognition, see 006.454; for biometric identification, see 570.15195. For specific applications of automatic identification and data capture, see the application, plus notation 0285624 from Table 1, e.g., inventory control in business 658.7870285624*
- .242      \*Bar coding [*formerly* 006.42]  
         *For use of bar coding in materials management, see 658.7802856242*
- .245      \*Radio frequency identification  
         Class real-time locating systems that use radio frequency identification in 910.2856245
- .246      \*Smart cards
- .3      \*Artificial intelligence**  
         Class here computational intelligence, intelligent agents, multi-agent systems, question-answering systems, comprehensive works on artificial intelligence and cognitive science  
         Class robotics in 629.892  
         *For cognitive science, see 153*  
         *See also 005.115 for logic programming; also 006.4 for pattern recognition not used as a tool of artificial intelligence*  
         *See Manual at 006.3 vs. 153*

\*Use notation 019 from Table 1 as modified at 004.019

- .31        \*Machine learning  
             Including genetic algorithms  
             *For machine learning in knowledge-based systems, see 006.331*
- .312        \*Data mining [*formerly also 005.74*]
- .32        \*Neural nets (Neural networks)  
             Including perceptrons  
             Class here connectionism, neural computers
- .33        \*Knowledge-based systems  
             Class here expert systems  
             Logic databases, deductive databases relocated to 005.74015113
- .331        \*Knowledge acquisition
- .332        \*Knowledge representation  
             Class here knowledge engineering
- .333        \*Deduction, problem solving, reasoning
- [.336–.338]   Programming, programming languages, programs for  
             knowledge-based systems  
             Numbers discontinued; class in 006.33
- .35        \*Natural language processing  
             Class here computational linguistics [*formerly 410.285*]  
             *See Manual at 006.35 vs. 410.285*
- .37        \*Computer vision  
             *See also 006.42 for optical pattern recognition*  
             *See Manual at 006.37 vs. 006.42, 621.367, 621.391, 621.399*
- .4        \*Computer pattern recognition**  
             Class pattern recognition as a tool of artificial intelligence in 006.3
- .42        \*Optical pattern recognition  
             Class here comprehensive works on optical pattern recognition and  
             computer graphics  
             Class optical engineering aspects of optical pattern recognition in 621.367  
             *For perceptrons, see 006.32; for computer graphics, see 006.6*  
             *See also 006.37 for computer vision*  
             *See Manual at 006.37 vs. 006.42, 621.367, 621.391, 621.399*  
             Interdisciplinary works on bar coding relocated to 006.242

\*Use notation 019 from Table 1 as modified at 004.019

- .424        \*Optical character recognition (OCR)
- .425        \*Handwriting recognition
- .45         \*Acoustical pattern recognition
- .454        \*Speech recognition
- Including speaker recognition
- Class here comprehensive works on speech recognition and speech synthesis
- For speech synthesis, see 006.54*
- .5        \*Digital audio**
- Class here computer sound synthesis
- Class digital audio engineering in 621.3893; class computer audio art in 776
- See Manual at 776 vs. 006.5–006.7*
- .54        \*Speech synthesis
- .6        \*Computer graphics**
- Class here image manipulation
- Class multimedia systems, interactive video, comprehensive works on computer graphics and computer sound synthesis in 006.7; class computer graphic art in 776; class use of computers in video production in 777.0285
- See Manual at 776 vs. 006.5–006.7*
- .62        \*Hardware
- Including digitizer tablets, graphics terminals, plotters, scanners
- Class here equipment specifically designed for computer graphics and works treating use of equipment for computer graphics even if the equipment was not specifically designed for that purpose
- Class works that treat equally the use of equipment for graphics and nongraphics tasks in 004
- .66        \*Programming
- For programming for specific types of computers, for specific operating systems, for specific user interfaces, see 006.67*
- .663        \*Programming languages for computer graphics
- .663 3        Specific programming languages
- Arrange alphabetically by name of programming language, e.g., C++
- .67        Programming for specific types of computers, for specific operating systems, for specific user interfaces
- Add to base number 006.67 the numbers following 005.2 in 005.21–005.29, e.g., graphics programming for IBM PC® 006.6765

\*Use notation 019 from Table 1 as modified at 004.019

- .68        **\*Programs**  
           Add to base number 006.68 the numbers following 005.3 in 005.31–005.39,  
           e.g., graphics programs that run on MS-DOS® 006.68682
- .69        **\*Special topics in computer graphics**
- .693       **\*Three-dimensional graphics**  
           Including ray tracing
- .696       **\*Digital video**  
           Including morphing  
           Class here computer animation  
           Class interactive video in 006.7; class digital television in 621.38807;  
           class digital video hardware in 777.3; class digital video effects in 777.9  
           *For a specific product of computer animation techniques, see the  
           product, e.g., animated films 791.437*
- .7        \*Multimedia systems**  
           Including interactive video  
           Class here hypermedia, hypertext; information architecture, web page design,  
           web site development; comprehensive works on computer graphics and digital  
           audio, interactive multimedia  
           Class web databases in 005.7402854678; class hypertext databases in  
           005.759; class multimedia computer art in 776.7; class use of computers in  
           video production in 777.0285; class interdisciplinary works on Internet in  
           004.678; class interdisciplinary works on World Wide Web in 025.042; class  
           interdisciplinary works on web publishing in 070.57973  
           *For digital audio, see 006.5; for computer graphics, see 006.6*  
           *See also 384.35 for interactive videotex*  
           *See Manual at 004.678 vs. 006.7, 025.042, 384.33; also at 776 vs.  
           006.5–006.7*
- .72        **\*Hardware**
- .74        **\*Markup languages**  
           Class here general document markup languages, style sheet languages  
           Arrange alphabetically by name of language, e.g., Cascading Style Sheets  
           (CSS), XML
- .75        **Specific types of multimedia systems**  
           Including wikis
- .752       **\*Blogs**
- .754       **\*Online social networks**  
           Class interdisciplinary works on online social networks in 302.30285

\*Use notation 019 from Table 1 as modified at 004.019

- .76      **\*Programming**  
           Class here Internet programming, web application frameworks, web programming  
           *For programming for specific types of computers, for specific operating systems, for specific user interfaces, see 006.77*
- .77      **Programming for specific types of computers, for specific operating systems, for specific user interfaces**  
           Add to base number 006.77 the numbers following 005.2 in 005.21–005.29, e.g., writing multimedia programs for Linux<sup>®</sup> 006.7768
- .78      **Programs**  
           Including rich Internet applications (RIAs), web services  
           Class here multimedia authoring programs, software; multimedia software  
           Add to base number 006.78 the numbers following 005.3 in 005.31–005.39, e.g., multimedia authoring software that runs on Apple iMac<sup>®</sup> 006.7865  
           Class web servers in 004.36
- .8        **\*Augmented and virtual reality**  
           A combination of computer software and hardware that adds computer-generated information to the visual presentation of a real environment or that gives an illusion of being in an artificial environment or a remote real environment, and gives the user an ability to manipulate objects in that environment. The illusion is created by visual, auditory, and other sensory data provided by the computer system to the user  
           Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

**[007]      [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 16

**[008]      [Never assigned]**

**[009]      [Never assigned]**

**010      Bibliography**

History, identification, description of printed, written, audiovisual, electronic resources

Class catalogs and lists of art works with the subject, plus notation 074 from Table 1, e.g., a catalog of the prints in the Library of Congress 769.074753

*See also 028.1 for reviews*

\*Use notation 019 from Table 1 as modified at 004.019

## SUMMARY

- 010.1–.9**        **Standard subdivisions and special topics of bibliography**  
**011**        **Bibliographies and catalogs**  
**012**        **Bibliographies and catalogs of individuals**  
**014**        **Bibliographies and catalogs of anonymous and pseudonymous works**  
**015**        **Bibliographies and catalogs of works from specific places**  
**016**        **Bibliographies and catalogs of works on specific subjects**  
**017**        **General bibliographies and catalogs of works held in specific collections or offered for sale**

[.28]        Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials  
                  Do not use; class in 010.44

**.4**        **Special topics of bibliography**

.42        Analytical bibliography (Descriptive bibliography)

                 Analysis of the structure of books and their bibliographic description

                 Class here comprehensive works on historical and analytical bibliography

                 Class descriptive cataloging in 025.32

*For historical bibliography, see 002*

*See also 070.5 for book publishing*

.44        Systematic bibliography

                 Preparation and compilation of bibliographies

                 Class systematic bibliography applied to a specific kind of bibliography with the kind, plus notation 028 from Table I, e.g., preparation and compilation of biobibliographies 012.028

**011**        **Bibliographies and catalogs**

                 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

                 Class here general collections of brief bibliographic abstracts; bibliographies and catalogs not provided for elsewhere

                 Class bibliography, bibliographies as a subject in 010; class bibliographies and catalogs of material in a specific form other than books in 011.3; class catalogs as a subject in 025.31; class comprehensive works on collections of abstracts, general collections of abstracts giving substantive information on the subject in 080; class interdisciplinary works on bibliographic catalogs in 025.31

*For bibliographies and catalogs of individuals, of anonymous and pseudonymous works, of works from specific places, of works on specific subjects, of works held in specific collections or offered for sale, see 012–017*

*See Manual at 011–017*

## SUMMARY

- 011.001–.009      Standard subdivisions
- .01–.09      [Bibliographies and catalogs of reference works, free materials, works published in specific historical periods]
- .1      Universal bibliographies and catalogs
- .2      General bibliographies and catalogs of works published in specific languages
- .3      General bibliographies and catalogs of works published in specific forms
- .4      General bibliographies and catalogs of works exhibiting specific bibliographic characteristics other than form
- .5      General bibliographies and catalogs of works issued by specific kinds of publishers
- .6      General bibliographies and catalogs of works for young people and people with disabilities; for specific types of libraries
- .7      General bibliographies and catalogs of works having specific kinds of content
- .8      General bibliographies and catalogs of works by groups of authors
- .001      Philosophy and theory
- .002      Miscellany
- .002 9      Commercial miscellany
- Do not use for auction catalogs; class in 017.3. Do not use for sales catalogs; class in 017.4
- .003–.007      Standard subdivisions
- .008      Groups of people
- Do not use for bibliographies and catalogs of works by groups of authors; class in 011.8
- [.008 3]      Young people
- Do not use; class in 011.62
- .008 7      Gifted people
- Do not use for people with disabilities and illnesses; class in 011.63
- .009      History, geographic treatment, biography
- .009 01–.009 05      Historical periods
- Do not use for bibliographies and catalogs of works published in specific historical periods; class in 011.09
- .009 1–.009 9      Geographic treatment and biography
- Do not use for bibliographies and catalogs of works from specific places; class in 015
- .02      \*Bibliographies and catalogs of reference works
- For bibliographies and catalogs of general encyclopedic works, see 016.03; for bibliographies and catalogs of general collected biographies, see 016.92*

\*Do not use notation 091–099 from Table 1 for bibliographies and catalogs of works from specific places; class in 015

- .03      **\*Bibliographies and catalogs of free materials**  
             Class bibliographies and catalogs of free reference works in 011.02
- .09      **General bibliographies and catalogs of works published in specific historical periods**  
             Add to base number 011.09 the numbers following —090 in notation 0903–0905 from Table 1, e.g., 16th century publications 011.0931  
             Class bibliographies and catalogs of reference works published in specific historical periods in 011.02; class bibliographies and catalogs of free materials published in specific historical periods in 011.03; class bibliographies and catalogs of works from specific places in 015  
             *For bibliographies and catalogs of incunabula, see 011.42*

>      **011.1–011.8 General bibliographies and catalogs**

Lists of works not held in a specific collection or group of collections; not offered for sale by specific organizations or at auction; not restricted to specific subjects, to individuals, to anonymous or pseudonymous works, or to specific places of publication

Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 011.1–011.8 in the number coming last, e.g., Russian-language newspapers on microfilm 011.36 (*not* 011.29171 or 011.35)

Class comprehensive general bibliographies and catalogs in 011

*For comprehensive bibliographies and catalogs of reference works, see 011.02; for comprehensive bibliographies and catalogs of free material, see 011.03; for comprehensive bibliographies and catalogs of works published in specific periods, see 011.09*

- .1      **\*Universal bibliographies and catalogs**
- .2      **\*General bibliographies and catalogs of works published in specific languages**  
             Add to base number 011.2 notation 2–9 from Table 6, e.g., general bibliographies of Russian-language works 011.29171
- .3      **General bibliographies and catalogs of works published in specific forms**  
             Class general bibliographies and catalogs of books, of works in written or printed form in 011; class bibliographies and catalogs of music scores in 016.78026; class bibliographies and catalogs of cartographic materials in 016.912
- [.301–.309]      Standard subdivisions  
                         Do not use; class in 011.001–011.009
- .31      **\*Manuscripts**

\*Do not use notation 091–099 from Table 1 for bibliographies and catalogs of works from specific places; class in 015

- .32 \*Paperbacks
- .33 \*Pamphlets
- .34 \*Serial publications  
     Class here general indexes to serial publications  
     *For newspapers, see 011.35*  
     *See also 011.48 for works in series*
- .35 \*Newspapers
- .36 \*Microforms  
     Microreproductions of written and printed media
- .37 \*Audiovisual and visual media  
     Standard subdivisions are added for audiovisual and visual media together,  
     for audiovisual media alone  
     Including filmstrips, slides  
     Class microforms in 011.36  
     *For sound recordings, see 011.38*
- .372 \*Motion pictures  
     Class comprehensive works on motion pictures and videorecordings in  
     011.37  
     *For bibliographies and catalogs of dramatic and entertainment  
     motion pictures, see 016.79143*
- .373 \*Video recordings  
     Class here videodiscs, videotapes  
     Class bibliographies and catalogs of dramatic and entertainment video  
     recordings in 016.79145
- .376 \*Pictures and related illustrations  
     Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .38 \*Sound recordings  
     Class here cassettes, compact discs  
     Class sound films in 011.37  
     *For sound recordings of music, see 016.780266*
- .384 \*Audiobooks (Talking books)  
     Class here comprehensive works on audiobooks and braille publications  
     *For braille publications, see 011.63*

\*Do not use notation 091–099 from Table 1 for bibliographies and catalogs of works from specific places; class in 015

- .39      \*Electronic resources  
           Including CD-ROMs, electronic books  
           Class here electronic publications  
           Class bibliographies and catalogs of computer programs and software in 016.0053  
           *For bibliographies and catalogs of web sites, see 025.0422*  
           *See Manual at 011.39 vs. 005.3029, 016.0053, 025.0422*
- .4        **\*General bibliographies and catalogs of works exhibiting specific bibliographic characteristics other than form**  
           *See also 011.3 for works published in specific forms*
- .42       \*Incunabula
- .44       \*Rare books  
           *For incunabula, see 011.42*
- .47       \*Reprints
- .48       \*Works in series  
           *See also 011.34 for serial publications*
- .5        **\*General bibliographies and catalogs of works issued by specific kinds of publishers**  
           Class general bibliographies and catalogs of specific publishers in 015
- .52       \*Publications of international organizations
- .53       \*Government publications
- .532      \*Government publications issued by legislative bodies and their committees  
           Standard subdivisions are added for legislative bodies, their committees, or both
- .534      \*Government publications issued by executive agencies
- .54       \*Publications of university and college presses  
           Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
           *See also 011.75 for theses and dissertations*
- .55       \*Publications of private presses  
           Presses printing in limited quantities or for limited distribution
- .56       \*Underground publications (Clandestine publications)
- .6        **\*General bibliographies and catalogs of works for young people and people with disabilities; for specific types of libraries**

\*Do not use notation 091–099 from Table 1 for bibliographies and catalogs of works from specific places; class in 015

- .62        \*Works for young people  
             Class here works for children
- .624       \*Works for specific sexes
- .624 1     \*Works for young males  
             Including young men twelve to twenty
- .624 2     \*Works for young females  
             Including young women twelve to twenty
- .625       \*Works for young people twelve to twenty  
             Class works for males twelve to twenty in 011.6241; class works for  
             females twelve to twenty in 011.6242
- .63        \*Works for people with disabilities and illnesses  
             Including braille, large-print publications  
             Class here works for people with physical disabilities  
             Class audiobooks for people with physical disabilities, comprehensive works  
             on audiobooks and braille publications in 011.384
- .67        \*Works for specific types of libraries  
             Including bibliographies and catalogs of books for public libraries
- .7         **\*General bibliographies and catalogs of works having specific kinds of  
             content**  
             Including directories, textbooks, translations  
             *For reference works, see 011.02; for general encyclopedic works, see 016.03*
- .73        \*Best books  
             Class best books for young people and people with disabilities; for specific  
             types of libraries in 011.6
- .75        \*Theses and dissertations  
             Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

\*Do not use notation 091–099 from Table 1 for bibliographies and catalogs of works from specific places; class in 015

**.8 General bibliographies and catalogs of works by groups of authors**

Do not use for material emphasizing special interests of groups of people, e.g., bibliographies of works on women emphasizing the status of women are classed in 016.30542 (*not* 011.82), catalogs of works by clergy emphasizing religion are classed in 016.2 (*not* 011.882)

Class here general bibliographies and catalogs of works by minorities

Add to base number 011.8 the numbers following —08 in notation 081–089 from Table 1, e.g., bibliographies of works by women 011.82, catalog of works by clergy 011.882

*For bibliographies and catalogs of individuals, see 012*

> **012–017 Bibliographies and catalogs of individuals, of anonymous and pseudonymous works, of works from specific places, of works on specific subjects, of works held in specific collections or offered for sale**

Standard subdivisions are added for bibliographies, catalogs, or both

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., pseudonymous scientific works published in France 016.5 (*not* 014 or 015.44):

Bibliographies and catalogs of works on specific subjects	016
Bibliographies and catalogs of individuals	012
Bibliographies and catalogs of anonymous and pseudonymous works	014
Bibliographies and catalogs of works from specific places	015
General bibliographies and catalogs of works held in specific collections or offered for sale	017

Class bibliography, bibliographies as a subject in 010; class general bibliographies and catalogs in 011; class catalogs as a subject, interdisciplinary works on bibliographic catalogs in 025.31

*See Manual at 011–017*

**012 Bibliographies and catalogs of individuals**

Works by or about people not clearly associated with a specific subject

Class here biobibliographies

*For biobibliographies of people associated with a specific subject, see the biography of the subject, e.g., biobibliographies of psychologists 150.92*

**[013] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 21

## 014 Bibliographies and catalogs of anonymous and pseudonymous works

Add to base number 014 the numbers following 03 in 031–039 (but not notation 02 for books of miscellaneous facts), e.g., bibliographies of anonymous and pseudonymous works in Russian 014.71

## 015 Bibliographies and catalogs of works from specific places

Works issued in specific regions, continents, countries, localities, or by specific publishers

Class here bibliographies and catalogs of authors resident in specific regions, continents, countries, localities

Add to base number 015 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., works issued in China 015.51; then add 0\* and to the result add the numbers following 011 in 011.1–011.7, e.g., catalogs of manuscripts from China 015.51031, catalogs of manuscripts from China held in German libraries 015.510310943

Class bibliographies and catalogs of works of specific kinds of people resident in specific places in 011.8

## 016 Bibliographies and catalogs of works on specific subjects

Class here annotated subject bibliographies with descriptive annotations that do not give substantive information about the subject; indexes

Add to base number 016 notation 001–999, e.g., bibliographies of computer programs and software 016.0053, of general encyclopedic works 016.03, of philosophy 016.1, of novels 016.80883, of general collected biographies 016.92

Add to the various subdivisions of 016 notation 01–09 from Table 1 as required for works listed in the bibliographies and catalogs, but not for the bibliographies and catalogs being classed, e.g., bibliographies of serial publications on philosophy 016.105, but serially published bibliographies on philosophy that include monographs 016.1 (*not* 016.105)

Class bibliographies and catalogs of belles-lettres in more than two languages in 016.8088. Class biobibliographies of people associated with a specific subject with the biography of the subject, e.g., biobibliographies of psychologists 150.92; class bibliographies with abstracts giving substantive information about the subject with the subject, e.g., bibliographies with substantive abstracts about chemistry 540

*See also 011 for general bibliographies and catalogs arranged by subject; also 011.3 for general bibliographies and catalogs of works published in specific forms; also 011.42 for bibliographies and catalogs of incunabula; also 011.44 for bibliographies and catalogs of rare books; also 017 for general bibliographies and catalogs of works held in specific collections or offered for sale and general catalogs of serial publications; also 050 for general indexes of specific serial publications not limited by subject*

*See Manual at 016 vs. 026, T1–07; also at 011.39 vs. 005.3029, 016.0053, 025.0422*

(Option: Class with the specific subject, plus notation 016 from Table 1, e.g., bibliographies of medicine 610.16)

\*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

## 017 **General bibliographies and catalogs of works held in specific collections or offered for sale**

Lists of works held in a specific collection or group of collections, or offered for sale by specific organizations other than publishers or at auction, and not restricted to specific subjects, to individuals, to anonymous and pseudonymous works, or to specific places of publication

Class here catalogs arranged by author, main entry, date, or register number [*formerly* 018], dictionary catalogs [*formerly* 019]; classified, alphabetic catalogs; general catalogs of serial publications and their indexes, union catalogs, catalogs not provided for elsewhere

Add to notation for each term identified by \* the numbers following 011 in 011.1–011.7, e.g., classified sales catalogs of periodicals 017.434

*See also 011 for general bibliographies and catalogs; also 016 for bibliographies and catalogs on specific subjects*

Comprehensive works on catalogs relocated to 025.31

### .1 **\*†Bibliographies and catalogs of nonprivate libraries**

Class here alphabetic subject catalogs of nonprivate libraries [*formerly* 017.5], catalogs arranged by author, main entry, date, or register number of nonprivate libraries [*formerly* 018.1], dictionary catalogs of nonprivate libraries [*formerly* 019.1], classified subject catalogs of nonprivate libraries

### .2 **\*†Bibliographies and catalogs of private and family libraries**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here alphabetic subject catalogs of private and family libraries [*formerly* 017.6], catalogs arranged by author, main entry, date, or register number of private and family libraries [*formerly* 018.2], dictionary catalogs of private and family libraries [*formerly* 019.2], classified subject catalogs of private and family libraries

### .3 **\*†Auction catalogs**

Class here alphabetic subject auction catalogs [*formerly* 017.7], auction catalogs arranged by author, main entry, date, or register number [*formerly* 018.3], dictionary auction catalogs [*formerly* 019.3], classified auction catalogs

### .4 **\*†Sales catalogs**

Class here alphabetic subject sales catalogs [*formerly* 017.8], sales catalogs arranged by author, main entry, date, or register number [*formerly* 018.4], dictionary sales catalogs [*formerly* 019.4], classified sales catalog

*For auction catalogs, see 017.3*

### [.5] **Alphabetic subject catalogs of nonprivate libraries**

Relocated to 017.1

\*Add as instructed under 017

†Do not use notation 091–099 from Table 1 for bibliographies and catalogs of works from specific places; class in 015

[.6] **Alphabetic subject catalogs of private and family libraries**

Relocated to 017.2

[.7] **Alphabetic subject auction catalogs**

Relocated to 017.3

[.8] **Alphabetic subject sales catalogs**

Relocated to 017.4

**[018] Catalogs arranged by author, main entry, date, or register number**

Relocated to 017

[.1] **Catalogs arranged by author, main entry, date, or register number of nonprivate libraries**

Relocated to 017.1

[.2] **Catalogs arranged by author, main entry, date, or register number of private and family libraries**

Relocated to 017.2

[.3] **Auction catalogs arranged by author, main entry, date, or register number**

Relocated to 017.3

[.4] **Sales catalogs arranged by author, main entry, date, or register number**

Relocated to 017.4

**[019] Dictionary catalogs**

Relocated to 017

[.1] **Dictionary catalogs of nonprivate libraries**

Relocated to 017.1

[.2] **Dictionary catalogs of private and family libraries**

Relocated to 017.2

[.3] **Dictionary auction catalogs**

Relocated to 017.3

[.4] **Dictionary sales catalogs**

Relocated to 017.4

## 020 Library and information sciences

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here archival science

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., administration of cataloging in academic libraries 025.3068 (*not* 025.1977 or 027.7):

Reading and use of other information media	028
Operations of libraries, archives, information centers ( <i>except</i> 025.1)	025
Administration of physical plant	022
Personnel management	023
Administration	025.1
Relationships of libraries, archives, information centers	021
Libraries, archives, information centers devoted to specific subjects	026
General libraries, archives, information centers	027

Class information theory in 003.54; class government policy on libraries in 021.8; class government policy on information in 338.926

*For bibliography, see 010*

*See also 651.5 for records management as a managerial service*

### SUMMARY

- |             |   |
|-------------|---|
| 020.1–9     | <b>Standard subdivisions</b>  |
| 021         | <b>Relationships of libraries, archives, information centers</b>  |
| 022         | <b>Administration of physical plant</b>   |
| 023         | <b>Personnel management (Human resource management)</b>   |
| 025         | <b>Operations of libraries, archives, information centers</b>   |
| 026         | <b>Libraries, archives, information centers devoted to specific subjects</b>  |
| 027         | <b>General libraries, archives, information centers</b>   |
| 028         | <b>Reading and use of other information media</b>   |
| [.601]      | International organizations<br>Do not use; class in 020.621   |
| [.603–.609] | National, state, provincial, local organizations<br>Do not use; class in 020.622–020.624  |
| .62         | Permanent organizations   |
| .621        | International organizations<br>Including International Federation of Library Associations and<br>Institutions   |
| .622        | National organizations<br>Add to base number 020.622 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., Indian<br>Library Association 020.62254, American Society for Information<br>Science and Technology 020.62273 |
| .623        | Regional, state, provincial organizations   |

- .623 2           Regional organizations  
                   Add to base number 020.6232 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., New  
                   England Library Association 020.623274
- .623 4           State and provincial organizations  
                   Add to base number 020.6234 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g.,  
                   Ontario Library Association 020.6234713
- .624            Local organizations  
                   Add to base number 020.624 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., New York  
                   Library Club 020.6247471
- [.68]           Management  
                   Do not use; class in 025.1
- [.682]          Plant management  
                   Do not use; class in 022
- [.683]          Personnel management (Human resource management)  
                   Do not use; class in 023

**.9            History, geographic treatment, biography**

Class here comparative librarianship; history, geographic treatment, biography  
 of librarianship

Class history and biography of libraries in 027.009; class geographic treatment  
 of libraries in 027.01–027.09

**021          Relationships of libraries, archives, information centers**

Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

Including role as storage centers

*See also 025.56 for orientation and instructional manuals for users; also 027  
 for comprehensive works on libraries, archives, information centers*

**.2            Relationships with the community**

**.24          Educational role**

*For relationships with other educational institutions, see 021.3*

**.26          Cultural role**

Including sponsorship of community cultural programs

**.28          Informational role**

Including clearinghouse for information on community action programs

**.3            Relationships with other educational institutions**

Including relationships with museums

**.6            Cooperation and networks**

Including centralization of systems

**.64 Cooperation**

Including bibliographic centers

Class cooperation in a specific activity with the activity, e.g., cooperative cataloging 025.35

*For networks, see 021.65*

**.642 Cooperation through union catalogs**

*See also 017–019 for specific union catalogs*

**.65 Networks**

Class here systems, consortia

Class networks, systems, consortia for a specific kind of institution in 026–027. Class networks, systems, consortia for a specific function with the function, e.g., interlibrary loan networks 025.62

*See also 025.0028546 for computer networks in libraries*

**.7 Promotion of libraries, archives, information centers**

Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

Including friends of the library organizations

Class here public relations

Class advertising in 659.1902

**.8 Relationships with government**

Regardless of governmental level

Including library-government aspects of exchanges, gifts, deposits; political aspects

Class here government policy on libraries

Class government policy on information in 338.926

*See also 025.26 for acquisition through exchange, gift, deposit*

**.82 Commissions and governing boards**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

**.83 Financial support**

*See also 025.11 for financial administration*

**022 Administration of physical plant**

Including bookmobiles

Class here library quarters in buildings devoted primarily to other activities, e.g., physical plant of school libraries; maintenance of physical plant

*See also 025.82 for physical security of collections*

**.1 Location and site**

**.3 Buildings**

Class here planning for buildings

*See also 727.8 for library architecture*

**.31 Buildings for specific kinds of institutions**

Add to base number 022.31 the numbers following 027 in 027.1–027.8, e.g., college library buildings 022.317

**.4 Stacks and shelving**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

*See also 025.81 for closed versus open stacks*

**.7 Lighting for library buildings**

Class interdisciplinary works on lighting for library buildings in 621.32278

**.8 Heating, ventilation, air conditioning**

Class interdisciplinary works on heating, ventilation and air conditioning of library buildings in 697

**.9 Equipment, furniture, furnishings**

Class comprehensive works on computers in libraries, archives, information centers in 025.00285

*For stacks and shelving, see 022.4*

*See also 025.56 for signs*

**023 Personnel management (Human resource management)****> 023.2–023.4 Types of positions**

Class here titles and job descriptions for specific types of positions

Class comprehensive works in 023

**.2 Professional positions**

Including librarians, consultants, systems analysts

Class administrative positions in 023.4

**.3 Technician positions**

Including library aides, assistants, clerks, paraprofessionals, technicians

Class administrative positions in 023.4

**.4 Administrative positions****.7 Job description**

Class a job description for a specific type of position with the position in 023.2–023.4

**.8 Management of in-service training**

Class comprehensive works on in-service training in 020.7155; class management of in-service training for specific types of positions in 023.2–023.4

**.9 Elements of personnel management**

Including recruitment, selection, supervision, employer-employee relations, performance evaluation, wage and salary administration; staff manuals, rules, codes

Class elements of personnel management applied to specific types of positions in 023.2–023.4

*For in-service training, see 023.8*

**[024] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 18

**025 Operations of libraries, archives, information centers**

Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

Class here documentation (the systematic collection, organization, storage, retrieval, and dissemination of recorded information)

Class comprehensive works on operations in specific kinds of institutions in 026–027

**SUMMARY**

<b>025.001–.009</b>	<b>Standard subdivisions</b>
<b>.02–.06</b>	<b>[Technical services, information storage and retrieval systems]</b>
<b>.1</b>	<b>Administration</b>
<b>.2</b>	<b>Acquisitions and collection development</b>
<b>.3</b>	<b>Bibliographic analysis and control</b>
<b>.4</b>	<b>Subject analysis and control</b>
<b>.5</b>	<b>Services for users</b>
<b>.6</b>	<b>Circulation services</b>
<b>.7</b>	<b>Physical preparation for storage and use</b>
<b>.8</b>	<b>Maintenance and preservation of collections</b>

**.001–.009** Standard subdivisions

**.02** Technical services

Class here commercial and noncommercial processing centers

Class a specific technical service with the service, e.g., acquisitions 025.2

- .04 Information storage and retrieval systems
- Including recall, precision, relevance
- Class here search and retrieval in information storage and retrieval systems; front-end systems; comprehensive works on online catalogs integrated with information storage and retrieval systems, on automated storage, search, retrieval of information; interdisciplinary works on databases
- Class aspects of information storage for specific types of retrieval systems with the aspect for the type of system, e.g., mark-up languages for web retrieval systems 006.74, record formats for bibliographic retrieval systems 025.316
- For computer science aspects of information storage and retrieval systems, of databases, see 005.74; for information storage and retrieval systems, bibliographies of web sites, digital libraries devoted to specific subjects, see 025.06. For a specific kind of information storage and retrieval system, see the kind, e.g., online catalogs 025.3132*
- See also 658.4038011 for management use of information storage and retrieval systems*
- See Manual at 025.04, 025.06 vs. 005.74*
- .042 World Wide Web
- Class here interdisciplinary works on World Wide Web [*formerly* 004.678]; digital libraries, Internet viewed as an information storage and retrieval system, Internet literacy
- Class interdisciplinary works on Internet in 004.678
- For specific aspects of World Wide Web, see the aspect, e.g., computer science aspects of World Wide Web 004.678*
- See Manual at 004.678 vs. 006.7, 025.042, 384.33*
- .042 2 Web sites
- Class here directories of web sites, portals
- Works on web sites hosting a search engine plus other resources that treat the site comprehensively are classed here, that focus on the search engine in 025.04252
- See Manual at 011.39 vs. 005.3029, 016.0053, 025.0422*
- .042 5 Search and retrieval
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Including recall, precision, relevance
- Class here Internet searching
- .042 52 Search engines
- See also 658.872 for search engine optimization*
- .042 7 Semantic web
- World Wide Web structured for semantic computing

- .06 Information storage and retrieval systems devoted to specific subjects  
 Class here bibliographies of web sites devoted to specific subjects, digital libraries devoted to specific subjects, documentation of specific subjects  
*See Manual at 025.04, 025.06 vs. 005.74*
- [.060 001–.060 009] Standard subdivisions  
 Do not use; class in 025.0401–025.0409
- .060 01–.069 99 Specific subjects  
 Add to base number 025.06 notation 001–999, e.g., MEDLINE 025.0661
- .069 1 Geography and travel  
 Number built according to instructions under 025.06001–025.06999  
 Class geographic information systems (GIS) in 910.285
- .1 Administration**  
 Class administration of a specific function with the function, plus notation 068 from Table 1, e.g., administration of cataloging 025.3068  
*For administration of physical plant, see 022; for personnel management, see 023*
- .11 Finance  
 Including comprehensive works on user fees  
 Class government financial support in 021.83  
*For user fees for a specific service, see the service, plus notation 0681 from Table 1, e.g., fees for automated information search and retrieval 025.040681*
- .12 Duplication services (Reprography)  
 Including library procedures to comply with copyright legislation  
 Class here photocopying (photoduplication) services, printing services  
 Class publishing by libraries, archives, information centers in 070.594; class interdisciplinary works on photocopying in 686.4  
*See also 346.0482 for copyright law; also 686.2 for technology of printing*
- .17 Administration of collections of special materials  
 Class here nonbook materials, comprehensive works on treatment of special materials  
 Add to base number 025.17 the numbers following 025.34 in 025.341–025.349, e.g., administration of a map collection 025.176, comprehensive treatment of serials 025.1732  
*For a specific kind of treatment of special materials, see the kind, e.g., acquisition of and collection development for materials in special forms 025.28*

- .19 Administration of specific types of institutions  
 Add to base number 025.19 the numbers following 02 in 026–027, e.g., administration of secondary school libraries 025.1978223  
 Class administration of a specific function in a specific type of institution with the function, e.g., administration of a map collection in a map library 025.176
- .2 Acquisitions and collection development**  
 Standard subdivisions are added for acquisitions and collection development together, for acquisitions alone
- .21 Collection development  
 Class here collection analysis, evaluation, management; cooperative collection development; selection policy and procedures  
 Class collection development for specific types of material in 025.27–025.29  
*For approval plans, see 025.233*
- .213 Censorship  
 Class here comprehensive works on library policies and practices relating to intellectual freedom  
 Class interdisciplinary works on censorship in 363.31  
*For policies and practices relating to intellectual freedom in a library operation other than collection development, see the operation, e.g., circulation services 025.6*  
*See also 098.1 for prohibited works; also 303.376 for sociological studies of censorship; also 323.44 for intellectual freedom as a civil right; also 342.0853 for law on intellectual freedom; also 344.0531 for laws of censorship*
- .216 Weeding  
 Including selection for transfer to storage
- .218 Collection development in specific types of institutions  
 Add to base number 025.218 the numbers following 02 in 026–027, e.g., collection development in academic libraries 025.21877  
 Class censorship in a specific type of institution in 025.213; class weeding in a specific type of institution in 025.216
- .23 Acquisition through purchase  
 Class acquisition of specific types of material through purchase in 025.27–025.29
- .233 Relations with vendors  
 Including approval plans, blanket orders, vendor selection
- .236 Clerical operations  
 Including claiming

- .26 Acquisition through exchange, gift, deposit
- Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- Including copyright deposits; exchange centers and organizations
- Class acquisition of specific types of material through exchange, gift, deposit in 025.27–025.29

> 025.27–025.29 Acquisition of and collection development for specific types of materials

Class comprehensive works in 025.2

- .27 Acquisition of and collection development for materials on specific subjects
- Add to base number 025.27 notation 001–999, e.g., acquisition of materials in the social sciences 025.273; however, for acquisition of and collection development for materials on area studies, see 025.29
- Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .28 Acquisition of and collection development for materials in special forms
- Add to base number 025.28 the numbers following 025.34 in 025.341–025.349, e.g., acquisition of maps 025.286
- Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Class acquisition of and collection development for materials in special forms on specific subjects in 025.27
- .281 4 Acquisition of and collection development for archival materials
- Number built according to instructions under 025.28
- Class here accessioning, deaccessioning, appraisal, retention
- .29 Acquisition of and collection development for materials from geographic areas
- Class here acquisition of and collection development for foreign publications, materials for area studies
- Add to base number 025.29 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., acquisition of materials from Latin America 025.298
- Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Class acquisition of and collection development for materials on specific subjects from geographic areas in 025.27; class acquisition of and collection development for materials in special forms from geographic areas in 025.28

**.3 Bibliographic analysis and control**

Including cataloging in publication, International Standard Book Numbers (ISBNs)

Class here standards for bibliographic analysis and control; comprehensive works on cataloging and classification, on indexing, on information storage

*For subject analysis and control, see 025.4. For information storage using a specific system, see the system, e.g., information storage through coordinate indexing 025.47*

*See also 025.04 for comprehensive works on information storage and retrieval systems*

**SUMMARY**

- |              |  |
|--------------|--|
| 025.302 85   | <b>Computer applications</b>   |
| .31          | <b>The catalog</b>   |
| .32          | <b>Descriptive cataloging</b>  |
| .34          | <b>Cataloging, classification, indexing of special materials</b>   |
| .35          | <b>Cooperative cataloging, classification, indexing</b>  |
| .39          | <b>Recataloging, reclassification, reindexing</b>  |
| [.302 18]    | Standards  |
|              | Do not use; class in 025.3   |
| .302 85      | Computer applications  |
| .302 855 72  | Data preparation and representation  |
|              | Class machine-readable record formats in 025.316; class data entry, conversion to machine-readable form in 025.317 |
| .302 855 74  | Data files and databases   |
|              | Class here comprehensive works on data files and databases used for cataloging and indexing                        |
|              | <i>For data files and databases used for a specific purpose, see the purpose, e.g., online catalogs 025.3132</i>   |
| .302 855 741 | File organization and access methods   |
|              | Class computer sorting of records in 025.3177  |
| .31          | *The catalog   |
| .313         | *Form  |
|              | Including card catalogs  |
| .313 2       | *Online catalogs   |
|              | Class comprehensive works on online catalogs integrated with information storage and retrieval systems in 025.04   |

\*Do not use notation 0218 from Table 1; class in base number

- .315        \*Structure  
              Including classified, divided, unified catalogs
- .316        \*Machine-readable record formats  
              Class here communication and internal formats for machine-readable cataloging records, for metadata; Machine-Readable Cataloging (MARC); comprehensive works on machine-readable formats for catalog records, on machine-readable formats for catalog and index records  
*For display formats, see 025.313; for input formats, see 025.317. For formats for a specific kind of record, see the kind in 025.32–025.49, plus notation 0285572 from Table 1, e.g., name authority formats 025.32220285572, serials formats 025.34320285572, subject authority formats 025.49000285572*
- .317        \*Conversion and maintenance  
              Including preparing, correcting, updating manual and machine-readable catalog records  
  
              Class retrospective conversion combined with recataloging and reclassification in 025.39
- .317 3       \*Retrospective conversion
- .317 7       \*Filing  
              Including computer sorting of cataloging records  
  
              Class here filing rules
- .32         \*Descriptive cataloging  
              Class here descriptive cataloging codes, e.g., Resource Description and Access  
  
              Class descriptive cataloging of special materials in 025.34; class cooperative descriptive cataloging in 025.35; class recataloging in 025.39
- .322        \*Choice of entry and form of heading  
              Including corporate headings, personal name headings, uniform titles  
  
              Class here author-title indexing
- .322 2       \*Authority files  
              Class here name, title authorities; comprehensive works on authority files  
  
              *For subject authorities, see 025.49*
- .324        \*Bibliographic description  
              Class here codes for bibliographic description
- .34         \*Cataloging, classification, indexing of special materials  
              Class here nonbook materials  
  
              Class comprehensive works on treatment of special materials in 025.17

- .341 \*Manuscripts, archival materials, rarities
- .341 2 \*Manuscripts
- .341 4 \*Archival materials  
Class here arrangement, description, processing  
Class manuscripts in 025.3412
- .341 6 \*Rarities  
Class rare manuscripts in 025.3412; class archival materials in 025.3414
- .342 \*Clippings, broadsides, pamphlets  
Class here contents of vertical files, printed ephemera
- .343 \*Serials, government publications, report literature
- .343 2 \*Serials  
Including CONSER (Cooperative Conversion of Serials) Project, International Serials Data Program (ISDP), International Standard Serial Numbers (ISSNs)
- .343 4 \*Government publications  
Class government serials in 025.3432
- .343 6 \*Report literature  
Class serial report literature in 025.3432; class government reports in 025.3434
- .344 \*Electronic resources  
Class here CD-ROM (compact disc read-only memory), computer software, interactive multimedia, web sites
- .346 \*Maps, atlases, globes  
Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- .347 \*Pictures and materials for projection  
Class here comprehensive works on audiovisual materials  
*For multimedia, see 025.344; for maps, atlases, globes, see 025.346; for sound recordings and music scores, see 025.348; for other special materials, see 025.349*
- .347 1 \*Pictures and prints
- .347 3 \*Motion pictures, slides, video recordings
- .348 \*Sound recordings and music scores

\*Do not use notation 0218 from Table 1; class in base number

- .348 2           \*Sound recordings  
                   Class here cassettes, compact discs  
                   Class sound films and video recordings in 025.3473
- .348 8           \*Music scores
- .349            \*Other special materials  
                   Including large-type publications, realia
- .349 2           \*Publications in raised characters  
                   Including braille
- .349 4           \*Microforms
- .349 6           \*Games, media kits, models, toys  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading  
                   Including flashcards
- .35             \*Cooperative cataloging, classification, indexing  
                   Including cooperative development of name and subject authority files  
                   Class cooperative cataloging, classification, indexing of special materials in  
                   025.34
- .39             \*Recataloging, reclassification, reindexing  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading  
                   Class recataloging, reclassification, reindexing of special materials in 025.34
- [.393]           Recataloging  
                   Number discontinued; class in 025.39
- [.396]           Reclassification  
                   Number discontinued; class in 025.39
- .4             Subject analysis and control**  
                   Class here standards for subject analysis and control
- [.402 18]       Standards  
                   Do not use; class in 025.4
- .402 8           Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials  
                   Abstracting relocated to 025.41
- .41             \*Abstracting [*formerly* 025.4028]  
                   Class here comprehensive works on abstracting and subject indexing  
                   Class composition of abstracts in 808.062  
                   *For subject indexing, see 025.47*

\*Do not use notation 0218 from Table 1; class in base number

- .410 285                    Computer applications
- .410 285 635                    Natural language processing  
     Class here automatic abstracting, automatic text  
     summarization
- .42                    \*Classification and shelflisting  
     Standard subdivisions are added for classification and shelflisting together,  
     for classification alone  
     Class use of classification for search and navigation in information storage  
     and retrieval systems in 025.04; class classification of special materials in  
     025.34; class cooperative classification in 025.35; class reclassification in  
     025.39  
     *For general classification systems, see 025.43; for classification of  
     specific subjects, see 025.46*
- .428                    \*Shelflisting  
     *See also 025.3 for International Standard Book Numbers (ISBNs)*
- .43                    \*General classification systems  
     Class parts of general classification systems applied to a specific subject  
     with the subject in 025.46, e.g., Library of Congress Classification Class L  
     Education 025.4637
- .431                    \*Dewey Decimal Classification
- .432                    \*Universal Decimal Classification
- .433                    \*Library of Congress Classification
- .434                    \*Bliss Bibliographic Classification
- .435                    \*Colon Classification
- .46                    Classification of specific subjects
- [.460 001–.460 009]                    Standard subdivisions  
     Do not use; class in 025.4201–025.4209
- .460 01–.469 99                    \*Specific subjects  
     Add to base number 025.46 notation 001–999, e.g., classification  
     of education 025.4637

\*Do not use notation 0218 from Table 1; class in base number

- .47      \*Subject indexing [*formerly* 025.48] and cataloging
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Class here precoordinate indexing [*formerly* 025.482], coordinate and postcoordinate indexing [*both formerly* 025.484]; general controlled subject vocabularies (subject authority files, subject headings, thesauri) [*all formerly* 025.49]; comprehensive works on subject indexing and cataloging using natural language and controlled vocabulary
- Class subject cataloging and indexing of special materials in 025.34; class cooperative subject cataloging and indexing in 025.35; class recataloging and reindexing in 025.39. Class parts of general controlled subject vocabularies (subject authority files, subject headings, thesauri) applied to a specific subject with the subject, e.g., Library of Congress Subject Headings for law 025.4934
- For classification, see 025.42; for subject cataloging and indexing based on natural language, see 025.48; for subject cataloging and indexing of specific subjects, see 025.49*
- .472–.479      \*General subject cataloging and indexing schemes in specific languages
- Add to base number 025.47 notation 2–9 from Table 6, e.g., list of Italian subject headings 025.4751
- A bilingual or multilingual scheme is classed with the language coming last in Table 6, e.g., a general thesaurus in English, French, Spanish, Russian, Arabic, and Chinese 025.47951
- .48      \*Subject cataloging and indexing based on natural language
- Class comprehensive works on natural language and controlled vocabulary subject indexing and cataloging in 025.47; class subject cataloging and indexing of specific subjects based on natural language in 025.49
- Comprehensive works on subject indexing relocated to 025.47
- [.482]      Precoordinate indexing
- Relocated to 025.47
- [.484]      Coordinate and postcoordinate indexing
- Relocated to 025.47
- .486      \*Full-text indexing
- Class here keyword indexing
- .487      \*Tagging
- Variant names: collaborative indexing, folksonomies, social classification, social indexing

\*Do not use notation 0218 from Table 1; class in base number

- .49            Subject cataloging and indexing of specific subjects
- Class general subject cataloging and indexing using controlled vocabulary in 025.47; class general subject cataloging and indexing based on natural language in 025.48
- General controlled subject vocabularies (subject authority files, subject headings, thesauri) relocated to 025.47
- [.490 001–.490 009]        Standard subdivisions
- Do not use; class in 025.4701–025.4709
- .490 01–.499 99        Specific subjects
- Add to base number 025.49 notation 001–999, e.g., subject headings in science 025.495
- .5            Services for users**
- Works intended for staff or users
- Class library services to special groups and organizations in 027.6
- For a specific service not provided for here, see the service, e.g., photocopying services 025.12*
- .52            Reference and information services
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Class here information and referral services, services that involve the use or assistance in the use of information tools but not the creation of them, virtual reference services
- Class the use of books and other media as sources of information in 028.7; class comprehensive works on the creation and use of information storage and retrieval systems in 025.04; class comprehensive works on the creation and use of specific tools for bibliographic control in 025.3
- .523          Cooperative information services
- .524          Information search and retrieval
- Using multiple kinds of information sources, e.g., the library catalog, reference books, automated information storage and retrieval systems
- Class here search strategy
- Class information search and retrieval using a specific system with the system, e.g., searching an information storage and retrieval system devoted to medicine 025.0661
- See also 025.04 for information storage and retrieval systems*
- .525          Selective dissemination of information (SDI)
- Class here current awareness services

- .527      Reference and information services in specific types of institutions  
             Add to base number 025.527 the numbers following 02 in 026–027, e.g., reference and information services in college and university libraries 025.52777; however, for reference and information services to special groups and organizations, see 027.6  
             Class specific aspects of reference and information service in specific types of institutions in 025.523–025.525
- .54      Reader advisory services to individuals and groups  
             *See also 028.8 for use of books and other media as sources of recreation and self-development*
- .56      Orientation and bibliographic instruction for users  
             Including signs, regulations for use, user manuals  
             Add to base number 025.56 the numbers following 02 in 026–027, e.g., orientation to public libraries 025.5674; however, for orientation and bibliographic instruction for special groups and organizations, see 027.6  
             Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .58      Library use studies  
             Add to base number 025.58 the numbers following 02 in 026–027, e.g., use of government libraries 025.5875; however, for use studies of libraries for special groups and organizations, see 027.6  
             Class studies of use of a specific system and service with the system or service, e.g., catalog use studies 025.313, studies of use of interlibrary loans 025.62
- .6      Circulation services**  
             Including reserve collections  
             Class here document delivery  
             Class circulation services for special groups and organizations in 027.6
- .62      Interlibrary loans
- .7      Physical preparation for storage and use**  
             Including binding, labeling, pocketing  
             Class conservation and preservation in 025.84  
             Repair and restoration relocated to 025.84
- .8      Maintenance and preservation of collections**
- .81      Physical arrangement and access to collections  
             Including closed and open stacks, integrated shelving of materials in different formats
- .82      Security against theft and other hazards  
             Including disaster preparedness, taking of inventory

.84 Preservation

Including deacidification

Class here repair and restoration [*both formerly* 025.7]; conservation, digital preservation

## > 026–027 Specific kinds of institutions

Class here specific libraries, archives, information centers, and their collections; systems and networks for specific kinds of institutions; comprehensive works on operations in specific kinds of institutions

Class comprehensive works in 027. Class a specific operation in a specific kind of institution with the operation, e.g., reference and information services in college libraries 025.52777

## 026 Libraries, archives, information centers devoted to specific subjects

Class here information organizations and library departments and collections in specific subjects; comprehensive works on special libraries

*For special libraries not devoted to specific subjects, see the kind of library in 027.6, e.g., general museum libraries 027.68, general libraries in newspaper offices 027.69*

*See Manual at 016 vs. 026, T1–07*

.000 1–.000 5 Standard subdivisions

.000 6 Organizations

[.000 68] Management

Do not use; class in 025.19

.000 7–.000 9 Standard subdivisions

.001–.999 Specific subjects

Add to base number 026 notation 001–999, e.g., medical libraries 026.61; however, do not add notation 068 from Table 1 for organizations and management; class in 025.19

## 027 General libraries, archives, information centers

Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

In the subdivisions of this number, the term libraries is used as a short way of saying libraries, archives, information centers, media centers

Class here comprehensive works on libraries, on archives, on information centers, on libraries and information centers devoted to special materials

*For libraries, archives, information centers devoted to specific subjects, see 026*

## SUMMARY

027.001–.009	<b>Standard subdivisions</b>
.01–.09	<b>Geographic treatment</b>
.1	<b>Private and family libraries</b>
.2	<b>Proprietary libraries</b>
.3	<b>Rental libraries</b>
.4	<b>Public libraries</b>
.5	<b>Government libraries</b>
.6	<b>Libraries for special groups and organizations</b>
.7	<b>College and university libraries</b>
.8	<b>School libraries</b>
.001–.005	Standard subdivisions
.006	Organizations
[.006 8]	Management
	Do not use; class in 025.1
[.006 82]	Plant management
	Do not use; class in 022
[.006 83]	Personnel management (Human resource management)
	Do not use; class in 023
.007	Education, research, related topics
.008	Groups of people
	Do not use for minorities; class in 027.63
[.008 3]	Young people
	Do not use; class in 027.625
[.008 35]	Young people twelve to twenty
	Do not use; class in 027.626
[.008 46]	People in late adulthood
	Do not use; class in 027.622
[.008 694]	People with social disadvantages
	Do not use; class in 027.6
.008 7	People with disabilities and illnesses, gifted people
	Do not use for people with disabilities; class in 027.663
.009	History and biography
	Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 027.01–027.09
.01–.09	<b>*Geographic treatment</b>
	Add to base number 027.0 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., libraries in France 027.044

\*Do not use notation 068 from Table 1; class in 025.19

- .1 \*Private and family libraries**  
 Collections not open to general use  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .109 History and biography  
 Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 027.11–027.19
- .11–.19 \*Geographic treatment  
 Add to base number 027.1 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., family libraries in the United Kingdom 027.141
- .2 \*Proprietary libraries**  
 Semiprivate libraries requiring subscription or membership fees for general use
- .209 History and biography  
 Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 027.21–027.29
- .21–.29 \*Geographic treatment  
 Add to base number 027.2 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., proprietary libraries in Leeds 027.242819
- .3 \*Rental libraries**  
 Libraries whose materials are available for use on a commercial basis
- .309 History and biography  
 Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 027.31–027.39
- .31–.39 \*Geographic treatment  
 Add to base number 027.3 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., rental libraries in United States 027.373
- .4 \*Public libraries**  
 Class here public library branches  
 Class public library units for special groups and organizations in 027.6
- [.409 3–.409 9] Specific continents, countries, localities  
 Do not use; class in 027.43–027.49
- .42 \*Library outreach programs  
 Class here library extension, the use of bookmobiles (mobile libraries) in public librarianship
- [.420 93–.420 99] Specific continents, countries, localities  
 Do not use; class in 027.43–027.49

\*Do not use notation 068 from Table 1; class in 025.19

- .43–.49    **\*Specific continents, countries, localities**  
           Add to base number 027.4 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., public libraries in France 027.444
- .5        \*Government libraries**  
           National, state, provincial, local  
           Including overseas information libraries [*formerly* 027.65]  
           For legislative reference bureaus, see 027.65
- .508       Government libraries for groups of people [*formerly also* 027.65]
- .509       History, geographic treatment, biography
- .509 3–.509 9    Specific continents, countries, localities  
           Class specific institutions in 027.53–027.59
- .53–.59    **\*Specific institutions**  
           Add to base number 027.5 notation 3–9 from Table 2 for area served, e.g., Library of Congress 027.573
- .6        \*Libraries for special groups and organizations**  
           Class here library and information services to special groups and organizations, to the socially disadvantaged  
           Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 027.6 in the number coming last, e.g., libraries for children with disabilities 027.663 (*not* 027.625)  
           Class libraries for special groups and organizations devoted to specific subjects in 026  
           For libraries for educational institutions, see 027.7–027.8
- .62        **\*Libraries for specific age groups**
- .622        **\*Libraries for people in late adulthood**
- .625        **\*Libraries for children**  
           To age eleven
- .625 1        Storytelling
- .626        **\*Libraries for young people aged twelve to twenty**
- .63        **\*Libraries for minorities**
- .65        **\*Legislative reference bureaus**  
           Class here parliamentary libraries  
           Overseas information libraries relocated to 027.5; government libraries for groups of people relocated to 027.508

\*Do not use notation 068 from Table 1; class in 025.19

- [.652] Legislative reference bureaus  
 Number discontinued; class in 027.65
- .66 \*Welfare institution libraries
- .662 \*Hospital libraries  
 Class here comprehensive works on patients' and medical libraries  
*For medical libraries, see 026.61*
- .663 \*Libraries for people with disabilities  
 Including libraries for people with visual impairments  
 Class here mainstreaming (the provision of library and information services through regular channels to individuals with special needs)
- .665 \*Prison libraries
- .67 \*Libraries for religious organizations
- .68 \*Libraries for nonprofit organizations  
 Including libraries of learned societies, museum libraries, United Nations Library  
*For welfare institution libraries, see 027.66; for libraries for religious organizations, see 027.67*
- .69 \*Libraries for business and industrial organizations  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
 Including reference collections in newspaper offices used in the writing or editing of articles

> **027.7–027.8 Libraries for educational institutions**

Class here instructional media centers

Class comprehensive works in 027.7

**.7 \*College and university libraries**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Including comprehensive works on instructional materials centers

Class here comprehensive works on libraries for educational institutions, college and university library branches

*For libraries and instructional materials centers in primary and secondary schools, see 027.8*

.709 3–.709 9 Specific continents, countries, localities

Class specific institutions in 027.73–027.79

\*Do not use notation 068 from Table 1; class in 025.19

.73–.79 \*Specific institutions

Add to base number 027.7 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., Perkins Library of Duke University 027.7756563

**.8 \*School libraries**

Including school resource centers

.809 3–.809 9 Specific continents, countries, localities

Class specific institutions in 027.823–027.829

.82 Specific levels and specific libraries

Class libraries in religious schools of specific levels, in specific religious schools in 027.83

.822 Specific levels

Class specific libraries of specific levels in 027.823–027.829

.822 2 \*Primary level

.822 3 \*Secondary level

.823–.829 \*Specific libraries

Add to base number 027.82 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., Phillips Exeter Academy Library 027.827426

.83 \*Libraries in religious schools

**028 Reading and use of other information media**

[.083] Young people

Do not use; class in 028.5

**.1 Reviews**

Class here general collections of book reviews

Class reviews of computer programs in 005.3029; class techniques of reviewing in 808.066028. Class reviews of works on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., reviews of works on chemistry 540, reviews of entertainment films 791.43, critical appraisal of literature 800

.108 Reviews for and by groups of people

.108 3 Reviews by young people

Do not use for reviews of works for young people; class in 028.162

.108 7 Reviews by people with disabilities and illnesses; reviews for and by gifted people

Do not use for reviews of works for people with disabilities; class in 028.163

\*Do not use notation 068 from Table 1; class in 025.19

- .12        **Reviews of reference works**  
             Class reviews of reference works published in specific forms in 028.13; class reviews of reference works for specific kinds of users in 028.16. Class reviews of a specific kind of reference works with the kind, e.g., reviews of encyclopedias 030
- .13        **Reviews of works published in specific forms**  
             Add to base number 028.13 the numbers following 011.3 in 011.31–011.39, e.g., reviews of documentary, educational, and entertainment films 028.137  
             Class general collections of book reviews in 028.1; class reviews of works published in specific forms for specific kinds of users in 028.16
- .16        **Reviews of works for specific kinds of users**  
             Add to base number 028.16 the numbers following 011.6 in 011.62–011.67, e.g., reviews of works for young people 028.162
- .5        Reading and use of other information media by young people**  
             Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
             *See also 028.162 for reviews of materials for young people*
- .53        **Reading and use of other information media by specific age groups**  
             Add to base number 028.53 the numbers following —083 in notation 0832–0835 from Table 1, e.g., reading and use of other information media by children six to eleven 028.534  
             Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .55        **Reading interests and habits of young people**  
             Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
             Class reading interests and habits of young people of specific age groups in 028.53
- .7        Use of books and other information media as sources of information**  
             Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
             Class here use of reference works
- [.708 3]        **Young people**  
                     Do not use; class in 028.5
- .8        Use of books and other information media as sources of recreation and self-development**  
             Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- [.808 3]        **Young people**  
                     Do not use; class in 028.5
- .9        Reading interests and habits**
- [.908 3]        **Young people**  
                     Do not use; class in 028.55

**[029] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 18

**030 General encyclopedic works**

Class here almanacs with general information; books of miscellaneous, curious, unusual facts; encyclopedic yearbooks

**.9 History, geographic treatment, biography**

Class history, geographic treatment, biography of encyclopedic works in specific languages and language families in 031–039

**> 031–039 General encyclopedic works in specific languages and language families**

By language in which originally written

Class here specific encyclopedias and books of miscellaneous facts, works about them

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by \* as follows:

01 Philosophy and theory

02 Books of miscellaneous facts

Do not use for other types of miscellany; class in base number for the language

Class here almanacs with general information, books of curious and unusual facts

03–09 Standard subdivisions

Class comprehensive works, encyclopedic works originally written in two or more languages or language families in which no language or language family is predominant in 030. Class encyclopedic works originally written in two or more languages or language families in which one language or language family is predominant with the predominant language or language family, e.g., encyclopedic work written in Portuguese with some articles in Spanish 036.9

(Option A: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to encyclopedias in a specific language, place them first by use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., Arabic-language encyclopedias 03A [preceding 031]. Option B is described under 031)

**031 \*General encyclopedic works in American English**

English-language encyclopedias and books of miscellaneous facts originating in Western Hemisphere

(Option B: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to encyclopedias in a specific language other than English, class them in this number; in that case class American English-language encyclopedias in 032. Option A is described under 031–039)

**032 \*General encyclopedic works in English**

*For general encyclopedic works in American English, see 031*

\*Add as instructed under 031–039

**033 General encyclopedic works in other Germanic languages**

Class here comprehensive works on Germanic-language encyclopedias

*For English-language encyclopedias, see 032; for Scandinavian-language encyclopedias, see 038*

**.1–.8 General encyclopedic works in German and German dialects**

Add to base number 033 the numbers following —3 in notation 31–38 from Table 6, e.g., Swiss-German-dialect encyclopedias 033.5; then add further as instructed under 031–039, e.g., Swiss-German-dialect books of miscellaneous facts 033.502

**.9 General encyclopedic works in Yiddish and Low Germanic languages**

Add to base number 033.9 the numbers following —39 in notation 391–394 from Table 6, e.g., Dutch-language encyclopedias 033.931; then add further as instructed under 031–039, e.g., Dutch-language books of miscellaneous facts 033.93102

**034 General encyclopedic works in French, Occitan, Catalan**

Add to base number 034 the numbers following —4 in notation 41–49 from Table 6, e.g., French-language encyclopedias 034.1; then add further as instructed under 031–039, e.g., French-language almanacs 034.102

**035 General encyclopedic works in Italian, Dalmatian, Romanian, Rhaetian, Sardinian, Corsican**

Add to base number 035 the numbers following —5 in notation 51–59 from Table 6, e.g., Italian-language encyclopedias 035.1; then add further as instructed under 031–039, e.g., Italian-language books of miscellaneous facts 035.102

**036 General encyclopedic works in Spanish, Portuguese, Galician**

Add to base number 036 the numbers following —6 in notation 61–69 from Table 6, e.g., Portuguese-language encyclopedias 036.9; then add further as instructed under 031–039, e.g., Portuguese-language books of miscellaneous facts 036.902

**037 General encyclopedic works in Slavic languages****.1 \*General encyclopedic works in Russian****.8 General encyclopedic works in other Slavic languages**

*For Ukrainian-language and Belarusian-language encyclopedias, see 037.9*

**.81 General encyclopedic works in Bulgarian and Macedonian****.811 \*General encyclopedic works in Bulgarian****.819 \*General encyclopedic works in Macedonian**

- .82      \*General encyclopedic works in Serbian  
           Class here general encyclopedic works in Serbo-Croatian  
           General encyclopedic works in Croatian relocated to 037.83; general  
           encyclopedic works in Bosnian relocated to 037.839
- .83      \*General encyclopedic works in Croatian [*formerly* 037.82] and Bosnian  
           Subdivisions are added for Croatian and Bosnian together, for Croatian  
           alone
- .839     \*General encyclopedic works in Bosnian [*formerly* 037.82]
- .84      \*General encyclopedic works in Slovenian
- .85      \*General encyclopedic works in Polish
- .86      \*General encyclopedic works in Czech
- .87      \*General encyclopedic works in Slovak
- .88      \*General encyclopedic works in Wendish (Sorbian, Lusatian)
- .9        **General encyclopedic works in Ukrainian and Belarusian**
- .91      \*General encyclopedic works in Ukrainian
- .99      \*General encyclopedic works in Belarusian

### **038      General encyclopedic works in Scandinavian languages**

Add to base number 038 the numbers following —39 in notation 396–398 from Table 6, e.g., Swedish-language encyclopedias 038.7; then add further as instructed under 031–039, e.g., Swedish-language books of miscellaneous facts 038.702

### **039      General encyclopedic works in other languages**

Add to base number 039 notation 7–9 from Table 6, e.g., Chinese-language encyclopedias 039.951; then add further as instructed under 031–039, e.g., Chinese-language books of miscellaneous facts 039.95102

### **[040]    [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 16

### **[041]    [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 16

### **[042]    [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 16

### **[043]    [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 16

### **[044]    [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 16

\*Add as instructed under 031–039

**[045] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 16

**[046] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 16

**[047] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 16

**[048] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 16

**[049] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 16

**050 General serial publications**

Class here periodicals; indexes to general serial publications

Class books of miscellaneous facts (even if published annually, e.g., almanacs), encyclopedia yearbooks in 030; class administrative reports and proceedings of general organizations in 060. Class indexes that focus on a specific subject in general serial publications with the subject in 016, e.g., an index to information on medicine in general serial publications 016.61

*For newspapers, see 070*

*See also 011.34 for bibliographies of general serial publications; also 011.7 for bibliographies of directories; also 017–019 for catalogs of general serial publications*

**.9 History, geographic treatment, biography**

Class history, geographic treatment, biography of serial publications in specific languages and language families in 051–059

> **051–059 General serial publications in specific languages and language families**

By language in which originally written

Class here specific serial publications and works about them

Class comprehensive works, serials originally written in two or more languages or language families in which no language or language family is predominant in 050. Class serials originally written in two or more languages or language families in which one language or language family is predominant with the predominant language or language family, e.g., serial written in Portuguese with some articles in Spanish 056.9

(Option A: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to serial publications in a specific language, place them first by use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., Hindi-language serial publications 05H [preceding 051]

(Option B: Arrange serial publications alphabetically under 050

(Option C is described under 051)

**051 General serial publications in American English**

English-language serial publications of Western Hemisphere

(Option C: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to serial publications in a specific language other than English, class them in this number; in that case class American English-language serial publications in 052. Options A and B are described under 051–059)

**052 General serial publications in English**

*For general serial publications in American English, see 051*

**053 General serial publications in other Germanic languages**

Class here comprehensive works on general serial publications in Germanic languages

*For English-language serial publications, see 052; for Scandinavian-language serial publications, see 058*

**.1–.8 General serial publications in German and German dialects**

Add to base number 053 the numbers following —3 in notation 31–38 from Table 6, e.g., Swiss-German-dialect serial publications 053.5

**.9 General serial publications in Yiddish and Low Germanic languages**

Add to base number 053.9 the numbers following —39 in notation 391–394 from Table 6, e.g., Dutch-language serial publications 053.931

**054 General serial publications in French, Occitan, Catalan**

Add to base number 054 the numbers following —4 in notation 41–49 from Table 6, e.g., French-language serial publications 054.1

**055 General serial publications in Italian, Dalmatian, Romanian, Rhaetian, Sardinian, Corsican**

Add to base number 055 the numbers following —5 in notation 51–59 from Table 6, e.g., Italian-language serial publications 055.1

**056 General serial publications in Spanish, Portuguese, Galician**

Add to base number 056 the numbers following —6 in notation 61–69 from Table 6, e.g., Portuguese-language serial publications 056.9

**057 General serial publications in Slavic languages**

Add to base number 057 the numbers following 037 in 037.1–037.9 for language only, e.g., Polish-language serial publications 057.85

**058 General serial publications in Scandinavian languages**

Add to base number 058 the numbers following —39 in notation 396–398 from Table 6, e.g., Swedish-language serial publications 058.7

**059 General serial publications in other languages**

Add to base number 059 notation 7–9 from Table 6, e.g., Chinese-language serial publications 059.951

**060 General organizations and museology**

General organizations: academies, associations, conferences, congresses, foundations, societies whose activity is not limited to a specific field

Including history, charters, regulations, membership lists, administrative reports and proceedings

Class here interdisciplinary works on organizations; interdisciplinary works on licensing, certification, accreditation by nongovernmental organizations

Class history, charters, regulations, membership lists, administrative reports and proceedings of a specific organization in 061–068; class interdisciplinary works on licensing, certification, accreditation by governmental and nongovernmental bodies in 352.84

*For interdisciplinary works on intergovernmental organizations, see 341.2. For organizations devoted to a specific subject, see the subject, plus notation 06 from Table 1, e.g., organizations devoted to computer science 004.06*

*See Manual at T1—025 vs. T1—029*

(Option A: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to organizations in a specific country, place them first by use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., organizations in Pakistan 06P [preceding 061]. Option B is described under 061)

**.4 Special topics of general organizations**

**.42 General rules of order (Parliamentary procedure)**

Including Robert's Rules of Order

*For rules and procedures of legislative bodies, see 328.1*

*See also 658.456 for conduct of meetings of business organizations*

**.9 History and biography**

Do not use for geographic treatment of general organizations; class in 061–068

**> 061–068 General organizations**

Class comprehensive works in 060

**061 General organizations in North America**

*For organizations in Middle America, see 068.72*

(Option B: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to organizations in a specific country other than the United States and Canada, class them in this number; in that case class organizations in North America in 068.7. Option A is described under 060)

**.1 General organizations in Canada**

Add to base number 061.1 the numbers following —71 in notation 711–719 from Table 2, e.g., organizations in British Columbia 061.11

**.3–.9 General organizations in United States**

Add to base number 061 the numbers following —7 in notation 73–79 from Table 2, e.g., general organizations in Ohio 061.71

*For organizations in Hawaii, see 068.969*

**062 General organizations in British Isles**

Class here general organizations in England

**.1–.8 General organizations in England**

Add to base number 062 the numbers following —42 in notation 421–428 from Table 2, e.g., organizations in London 062.1

**.9 General organizations in Scotland, Ireland, Wales**

Add to base number 062.9 the numbers following —4 in notation 41–42 from Table 2, e.g., organizations in Scotland and Ireland 062.91

**063 General organizations in Germany and neighboring central European countries**

Standard subdivisions are added for Germany and neighboring central European countries together, for Germany alone

Class here general organizations in central Europe

Add to base number 063 the numbers following —43 in notation 431–439 from Table 2, e.g., organizations in Poland 063.8

**064 General organizations in France and Monaco**

Standard subdivisions are added for France and Monaco together, for France alone

Add to base number 064 the numbers following —44 in notation 441–449 from Table 2, e.g., organizations in Paris metropolitan area 064.36

## 065 **General organizations in Italy, San Marino, Vatican City, Malta**

Standard subdivisions are added for Italy, San Marino, Vatican City, Malta together; for Italy alone

Add to base number 065 the numbers following —45 in notation 451–459 from Table 2, e.g., organizations in Rome 065.632

## 066 **General organizations in Spain, Andorra, Gibraltar, Portugal**

Standard subdivisions are added for Spain, Andorra, Gibraltar, Portugal together; for Spain alone

Add to base number 066 the numbers following —46 in notation 461–469 from Table 2, e.g., organizations in Portugal 066.9

## 067 **General organizations in Russia and neighboring east European countries**

Standard subdivisions are added for Russia and neighboring east European countries together, for Russia alone

Add to base number 067 the numbers following —47 in notation 471–479 from Table 2, e.g., organizations in Moscow 067.31

*For organizations in Balkan Peninsula, see 068.496; for organizations in Commonwealth of Independent States in Asia, see 068.57–068.58*

## 068 **General organizations in other geographic areas**

Add to base number 068 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., comprehensive works on general organizations in Europe 068.4, in Balkan Peninsula 068.496, in Middle America 068.72, in Hawaii 068.969

## 069 **Museology (Museum science)**

Class here government policy on museums

*For museum activities and services limited to a specific subject, see the subject, plus notation 075 from Table 1, e.g., activities and services of a clock museum 681.113075*

- .028 8 Maintenance and repair
  - Do not use for maintenance and repair of museum objects; class in 069.53
- .068 Management
  - [.068 2] Plant management
    - Do not use; class in 069.2
  - [.068 3] Personnel management
    - Do not use; class in 069.63
  - [.068 5] Organization of production
    - Do not use; class in 069.1

- [.068 7] Management of materials  
Do not use; class in 069.5
- .07 Education, research, related topics
- .074 Museums, collections, exhibits  
Limited to museums, collections, exhibits about museology  
Class comprehensive works on museums in 069; class comprehensive works on collections and exhibits in 069.5
- .075 Museum activities and services  
Limited to museums about and collecting objects related to museology  
Class comprehensive works on museum services to patrons in 069.1; class comprehensive works on collecting and preparing museum objects in 069.4
- .09 History, geographic treatment, biography  
Class here specific museums not limited to a specific subject  
Class history, geographic treatment, biography of museum buildings in 069.209. Class museums devoted to a specific subject with the subject, plus notation 074 from Table 1, e.g., natural history museums 508.074
- .1 Museum services to patrons**  
Class here organization of production
- .108 7 People with disabilities and illnesses, gifted people  
Do not use for museum services to people with disabilities; class in 069.17
- .13 Circulation services  
Lending and renting materials  
*See also 069.56 for lending and rental collections*
- .132 Museum objects
- .134 Representations of museum objects  
Including pictures, slides, films; aids to use of representations
- .15 Instruction services  
Including lectures, classes, field trips
- .16 Recreational services  
Including musical programs, theatrical presentations
- .17 Special services to people with disabilities
- .2 Management and use of physical plant**  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
*For equipment, furniture, furnishings, see 069.3*

- .21 Location and site  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .22 Planning for buildings  
*See also 727.6 for museum architecture*
- .24 Special rooms
- .29 Utilities and related facilities  
Standard subdivisions are added for utilities and related facilities together, for utilities alone  
Including communication systems, lighting, plumbing, heating, ventilating, air-conditioning
- .3 Equipment, furniture, furnishings**
- .31 Exhibit cases, screens, pedestals
- .32 Audiovisual apparatus
- .33 Furniture
- .4 Collecting and preparing museum objects**  
Including equipment, materials, methods  
Class here management of collecting and preparing museum objects, interdisciplinary works on collecting objects  
Class comprehensive works on management of museum materials, on collecting or preparing museum objects and collections of museum objects, interdisciplinary works on collecting and collections in 069.5. Class collecting a specific kind of object or objects that pertain to a specific subject with the subject, plus notation 075 from Table 1, e.g., collecting fossils 560.75
- .5 Collections and exhibits of museum objects**  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
Class here comprehensive works on management of museum materials, on collecting or preparing museum objects and collections of museum objects; interdisciplinary works on collecting and collections together, on collections alone  
*For collecting and preparing museum objects and for interdisciplinary works on collecting, see 069.4. For collections of a specific kind of object or objects that pertain to a specific subject, see the subject, plus notation 074 from Table 1, e.g., collections of fossils 560.74*
- [.502 88] Maintenance and repair  
Do not use; class in 069.53
- .502 89 Safety measures  
*See also 069.54 for prevention of thefts and identification of forgeries*

- 
- > 069.51–069.54 General activities of collections and exhibits
- Class general activities applied to special collections in 069.55–069.57; class comprehensive works in 069.5
- .51 Selection, acquisition, disposal
- .52 Registration, recording, indexing
- Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- Class here museum documentation
- .53 Maintenance, conservation, preservation, restoration, display, arrangement, storage, transportation
- Including museum labels
- Class historic preservation in 363.69
- .54 Prevention of thefts and identification of forgeries
- 
- > 069.55–069.57 Special collections
- Including classification, arrangement, housing
- Class comprehensive works in 069.5
- .55 Study collections
- .56 Lending and rental collections
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- See also 069.13 for circulation services*
- .57 Collections of secondary materials
- Including brochures, films, motion pictures, photographs, pictures, prints, slides representing museum objects
- .6 **Personnel management, regulations for patrons, relations with other organizations**
- .62 Regulations for patrons
- Including regulations for members, for visitors
- .63 Personnel management
- Including in-service training, staff manuals
- .68 Relations with other organizations
- Class public relations for museums in 659.29069

## 070 **Documentary media, educational media, news media; journalism; publishing**

Standard subdivisions are added for documentary media, educational media, news media, journalism, publishing together; for journalism and newspapers alone; for newspapers alone

### SUMMARY

- 070.01–.09      **Standard subdivisions**  
                   .1–.9      [Documentary media, educational media, news media; journalism; publishing]
- 071      **Journalism and newspapers in North America**  
 072      **Journalism and newspapers in British Isles**  
 073      **Journalism and newspapers in Germany and neighboring central European countries**  
 074      **Journalism and newspapers in France and Monaco**  
 075      **Journalism and newspapers in Italy, San Marino, Vatican City, Malta**  
 076      **Journalism and newspapers in Spain, Andorra, Gibraltar, Portugal**  
 077      **Journalism and newspapers in Russia and neighboring east European countries**  
 078      **Journalism and newspapers in Scandinavia**  
 079      **Journalism and newspapers in other geographic areas**

.01–.08      **Standard subdivisions**

.09      **History, geographic treatment, biography**

Do not use for history and biography of journalism and newspapers; class in 070.9. Do not use for geographic treatment of journalism and newspapers; class in 071–079

### SUMMARY

- 070.1      **Documentary media, educational media, news media**  
                   .4      **Journalism**  
                   .5      **Publishing**  
                   .9      **History and biography of journalism and newspapers**

.1      **Documentary media, educational media, news media**

Class here comprehensive works on journalism and production of specific documentary, educational, news media

Class interdisciplinary works on mass media in 302.23. Class documentary, educational, news works themselves and discussion of them with the kind of general work or the subject, e.g., general periodicals 050, recorded television programs on investing 332.6

*For specific topics of journalism in specific media, see 070.4; for expository writing and editorial techniques, see 808.066*

.17      **Print media**

Class the book in 002

- .172            Newspapers
- Limited to comprehensive works on newspaper journalism
- Class comprehensive works on newspapers in 070; class newspaper publishing in 070.5722. Class a newspaper on a specific subject with the subject, plus notation 05 from Table 1, e.g., a newspaper on computers 004.05
- See also 011.35 for bibliographies of newspapers*
- [.172 09]        History, geographic treatment, biography
- Do not use for history and biography; class in 070.9. Do not use for geographic treatment of specific general newspapers; class in 071-079
- .175            Serial publications
- Including newsletters
- Class a serial publication on a specific subject with the subject, plus notation 05 from Table 1, e.g., science journals 505
- For newspapers, see 070.172*
- .175 09         History, geographic treatment, biography
- Do not use for specific general serial publications; class in 051-059
- .18             Motion pictures
- Including documentary films, educational films
- Class photographic aspects in 777; class comprehensive works about documentary, educational, news and dramatic or entertainment films in 791.43; class interdisciplinary works on motion pictures in 384.8
- See also 371.33523 for instructional use of motion pictures*
- .19             Broadcast media
- Class radio and television news programs in 070.43
- See also 070.57973 for Internet publications*
- .194            Radio
- Class comprehensive works on documentary, educational, news and dramatic or entertainment radio programs in 791.44; class interdisciplinary works on radio in 384.54
- See also 371.3331 for use of radio in teaching*
- .195            Television
- Class photographic aspects in 777; class comprehensive works on documentary, educational, news and dramatic or entertainment television programs in 791.45; class interdisciplinary works about television in 384.55
- See also 371.3358 for use of television in teaching*

**.4 Journalism**

Class here specific topics of journalism in specific media

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., photojournalism in war news 070.49 (*not* 070.4333):

Features and special topics	070.44
Pictorial journalism	070.49
News gathering and reporting	070.43
Editing	070.41
Journalism directed to specific groups of people	070.48

Class journalists whose careers span many activities in 070.92; class freedom of the press in 323.445; class press control in 363.31; class journalistic composition and editorial mechanics in 808.06607; class comprehensive works on journalism and information media in 070; class comprehensive works on journalism of specific media in 070.1. Class journalism of a specific general serial publication with the language of the publication in 051-059, e.g., journalism of a French periodical 054.1; class journalism of a specific newspaper with the place of publication of the newspaper in 071-079, e.g., journalism of an Arab-language newspaper published in Paris 074.361; class journalism of serial publications on a specific subject with the subject in 001-999, plus notation 05 from Table 1, e.g., journalism of science journals 505

*For student journalism, see 371.897*

*See also 070.5722 for newspaper publishing; also 174.907 for ethics of journalism*

**SUMMARY**

- 070.408 Journalism for and by groups of people**
  - .41 Editing**
  - .43 Reporting and news gathering**
  - .44 Features and specific subjects**
  - .48 Journalism directed to specific groups**
  - .49 Pictorial journalism**
- .408 Journalism for and by groups of people
  - .408 1 Journalism by people by gender or sex
    - Do not use for journalism for people by gender or sex; class in 070.483
  - .408 11 Journalism by men
    - Do not use for journalism for men; class in 070.48346
  - .408 2 Journalism by women
    - Do not use for journalism for women; class in 070.48347
  - .408 3 Journalism by young people
    - Do not use for journalism for young people; class in 070.4832
  - .408 341 Journalism by boys six to eleven
    - Do not use for journalism for boys six to eleven; class in 070.48326

- .408 342 Journalism by girls six to eleven  
Do not use for journalism for girls six to eleven; class in 070.48327
- .408 35 Journalism by young people twelve to twenty  
Do not use for journalism for young people twelve to twenty; class in 070.4833
- .408 351 Journalism by males twelve to twenty  
Do not use for journalism for males twelve to twenty; class in 070.48336
- .408 352 Journalism by females twelve to twenty  
Do not use for journalism for females twelve to twenty; class in 070.48337
- .408 8 Journalism by occupational and religious groups  
Do not use for journalism for religious groups; class in 070.482. Do not use for journalism for occupational groups; class in 070.486
- .408 9 Journalism by ethnic and national groups  
Do not use for journalism for ethnic and national groups; class in 070.484
- [.409] History, geographic treatment, biography  
Do not use for history and biography; class in 070.9. Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 071-079
- .41 Editing  
Class here editorial policy (selection, presentation, display of news; advocacy of specific points of view)  
Class editorials in 070.442; class comprehensive works on editing and news gathering or reporting in 070.4  
*See also 808.06607 for editorial mechanics, e.g., copy editing, Associated Press stylebook*
- .43 Reporting and news gathering  
Standard subdivisions are added for reporting and news gathering together, for reporting alone  
Class here newsreels, radio news programs, television news programs, other news programs  
Class comprehensive works on editorial policy and news gathering or reporting in 070.4
- .431 News sources
- .433 Reporting local, international, war news  
Class reporting on a specific subject with the subject in 070.449, e.g., reporting on world-wide energy resources 070.44933379

- .433 2 International news  
 Class here foreign news  
 Class foreign war news in 070.4333
- .433 3 War news  
 Class reporting on a specific war with the war in 070.4499, e.g., reporting on World War II 070.44994053
- .435 News agencies  
 Class here electronic news services, wire services
- .44 Features and specific subjects  
 Class here newspaper columns; techniques and procedures for information-gathering, writing, editing for features and specific subjects
- .442 Interpretation and opinion  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
 Including newspaper editorials, radio comment  
 Class editorial policy in 070.41. Class journalistic aspects of interpretation and opinion on a specific subject with the subject in 070.449, e.g., journalistic aspects of health columns 070.449613
- .444 Miscellaneous information, advice, amusement  
 Including humor, general personal advice columns  
 Class journalistic aspects of information, advice, amusement on a specific subject with the subject in 070.449, e.g., advice on health 070.449613  
*See also 741.56 for artistic aspects of comic strips*
- .444 092 Biography  
 Class here biographies of journalists specializing in humor, of journalists known for general personal advice columns  
 Class biographies of cartoonists in 741.569. Class biographies of a humorous writer with the writer in 800, e.g., a contemporary British writer of humorous essays 824.914
- .449 Specific subjects  
 Class here journalists specializing in specific subjects, e.g., health columnists 070.449613092  
 Add to base number 070.449 notation 001–999, e.g., works about journalistic aspects of health columns 070.449613; however, for war news as a general type of news, see 070.4333  
 Class reports, criticisms, opinions on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., health columns 613  
*See also 070.433 for reporting of local and foreign news as general types of news; also 070.444 for miscellaneous information, advice, amusements as types of journalism*

- .48 Journalism directed to special groups  
     Class school journalism in 371.897
- .482 Religious groups
- .483 Groups by age and sex
- .483 2 Young people  
     Class here children from birth to eleven  
     *For young people twelve to twenty, see 070.4833*
- .483 26 Boys
- .483 27 Girls
- .483 3 Young people twelve to twenty
- .483 36 Males twelve to twenty
- .483 37 Females twelve to twenty
- .483 4 Adults  
     Class here young adults twenty-one and above, comprehensive works  
     on young adults  
     *For young adults twelve to twenty, see 070.4833*
- .483 46 Men
- .483 47 Women
- .484 Foreign-language and nondominant ethnic and national groups
- .486 Occupational and employee groups  
     Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
     General journalism for occupational and employee groups  
     Including house organs
- .49 Pictorial journalism  
     Class here photojournalism
- .5 Publishing**  
     Class here book publishing; publishers regardless of their field of activity; book  
     clubs, e.g., Book-of-the-Month Club<sup>®</sup>; comprehensive works on publishing and  
     printing  
     Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or  
     more subdivisions of 070.5 in the number coming first, e.g., commercial map  
     publishers 070.5793 (*not* 070.592)  
     Class works on desktop publishing that emphasize typography in 686.22  
     *For printing, see 686.2*
- .502 9 Commercial miscellany  
     Class publishers' catalogs in 015

- .509 3–.509 9      Specific continents, countries, localities  
    Class here specific publishers, using the area number for the publisher's main office, e.g., U.S. Government Printing Office 070.509753, University of California Press 070.50979467
- .51                    Selection and editing of manuscripts  
    Class editorial techniques in 808.02
- .52                    Relations with authors  
    Including literary agents  
    Class interdisciplinary works on composition, preparation of manuscript, publishing in 808.02
- .57                    Kinds of publications  
    Class specific publishers regardless of kind of publication in 070.5093–070.5099
- .572                  Serial publications  
    Class comprehensive works on journalism and publishing of serial publications in 070.175. Class a serial version of a specific kind of publication with the kind in 070.579, e.g., a serial Braille publication 070.5792
- .572 2                Newspapers
- .573                  Specific kinds of books  
    Including electronic books, limited editions, paperbacks, subscription books  
    Class serials in book form in 070.572
- [.573 01–.573 09]      Standard subdivisions  
    Do not use; class in 070.501–070.509
- .579                  Special kinds of publications  
    Including comprehensive works on audio publications  
    Class a specific kind of audio publication with the kind, e.g., audio music publication 070.5794
- .579 2                Braille and other raised characters  
    Standard subdivisions are added for Braille and other raised characters together, for Braille alone
- .579 3                Maps
- .579 4                Music  
    Class here recorded music  
    Class comprehensive works on audio publications in 070.579
- .579 5                Microforms

- .579 7            Electronic publications (Digital publications)  
                     Including CD-ROM (compact disc read-only memory)  
                     Class an electronic version of a specific kind of publication with the  
                     kind, e.g., electronic books 070.573, electronic maps 070.5793
- .579 73           Web publications  
                     Class here Internet publishing
- .59                Kinds of publishers  
                     Class specific publishers regardless of kind in 070.5093–070.5099
- .592               Commercial publishers
- .593               Private publishers  
                     Class here self-publishing  
                     Class works on desktop publishing that emphasize typography in 686.22
- .594               Institutional publishers  
                     Including archive, church, information center, library, museum, society,  
                     university publishers  
                     Class here nonprofit organizations
- .595               Governmental and intergovernmental publishers  
                     Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                     *See also 070.509753 for U.S. Government Printing Office*
- .9                History and biography of journalism and newspapers**  
                     Class history of specific topics of journalism in 070.41–070.49
- [.91]              Areas, regions, places in general  
                     Do not use; class in 079.1
- .92                Biography regardless of area, region, place  
                     Class people associated with a specific aspect of journalism with the  
                     aspect in 070.41–070.49, plus notation 092 from Table 1, e.g., foreign  
                     correspondents 070.4332092
- [.93–.99]        Specific continents, countries, localities  
                     Do not use; class in 071–079

> **071–079 Geographic treatment of journalism and newspapers**

Class here specific general newspapers regardless of language, indexes to them, other works about them

For a specific continent, country, or locality, add subdivisions for journalism, newspapers, or both

When adding from Table 2 for a specific newspaper, use the number for the primary area served by the newspaper; for example, a newspaper published in a city but carrying news about and having many subscribers in the surrounding region should be given the Table 2 number for the region, e.g., Los Angeles Times 071.79493

Class geography of specific topics of journalism in 070.41–070.49, e.g., journalism directed toward ethnic minorities in United States 070.4840973; class biography of journalism and newspapers regardless of area in 070.92; class comprehensive works in 070

(Option A: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to newspapers and journalism in a specific country, place them first by use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., newspapers and journalism in New Zealand 07N [preceding 071])

(Option B: Arrange newspapers alphabetically under 070)

(Option C is described under 071)

**071 \*Journalism and newspapers in North America**

*For journalism and newspapers in Middle America, see 079.72*

(Option C: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to journalism and newspapers in a specific country other than the United States and Canada, class them in this number; in that case class journalism and newspapers in North America in 079.7. Options A and B are described under 071–079)

**.1 \*Journalism and newspapers in Canada**

Add to base number 071.1 the numbers following —71 in notation 711–719 from Table 2, e.g., journalism and newspapers in British Columbia 071.11

**.3–.9 \*Journalism and newspapers in the United States**

Add to base number 071 the numbers following —7 in notation 73–79 from Table 2, e.g., New York Times 071.471

*For journalism and newspapers in Hawaii, see 079.969*

**072 \*Journalism and newspapers in British Isles**

Class here journalism and newspapers in British Isles

**.1–.8 \*Journalism and newspapers in England**

Add to base number 072 the numbers following —42 in notation 421–428 from Table 2, e.g., Times of London 072.1

\*Subdivisions are added for journalism, newspapers, or both

**.9 \*Journalism and newspapers in Scotland, Ireland, Wales**

Add to base number 072.9 the numbers following —4 in notation 41–42 from Table 2, e.g., newspapers in Scotland and Ireland 072.91

**073 \*Journalism and newspapers in Germany and neighboring central European countries**

Standard subdivisions are added for Germany and neighboring central European countries together, for Germany alone

Class here journalism and newspapers in central Europe

Add to base number 073 the numbers following —43 in notation 431–439 from Table 2, e.g., journalism and newspapers in Austria 073.6

**074 \*Journalism and newspapers in France and Monaco**

Standard subdivisions are added for France and Monaco together, for France alone

Add to base number 074 the numbers following —44 in notation 441–449 from Table 2, e.g., journalism and newspapers in Paris metropolitan area 074.36

**075 \*Journalism and newspapers in Italy, San Marino, Vatican City, Malta**

Standard subdivisions are added for Italy, San Marino, Vatican City, Malta together; for Italy alone

Add to base number 075 the numbers following —45 in notation 451–459 from Table 2, e.g., journalism and newspapers in Rome 075.632

**076 \*Journalism and newspapers in Spain, Andorra, Gibraltar, Portugal**

Standard subdivisions are added for Spain, Andorra, Gibraltar, Portugal together; for Spain alone

Add to base number 076 the numbers following —46 in notation 461–469 from Table 2, e.g., journalism and newspapers in Portugal 076.9

**077 \*Journalism and newspapers in Russia and neighboring east European countries**

Standard subdivisions are added for Russia and neighboring east European countries together, for Russia alone

Class here journalism and newspapers in eastern Europe

Add to base number 077 the numbers following —47 in notation 471–479 from Table 2, e.g., journalism and newspapers in Moscow 077.31

*For journalism and newspapers in Balkan Peninsula, see 079.496; for journalism and newspapers in Commonwealth of Independent States in Asia, see 079.57–079.58*

**078 \*Journalism and newspapers in Scandinavia**

Add to base number 078 the numbers following —48 in notation 481–489 from Table 2, e.g., journalism and newspapers in Sweden 078.5

**079 \*Journalism and newspapers in other geographic areas**

Add to base number 079 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., comprehensive works on general newspapers in Europe 079.4, in Balkan Peninsula 079.496, in Middle America 079.72, in Hawaii 079.969

**080 General collections**

Class here abstracts, addresses, lectures, essays, interviews, graffiti, quotations

Class collections of brief bibliographic abstracts in 011; class essays as literary form, collections gathered for their literary quality in 800

*See Manual at 080 vs. 800*

**.9 History, geographic treatment, biography**

Class history, geographic treatment, biography of collections in specific languages and language families in 081–089

**> 081–089 General collections in specific languages and language families**

Class comprehensive works in 080

*See Manual at 081–089*

(Option A: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to collections in a specific language, place them first by use of a letter or symbol, e.g., collections in Urdu 08U [preceding 081]

(Option B: Arrange collections alphabetically under 080

(Option C is described under 081)

**081 General collections in American English**

English-language collections of Western Hemisphere

(Option C: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to collections in a specific language other than English, class them in this number; in that case class American English-language collections in 082. Options A and B are described under 081–089)

**082 General collections in English**

*For general collections in American English, see 081*

**083 General collections in other Germanic languages**

Class here comprehensive works on Germanic-language collections

*For English-language collections, see 082; for Scandinavian-language collections, see 088; for Old-English-language (Anglo-Saxon-language) collections, see 089*

**.1–.8 General collections in German and German dialects**

Add to base number 083 the numbers following —3 in notation 31–38 from Table 6, e.g., Swiss-German-dialect collections 083.5

**.9 General collections in Yiddish and Low Germanic languages**

Add to base number 083.9 the numbers following —39 in notation 391–394 from Table 6, e.g., Dutch-language collections 083.931

**084 General collections in French, Occitan, Catalan**

Add to base number 084 the numbers following —4 in notation 41–49 from Table 6, e.g., French-language collections 084.1

**085 General collections in Italian, Dalmatian, Romanian, Rhaetian, Sardinian, Corsican**

Add to base number 085 the numbers following —5 in notation 51–59 from Table 6, e.g., Italian-language collections 085.1

**086 General collections in Spanish, Portuguese, Galician**

Add to base number 086 the numbers following —6 in notation 61–69 from Table 6, e.g., Portuguese-language collections 086.9

**087 General collections in Slavic languages**

Add to base number 087 the numbers following 037 in 037.1–037.9 for language only, e.g., Polish-language collections 087.85

**088 General collections in Scandinavian languages**

Add to base number 088 the numbers following —39 in notation 396–398 from Table 6, e.g., Swedish-language collections 088.7

**089 General collections in other languages**

Including Old English (Anglo-Saxon)

Add to base number 089 notation 7–9 from Table 6, e.g., Chinese-language collections 089.951

## 090 **Manuscripts, rare books, other rare printed materials**

Including rare broadsides

Class interdisciplinary works on books in 002. Class a manuscript or rare work on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., a book of hours 242; class an artistic aspect of a manuscript or rare book with the aspect, e.g., illumination 745.67

*See also 011.31 for bibliographies of both manuscripts and rare books; also 011.44 for bibliographies of rare books only*

### 091 **Manuscripts**

*See also 011.31 for bibliographies of manuscripts*

### 092 **Block books**

### 093 **Incunabula**

Books printed before 1501

*See also 011.42 for bibliographies of incunabula*

### 094 **Printed books**

#### .2 **Early printed books**

To 1700

*For block books, see 092; for incunabula, see 093*

#### .4 **Special editions**

Including first editions, limited editions, typographic masterpieces

### 095 **Books notable for bindings**

*See also 686.3 for bookbinding*

### 096 **Books notable for illustrations and materials**

#### .1 **Books notable for illustrations**

Class illustrated manuscripts in 091

#### .2 **Books notable for materials**

Including leaves of vellum and silk, letters of silver and gold

### 097 **Books notable for ownership or origin**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

### 098 **Prohibited works, forgeries, hoaxes**

#### .1 **Prohibited works**

.11 Prohibited by religious authorities

.12 Prohibited by civil authorities

.3 **Forgeries and hoaxes**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

**099 Books notable for format**

Including books of unusual shapes, miniature editions

## 100 **Philosophy, parapsychology and occultism, psychology**

Works that discuss the discipline of philosophy itself; works that discuss several of philosophy's major questions and branches; comprehensive works on philosophy broad enough to include nonwestern or medieval as well as modern western philosophy are classed in 100 itself or 101–109

Class comprehensive works on Christian philosophy, on modern philosophy, on western philosophy, on modern western philosophy, on European philosophy in 190. Class philosophy of a specific subject with the subject, plus notation 01 from Table 1, e.g., philosophy of history 901

*See Manual at T1–01; also at 200 vs. 100*

### SUMMARY

<b>101–109</b>	<b>Standard subdivisions of philosophy</b>
110	Metaphysics
111	Ontology
113	Cosmology (Philosophy of nature)
114	Space
115	Time
116	Change
117	Structure
118	Force and energy
119	Number and quantity
120	Epistemology, causation, humankind
121	Epistemology (Theory of knowledge)
122	Causation
123	Determinism and indeterminism
124	Teleology
126	The self
127	The unconscious and the subconscious
128	Humankind
129	Origin and destiny of individual souls
130	Parapsychology and occultism
131	Parapsychological and occult methods for achieving well-being, happiness, success
133	Specific topics in parapsychology and occultism
135	Dreams and mysteries
137	Divinatory graphology
138	Physiognomy
139	Phrenology

140	Specific philosophical schools and viewpoints
141	Idealism and related systems and doctrines
142	Critical philosophy
143	Bergsonism and intuitionism
144	Humanism and related systems and doctrines
145	Sensationalism
146	Naturalism and related systems and doctrines
147	Pantheism and related systems and doctrines
148	Dogmatism, eclecticism, liberalism, syncretism, traditionalism
149	Other philosophical systems and doctrines
150	Psychology
.1-9	Standard subdivisions, systems, viewpoints
152	Sensory perception, movement, emotions, physiological drives
153	Conscious mental processes and intelligence
154	Subconscious and altered states and processes
155	Differential and developmental psychology
156	Comparative psychology
158	Applied psychology
160	Philosophical logic
161	Induction
162	Deduction
165	Fallacies and sources of error
166	Syllogisms
167	Hypotheses
168	Argument and persuasion
169	Analogy
170	Ethics (Moral philosophy)
.1-9	Standard subdivisions and special topics of ethics
171	Ethical systems
172	Political ethics
173	Ethics of family relationships
174	Occupational ethics
175	Ethics of recreation, leisure, public performances, communication
176	Ethics of sex and reproduction
177	Ethics of social relations
178	Ethics of consumption
179	Other ethical norms
180	Ancient, medieval, eastern philosophy
.01-09	Standard subdivisions of ancient, medieval, eastern philosophy
.1-9	Standard subdivisions of ancient philosophy
181	Eastern philosophy
182	Pre-Socratic Greek philosophies
183	Sophistic, Socratic, related Greek philosophies
184	Platonic philosophy
185	Aristotelian philosophy
186	Skeptic and Neoplatonic philosophies
187	Epicurean philosophy
188	Stoic philosophy
189	Medieval western philosophy
190	Modern western and other noneastern philosophy
191	Philosophy of United States and Canada
192	Philosophy of British Isles
193	Philosophy of Germany and Austria
194	Philosophy of France
195	Philosophy of Italy
196	Philosophy of Spain and Portugal
197	Philosophy of Russia
198	Philosophy of Scandinavia and Finland
199	Philosophy in other geographic areas

**101 Theory of philosophy**

Class here works on the concept of philosophy, on the nature of the philosophical task, on the method of philosophy

Class schools of philosophical thought in 140; class ancient, medieval, eastern schools in 180

**102 Miscellany of philosophy****103 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances of philosophy****[104] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 16

**105 Serial publications of philosophy****106 Organizations and management of philosophy****107 Education, research, related topics of philosophy****108 Groups of people****109 History and collected biography**

Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 180–190

Not limited by period or place

**.2 Collected biography**

Do not use for individual persons; class in 180–190

**[.22] Collected biography**

Do not use; class in 109.2

**110 Metaphysics**

*For epistemology, causation, humankind, see 120*

**111 Ontology****.1 Existence, essence, substance, accidents****.2 Universals****.5 Nonbeing, nothingness****.6 Finite and infinite**

Including the absolute

**.8 Properties of being**

Class comprehensive works on truth in 121

- .82      **Unity**  
           Including identity, part-whole relationships  
           *See also 126 for personal identity*
- .84      **Good and evil**  
           *For ethics, see 170*
- .85      **Beauty**  
           Class here interdisciplinary works on aesthetics  
           *For aesthetics of a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., aesthetics of the fine arts 701.17*

**[112]      [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 18

**113      Cosmology (Philosophy of nature)**

Including cosmic harmony, origin of universe (cosmogony)

Class cosmology as a topic in astronomy in 523.1

*For specific topics of cosmology not provided for here, see 114–119*

**.8      Philosophy of life**

Origin and nature of life

Class origin and nature of human life in 128

**114      Space**

Class here relation of space and matter

Class matter in 117

**115      Time**

Including eternity, space and time, space-time, relation of time and motion

*For space, see 114*

**116      Change**

Including becoming, cycles, evolution, motion, process

Class relation of time and motion in 115

**117      Structure**

Including matter, form, order, chaos

Class relation of space and matter in 114

**118      Force and energy**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

**119      Number and quantity**

## 120 Epistemology, causation, humankind

### SUMMARY

121	Epistemology (Theory of knowledge)
122	Causation
123	Determinism and indeterminism
124	Teleology
126	The self
127	The unconscious and the subconscious
128	Humankind
129	Origin and destiny of individual souls

### 121 Epistemology (Theory of knowledge)

Class here coherence, correspondence theories of truth; comprehensive works on truth

Class knowledge and its extension in 001

*For truth as a classical property of being, see 111.8; for truth in logic, see 160*

#### .2 Possibility and limits of knowledge

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Including solipsism and problem of other minds

#### .3 Origin, sources, means of knowledge

Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

Including intuition, reason

Class reason as a human attribute in 128.33

#### .34 Perception

*For sensation, see 121.35*

#### .35 Sensation

Including vision

Class here sense knowledge

#### .4 Structure of knowledge

Subjective and objective components

Including concepts, ideas

#### .5 Doubt and denial

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class comprehensive works on doubt, denial, certainty, probability in 121.63

#### .6 Nature of inquiry

Including belief

Class faith in 121.7

- .63      **Certainty and probability**  
           Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
           Class here comprehensive works on doubt, denial, certainty, probability  
           *For doubt and denial, see 121.5*
- .65      **Evidence and criteria**  
           Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .68      **Meaning, interpretation, hermeneutics**  
           Standard subdivisions are added for meaning, interpretation, hermeneutics  
           together, for meaning alone  
           Including reference, semantics, semiotics  
           Class here interdisciplinary works on philosophy of language  
           Class philosophy of language in linguistics in 401  
           *See also 149.94 for general semantics as a school of linguistic  
           philosophy; also 401.4 for semiotics in linguistics; also 401.43 for  
           semantics in linguistics*
- .686     **Philosophical hermeneutics**  
           Class here interpretation
- .7        **Faith**  
           Class belief in 121.6; class religious faith in 200
- .8        **Worth and theory of values (Axiology)**  
           Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading  
           Class ethical values in 170

## 122      **Causation**

Class here chance versus cause

*For determinism and indeterminism, see 123; for teleology, see 124*

## 123      **Determinism and indeterminism**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Including contingency

### .3        **Chance**

Class chance versus cause in 122

### .5        **Freedom**

Including free will

### .7        **Necessity**

**124 Teleology**

Class here final cause

**[125] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 18

**126 The self**

Limited to topics named below

Class here consciousness of self as person, personal identity, personality, personhood

Class the unconscious and the subconscious in 127; class comprehensive works on consciousness in 128.2

*See also 111.82 for identity*

**127 The unconscious and the subconscious**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

**128 Humankind**

Class here philosophical anthropology; comprehensive works on philosophy of human life, on philosophy and psychology of human life

*For the self, see 126; for psychology, see 150*

*See also 599.9 for physical anthropology*

**.1 Soul**

*For origin and destiny of individual souls, see 129*

**.2 Mind**

Including intentionality, mind-body relationship

Class here comprehensive works on consciousness

*For consciousness of self as person, see 126*

**.3 Attributes and faculties**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Including imagination, intellect, memory, will

*For perception, see 121.34; for sensation, see 121.35; for free will, see 123.5*

**.33 Reason and rationality**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class reason as an instrument of knowledge in 121.3

*For science of reasoning (logic), see 160*

*See also 149.7 for rationalism*

.37 Emotion

Class love in 128.46

**.4 Human action and experience**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Nature, conditions, origin

Class here comprehensive works on philosophical counseling

*For collections of texts for philosophical counseling clients on a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., a general collection of philosophical texts for philosophical counseling clients 100; for philosophical counseling focusing on specific issues or types of issues, see the issue or type of issue, e.g., philosophical counseling focusing on ethics issues 170*

.46 Love

*For ethics of love, see 177.7*

**.5 Human death**

Class interdisciplinary works on death in 306.9

**.6 Body**

**129 Origin and destiny of individual souls**

Including immortality, incarnation, reincarnation, transmigration

Class personal accounts of previous incarnations in 133.90135; class interdisciplinary works on reincarnation in 202.37

**130 Parapsychology and occultism**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here paranormal phenomena, frauds in occultism

Class phenomena of religious experience in 200; class interdisciplinary works on controversial knowledge and paranormal phenomena in 001.9

*See Manual at 001.9 and 130; also at 130 vs. 200*

**SUMMARY**

- 131 Parapsychological and occult methods for achieving well-being, happiness, success
- 133 Specific topics in parapsychology and occultism
- 135 Dreams and mysteries
- 137 Divinatory graphology
- 138 Physiognomy
- 139 Phrenology

- .112            Forecasting and forecasts
- Do not use for comprehensive works on parapsychological and occult forecasting and forecasts; class in 133.3
- Class a specific type of forecasting or forecast with the type, without adding notation 0112 from Table 1, e.g., astrological methods of forecasting 133.5

**131            Parapsychological and occult methods for achieving well-being, happiness, success**

Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

Class interdisciplinary works limited to psychological and parapsychological or occult techniques for achieving personal well-being, happiness, success in 158; class interdisciplinary works on successful living, on management of personal and family living in 646.7. Class a specific method of parapsychology and occultism for achieving well-being with the method in 133–139, e.g., spells and charms 133.44

**[132]        [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 16

**133            Specific topics in parapsychology and occultism**

*For parapsychological and occult methods of achieving well-being, happiness, success, see 131; for Rosicrucianism, Hermeticism, cabala, see 135.4*

**SUMMARY**

- 133.1            Apparitions
- .2                Parapsychological and occult aspects of specific things
- .3                Divinatory arts
- .4                Demonology and witchcraft
- .5                Astrology
- .6                Palmistry
- .8                Psychic phenomena
- .9                Spiritualism

- [.01–.09]        Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 130.1–130.9

**.1            Apparitions**

Class here ghosts

Class folkloristic ghost stories in 398.25; class ghosts as a subject of folklore in 398.47; class literary accounts of ghosts in 808.80375; class interdisciplinary works on spirits (discarnate beings) in 133.9

- .109            History, geographic treatment, biography

Class here works that treat two or more haunted places during a specific historical period or in a specific geographic area, e.g., haunted places in Cornwall 133.1094237

*For specific haunted places, see 133.129*

- .12            Haunted places

- [.120 9] History, geographic treatment, biography  
Do not use; class in 133.109
- .122 Specific types of haunted places  
Including haunted churches, forests, graveyards, houses  
Class specific haunted places regardless of type in 133.129
- .129 Specific haunted places  
Limited to works that treat only one single haunted place  
Add to base number 133.129 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., the Tower of London 133.1294215, old Monterey's Hotel del Monte 133.1297947  
Class works that treat two or more haunted places during a specific historical period or in a specific geographic area in 133.109
- .14 Specific kinds of apparitions  
Including animal ghosts, hobgoblins, phantasms of the living  
Class haunted places regardless of kind of apparition in 133.12; class materialization of spirits as a mediumistic phenomenon in 133.92
- .142 Poltergeists
- .2 Parapsychological and occult aspects of specific things**  
Specific things used for more than one purpose, in more than one branch of parapsychology and occultism  
*For a specific parapsychological or occult use of a specific thing, see the use in 131–139, e.g., fortune-telling by crystals 133.322, fortune-telling by cards 133.3242; for a specific thing in a specific branch of parapsychology and occultism, see the branch in 131–139, e.g., use of candles in witchcraft 133.43028, astrological aspects of planets 133.53*  
*See also 001.94 for pyramid power; also 135.3 for parapsychological aspects of dreams*
- .25 Natural things
- .250 02–.250 08 Physical sciences, space sciences, groups of people  
Add to base number 133.25 the numbers following 5 in 500.2–500.8, e.g., occult use of a collection of natural things from various physical sciences for multiple purposes, such as healing, personality analysis, fortune-telling 133.25002
- .250 1–.250 9 Standard subdivisions and natural history  
Add to base number 133.25 the numbers following 5 in 501–509, e.g., occult use of seasons for multiple purposes, such as healing, personality analysis, fortune-telling 133.25082
- .251–.259 Mathematics, astronomy, physics, chemistry, earth sciences, paleontology, biology, plants, animals  
Add to base number 133.25 the numbers following 5 in 510–590, e.g., occult use of crystals for multiple purposes, such as healing, personality analysis, fortune-telling 133.2548

**.3 Divinatory arts**

Including fortune-telling by bones, dice, pendulum

Class here works on the symbolism of divinatory arts and objects, comprehensive works on divination as an aspect of parapsychology and religion, comprehensive works on occult methods of foretelling the future

Class use of extrasensory perception for divination in 133.82–133.86; class interdisciplinary works on forecasting in 003.2

*For astrology, see 133.5; for palmistry, see 133.6; for dream books, see 135.3; for divinatory graphology, see 137; for physiognomy, see 138; for divination as a religious practice, see 203.2*

*See also 303.49 for social forecasting*

- .309 2            **Biography**
- Class here persons known chiefly for their predictions rather than their methods of predicting, e.g., Nostradamus (Michel de Notredame)
- .32            **Fortune-telling by crystals and stones; dowsing; fortune-telling by cards, tea leaves and coffee grounds, oracles and sibyls**
- .322            **Fortune-telling by crystals and stones**
- Standard subdivisions are added for crystals and stones together, for crystals alone
- .323            **Dowsing**
- Location of living and inert substances through human sensitivity to latent radiation and use of divining rods, pendulums, other devices
- Class here radiesthesia
- 
- > 133.323 2–133.323 7 **Location of specific substances**
- Class comprehensive works in 133.323
- .323 2            **Location of water**
- .323 3            **Location of metals**
- .323 7            **Location of petroleum and gases**
- .324            **Fortune-telling by cards, tea leaves and coffee grounds, oracles and sibyls**
- .324 2            **Fortune-telling by cards (Cartomancy)**
- .324 24            **Fortune-telling by tarot**
- .324 4            **Fortune-telling by tea leaves and coffee grounds**
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .324 8            **Fortune-telling by oracles and sibyls**
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

- .33 Symbolic divination  
Including divination with I Ching, names, runes  
*For fortune-telling by cards, see 133.3242*
- .333 Geomancy
- .333 7 Feng shui
- .334 Divinatory signs and omens  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .335 Numerology
- .335 4 Fortune-telling by numbers  
Including fortune-telling by birthdays  
*See also 133.5 for astrology*
- .335 9 Symbolism of specific numbers
- .4 Demonology and witchcraft**  
Class here black arts  
*For divinatory arts, see 133.3*  
*See also 299.675 for voodoo as a religion*  
*See Manual at 130 vs. 200*
- .42 Demonology  
*See also 202.16 for religious beliefs about demons*  
*See Manual at 130 vs. 200*
- .422 Satanism (Devil worship)  
*See also 299 for Satanism regarded as a religion*  
*See Manual at 130 vs. 200*
- .423 Evil spirits  
Including incubi, succubi, vampires, werewolves
- .425 The evil eye
- .426 Demoniac possession
- .427 Exorcism of demons

- .43            Magic and witchcraft  
                  Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                  Class here magicians' manuals, e.g., grimoire; witch hunting;  
                  interdisciplinary works on witchcraft  
                  *For spells, curses, charms, see 133.44; for witchcraft as a religious  
                  practice, see 203.3; for religions based on modern revivals of witchcraft,  
                  see 299.94*  
                  *See Manual at 130 vs. 200*
- .430 9            History, geographic treatment, biography  
                  Class here history of witch crazes
- .44            Spells, curses, charms  
                  Including amulets, mascots, talismans
- .442            Love spells and charms  
                  Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .443            Good luck spells and charms  
                  Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .446            Therapeutic spells and charms  
                  Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .5            Astrology**  
                  Class here works on the symbolism of astrology
- [.501 12]            Forecasting and forecasts  
                  Do not use; class in 133.5
- .508 82            Specific religious groups  
                  Do not use for types or schools of astrology originating in or  
                  associated with a specific religious group; class in 133.594  
                  Class here astrology in general with respect to specific religious  
                  groups
- .508 9            Specific ethnic and national groups  
                  Do not use for types or schools of astrology originating in or  
                  associated with a specific ethnic or national group; class in 133.593  
                  Class here astrology in general with respect to specific ethnic and  
                  national groups
- .509            History, geographic treatment, biography
- .509 3-.509 9            Specific continents, countries, localities; extraterrestrial worlds  
                  Do not use for types or schools of astrology originating in or  
                  associated with a specific area; class in 133.592  
                  Class here astrology in general in a specific area

- 
- > 133.52–133.58 Specific aspects of western astrology
- Class specific aspects of nonwestern astrology in 133.59; class comprehensive works in 133.5
- .52 Signs of the zodiac
- Class planets in 133.53
- .526 First six signs
- .526 2 Aries
- .526 3 Taurus
- .526 4 Gemini
- .526 5 Cancer
- .526 6 Leo
- .526 7 Virgo
- .527 Second six signs
- .527 2 Libra
- .527 3 Scorpio
- .527 4 Sagittarius
- .527 5 Capricorn
- .527 6 Aquarius
- .527 7 Pisces
- .53 Planets, sun, moon
- Standard subdivisions are added for planets, sun, moon together; for planets alone
- Class here positions of planets
- .530 4 Special topics of planets, sun, moon
- .530 42 Houses
- Class houses in relation to the zodiac in 133.52
- .530 44 Aspects
- .531 Sun
- .532 Moon
- .533 Mercury
- .534 Venus
- .535 Mars
- .536 Jupiter
- .537 Saturn

- .538 Uranus
- .539 Neptune, Pluto, asteroids, related bodies  
Former heading: Trans-uranian planets, and asteroids
- .539 1 Neptune
- .539 2 Pluto
- .539 8 Asteroids  
Including Chiron
- .54 Horoscopes  
Class works that emphasize parts or aspects of horoscopes with the part or aspect, e.g., houses 133.53042; class horoscopes for persons associated with a particular part or aspect of the horoscope with the part or aspect, e.g., horoscopes for Gemini 133.5264
- [.540 112] Forecasting and forecasts  
Do not use; class in 133.54
- .540 4 Special topics of horoscopes
- .540 42 Daily guides and birthday books
- .542 Casting horoscopes
- .548 Horoscopes of individuals  
Class horoscopes of individuals connected with specific topics in 133.58
- .55 Astrological ephemerides
- .56 Horary astrology
- .58 Application of astrology to specific topics  
Add to base-number 133.58 notation 001–999, e.g., medical astrology 133.5861, astrological guides to dating 133.5864677, astrological analysis and prediction about the United States and its leaders 133.58973; however, do not add notation 0112 from Table 1 for forecasts and forecasting
- .59 Types or schools of astrology originating in or associated with a specific area; originating in or associated with a specific ethnic or national group; originating in or associated with a specific religion  
Class here nonwestern types or schools of astrology  
Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 133.59 in the number coming last, e.g., Hindu astrology in India 133.594450954 (*not* 133.59254)
- .592 Types or schools of astrology originating in or associated with a specific area  
Add to base number 133.592 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., Chinese astrology 133.59251

.593 Types or schools of astrology originating in or associated with a specific ethnic or national group

Add to base number 133.593 notation 1–9 from Table 5, e.g., Aztec astrology 133.59397452

Class types or schools of astrology originating in or associated with an ethnic or national group in areas where the group predominates in 133.592

.594 Types or schools of astrology originating in or associated with a specific religious group

Add to base number 133.594 the numbers following 29 in 292–299, e.g., Hindu astrology 133.59445

## **.6 Palmistry**

[.601 12] Forecasting and forecasts

Do not use; class in 133.6

## **.8 Psychic phenomena**

Class here psi phenomena, psychic communication, psychic talents and gifts; comprehensive works treating extrasensory perception (ESP), spiritualism, and ghosts together

Class comprehensive works on divination in 133.3

*For ghosts, see 133.1; for spiritualism, see 133.9*

[.801 12] Forecasting and forecasts

Do not use; class in 133.8

## > 133.82–133.86 Extrasensory perception

Class extrasensory perception of animals in 133.89; class comprehensive works on extrasensory perception in 133.8

.82 Telepathy

.84 Clairvoyance

[.840 112] Forecasting and forecasts

Do not use; class in 133.84

.85 Clairaudience

[.850 112] Forecasting and forecasts

Do not use; class in 133.85

.86 Precognition

[.860 112] Forecasting and forecasts

Do not use; class in 133.86

.88 Psychokinesis

*For levitation as a mediumistic phenomenon, see 133.92*

- .89      Animal magnetism, hypnosis, extrasensory perception of animals, aura  
           Class interdisciplinary works on animal magnetism in 154.72; class  
           interdisciplinary works on hypnotism in 154.7  
           *For use of hypnosis for past-life recall, see 133.90135*
- .892      Aura  
           Including Kirlian photography of aura  
           Class human aura when scientifically considered in 612.0142  
           *See also 778.3 for photographic aspects of Kirlian photography*
- .9      Spiritualism**  
           The phenomena and systems of ideas connected with belief in communication  
           with spirits (discarnate beings)  
           Class here communication with extraterrestrial spirits, necromancy,  
           interdisciplinary works on spirits (discarnate beings)  
           *For ghosts, see 133.1*  
           *See also 202.13 for spiritualism as a religious doctrine; also 289.9 for*  
           *spiritualist Christian sects; also 292–299 for other spiritualist sects and*  
           *religions*  
           *See Manual at 130 vs. 200*
- .901      Philosophy and theory; personal survival, nature of spiritual world  
           and life after death; reincarnation  
           Notation 01 from Table 1 as modified below
- .901 3      Personal survival, nature of spiritual world and life after death  
           Class philosophical discussions of personal survival and life after  
           death in 129
- .901 35      Reincarnation  
           Including use of hypnosis for past-life recall  
           Class here personal recollections of previous incarnations,  
           transmigrations  
           Class interdisciplinary works on reincarnation in 202.37
- .91      Mediumship  
           Nature and practice  
           Class here channeling, psychic experiences of individual mediums  
           *For specific mediumistic phenomena, see 133.92*
- .92      Specific mediumistic phenomena  
           Including ectoplasm, levitation, materialization and dematerialization,  
           rapping, spirit photography, table tipping, transportation  
           *For psychic messages, see 133.93*

.93            **Psychic messages**  
                   Method and content of communications purporting to come from discarnate entities

Including psychic messages on specific nonreligious topics not provided for in 130–139, e.g., unidentified flying objects (UFOs)

*For psychic messages on religious subjects, see 200. For messages on a specific subject in paranormal phenomena, see the subject, e.g., messages concerning nature of spiritual world and life after death 133.9013*

.932           **Specific methods**  
                   Including automatic writing and utterance; use of audiotapes

.932 5           **Ouija board**

.95            **Astral projection (Out-of-body experience)**

**[134]        [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 16

**135        Dreams and mysteries**

Class mysteries of magic and witchcraft in 133.43; class interdisciplinary works on mysteries in the sense of reported phenomena not explained, not fully verified in 001.94

**.3        Dreams**

Including dream books

Class interdisciplinary works on psychological and parapsychological aspects of dreams in 154.63

**.4        Rosicrucianism, Hermetism, cabala**

*See also 133.32424 for tarot*

.43            Rosicrucianism

.45            Hermetism

.47            Cabala

*See also 296.16 for cabala in Judaism*

**[136]        [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 16

**137        Divinatory graphology**

Class interdisciplinary works on graphology and use of graphology in analyzing character in 155.282

**138 Physiognomy**

Class here comprehensive works on determination of character or divination from analysis of physical features

*For palmistry, see 133.6; for phrenology, see 139*

**139 Phrenology**

Determination of mental capacities from skull structures

**140 Specific philosophical schools and viewpoints**

Including the concept of ideology, of a world view, of a system of beliefs

Class development, description, critical appraisal, collected writings, biographical treatment of individual philosophers regardless of viewpoint in 180–190; class comprehensive works on modern western and ancient, medieval, eastern viewpoints in 100; class comprehensive works on modern western viewpoints in 190. Class a specific topic or branch of philosophy treated from a specific philosophical viewpoint with the topic or branch, e.g., existentialist ontology 111, realist epistemology 121; class ideologies concerning a specific discipline with the discipline, e.g., political ideologies 320.5

*For ancient, medieval, eastern schools, see 180*

*See also 171 for systems and schools of ethics*

**SUMMARY**

141	<b>Idealism and related systems and doctrines</b>
142	<b>Critical philosophy</b>
143	<b>Bergsonism and intuitionism</b>
144	<b>Humanism and related systems and doctrines</b>
145	<b>Sensationalism</b>
146	<b>Naturalism and related systems and doctrines</b>
147	<b>Pantheism and related systems and doctrines</b>
148	<b>Dogmatism, eclecticism, liberalism, syncretism, traditionalism</b>
149	<b>Other philosophical systems and doctrines</b>

**141 Idealism and related systems and doctrines**

Standard subdivisions are added for idealism and related systems and doctrines together, for idealism alone

Including panpsychism, spiritualism, subjectivism, voluntarism

**.2 Modern Platonism and Neoplatonism**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class comprehensive works on Platonism in 184; class comprehensive works on Neoplatonism in 186.4

**.3 Transcendentalism****.4 Individualism****.5 Personalism****.6 Romanticism**

**142 Critical philosophy**

Class critical realism in 149.2

**.3 Kantianism**

Class here Neo-Kantianism

**.7 Phenomenology**

.78 Existentialism

**143 Bergsonism and intuitionism****144 Humanism and related systems and doctrines**

Standard subdivisions are added for humanism and related systems and doctrines together, for humanism alone

**.3 Pragmatism****.5 Instrumentalism****.6 Utilitarianism****145 Sensationalism**

Class here ideology as the system based on analysis of ideas into their sensory elements

Class works that discuss ideology, not as a specific philosophical school, but as systems of beliefs in general in 140

**146 Naturalism and related systems and doctrines**

Standard subdivisions are added for naturalism and related systems and doctrines together, for naturalism alone

Including dynamism, energism

**.3 Materialism**

.32 Dialectical materialism

*For dialectical materialism as a philosophical foundation of Marxism, see 335.4112*

**.4 Positivism and related systems**

Standard subdivisions are added for positivism and related systems together, for positivism alone

Variant name for positivism: comtism

Class here comprehensive works on the analytical movement

*For linguistic analysis, see 149.94*

.42 Logical positivism (Logical empiricism)

.44 Empiricism

- .5     **Atomism**  
           Including logical atomism
- .6     **Mechanism**
- .7     **Evolutionism and process philosophy**
- 147   **Pantheism and related systems and doctrines**  
           Standard subdivisions are added for pantheism and related systems and doctrines together, for pantheism alone  
           Including animism, occasionalism, panentheism, parallelism, vitalism
- .3     **Monism**
- .4     **Dualism and pluralism**  
           Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- 148   **Dogmatism, eclecticism, liberalism, syncretism, traditionalism**
- 149   **Other philosophical systems and doctrines**  
           Including constructivism, objectivism, relativism
- .1     **Conceptualism and nominalism**  
           Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .2     **Realism**  
           Class here neorealism, critical realism
- .3     **Mysticism**  
           Class occult mysticism in I30; class religious mysticism in 204.22
- .5     **Optimism**  
           Class here meliorism
- .6     **Pessimism**
- .7     **Rationalism and related systems and doctrines**  
           Standard subdivisions are added for rationalism and related systems and doctrines together, for rationalism alone  
           Including innatism, intellectualism, nativism
- .72    Agnosticism
- .73    Skepticism
- .8     **Nihilism**  
           Class here fatalism  
           *For existentialism, see 142.78*

**.9 Miscellaneous systems and doctrines**

Limited to systems and doctrines provided for below

[.901–.909] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 149.01–149.09

.91 Neo-Aristotelianism, neo-scholasticism, neo-Thomism

Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

Class ancient Aristotelianism in 185; class medieval scholasticism, medieval Thomism in 189.4

.94 Linguistic philosophies

Including ordinary language philosophy

Class here general semantics as a school of linguistic philosophy (e.g., the school of Alfred Korzybski)

Class semantics, semiotics as philosophical topics in 121.68; class comprehensive works on the analytical movement in 146.4

*See also 302.2 for interdisciplinary works on semiotics; also 401 for philosophy of language*

[.96] Structuralism

Relocated to 149.97

.97 Structuralism [*formerly* 149.96], poststructuralism, postmodernism

Class here deconstruction

Class structuralism, poststructuralism, postmodernism in relation to a specific discipline with the discipline, e.g., in relation to literary criticism 801.95

**150 Psychology**

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., emotions of children 155.4124 (*not* 152.4):

Aptitude tests	153.94
Comparative psychology	156
Subconscious and altered states and processes	154
Differential and developmental psychology	155
Sensory perception, movement, emotions, physiological drives	152
Conscious mental processes and intelligence	153.94)
Applied psychology	158

Class testing for aptitude in a specific subject in 153.94; class social psychology in 302

*For abnormal and clinical psychologies, see 616.89. For psychological principles (other than principles of aptitude testing) of a specific subject, see the subject, plus notation 019 from Table 1, e.g., psychological principles of advertising 659.1019*

*See Manual at 302–307 vs. 150, T1–019*

## SUMMARY

- 150.1--9      Standard subdivisions, systems, viewpoints  
 152      Sensory perception, movement, emotions, physiological drives  
 153      Conscious mental processes and intelligence  
 154      Subconscious and altered states and processes  
 155      Differential and developmental psychology  
 156      Comparative psychology  
 158      Applied psychology
- .1      **Philosophy and theory; systems, viewpoints**  
       Notation 01 from Table 1 as modified below  
       Do not use for schools of psychology; class in 150.19
- .19      Systems, schools, viewpoints  
       Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading  
       *See Manual at 152-158 vs. 150.19*
- .192      Existential, faculty, phenomenological, rational schools
- .193      Functionalism  
       Including dynamic, holistic, hormic, organismic psychologies
- .194      Reductionism
- .194 3      Behaviorism
- .194 32      Watsonian behaviorism
- .194 34      Neobehaviorism (Pragmatic reductionism)  
       Including systems of Guthrie, Hull, Skinner, Tolman
- .194 4      Reflexology (Associationism)  
       Including systems of Pavlov, Bekhterev, Thorndike  
       *For associative learning, see 153.1526*
- .195      Psychoanalytic systems  
       *See Manual at 616.89 vs. 150.195*
- .195 2      Freudian system
- .195 3      Adlerian system
- .195 4      Jungian system
- .195 7      Neopsychoanalytic systems  
       Including systems of Horney, Fromm, Sullivan
- .198      Other systems
- .198 2      Gestalt psychology
- .198 4      Field theory

- .198 5            Personal construct psychology  
                     Class here personal construct theory
- .198 6            Humanistic psychology  
                     *For transpersonal psychology, see 150.1987*
- .198 7            Transpersonal psychology  
                     Class comprehensive works on humanistic psychology in 150.1986
- .198 8            Positive psychology

**.2        Miscellany**

- .287            Testing and measurement  
                     Class comprehensive works on intelligence testing and personality testing in 153.93  
                     *See also 174.915 for ethics of psychological testing*

**.7        Education, research, related topics**

- .724            Experimental research  
                     *See also 174.915 for the ethics of research in psychology*

**.8        Groups of people**

Do not use for psychology of groups of people; class in 155

**.9        History, geographic treatment, biography**

- .93–.99        Specific continents, countries, localities; extraterrestrial worlds  
                     Do not use for national psychology of specific countries; class in 155.89

**[151]    [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 16

**>        152–158 Specific topics in psychology**

Class comprehensive works in 150

*See Manual at 152–158 vs. 150.19*

## 152 Sensory perception, movement, emotions, physiological drives

Class here sensory perception, movement, emotions, physiological drives of adults in general [*formerly* 155.6]; comprehensive works on psychology and neurophysiology of sensory perception, movement, emotions, physiological drives

Class sensory perception, movement, emotions, physiological drives of adults by marital status and relationships in 155.64; class sensory perception, movement, emotions, physiological drives of people in specific stages of adulthood in 155.65–155.67

*For neurophysiology of sensory perception, movement, emotions, physiological drives, see 612.8*

*See Manual at 612.8 vs. 152*

### SUMMARY

152.1	Sensory perception
.3	Movements and motor functions
.4	Emotions
.5	Physiological drives
.8	Threshold, discrimination, reaction-time studies

#### .1 Sensory perception

Class here receptive processes and functions, discrimination, thresholds

*For threshold and discrimination studies, see 152.82*

*See Manual at 153.7 vs. 152.1*

#### .14 Visual perception

##### .142 Spatial perception

Class comprehensive works on spatial perception in 153.752

##### .142 2 Visual acuity

##### .142 3 Pattern perception

Including form perception

##### .142 5 Movement perception

Class comprehensive works on movement perception in 153.754

#### .143 Brightness perception

#### .145 Color perception

#### .148 Optical illusions

Including afterimages

Class here interdisciplinary works on optical illusions

*For a specific aspect or use of optical illusions, see the aspect or use, e.g., physiological aspects 612.84, use of optical illusions in art 701*

#### .15 Auditory perception

- .152 Pitch perception
- .154 Volume perception
- .157 Timbre perception (Tone discrimination)
- .158 Localization
- .16 Chemical sensory perception
- .166 Perception of smells
- .167 Perception of tastes
- .18 Other types of sensory perception
- .182 Cutaneous perception
  - Class here tactile perception, touch
- .182 2 Thermal perception
- .182 3 Pressure perception
  - Including perception of vibration
- .182 4 Pain perception
- .188 Proprioceptive and visceral perceptions
  - Class here biofeedback
- .188 2 Proprioceptive perception
  - Including vestibular perception
  - Class here kinesthetic perception
- .188 6 Visceral perceptions
  - Including fatigue, hunger, thirst, well-being
- .189 Synesthesia
- .3 Movements and motor functions**
  - Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
  - For reaction-time studies, see 152.83*
- .32 Involuntary movements
  - Class here automatic movements
  - For habits and habit formation, see 152.33*
- .322 Reflexes
  - Class comprehensive works on reflexology as a psychological system in 150.1944
- .322 3 Innate reflexes
- .322 4 Conditioned reflexes

- .324 Instinctive movements  
*For innate reflexes, see 152.3223*
- .33 Habits and habit formation  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
 Class here comprehensive works on habits  
*For conscious mental habits, see 153*  
*See also 362.29 for substance abuse*
- .334 Motor learning
- .335 Handedness and laterality  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .35 Voluntary movements
- .38 Special motor functions
- .382 Locomotion
- .384 Expressive movements  
 Noncognitive aspects  
 Class meaning of movements (as in body language) and cognitive aspects  
 in 153.69
- .384 2 Vocal expressions
- .384 5 Graphic expressions
- .385 Coordination
- .4 Emotions**  
 Including aversion, hate; embarrassment; hope; grief, sadness  
 Class here affects, attitudes, feelings, moods, sentiments; emotional intelligence  
 Class character traits such as bashfulness in 155.232; class loneliness in 155.92;  
 class grief associated with bereavement by death in 155.937; class depression in  
 616.8527; class comprehensive works on emotions and cognition in 153
- .41 Love and affection  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
 Including empathy
- .42 Pleasure, enjoyment, happiness, joy, ecstasy  
 Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- .43 Wit and humor  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .44 Guilt and shame  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

- .46 Fear, anxiety, worry  
Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- .47 Anger  
Including frustration  
Class here aggressive moods and feelings  
Class comprehensive works on psychology of aggression in 155.232
- .48 Jealousy and envy  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .5 Physiological drives**  
Class motivation, comprehensive works on drives in 153.8
- .8 Threshold, discrimination, reaction-time studies**
- .82 Threshold and discrimination studies  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .83 Reaction-time studies

## 153 **Conscious mental processes and intelligence**

Standard subdivisions are added for conscious mental processes and intelligence together, for conscious mental processes alone

Class here conscious mental processes and intelligence of adults in general [formerly 155.6], cognition, cognitive psychology, cognitive science, intellectual processes, comprehensive works on emotions and cognition

Class conscious mental processes and intelligence of adults by marital status and relationships in 155.64; class conscious mental processes and intelligence of people in specific stages of adulthood in 155.65–155.67; class comprehensive works on artificial intelligence and cognitive science in 006.3

*For emotions, emotional intelligence, see 152.4*

*See also 121 for epistemology; also 128.2 for mind-body problem in philosophy*

*See Manual at 006.3 vs. 153; also at 153 vs. 153.4*

### SUMMARY

- 153.1 **Memory and learning**  
.2 **Formation and association of ideas**  
.3 **Imagination, imagery, creativity**  
.4 **Thought, thinking, reasoning, intuition, value, judgment**  
.6 **Communication**  
.7 **Perceptual processes**  
.8 **Will (Volition)**  
.9 **Intelligence and aptitudes**

[.028 7] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 153.93

## **.1 Memory and learning**

- .12 Memory
  - Class memory with respect to a specific topic with the topic, e.g., memory and dreams 154.63
  - For types of memory, see 153.13; for mnemonics, see 153.14*
- .122 Retention
- .123 Recall and reproduction
  - Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .124 Recognition
- .125 Forgetting
- .13 Types of memory
  - [.130 1–.130 9] Standard subdivisions
    - Do not use; class in 153.1201–153.1209
  - .132 Visual memory
  - .133 Auditory memory
  - .134 Visual-auditory memory
- .14 Mnemonics
- .15 Learning
  - Class application of learning psychology to education in 370.15
- .152 Methods of learning
  - .152 2 Rote learning, learning by repetition
    - Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
  - .152 3 Learning by imitation
  - .152 4 Trial-and-error learning
  - .152 6 Associative learning
    - Including Pavlovian conditioning (classical conditioning), operant conditioning
    - Class comprehensive works on associationism in 150.1944
  - .152 8 Discrimination learning
- .153 Factors in learning
  - .153 2 Attention and concentration
    - Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
  - .153 3 Interest and enthusiasm
    - Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
  - .153 4 Motivation
- .154 Transfer of learning

- .158 Learning curves
- .2 Formation and association of ideas**
- .22 Association of ideas
- .23 Concepts and concept formation  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
*For abstraction, see 153.24*
- .24 Abstraction
- .3 Imagination, imagery, creativity**  
Standard subdivisions are added for imagination, imagery, creativity together;  
for imagination alone  
Class here daydreams, fantasies, reveries considered as aspects of the  
imagination  
Class comprehensive works on daydreams, fantasies, reveries in 154.3
- .32 Imagery  
Including visualization
- .35 Creativity  
Class here interdisciplinary works on creativity  
*For creativity in a specific field, see the field, plus notation 019 from  
Table 1, e.g., creativity in the arts 700.19*
- .4 Thought, thinking, reasoning, intuition, value, judgment**  
*For formation and association of ideas, see 153.2*  
*See Manual at 153 vs. 153.4*
- [402 87] Testing and measurement  
Do not use; class in 153.93
- .42 Thought and thinking  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
*For reasoning, see 153.43*
- .43 Reasoning  
Class here problem solving  
Class logical processes of reasoning and problem solving in 160
- .432 Inductive reasoning  
Including inference
- .433 Deductive reasoning
- .44 Intuition
- .45 Value

- .46 Judgment  
*For moral judgment, see 155.232*
- .6 Communication**  
 Class here individual aspects of interpersonal communication  
 Class sociolinguistics in 306.44; class psychology of language and language processing (psycholinguistics) in 401.9; class psychology of reading in 418.4019; class social psychology of, interdisciplinary works on communication in 302.2
- .68 Listening  
 Class speech perception in 401.9
- .69 Nonverbal communication  
 Class here meaning of movements, body language; cognitive processes involved in interpreting movements
- .7 Perceptual processes**  
 Perceptual apprehension and understanding  
*For extrasensory perception, see 133.82–133.86; for sensory perception, see 152.1*  
*See Manual at 153.7 vs. 152.1*
- .73 Basic elements  
 Including apperception  
 Class basic elements of a specific type of perception in 153.75  
*See also 155.2844 for thematic apperception tests*
- .733 Attention  
 Including listening, looking
- .736 Subliminal perception
- .74 Errors (Normal illusions)
- .75 Types of perception  
 Class social perception, social risk perception in 302.12
- [.750 1–.750 9] Standard subdivisions  
 Do not use; class in 153.701–153.709
- .752 Spatial perception  
 Including size perception  
 Class visual spatial perception in 152.142
- .753 Time and rhythm perception  
 Standard subdivisions are added for time and rhythm perception together, for time perception alone

- .754            Movement perception  
                   Class visual perception of movement in 152.1425
- .758            Face perception
- .8            Will (Volition)**  
                   Including self-control  
                   Class here intentionality, motivation; comprehensive works on drives  
                   *For physiological drives, see 152.5*
- .83            Choice and decision  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .85            Modification of will  
                   Class here behavior modification and attitude change when reference is to  
                   bending the will or changing conscious intent  
                   *See also 155.25 for modification of character and personality*
- .852            Persuasion
- .853            Brainwashing
- .854            Conformity
- .9            Intelligence and aptitudes**  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Class here intellect, intelligence levels, multiple intelligences  
                   Class emotional intelligence in 152.4; class factors in differential and  
                   developmental psychology that affect intelligence and aptitudes in 155
- [.902 87]            Testing and measurement  
                   Do not use for intelligence tests; class in 153.93. Do not use for  
                   aptitude tests; class in 153.94
- .93            Intelligence tests  
                   Class here comprehensive works on testing and measurement of cognition,  
                   of conscious mental processes, of intelligence and personality  
                   *For aptitude tests, see 153.94; for personality tests, see 155.28; for  
                   educational tests and measurements, see 371.26; for neuropsychological  
                   tests, see 616.80475*
- .94            Aptitude tests  
                   Tests for special abilities  
                   Class here vocational interest tests  
                   Class use of aptitude and vocational interest tests for academic prognosis  
                   and placement in 371.264; class comprehensive works on vocational  
                   interests in 158.6  
                   *See also 371.26 for achievement tests and measurements*

- .940 001–.940 009      Standard subdivisions
- .940 01–.949 99      Tests for aptitudes in specific fields
- Add to base number 153.94 notation 001–999, e.g., tests for musical ability 153.9478
- .98      Superior intelligence

## 154      **Subconscious and altered states and processes**

### .2      **The subconscious**

Including works that emphasize the subconscious in treating relations among the id, ego, superego

Class works that emphasize the ego in 155.2

### .3      **Daydreams, fantasies, reveries**

Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

*For daydreams, fantasies, reveries considered as aspects of imagination, see 153.3*

### .4      **Altered states of consciousness**

Including altered states due to use of drugs; hallucinations

### .6      **Sleep phenomena**

Class physiological aspects of sleep in 612.821

#### .63      Dreams

Class here dream interpretation, interdisciplinary works on dreams

*For parapsychological aspects of dreams, see 135.3; for physiological aspects of dreams, see 612.821*

#### .632      Nightmares

Use of this number for other types of dreams discontinued; class in 154.63

#### [.634]      Analysis of dreams

Number discontinued; class in 154.63

#### .64      Sleepwalking (Somnambulism)

### .7      **Hypnotism**

Class here interdisciplinary works on hypnotism

*For psychic aspects of hypnotism, see 133.89; for medical applications of hypnotism, see 615.8512*

#### .72      Animal magnetism

#### .76      Induction of hypnosis

#### .77      Hypnotic phenomena

- .772 Phenomena during trance  
 .774 Posthypnotic phenomena

## 155 Differential and developmental psychology

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Including role of play in development

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by \* as follows:

- 2 Sensory perception, movement, emotions, physiological drives  
 Add to 2 the numbers following 152 in 152.1–152.8, e.g., emotions 24, emotions of young people, of sixteen-year-olds 155.5124  
 Subdivisions are added for people of any specific age within an age group
- 3 Conscious mental processes and intelligence  
 Standard subdivisions are added for conscious mental processes and intelligence together, for conscious mental processes alone  
 Add to 3 the numbers following 153 in 153.1–153.9, e.g., creativity 335, intelligence tests 393, intelligence tests for young people, for sixteen-year-olds 155.51393; however, for aptitude tests, see 153.940008  
 Subdivisions are added for people of any specific age within an age group  
 Class sensory perception, movement, emotions, physiological drives in 2
- 8 Individual, evolutionary, environmental psychology  
 Including play
- 82 Individual psychology  
 Add to 82 the numbers following 155.2 in 155.22–155.28, e.g., moral development 825, personality tests 828, personality tests for young people, for sixteen-year-olds 155.51828  
 Subdivisions are added for people of any specific age within an age group  
 Class evolutionary psychology in 8; class environmental psychology in 89. Class application of individual psychology in general and application of broad, vaguely defined topics of individual psychology with the application in 9, e.g., personal improvement through self-actualization 91, improved interpersonal relations through self-esteem 92
- 89 Environmental psychology  
 8904 Special topics of environmental psychology  
 89042 Stress  
 Class here works on how to cope with stress  
*For job stress, see 972*
- 891–896 Specific topics in environmental psychology  
 Add to 89 the numbers following 155.9 in 155.91–155.96, e.g., influence of social environment 892, influence of social environment on young people, on sixteen-year-olds 155.51892; however, for influence of specific situations, see 155.93  
 Subdivisions are added for people of any specific age within an age group

(continued)

## 155 Differential and developmental psychology (continued)

### 9 Applied psychology

Class here application of individual psychology in general

Add to 9 the numbers following 158 in 158.1–158.9, e.g., personal improvement and analysis 91, interpersonal relations 92, job stress 972, personal improvement and analysis for young people, for sixteen-year-olds 155.5191

Subdivisions are added for people of any specific age within an age group

Class comprehensive works on stress in 89042. Class application of a specific branch of psychology (other than individual psychology in general 82) with the branch, e.g., how to control emotions 24, how to be creative 335, use of personality tests for self-knowledge and self-improvement 828

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., reactions of African American school children to catastrophic fires 155.935 (*not* 155.424 or 155.8496073):

Influence of specific situations	155.93
Psychology of specific ages	155.4–155.6
Ethnopsychology and national psychology	155.8
Evolutionary psychology	155.7
Environmental psychology ( <i>except</i> 155.93)	155.9
Sex psychology; psychology of people by gender or sex, by sexual orientation	155.3
Individual psychology	155.2

Class role of play in relation to a specific topic with the topic, e.g., role of play in child development 155.418

*See Manual at 155*

### SUMMARY

155.2	<b>Individual psychology</b>
.3	<b>Sex psychology; psychology of people by gender or sex, by sexual orientation</b>
.4	<b>Child psychology</b>
.5	<b>Psychology of young people twelve to twenty</b>
.6	<b>Psychology of adults</b>
.7	<b>Evolutionary psychology</b>
.8	<b>Ethnopsychology and national psychology</b>
.9	<b>Environmental psychology</b>

**.2 Individual psychology**

Including defense mechanisms

Class here individual psychology of adults in general [*formerly* 155.6]; the self; character, identity, individuality, personality

Class individual psychology of adults by marital status and relationships in 155.64; class individual psychology of people in specific stages of adulthood in 155.65–155.67. Class defense mechanisms in relation to a specific topic with the topic, e.g., defense mechanisms and adaptability 155.24, defense mechanisms and reactions to death 155.937; class application of individual psychology in general and application of broad, vaguely defined topics of individual psychology with the application in 158, e.g., personal improvement through self-actualization 158.1, improved interpersonal relations through self-esteem 158.2

[.202 87] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 155.28

.22 Individual differences

.23 Traits and determinants of character and personality

.232 Traits

Including altruism, bashfulness, dependence, extroversion, introversion, moral judgment, perfectionism, workaholism; comprehensive works on the psychology of aggression

Class interdisciplinary works on aggression, aggressive social interactions in 302.54. Class a specific aspect of a specific trait with the aspect, e.g., development of moral judgment 155.25

*For aggressive emotions, see 152.47; for aggressive drives, see 153.8*

.234 Determinants

Class here environment versus heredity as determinants

Class comprehensive works on environment versus heredity in psychology in 155.7

*For environmental determinants, see 155.9*

.24 Adaptability and adjustment

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.25 Development and modification of character and personality

Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

Including maturity, development of self-control

*See also 153.85 for behavior modification and attitude change when reference is to bending the will or changing conscious intent*

.26 Typology

Class a personality test based on a theory of personality types with the test in 155.28, e.g., Myers-Briggs Type Indicator<sup>®</sup> (personality inventory) 155.283

- .262 Classical typology (Hippocrates' theory of temperaments)
- .264 Modern typology  
Including classification schemes of James, Kretschmer, Rorschach, Sheldon
- .264 4 Typology of Jung  
Class here Myers-Briggs typology
- .28 Appraisals and tests  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
Class use of personality tests to determine vocational interests in 153.94; class use of personality tests to diagnose psychiatric disorders in 616.89075; class comprehensive works on appraisals and tests for intelligence and personality in 153.93
- .282 Diagnostic graphology  
Class here interdisciplinary works on graphology  
*For divinatory graphology, see 137; for handwriting analysis for the examination of evidence, see 363.2565; for handwriting analysis for screening of prospective employees, see 658.3112*
- .283 Inventories and questionnaires  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .284 Projective techniques
- .284 2 Rorschach tests
- .284 3 Szondi tests
- .284 4 Thematic apperception tests
- .3 Sex psychology; psychology of people by gender or sex, by sexual orientation**  
Standard subdivisions are added for all the topics in the heading, for sex psychology alone  
Class here sex psychology of adults in general [*formerly* 155.6], relations between the sexes, sex, sexual love  
Class sex psychology of adults in specific age groups in 155.65–155.67; class interdisciplinary works on and social psychology of relations between the sexes, sex, sexual love in 306.7
- .31 Erogeneity and libido  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- [.32] Sex and personality  
Number discontinued; class in 155.3

- .33 Psychology of people by gender or sex
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Including display of behavior characteristics of both sexes or genders (androgynous behavior); intersex people; transgender people, transgenderists, transsexuals
- Class here adults by gender or sex [*formerly* 155.63], gender identity, gender role, sex differences, sex role, the sexes; comprehensive works on psychology of men and women, of males and females
- Class psychology of people by sexual orientation in 155.34; class sexual practices associated with specific sexes in 155.35; class female impersonation, male impersonation in 792.028
- For children by gender or sex, see 155.43; for young people twelve to twenty by gender or sex, see 155.53; for adults of either gender or sex by marital status and relationships, see 155.64; for people of either gender or sex in a specific stage of adulthood, see 155.65–155.67*
- .332 †Men
- Class here males; masculinity (presumed distinctive characteristics of males, whether overtly sexual or not)
- .333 †Women
- Class here females; femininity (presumed distinctive characteristics of females, whether overtly sexual or not)
- [.334] Bisexuality
- Use of this number for display of behavior characteristics of both sexes or genders (androgynous behavior) discontinued; class in 155.33
- Bisexuality relocated to 155.343
- .34 Psychology of people by sexual orientation
- Including asexuals, heterosexuals
- Class here adults in general by sexual orientation [*formerly* 155.60866]
- Class sexual practices associated with specific orientations in 155.35; class adults in specific age groups by sexual orientation in 155.65–155.67; class interdisciplinary works on and social psychology of sexual orientation in 306.76
- Use of this number for relations between the sexes discontinued; class in 155.3
- .343 Bisexuals
- Class here bisexuality [*formerly* 155.334]
- .344 Gays
- .344 1 General topics of psychology of gays

†Add as instructed under 155, except class evolutionary psychology in 155.7, ethnopsychology and national psychology in 155.8, environmental psychology in 155.9

- [.344 101–.344 109]      Standard subdivisions  
    Do not use; class in 155.34401–155.34409
- .344 12–.344 19      Sensory perception, movement, emotions, physiological drives;  
    conscious mental processes and intelligence; individual and applied  
    psychology  
    Add to 155.3441 as instructed under 155, e.g., emotions of gays  
    155.344124; however, for evolutionary psychology, see 155.7;  
    for ethnopsychology and national psychology, see 155.8; for  
    environmental psychology, see 155.9
- .344 2                    †Gay men
- .344 3                    †Lesbians
- .35                      Sexual practices

>                      **155.4–155.6 Psychology of specific ages**

   Class here developmental psychology

   Class comprehensive works in 155

**.4 Child psychology**

   Through age eleven

   Class interdisciplinary works on child development in 305.231

*See also 649.1 for child rearing*

- [.408 1]                    People by gender or sex  
    Do not use; class in 155.43
- [.408 2]                    Women  
    Do not use; class in 155.433
- [.408 3]                    Young people  
    Do not use for psychology of children in general; class in 155.4. Do  
    not use for psychology of children in specific age groups; class in  
    155.42
- .408 5                      Relatives
- [.408 55]                    Siblings  
    Do not use; class in 155.443
- .408 6                      People by miscellaneous social attributes
- [.408 62]                    People by social and economic levels  
    Do not use; class in 155.456

†Add as instructed under 155, except class evolutionary psychology in 155.7, ethnopsychology and national psychology in 155.8, environmental psychology in 155.9

- [.408 7] People with disabilities and illnesses, gifted people  
Do not use; class in 155.451–155.455
- [.408 9] Ethnic and national groups  
Do not use; class in 155.457
- .41 General topics of child psychology  
Class national psychology of children in 155.4093–155.4099; class general topics applied to children by specific attributes in 155.42–155.45; class socialization in 303.32
- [.410 1–.410 9] Standard subdivisions  
Do not use; class in 155.401–155.409
- .412–.419 Sensory perception, movement, emotions, physiological drives; conscious mental processes and intelligence; individual, evolutionary, environmental, applied psychology  
Add to 155.41 as instructed under 155, e.g., emotions of children 155.4124; however, interpersonal relationships relocated from 155.418 to 155.4192

&gt;

---

155.42–155.45 Children by specific attributes

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., boys aged three to five 155.423 (*not* 155.432):

Exceptional children; children by social and economic levels, by ethnic or national group	155.45
Children by status and relationships	155.44
Children in specific age groups	155.42
Children by gender or sex	155.43

Class comprehensive works in 155.4

- .42 Children in specific age groups
- .422 Infants

From birth to age two

Class here comprehensive works on children from birth to age five

Add to 155.422 as instructed under 155, e.g., infants at play 155.4228; however, interpersonal relationships relocated from 155.4228 to 155.42292

*For children three to five, see 155.423*

- .423           Children three to five
- Class here preschool children, comprehensive works on children aged two to six or three to seven
- Add to 155.423 as instructed under 155, e.g., conscious mental processes and intelligence of preschool children 155.4233; however, interpersonal relationships relocated from 155.4238 to 155.42392
- For children aged six and seven, see 155.424*
- .424           Children six to eleven
- Class here comprehensive works on school children to age fourteen
- Add to 155.424 as instructed under 155, e.g., conscious mental processes and intelligence of school children 155.4243; however, interpersonal relationships relocated from 155.4248 to 155.42492
- For young people twelve to fourteen, see 155.5*
- .43            Children by gender or sex
- Class here sex psychology of children
- For children by sexual orientation, see 155.40866; for transgender and intersex children, see 155.40867*
- .432           Boys
- .433           Girls
- .44            Children by status and relationships
- Class here psychology of temporary or permanent separation from parents
- .442           The only child
- Class the adopted or foster only child in 155.445; class the institutionalized only child in 155.446
- .443           Siblings
- For brothers and sisters of same birth, see 155.444; for adopted and foster children, see 155.445*
- .444           Brothers and sisters of same birth
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .445           Adopted and foster children
- .446           Institutionalized children
- Including children raised in communities that serve as collective parents, e.g., kibbutz children
- .45            Exceptional children; children by social and economic levels, by ethnic or national group
- Standard subdivisions are added for all topics in heading together, for exceptional children alone

- .451–.455      Exceptional children  
                     Add to base number 155.45 the numbers following 371.9 in  
                     371.91–371.95, e.g., psychology of gifted children 155.455
- .456            Children by social and economic levels
- .456 7         Children with social disadvantages  
                     Including wild children (feral children)  
                     Class here children with cultural disadvantages  
                     Class psychoanalytic principles derived in part from study of wild  
                     children in 150.195
- .457            Children by ethnic and national group  
                     Class here ethnopsychology  
                     Class national psychology of children in 155.4093–155.4099
- .457 001–.457 009      Standard subdivisions
- .457 05–.457 09      Children of mixed ancestry with ethnic origins from more than one  
                     continent, European children and children of European descent  
                     Add to base number 155.4570 the numbers following—0 in  
                     notation 05–09 from Table 5, e.g., children of European descent  
                     155.4509, children of European descent in India 155.4509054
- .457 1–.457 9         Specific ethnic and national groups  
                     Add to base number 155.457 notation 1–9 from Table 5, e.g.,  
                     Japanese children 155.457956, Japanese-American children  
                     155.457956073
- .5            Psychology of young people twelve to twenty**  
                     Class vocational tests for young people twelve to twenty in 153.94000835; class  
                     youth twenty-one and over, comprehensive works on young adults in 155.65;  
                     class interdisciplinary works on development of young people twelve to twenty  
                     in 305.2355
- [.508 1]         People by gender or sex  
                     Do not use; class in 155.53
- [.508 2]         Women  
                     Do not use; class in 155.533
- .508 9         Ethnic and national groups  
                     Class here ethnopsychology
- .51            General topics of psychology of young people twelve to twenty  
                     Class ethnopsychology of young people twelve to twenty in 155.5089;  
                     class national psychology of young people twelve to twenty in  
                     155.5093–155.5099; class general topics applied to young people twelve to  
                     twenty by gender or sex in 155.53; class socialization in 303.32

- [.510 1–.510 9] Standard subdivisions  
Do not use; class in 155.501–155.509
- .512–.519 Sensory perception, movement, emotions, physiological drives; conscious mental processes and intelligence; individual, evolutionary, environmental, applied psychology  
Add to 155.51 as instructed under 155, e.g., emotions of young people twelve to twenty, emotions of sixteen-year-olds 155.5124; however, interpersonal relationships relocated from 155.518 to 155.5192
- .53 Young people twelve to twenty by gender or sex  
Class here sex psychology of young people twelve to twenty  
*For young people twelve to twenty by sexual orientation, see 155.50866; for transgender and intersex young people twelve to twenty, see 155.50867*
- [.530 85–.530 89] Relatives; people by miscellaneous social attributes; people with disabilities and illnesses, gifted people; occupational and religious groups; ethnic and national groups  
Do not use; class in 155.5085–155.5089
- .532 Males twelve to twenty
- [.532 085–.532 089] Relatives; people by miscellaneous social attributes; people with disabilities and illnesses, gifted people; occupational and religious groups; ethnic and national groups  
Do not use; class in 155.5085–155.5089
- .533 Females twelve to twenty
- [.533 085–.533 089] Relatives; people by miscellaneous social attributes; people with disabilities and illnesses, gifted people; occupational and religious groups; ethnic and national groups  
Do not use; class in 155.5085–155.5089

## **.6 Psychology of adults**

Class sensory perception, movement, emotions, physiological drives, conscious mental processes and intelligence, individual psychology, sex psychology, evolutionary psychology, environmental psychology, applied psychology of adults by marital status relationships in 155.64; class sensory perception, movement, emotions, physiological drives, conscious mental processes and intelligence, individual psychology, sex psychology, evolutionary psychology, environmental psychology, applied psychology of people in specific stages of adulthood in 155.65–155.67

*See Manual at 155*

Sensory perception, movement, emotions, physiological drives of adults in general relocated to 152; conscious mental processes and intelligence of adults in general relocated to 153; individual psychology of adults in general relocated to 155.2; sex psychology of adults in general relocated to 155.3; evolutionary psychology of adults in general relocated to 155.7; environmental psychology of adults in general relocated to 155.9; applied psychology of adults in general relocated to 158

- [.608 1] Adults by gender or sex  
Do not use; class in 155.33
- [.608 2] Women  
Do not use; class in 155.333
- [.608 4] Adults in specific stages of adulthood  
Do not use; class in 155.65–155.67
- [.608 5] Relatives  
Do not use; class in 155.646
- .608 6 Adults by miscellaneous social attributes
- [.608 65] Adults by marital status  
Do not use; class in 155.64
- [.608 66] Adults in general by sexual orientation  
Relocated to 155.34
- [.608 9] Ethnic and national groups  
Relocated to 155.82
- .609 History, geographic treatment, biography
- .609 3–.609 9 Specific continents, countries, localities; extraterrestrial worlds  
National psychology of adults in general relocated to 155.89
- [.63] Adults by gender or sex  
Relocated to 155.33
- .64 Adults by marital status and relationships  
Class people in a specific stage of adulthood regardless of marital status and relationship in 155.65–155.67
- .642 Single status
- .642 2 Men
- .642 3 Women
- .643 Separated and divorced status  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .643 2 Men
- .643 3 Women
- .644 Widowed status
- .644 2 Men
- .644 3 Women

- .645 Married status  
Class married parents in 155.646
- .645 2 Men
- .645 3 Women
- .646 Parents, grandparents, progeny, siblings  
Standard subdivisions are added for parents, grandparents, progeny, siblings together; for parents alone  
Class unmarried parents in 155.642; class separated and divorced parents in 155.643; class widowed parents in 155.644
- .646 2 Fathers
- .646 3 Mothers
- 
- > 155.65–155.67 People in specific stages of adulthood  
Class comprehensive works in 155.6
- .65 \*People in early adulthood  
Class here comprehensive works on young adults  
*For young adults under twenty-one, see 155.5*
- .66 \*People in middle adulthood
- .67 People in late adulthood
- .670 89 Ethnic and national groups  
Class here ethnopsychology
- .671 General topics of people in late adulthood  
Class ethnopsychology of people in late adulthood in 155.67089; class national psychology of people in late adulthood in 155.67093–155.67099
- [.671 01–.671 09] Standard subdivisions  
Do not use; class in 155.6701–155.6709
- .671 2–.671 9 Sensory perception, movement, emotions, physiological drives; conscious mental processes and intelligence; individual, evolutionary, environmental, applied psychology  
Add to 155.671 as instructed under 155, e.g., emotions of people in late adulthood 155.67124; however, interpersonal relationships relocated from 155.6718 to 155.67192; for adaptability of people in late adulthood, see 155.672
- .672 Adaptability and adjustment  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
Class here psychological aspects of retirement, change in status

\*Add as instructed under 155

**.7 Evolutionary psychology**

Evolution of basic human mental and psychological characteristics

Including behavior genetics

Class here evolutionary psychology of adults in general [*formerly* 155.6], comprehensive works on environment versus heredity in psychology

*For environment versus heredity in determining traits of character and personality, see 155.234; for environmental psychology, see 155.9*

*See also 304.5 for genetic bases of social behavior*

*See Manual at 302–307 vs. 150, T1—019*

**.8 Ethnopsychology and national psychology**

Class here cross-cultural psychology

Class studies of cultural influence in 155.92

*See Manual at 155*

**.82 Ethnopsychology**

Class here adults in general by ethnic and national group [*formerly* 155.6089], ethnic differences

*For psychology of specific ethnic groups, see 155.84*

**.84 Specific ethnic groups**

Limited to ethnic groups in areas where they are not predominant

*See Manual at 155.89 vs. 155.84*

**.840 5—.840 9 Specific ethnic groups with ethnic origins from more than one continent, of European descent**

Add to base number 155.840 the numbers following —0 in notation 05–09 from Table 5, e.g., ethnopsychology of people of mixed Asian and European ancestry 155.840595009, of people of mixed Asian and European ancestry in United States 155.840595009073

*See Manual at 155.89 vs. 155.84*

**.841—.849 Specific ethnic groups with other origins**

Add to base number 155.84 notation 1–9 from Table 5, e.g., ethnopsychology of African Americans 155.8496073

**.89 National psychology**

Class here national psychology of adults in general [*formerly* 155.6093–155.6099]

Add to base number 155.89 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., Italian national psychology 155.8945

Class psychology of specific ethnic groups regardless of national origin in 155.84

*See Manual at 155.89 vs. 155.84*

**.9 Environmental psychology**

Class here environmental psychology of adults in general [*formerly* 155.6]; environmental influences, ways of coping with the influences

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., the influence of family, friends, and work associates upon people coping with a loss through death 155.937 (*not* 155.92):

Influence of specific situations	155.93
Influence of clothing	155.95
Influence of restrictive environments	155.96
Influence of injuries, diseases, physical disabilities, disfigurements	155.916
Influence of community and housing	155.94
Influence of social environment	155.92
Influence of physical environment and conditions ( <i>except</i> 155.916)	155.91

.904 Special topics of environmental psychology

.904 2 Stress

Class here works on how to cope with stress

*For job stress, see 158.72*

.91 Influence of physical environment and conditions

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.911 Influence of sensory stimuli

Add to base number 155.911 the numbers following 152.1 in 152.14–152.18, e.g., psychology of color 155.91145

Class sensory influences associated with climate in 155.915; class sensory influences on people with injuries, diseases, physical disabilities, disfigurements in 155.916

.915 Influence of climate

Class influence of climate on people with injuries, diseases, physical disabilities, disfigurements in 155.916

.916 Influence of injuries, diseases, physical disabilities, disfigurements

.92 Influence of social environment

Including comprehensive works on forgiveness, on loneliness, on solitude

Add to base number 155.92 the numbers following 158.2 in 158.24–158.27, e.g., influence of family members, birth order 155.924

*For influence of community and housing, see 155.94; for forgiveness and loneliness in the context of improving interpersonal relations, see 158.2*

.93 Influence of specific situations

Including influence of divorce, loss of job

- .935           Catastrophic disasters  
                   Including behavior patterns during bombings, earthquakes, fires, floods, hurricanes  
                   Class catastrophic accidents in 155.936; class death in catastrophic disasters in 155.937
- .936           Accidents  
                   Class death in accidents in 155.937
- .937           Death and dying  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Class here reactions to death of others  
                   Class interdisciplinary works on death in 306.9
- .937 08        Groups of people  
                   Use for people concerned about dying or affected by death of others, e.g., children grieving death of a loved one 155.937083, parents grieving the death of a child 155.937085, attitudes toward death and dying of people in late adulthood 155.9370846
- .94            Influence of community and housing  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for influence of community and housing together, for influence of community alone
- 
- > 155.942–155.944   Specific types of communities  
                   Class housing in specific types of communities in 155.945; class comprehensive works in 155.94
- .942           Urban communities
- .943           Suburban communities
- .944           Rural communities
- .945           Housing
- .95            Influence of clothing
- .96            Influence of restrictive environments
- .962           Prisons
- .963           Submarine structures
- .964           Subterranean structures  
                   Including behavior patterns in caves, mines, tunnels, underground shelters
- .965           Aircraft  
                   Class here aviation psychology

.966

Spacecraft

Class here space psychology

**156 Comparative psychology**

Comparison of human psychology and the psychology of other organisms; study of other organisms to elucidate human behavior

Class behavior of nonhuman organisms in 591.5

*See Manual at 302–307 vs. 156*

&gt;

**156.2–156.5 Animals**

Class habits and behavior patterns of animals in 591.5; class comprehensive works in 156

**.2 Comparative psychology of sensory perception, movement, emotions, physiological drives of animals**

Add to base number 156.2 the numbers following 152 in 152.1–152.8, e.g., comparative reaction-time studies 156.283

**.3 Comparative conscious mental processes and intelligence of animals**

Standard subdivisions are added for comparative conscious mental processes and intelligence together, for comparative conscious mental processes alone

Add to base number 156.3 the numbers following 153 in 153.1–153.9, e.g., comparative learning curves 156.3158

**.4 Comparative subconscious and altered states and processes of animals****.5 Comparative differential and developmental psychology of animals****.9 Plants**

Class plant behavior in 575.9

**[157] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 19

## 158 Applied psychology

Class here applied psychology of adults in general [*formerly* 155.6], application of individual psychology in general; comprehensive works on how to better oneself and how to get along with other people; comprehensive works on psychological and parapsychological or occult techniques for achieving personal well-being, happiness, success

Class applied psychology of adults by marital status and relationships in 155.64; class applied psychology of people in specific stages of adulthood in 155.65–155.67; class aptitude tests (both general and applied to specific subjects) in 153.94; class interdisciplinary works on success in 650.1. Class a specific application of psychology with the application, e.g., Christian pastoral psychology 253.52; class application of a specific branch of psychology (other than individual psychology in general 155.2) with the branch, e.g., how to be creative 153.35, use of personality tests for self-knowledge and self-improvement 155.28

*For parapsychological and occult techniques for achievement of well-being, happiness, success, see 131*

### .1 Personal improvement and analysis

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Including personality analysis and improvement

Class here works intended to make one a better person or to stave off failure, to solve problems or to adjust to a life that does not meet one's expectations; works on specific systems and schools of applied psychology written for people who wish to be improved or analyzed

Class works on how to get along with other people in 158.2; class works on specific systems and schools of applied psychology written for advisors and counselors to help them assist others in 158.9; class comprehensive works on how to better oneself and how to get along with other people in 158

*See Manual at 616.86 vs. 158.1, 204.42, 248.8629, 292–299, 362.29*

### .12 Personal improvement and analysis through meditation

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

#### .125 Transcendental meditation

#### .128 Meditations

Class here collections of thoughts for use in meditation

### .2 Interpersonal relations

Relations between an individual and other people

Class here dominance, forgiveness, intimacy; overcoming loneliness; applications of assertiveness training, sensitivity training, transactional analysis

Class individual aspects of interpersonal communication in 153.6; class interpersonal relations in counseling and interviewing in 158.3; class interpersonal relations in leadership in 158.4; class interpersonal relations in negotiation in 158.5; class social psychology of communication in 302.2; class interactions within groups in 302.3; class comprehensive works on forgiveness, on loneliness in 155.92

- .24 Interpersonal relations with family members  
Class guides to harmonious family relations in 646.78
- .25 Interpersonal relations with friends and neighbors  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .26 Interpersonal relations with work associates  
*See also 158.7 for psychology of work*
- .27 Interpersonal relationships with strangers
- .3 Counseling and interviewing**  
Standard subdivisions are added for counseling and interviewing together, for counseling alone  
Class here helping behavior, personal coaching  
Class helpfulness as a personality trait in 155.232; class interdisciplinary works on counseling in 361.06. Class counseling in a specific subject with the subject, e.g., personal coaching in the context of employee education and training under personnel management 658.3124, counseling services in the context of employee welfare under personnel management 658.385
- .35 Group counseling
- .39 Interviewing  
Class interviewing in a specific discipline with the discipline, e.g., employee selection interviewing 658.31124
- .4 Leadership**
- .5 Negotiation**
- .6 Vocational interests**  
Class aptitudes in 153.9; class interdisciplinary works on choice of vocation in 331.702
- [.602 87] Testing and measurement  
Do not use; class in 153.94
- .7 Industrial psychology**  
Works focusing on the psychology of the individual employee in relation to work or taking a broad view that encompasses the concerns of individual employees, union leaders, management  
Class here psychology of work  
Class workaholicism as a personality trait in 155.232. Class industrial psychology applied to a specific subject outside psychology with the subject, plus notation 019 from Table 1, e.g., psychological principles of personnel management 658.30019  
*See also 158.26 for psychology of interpersonal relations with work associates*

.72 Job stress  
Class comprehensive works on stress in 155.9042

.723 Job burnout

**.9 Systems and schools of applied psychology**

Including transactional analysis

Class here works about founders of systems and schools of applied psychology, works about systems and schools of applied psychology written for advisors and counselors to help them assist others with personal improvement or analysis

Class works on systems and schools of applied psychology written for people who wish to be improved or analyzed in 158.1. Class application of systems and schools of applied psychology with the application, e.g., application of transactional analysis to interviewing 158.39

**[159] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 19

**160 Philosophical logic**

Science of reasoning

Including logic operators, negation, truth tables

Class here informal logic, syllogistic logic, term logic; formal logic, propositional calculus (sentential calculus), predicate calculus; first-order logic; critical thinking; axioms, modality, predication, propositions

Class psychology of reasoning and problem solving in 153.43; class linguistic presupposition, implication, entailment in 401.45; class formal logic, propositional calculus (sentential calculus), predicate calculus, first-order logic, logic operators, truth tables from the perspective of symbolic (mathematical) logic; interdisciplinary works on logic in 511.3

**.1 Philosophy and theory**

.11 Systems

.119 Specific systems of classical and nonclassical logic

Including erotetic logic (logic of questions), free logic

.119 8 Nonclassical logic

Add to base number 160.1198 the numbers following 511.31 in 511.312–511.318, e.g., modal logic from the perspective of philosophical logic 160.11984, counterfactuals from the perspective of philosophical logic 160.11987

**161 Induction**

*For hypotheses, see 167; for analogy, see 169*

**162 Deduction**

*For syllogisms, see 166*

**[163] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 16

**[164] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 17

**165 Fallacies and sources of error**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Including contradictions, fictions, paradoxes

**166 Syllogisms****167 Hypotheses****168 Argument and persuasion**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

**169 Analogy****170 Ethics (Moral philosophy)**

Class here conscience, good and evil; ethics of specific subjects, interdisciplinary works on social ethics

*For religious ethics, see 205; for social ethics as a method of social control, see 303.372. For ethics of a specific religion, see the religion, e.g., Christian ethics 241*

**SUMMARY****170.1-9 Standard subdivisions and special topics of ethics**

171 Ethical systems

172 Political ethics

173 Ethics of family relationships

174 Occupational ethics

175 Ethics of recreation, leisure, public performances, communication

176 Ethics of sex and reproduction

177 Ethics of social relations

178 Ethics of consumption

179 Other ethical norms

**.4 Special topics of ethics****.42 Metaethics**

Class here comprehensive works on moral realism, moral anti-realism

Class bases for specific systems in 171

**.44 Normative ethics**

*For deontology, see 171.2; for virtue ethics, see 171.3; for consequentialism, utilitarianism, see 171.5*

- [.440 8] History and description with respect to groups of people  
Do not use; class in 170.8

**.8 Groups of people**

- [.88] Occupational and religious groups  
Do not use for ethics of occupational groups; class in 174. Do not use for ethics of religious groups; class in 205

**.9 History, geographic treatment, biography**

- .92 Biography  
*See Manual at 170.92 vs. 171*

**171 Ethical systems**

Regardless of time or place

Class comprehensive works on normative ethics in 170.44. Class a specific topic in ethics, regardless of the system within which it is treated, with the topic in 172–179, e.g., professional ethics 174

*See Manual at 170.92 vs. 171*

**.1 Systems based on authority**

**.2 Systems based on intuition, moral sense, reason; on duty and rights**

Including deontology (nonconsequentialism), empiricism, existentialism, humanism, natural law, naturalism, stoicism

Class comprehensive works on moral realism in 170.42

*For systems and doctrines based on conscience, see 171.6*

*See also 171.7 for systems based on biology, genetics, evolution; also 340.112 for natural law in legal theory*

**.3 Perfectionism**

Systems based on self-realization, personal fulfillment, well-being

Class here virtue ethics

*See also 179.9 for individual virtues, virtue in general*

**.4 Hedonism**

Systems based on achievement of individual pleasure or happiness

**.5 Consequentialism and utilitarianism**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

**.6 Systems based on conscience**

Including casuistry

**.7 Systems based on biology, genetics, evolution, education, social factors**

Including communist ethics, relativism, situation ethics, sociobiological ethics

*See also 171.2 for systems based on natural law, naturalism*

**.8 Systems based on altruism**

*For utilitarianism, see 171.5*

**.9 Systems based on egoism**

*For hedonism, see 171.4*

**> 172–179 Applied ethics**

Class comprehensive works in 170

**172 Political ethics****.1 Relation of individuals to the state**

Including civic and political activity, military service, obedience to law, payment of taxes; civil war, resistance, revolution, terrorism

*See also 174.3 for jury ethics*

**.2 Duties of the state**

Duties of government toward citizens, e.g., education, freedom, personal security, welfare; duties of public officeholders and officials

Class here justice

**.4 International relations**

Including conduct of foreign affairs, disarmament, espionage

**.42 War and peace**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Including conscientious objection, just war theory, pacifism, ways and means of conducting warfare

Class occupational ethics of military personnel in 174.9355

*For civil war, see 172.1*

**.422 Nuclear weapons and nuclear war**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

**173 Ethics of family relationships**

Including ethics of marriage, divorce, separation, parent-child relationships, sibling relationships

Class ethics of sex and reproduction in 176

## 174 Occupational ethics

Class here professional ethics; ethics of work

Occupational ethics for those involved in the recreation industry relocated to 175

### .1 Clergy

### .2 Medical and health professions

Class here comprehensive works on bioethics [*formerly* 174.957]

Class medical ethics related to human reproduction in 176

#### .22 Hippocratic oath

#### .26 Economic questions

Including advertising, fee splitting

#### .28 Experimentation

Including embryo research

Class here experimentation on human subjects

Class embryo research relating to human reproduction in 176

*For experimentation on animals, see 179.4*

#### .29 Specific topics and branches of medicine and health

Class here innovative procedures

Add to base number 174.29 the numbers following 61 in 610–618, e.g., nursing ethics 174.29073, pharmaceutical ethics 174.2951, psychiatric ethics 174.29689; however, for experimentation on human subjects and comprehensive works on medical experimentation, see 174.28; for human reproduction, see 176; for animal experimentation, see 179.4; for questions of life and death, see 179.7

### .3 Legal ethics

Class here professional conduct of judges, lawyers; jury ethics

*See also 172.1 for ethics of relation of individuals to the state other than service on juries*

### .4 Business ethics

Including industrial espionage

Class here economic ethics, ethics of finance, manufacturing, marketing, trade; corporate social responsibility

### .6 Gambling business

Including lottery management

*See also 175 for gambling*

**.9 Other professions and occupations**

Not provided for elsewhere

Add to base number 174.9 notation 001–999, e.g., law enforcement ethics 174.936323; however, bioethics relocated from 174.957 to 174.2; for ethics of public administration, public officeholders and officials, see 172.2

**175 Ethics of recreation, leisure, public performances, communication**

Including occupational ethics for those involved in the recreation industry [formerly 174]; ethics of dancing, gambling, music, television; fair play, sportsmanship

*For ethics of hunting, see 179.3*

**176 Ethics of sex and reproduction**

*For abortion, see 179.76*

**.2 Reproductive technology**

Including artificial insemination, embryo transfer, surrogate motherhood

*See also 174.28 for embryo research not for purpose of human reproduction*

**.22 Human cloning**

Limited to use for human reproduction

**.3 Birth control****.4 Sexual relations**

Including celibacy, chastity, homosexuality, premarital and extramarital relations, promiscuity

*See also 177.65 for ethics of courtship; also 177.7 for ethics of love*

**.5 Prostitution****.7 Obscenity and pornography**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

*For obscenity and pornography in literature, see 176.8; for obscenity in speech, see 179.5*

**.8 Obscenity and pornography in literature**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

**177 Ethics of social relations**

Limited to the topics provided for below

**.1 Courtesy, hospitality, politeness**

Class etiquette in 395

**.2 Conversation**

Including gossip

**.3 Truthfulness, lying, slander, flattery****.4 Personal appearance**

Including exposure of person, ostentatious dress

**.5 Discriminatory practices and slavery**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

**.6 Friendship and courtship****.62 Friendship****.65 Courtship**

Class sexual ethics in courtship in 176

**.7 Love**

Including benevolence, caring, charity, kindness, liberality, philanthropy

*See also 128.46 for love as human experience*

**178 Ethics of consumption**

Including abstinence, gluttony, greed, overindulgence, temperance

Class here use of natural resources, of wealth

Class environmental and ecological ethics, respect for nature in 179.1; class consumption of meat in 179.3

**.1 Consumption of alcoholic beverages****.7 Consumption of tobacco****.8 Consumption of narcotics****179 Other ethical norms**

Class here cruelty

[.01–.09] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 170

**.1 Respect for life and nature**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here environmental and ecological ethics

*For ethics of consumption, see 178; for treatment of animals, see 179.3; for respect for human life, see 179.7*

**.2 Treatment of children**

*For parent-child relationships, see 173*

**.3 Treatment of animals**

Including ethics of hunting; vegetarianism

*For experimentation on animals, see 179.4*

**.4 Experimentation on animals**

Including vivisection

**.5 Blasphemy, profanity, obscenity in speech**

Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

**.6 Courage and cowardice****.7 Respect and disrespect for human life**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Including questions of life and death in medical ethics, capital punishment, dueling, euthanasia, genocide, homicide, suicide

Class here comprehensive works on ethics of violence, of nonviolence

Class ethics of contraception in 176; class comprehensive works on medical ethics in 174.2

*For ethics of violence, of nonviolence in political activity, see 172; for ethics of civil war, see 172.1; for ethics of war, see 172.42; for treatment of children, see 179.2*

.76 Abortion

**.8 Vices, faults, failings**

Not otherwise provided for

Including anger, cheating, covetousness, envy, hatred, jealousy, pride, procrastination, sloth

**.9 Virtues**

Not otherwise provided for

Including cheerfulness, gentleness, gratitude, honesty, humility, modesty, patience, prudence, respect, self-control, self-reliance, toleration

Class here virtue

*See also 171.3 for virtue ethics as an ethical system*

> **180–190 History, geographic treatment, biography**

Class here development, description, critical appraisal, collected writings, biography of individual philosophers regardless of viewpoint

Class comprehensive works on geographic treatment in 100; class comprehensive works on history in 109; class comprehensive works on collected biography in 109.2. Class critical appraisal of an individual philosopher's thought on a specific topic with the topic, plus notation 092 from Table 1, e.g., critical appraisal of Kant's theory of knowledge 121.092

*See Manual at 180–190*

**180 Ancient, medieval, eastern philosophy**

**SUMMARY**

180.01–.09	Standard subdivisions of ancient, medieval, eastern philosophy
.1–.9	Standard subdivisions of ancient philosophy
181	Eastern philosophy
182	Pre-Socratic Greek philosophies
183	Sophistic, Socratic, related Greek philosophies
184	Platonic philosophy
185	Aristotelian philosophy
186	Skeptic and Neoplatonic philosophies
187	Epicurean philosophy
188	Stoic philosophy
189	Medieval western philosophy

.01–.09 Standard subdivisions of ancient, medieval, eastern philosophy

.1–.8 **Standard subdivisions of ancient philosophy**

.9 **History and geographic treatment of ancient philosophy**

Do not use for ancient eastern philosophy; class in 181

Class specific schools of ancient western philosophy in 182–188

**181 Eastern philosophy**

Ancient, medieval, modern

.001–.007 Standard subdivisions

.008 Groups of people

.008 8 Occupational and religious groups

Do not use for religious groups; class in 181.04–181.09

[.008 9] Ethnic and national groups

Do not use; class in 181.1–181.9

.009 History

Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 181.1–181.9

.04–.09      **Philosophies based on specific religions**

Add to base number 181.0 the numbers following 29 in 294–299, e.g., Jewish philosophy 181.06, comprehensive works on Islamic philosophy 181.07; however, for Confucian philosophy, see 181.112; for Taoist philosophy, see 181.114; for Hindu-Brahmanical philosophy, see 181.41–181.48

*For Christian philosophy, see 190. For an individual Islamic philosopher associated with a specific area, see the area, e.g., Arabia 181.92*

*See Manual at 200 vs. 100*

>      **181.1–181.9 Philosophy of specific places**

Class comprehensive works in 181. Class philosophical schools in a place with the place, e.g., Neo-Confucian philosophy in Korea 181.115 (*not* 181.112)

(Option: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to philosophy of a specific country, use one of the following:

(Option A: Place it first by use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., philosophy of Lebanon 181.L [preceding 181.1]

(Option B: Class it in 181.1; in that case class comprehensive works on philosophy of Far East and South Asia in 181.9)

.1      **\*Far East and South Asia**

*For philosophy of India, see 181.4*

(Option: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to philosophy of a specific country, class it in this number; in that case class comprehensive works on philosophy of the Far East and South Asia in 181.9)

.11      **\*China and Korea**

Standard subdivisions are added for China and Korea together, for China alone

>      **181.112–181.115 Schools of Chinese philosophy**

Class Buddhist philosophy in 181.043; class comprehensive works in 181.11

.112      †Confucian philosophy

Including Neo-Confucian philosophy

Class here the Four Books of Confucius; interdisciplinary works on Confucianism

Class the Five Confucian Classics in 299.51282

*For religious aspects of Confucianism, see 299.512*

.114      †Taoist philosophy

\*Do not use notation 09 from Table 1

†Do not use notation 092 from Table 1

- .115 †Mohist, Dialecticianist, Legalist philosophies
- .119 \*Korea
- .12 \*Japan  
Class Shinto philosophy in 181.09561
- .15 \*Pakistan and Bangladesh
- .16 \*Indonesia
- .17 \*Philippines
- .19 \*Southeast Asia  
Add to base number 181.19 the numbers for countries only following —59 in notation 591–597 from Table 2, e.g., philosophy of Thailand 181.193; however, do not add notation 09 from Table 1 for history, geographic treatment, biography  
*For Indonesia, see 181.16; for Philippines, see 181.17*
- .2 \*Egypt**
- .3 \*Palestine; Israel**  
Class Jewish philosophy in 181.06
- .4 \*India**  
Class here Hindu-Brahmanical philosophy  
Class Buddhist philosophy in 181.043; class Jainist philosophy in 181.044  
*See also 181.15 for philosophy of Pakistan and Bangladesh*
- .41 †Sankhya
- .42 †Mimamsa
- .43 †Nyaya
- .44 †Vaiśeṣika
- .45 †Yoga  
Class here interdisciplinary works on the practice of yoga and yoga as a philosophical school  
*For yoga as a religious and spiritual discipline, see 204.36; for Hindu yoga as a religious and spiritual discipline, see 294.5436; for hatha yoga, physical yoga, see 613.7046*
- .452 †Patañjali's philosophy
- .46 †Lokāyata  
Class here Cārvāka school, Indian materialism
- .48 †Vedanta

\*Do not use notation 09 from Table 1

†Do not use notation 092 from Table 1

- .482 †Śaṅkarācārya (Advaita)  
 .483 †Rāmānujācārya (Viśiṣṭādvaita)  
 .484 †Dualistic school  
 .484 1 †Madhvācārya (Dvaita)  
 .484 2 †Bhedabheda  
 .484 3 †Nimbarka (Dvaitādvaita)  
 .484 4 †Vallabhācārya (Śuddhādvaita)

**.5 \*Iran (Persia)**

**.6 \*Iraq**

Class here Assyria, Babylonia, Chaldea, ancient Mesopotamia

**.8 \*Syria and Lebanon**

Including ancient Phoenicia

**.9 \*Other eastern philosophy**

Including philosophy of Central Asia, former Soviet Asia, Arabic-speaking North Africa other than Egypt

**.92 \*Arabia**

Class here individual Arabian Islamic philosophers

Class Islamic philosophy not limited to one country in 181.07. Class an individual Islamic philosopher associated with another area with the area, e.g., Persia 181.5

>

**182–188 Ancient western philosophy**

Class comprehensive works in 180

**182 †Pre-Socratic Greek philosophies**

Class comprehensive works on Sophistic philosophy in 183.1

- .1 †Ionic philosophy**  
**.2 †Pythagorean philosophy**  
**.3 †Eleatic philosophy**  
**.4 †Heraclitean philosophy**  
**.5 †Empedoclean philosophy**  
**.7 †Democritean philosophy**  
**.8 †Anaxagorean philosophy**

\*Do not use notation 09 from Table 1

†Do not use notation 092 from Table 1

**183 †Sophistic, Socratic, related Greek philosophies****.1 †Sophistic philosophy**

*For pre-Socratic Greek philosophies, see 182*

**.2 †Socratic philosophy****.4 †Cynic philosophy****.5 †Cyrenaic philosophy****.6 †Megaric philosophy****.7 †Elian and Eretrian philosophies****184 †Platonic philosophy**

Class here comprehensive works on ancient and modern Platonism

*For modern Platonism, see 141.2*

**185 †Aristotelian philosophy**

Class here comprehensive works on Aristotelian and Neo-Aristotelian philosophy

*For Neo-Aristotelianism, see 149.91*

**186 †Skeptical and Neoplatonic philosophies****.1 †Pyrrhonic philosophy****.2 †New Academy****.3 †Eclectic philosophy****.4 †Neoplatonic philosophy**

Class here Alexandrian philosophy, comprehensive works on ancient and modern Neoplatonism

*For modern Neoplatonism, see 141.2*

**187 †Epicurean philosophy****188 †Stoic philosophy****189 \*Medieval western philosophy**

Class here early Christian philosophy

**.2 †Patristic philosophy****.4 †Scholastic philosophy**

*For neo-scholasticism, neo-Thomism, see 149.91*

\*Do not use notation 09 from Table 1

†Do not use notation 092 from Table 1

**.5 †Mystic philosophy****190 Modern western and other noneastern philosophy**

Class here comprehensive works on Christian philosophy, on modern philosophy, on western philosophy, on modern western philosophy, on European philosophy

Modern philosophy of areas not provided for in 180 is classed here, even if not in the western tradition, e.g., North American native philosophy 191.08997, traditional African philosophy 199.6

*For ancient western and European philosophy, see 180; for early and medieval Christian philosophy, medieval western and European philosophy, see 189*

*See also 181 for eastern philosophy*

(Option: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to philosophy of a specific country, use one of the following:

(Option A: Place it first by use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., philosophy of Mexico 19M [preceding 191])

(Option B: Class it in 191; in that case class philosophy of United States and Canada in 199.7)

[.882 7] Christian philosophy

Do not use; class in 190

[.89] Philosophy of ethnic and national groups

Do not use; class in 191–199

[.94–.99] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Do not use; class in 191–199

---

> **191–199 Modern western and other noneastern philosophy by continent or country**

Philosophy of an individual group is classed in the notation at the region or country level only, e.g., Arapaho philosophy 191.08997354, Sámi philosophy 198.0899457

Class comprehensive works on European philosophy; on modern western philosophy not limited by continent or country in 190

†Do not use notation 092 from Table 1

**191 \*Philosophy of United States and Canada**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here North American philosophy

*For Middle American and Mexican philosophy, see 199.72*

(Option: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to philosophy of a specific country, class it in this number; in that case class philosophy of United States and Canada in 199.7)

**192 \*Philosophy of British Isles**

Standard subdivisions are added for philosophy of British Isles together, for philosophy of England alone, for philosophy of Ireland alone, for philosophy of Northern Ireland alone, for philosophy of Scotland alone, for philosophy of United Kingdom alone, for philosophy of Wales alone

**193 \*Philosophy of Germany and Austria**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

**194 \*Philosophy of France****195 \*Philosophy of Italy****196 \*Philosophy of Spain and Portugal**

.1 \*Spain

.9 \*Portugal

**197 \*Philosophy of Russia**

Class here philosophy of former Soviet Union

*See also 181.9 for philosophy of former Soviet Asia*

Philosophy of Azerbaijan relocated to 199.4754; philosophy of Armenia relocated to 199.4756; philosophy of Georgia relocated to 199.4758; philosophy of Moldova relocated to 199.476; philosophy of Ukraine relocated to 199.477; philosophy of Belarus relocated to 199.478; philosophy of Lithuania relocated to 199.4793; philosophy of Latvia relocated to 199.4796; philosophy of Estonia relocated to 199.4798

**198 \*Philosophy of Scandinavia and Finland**

Standard subdivisions are added for Scandinavia and Finland together, for Scandinavia alone

.1 \*Norway

.5 \*Sweden

.8 \*Finland

\*Do not use notation 09 from Table 1

.9 \*Denmark

**199 \*Philosophy in other geographic areas**

Add to base number 199 notation 4–9 from Table 2 for continent or country only, e.g., philosophy of Azerbaijan 199.4754 [*formerly* 197]; philosophy of Armenia 199.4756 [*formerly* 197]; philosophy of Georgia 199.4758 [*formerly* 197]; philosophy of Moldova 199.476 [*formerly* 197]; philosophy of Ukraine 199.477 [*formerly* 197]; philosophy of Belarus 199.478 [*formerly* 197]; philosophy of Lithuania 199.4793 [*formerly* 197]; philosophy of Latvia 199.4796 [*formerly* 197]; philosophy of Estonia 199.4798 [*formerly* 197]; Mexican philosophy 199.72; however, do not add notation 09 from Table 1 for history, geographic treatment, biography; for Asian philosophy, philosophy of Arabic-speaking North Africa, see 181; for European philosophy, see 190; for comprehensive works on North American philosophy, see 191

\*Do not use notation 09 from Table 1

## 200 Religion

Beliefs, attitudes, practices of individuals and groups with respect to the ultimate nature of existences and relationships within the context of revelation, deity, worship

Including public relations for religion

Class here comparative religion; religions other than Christianity; works dealing with various religions, with religious topics not applied to specific religions; syncretistic religious writings of individuals expressing personal views and not claiming to establish a new religion or to represent an old one

Class a specific topic in comparative religion, religions other than Christianity in 201–209. Class public relations for a specific religion or aspect of a religion with the religion or aspect, e.g., public relations for a local Christian church 254.4

*For government policy on religion, see 322.1*

*See also 306.6 for sociology of religion*

*See Manual at T1–0882 and 200; also at 130 vs. 200; also at 200 vs. 100; also at 201–209 and 292–299*

(Option: To give preferred treatment or shorter numbers to a specific religion other than Christianity, use one of the two options described at 290)

### SUMMARY

200.1–.9	<b>Standard subdivisions</b>
201	<b>Religious mythology, general classes of religion, interreligious relations and attitudes, social theology</b>
202	<b>Doctrines</b>
203	<b>Public worship and other practices</b>
204	<b>Religious experience, life, practice</b>
205	<b>Religious ethics</b>
206	<b>Leaders and organization</b>
207	<b>Missions and religious education</b>
208	<b>Sources</b>
209	<b>Sects and reform movements</b>
210	<b>Philosophy and theory of religion</b>
.1	<b>Theory of philosophy of religion</b>
211	<b>Concepts of God</b>
212	<b>Existence of God, ways of knowing God, attributes of God</b>
213	<b>Creation</b>
214	<b>Theodicy</b>
215	<b>Science and religion</b>
218	<b>Humankind</b>

- 220 Bible  
  .01-.09 Standard subdivisions and special topics of Bible  
  .1-.9 Generalities
- 221 Old Testament (Tanakh)  
222 Historical books of Old Testament  
223 Poetic books of Old Testament  
224 Prophetic books of Old Testament  
225 New Testament  
226 Gospels and Acts  
227 Epistles  
228 Revelation (Apocalypse)  
229 Apocrypha, pseudepigrapha, intertestamental works
- 230 Christianity  
  .002-.007 Standard subdivisions of Christianity  
  .01-.09 Standard subdivisions and specific types of Christian theology  
  .1-.9 Doctrines of specific denominations and sects
- 231 God  
232 Jesus Christ and his family  
233 Humankind  
234 Salvation and grace  
235 Spiritual beings  
236 Eschatology  
238 Creeds, confessions of faith, covenants, catechisms  
239 Apologetics and polemics
- 240 Christian moral and devotional theology  
241 Christian ethics  
242 Devotional literature  
243 Evangelistic writings for individuals and families  
246 Use of art in Christianity  
247 Church furnishings and related articles  
248 Christian experience, practice, life  
249 Christian observances in family life
- 250 Local Christian church and Christian religious orders  
  .9 History, geographic treatment, biography
- 251 Preaching (Homiletics)  
252 Texts of sermons  
253 Pastoral office and work (Pastoral theology)  
254 Parish administration  
255 Religious congregations and orders  
259 Pastoral care of families, of specific groups of people
- 260 Christian social and ecclesiastical theology  
  .9 History, geographic treatment, biography
- 261 Social theology and interreligious relations and attitudes  
262 Ecclesiology  
263 Days, times, places of religious observance  
264 Public worship  
265 Sacraments, other rites and acts  
266 Missions  
267 Associations for religious work  
268 Religious education  
269 Spiritual renewal
- 270 History, geographic treatment, biography of Christianity  
  .01-.09 Standard subdivisions  
  .1-8 Historical periods
- 271 Religious congregations and orders in church history  
272 Persecutions in general church history  
273 Doctrinal controversies and heresies in general church history  
274-279 Christianity by specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

280	<b>Denominations and sects of Christian church</b>
.01-.09	Standard subdivisions and special topics
.2-.4	Branches
281	Early church and Eastern churches
282	Roman Catholic Church
283	Anglican churches
284	Protestant denominations of Continental origin and related bodies
285	Presbyterian churches, Reformed churches centered in America, Congregational churches, Puritanism
286	Baptist, Restoration movement, Adventist churches
287	Methodist churches; churches related to Methodism
289	Other denominations and sects
290	<b>Other religions</b>
292	Classical religion (Greek and Roman religion)
293	Germanic religion
294	Religions of Indic origin
295	Zoroastrianism (Mazdaism, Parseism)
296	Judaism
297	Islam, Babism, Bahai Faith
299	Religions not provided for elsewhere

&gt;

**200.1–200.9 Standard subdivisions**

Limited to comparative religion, religion in general

**.1 Systems, scientific principles, psychology of religion**

Do not use for philosophy and theory; class in 210

.11 Systems

[.12] Classification

Do not use; class in 201.4

[.14] Communication

Do not use; class in 210.14

.15 Scientific principles

Class philosophic treatment of the relation of science and religion in 215

.19 Psychological principles

Class here psychology of religion

**.2–.5 Standard subdivisions****[.6] Organizations and management**

Do not use; class in 206

**.7 Education, research, related topics**

**.71 Education**

Class here religion as an academic subject

Class religious education to inculcate religious life and practice, comprehensive works on religious education in 207.5

*See also 379.28 for place of religion in public schools*

*See Manual at 207.5, 268 vs. 200.71, 230.071, 292–299*

**.8 Groups of people**

Class here attitudes of religions to social groups; discrimination, equality, inequality, prejudice

**.9 History, geographic treatment, biography**

*See Manual at 200.9 vs. 294, 299.5*

**.901 2 To 4000 B.C.**

Do not use for prehistoric religions; class in 201.42

**.92 Biography**

*See Manual at 200.92 and 201–209, 292–299*

**> 201–209 Specific aspects of religion**

Class treatment of religious topics with respect to philosophy of religion, natural theology in 210; class treatment with respect to Christianity in 230–280; class treatment with respect to a specific religion other than Christianity in 292–299; class comprehensive works on comparative religion in 200

*See Manual at 200.92 and 201–209, 292–299; also at 201–209 and 292–299*

**201 Religious mythology, general classes of religion, interreligious relations and attitudes, social theology****SUMMARY**

- 201.3 Mythology and mythological foundations**
- .4 General classes of religion**
- .5 Interreligious relations**
- .6 Religions and secular disciplines**
- .7 Attitudes of religions toward social issues**

**[.012] Classification**

Do not use; class in 201.4

**.3 Mythology and mythological foundations**

Stories of primeval history, beings, origins, and customs archetypally significant in the sacred life, doctrine, and ritual of religions

Class myths on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., creation myths 202.4

*See Manual at 398.2 vs. 201.3, 230, 270, 292–299*

**.4 General classes of religion**

Including monotheistic, nontheistic, pantheistic, polytheistic religions

Class here classification of religions

Class concepts of God or the gods in world religions in 202.11; class philosophic treatment of concepts of God in 211

**.42 Prehistoric religions**

Use of this number for religions of nonliterate societies discontinued; class in 201.4

**.43 Goddess religions**

*See also 202.114 for female goddesses*

**.44 Shamanism**

Class shamanism in a specific religion with the religion, e.g., shamanism in religions of North American native origin 299.71144

**.5 Interreligious relations**

Including relations of religions with irreligion

**.6 Religions and secular disciplines**

Class guides to religious life and practice on specific topics in secular disciplines in 204.4

*For attitudes of religions toward social sciences, see 201.7*

.600 01–.600 09 Standard subdivisions

.600 1–.619 9 Computer science, information, philosophy, parapsychology and occultism, psychology

Add to base number 201.6 notation 001–199, e.g., religions and psychology 201.615

.64–.69 Language, natural sciences, mathematics, technology, arts, literature, rhetoric, geography, history

Add to base number 201.6 notation 400–900, e.g., religions and science 201.65; however, for ecology, see 201.77

**.7 Attitudes of religions toward social issues**

Attitudes of religions toward and influences on secular matters

Class here religion and culture, social theology

Class human ecology in 201.77; class guides to religious life and practice on specific topics in the social sciences in 204.4; class sociology of religion in 306.6

*For attitudes toward social groups, see 200.8; for attitudes toward various religions, see 201.5*

*See also 205 for religious ethics*

- .72           Political affairs  
                   Attitudes toward and influences on political activities and ideologies  
                   Including civil war and revolution  
                   Class secular view of religiously oriented political theories and ideologies in 320.55; class secular view of relation of state to religious organizations and groups in 322.1  
                   *See Manual at 322.1 vs. 201.72, 261.7, 292-299*
- .721           Theocracy  
                   Supremacy of organized religion over civil government
- .723           Civil rights  
                   Including citizenship, religious freedom
- .727           International affairs
- .727 3           War and peace  
                   Including conscientious objectors, disarmament, pacifism  
                   *For nuclear weapons and nuclear war, see 201.7275*
- .727 5           Nuclear weapons and nuclear war
- .73            Economics  
                   Class socioeconomic problems in 201.76  
                   *For environment, natural resources, see 201.77*
- .76            Social problems and services  
                   Class here socioeconomic problems  
                   *See also 361.75 for welfare work of religious organizations*
- .762-.763      Specific social problems  
                   Add to base number 201.76 the numbers following 36 in 362-363, e.g., poor people 201.7625, hunger 201.7638; however, for population problems, see 201.7; for environmental problems, see 201.77
- .764           Crime and punishment
- .77            Environment  
                   Class here ecology, human ecology, environmental problems, natural resources, pollution  
                   Class environmental ethics in 205.691

## 202           **Doctrines**

Class here beliefs, apologetics, polemics; comprehensive works on theology  
*For social theologies, see 201.7; for religious ethics, see 205*

### .1           **Objects of worship and veneration**

Class here animism, spiritism

- .11 God, gods, goddesses, divinities and deities  
 Class here supernatural beings  
 Class concepts of God in philosophy of religion in 211
- .112 Attributes of God, of the gods  
*For attributes of male gods, see 202.113; for attributes of female goddesses, see 202.114*
- .113 Male gods
- .114 Female goddesses  
*See also 201.43 for goddess religions*
- .117 Relation to the world  
 Including miracles, prophecy, providence, revelation, relation to and action in history  
*For creation and cosmology, see 202.4*
- .118 Theodicy  
 Vindication of God's justice and goodness in permitting existence of evil and suffering
- .12 Nature  
 Including fire, sex, sun, trees, water  
*See also 203.5 for sacred places*
- .13 Persons  
 Including ancestors, the dead, heroes, monarchs, saints
- .14 Personified abstractions
- .15 Good spirits  
 Class here angels
- .16 Evil spirits  
 Class here demons, devils
- .18 Images
- .2 Humankind**  
 Including atonement, creation of humankind, repentance, salvation, sin, soul  
 Class here comprehensive works on karma  
 Class creation of the world in 202.4  
*For eschatology, see 202.3. For a specific aspect of karma, see the aspect, e.g., karma as a concept in Buddhist ethics 294.35*
- .3 Eschatology**  
 Including death, end of the world, heaven, hell, immortality, other worlds, punishments, purgatory, resurrection, rewards

.37 Reincarnation

.4 **Creation and cosmology**

*For creation of humankind, see 202.2*

**203 Public worship and other practices**

Practices predominantly public or collective in character

Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 203 in the number coming first, e.g., religious healing and ceremonies connected with it 203.1 (*not* 203.8)

Class leaders and organization in 206; class missions and religious education in 207; class comprehensive works on worship in 204.3

.1 **Religious healing**

*See Manual at 615.852 vs. 203.1, 234.131, 292–299*

.2 **Divination**

Including omens, oracles, prophecies

Class comprehensive works on divination in 133.3

.3 **Witchcraft**

Class religions based on modern revivals of witchcraft in 299.94; class comprehensive works on witchcraft in 133.43

.4 **Offerings, sacrifices, penances**

.42 Human sacrifice

.5 **Sacred places and pilgrimages**

Standard subdivisions are added for sacred places and pilgrimages together, for sacred places alone

Class here grottoes, holy buildings, pagodas, shrines, temples

Class monasteries in 206.57

.509 3–.509 9 Specific continents, countries, localities

Class here pilgrimages to specific sacred places

.51 Pilgrimages

[.510 93–.510 99] Specific continents, countries, localities

Do not use; class in 203.5093–203.5099

.6 **Sacred times**

Including holy days, religious calendar, religious festivals

*See Manual at 203.6, 263.9, 292–299 vs. 394.265–394.267*

**.7 Symbolism, symbolic objects, sounds**

Including mandalas, mantras

Class here religious use, significance, purpose of the arts

*See also 201.67 for attitudes of religions toward the arts*

**.8 Rites and ceremonies**

Conduct and texts

Including liturgy, music, processions, public feasts and fasts, public prayer

Class interdisciplinary works on sacred music in 781.7; class interdisciplinary works on sacred vocal music in 782.22

.81 Birth rites

.82 Initiation rites

.85 Marriage rites

.88 Funeral and mourning rites

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

**204 Religious experience, life, practice**

Practices predominantly private or individual in character

Class here spirituality

Class religious ethics in 205

**.2 Religious experience**

Including conversion, enlightenment

.22 Mysticism

**.3 Worship, meditation, yoga**

Class here practical works on prayer, on contemplation; comprehensive works on worship

*For public worship, see 203*

.32 Devotional literature

Including meditations

.33 Prayer books

.35 Meditation

- .36           Yoga  
                   Religious and spiritual discipline  
                   Including kundalini yoga  
                   Class interdisciplinary works on yoga in 181.45  
                   *For Hindu kundalini yoga, see 294.5436*  
                   *See also 613.7046 for hatha yoga, physical yoga*

**.4           Religious life and practice**

- Class here guides to religious life and practice  
                   *For worship, meditation, yoga, see 204.3*
- [.408 5]           Relatives  
                   Do not use; class in 204.41
- .408 6            People by miscellaneous social attributes
- [.408 655]        Married people  
                   Do not use; class in 204.41
- .408 7            Gifted people  
                   Do not use for people with disabilities and illnesses; class in 204.42
- .41            Marriage and family life  
                   Including adoption, divorce, interreligious marriage, religious training of  
                   children in the home, single-parent family  
                   Class here comprehensive works on marriage  
                   *For abuse within the family, see 201.7628292; for marriage rites, see*  
                   *203.85; for ethics of marriage, see 205.63*
- .42            People experiencing illness, trouble, addiction, bereavement  
                   *See Manual at 616.86 vs. 158.1, 204.42, 248.8629, 292–299, 362.29*
- .46            Individual observances  
                   Not provided for elsewhere  
                   Including almsgiving, ceremonial and ritual observances, dietary limitations,  
                   observance of restrictions and limitations
- .47            Asceticism  
                   Including practice of celibacy, fasting and abstinence, poverty, solitude

**205        Religious ethics**

                  Including conscience, sin

**.6           Specific moral issues, sins, vices, virtues**

                  Add to base number 205.6 the numbers following 17 in 172–179, e.g., sexual  
                   relations 205.66, morality of discriminatory practices 205.675

## 206 Leaders and organization

Class here management

### .1 Leaders and their work

Variant names: clergy, gurus, messiahs, priests, prophets, shamans

Role, function, duties

Including pastoral counseling and preaching

Class theologians in 202. Class a specific activity of a leader with the activity, e.g., religious healing by shamans 203.1

*For founders of religions, see 206.3*

*See Manual at 200.92 and 201–209, 292–299*

[.109 2] Biography

Do not use; class as instructed in Manual at 200.92 and 292–299

### .3 Founders of religions

[.309 2] Biography

Do not use; class as instructed in Manual at 200.92 and 292–299

### .5 Organizations and organization

Including associations, congregations, institutions, orders, parties; exercise of religious authority

Class laws and decisions in 208.4

.57 Monasticism and monasteries

Class here religious orders

## 207 Missions and religious education

### .2 Missions

### .5 Religious education

Class here comprehensive works on religious education and religion as an academic subject

*For education in and teaching of comparative religion, religion as an academic subject, see 200.71; for religious training of children in the home, see 204.41*

*See Manual at 207.5, 268 vs. 200.71, 230.071, 292–299*

## 208 Sources

Class theology based on sacred sources in 202

### .2 Sacred books and scriptures

*For sacred books and scriptures of sects and reform movements, see 208.5*

**.3 Oral traditions**

*For oral traditions of sects and reform movements, see 208.5*

**.4 Laws and decisions**

Class civil law relating to religious matters in 340

*For laws and decisions of sects and reform movements, see 208.5*

*See also 364.188 for offenses against religion as defined and penalized by the state*

**.5 Sources of sects and reform movements****209 Sects and reform movements**

Class here new religious movements

Class specific aspects of sects and reform movements in 201–208

*For specific sects and reform movements, see 280–290*

*See Manual at 299.93*

**210 Philosophy and theory of religion**

Class here natural theology, philosophical theology; works that use observation and interpretation of evidence in nature, speculation, and reasoning, but not revelation or appeal to authoritative scriptures, to examine religious beliefs

Class a specific topic treated with respect to religions based on revelation or authority with the topic in 201–209, e.g., concepts of God in world religions 202.11; class a specific topic with respect to a specific religion with the religion, e.g., Christian concepts of God 231

(Option: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to a specific religion other than Christianity, class it in this number, and add to base number 21 the numbers following the base number for that religion in 292–299, e.g., Hinduism 210, Mahabharata 219.23; in that case class philosophy and theory of religion in 200, its subdivisions 211–218 in 200.1. Another option is described at 290)

**.1 Theory of philosophy of religion**

Including methodology of the philosophy of religion

**[.11] Systems**

Do not use; class in 200.11

**[.12] Classification**

Do not use; class in 201.4

**.14 Communication****[.15] Scientific principles**

Do not use; class in 200.15

**[.19] Psychological principles**

Do not use; class in 200.19

**211 Concepts of God**

Including anthropomorphism

Class here comprehensive works on God, on The Holy

Class God, gods and goddesses in comparative religion in 202.11

*For existence of God, ways of knowing God, attributes of God, miracles, see 212*

**.2 Pantheism****.3 Theism**

*For pantheism, see 211.2*

**.32 Polytheism****.33 Dualism****.34 Monotheism****.4 Rationalism (Free thought)****.5 Deism****.6 Humanism and secularism**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

**.7 Agnosticism and skepticism**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

**.8 Atheism****212 Existence of God, ways of knowing God, attributes of God**

Including miracles

**.1 Existence of God**

Including proofs

**.6 Ways of knowing God**

Including role of faith, reason and revelation

Class proofs in 212.1

**.7 Attributes of God**

Including love, omniscience

**213 Creation**

Including creation of life and human life, evolution versus creation, evolution as method of creation

*See Manual at 231.7652 vs. 213, 500, 576.8*

**214 Theodicy**

Vindication of God's justice and goodness in permitting existence of evil and suffering

Class here good and evil

**.8 Providence****215 Science and religion**

Including technology and religion

Class religion and scientific theories of creation in 213

*See also 201.65 for various religions and science; also 261.55 for Christianity and science*

**.2 Astronomy**

Including cosmology

**.3 Physics****.7 Life sciences**

Including natural history, paleontology

Class evolution versus creation, evolution as method of creation in 213; class anthropology and religion, ethnology and religion in 218

**[216] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 21

**[217] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 18

**218 Humankind**

Including anthropology and religion, ethnology and religion, immortality

*For creation of humankind, human evolution, see 213*

**[219] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 19

**220 Bible**

Holy Scriptures of Judaism and Christianity

Class Christian Biblical theology in 230.041; class Biblical precepts in Christian codes of conduct in 241.52–241.54; class Jewish Biblical theology in 296.3; class Biblical precepts in Jewish codes of conduct in 296.36

(If option A under 290 is chosen, class here sources of the specified religion; class Bible in 298)

## SUMMARY

- 220.01–.09      **Standard subdivisions and special topics of Bible**  
 .1–.9      **Generalities**  
 221      **Old Testament (Tanakh)**  
 222      **Historical books of Old Testament**  
 223      **Poetic books of Old Testament**  
 224      **Prophetic books of Old Testament**  
 225      **New Testament**  
 226      **Gospels and Acts**  
 227      **Epistles**  
 228      **Revelation (Apocalypse)**  
 229      **Apocrypha, pseudepigrapha, intertestamental works**

.01–.02      **Standard subdivisions**

[.03]      **Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances**

Do not use for dictionaries and encyclopedias; class in 220.3. Do not use for concordances; class in 220.4–220.5

.04      **Special topics of Bible**

.046      **Apocalyptic passages**

Class apocalyptic passages in a book or group of books with the book or group of books, plus notation 0046 from add table under 221–229, e.g., apocalyptic passages in the prophets 224.0046, in Book of Daniel 224.50046

*For Revelation (Apocalypse), see 228*

.05–.08      **Standard subdivisions**

.09      **History, geographic treatment, biography**

Do not use for geography, history, chronology, persons of Bible lands in Bible times; class in 220.9

Class the canon in 220.12

## SUMMARY

- 220.1      **Origins and authenticity**  
 .3      **Encyclopedias and topical dictionaries**  
 .4      **Original texts, early versions, early translations**  
 .5      **Modern versions and translations**  
 .6      **Interpretation and criticism (Exegesis)**  
 .7      **Commentaries**  
 .8      **Nonreligious subjects treated in Bible**  
 .9      **Geography, history, chronology, persons of Bible lands in Bible times**

>

### 220.1–220.9 Generalities

Class comprehensive works in 220. Class generalities applied to a specific part of the Bible with the part, plus notation 01–09 from add table under 221–229, e.g., a commentary on Job 223.107

### .1 Origins and authenticity

- .12 Canon  
Class here selection of the books accepted as Holy Scripture
- .13 Inspiration  
The Bible as revelation (word of God)  
Including authority of Bible
- .132 Inerrancy
- .15 Biblical prophecy and prophecies  
Class Christian messianic prophecies in 232.12; class Christian eschatological prophecies in 236; class Jewish messianic and eschatological prophecies in 296.33  
*See also 224 for prophetic books of Old Testament*

### **.3 Encyclopedias and topical dictionaries**

*For dictionaries of specific texts, see 220.4–220.5*

## **> 220.4–220.5 Texts, versions, translations**

Class here critical appraisal of language and style; concordances, indexes, dictionaries of specific texts; complete texts; selections from more than one part; paraphrases

Class texts accompanied by commentaries in 220.77; class comprehensive works in 220.4. Class selections compiled for a specific purpose with the purpose, e.g., selections for daily meditations 242.2

### **.4 Original texts, early versions, early translations**

Class here original texts accompanied by modern translations, comprehensive works on texts and versions

*For modern versions and translations, see 220.5*

- .404 Textual criticism and word studies
- .404 6 Textual criticism (Lower criticism)  
Use of scientific means to ascertain the actual original texts
- .404 7 Theological studies of words or phrases

## **> 220.42–220.49 Texts in specific languages**

Add to each subdivision identified by † the numbers following 220.404 in 220.4046–220.4047, regardless of specific version, e.g., textual criticism of Bible in Latin, of Vulgate 220.476, of Old Testament in Greek, of Septuagint 221.486

Class comprehensive works in 220.4

- .42 †Aramaic versions

†Add as instructed under 220.42–220.49

- .43 †Syriac versions
- .44 †Hebrew version
- .45 †Samaritan versions
- .46 Other Semitic language versions
  - Including Arabic, Ge'ez
- .47 †Latin versions
- .48 †Greek versions
- .49 Other early versions
  - Including Armenian, Coptic
- .5 Modern versions and translations**
- .51 Polyglot
- .52 Versions in English and Anglo-Saxon
  - Standard subdivisions are added for versions in English and Anglo-Saxon, for English alone
  - Class works containing translations in English and one other modern language with the other language, e.g., the Bible in English and German 220.531
- .520 01–.520 09 Standard subdivisions

> 220.520 1–220.520 9 English

Add to each subdivision identified by \* as follows:

- 01–02 Standard subdivisions
- [03] Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances
  - Do not use; class in 3
- 05–08 Standard subdivisions
- 09 Geographic treatment and biography
  - Do not use for history of the translation; class in 8
- 2 Standard editions
- 3 Concordances, indexes, dictionaries
- 4 Special editions
  - Including annotated editions, study editions, editions notable for illustrations
- 6 Selections
- 7 Paraphrases
- 8 History, criticism, explanation of the translation

Class comprehensive works in 220.52

- .520 1 English versions before 1582
  - Including Coverdale, Tyndale, Wycliffe versions

†Add as instructed under 220.42–220.49

- .520 2           \*Douay version  
                   Class here Rheims-Douay, Rheims-Douay-Challoner versions  
                   *See also 220.5205 for Confraternity-Douay-Challoner version*
- .520 3           \*Authorized version (King James version)
- .520 4           Revised version  
                   Including English Revised (1881–1885), American Revised  
                   (American Standard) (1901) versions
- .520 42          \*Revised Standard version (1946–1957)
- .520 43          \*New Revised Standard version (1990)
- .520 5           \*Confraternity Bible and New American Bible  
                   Class here Confraternity-Douay-Challoner version  
                   Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   *See also 220.5202 for Rheims-Douay, Rheims-Douay-Challoner  
                   versions*
- .520 6           \*New English Bible and Revised English Bible  
                   Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .520 7           \*Jerusalem Bible and New Jerusalem Bible  
                   Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .520 8           Other English translations since 1582  
                   Including New King James, New Century versions  
                   *For translations by individuals, see 220.5209*
- .520 81          \*New International Version
- .520 82          \*Today's English Bible (Good News Bible)
- .520 83          \*Living Bible and New Living Translation  
                   Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .520 9           Translations by individuals  
                   Including Goodspeed, Knox, Moffatt, Phillips
- .529            Anglo-Saxon
- .53–.59         Versions in other languages  
                   Add to base number 220.5 notation 3–9 from Table 6, e.g., the Bible in  
                   German 220.531  
                   Works containing translations in two modern languages other than English  
                   are classed with the language coming later in Table 6; in more than two  
                   modern languages in 220.51

\*Add as instructed under 220.5201–220.5209

**.6 Interpretation and criticism (Exegesis)**

Class Christian meditations based on Biblical passages and intended for devotional use in 242.5; class material about the Bible intended for use in preparing Christian sermons in 251; class Christian sermons based on Biblical passages in 252; class material about the Bible for preparation of Jewish sermons and texts of Jewish sermons in 296.47; class Jewish meditations based on Biblical passages and intended for devotional use in 296.72

*For textual criticism, see 220.4046; for commentaries, see 220.7*

**.601 Philosophy and theory**

Class here hermeneutics

**.61 General introductions to the Bible**

Including isagogics (introductory studies prior to actual exegesis)

**.64 Symbolism and typology**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here interpretation of specific symbols

**.65 Harmonies****.66 Literary criticism**

Literary examination of the text in order to reach conclusions about its meaning, structure, authorship, date

Class here higher criticism, internal criticism, redaction criticism

Class language and style of specific texts in 220.4–220.5

*See also 809.93522 for the Bible as literature*

**.663 Form criticism**

Analysis of preliterary or oral forms and traditions in Biblical text

**.67 Historical criticism**

Interpretation of texts in light of the cultural, historical, religious, social milieu in which written

Class form criticism in 220.663

**.68 Mythological, allegorical, numerical, astronomical interpretations**

Including mythology in the Bible, demythologizing

**.7 Commentaries**

Criticism and interpretation arranged in textual order

**.77 Commentaries with text****.8 Nonreligious subjects treated in Bible**

Class a religious subject treated in Bible with the specific religion and topic, e.g., Christian theology 230, Jewish theology 296.3

**.800 01–.800 09 Standard subdivisions**

- .800 1–.899 9      Specific nonreligious subjects  
    Add to base number 220.8 notation 001–999, e.g., natural sciences in Bible 220.85; however, for geography, history, chronology, persons of Bible lands in Bible times, see 220.9
- .9      Geography, history, chronology, persons of Bible lands in Bible times**  
    Class general history of Bible lands in ancient world in 930
- .91      Geography  
    Class here description and civilization  
    Class civilization treated separately from geography in 220.95
- .92      Collected biography  
    Class an individual person with the part of the Bible in which the person is chiefly considered, e.g., Abraham 222.11092  
    *See Manual at 220.92; also at 230–280*
- .93      Archaeology (Material remains)
- .95      History  
    Including civilization treated separately from geography  
    Class geographic description and civilization treated together in 220.91
- .950 01–.950 09      Standard subdivisions
- .950 5      Bible stories retold  
    Including picture books

>      **221–229 Specific parts of Bible, Apocrypha, pseudepigrapha, intertestamental works**

Add to each subdivision identified by \* as follows (subdivisions from this table may be added for a part of any work that has its own number):

- 001–009      Standard subdivisions  
    Add to 0 the numbers following 220 in 220.01–220.09, e.g., apocalyptic passages in a book or group of books 0046
- 01–08      Generalities  
    Add to 0 the numbers following 220 in 220.1–220.8, e.g., interpretation of the work or of a part of the work 06
- 09      Geography, history, chronology, persons  
    Add to 09 the numbers following 221.9 in 221.91–221.95, e.g., biography 092

Class comprehensive works in 220

## 221 Old Testament (Tanakh)

Holy Scriptures of Judaism, Old Testament of Christianity

Class Jewish Biblical theology in 296.3; class Biblical precepts in Jewish codes of conduct in 296.36

*For historical books, see 222; for Torah, see 222.1; for poetic books, Ketuvim, see 223; for prophetic books, Nevi'im, see 224*

*See Manual at 221*

- [.03] Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances
- Do not use for dictionaries and encyclopedias; class in 221.3. Do not use for concordances; class in 221.4–221.5
- .04 Special topics of Old Testament
- .044 Megillot (Five scrolls)
- For a specific book of Megillot, see the book, e.g., Ruth 222.35*
- .046 Apocalyptic passages
- Class apocalyptic passages in a book or group of books with the book or group of books, plus notation 0046 from add table under 221–229, e.g., apocalyptic passages in the prophets 224.0046, in Book of Daniel 224.50046
- .09 History, geographic treatment, biography
- Do not use for geography, history, chronology, persons of Bible lands in Bible times; class in 221.9
- Class the canon in 221.12
- .1–.8 Generalities**
- Add to base number 221 the numbers following 220 in 220.1–220.8, e.g., Targums 221.42, commentaries 221.7
- .9 Geography, history, chronology, persons of Old Testament lands in Old Testament times**
- Class general history of ancient areas in 930
- .91 Geography
- Class here description and civilization
- Class civilization treated separately from geography in 221.95
- .92 Persons
- See Manual at 220.92; also at 230–280*
- .922 Collected treatment
- .93 Archaeology (Material remains)

- .95 History  
 Including civilization treated separately from geography  
 Class geographic description and civilization treated together in 221.91
- .950 01–.950 09 Standard subdivisions
- .950 5 Old Testament stories retold  
 Including picture books

- > **222–224 Books of Old Testament**  
 Class comprehensive works in 221  
*See Manual at 221*
- (Option: To arrange the books of the Old Testament (Tanakh) as found in Jewish Bibles, use one of the following:  
 (Option A: Use the optional arrangement of 222–224 given in the Manual at 221  
 (Option B: Class in 296.11
- (A table giving the three numbers for each book is given in the Manual at 221)

## **222 \*Historical books of Old Testament**

- .1 \*Pentateuch (Torah)**  
 Class here Hexateuch  
*For Joshua, see 222.2*
- .11 \*Genesis
- .12 \*Exodus  
*For Ten Commandments, see 222.16*
- .13 \*Leviticus
- .14 \*Numbers
- .15 \*Deuteronomy  
*For Ten Commandments, see 222.16*
- .16 \*Ten Commandments (Decalogue)  
 Class Ten Commandments as code of conduct in Christianity in 241.52;  
 class Ten Commandments as code of conduct in Judaism in 296.36
- .2 \*Joshua (Josue)**
- .3 \*Judges and Ruth**
- .32 \*Judges
- .35 \*Ruth

\*Add as instructed under 221–229

**.4 \*Samuel****.43 \*Samuel 1**

Variant name: Kings 1

**.44 \*Samuel 2**

Variant name: Kings 2

**.5 \*Kings****.53 \*Kings 1**

Variant name: Kings 3

**.54 \*Kings 2**

Variant name: Kings 4

**.6 \*Chronicles (Paralipomena)****.63 \*Chronicles 1 (Paralipomenon 1)****.64 \*Chronicles 2 (Paralipomenon 2)****.7 \*Ezra (Esdras 1)***See also 229.1 for Esdras 1 (also called Esdras 3) of the Apocrypha***.8 \*Nehemiah (Esdras 2, Nehemias)***See also 229.1 for Esdras 2 (also called Esdras 4) of the Apocrypha***(.86) \*Tobit (Tobias)**

(Optional number; prefer 229.22)

**(.88) \*Judith**

(Optional number; prefer 229.24)

**.9 \*Esther**

(Option: Class here deuterocanonical part of Esther; prefer 229.27)

**223 \*Poetic books of Old Testament**

Class here Ketuvim (Hagiographa, Writings), wisdom literature

*For Apocryphal wisdom literature, see 229.3. For a specific book of Ketuvim not provided for here, see the book, e.g., Ruth 222.35***.1 \*Job****.2 \*Psalms****.7 \*Proverbs****.8 \*Ecclesiastes (Qohelet)**

**.9 \*Song of Solomon (Canticle of Canticles, Song of Songs)**

(.96) \*Wisdom of Solomon (Wisdom)  
(Optional number; prefer 229.3)

(.98) \*Ecclesiasticus (Sirach)  
(Optional number; prefer 229.4)

**224 \*Prophetic books of Old Testament**

Class here Major Prophets, Nevi'im

*For a specific book of Nevi'im not provided for here, see the book, e.g., Joshua 222.2*

**.1 \*Isaiah (Isaias)****.2 \*Jeremiah (Jeremias)****.3 \*Lamentations**

(.37) \*Baruch  
(Optional number; prefer 229.5)

**.4 \*Ezekiel (Ezechiel)****.5 \*Daniel**

(Option: Class here Song of the Three Children, Susanna, Bel and the Dragon; prefer 229.6)

**.6 \*Hosea (Osee)****.7 \*Joel****.8 \*Amos****.9 \*Minor Prophets**

*For Hosea, see 224.6; for Joel, see 224.7; for Amos, see 224.8*

.91 \*Obadiah (Abdias)

.92 \*Jonah (Jonas)

.93 \*Micah (Micheas)

.94 \*Nahum

.95 \*Habakkuk (Habacuc)

.96 \*Zephaniah (Sophonias)

.97 \*Haggai (Aggeus)

.98 \*Zechariah (Zacharias)

.99 \*Malachi (Malachias)

(.997) \*Maccabees 1 and 2 (Machabees 1 and 2)

(Optional number; prefer 229.73)

## 225 New Testament

*For Gospels and Acts, see 226; for Epistles, see 227; for Revelation, see 228*

[.03] Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances

Do not use for dictionaries and encyclopedias; class in 225.3. Do not use for concordances; class in 225.4–225.5

.04 Special topics of New Testament

.046 Apocalyptic passages

Class apocalyptic passages in a book or group of books with the book or group of books, plus notation 0046 from add table under 221–229, e.g., apocalyptic passages in Gospels 226.0046, in Gospel of Mark 226.30046

*For Revelation (Apocalypse), see 228*

.09 History, geographic treatment, biography

Do not use for geography, history, chronology, persons of Bible lands in Bible times; class in 225.9

Class the canon in 225.12

### .1–.8 Generalities

Add to base number 225 the numbers following 220 in 220.1–220.8, e.g., Authorized Version 225.5203

### .9 Geography, history, chronology, persons of New Testament lands in New Testament times

Add to base number 225.9 the numbers following 221.9 in 221.91–221.95, e.g., individual persons 225.92; however, for Jesus Christ, Mary, Joseph, Joachim, Anne, John the Baptist, see 232

*See Manual at 220.92; also at 230–280*

## 226 \*Gospels and Acts

Class here synoptic Gospels

Subdivisions are added for Gospels and Acts together, for Gospels alone

*See Manual at 230–280*

.095 05 Gospel stories retold

Number built according to instructions under 221–229

Class Jesus as a historical figure, biography and specific events in life of Jesus in 232.9

### .1 Harmonies of Gospels

\*Add as instructed under 221–229

- >           **226.2–226.5 Specific Gospels**  
               Class comprehensive works in 226  
               *For miracles, see 226.7; for parables, see 226.8*
- .2       \*Matthew**  
               Class Golden Rule as code of conduct in 241.54  
               *For Sermon on the Mount, see 226.9*
- .3       \*Mark**
- .4       \*Luke**  
               Class Golden Rule as code of conduct in 241.54  
               *For Sermon on the Mount, see 226.9*
- .5       \*John**  
               Class here comprehensive works on Johannine literature  
               *For Epistles of John, see 227.94; for Revelation (Apocalypse), see 228*
- .6       \*Acts of the Apostles**
- .7       \*Miracles**  
               Class miracles in context of Jesus' life in 232.955
- .8       \*Parables**  
               Class parables in context of Jesus' life in 232.954
- .9       \*Sermon on the Mount**  
               Class Sermon on the Mount as code of conduct in 241.53
- .93       \*Beatitudes
- .96       \*Lord's Prayer
- 227      \*Epistles**  
               Class here Pauline epistles
- .1       \*Romans**
- .2       \*Corinthians 1**  
               Class here comprehensive works on Epistles to Corinthians  
               *For Corinthians 2, see 227.3*
- .3       \*Corinthians 2**
- .4       \*Galatians**

\*Add as instructed under 221–229

.5     **\*Ephesians**

.6     **\*Philippians**

.7     **\*Colossians**

.8     **\*Other Pauline epistles**

.81    **\*Thessalonians 1**

Class here comprehensive works on Epistles to Thessalonians

*For Thessalonians 2, see 227.82*

.82    **\*Thessalonians 2**

.83    **\*Timothy 1**

Class here comprehensive works on Epistles to Timothy, on Pastoral Epistles

*For Timothy 2, see 227.84; for Titus, see 227.85*

.84    **\*Timothy 2**

.85    **\*Titus**

.86    **\*Philemon**

.87    **\*Hebrews**

.9     **\*Catholic epistles**

.91    **\*James**

.92    **\*Peter 1**

Class here comprehensive works on Epistles of Peter

*For Peter 2, see 227.93*

.93    **\*Peter 2**

.94    **\*John 1**

Class here comprehensive works on Epistles of John

*For John 2, see 227.95; for John 3, see 227.96*

.95    **\*John 2**

.96    **\*John 3**

.97    **\*Jude**

**228    \*Revelation (Apocalypse)**

## 229 \*Apocrypha, pseudepigrapha, intertestamental works

Apocrypha: works accepted as deuterocanonical in some Bibles

Pseudepigrapha, intertestamental works: works from intertestamental times connected with the Bible but not accepted as canonical

Subdivisions are added for Apocrypha, pseudepigrapha, intertestamental works together; for Apocrypha alone

### > 229.1–229.7 Specific books and works of Apocrypha

Class comprehensive works in 229

#### .1 \*Esdras 1 and 2

Variant names: Esdras 3 and 4

*See also 222.7 for Ezra; also 222.8 for Nehemiah*

#### .2 \*Tobit, Judith, deuterocanonical part of Esther

##### .22 \*Tobit (Tobias)

(Option: Class in 222.86)

##### .24 \*Judith

(Option: Class in 222.88)

##### .27 \*Deuterocanonical part of Esther

(Option: Class in 222.9)

#### .3 \*Wisdom of Solomon (Wisdom)

Class here Apocryphal wisdom literature

*For Ecclesiasticus, see 229.4*

(Option: Class in 223.96)

#### .4 \*Ecclesiasticus (Sirach)

(Option: Class in 223.98)

#### .5 \*Baruch and Epistle of Jeremiah

(Option: Class Baruch in 224.37)

#### .6 \*Song of the Three Children, Susanna, Bel and the Dragon, Prayer of Manasseh

(Option: Class Song of the Three Children, Susanna, Bel and the Dragon in 224.5)

#### .7 \*Maccabees (Machabees)

.73 \*Maccabees 1 and 2 (Machabees 1 and 2)  
 (Option: Class in 224.997)

.75 \*Maccabees 3 and 4 (Machabees 3 and 4)

> **229.8–229.9 Pseudepigrapha, intertestamental works**

Class comprehensive works in 229.9

*For Maccabees 3 and 4, see 229.75*

**.8 \*Pseudo gospels**

Including agrapha (Jesus' words not appearing in canonical Gospels), Gospel of Thomas

Class comprehensive works on New Testament pseudepigrapha in 229.92

**.9 \*Pseudepigrapha**

*For pseudo gospels, see 229.8*

.91 \*Old Testament

*For Maccabees 3 and 4, see 229.75*

.911 \*Historical books

.912 \*Poetic books

Including Odes of Solomon

.913 \*Prophetic books

Including Apocalypse of Elijah, Ascension of Isaiah, Assumption of Moses, Books of Enoch, Jewish apocalypses

.914 \*Testaments

Including Testament of the Twelve Patriarchs

.92 \*New Testament

*For pseudo gospels, see 229.8; for Epistles, see 229.93; for Apocalypses, see 229.94*

.925 \*Acts of the Apostles

.93 \*Epistles

.94 \*Apocalypses

&gt;

## 230–280 Christianity

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference for the history of Christianity and the Christian church (*except* for biography, explained in Manual at 230–280: Biography), e.g., Jesuit missions in India 266.254 (*not* 271.53054); persecution of Jesuits by Elizabeth I 272.7 (*not* 271.53042, 274.206, or 282.42):

Specific topics	220–260
Persecutions in general church history	272
Doctrinal controversies and heresies in general church history	273
Religious congregations and orders in church history	271
Denominations and sects of Christian church	280
Christianity by continent, country, locality	274–279
History, geographic treatment, biography of Christianity ( <i>except</i> 271–279)	270

Class comprehensive works in 230

*For Bible, see 220*

*See Manual at 230–280*

(Option: To give local emphasis and shorter numbers to a specific religion other than Christianity, e.g., Buddhism, class it in these numbers, its sources in 220, comprehensive works in 230; in that case class the Bible and Christianity in 298. Another option is described at 290)

&gt;

## 230–270 Specific elements of Christianity

Class here specific elements of specific denominations and sects

(Option: Class specific elements of specific denominations and sects in 280)

Class comprehensive works in 230

## 230 Christianity

Including Christian mythology

Class here Christian theology, Christian doctrinal theology, contextual theology

Class doctrinal controversies in general church history in 273

*For Christian moral and devotional theology, see 240; for local Christian church and Christian religious orders, see 250; for Christian social and ecclesiastical theology, see 260; for history, geographic treatment, biography of Christianity, see 270; for denominations and sects of Christian church, see 280*

*See Manual at 398.2 vs. 201.3, 230, 270, 292–299*

## SUMMARY

- 230.002--.007           **Standard subdivisions of Christianity**  
  .01--.09           **Standard subdivisions and specific types of Christian theology**  
  .1--.9           **Doctrines of specific denominations and sects**
- 231           **God**  
232           **Jesus Christ and his family**  
233           **Humankind**  
234           **Salvation and grace**  
235           **Spiritual beings**  
236           **Eschatology**  
238           **Creeds, confessions of faith, covenants, catechisms**  
239           **Apologetics and polemics**
- [.001]           Philosophy and theory of Christianity  
                  Do not use; class in 230.01
- .002--.003       Standard subdivisions of Christianity
- .005           Serial publications of Christianity
- [.006]           Organizations and management of Christianity  
                  Do not use; class in 260
- .007           Education, research, related topics of Christianity
- [.007 1]         Education  
                  Do not use; class in 230.071
- [.008]           Groups of people in Christianity  
                  Do not use; class in 270.08
- [.009]           History, geographic treatment, biography of Christianity  
                  Do not use; class in 270
- .01           Philosophy and theory of Christianity, of Christian theology
- .02--.03       Standard subdivisions of Christian theology
- .04           Specific types of Christian theology  
                  Class theology of specific denominations and sects in 230.1--230.9  
                  *See Manual at 230--280*
- [.040 1--.040 9]   Standard subdivisions  
                  Do not use; class in 230.01--230.09
- .041           Biblical theology  
                  Class theology of a specific part of Old or New Testament with the part, e.g., theology of Pauline epistles 227.06; class biblical theology of a specific topic in doctrinal theology with the topic in 231--239, e.g., Old Testament minor prophets' view of repentance and forgiveness 234.509014; class biblical theology of a specific topic in moral and devotional theology, local Christian church and Christian religious orders, social and ecclesiastical theology with the topic in 240--260, e.g., New Testament writers' view of war and peace 261.87309015

- .041 1 Christian theology of Old Testament
- .041 5 Christian theology of New Testament
- .042 Theology of Eastern and Roman Catholic churches  
Class specific schools and systems of theology in 230.046
- .044 Protestant theology  
Class specific schools of Protestant theology in 230.046
- .046 Specific schools and systems of theology  
Including dominion, existentialist, liberal, neo-orthodox, process theologies
- [.046 01–.046 09] Standard subdivisions  
Do not use; class in 230.01–230.09
- .046 2 Evangelical and fundamentalist theology
- .046 24 Evangelical theology
- .046 26 Fundamentalist theology
- .046 3 Dispensationalist theology
- .046 4 Liberation theology
- .05–.06 Standard subdivisions of Christian theology
- .07 Education, research, related topics of Christian theology
- .071 Education in Christianity, in Christian theology  
Class here Christianity as an academic subject  
Class comprehensive works on Christian religious education, religious education to inculcate Christian faith and practice, catechetics in 268  
*See Manual at 207.5, 268 vs. 200.71, 230.071, 292–299*
- .071 1 Higher education in Christianity, in Christian theology  
Class here Bible colleges, divinity schools, theological seminaries, graduate and undergraduate faculties of theology; education of ministers, pastors, priests, theologians  
Class training for clergy in a specialized subject with the subject, plus notation 0711 from Table 1, e.g., education in pastoral counseling 253.50711  
*For higher education for specific denominations and sects, see 230.073*  
*See Manual at 207.5, 268 vs. 200.71, 230.071, 292–299*
- .071 14–.071 19 Higher education in specific continents, countries, localities  
Class here nondenominational and interdenominational schools and courses

.073 Higher education for specific denominations and sects  
 Add to base number 230.073 the numbers following 28 in 281–289, e.g., Roman Catholic seminaries 230.0732, a Roman Catholic seminary in Dublin 230.073241835

.08–.09 Standard subdivisions of Christian theology

*See Manual at 230–280*

### **.1–.9 Doctrines of specific denominations and sects**

Add to base number 230 the numbers following 28 in 281–289, e.g., Methodist doctrines 230.7

*See Manual at 230–280; also at 270, 230.11–230.14 vs. 230.15–230.2, 281.5–281.9, 282*

(Option: Class here specific doctrines of specific denominations and sects; prefer 231–236. If option is chosen, add as above, then add 0\*and to the result add the numbers following 23 in 231–236, e.g., Methodist doctrines on salvation 230.704)

## **> 231–239 Christian doctrinal theology**

Class here antagonism between and reconciliation of a specific Christian doctrine and a secular discipline

Class specific types of Christian doctrinal theology in 230.042–230.046; class comprehensive works on Christian doctrinal theology in 230; class comprehensive works on doctrines of specific denominations and sects in 230.1–230.9; class comprehensive works on antagonism between and reconciliation of Christian belief and a secular discipline in 261.5

## **> 231–236 Specific topics in Christian doctrinal theology**

Class here specific doctrines of specific denominations and sects  
 (Option: Class specific doctrines of specific denominations and sects in 230.1–230.9)

Class comprehensive works in 230

## **231 God**

.04 Special topics of God

.042 Ways of knowing God

Including faith, reason, tradition

Class proofs of existence of God based on reason alone in 212.1; class revelation in 231.74

- .044            General concepts of God  
                   Including non-Trinitarian concepts  
                   Class here comprehensive works on Holy Trinity

>            **231.1–231.3 Holy Trinity**

                  Class comprehensive works in 231.044

**.1            God the Father**

**.2            God the Son**

*For Jesus Christ, see 232*

**.3            God the Holy Spirit**

*For gifts of and baptism in the Holy Spirit, see 234.13*

**.4            Attributes**

                  Including omnipotence, omnipresence, omniscience, transcendence

*For love and wisdom, see 231.6; for sovereignty, see 231.7; for justice and goodness, see 231.8*

**.5            Providence**

**.6            Love and wisdom**

**.7            Relation to the world**

                  Including relation to nature, sovereignty

                  Class here God's relation to individual believers

                  Class redemption in 234.3; class divine law in 241.2; class believers' experience of God in 248.2; class God's relation to the church in 262.7

*For Providence, see 231.5*

**.72           Kingdom of God**

                  Class Kingdom of God to come in 236

**.73           Miracles**

                  Class here miracles associated with saints, comprehensive works on miracles

*For miracles associated with Mary, see 232.917; for miracles of Jesus, see 232.955; for stigmata, see 248.29*

**.74           Revelation**

*For private visions, see 248.29*

**.745          Prophecy**

*For Biblical prophecy and prophecies, see 220.15; for messianic prophecies, see 232.12; for eschatological prophecies, see 236*

- .76           Relation to and action in history  
                   Including covenant relationship, relationship to the Jewish people
- .765           Creation  
                   *For creation of humankind, see 233.11*
- .765 2           Relation of scientific and Christian viewpoints of origin of universe  
                   Class here creationism, creation science, evolution versus creation,  
                   reconciliation of evolution and creation  
                   *See also 379.28 for teaching creationism in public schools*  
                   *See Manual at 231.7652 vs. 213, 500, 576.8*

**.8           Justice and goodness**

Including good and evil

Class here theodicy (vindication of God's justice and goodness in permitting existence of evil and suffering)

*For providence, see 231.5; for Christian ethics, see 241*

**232       Jesus Christ and his family**

Class here Christology

>           **232.1–232.8 Christology**

Class life of Jesus in 232.9; class comprehensive works in 232

**.1       Incarnation and messiahship of Christ**

Including typology

**.12      Messianic prophecies**

**.2       Christ as Logos (Word of God)**

**.3       Christ as Redeemer**

Including atonement

Class comprehensive works on the doctrine of redemption in 234.3

*For sacrifice of Christ, see 232.4*

**.4       Sacrifice of Christ**

**.5       Resurrection of Christ**

**.8 Divinity and humanity of Christ**

Including Person; offices as Prophet, Priest, King; intercession

Class here hypostatic union

Class non-Trinitarian concepts of Jesus in 232.9

*For incarnation, see 232.1; for Christ as Logos, see 232.2; for Christ as Redeemer, see 232.3*

**.9 Family and life of Jesus**

Class here non-Trinitarian concepts of Jesus, rationalistic interpretations of Jesus

*For Islamic doctrines about Jesus, see 297.2465*

*See Manual at 230–280*

.900 1–.900 9 Standard subdivisions

.901 Life of Jesus

*For birth, infancy, childhood of Jesus, see 232.92; for adulthood of Jesus, see 232.95–232.97*

.903 Character and personality of Jesus

.904 Jesus as teacher and exemplar

Including influence

Class teachings in 232.954

.906 Jewish interpretations of Jesus

.908 Historicity of Jesus

.91 Mary, mother of Jesus

Class here Mariology

Class Mary's husband and parents in 232.93

.911 Immaculate Conception

.912 Annunciation

.913 Virginity

.914 Assumption (Ascent to heaven)

.917 Miracles and apparitions

.92 Birth, infancy, childhood of Jesus

Including Holy Family, circumcision, massacre of innocents, flight into Egypt

Class here Christmas story

*For Mary, see 232.91; for Joseph, see 232.932*

.921 Virgin birth

- .922 Adoration of shepherds
- .923 Wise men (Magi)
- .927 Childhood of Jesus
  - For presentation in temple, see 232.928; for Jesus among doctors in temple, see 232.929*
- .928 Presentation in temple
- .929 Jesus among doctors in temple
- .93 Mary's husband and parents
  - .932 Joseph
  - .933 Joachim and Anne
- .94 John the Baptist
- .95 Public life of Jesus
  - Including baptism, temptation, calling of apostles
- .954 Teachings
  - Class texts and interpretations of New Testament passages narrating parables in 226.8
- .955 Miracles
  - Class texts and interpretations of New Testament passages narrating miracles in 226.7
- .956 Transfiguration
- .957 Last Supper
- .958 Last words to disciples
- .96 Passion and death of Jesus
  - .961 Betrayal by Judas
    - Class comprehensive works on Judas Iscariot in 226.092
  - .962 Trial and condemnation
  - .963 Crucifixion and death
    - .963 5 Seven last words on cross
  - .964 Burial
  - .966 Relics of Passion
  - .967 Descent into hell
- .97 Resurrection, appearances, ascension of Jesus

## 233 **Humankind**

Class salvation in 234

### .1 **Creation and fall**

- .11           Creation
  - Including relation of human creation and human evolution
  - Class comprehensive works on creation in 231.765
- .14           Original sin and fall
  - Class sins in 241.3
- .4            **Accountability**
  - Including guilt
- .5            **Nature**
  - Including body, soul, spirit, sexuality; humankind as image and likeness of God, as child of God
  - Class free will in 233.7
  - For original sin, see 233.14; for death, see 236.1; for immortality, see 236.22*
- .7            **Freedom of choice between good and evil**
  - Class predestination and free will in relation to salvation in 234.9
  - For accountability, see 233.4*

## 234           **Salvation and grace**

- Variant name for salvation: soteriology
- Including election, innate virtues, merit, universal priesthood
- .1            **Kinds and means of grace**
  - Including actual and sanctifying grace
- .13           Spiritual gifts
  - Including interpretation of tongues, prophecy, working of miracles, helps, governments, apostleship, teaching, exhortation, speaking words of wisdom and knowledge
  - Class here gifts of and baptism in the Holy Spirit
  - For faith, see 234.23*
- .131          Healing
  - Spiritual, emotional, or physical
  - For discussion of whether cures are miracles, see 231.73*
  - See Manual at 615.852 vs. 203.1, 234.131, 292–299*
- .132          Speaking in tongues (Glossolalia)
- .16           Sacraments
  - Class liturgy and ritual of sacraments in 265
- .161          Baptism

- .161 2 Infant baptism
- .161 3 Adult baptism
- .162 Confirmation (Chrismation)
- .163 Eucharist (Holy Communion, Lord's Supper)
- .164 Holy Orders
- .165 Matrimony
- .166 Penance
  - Including confession
- .167 Anointing of the sick

**.2 Faith and hope**

*See also 236 for eschatology; also 241.4 for virtues*

- .23 Faith
- .25 Hope

**.3 Redemption**

**.4 Regeneration**

**.5 Repentance and forgiveness**

Including atonement, reconciliation

**.6 Obedience**

**.7 Justification**

**.8 Sanctification and holiness**

Class here deification (theosis)

**.9 Predestination and free will**

**235 Spiritual beings**

*For Mariology, see 232.91*

**.2 Saints**

Class miracles associated with saints in 231.73

*For Joseph, see 232.932; for Joachim and Anne, see 232.933; for John the Baptist, see 232.94*

*See Manual at 230–280*

- .24 Beatification and canonization

- >           **235.3–235.4 Pure spirits**  
                   Class comprehensive works in 235  
                   *For God, see 231*
- .3           **Angels**  
                   Including archangels, celestial hierarchy, cherubim, seraphim
- .4           **Devils (Demons)**  
                   Class here spiritual warfare
- .47          Satan (Lucifer)
- 236 Eschatology**  
                   Including Antichrist  
                   Class here Kingdom of God to come
- .1           **Death**
- .2           **Future state (Life after death)**  
                   Class resurrection of the dead in 236.8  
                   *For intermediate state, see 236.4*
- .21          Eternity
- .22          Immortality  
                   *For conditional immortality, see 236.23*
- .23          Conditional immortality (Annihilationism)
- .24          Heaven
- .25          Hell
- .4           **Intermediate state**  
                   Probation after death  
                   Including limbo of fathers (limbus patrum), limbo of infants (limbus infantium)  
                   *For purgatory, see 236.5*
- .5           **Purgatory**
- .8           **Resurrection of the dead**
- .9           **Last Judgment and related events**  
                   Including Armageddon, Day of the Lord, end of the world, Judgment of Christ,  
                   millennium, rapture, Second Coming of Christ, tribulation  
                   Class interdisciplinary works on end of the world in 001.9

**[237] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 16

**238 Creeds, confessions of faith, covenants, catechisms**

Class catechetics in 268. Class creeds and catechisms on a specific doctrine with the doctrine, e.g., attributes of God 231.4

**.1 Early and Eastern creeds****.11–.19 Creeds of early church and Eastern churches**

Add to base number 238.1 the numbers following 281 in 281.1–281.9, e.g., creeds of Eastern churches 238.15 [*formerly* 238.19]; creeds of Eastern Catholic churches (Eastern rite churches in communion with Rome) 238.152 [*formerly* 238.19]; creeds of Saint Thomas Christian churches 238.154 [*formerly* 238.19]; creeds of Oriental Orthodox churches 238.16 [*formerly* 238.19]; creeds of Assyrian Church of the East (Church of the East) 238.18 [*formerly* 238.19]; creeds of Orthodox Church 238.19

**.11 Creeds of Apostolic Church to the time of the great schism, 1054**

Number built according to instructions under 238.11–238.19

Class here Apostles' Creed

*For creeds of Post-Nicene church, 325–1054, see 238.14*

**.14 Creeds of Post-Nicene church, 325–1054**

Number built according to instructions under 238.11–238.19

**.142 Nicene Creed**

Class here Niceno-Constantinopolitan Creed

**.144 Athanasian Creed****.19 Creeds of Orthodox Church**

Number built according to instructions under 238.11–238.19

Class Nicene Creed, Niceno-Constantinopolitan Creed in 238.142

**.2–.9 Other denominations**

Add to base number 238 the numbers following 28 in 282–289, e.g., Lutheran catechisms 238.41

**239 Apologetics and polemics**

Apologetics: systematic argumentation in defense of the divine origin and authority of Christianity

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class apologetics of specific denominations in 230.1–230.9. Class apologetics and polemics on a specific doctrine with the doctrine, e.g., on doctrine of Holy Trinity 231.044

*See also 273 for doctrinal controversies and heresies in general church history*

**.1 Apologetics and polemics in apostolic times**

*For polemics against doctrines of specific groups in apostolic times, see 239.2–239.4*

**> 239.2–239.4 Polemics against doctrines of specific groups in apostolic times**

Class comprehensive works in 239.1

**.2 Polemics against Jews in apostolic times****.3 Polemics against pagans and heathens in apostolic times****.4 Polemics against Neoplatonists in apostolic times****.7 Polemics against rationalists, agnostics, apostates, atheists in postapostolic times**

Including polemics against deists, materialists, scientists, secular humanists

**.9 Polemics against other groups in postapostolic times**

Class comprehensive postapostolic defenses of and attacks on doctrines of specific denominations or sects in 230.1–230.9. Class attacks on doctrines of a specific religion with the religion, e.g., doctrines of Judaism 296.3

**.93 Polemics against new age groups and doctrines****240 Christian moral and devotional theology****SUMMARY**

- 241 Christian ethics
- 242 Devotional literature
- 243 Evangelistic writings for individuals and families
- 246 Use of art in Christianity
- 247 Church furnishings and related articles
- 248 Christian experience, practice, life
- 249 Christian observances in family life

**241 Christian ethics**

Variant name: Moral theology

*See Manual at 241 vs. 261.8*

**.04 Specific branches, denominations, sects****.040 2 Eastern and Roman Catholic churches**

*For ethics of Eastern churches, see 241.0415; for ethics of Roman Catholic Church, see 241.042*

**.040 4 Protestant churches and Protestantism**

*For ethics of specific Protestant denominations and sects, see 241.043–241.049*

- .041–.049      **Specific denominations or sects**  
                     Add to base number 241.04 the numbers following 28 in 281–289, e.g.,  
                     Lutheran ethics 241.0441
- .1      Conscience**
- .2      Laws and bases of morality**  
                     Including divine law, natural law  
                     Class here relation of law and gospel  
                     *For codes of conduct, see 241.5*
- .3      Sin and vices**  
                     Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                     Including specific vices  
                     Class original sin in 233.14  
                     *For specific moral issues, see 241.6*
- .31      Mortal and venial sin
- .4      Virtues**  
                     Including specific virtues  
                     Class faith and hope as means of salvation in 234.2  
                     *For specific moral issues, see 241.6*
- .5      Codes of conduct**  
                     *For specific moral issues, see 241.6*
- .52      Ten Commandments
- .53      Sermon on the Mount
- .54      Golden Rule
- .6      Specific moral issues**  
                     Add to base number 241.6 the numbers following 17 in 172–179, e.g., morality  
                     of warfare 241.6242, of abortion 241.6976; however, for specific vices, see  
                     241.3; for specific virtues, see 241.4

**242 Devotional literature**

Class here texts of meditations, contemplations, prayers for individuals and families, religious poetry intended for devotional use

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., prayers and meditations for daily use based on passages from the Bible 242.2 (*not* 242.5):

Prayers and meditations for use in times of illness, trouble, bereavement	242.4
Prayers and meditations for specific groups of people	242.6
Prayers and meditations for daily use	242.2
Prayers and meditations for church year, other Christian feast and fast days	242.3
Prayers and meditations based on passages from the Bible	242.5
Specific prayers and groups of prayers	242.7
Collections of prayers	242.8

Class devotional literature on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., meditations on passion and death of Jesus 232.96

*For evangelistic writings, see 243; for hymns, see 264.23*

**.08 Groups of people**

Do not use for devotional literature for specific groups of people; class in 242.6

Class here devotional literature by specific groups of people

**.2 Prayers and meditations for daily use**

Not limited to saints' days or specific parts of the church year

Including meditations and prayers for Sunday, Sabbath

Class prayers and meditations for daily use for specific groups of people in 242.6

**.3 Prayers and meditations for church year, other Christian feast and fast days**

Class prayers and meditations for church year, other Christian feast and fast days for specific groups of people in 242.6

**> 242.33–242.36 Church year**

Class comprehensive works in 242.3

*For Pentecost and time after Pentecost (Ordinary time), see 242.38*

**.33 Advent and Christmas****.332 Advent****.335 Christmas season**

Class here Christmas day

- .34 Lent  
     *For Holy Week, see 242.35*
- .35 Holy Week
- .36 Easter season  
     Including Ascension Day  
     Class here Easter Sunday
- .37 Other Christian feast and fast days  
     Including saints' days
- .38 Pentecost and time after Pentecost (Ordinary time)
- .4 Prayers and meditations for use in times of illness, trouble, bereavement**
- .5 Prayers and meditations based on passages from the Bible**  
     Class interpretation and criticism of Bible passages for other than devotional use in 220.6; class Bible prayers in 242.722
- .6 Prayers and meditations for specific groups of people**  
     Class here prayers and meditations for daily use, church year, other Christian feast and fast days for specific groups of people  
     Add to base number 242.6 the numbers following 248.8 in 248.82–248.89, e.g., prayers and meditations for college students 242.634; however, for prayers and meditations for use in times of illness, trouble, bereavement, see 242.4  
     Class collections of prayers for specific groups of people in 242.82–242.89
- .7 Specific prayers and groups of prayers**
- .72 Specific types of prayers  
     Including doxologies  
     Class here prayers to Father, Son, Holy Spirit
- .722 Bible prayers
- 
- > 242.74–242.76 Prayers addressed to spiritual beings other than God  
     Class comprehensive works in 242.7
- .74 Prayers to Mary  
     Including Ave Maria (Hail Mary), Rosary
- .75 Prayers to Joseph, Joachim, Anne
- .76 Prayers to saints and angels  
     *For Joseph, Joachim, Anne, see 242.75*

**.8 Collections of prayers**

Class here prayer books

*For specific prayers and groups of prayers, see 242.7*

.800 1–.800 7 Standard subdivisions

.800 8 Groups of people

Do not use for collections of prayers for specific groups of people; class in 242.82–242.89

Class here collections of prayers by specific groups of people

.800 9 History, geographic treatment, biography

.801–.809 Collections of prayers by adherents of specific denominations and sects

Add to base number 242.80 the numbers following 28 in 281–289, e.g., collections of private prayers by Methodists 242.807

.82–.89 Collections of prayers for specific groups of people

Add to base number 242.8 the numbers following 248.8 in 248.82–248.89, e.g., collections of private prayers for college students 242.834

*For collections of prayers by adherents of specific denominations and sects, see 242.801–242.809*

**243 Evangelistic writings for individuals and families**

Works designed to convert readers, promote repentance

Class evangelistic sermons in 252.3

**[244] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 15

**[245] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 21

**246 Use of art in Christianity**

Religious meaning, significance, purpose

Class attitude of Christianity and Christian church toward secular art, the arts in 261.57; class creation, description, critical appraisal as art in 700

*For church furnishings and related articles, see 247*

**> 246.1–246.4 Schools and styles**

Class specific elements by school and style in 246.5–246.9; class comprehensive works in 246. Class interdisciplinary works on schools and styles of Christian art with the school or style in 709, e.g., interdisciplinary works on early Christian art 709.0212

**.1 Byzantine and Gothic art**

- .2 Early Christian and Romanesque art**
- .4 Renaissance and modern art**  
Including Protestant art
- 
- > **246.5–246.9 Specific elements**  
Class comprehensive works in 246
- .5 Icons, symbols, insignia**
- .53 Icons
- .55 Symbols  
Including banners, emblems, incense, votive offerings  
Class here Christian symbolism  
*For colors and lights, see 246.6*
- .558 Crosses and crucifixes  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .56 Insignia  
Including insignia of rank
- .6 Colors and lights**
- .7 Dramatic, musical, rhythmic arts**  
Including dance, liturgical dance
- .72 Dramatic arts
- .723 Passion plays
- .725 Puppetry
- .75 Music  
Class here comprehensive works on music in Christianity  
Class attitude of Christianity and Christian church toward secular music in 261.578; class interdisciplinary works on Christian sacred music in 781.71  
*For music in public worship, see 264.2*
- .9 Architecture**  
Add to base number 246.9 the numbers following 726 in 726.4–726.9, e.g., cathedral church buildings 246.96; however, for church furnishings, see 247
- 247 Church furnishings and related articles**  
Including paintings, plastic arts, sculpture, structural decoration, textiles
- .1 Furniture**

**248 Christian experience, practice, life**

Class here spirituality

*See Manual at 230-280*

**SUMMARY**

- 248.06 Organizations and management**  
 .2 **Religious experience**  
 .3 **Worship**  
 .4 **Christian life and practice**  
 .5 **Witness bearing**  
 .6 **Stewardship**  
 .8 **Guides to Christian life for specific groups of people**

.06 Organizations and management

Class pious societies, sodalities, confraternities in 267

**.2 Religious experience**

.22 Mysticism

.24 Conversion

*For moral renewal and commitment, see 248.25*

> 248.242-248.246 Conversion from one system of belief to another

Class comprehensive works in 248.24

*For conversion of Christians to another religion, see the religion, e.g.,  
 conversion of Christians to Judaism 296.714*

.242 Conversion from Protestantism to Roman Catholicism

.244 Conversion from Roman Catholicism to Protestantism

.246 Conversion from non-Christianity to Christianity

.25 Moral renewal and commitment

.29 Other religious experiences

Including stigmata, private visions

Class spiritual gifts in 234.13; class speaking in tongues (glossolalia) in  
 234.132

**.3 Worship**

Class here comprehensive works on worship

Class texts of prayers and devotions in 242

*For observances in family life, see 249; for public worship, see 264*

.32 Prayer

.34 Meditation and contemplation

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

**.4 Christian life and practice**

Class here Christian marriage and family

*For Christian ethics, see 241; for worship, see 248.3; for witness bearing, see 248.5; for stewardship, see 248.6; for Christian observances in family life, see 249*

**.408 Groups of people**

Do not use for guides to Christian life for specific groups of people; class in 248.8

Class here guides to Christian life by specific groups of people

**.46 Individual observances**

Including ceremonial and ritual observances, observance of restrictions and limitations

*For asceticism, see 248.47; for pilgrimages, see 263.041*

**.47 Asceticism**

Attitudes and practices aside from and beyond normal moral duties adopted as aids to moral and spiritual development

Including practice of celibacy, fasting and abstinence, poverty, solitude, other physical austerities, e.g., flagellation

*For clerical celibacy, see 253.25; for practices of religious congregations and orders, see 255*

**.48 Guides to Christian life by or for adherents of specific branches, denominations, sects**

Class guides to Christian life for specific groups of people who are adherents of specific denominations and sects in 248.8

**.480 2 Eastern and Roman Catholic churches**

*For guides to Christian life by or for adherents of Eastern churches, see 248.4815; for guides to Christian life by or for adherents of Roman Catholic Church, see 248.482*

**.480 4 Protestant churches and Protestantism**

*For guides to Christian life by or for adherents of specific Protestant denominations and sects, see 248.483–248.489*

**.481–.489 Specific denominations or sects**

Add to base number 248.48 the numbers following 28 in 281–289, e.g., guides for Roman Catholics 248.482

**.5 Witness bearing****.6 Stewardship**

**.8 Guides to Christian life for specific groups of people**

Limited to groups provided for below

Class here guides to Christian life for specific groups of people who are adherents of specific denominations and sects

Class guides to a specific aspect of Christian life with the aspect, e.g., prayer  
248.32

- .808           Groups of people
- .808 1           People by gender or sex
- [.808 11]           Men  
                    Do not use; class in 248.842
- [.808 2]           Women  
                    Do not use; class in 248.843
- [.808 3]           Young people  
                    Do not use for children; class in 248.82. Do not use for young people  
                    twelve to twenty; class in 248.83
- [.808 4]           People in specific stages of adulthood  
                    Do not use; class in 248.84
- .808 5           Relatives  
                    Do not use for parents; class in 248.845
- .808 6           People by miscellaneous social attributes
- .808 65           People by marital status  
                    Do not use for men by marital status; class in 248.8422–248.8429.  
                    Do not use for women by marital status; class in  
                    248.8432–248.8439
- [.808 653]           Separated and divorced people  
                    Do not use; class in 248.846
- [.808 655]           Married people  
                    Do not use; class in 248.844
- .808 7           Gifted people  
                    Do not use for people with disabilities or illnesses; class in 248.86
- [.808 8]           Occupational and religious groups  
                    Do not use for adherents of specific denominations or sects; class in  
                    248.48. Do not use for occupational groups; class in 248.88. Do not  
                    use for clergy or people in religious orders; class in 248.89

- > 248.82–248.85 Guides to Christian life for specific age groups
- Class people of specific ages in specific occupational groups or experiencing illness, trouble, bereavement in 248.86–248.89; class comprehensive works in 248.8
- .82 Children  
Through age eleven
- .83 Young people twelve to twenty and college students  
Standard subdivisions are added for young people twelve to twenty and college students together, for young people twelve to twenty alone
- .832 Males twelve to twenty
- .833 Females twelve to twenty
- .834 College students  
Male and female
- .84 Adults  
*For people in late adulthood, see 248.85*
- .842 Men
- .842 1 Fathers  
Regardless of marital status
- .842 2–.842 9 Men by marital status  
Add to base number 248.842 the numbers following —0865 in notation 08652–08659 from Table 1, e.g., guides for husbands 248.8425  
Class fathers in 248.8421
- .843 Women
- .843 1 Mothers  
Regardless of marital status
- .843 2–.843 9 Women by marital status  
Add to base number 248.843 the numbers following —0865 in notation 08652–08659 from Table 1, e.g., guides for wives 248.8435  
Class mothers in 248.8431
- .844 Married people  
Class husbands in 248.8425; class wives in 248.8435
- .845 Parents  
Class here Christian child rearing, Christian religious training of children in the home  
*For fathers, see 248.8421; for mothers, see 248.8431*

.846 Separated and divorced people  
*For separated and divorced men, see 248.8423; for separated and divorced women, see 248.8433*

.85 People in late adulthood

> 248.86–248.89 Guides to Christian life for occupational classes; people experiencing illness, trouble, bereavement

Class comprehensive works in 248.8

.86 People experiencing illness, trouble, bereavement

.861–.864 People experiencing specific illnesses and disabilities

Add to base number 248.86 the numbers following 362 in 362.1–362.4, e.g., people experiencing addiction 248.8629

*See Manual at 616.86 vs. 158.1, 204.42, 248.8629, 292–299, 362.29*

.866 People experiencing bereavement

.88 Occupational groups

*For religious groups, see 248.89*

.89 Religious groups

.892 Clergy

*For people in religious orders, see 248.894*

.894 People in religious orders

.894 2 Men

.894 22 Vocation

.894 25 Selection and novitiate

.894 3 Women

.894 32 Vocation

.894 35 Selection and novitiate

## 249 Christian observances in family life

Class here family prayer; family observance of religious restrictions, rites, ceremonies

## > 250–280 Christian church

Class comprehensive works in 260

## 250 Local Christian church and Christian religious orders

Standard subdivisions are added for local Christian church and Christian religious orders together, for local Christian church alone

Class public worship in 264; class missions in 266; class religious education in 268

### SUMMARY

- 250.9 History, geographic treatment, biography
- 251 Preaching (Homiletics)
- 252 Texts of sermons
- 253 Pastoral office and work (Pastoral theology)
- 254 Parish administration
- 255 Religious congregations and orders
- 259 Pastoral care of families, of specific groups of people

[.68] Management

Do not use for management of local Christian church and Christian religious orders together; class in 250. Do not use for management of local Christian church; class in 254

### .9 History, geographic treatment, biography

Class general history of local church in specific continents, countries, localities in 274–279; class history, geographic treatment, biography of specific denominations in 280

## > 251–254 Local church

Class here basic Christian communities

Class the local church in overall church organization in 262.2; class comprehensive works in 250

*For pastoral care of families, of specific groups of people, see 259*

*See Manual at 260 vs. 251–254, 259*

## 251 Preaching (Homiletics)

Class texts of sermons in 252; class pastoral methods in 253.7

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions

.01 Preparation

.02 Sermon outlines

.03 Delivery

Class here voice, expression, gesture

.07 Radio and television preaching

Class specific aspects of radio and television preaching in 251.01–251.03

.08 Homiletic illustrations

**.1–.9 Material for preparation of sermons for specific occasions, for specific groups of people**

Add to base number 251 the numbers following 252 in 252.1–252.9, e.g., material for preparation of sermons arranged for the church year 251.6

**252 Texts of sermons**

Class sermons on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., God's Providence 231.5

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions

.01–.09 Texts of sermons by specific denominations and sects

Add to base number 252.0 the numbers following 28 in 281–289, e.g., Anglican sermons 252.03

**.1 Texts of sermons for baptisms, confirmations, funerals, weddings**

Class sermons for memorial occasions in 252.9

**.3 Texts of sermons for evangelistic meetings**

**.5 Texts of sermons for specific groups of people**

.53 Children

Through age eleven

.55 Young people twelve to twenty and college students

Including academic, chapel, convocation, commencement sermons

.56 People in late adulthood, and people experiencing illness, trouble, bereavement

.58 Occupational groups

*For religious groups, see 252.59*

.59 Religious groups

.592 Clergy

*For people in religious orders, see 252.594*

.594 People in religious orders

**.6 Texts of sermons for church year and public occasions**

Standard subdivisions are added for texts of sermons for church year and public occasions together, for church year alone

> 252.61–252.64 Church year

Class comprehensive works in 252.6

.61 Advent and Christmas

.612 Advent

- .615 Christmas season  
Class here Christmas day
- .62 Lent
- .625 Holy Week
- .63 Easter season  
Including Ascension Day  
Class here Easter Sunday
- .64 Pentecost and time after Pentecost (Ordinary time)
- .67 Other feast and fast days  
Including saints' days
- .68 Secular occasions  
Including elections, holidays, thanksgivings

**.7 Texts of sermons for consecrations, ordinations, installations**

**.9 Texts of sermons for memorial occasions**

**253 Pastoral office and work (Pastoral theology)**

Class here the work of priests, ministers, pastors, rectors, vicars, curates, chaplains, elders, deacons, assistants, laity in relation to the work of the church at the local level

Class local clergy and laity in relation to the government, organization and nature of the church as a whole in 262.1; class the ordination of women in 262.14; class the role of clergy in religious education in 268

- .08 Groups of people  
Do not use for pastoral care of specific groups of people; class in 259  
Class here pastoral care performed by groups of people
- .09 History, geographic treatment, biography
- .092 Biography  
Do not use for biography of clergy in the period prior to 1054; class in 270.1--270.3. Do not use for biography of clergy in the period subsequent to 1054; class in 280  
*See Manual at 230--280*
- .2 Life and person**  
Including professional and personal qualifications  
Class education of clergy in 230.0711; class guides to Christian life for clergy in 248.892
- .22 Families of clergy

.25 Clerical celibacy

Add to base number 253.25 the numbers following 28 in 281–289, e.g., clerical celibacy in Orthodox church 253.2519, in Orthodox church in United States 253.251973

> **253.5–253.7 Pastoral duties and responsibilities**

Class methods for services to families, to specific groups of people in 259; class comprehensive works in 253

*For preaching, see 251; for parish administration, see 254*

**.5 Counseling and spiritual direction**

Standard subdivisions are added for counseling and spiritual direction together, for counseling alone

Class pastoral counseling, spiritual direction of specific groups of people in 259; class premarital, marriage, family counseling in 259.12–259.14

.52 Pastoral psychology

.53 Spiritual direction

**.7 Pastoral methods**

Including group work, telephone work

.76 Pastoral methods in homes

.78 Use of radio and television

**254 Parish administration**

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions

.01–.09 Parish administration by specific denominations and sects

Add to base number 254.0 the numbers following 28 in 281–289, e.g., administration of Roman Catholic parishes 254.02

**.1 Initiation of new churches**

**.2 Parish administration in specific kinds of communities**

Class a specific activity in a specific kind of community with the activity, e.g., membership promotion 254.5

.22 Urban communities

.23 Suburban communities

.24 Rural communities

**.3 Use of communications media**

Including use of audiovisual materials

**.4 Public relations and publicity**

*For use of communications media, see 254.3*

**.5 Membership**

Promotion and growth

**.6 Programs**

Planning and execution

**.7 Buildings, equipment, grounds****.8 Finance**

Including budget, expenditures, income, methods of raising money

**255 Religious congregations and orders**

Class here monasticism, comprehensive works on Christian religious congregations and orders

When adding from 271 to indicate kinds of orders or specific orders, add only the notation for the kind or order. Do not use the footnote instruction to add as instructed under 271, but add notation from the table under 255.1–255.7 if it applies, or add notation 01–09 from Table 1. For example, the correct number for contemplative orders in the United Kingdom is 255.010941 (*not* 255.01041); for Benedictines in the United Kingdom 255.100941 (*not* 255.1041)

*For guides to Christian life for people in religious orders, see 248.894; for religious congregations and orders in church organization, see 262.24; for religious congregations and orders, monasticism in church history, see 271. For specific types of activity of religious congregations and orders, see the activity, e.g., pastoral counseling 253.5, missionary work 266*

**.001–.009** Standard subdivisions**.01–.09** Specific kinds of congregations and orders

Add to base number 255.0 the numbers following 271.0 in 271.01–271.09 for the kind only, e.g., contemplative orders 255.01; then, for each kind having its own number, add notation 01–09 from Table 1 (*not* as instructed under 271), e.g., contemplative orders in the United Kingdom 255.010941

**.1–.7 Roman Catholic orders of men**

Add to base number 255 the numbers following 271 in 271.1–271.7 for the order only, e.g., Benedictines 255.1; then, for each order having its own number, add further as follows (*not* as instructed at 271), e.g., Benedictines in the United Kingdom 255.100941, the rule of St. Benedict 255.106:

001–009 Standard subdivisions

02 Constitutions

04 Statutes, ordinances, customs

06 Rule

**.8 Non-Roman Catholic orders of men****.81** Monasticism of Eastern churches

Add to base number 255.81 the numbers following 281 in 281.5–281.9, e.g., Orthodox monasticism 255.819

**.83** Anglican orders of men**.9 Congregations and orders of women**

- .900 1–.900 9      Standard subdivisions
- .901–.909      Specific kinds of congregations and orders  
                     Add to base number 255.90 the numbers following 271.0 in 271.01–271.09 for the kind only, e.g., contemplative orders 255.901; then, for each kind having its own number, add notation 01–09 from Table 1 (*not* as instructed under 271), e.g., contemplative orders in the United Kingdom 255.9010941
- .91–.97      Roman Catholic orders of women  
                     Add to base number 255.9 the numbers following 271.9 in 271.91–271.97 for the order only, e.g., Dominican sisters 255.972; then, for each order having its own number, add further as instructed under 255.1–255.7 (*not* as instructed at 271), e.g., Dominicans in the United Kingdom 255.97200941, the rule of the Dominicans 255.97206
- .98      Non-Roman Catholic orders of women
- .981      Monasticism of women of Eastern churches  
                     Add to base number 255.981 the numbers following 281 in 281.5–281.9, e.g., Orthodox monasticism of women 255.9819
- .983      Anglican orders of women

**[256]      [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 14

**[257]      [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 14

**[258]      [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 17

**259      Pastoral care of families, of specific groups of people**

Performed by clergy or laity

Class here pastoral counseling of specific groups of people

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., pastoral care of bereaved young people 259.6 (*not* 259.2):

Pastoral care of the bereaved	259.6
Pastoral care of antisocial and asocial people	259.5
Pastoral care of people with disabilities, with physical or mental illnesses	259.4
Pastoral care of families	259.1
Pastoral care of young people	259.2
Pastoral care of people in late adulthood	259.3

Class comprehensive works on pastoral care of more than one kind of person in 253

*See also 253.08 for pastoral care performed by groups of people; also 361.75 for works limited to social welfare work by religious organizations*

*See Manual at 260 vs. 251–254, 259*

- [.01–.07] Standard subdivisions  
Do not use; class in 253.01–253.07
- .08 Groups of people  
Do not use for bereaved people; class in 259.6
- [.083] Young people  
Do not use; class in 259.2
- .084 People in specific stages of adulthood
- [.084 2] People in early adulthood  
Do not use; class in 259.25
- [.084 6] People in late adulthood  
Do not use; class in 259.3
- .086 People by miscellaneous social attributes
- [.086 92] Antisocial and asocial people  
Do not use; class in 259.5
- .087 Gifted people  
Do not use for people with disabilities and illnesses; class in 259.4
- .088 Occupational and religious groups
- [.088 378 198] College students  
Do not use; class in 259.24
- [.09] History, geographic treatment, biography  
Do not use; class in 253.09
- .1 Pastoral care of families**
- .12 Family counseling  
*For premarital counseling, see 259.13; for marriage counseling, see 259.14*
- .13 Premarital counseling
- .14 Marriage counseling
- .2 Pastoral care of young people**
- .22 Pastoral care of children  
Through age eleven
- .23 Pastoral care of young people twelve to twenty  
Class here comprehensive works on pastoral care of young adults  
*For pastoral care of young adults over twenty-one, see 259.25*

- .24 Pastoral care of college students  
Class here campus ministry
- .25 Pastoral care of people in early adulthood  
Class here young adults over twenty-one  
*For pastoral care of college students, see 259.24*
- .3 Pastoral care of people in late adulthood**
- .4 Pastoral care of people with disabilities, with physical or mental illnesses**  
Class here programs for visiting the sick  
Add to base number 259.4 the numbers following 362 in 362.1–362.4, e.g.,  
pastoral care of those who have attempted suicide 259.428
- .5 Pastoral care of antisocial and asocial people**  
Class here prison chaplaincy; pastoral care of juvenile delinquents and  
predelinquents, of offenders
- .6 Pastoral care of the bereaved**

## **260 Christian social and ecclesiastical theology**

Institutions, services, observances, disciplines, work of Christianity and Christian church

Class here comprehensive works on Christian church

*For local church and religious orders, see 250; for denominations and sects, see 280*

*See Manual at 260 vs. 251–254, 259*

### **SUMMARY**

- 260.9 **History, geographic treatment, biography**  
261 **Social theology and interreligious relations and attitudes**  
262 **Ecclesiology**  
263 **Days, times, places of religious observance**  
264 **Public worship**  
265 **Sacraments, other rites and acts**  
266 **Missions**  
267 **Associations for religious work**  
268 **Religious education**  
269 **Spiritual renewal**

### **.9 History, geographic treatment, biography**

Do not use for history, geographic treatment, biography of Christian church;  
class in 270

## 261 Social theology and interreligious relations and attitudes

Attitude of Christianity and Christian church toward and influence on secular matters, attitude toward other religions, interreligious relations

Class here Christianity and culture

Class sociology of religion in 306.6

### .1 Role of Christian church in society

Class specific socioeconomic problems in 261.8

### .2 Christianity and other systems of belief

#### .21 Christianity and irreligion

Including Christianity and communism, Christianity and the apostate and indifferent

#### .22–.29 Christianity and other religions

Add to base number 261.2 the numbers following 29 in 292–299, e.g., Christianity and Islam 261.27

### .5 Christianity and secular disciplines

Class here antagonism between and reconciliation of Christian belief and a secular discipline

*For antagonism between and reconciliation of a specific Christian doctrine and a secular discipline, see the doctrine in 231–239, e.g., relation between Christian doctrine on the soul and modern biology 233.5*

*See Manual at 261.5*

#### .51 Philosophy, logic, related disciplines

#### .513 Parapsychology and occultism

#### .515 Psychology

#### .52 Communications media

Class here comprehensive works on attitude toward and use of communications media

*For a specific use of communications media by the church, see the use, e.g., use in parish administration 254.3*

#### .55 Science

Class the relation of scientific and Christian views on creation in 231.765; class ecology in 261.88

#### .56 Technology

#### .561 Medicine

#### .57 The arts

#### .578 Music

#### .58 Literature

- .7 Christianity and political affairs**  
 Including civil war and revolution  
 Class here Christianity and civil rights  
*For Christianity and international affairs, see 261.87*  
*See Manual at 322.1 vs. 201.72, 261.7, 292-299*
- .72 Religious freedom**
- .73 Theocracy**  
 Supremacy of church over civil government
- .8 Christianity and socioeconomic problems**  
 Class here comprehensive works on the Christian view of socioeconomic and political affairs  
*For Christianity and political affairs, see 261.7*  
*See also 361.75 for welfare services of religious organizations*  
*See Manual at 241 vs. 261.8*
- .83 Social problems and services**
- .832 Social welfare problems and services**
- .832 1-.832 5 Problems of and services to people with illnesses and disabilities, the poor**  
 Add to base number 261.832 the numbers following 362 in 362.1-362.5, e.g., Christian attitude toward alcoholism 261.832292, toward poor people 261.8325
- .832 6 Hunger**
- .832 7 Abuse within the family**
- .832 71 Child abuse and neglect**  
*For sexual abuse, see 261.83272*
- .832 72 Sexual abuse**
- .832 73 Adults who were victims of abuse as children**
- .832 8 Refugees and victims of political oppression**
- .833 Crime**  
 Add to base number 261.833 the numbers following 364 in 364.1-364.8, e.g., Christian attitude toward treason 261.833131, toward capital punishment 261.83366
- .835 Sexual relations, marriage, family**  
 Add to base number 261.835 the numbers following 306 in 306.7-306.8, e.g., Christian attitude toward divorce 261.83589  
 Class abuse within the family in 261.8327

- .836           Population  
                   Including abortion, family planning  
                   Class ecology in 261.88
- .85            Economics  
                   Including management of business enterprises  
                   *For environment, natural resources, see 261.88*
- .87            International affairs
- .873          War and peace  
                   *For civil war and revolution, see 261.7*
- .873 2        Nuclear weapons and nuclear war
- .88            Environment  
                   Class here ecology, environmental problems, natural resources, pollution  
                   Class environmental ethics in 241.691

## 262        **Ecclesiology**

Church government, organization, nature

*See Manual at 260 vs. 251–254, 259*

### SUMMARY

- 262.001–.009        Standard subdivisions, ecumenism, church renewal**  
**.01–.09            Government and organization, ecclesiology of specific denominations and sects**
- .1            Governing leaders of churches**  
**.2            Local church and religious congregations and orders in church organization**  
**.3            Government and organization of systems governed by papacy and episcopacy**  
**.4            Government and organization of systems governed by election**  
**.5            General councils**  
**.7            Nature of the church**  
**.8            Church and ministerial authority and its denial**  
**.9            Church law and discipline**
- .001        Philosophy and theory, ecumenism, church renewal  
                   Notation 01 from Table 1 as modified below
- .001 1        Ecumenism  
                   Do not use for systems; class in 262.001  
                   *See Manual at 280.042 vs. 262.0011*
- .001 109      History, geographic treatment, biography  
                   Do not use for history of the ecumenical movement; class in 280.042
- .001 7        Church renewal

.002–.005 Standard subdivisions

.006 Organizations

.006 8 Particular aspects of administration

Do not use for management without subdivision; class in 262

Add notation 0681–0688 as appropriate for particular aspects of administration, e.g., financial administration of United Methodist Church 262.0760681

.007–.009 Standard subdivisions

.01–.09 Government and organization, ecclesiology of specific denominations and sects

Add to base number 262.0 the numbers following 28 in 281–289, e.g., government and organization of the United Methodist Church 262.076

## .1 Governing leaders of churches

Authority, function, role

[.109 2] Biography

Do not use for biography of church leaders; class in 270. Do not use for biography of leaders of specific denominations; class in 280

*See Manual at 230–280*

.11 Apostolic succession

> 262.12–262.15 Governing leaders by rank

Class comprehensive works in 262.1

.12 Episcopacy

Class here bishops, archbishops, national conferences of bishops

Add to base number 262.12 the numbers following 28 in 281–289, e.g., episcopacy of Anglican churches 262.123, of Church of England 262.12342

*For papacy and patriarchate, see 262.13*

.13 Papacy and patriarchate

Standard subdivisions are added for papacy and patriarchate together, for Roman Catholic papacy alone

> 262.131–262.136 Specific aspects of Roman Catholic papacy

Class comprehensive works in 262.13

.131 Papal infallibility

.132 Temporal power of the pope

.135 College of Cardinals

- .136 Administration  
Including congregations, offices of Curia Romana, Synod of Bishops, tribunals  
*For national conferences of bishops, see 262.12; for College of Cardinals, see 262.135*
- .14 Local clergy  
Class here ordination of women  
Add to base number 262.14 the numbers following 28 in 281–289, e.g., local Methodist clergy 262.147  
Class works that treat the ordination of women only in relation to its effect on the local church in 253
- .15 Laity  
Body of church members  
Add to base number 262.15 the numbers following 28 in 281–289, e.g., laity of Lutheran church 262.1541, in United States 262.154173

- 
- > 262.17–262.19 Governing leaders by system of government  
Class leaders by rank in a specific system of government in 262.12–262.15; class comprehensive works in 262.1
- .17 Governing leaders in papal and episcopal systems
- .18 Governing leaders in presbyterian systems
- .19 Governing leaders in congregational systems

**.2 Local church and religious congregations and orders in church organization**

- For administration of parishes, see 254; for government and administration of religious congregations and orders, see 255*  
*See Manual at 260 vs. 251–254, 259*
- .22 Parishes
- .24 Religious congregations and orders
- .26 Small groups  
Including basic Christian communities

---

> **262.3–262.4 Specific forms of church organization**

Class comprehensive works on government and organization of specific denominations and sects regardless of form of organization in 262.01–262.09; class comprehensive works in 262. Class a specific aspect of government and organization with the aspect, e.g., role of bishops in a system governed by episcopacy 262.12 (*not* 262.3)

**.3 Government and organization of systems governed by papacy and episcopacy**

Including sees, dioceses, cathedral systems

**.4 Government and organization of systems governed by election**

Including congregational systems, presbyteries, synods

**.5 General councils**

Add to base number 262.5 the numbers following 28 in 281–289, e.g., ecumenical councils of Roman Catholic Church 262.52

Class legal acts of general councils in 262.9. Class nonlegal decrees on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., statements on original sin 233.14

**.7 Nature of the church**

Including God's relation to the church

**.72 Attributes, marks, notes**

Including apostolicity, catholicity, credibility, holiness, infallibility, necessity, unity, visibility and invisibility

**.73 Communion of saints**

**.77 Mystical body of Christ**

**.8 Church and ministerial authority and its denial**

Including heresy, schism

**.9 Church law and discipline**

Class here canon (ecclesiastical) law

Class civil law relating to church or religious matters in 340

*See also 364.188 for offenses against religion as defined and penalized by the state*

> **262.91–262.94 Roman Catholic law**

Class comprehensive works in 262.9

**.91 Acts of the Holy See**

Including apostolic letters, briefs, encyclicals, papal bulls and decrees

Class acts on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., on the nature of the church 262.7

**.92 Early Roman Catholic codes**

**.922 Early codes to Gratian, ca. 1140**

**.923 Corpus iuris canonici**

**.924 Quinque compilationes antiquae**

**.93 Codex iuris canonici (1917)**

- .931 General principles (Canons 1–86)
- .932 Persons (Canons 87–725)  
Clergy, religious, laity
- .933 Things (Canons 726–1551)  
Including benefices, sacraments, sacred times and places, teaching office,  
temporal goods, worship
- .934 Procedure (Canons 1552–2194)  
Including trials, cases of beatification and canonization
- .935 Crimes and penalties (Canons 2195–2414)
- .94 Codex iuris canonici (1983)  
Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or  
more subdivisions of 262.94 in the number coming last, e.g., annulment of  
marriage 262.947 (*not* 262.944)
- .941 General norms (Canons 1–203)
- .942 The people of God (Canons 204–746)  
Including clergy, laity; hierarchical organization of the Church; religious  
congregations and orders
- .943 Teaching mission of the Church (Canons 747–833)  
Including Catholic education, catechetical instruction
- .944 Function of the Church (Canons 834–1253)  
Class here worship, sacred places and times; comprehensive works on  
canon law on sacraments  
*For a specific aspect of canon law on sacraments provided elsewhere,  
see the aspect, e.g., annulment of marriage 262.947*
- .945 Church temporal goods (Canons 1254–1310)
- .946 Sanctions (Canons 1311–1399)  
Class here crimes, penalties, delicts
- .947 Processes (Canons 1400–1752)  
Class here trials, judgments, procedures
- .98 Branches and other denominations and sects
- .980 2 Eastern and Roman Catholic churches  
*For church law of Eastern churches, see 262.9815; for church law  
of Roman Catholic Church, see 262.982*
- .980 4 Protestant churches and Protestantism  
*For church law of specific Protestant denominations and sects, see  
262.983–262.989*

- .981–.989 Other specific denominations or sects  
 Add to base number 262.98 the numbers following 28 in 281–289, e.g.,  
 Anglican ecclesiastical law 262.983

## 263 Days, times, places of religious observance

- .04 Special topics of days, times, places of religious observance  
 .041 Pilgrimages  
 [.041 093–.041 099] Specific continents, countries, localities  
 Do not use; class in 263.0423–263.0429  
 .042 Holy places  
 Class here pilgrimages to holy places in specific continents, countries,  
 localities  
*For works treating miracles and shrines associated with them, see*  
*231.73; for miracles associated with Mary and shrines associated*  
*with them, see 232.917; for miracles of Jesus and shrines associated*  
*with them, see 232.955*  
 [.042 093–.042 099] Specific continents, countries, localities  
 Do not use; class in 263.0423–263.0429  
 .042 3–.042 9 Specific continents, countries, localities  
 Add to base number 263.042 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g.,  
 Santiago de Compostela 263.0424611

### > 263.1–263.3 Sabbath and Sunday

Class comprehensive works in 263.3

#### .1 Biblical Sabbath

#### .2 Observance of the seventh day

#### .3 Sunday

Class here Sunday observance, comprehensive works on Sabbath and Sunday

*For Biblical Sabbath, see 263.1; for observance of the seventh day, see*  
*263.2*

#### .9 Church year and other days and times

Standard subdivisions are added for church year and other days and times  
 together, for church year alone

*See Manual at 203.6, 263.9, 292–299 vs. 394.265–394.267*

### > 263.91–263.94 Church year

Class comprehensive works in 263.9

#### .91 Advent and Christmas

- .912 Advent
- .915 Christmas season  
Class here Christmas day
- .92 Lent
- .925 Holy Week
- .93 Easter season  
Including Ascension Day  
Class here Easter Sunday
- .94 Pentecost and time after Pentecost (Ordinary time)
- .97 Other feast and fast days  
*For saints' days, see 263.98*
- .98 Saints' days  
Standard subdivisions are added for individual saint's days

## 264 Public worship

Ceremonies, rites, services (liturgy and ritual)

Class works not limited by denomination or sect about sacraments, other rites and acts in 265; class Sunday school services in 268.7; class comprehensive works on worship in 248.3

### SUMMARY

- |              |  |
|--------------|--|
| 264.001–.009 | <b>Standard subdivisions</b>                           |
| .01–.09      | <b>Public worship by denominations and sects</b>       |
| .1           | <b>Prayer</b>  |
| .2           | <b>Music</b>   |
| .3           | <b>Scripture readings and communion sacrament</b>      |
| .4           | <b>Responsive readings</b>                             |
| .7           | <b>Prayer meetings, Holy Hours, novenas</b>            |
| .9           | <b>Sacramentals</b>                                    |
| .001         | Philosophy and theory<br>Class here liturgical renewal |
| .002–.009    | Standard subdivisions                                  |

#### > 264.01–264.09 Public worship by denominations and sects

Class here works limited by denomination or sect about sacraments, other rites and acts

Class comprehensive works in 264; class comprehensive works on sacraments, other rites and acts in 265

- .01 Early and Eastern churches  
 Add to base number 264.01 the numbers following 281 in 281.1–281.9, e.g., liturgy and ritual of Orthodox churches 264.019; then add further as instructed under 264.04–264.09, e.g., Orthodox Divine Liturgy 264.019036
- .02 Roman Catholic Church
- .020 01–.020 09 Standard subdivisions
- .020 1–.020 9 History, meaning, place of liturgy, ritual, prayers in public worship  
 Add to base number 264.02 notation 01–09 from the table under 264.04–264.09, e.g., the Mass 264.02036; however, for texts, see 264.021–264.029
- 
- > 264.021–264.029 Texts of liturgy, ritual, prayers  
 Class comprehensive works in 264.02
- .021 Texts of calendars and ordos
- .022 Texts of ceremonials  
 Ceremonials: canonization of saints, election and coronation of popes, creation of cardinals, other papal functions and services; instructions for bishops
- .023 Texts of missals  
 Class here sacramentaries  
*For lectionary, see 264.029*
- .024 Texts of breviaries  
*For psalters, see 264.028*
- .025 Texts of ritual  
 Class here Pontificale Romanum, Rituale Romanum  
 Add to base number 264.025 the numbers following 265 in 265.1–265.7, e.g., texts of baptism 264.0251
- .027 Texts of special books
- .027 2 Texts for special times of year  
 Including Holy Week
- .027 4 Texts for special liturgical services  
 Including funeral services outside the Mass, litanies, novenas, stations of the cross
- .028 Texts of psalters
- .029 Texts of lectionary

- .03            Anglican churches  
                  Including rubrics  
                  Class here Book of Common Prayer; Common Worship
- .030 01–.030 09        Standard subdivisions
- .030 1–.030 9        History, meaning, place of liturgy, ritual, prayers in public worship  
                  Add to base number 264.03 notation 01–09 from the table under  
                  264.04–264.09, e.g., prayer 264.0301; however, for texts, see  
                  264.031–264.038
- 
- >            264.031–264.038 Texts of liturgy, ritual, prayers  
                  Class comprehensive works in 264.03
- .031            Texts of calendars, festivals, fasts
- .032            Texts of lectionary  
                  Including texts of epistles, Gospels
- .033            Texts of morning prayer and litany
- .034            Texts of evening prayer and vespers
- .035            Texts of sacraments, ordinances, services  
                  Add to base number 264.035 the numbers following 265 in 265.1–265.9,  
                  e.g., texts of baptism 264.0351  
                  Class texts of morning prayer and litany in 264.033; class texts of  
                  evening prayer and vespers in 264.034
- .036            Texts of collects
- .038            Texts of psalters

.04-.09 Other specific denominations and sects

Add to base number 264.0 the numbers following 28 in 284-289, e.g., United Methodist services 264.076; then add further as follows:

001-009 Standard subdivisions

01-07 Specific elements

History, meaning, place in public worship, texts

Add to 0 the numbers following 264 in 264.1-264.7, e.g., the Lord's Supper 036, the Lord's Supper in the United Methodist Church 264.076036

08 Sacraments

History, meaning, place in public worship, texts

Add to 08 the numbers following 265 in 265.1-265.7, e.g., the ceremony of baptism 081, the ceremony of baptism in the United Methodist Church 264.076081; however, for Holy Communion (Eucharist, Lord's Supper, Mass), see 036

09 Sacramentals, other rites and acts

History, meaning, place in public worship, texts

091 Sacramentals

098-099 Other rites and acts

Add to 09 the numbers following 265 in 265.8-265.9, e.g., funeral services 0985, United Methodist funerals 264.0760985

> **264.1-264.9 Specific elements**

History, meaning, place in public worship, texts

Class specific elements in public worship of specific denominations and sects in 264.01-264.09; class use of the arts (*except* music), of color in public worship in 246; class liturgical year in 263.9; class comprehensive works in 264

Specific elements as part of the Mass are classed in 264.36, e.g., Eucharistic prayers (*not* 264.1)

**.1 Prayer**

Class prayers for a specific ceremony with the ceremony, e.g., prayers for funerals 265.85

**.13 Texts of prayers**

Including litanies

Class comprehensive collections of public and private prayers in 242.8

**.15 Liturgy of the hours (Divine office)**

Including psalters

Class here breviaries

**.2 Music**

Class comprehensive works on music in Christianity in 246.75; class interdisciplinary works on Christian sacred music in 781.71; class interdisciplinary works on sacred vocal music in 782.22

- .23        **Hymns**  
             Class here texts of hymns for devotional use of individuals and families  
             Class hymnals containing both text and music, interdisciplinary works on  
             hymns in 782.27
- .3         **Scripture readings and communion sacrament**
- .34        **Scripture readings**  
             Class here common lectionary
- .36        **Holy Communion (Eucharist, Lord's Supper, Mass)**  
             Including specific elements when part of the Mass  
             *For viaticum, see 265.7*
- .4         **Responsive readings**
- .7         **Prayer meetings, Holy Hours, novenas**
- .9         **Sacramentals**

*For consecrations and dedications, see 265.92*

## 265        **Sacraments, other rites and acts**

Standard subdivisions are added for sacraments and other rites and acts together,  
 for sacraments alone

Not limited by denomination or sect

Class works limited by denomination or sect about sacraments, other rites and acts  
 in 264.01–264.09

### >         **265.1–265.7 Sacraments**

Class comprehensive works in 265

*For Holy Communion (Eucharist, Lord's Supper, Mass), see 264.36*

#### .1         **Baptism**

.12        **Infant baptism**

.13        **Adult baptism**

Class here Christian initiation (baptism and confirmation) of adults,  
 catechumenate

*For confirmation, see 265.2; for religious education for catechumens,  
 see 268.434*

.2         **Confirmation (Chrismation)**

.4         **Holy Orders**

.5         **Matrimony**

.6         **Penance**

- .61        **Contrition**  
            Examination of conscience, prayers preparatory to confession
- .62        **Confession**
- .63        **Satisfaction**  
            Penitential prayers and acts for the remission of sin
- .64        **Absolution**
- .66        **Indulgences**

**.7        Viaticum and anointing of the sick**

**.8        Rites in illness and death**

- .82        Religious ceremonies for the afflicted  
            *For viaticum and anointing of the sick, see 265.7*
- .85        Religious ceremonies for the dead  
            Class here funeral services  
            *For requiem Mass, see 264.36*

**.9        Other acts**

- Including ceremonies of joining a church, foot washing, laying on of hands, love feasts (agapes)
- .92        Consecrations and dedications
- .94        Exorcism

**266     Missions**

Class here missionary societies, religious aspects of medical missions

Class medical services of medical missions in 362.1

*For mission schools, see 371.071*

- .001--008    **Standard subdivisions**
- .009        **History, geographic treatment, biography**  
            Do not use for foreign missions originating in specific continents, countries, localities; class in 266.023. Do not use for history, geographic treatment, biography of missions of specific denominations and sects; class in 266.1-266.9  
            Class here joint and interdenominational missions; foreign missions by continent, country, locality served
- .02        **Kinds of missions**
- .022        **Home missions**
- .023        **Foreign missions**

[.023 091–.023 099]      Geographic treatment and biography  
 Do not use for foreign missions characterized only by place served; class in 266.009. Do not use for foreign missions originating in specific areas; class in 266.0231–266.0239

.023 1–.023 9      Biography; foreign missions originating in specific areas  
 Add to base number 266.023 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., missions originating in France 266.02344; then add 0\* and again add notation 1–9 from Table 2 for place served, e.g., French missions to Africa 266.0234406

**.1–.9      Missions of specific denominations and sects**

Add to base number 266 the numbers following 28 in 281–289, e.g., Anglican missions 266.3; Anglican missions serving Africa 266.36

**267      Associations for religious work**

Class here pious societies, sodalities, confraternities

*For religious congregations and orders, see 255; for missionary societies, see 266*

*See Manual at 230–280*

**.1      Associations for religious work for both men and women**

.13      Interdenominational and nondenominational associations

*For Moral Rearmament, see 267.16*

.16      Moral Rearmament

.18      Specific branches, denominations, sects

.180 2      Eastern and Roman Catholic churches

*For religious associations of Eastern churches, see 267.1815; for religious associations of Roman Catholic Church, see 267.182*

.180 4      Protestant churches and Protestantism

*For religious associations of specific Protestant denominations and sects, see 267.183–267.189*

.181–.189      Specific denominations or sects

Add to base number 267.18 the numbers following 28 in 281–289, e.g., Baptist Adult Union 267.186132

**.2      Men's associations**

.23      Interdenominational and nondenominational associations

*For Young Men's Christian Associations, see 267.3*

.24      Specific branches, denominations, sects

\*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

- .240 2 Eastern and Roman Catholic churches  
*For men's religious associations of Eastern churches, see 267.2415; for men's religious associations of Roman Catholic Church, see 267.242*
- .240 4 Protestant churches and Protestantism  
*For men's religious associations of specific Protestant denominations and sects, see 267.243–267.249*
- .241–.249 Specific denominations or sects  
 Add to base number 267.24 the numbers following 28 in 281–289, e.g., Baptist societies 267.246
- .3 Young Men's Christian Associations**
- [.309] History, geographic treatment, biography  
 Do not use; class in 267.39
- .39 History, geographic treatment, biography
- .390 1–.390 5 Historical periods  
 Add to base number 267.39 notation 01–05 from Table 2, e.g., Young Men's Christian Association in 21st century 267.3905
- .391–.399 Geographic treatment, biography  
 Add to base number 267.39 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., Young Men's Christian Association in New York City 267.397471
- .4 Women's associations**
- .43 Interdenominational and nondenominational associations  
*For Young Women's Christian Associations, see 267.5*
- .44 Specific branches, denominations, sects
- .440 2 Eastern and Roman Catholic churches  
*For women's religious associations of Eastern churches, see 267.4415; for women's religious associations of Roman Catholic Church, see 267.442*
- .440 4 Protestant churches and Protestantism  
*For women's religious associations of specific Protestant denominations and sects, see 267.443–267.449*
- .441–.449 Specific denominations or sects  
 Add to base number 267.44 the numbers following 28 in 281–289, e.g., Baptist societies 267.446
- .5 Young Women's Christian Associations**
- [.509] History, geographic treatment, biography  
 Do not use; class in 267.59
- .59 History, geographic treatment, biography

- .590 1–.590 5      Historical periods  
    Add to base number 267.59 notation 01–05 from Table 2, e.g., Young Women’s Christian Association in 21st century 267.5905
- .591–.599      Geographic treatment, biography  
    Add to base number 267.59 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., Young Women’s Christian Association in New York City 267.597471
- .6      Young adults’ associations**
- .61      Interdenominational and nondenominational associations  
    *For Young Men’s Christian Associations, see 267.3; for Young Women’s Christian Associations, see 267.5*
- .62      Specific branches, denominations, sects
- .620 2      Eastern and Roman Catholic churches  
    *For young adults’ religious associations of Eastern churches, see 267.6215; for young adults’ religious associations of Roman Catholic Church, see 267.622*
- .620 4      Protestant churches and Protestantism  
    *For young adults’ religious associations of specific Protestant denominations and sects, see 267.623–267.629*
- .621–.629      Specific denominations or sects  
    Add to base number 267.62 the numbers following 28 in 281–289, e.g., Baptist Young People’s Union 267.626132
- .7      Boys’ associations**  
    *For Young Men’s Christian Associations, see 267.3*
- .8      Girls’ associations**  
    *For Young Women’s Christian Associations, see 267.5*

## 268      Religious education

Class here catechetics (the science or art devoted to organizing the principles of religious teaching), curricula, comprehensive works on Christian religious education

Class Christian religious schools providing general education in 371.071; class place of religion in public schools in 379.28. Class textbooks on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., textbooks on missions 266

*For religious education at the university level, see 230.0711; for study of Christianity in secular secondary schools, see 230.0712*

*See Manual at 207.5, 268 vs. 200.71, 230.071, 292–299*

### [.068]      Management

Do not use; class in 268.1

- .08           Groups of people  
                   Do not use for education of specific groups of people; class in 268.4  
                   Class here education, teaching performed by groups of people
- [.088 2]           History and descriptions with respect to religious groups  
                   Do not use; class in 268.8
- .1           Administration**  
                   *For plant management, see 268.2; for personnel management, see 268.3*
- .2           Buildings and equipment**
- .3           Personnel**  
                   Class here preparation, role, training, personnel management  
                   *See Manual at 230–280*
- .4           Religious education of specific groups of people**  
                   Class here curricula, records and rules, teaching methods, services for specific groups
- [.408 3–.408 4]   Age groups  
                   Do not use; class in 268.43
- .43           Age groups
- .432          Children  
                   Through age eleven  
                   *See also 372.84 for religion courses in secular primary schools*
- (.432 04)       Special topics of children
- (.432 045)      Textbooks  
                   (Option: Class here religious education textbooks; prefer the specific subject, e.g., textbooks on Christianity 230, textbooks on missions 266)
- .433          Young people twelve to twenty
- (.433 04)       Special topics of young people twelve to twenty
- (.433 045)      Textbooks  
                   (Option: Class here religious education textbooks; prefer the specific subject, e.g., textbooks on Christianity 230, textbooks on missions 266)
- .434          Adults
- (.434 04)       Special topics of adults

(.434 045)

Textbooks

(Option: Class here religious education textbooks; prefer the specific subject, e.g., textbooks on Christianity 230, textbooks on missions 266)

**.5 Records and rules**

Including attendance, decorations, honor rolls, prizes, promotion

Class records and rules for specific groups in 268.4

**.6 Methods of instruction and study**

Class methods for a specific group with the group, e.g., methods for instruction of children 268.432071

.63 Lecture and audiovisual methods

.632 Lecture method

.635 Audiovisual methods

.67 Dramatic method

Class use of dramatic arts for religious purposes not limited to religious education in 246.72

**.7 Services**

Including anniversaries, festivals, music, rallies, special days

Class services for specific groups in 268.4

**.8 Specific branches, denominations, sects**

.802 Eastern and Roman Catholic churches

*For religious education of Eastern churches, see 268.815; for religious education of Roman Catholic Church, see 268.82*

.804 Protestant churches and Protestantism

*For religious education of specific Protestant denominations and sects, see 268.83–268.89*

.81–.89 Specific denominations or sects

Add to base number 268.8 the numbers following 28 in 281–289, e.g., Presbyterian religious education 268.85

Class a specific element in religious education by specific denominations and sects with the element in 268.1–268.7, e.g., religious education of children in Baptist churches 268.432088286

**269 Spiritual renewal**

Class history of the pentecostal movement in 270.82

**.2 Evangelism**

*See also 243 for evangelistic writings for individuals and families; also 248.5 for witness bearing by individual lay Christians; also 252.3 for texts of evangelistic sermons; also 266 for missionary evangelization*

- .24 Revival and camp meetings
- .26 Evangelism by radio and television
- .6 **Retreats**

Add to base number 269.6 the numbers following 248.8 in 248.82–248.89, e.g., retreats for men 269.642

&gt;

## **270–280 History, geographic treatment, biography of Christianity; Church history; Christian denominations and sects**

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference for the history of Christianity and the Christian church (*except* for biography, explained in Manual at 230–280), e.g., persecution of Jesuits by Elizabeth I 272.7 (*not* 271.53042, 274.206, or 282.42):

Persecutions in general church history	272
Doctrinal controversies and heresies in general church history	273
Religious congregations and orders in church history	271
Denominations and sects of Christian church	280
Christianity and Christian church by continent, country, locality	274–279
General history, geographic treatment, biography of Christianity and Christian church ( <i>except</i> 271–279)	270

Class comprehensive works in 270

*See Manual at 230–280*

## **270 History, geographic treatment, biography of Christianity**

Class here Church history, collected writings of apostolic and church fathers (patristics)

Observe table of preference under 230–280

*For history, geographic treatment, biography of specific denominations and sects, see 280*

*See Manual at 230–280; also at 270, 230.11–230.14 vs. 230.15–230.2, 281.5–281.9, 282; also at 398.2 vs. 201.3, 230, 270, 292–299*

### **SUMMARY**

270.01–.09	Standard subdivisions
.1–.8	Historical periods
271	Religious congregations and orders in church history
272	Persecutions in general church history
273	Doctrinal controversies and heresies in general church history
274–279	Christianity by specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

- .01–.07 Standard subdivisions
- .08 Groups of people  
Class here Christian attitudes toward social groups; discrimination, equality, inequality, prejudice
- .09 Areas, regions, places in general; biography
- [.093–.099] Specific continents, countries, localities  
Do not use; class in 274–279

> **270.1–270.8 Historical periods**

Class historical periods in specific continents, countries, localities in 274–279; class comprehensive works in 270

- .1 **Apostolic period to 325**
- .2 **Period of ecumenical councils, 325–787**
- .3 **787–1054**  
Class here comprehensive works on Middle Ages  
*For a specific part of Middle Ages, see the part, e.g., late Middle Ages 270.5*
- .38 Great schism, 1054
- .4 **1054–1200**
- .5 **Late Middle Ages through Renaissance, 1200–1517**
- .6 **Period of Reformation and Counter-Reformation, 1517–1648**  
Including 17th century  
*For 1648–1699, see 270.7*
- .7 **Period from Peace of Westphalia to French Revolution, 1648–1789**
- .8 **Modern period, 1789–**
- .81 1789–1900

.82 1900–1999

Class here comprehensive works on evangelicalism, fundamentalism, pentecostalism, charismatic movement

Add to base number 270.82 the numbers following —0904 in notation 09041–09049 from Table 1, e.g., 1960–1969 in church history 270.826

Class ecumenical movement in 280.042; class pentecostal churches that are independent denominations in 289.94; class evangelical churches, fundamentalist churches that are independent denominations in 289.95

*For evangelicalism, fundamentalism, pentecostalism, charismatic movement in the period 2000 to present, see 270.83. For evangelicalism, fundamentalism, pentecostalism, charismatic movement in a specific branch or denomination, see the branch or denomination, e.g., Protestant fundamentalism 280.4*

.83 2000–

## > 271–273 Special topics of church history

Class comprehensive works in 270

### 271 Religious congregations and orders in church history

Class here history of monasticism, history of specific monasteries and convents even if not connected with a specific order

Add to each subdivision identified by \* as follows:

001–008 Standard subdivisions  
[009] History

Do not use; class in base number without further addition

[0091–0099] Geographic treatment and biography  
Do not use; class in 01–09

01–09 Geographic treatment and biography  
Add to 0 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., collected biography 022, collected biography of Benedictines 271.1022, Benedictines in the United Kingdom 271.1041

Class persecutions involving religious congregations and orders in 272; class doctrinal controversies and heresies involving congregations and orders in 273

### SUMMARY

271.001–.009	Standard subdivisions
.01–.09	Specific kinds of congregations and orders
.1	Benedictines
.2	Dominicans (Friars Preachers, Black Friars)
.3	Franciscans (Gray Friars)
.4	Augustinians
.5	Regular clerics
.6	Passionists and Redemptorists
.7	Roman Catholic orders of men not otherwise provided for
.8	Non-Roman Catholic orders of men
.9	Congregations and orders of women

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions

---

> 271.01–271.09 Specific kinds of congregations and orders

Class comprehensive works in 271

.01 \*Contemplative religious orders

.02 \*Eremitical religious orders

.03 \*Teaching orders

.04 \*Preaching orders

.06 \*Mendicant religious orders

.07 \*Nursing orders

.08 \*Canons regular

.09 Other specific kinds

.092 \*Brothers

*See also 271.093 for lay brothers*

.093 \*Lay brothers

.094 \*Third orders

Secular and regular

.095 \*Secular institutes

---

> **271.1–271.8 Specific orders of men**

Class comprehensive works in 271

---

> **271.1–271.7 Roman Catholic orders of men**

Class comprehensive works in 271

**.1 \*Benedictines**

.11 \*Confederated Benedictines

*For Olivetans, see 271.13*

.12 \*Cistercians (Bernardines)

.125 \*Trappists

.13 \*Olivetans

.14 \*Cluniacs

Including Camaldolese, Silvestrians, Monks of Saint Paul the Hermit

*For Carthusians, see 271.71*

.16 \*Celestines

\*Add as instructed under 271

- .17       Mechitarists and Basilians
- .18       Antonines (Antonians), Maronites, Chaldeans, Syrians
- .19       \*Canons
  - Including Crosier Fathers, Crosiers of the Red Star, Premonstratensians
  - Class Augustinians in 271.4
- .2       \*Dominicans (Friars Preachers, Black Friars)**
- .3       \*Franciscans (Gray Friars)**
  - Including Alcantarines, Observants, Recollects
  - See also 271.4 for Augustinian Recollects*
- .36       \*Capuchins
- .37       \*Conventuals
- .38       \*Third Order Regular
- .4       \*Augustinians**
  - Including Augustinian Recollects
- .42       \*Trinitarians
- .45       \*Mercedarians
- .47       \*Servites
- .49       Other Augustinians
  - Including Brothers Hospitallers of St. John of God, Minims
- .5       \*Regular clerics**
- .51       \*Theatines
- .52       \*Barnabites
- .53       \*Jesuits (Society of Jesus)
- .54       \*Somaschi
- .55       \*Camillians
- .56       \*Minor Clerks Regular (Caracciolini)
- .57       \*Clerks Regular of the Mother of God
- .58       \*Piarists
- .6       \*Passionists and Redemptorists**
- .62       \*Passionists
- .64       \*Redemptorists
- .7       Roman Catholic orders of men not otherwise provided for**

\*Add as instructed under 271

- .71 \*Carthusians
- .73 \*Carmelites (White Friars)
- .75 \*Sulpicians
- .76 \*Oblates
- .77 \*Lazarists (Vincentians)
- .78 \*Christian Brothers (Brothers of the Christian Schools)
- .79 Other Roman Catholic orders of men
- .791 \*Orders of knighthood
  - Class here military orders
- .791 2 \*Knights of Malta (Knights Hospitalers of St. John of Jerusalem)
- .791 3 \*Knights Templars
- .791 4 \*Teutonic Knights

## **.8 Non-Roman Catholic orders of men**

- .81 Monasteries of Eastern churches
  - Add to base number 271.81 the numbers following 281 in 281.5–281.9, e.g., Orthodox monasteries 271.819, on Mount Athos 271.81949565
- .83 Anglican orders of men

## **.9 Congregations and orders of women**

- .900 01–.900 08 Standard subdivisions
  - .900 09 History
  - [.900 091–.900 099] Geographic treatment and biography
    - Do not use; class in 271.9001–271.9009
  - .900 1–.900 9 Geographic treatment and biography
    - Add to base number 271.900 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., collected biography of women religious 271.90022, congregations and orders of women in France 271.90044
  - .901–.909 Specific kinds of congregations and orders
    - Add to base number 271.90 the numbers following 271.0 in 271.01–271.09, e.g., contemplative orders 271.901
- 
- > 271.91–271.98 Specific orders of women
    - Class comprehensive works in 271.9

- > 271.91–271.97 Roman Catholic orders of women  
 Class comprehensive works in 271.9
- .91 \*Sisters of Charity orders
  - .92 \*Sisters of Mercy orders
  - .93 \*Sacred Heart orders
  - .94 \*Sisters of Bon Secours
  - .95 \*Little Sisters of the Poor
  - .97 Other Roman Catholic orders of women
  - .971 \*Carmelites
  - .972 \*Dominicans
  - .973 \*Franciscan orders  
 Class here Poor Clares
  - .974 \*Ursulines
  - .975 \*Visitation orders
  - .976 \*Saint Joseph orders
  - .977 \*Presentation orders
  - .98 Non-Roman Catholic orders of women
  - .981 Women's convents of Eastern churches  
 Add to base number 271.981 the numbers following 281 in 281.5–281.9,  
 e.g., Orthodox convents of women 271.9819
  - .983 Anglican orders of women

## 272 Persecutions in general church history

Regardless of denomination

Class here martyrs

Class relation of state to church in 322.1

*See also 364.188 for offenses against religion as defined and penalized by the state*

- .1 Persecutions of Apostolic Church by imperial Rome
- .2 Persecutions by Inquisition
- .3 Persecutions of Waldenses and Albigenses
- .4 Persecutions of Huguenots
- .5 Persecutions of Molinists and Quietists

\*Add as instructed under 271

- .6 **Persecutions of Anglican reformers by Mary I**
  - .7 **Persecutions of Roman Church by Elizabeth I and Anglicans**
  - .8 **Persecutions of Quakers, Baptists, witches by Puritans and others of Puritan times**
  - .9 **Modern persecutions and martyrs**
- 273 Doctrinal controversies and heresies in general church history**

Class persecutions resulting from controversies and heresies in 272; class churches founded on specific doctrines in 280

*See also 239 for apologetics and polemics*

- .1 **1st–2nd centuries**
  - Class here Christian gnosticism
  - Class comprehensive works and non-Christian Gnosticism in 299.932
  - For gnosticism of 3rd century, see 273.2*
- .2 **3rd century**
  - Including Christian Manicheism
  - Class comprehensive works and non-Christian Manicheism in 299.932
  - For Sabellianism, see 273.3*
- .3 **Sabellianism**
- .4 **4th century**
  - Including Arianism, Donatism
- .5 **5th century**
  - Including Pelagianism
- .6 **6th–16th centuries**
  - Including Albigensianism, Catharism, Waldensianism
  - Class here antinomianism
  - For later antinomianism, see 273.7–273.9; for Albigensian, Catharist, Waldensian churches, see 284.4*
- .7 **17th century**
  - Including Molinism, Pietism; comprehensive works on Jansenism
  - For Jansenist churches, see 284.84*
- .8 **18th century**
- .9 **19th century and later centuries**
  - Including modernism

**274–279 Christianity by specific continents, countries, localities in modern world**

Class here Christian church history by continent, country, locality

Add to base number 27 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., Christianity, Christian church in Europe 274, in France 274.4; then add further as follows:

001–008 Standard subdivisions

009 History, geographic treatment, biography

Do not use for historical periods; class in 01–08

01–08 Historical periods

Add the numbers following 27 in 270.1–270.8, e.g., Christian church in France during the Reformation 274.406

Class geographic treatment of a specific subject with the subject, plus notation 09 from Table 1, e.g., persecutions in France 272.0944

**274 Christianity in Europe**

Number built according to instructions under 274–279

**275 Christianity in Asia**

Number built according to instructions under 274–279

**276 Christianity in Africa**

Number built according to instructions under 274–279

**277 Christianity in North America**

Number built according to instructions under 274–279

**278 Christianity in South America**

Number built according to instructions under 274–279

**279 Christianity in Australasia, Pacific Ocean islands, Atlantic Ocean islands, Arctic islands, Antarctica**

Number built according to instructions under 274–279

## 280 Denominations and sects of Christian church

Including nondenominational and interdenominational churches

Class here general history and geographic treatment of, comprehensive works on specific denominations and sects and their individual local churches

Class persecution of or by specific churches in 272

*For a specific element of specific denominations and sects, see the element, e.g., doctrines 230*

*See also 273 for doctrines of specific churches considered as heresies*

*See Manual at 201–209 and 292–299; also at 230–280*

(Option: Class here specific elements of specific denominations and sects; prefer 230–270. If option is chosen, add to the number for each specific denomination, sect, group as follows:

- 001–008 Standard subdivisions
- [009] History, geographic treatment, biography  
Do not use; class in 07
- 02 Basic textual sources  
Class Bible in 220
- 03–06 Doctrinal, moral, devotional, social, ecclesiastical theology  
Add to 0 the numbers following 2 in 230–260, e.g., the denomination and international affairs 06187
- 07 History, geographic treatment, biography
- 0701–0708 Historical periods  
Add to 07 the numbers following 27 in 270.1–270.8, e.g., 20th century 07082
- 071–079 Special topics of church history; Christianity by continent, country, locality  
Add to 07 the numbers following 27 in 271–279, e.g., Africa 076)

### SUMMARY

- 280.01–.09 Standard subdivisions and special topics of denominations and sects of Christian church
  - .2–.4 Branches
  - 281 Early church and Eastern churches
  - 282 Roman Catholic Church
  - 283 Anglican churches
  - 284 Protestant denominations of Continental origin and related bodies
  - 285 Presbyterian churches, Reformed churches centered in America, Congregational churches, Puritanism
  - 286 Baptist, Restoration movement, Adventist churches
  - 287 Methodist churches; churches related to Methodism
  - 289 Other denominations and sects

.01–.03 Standard subdivisions

.04 Special topics of denominations and sects of Christian church

.042 Relations between denominations

Class here ecumenical movement

*See Manual at 280.042 vs. 262.0011*

.05-.09 Standard subdivisions

---

> **280.2-280.4 Branches**

Class specific denominations and sects in 281-289; class comprehensive works in 280

**.2 Eastern and Roman Catholic churches**

Class comprehensive works on Roman Catholic Church and Eastern churches in communion with Rome in 282

*For Eastern churches, see 281.5; for Roman Catholic Church, see 282*

**.4 Protestant churches and Protestantism**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here dissenters, free churches, nonconformists (British context); works on Protestant evangelicalism, fundamentalism, pentecostalism, charismatic movement

Class comprehensive works on evangelicalism, fundamentalism, pentecostalism, charismatic movement in general church history in 270.82

*For specific Protestant denominations, see 283-289*

---

> **281-289 Specific denomination or sect**

Class comprehensive works in 280

(Option: Class a specific denomination or sect requiring local emphasis in 289.2)

**281 Early church and Eastern churches**

---

> **281.1-281.4 Early church**

Use these subdivisions only for building other numbers in 230-260, e.g., theology in the Ante-Nicene church 230.13; never use these subdivisions by themselves. When building numbers in 230-260 using these subdivisions, use 281.1 for comprehensive works

Class collected writings of apostolic and church fathers (patristics) in 270; class all works on early church in 270.1-270.3. Class a specific work of an apostolic or church father on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., philosophy 189.2

*See Manual at 270, 230.11-230.14 vs. 230.15-230.2, 281.5-281.9, 282*

**.1 Apostolic Church to the time of the great schism, 1054**

*For Apostolic Church to 100, see 281.2; for Ante-Nicene church, see 281.3; for Post-Nicene church, see 281.4*

**.2 Apostolic Church to 100**

**.3 Ante-Nicene church, 100-325**

- .4 Post-Nicene church, 325–1054**
- .5 Eastern churches**  
*For Oriental Orthodox churches, see 281.6; for Assyrian Church of the East (Church of the East), see 281.8; for Orthodox churches, see 281.9*  
*See Manual at 230–280; also at 270, 230.11–230.14 vs. 230.15–230.2, 281.5–281.9, 282*
- .52 Eastern Catholic churches (Eastern rite churches in communion with Rome)**  
 Including Saint Thomas Christian churches in communion with Rome  
 Class comprehensive works on Saint Thomas Christian churches in 281.54
- .54 Saint Thomas Christian churches**  
 Including Mar Thoma Syrian Church, Malabar Independent Syrian Church, St. Thomas Evangelical Church of India  
*For a specific church within the Saint Thomas Christian tradition not provided for here, see the church, e.g., Syriac Orthodox Church 281.63*
- .6 Oriental Orthodox churches**  
 Former heading: Monophysite churches  
 Including Eritrean Orthodox Church, Indian Orthodox Church  
 Class here non-Chalcedonian churches  
*For Coptic and Ethiopian churches, see 281.7*  
*See Manual at 230–280; also at 270, 230.11–230.14 vs. 230.15–230.2, 281.5–281.9, 282*
- .62 Armenian Church**
- .63 Syriac Church**  
 Former heading: Jacobite Church  
 Class here Syriac Orthodox Church, Jacobite Patriarchate of Antioch  
*See also 281.95691 for Orthodox Church in Syria*
- .7 Coptic and Ethiopian churches**  
*See Manual at 270, 230.11–230.14 vs. 230.15–230.2, 281.5–281.9, 282*
- .72 Coptic Church (Coptic Orthodox Church)**
- .75 Ethiopian Church (Ethiopian Orthodox Tewahedo Church)**
- .8 Assyrian Church of the East (Church of the East)**  
 Former heading: Nestorian churches  
*See Manual at 270, 230.11–230.14 vs. 230.15–230.2, 281.5–281.9, 282*

**.9 Orthodox churches**

*See Manual at 230–280; also at 270, 230.11–230.14 vs. 230.15–230.2, 281.5–281.9, 282*

- .909 History, geographic treatment, biography
- [.909 3] Ancient world  
Do not use for early church; class in 270
- [.909 4–.909 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
Do not use for specific autocephalous, arbitrary autocephalous, autonomous, independent churches; class in 281.94–281.99
- .94–.99 Specific autocephalous, arbitrary autocephalous, autonomous, independent churches  
Add to base number 281.9 notation 4–9 from Table 2 for the country of the seat of the church, e.g., Russian Orthodox Church, Russian Orthodox Church Outside Russia 281.947, Orthodox Church in America 281.973; then, for geographic treatment, add 0\* and to the result add notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., Russian Orthodox Church Outside Russia in United States 281.947073
- .947 Russia  
Number built according to instructions under 281.94–281.99  
Class here Moscow Patriarchate, Russian Orthodox Church
- .947 7 Ukraine  
Number built according to instructions under 281.94–281.99  
Class here Ukrainian Autocephalous Orthodox Church, Ukrainian Orthodox Church (Kyivan Patriarchate), Ukrainian Orthodox Church (Moscow Patriarchate)
- .949 5 Greece  
Number built according to instructions under 281.94–281.99  
Class here Orthodox Church of Greece
- .949 6 Balkan Peninsula  
Number built according to instructions under 281.94–281.99
- .949 61 Turkey in Eastern Europe  
Number built according to instructions under 281.94–281.99  
Class here Ecumenical Patriarchate of Constantinople (Church of Constantinople)
- .949 71 Serbia  
Number built according to instructions under 281.94–281.99  
Class here Serbian Orthodox Church

\*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

- .949 8           Romania  
                   Number built according to instructions under 281.94–281.99  
                   Class here Romanian Orthodox Church

- .973            United States  
                   Number built according to instructions under 281.94–281.99  
                   Class here Orthodox Church in America (OCA)  
                   Class specific Orthodox churches affiliated with a patriarchate or other national church with the patriarchate or church, e.g., Greek Orthodox Archdiocese of America (eparchy of the Ecumenical Patriarchate of Constantinople) 281.94961073

## 282       **Roman Catholic Church**

Class here the Catholic traditionalist movement, comprehensive works on Roman Catholic Church and Eastern rite churches in communion with Rome

Class modern schisms in Roman Catholic Church in 284.8

*For Eastern rite churches in communion with Rome, see 281.52*

*See Manual at 270, 230.11–230.14 vs. 230.15–230.2, 281.5–281.9, 282*

- .09            History, geographic treatment, biography  
                   *See Manual at 270, 230.11–230.14 vs. 230.15–230.2, 281.5–281.9, 282*
- [.093]        Ancient world  
                   Do not use for early church; class in 270
- [.094–.099]   Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
                   Do not use; class in 282.4–282.9
- .4–9        **Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world**  
                   Add to base number 282 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., Roman Catholic Church in Latin America 282.8

## >        **283–289 Protestant and other denominations**

Class comprehensive works on Protestant churches in 280.4; class comprehensive works on Protestant and other denominations in 280

*See Manual at 283–289*

## 283       **Anglican churches**

- [.094–.099]   Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
                   Do not use; class in 283.4–283.9
- .3            **Branches not in communion with the See of Canterbury**

Including Reformed Episcopal Church and its affiliates

*See Manual at 230–280; also at 283–289*

**.4-9 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world**

Class here national churches in communion with the See of Canterbury

Add to base number 283 notation 4-9 from Table 2, e.g., Church of England 283.42, Episcopal Diocese of Long Island 283.74721

**284 Protestant denominations of Continental origin and related bodies**

*For Protestant denominations of Continental origin not provided for here, see the denomination, e.g., Baptists 286*

.094 3 Germany and neighboring central European countries

Class here Evangelische Kirche in Deutschland

**.1 Lutheran churches**

[.109 4-.109 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Do not use; class in 284.14-284.19

(.12) (Permanently unassigned)

(Optional number used to provide local emphasis or a shorter number for Lutheran church in a specific country other than the United States; prefer 284.14-284.19)

.13 Specific denominations, branches, synods centered in the United States

*See Manual at 230-280; also at 283-289*

[.130 1-.130 9] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 284.101-284.109

.131 \*The American Lutheran Church

.131 2 \*The Evangelical Lutheran Church

.131 3 \*United Evangelical Lutheran Church

.131 4 \*The Lutheran Free Church

.132 \*The Evangelical Lutheran Synodical Conference of North America

*For Wisconsin Evangelical Lutheran Synod, see 284.134*

.132 2 \*The Lutheran Church—Missouri Synod

*For Synod of Evangelical Lutheran Churches, see 284.1323*

.132 3 \*Synod of Evangelical Lutheran Churches (Slovak)

.133 \*The Lutheran Church in America

.133 2 \*American Evangelical Lutheran Church

.133 3 \*Augustana Evangelical Lutheran Church

.133 4 \*Finnish Evangelical Lutheran Church

\*Do not use notation 094-099 from Table 1; class in 284.14-284.19

- .133 5           \*The United Lutheran Church in America
- .134            \*Wisconsin Evangelical Lutheran Synod
- .135            \*Evangelical Lutheran Church in America
- .14–.19        Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
- Add to base number 284.1 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., Lutheran Church of Sweden 284.1485, Memorial Evangelical Lutheran Church of Washington, D.C. 284.1753; however, Evangelische Kirche in Deutschland relocated from 284.143 to 284.0943
- (Option: Class Lutheran churches in a specific country other than the United States in 284.12)

## **.2 Calvinistic and Reformed churches of European origin**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here comprehensive works on Calvinistic churches, on Reformed churches

*For Huguenot churches, see 284.5; for Presbyterian churches, see 285; for Reformed churches centered in America, see 285.7*

*See also 285.9 for Puritanism*

- [.209 4–.209 9]        Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
- Do not use; class in 284.24–284.29

- .24–.29        Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
- Add to base number 284.2 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., Reformed churches in Holland 284.2492, in South Africa 284.268

## **.3 Hussite and Anabaptist churches**

Including Lollards, Wycliffites

*See also 289.7 for Mennonite churches*

## **.4 Albigensian, Catharist, Waldensian churches**

## **.5 Huguenot churches**

## **.6 Moravian churches**

*For Hussite churches, see 284.3*

- [.609 4–.609 9]        Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
- Do not use; class in 284.64–284.69

- .64–.69        Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
- Add to base number 284.6 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., Moravian churches in Germany 284.643

\*Do not use notation 094–099 from Table 1; class in 284.14–284.19

**.8 Modern schisms in Roman Catholic Church**

Including Constitutional Church, Gallican schismatic churches, Liberal Catholic Church, Little Church of France, Old Catholic churches, Philippine Independent Church

.84 Jansenist churches

**.9 Arminian and Remonstrant churches****285 Presbyterian churches, Reformed churches centered in America, Congregational churches, Puritanism**

Standard subdivisions are added for Presbyterian churches, Reformed churches centered in America, Congregational churches together; for Presbyterian churches alone

**> 285.1–285.2 Presbyterian churches of United States, of British Commonwealth origin**

Class comprehensive works on Presbyterian churches, Presbyterian churches of other origin in 285

(If option under 280 is followed, use 285.001–285.008 for standard subdivisions, 285.02–285.07 for specific elements of Presbyterian churches)

**.1 Presbyterian churches of United States origin**

[.109 4–.109 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Do not use; class in 285.14–285.19

.13 Specific denominations

*See Manual at 230–280; also at 283–289*

[.130 1–.130 9] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 285.101–285.109

.131 \*United Presbyterian Church in the U.S.A.

.132 \*Presbyterian Church in the United States of America

.133 \*Presbyterian Church in the United States

.134 \*United Presbyterian Church of North America

.135 \*Cumberland Presbyterian Church

.136 \*Reformed Presbyterian churches

.137 \*Presbyterian Church (U.S.A.)

.14–.19 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Add to base number 285.1 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., the Hudson River Presbytery 285.17473

\*Do not use notation 094–099 from Table 1; class in 285.14–285.19

- .2 Presbyterian churches of British Commonwealth origin**
- [.209 4–.209 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
Do not use; class in 285.24–285.29
- .23 Specific denominations  
Including Countess of Huntingdon’s Connexion  
*See Manual at 230–280; also at 283–289*
- [.230 1–.230 9] Standard subdivisions  
Do not use; class in 285.201–285.209
- .232 †United Reformed Church in the United Kingdom  
Class Congregational Church of England and Wales in 285.842
- .233 †Church of Scotland
- .234 †Free Church of Scotland
- .235 †Presbyterian Church of Wales (Welsh Calvinistic Methodist Church)
- .24–.29 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
Add to base number 285.2 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., Presbyterianism in Ireland 285.2415, a Church of Scotland parish in Edinburgh 285.24134  
Class United Church of Canada in 287.92; class Uniting Church in Australia in 287.93
- .7 Reformed churches centered in America**
- [.709 4–.709 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
Do not use; class in 285.74–285.79
- .73 Specific denominations  
*See Manual at 230–280; also at 283–289*
- [.730 1–.730 9] Standard subdivisions  
Do not use; class in 285.701–285.709
- .731 \*Christian Reformed Church
- .732 \*Reformed Church in America (Dutch)
- .733 \*Reformed Church in the United States (German)
- .734 \*Evangelical and Reformed Church
- .74–.79 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
Add to base number 285.7 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., First Reformed Church of Schenectady, N.Y. 285.774744
- .8 Congregationalism**

\*Do not use notation 094–099 from Table 1; class in 285.74–285.79

†Do not use notation 094–099 from Table 1; class in 285.24–285.29

[.809 4-.809 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Do not use; class in 285.84-285.89

(.82) (Permanently unassigned)

(Optional number used to provide local emphasis or a shorter number for Congregational churches in a specific country other than the United States; prefer 285.84-285.89)

.83 Specific denominations centered in the United States

*See Manual at 230-280; also at 283-289*

[.830 1-.830 9] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 285.801-285.809

.832 †Congregational Churches of the United States

.833 †Congregational Christian Churches

.834 †United Church of Christ

*For Evangelical and Reformed Church, see 285.734*

.84-.89 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Class here specific denominations centered outside the United States

Add to base number 285.8 notation 4-9 from Table 2, e.g., Congregational Church of England and Wales 285.842, Congregational churches in New England 285.874

Class United Church of Canada in 287.92; class Uniting Church in Australia in 287.93

(Option: Class Congregational churches in a specific country other than the United States in 285.82)

.9 **Puritanism**

## 286 **Baptist, Restoration movement, Adventist churches**

Standard subdivisions are added for Baptist, Restoration movement, Adventist churches together; for Baptist churches alone

### > **286.1-286.5 Baptist churches**

Class comprehensive works in 286

(If option under 280 is followed, use 286.001-286.008 for standard subdivisions, 286.02-286.07 for specific elements of Baptist churches)

.1 **Regular Baptists (Calvinistic Baptists)**

[.109 4-.109 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Do not use; class in 286.14-286.19

†Do not use notation 094-099 from Table 1; class in 285.84-285.89

- (.12) (Permanently unassigned)  
 (Optional number used to provide local emphasis or a shorter number for Regular Baptist churches in a specific country other than the United States; prefer 286.14–286.19)
- .13 Specific denominations centered in the United States  
*See Manual at 230–280; also at 283–289*
- [.130 1–.130 9] Standard subdivisions  
 Do not use; class in 286.101–286.109
- .131 \*American Baptist Churches in the U.S.A.  
 Former name: American (Northern) Baptist Convention
- .132 \*Southern Baptist Convention
- .133 \*National Baptist Convention of the United States of America
- .134 \*National Baptist Convention of America
- .135 \*Progressive National Baptist Convention
- .136 \*American Baptist Association
- .14–.19 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
 Class here specific denominations centered outside the United States  
 Add to base number 286.1 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., Association of Regular Baptist Churches of Canada 286.171, a Southern Baptist association in Tennessee 286.1768  
 (Option: Class Regular Baptist churches in a specific country other than the United States in 286.12)
- .2 Freewill Baptists**
- .3 Seventh-Day Baptists**
- .4 Old School Baptists**  
 Including Antimission, Primitive Baptists
- .5 Other Baptist churches and denominations**  
 Including Baptist General Conference, Church of the Brethren, Dunkers
- .6 Restoration movement**  
 Former heading: Disciples of Christ (Campbellites)
- [.609 4–.609 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
 Do not use; class in 286.64–286.69

\*Do not use notation 094–099 from Table 1; class in 286.14–286.19

**.63 Specific denominations**

Including Christian Church (Disciples of Christ), Christian Churches and Churches of Christ, Churches of Christ

Class a specific denomination in a specific geographic area with the area in 286.64–286.69

*See Manual at 230–280; also at 283–289*

**[.630 1–.630 9] Standard subdivisions**

Do not use; class in 286.601–286.609

**.64–.69 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world**

Class here specific denominations and specific churches in specific geographic areas

Add to base number 286.6 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., the Christian Church (Disciples of Christ) in Florida 286.6759

**.7 Adventist churches****[.709 4–.709 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world**

Do not use; class in 286.74–286.79

**.73 Specific denominations**

Including Advent Christian Church, Church of God General Conference

Class a specific denomination in a specific geographic area with the area in 286.74–286.79

*See Manual at 230–280; also at 283–289*

**[.730 1–.730 9] Standard subdivisions**

Do not use; class in 286.701–286.709

**.732 Seventh-Day Adventist Church****[.732 094–.732 099] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world**

Do not use; class in 286.74–286.79

**.74–.79 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world**

Class here specific denominations and specific churches in specific geographic areas

Add to base number 286.7 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., Seventh-Day Adventists in South America 286.78

**287 Methodist churches; churches related to Methodism**

Standard subdivisions are added for Methodist churches and churches related to Methodism together; for Methodist churches alone

**.1 Wesleyan Methodist Church****[.109 4–.109 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world**

Do not use; class in 287.14–287.19

- .14–.19      **Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world**  
 Add to base number 287.1 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., Wesleyan Methodist Church in British Isles 287.141, Wesleyan Methodist Church in New South Wales 287.1944
- .2      Miscellaneous Methodist churches**  
 Including Congregational Methodist Church, Free Methodist Church of North America
- .4      Primitive Methodist Church**
- [.409 4–.409 9]      **Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world**  
 Do not use; class in 287.44–287.49
- .44–.49      **Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world**  
 Add to base number 287.4 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., Primitive Methodist Church in British Isles 287.441
- .5      Methodist churches in British Isles**
- [.509 41–.509 42]      **British Isles**  
 Do not use; class in 287.54
- .53      **Specific denominations**  
 Including Bible Christians, Methodist New Connexion, Protestant Methodists, United Methodist Church (Great Britain), United Methodist Free Churches, Wesleyan Conference, Wesleyan Reformers, Yearly Conference of People Called Methodists  
 Class a specific denomination in a specific geographic area with the area in 287.54  
*For Wesleyan Methodist Church in British Isles, see 287.141; for Primitive Methodist Church in British Isles, see 287.441*  
*See also 285.23 for Countess of Huntingdon's Connexion; also 285.235 for Welsh Calvinistic Methodist Church*  
*See Manual at 230–280; also at 283–289*
- [.530 1–.530 9]      **Standard subdivisions**  
 Do not use; class in 287.501–287.509
- .532      **\*United Conference of Methodist Churches**
- .533      **\*Independent Methodists**
- .534      **\*Wesleyan Reform Union**
- .536      **\*Methodist Church of Great Britain**

\*Do not use notation 0941–0942 from Table 1; class in 287.54

**.54 Country and locality**

Class here specific denominations and specific churches in specific geographic areas

Add to base number 287.54 the numbers following —4 in notation 41–42 from Table 2, e.g., Methodist Church of Great Britain in Wales 287.5429

**.6 United Methodist Church**

*See also 287.53 for United Methodist Church (Great Britain)*

[.609 4–.609 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Do not use; class in 287.64–287.69

**.63 Specific antecedent denominations**

*For Methodist Protestant Church, see 287.7; for Evangelical United Brethren Church, see 289.9*

*See Manual at 230–280; also at 283–289*

[.630 1–.630 9] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 287.601–287.609

.631 †The Methodist Church (1939–1968)

.632 †Methodist Episcopal Church

.633 †Methodist Episcopal Church, South

.64–.69 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Add to base number 287.6 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., United Methodist churches in Ohio 287.6771

**.7 Methodist Protestant Church****.8 Black Methodist churches of United States origin**

[.809 4–.809 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Do not use; class in 287.84–287.89

**.83 Specific denominations**

Including African Methodist Episcopal Church, African Methodist Episcopal Zion Church, Christian Methodist Episcopal Church

Class a specific denomination in a specific geographic area with the area in 287.84–287.89

*See Manual at 230–280; also at 283–289*

[.830 1–.830 9] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 287.801–287.809

†Do not use notation 094–099 from Table 1; class in 287.64–287.69

- .84–.89      **Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world**  
                   Class here specific denominations and specific churches in specific geographic areas  
                   Add to base number 287.8 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., Black Methodist churches in Georgia 287.8758, in Liberia 287.86662

**.9            Churches related to Methodism**

- Limited to those listed below
- .92            United Church of Canada
- .93            Uniting Church in Australia
- .94            Church of South India
- .95            Church of North India
- .96            Salvation Army
- .99            Church of the Nazarene

**[288]        [Unassigned]**

                  Most recently used in Edition 19

**289         Other denominations and sects**

**SUMMARY**

- 289.1        **Unitarian and Universalist churches**
- .3        **Latter-Day Saints (Mormons)**
- .4        **Church of the New Jerusalem (Swedenborgianism)**
- .5        **Church of Christ, Scientist (Christian Science)**
- .6        **Society of Friends (Quakers)**
- .7        **Mennonite churches**
- .8        **Shakers (United Society of Believers in Christ's Second Appearing)**
- .9        **Denominations and sects not provided for elsewhere**

**.1            Unitarian and Universalist churches**

- Class here Anti-Trinitarianism, Socinianism, Unitarianism
- [.109 4–.109 9]      **Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world**  
                             Do not use; class in 289.14–289.19
- .13            **Specific denominations**  
                             *See Manual at 230–280; also at 283–289*
- [.130 1–.130 9]      **Standard subdivisions**  
                             Do not use; class in 289.101–289.109
- .132            **\*Unitarian Universalist Association**
- .133            **\*Unitarian churches**

\*Do not use notation 094–099 from Table 1; class in 289.14–289.19

.134 \*Universalist churches

.14-.19 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Add to base number 289.1 notation 4-9 from Table 2, e.g., Unitarianism in Boston 289.174461

**(.2) (Permanently unassigned)**

(Optional number used to provide local emphasis or a shorter number for a specific denomination or sect; prefer the number for the specific denomination or sect in 281-289)

**.3 Latter-Day Saints (Mormons)**

[.309 4-.309 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Do not use; class in 289.34-289.39

.32 Sources (Sacred books)

.322 Book of Mormon

.33 Specific branches

*See Manual at 230-280; also at 283-289*

[.330 1-.330 9] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 289.301-289.309

.332 Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-Day Saints

[.332 094-.332 099] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Do not use; class in 289.34-289.39

.333 Community of Christ

Former name: Reorganized Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-Day Saints

[.333 094-.333 099] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Do not use; class in 289.34-289.39

.34-.39 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Add to base number 289.3 notation 4-9 from Table 2, e.g., Mormons in Utah 289.3792

**.4 Church of the New Jerusalem (Swedenborgianism)**

[.409 4-.409 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Do not use; class in 289.44-289.49

.44-.49 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Add to base number 289.4 notation 4-9 from Table 2, e.g., Swedenborgianism in Europe 289.44

**.5 Church of Christ, Scientist (Christian Science)**

\*Do not use notation 094-099 from Table 1; class in 289.14-289.19

- [.509 4-.509 9]      Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
                                  Do not use; class in 289.54-289.59
- .52                    Sources  
                                  Writings by Mary Baker Eddy
- .54-.59              Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
                                  Add to base number 289.5 notation 4-9 from Table 2, e.g., First Church of  
                                  Christ, Scientist, Boston 289.574461
- .6                    Society of Friends (Quakers)**
- [.609 4-.609 9]      Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
                                  Do not use; class in 289.64-289.69
- .63                    Specific denominations  
                                  *See Manual at 230-280; also at 283-289*
- [.630 1-.630 9]      Standard subdivisions  
                                  Do not use; class in 289.601-289.609
- .64-.69              Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
                                  Add to base number 289.6 notation 4-9 from Table 2, e.g., Quakers in  
                                  England 289.642
- .7                    Mennonite churches**
- [.709 4-.709 9]      Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
                                  Do not use; class in 289.74-289.79
- .73                    Specific branches  
                                  Including Amish, Church of God in Christ, Defenseless Mennonites, General  
                                  Conference Mennonites, Hutterian Brethren  
                                  Class a specific denomination in a specific geographic area with the area in  
                                  289.74-289.79  
                                  *See Manual at 230-280; also at 283-289*
- [.730 1-.730 9]      Standard subdivisions  
                                  Do not use; class in 289.701-289.709
- .74-.79              Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
                                  Class here specific denominations and specific churches in specific  
                                  geographic areas  
                                  Add to base number 289.7 notation 4-9 from Table 2, e.g., Amish churches  
                                  in Lancaster County, Pennsylvania 289.774815
- .8                    Shakers (United Society of Believers in Christ's Second Appearing)**

**.9 Denominations and sects not provided for elsewhere**

Including Christian and Missionary Alliance, Churches of God, Dukhobors, Evangelical Congregational Church, Evangelical United Brethren Church, Messianic Judaism (Jewish Christians), Plymouth Brethren, United Brethren in Christ

Class nondenominational and interdenominational churches in 280; class Protestant nondenominational and interdenominational churches in 280.4

*See Manual at 201–209 and 292–299*

(Option: Class a specific denomination or sect requiring local emphasis in 289.2)

.92 Jehovah's Witnesses

.93 African independent churches

Independent denominations originating in Africa and not connected to another denomination

Including Celestial Church of Christ, Cherubim and Seraphim Church, Eglise de Jésus-Christ sur la terre par le prophète Simon Kimbangu

.94 Pentecostal churches

Including Assemblies of God, United Pentecostal Church

Class comprehensive works on the pentecostal movement in general church history in 270.82

.95 Independent fundamentalist and evangelical churches

Including Evangelical Free Church of America, Independent Fundamental Churches of America

Class comprehensive works on fundamentalist, evangelical movements in general church history in 270.82

.96 Unification Church

.97 Unity School of Christianity

.98 New Thought

Class eclectic New Thought, comprehensive works in 299.93

## 290 Other religions

Limited to specific religions other than Christianity

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by † as follows:

- 01–05 Standard subdivisions
- [06] Organizations and management  
Do not use; class in 6
- 07 Education, research, related topics
- 071 Education  
Class here the religion as an academic subject  
Class comprehensive works on religious education, religious education to inculcate religious faith and practice in 75  
*See Manual at 207.5, 268 vs. 200.71, 230.071, 292–299*
- 08–09 Standard subdivisions
- 1–9 Specific elements  
Add the numbers following 20 in 201–209, e.g., organizations 65

Class religion in general, comprehensive works on religions other than Christianity in 200; class specific aspects of religion in 201–209

(Options: To give preferred treatment or shorter numbers to a specific religion, use one of the following:

(Option A: Class the sources of the religion in 220, other specific aspects of the religion in 230–280, comprehensive works on the religion in 230; in that case class the Bible and Christianity in 298

(Option B: Class in 210, and add to base number 21 the numbers following the base number for the religion in 292–299, e.g., Hinduism 210, Mahabharata 219.23; in that case class philosophy and theory of religion in 200, its subdivisions 211–218 in 200.1)

### SUMMARY

- 292 **Classical religion (Greek and Roman religion)**
  - .001–.009 Standard subdivisions
  - .07–.08 Classical religion by specific culture
  - .1–.9 Specific elements
- 293 **Germanic religion**
- 294 **Religions of Indic origin**
  - .3 Buddhism
  - .4 Jainism
  - .5 Hinduism
  - .6 Sikhism
- 295 **Zoroastrianism (Mazdaism, Parseeism)**
- 296 **Judaism**
  - .01–.09 Standard subdivisions
  - .1 Sources
  - .3 Theology, ethics, views of social issues
  - .4 Traditions, rites, public services
  - .6 Leaders, organization, religious education, outreach activity
  - .7 Religious experience, life, practice
  - .8 Denominations and movements

- 297      **Islam, Babism, Bahai Faith**  
       **Standard subdivisions**  
       .1      **Sources of Islam**  
       .2      **Islamic doctrinal theology ('Aqā'id and Kalām); Islam and secular disciplines; Islam and other systems of belief**  
       .3      **Islamic worship**  
       .4      **Sufism (Islamic mysticism)**  
       .5      **Islamic ethics and religious experience, life, practice**  
       .6      **Islamic leaders and organization**  
       .7      **Protection and propagation of Islam**  
       .8      **Islamic sects and reform movements**  
       .9      **Babism and Bahai Faith**
- 299      **Religions not provided for elsewhere**  
       .1-.4    **Religions of Indo-European, Semitic, Non-Semitic Afro-Asiatic, North and West Asian, Dravidian origin**  
       .5      **Religions of East and Southeast Asian origin**  
       .6      **Religions originating among Black Africans and people of Black African descent**  
       .7      **Religions of North American native origin**  
       .8      **Religions of South American native origin**  
       .9      **Religions of other origin**

**[291]      [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 21

**292      Classical religion (Greek and Roman religion)**

*See also 299 for modern revivals of classical religions*

*See Manual at 200.92 and 201-209, 292-299; also at 201-209 and 292-299; also at 203.6, 263.9, 292-299 vs. 394.265-394.267; also at 322.1 vs. 201.72, 261.7, 292-299; also at 398.2 vs. 201.3, 230, 270, 292-299; also at 615.852 vs. 203.1, 234.131, 292-299; also at 616.86 vs. 158.1, 204.42, 248.8629, 292-299, 362.29*

- .001-.005      **Standard subdivisions**
- [.006]      **Organizations and management**  
               Do not use; class in 292.6
- .007      **Education, research, related topics**
- .007 1      **Education**  
               Class here classical religion as an academic subject  
               Class comprehensive works on religious education, religious education to inculcate religious faith and practice in 292.75  
               *See Manual at 207.5, 268 vs. 200.71, 230.071, 292-299*
- .008-.009      **Standard subdivisions**

>      **292.07-292.08 Classical religion by specific culture**

Class specific elements regardless of culture in 292.1-292.9; class comprehensive works in 292

- .07      **Roman religion**

.08 Greek religion

**.1–.9 Specific elements**

Add to base number 292 the numbers following 20 in 201–209, e.g., mythology 292.13, organizations 292.65

Class classical religion as an academic subject in 292.0071

**293 †Germanic religion**

Class here Scandinavian religion, Norse religion

*See also 299 for modern revivals of Germanic religion*

*See Manual at 200.92 and 201–209, 292–299; also at 201–209 and 292–299; also at 203.6, 263.9, 292–299 vs. 394.265–394.267; also at 207.5, 268 vs. 200.71, 230.071, 292–299; also at 322.1 vs. 201.72, 261.7, 292–299; also at 398.2 vs. 201.3, 230, 270, 292–299; also at 615.852 vs. 203.1, 234.131, 292–299; also at 616.86 vs. 158.1, 204.42, 248.8629, 292–299, 362.29*

**294 Religions of Indic origin**

Including Divine Light Mission, Radha Soami Satsang

*See Manual at 200.9 vs. 294, 299.5; also at 200.92 and 201–209, 292–299; also at 201–209 and 292–299; also at 203.6, 263.9, 292–299 vs. 394.265–394.267; also at 207.5, 268 vs. 200.71, 230.071, 292–299; also at 322.1 vs. 201.72, 261.7, 292–299; also at 398.2 vs. 201.3, 230, 270, 292–299; also at 615.852 vs. 203.1, 234.131, 292–299; also at 616.86 vs. 158.1, 204.42, 248.8629, 292–299, 362.29*

**SUMMARY**

294.3 **Buddhism**  
 .4 **Jainism**  
 .5 **Hinduism**  
 .6 **Sikhism**

**.3 Buddhism**

[.306] Organizations and management

Do not use; class in 294.36

.307 Education, research, related topics

.307 1 Education

Class here Buddhism as an academic subject

Class comprehensive works on religious education, religious education to inculcate religious faith and practice in 294.375

*See Manual at 207.5, 268 vs. 200.71, 230.071, 292–299*

†Add as instructed under 290

- .33 Religious mythology, interreligious relations and attitudes, and social theology  
 Add to base number 294.33 the numbers following 201 in 201.3–201.7, e.g., social theology 294.337
- .34 Doctrines and practices
- .342 Doctrines  
*For social theology, see 294.337; for Buddhist ethics, see 294.35*
- .342 04 Doctrines of specific branches, sects, reform movements  
 Add to base number 294.34204 the numbers following 294.39 in 294.391–294.392, e.g., Zen doctrines 294.3420427
- .342 1–.342 4 Specific doctrines  
 Add to base number 294.342 the numbers following 202 in 202.1–202.4, e.g., reincarnation 294.34237
- .343–.344 Public worship and other practices; religious experience, life, practice  
 Add to base number 294.34 the numbers following 20 in 203–204, e.g., religious experience 294.3442
- .35–.37 Religious ethics, leaders and organization, missions, religious education  
 Add to base number 294.3 the numbers following 20 in 205–207, e.g., the Buddha 294.363, organizations 294.365  
*See Manual at 207.5, 268 vs. 200.71, 230.071, 292–299*
- .38 Sources
- .382 Sacred books and scriptures (Tripiṭaka, Tipiṭaka)  
 Works sacred to both Theravadins and Mahayanists  
 Class here comprehensive treatment of Theravadin and Mahayanist sacred texts  
*For works sacred only to Mahayanists, see 294.385*
- .382 2 Vinayapiṭaka
- .382 3 Sūtrapiṭaka (Suttapiṭaka)
- .382 32 Khuddakanikāya
- .382 322 Dhammapada
- .382 325 Jatakas
- .382 4 Abhidharmapiṭaka (Abhidhammapiṭaka)
- .383 Oral traditions
- .384 Laws and decisions
- .385 Sources of branches, sects, reform movements  
 Including Buddhist Tantras, Mahayanist sacred works

- .39           Branches, sects, reform movements  
                   Class specific aspects of branches, sects, reform movements in  
                   294.33–294.38
- .391           Theravada Buddhism  
                   Variant names: Southern, Hinayana Buddhism  
                   Including Mahasanghika, Saravastivada, Sautrantika schools
- .392           Mahayana Buddhism (Northern Buddhism)  
                   Including Madhyamika, Yogacara (Vijnana) schools
- .392 3          Tibetan Buddhism (Lamaism)  
                   *See also 299.54 for Bon*
- .392 5          Tantric Buddhism
- .392 6          Pure Land sects
- .392 7          Zen (Ch'an)  
                   Including Rinzai, Soto
- .392 8          Nichiren Shoshu and Sōka Gakkai
- .4           †Jainism**
- .49            Sects and reform movements  
                   Number built according to instructions under 290  
                   Class specific aspects of sects and reform movements in 294.41–294.48
- .492           Svetambara
- .493           Digambara
- .5           Hinduism**  
                   Class here Brahmanism

### SUMMARY

- |              |   |
|--------------|---|
| 294.501–.509 | Standard subdivisions   |
| .51–.53      | Mythology, relations, doctrines, public worship and other practices |
| .54          | Religious experience, life, practice, religious ethics              |
| .55          | Sects and reform movements  |
| .56–.57      | Leaders, organization, missions, religious education                |
| .59          | Sources   |
- [.506]           Organizations and management  
                   Do not use; class in 294.56
- .507            Education, research, related topics

†Add as instructed under 290

- .507 1            Education  
                   Class here Hinduism as an academic subject  
                   Class comprehensive works on religious education, religious  
                   education to inculcate religious faith and practice in 294.575  
                   *See Manual at 207.5, 268 vs. 200.71, 230.071, 292–299*
- .509            History, geographic treatment, biography
- .509 013            3999–1000 B.C.  
                   Class here religion of Vedic period
- .51–.53        Mythology, relations, doctrines, public worship and other practices  
                   Add to base number 294.5 the numbers following 20 in 201–203, e.g., gods  
                   and goddesses 294.5211
- .54            Religious experience, life, practice, religious ethics  
                   Practices predominantly private or individual in character  
                   Class here spirituality
- .542            Religious experience  
                   Including conversion, enlightenment
- .542 2            Mysticism
- .543            Worship, meditation, yoga  
                   Class here description, interpretation, criticism, history, practical works  
                   on prayer, on contemplation; comprehensive works on worship  
                   *For public worship, see 294.538*
- .543 2            Devotional literature  
                   Including meditations
- .543 3            Prayer books
- .543 5            Meditation
- .543 6            Yoga  
                   Religious and spiritual discipline  
                   Including bhakti yoga, jnana yoga, karma yoga, kundalini yoga, raja  
                   yoga  
                   Class yoga philosophy, raja yoga philosophy, interdisciplinary works  
                   on yoga in 181.45  
                   *See also 613.7046 for hatha yoga, physical yoga*
- .544            Religious life and practice  
                   Add to base number 294.544 the numbers following 204.4 in  
                   204.41–204.47, e.g., asceticism 294.5447

- .548 Religious ethics  
Including conscience, dharma, sin, vice
- .548 6 Specific moral issues, sins, vices, virtues  
Add to base number 294.5486 the numbers following 17 in 172–179, e.g., morality of family relationships 294.54863
- .55 Sects and reform movements  
Class Buddhism in 294.3; class Jainism in 294.4; class Sikhism in 294.6.  
Class a specific aspect of a Hindu sect or reform movement with the subject, e.g., doctrines of Vishnuism 294.52
- .551 Early Hindu sects
- .551 2 Vishnuism  
Including International Society for Krishna Consciousness
- .551 3 Shivaism  
Including Lingayats
- .551 4 Shaktatism  
Class here Tantric Hinduism
- .551 5 Ganapataism
- .551 6 Shanmukaism
- .551 7 Sauraism
- .555 Ramakrishna movement
- .556 Reformed Hinduism
- .556 2 Brahma Samaj
- .556 3 Arya-Samaj
- .56–.57 Leaders, organization, missions, religious education  
Add to base number 294.5 the numbers following 20 in 206–207, e.g., the role of the guru 294.561  
Class Hinduism as an academic subject in 294.5071  
*See Manual at 207.5, 268 vs. 200.71, 230.071, 292–299*
- .59 Sources

- .592 Sacred books and scriptures
- Add to each subdivision identified by \* as follows:
- 04 Special topics
- 041 Sanskrit texts
- Including textual criticism
- Class Sanskrit texts accompanied by translations in 045; class Sanskrit texts accompanied by commentaries in 047
- 045 Translations
- Class here Sanskrit texts accompanied by translations
- Add to 045 notation 1–9 from Table 6, e.g., translations into English 04521
- Class texts accompanied by commentaries in 047
- 046 Interpretation and criticism
- For textual criticism, see 041; for commentaries, see 047*
- 047 Commentaries
- Criticism and interpretation arranged in textual order
- Including texts accompanied by commentaries
- 048 Nonreligious subjects treated in sacred books and scriptures
- Class a religious subject treated in sacred books and scriptures with the subject, e.g., rites and ceremonies 294.538

.592 1 \*Vedic literature

> 294.592 12–294.592 15 The Vedas

Class here Samhitas, Brahmanas, Aranyakas

Class Upanishads in 294.59218; class Vedic religion in 294.509013; class comprehensive works on the Vedas in 294.5921

- .592 12 \*Rigveda
- .592 13 \*Samaveda
- .592 14 \*Yajurveda
- .592 15 \*Atharvaveda
- .592 18 Upanishads
- .592 2 \*Ramayana
- .592 3 \*Mahabharata
- For Bhagavad Gita, see 294.5924*
- .592 4 \*Bhagavad Gita
- .592 5 Puranas
- .592 6 Dharmasastras
- Including Code of Manu

\*Add as instructed under 294.592

- .593 Oral traditions
- .594 Laws and decisions
- .595 Sources of sects and reform movements
  - Including Hindu tantras

**.6 †Sikhism**

- .663 Founders of Sikhism
  - Number built according to instructions under 290
  - Class here role and function of the ten Sikh gurus

**295 †Zoroastrianism (Mazdaism, Parseism)**

Class Mithraism in 299.15

*See Manual at 200.92 and 201–209, 292–299; also at 201–209 and 292–299; also at 203.6, 263.9, 292–299 vs. 394.265–394.267; also at 207.5, 268 vs. 200.71, 230.071, 292–299; also at 322.1 vs. 201.72, 261.7, 292–299; also at 398.2 vs. 201.3, 230, 270, 292–299; also at 615.852 vs. 203.1, 234.131, 292–299; also at 616.86 vs. 158.1, 204.42, 248.8629, 292–299, 362.29*

**296 Judaism**

*See Manual at 200.92 and 201–209, 292–299; also at 201–209 and 292–299; also at 203.6, 263.9, 292–299 vs. 394.265–394.267; also at 322.1 vs. 201.72, 261.7, 292–299; also at 398.2 vs. 201.3, 230, 270, 292–299; also at 615.852 vs. 203.1, 234.131, 292–299; also at 616.86 vs. 158.1, 204.42, 248.8629, 292–299, 362.29*

**SUMMARY**

- 296.01–.09 Standard subdivisions**
- .1 Sources**
  - .3 Theology, ethics, views of social issues**
  - .4 Traditions, rites, public services**
  - .6 Leaders, organization, religious education, outreach activity**
  - .7 Religious experience, life, practice**
  - .8 Denominations and movements**

[.06] Organizations and management

Do not use; class in 296.6

.07 Education, research, related topics

.071 Education

Class here Judaism as an academic subject

Class comprehensive works on Jewish religious education, religious education to inculcate religious faith and practice in 296.68

*See Manual at 207.5, 268 vs. 200.71, 230.071, 292–299*

†Add as instructed under 290

- .071 1 Higher education  
Class here Jewish theological faculties, rabbinical seminaries, yeshivot, education of rabbis
- .08 Groups of people  
Class here Jewish attitudes toward social groups; discrimination, equality, inequality, prejudice
- .09 History, geographic treatment, biography  
Class here history of specific synagogues  
*See also 320.54095694 for Zionism; also 909.04924 for world history of Jews*

- > 296.090 1–296.090 5 Historical periods  
Add to each subdivision identified by \* as instructed under —0901–0905 in Table 1, e.g., museums of ancient Judaism 296.0901074

Class comprehensive works in 296.09

- .090 1 \*To 499 A.D.
- .090 13 \*Earliest Judaism to 586 B.C.
- .090 14 \*Second Temple period, 586 B.C.–70 A.D.
- .090 15 \*Early rabbinic period, 70–499
- .090 2–.090 5 6th–21st centuries  
Add to base number 296.090 the numbers following —090 in notation 0902–0905 from Table 1, e.g., Judaism in the Middle Ages 296.0902

- .092 Biography  
Class here persons not associated with one activity or denomination  
Class a person associated with one activity or denomination with the activity or denomination with which the person is associated, e.g., a theologian 296.3092, a Reform rabbi 296.8341092

## .1 Sources

Class Jewish theology based on these sources in 296.3

*For Torah and sacred scripture (Tanakh, Old Testament), see 221*

*See Manual at 221*

\*Add as instructed under 296.0901–296.0905

## SUMMARY

- 296.12 Talmudic literature  
 .14 Midrash  
 .15 Sources of specific sects and movements  
 .16 Cabalistic literature  
 .18 Halakah (Legal literature)  
 .19 Aggadah (Nonlegal literature)
- (.11) Tanakh  
 (Optional number; prefer 221)  
 Arranged as found in Jewish Bibles  
*See Manual at 221: Optional numbers for books of Bible*
- [.110 3] Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances  
 Do not use for dictionaries and encyclopedias; class in 296.1113. Do not use for concordances; class in 296.1114–296.1115
- (.111) Special topics; generalities; geography, history, chronology, persons of Bible lands in times of the Tanakh  
 (Optional number; prefer 221)
- (.111 04) Special topics of Tanakh
- (.111 044) Megillot (Five scrolls)  
 Relocated to 296.1164
- (.111 046) Apocalyptic passages  
 Class apocalyptic passages in a book or group of books with the book or group of books, plus notation 0046 from add table under 221–229, e.g., apocalyptic passages in the prophets 296.1130046, in Book of Daniel 296.11650046
- (.111 1–.111 8) Generalities  
 Add to base number 296.111 the numbers following 221 in 221.1–221.8, e.g., criticism and interpretation 296.1116
- (.111 9) Geography, history, chronology, persons of Bible lands in times of the Tanakh  
 Add to base number 296.1119 the numbers following 221.9 in 221.91–221.95, e.g., archaeology 296.11193
- (.112) \*‡Torah (Pentateuch)
- (.112 1) \*‡Genesis
- (.112 2) \*‡Exodus  
*For Ten Commandments, see 296.1126*
- (.112 3) \*‡Leviticus

\*Add as instructed under 221–229

‡(Optional number; prefer 222–224)

- (.112 4) \*‡Numbers
- (.112 5) \*‡Deuteronomy  
*For Ten Commandments, see 296.1126*
- (.112 6) \*‡Ten Commandments (Decalogue)
- (.113) \*‡Prophetic books (Nevi'im)
- (.113 1) \*Former Prophets (Nevi'im rishonim)  
 (Optional number; prefer 222)  
*For individual books of Former Prophets, see 296.1132–296.1135*
- (.113 2) \*‡Joshua
- (.113 3) \*‡Judges
- (.113 4) \*‡Samuel
- (.113 41) \*‡Samuel 1
- (.113 42) \*‡Samuel 2
- (.113 5) \*‡Kings
- (.113 51) \*‡Kings 1
- (.113 52) \*‡Kings 2
- (.113 6) \*Later Prophets (Nevi'im aḥaronim)  
 (Optional number; prefer 224)  
*For Isaiah, see 296.1137; for Jeremiah, see 296.1138; for Ezekiel, see 296.1139; for Minor Prophets, see 296.114*
- (.113 7) \*‡Isaiah
- (.113 8) \*‡Jeremiah
- (.113 9) \*‡Ezekiel
- (.114) \*‡Minor Prophets  
*For Zephaniah, Haggai, Zechariah, Malachi, see 296.115*
- (.114 1) \*‡Hosea
- (.114 2) \*‡Joel
- (.114 3) \*‡Amos
- (.114 4) \*‡Obadiah
- (.114 5) \*‡Jonah
- (.114 6) \*‡Micah
- (.114 7) \*‡Nahum

\*Add as instructed under 221–229

‡(Optional number; prefer 222–224)

- (.114 8) \*‡Habakkuk
- (.115) \*‡Zephaniah, Haggai, Zechariah, Malachi
- (.115 1) \*‡Zephaniah
- (.115 2) \*‡Haggai
- (.115 3) \*‡Zechariah
- (.115 4) \*‡Malachi
- (.116) \*‡Writings (Ketuvim)
- (.116 1) \*‡Psalms
- (.116 2) \*‡Proverbs
- (.116 3) \*‡Job
- (.116 4) \*Megillot (Five scrolls) [*formerly also 296.111044*]  
(Optional number; prefer 221.044)
- (.116 41) \*‡Song of Solomon (Canticle of Canticles, Song of Songs)
- (.116 42) \*‡Ruth
- (.116 43) \*‡Lamentations
- (.116 44) \*‡Ecclesiastes (Kohelet, Qohelet)
- (.116 45) \*‡Esther
- (.116 5) \*‡Daniel
- (.116 6) \*‡Ezra
- (.116 7) \*‡Nehemiah
- (.116 8) \*‡Chronicles
- (.116 81) \*‡Chronicles 1
- (.116 82) \*‡Chronicles 2
- (.118) \*Apocrypha  
(Optional number; prefer 229)  
*For pseudepigrapha, see 229.9*
- (.118 1) \*Esdras 1 and 2  
(Optional number; prefer 229.1)  
Variant names: Esdras 3 and 4  
*See also 296.1166 for Ezra; also 296.1167 for Nehemiah*
- (.118 2) \*Tobit, Judith, Additions to Esther  
(Optional number; prefer 229.2)

\*Add as instructed under 221–229

‡(Optional number; prefer 222–224)

- (.118 22) \*Tobit  
(Optional number; prefer 229.22)
- (.118 24) \*Judith  
(Optional number; prefer 229.24)
- (.118 27) \*Additions to Esther  
(Optional number; prefer 229.27)
- (.118 3) \*Wisdom of Solomon (Wisdom)  
(Optional number; prefer 229.3)  
Class here Apocryphal wisdom literature  
*For Ecclesiasticus, see 296.1184*
- (.118 4) \*Ecclesiasticus (Sirach)  
(Optional number; prefer 229.4)
- (.118 5) \*Baruch and Epistle of Jeremiah  
(Optional number; prefer 229.5)
- (.118 6) \*Song of the Three Children, Susanna, Bel and the Dragon  
(Optional number; prefer 229.6)
- (.118 7) \*Maccabees (Machabees)  
(Optional number; prefer 229.7)
- (.118 73) \*Maccabees 1 and 2 (Machabees 1 and 2)  
(Optional number; prefer 229.73)
- (.118 75) \*Maccabees 3 and 4 (Machabees 3 and 4)  
(Optional number; prefer 229.75)
- (.118 8) \*Prayer of Manasseh  
(Optional number; prefer 229.6)

- > 296.12–296.14 Talmudic literature and Midrash
- Add to each subdivision identified by ‡ as follows:
- 001–009 Standard subdivisions
  - 04 Hebrew and Aramaic texts
    - Including textual criticism
    - Class texts accompanied by modern commentaries since 1500 in 07
  - 05 Translations
    - Add to 05 notation 1–9 from Table 6, e.g., literature in English 0521
    - Class texts accompanied by modern commentaries since 1500 in 07
  - 06 Interpretation and criticism (Exegesis)
    - 0601 Philosophy and theory
      - Class here hermeneutics
    - 061–068 Subdivisions of interpretation and criticism (Exegesis)
      - Add to 06 the numbers following 220.6 in 220.61–220.68, e.g., historical criticism 067
      - For textual criticism, see 04; for modern commentaries since 1500, see 07*
  - 07 Modern commentaries since 1500
    - Criticism and interpretation arranged in textual order
    - Including texts accompanied by modern commentaries
    - Commentaries written before 1500 are classed with the text without addition of 07
  - 08 Nonreligious subjects treated in Talmudic literature and Midrash
    - Add to 08 notation 001–999, e.g., natural sciences in Talmudic literature and Midrash 085
    - Class a religious subject treated in Talmudic literature and Midrash with the subject, e.g., Jewish ethics 296.36
- Class comprehensive works in 296.1
- .12 ‡Talmudic literature
    - .120 092 Biography
      - Number built according to instructions under 296.12–296.14
      - Class here Soferim, Tannaim, Amoraim, Geonim
    - .123 ‡Mishnah
      - .123 1 ‡Order Zera'im
        - Including tractates Berakhot, Bikkurim, Demai, Ḥallah, Kilayim, Ma'aser Sheni, Ma'aserot, Orlah, Pe'ah, Shevi'it, Terumot
      - .123 2 ‡Order Mo'ed
        - Including tractates Bezah, Eruvin, Hagigah, Megillah, Mo'ed Katan, Pesahim, Rosh Hashanah, Shabbat, Shekalim, Sukkah, Ta'anit, Yoma

‡Add as instructed under 296.12–296.14

- .123 3 †Order Nashim  
Including tractates Gittin, Ketubbot, Kiddushin, Nazir, Nedarim, Sotah, Yevamot
- .123 4 †Order Nezikin  
Including tractates Avodah Zarah, Bava Batra, Bava Kamma, Bava Mezia, Eduyyot, Horayot, Makkot, Sanhedrin, Shevu'ot
- .123 47 †Tractate Avot (Pirke Avot)
- .123 5 †Order Kodashim  
Including tractates Arakhin, Bekhorot, Hullin, Keritot, Kinnim, Me'ilah, Menahot, Middot, Tamid, Temurah, Zevahim
- .123 6 †Order Tohorot  
Including tractates Kelim, Makhshirin, Mikva'ot, Nega'im, Niddah, Oholot (Ahilot), Parah, Tevul Yom, Tohorot, Ukzin, Yadayim, Zavim
- .123 7 Minor tractates
- .124 †Palestinian Talmud (Jerusalem Talmud, Talmud Yerushalmi)
- .124 1–.124 7 Individual orders and tractates  
Add to base number 296.124 the numbers following 296.123 in 296.1231–296.1237, e.g., Order Zera'im in Palestinian Talmud 296.1241
- .125 †Babylonian Talmud  
Often called simply the Talmud
- .125 1–.125 7 Individual orders and tractates  
Add to base number 296.125 the numbers following 296.123 in 296.1231–296.1237, e.g., tractate Shabbat in Babylonian Talmud 296.1252
- .126 Tosefta and Baraita
- .126 2 †Tosefta
- .126 21–.126 27 Individual orders and tractates  
Add to base number 296.1262 the numbers following 296.123 in 296.1231–296.1237, e.g., order Nezikin in Tosefta 296.12624
- .126 3 †Baraita
- .127 Specific types of Talmudic literature
- .127 4 †Halakhah
- .127 6 †Aggadah
- .14 †Midrash
- .141 †Midrashic Halakhah

†Add as instructed under 296.12–296.14

- .142 †Midrashic Aggadah
- .15 Sources of specific sects and movements
- .155 Writings of Qumran community  
 Class here comprehensive works on Dead Sea Scrolls  
*For Old Testament texts in Dead Sea Scrolls, see 221.44; for pseudepigrapha in Dead Sea Scrolls, see 229.91*  
*See also 296.815 for comprehensive works on Qumran community*
- .16 Cabalistic literature  
 Class here interdisciplinary works on cabala  
 The texts of religious cabalistic works are classed here even if the editor introduces and annotates them from an occult or Christian point of view  
 Class Jewish mystical experience in 296.712; class Jewish mystical movements in 296.8  
*For cabalistic traditions in occultism, see 135.47*
- .162 Zohar
- .18 Halakhah (Legal literature)  
 Including early rabbinical legal writings, comprehensive works on rabbinical writings to 1400  
 Class here commandments (mitzvot) treated as laws, the 613 commandments, comprehensive works on Jewish law  
 Class commandments (mitzvot) treated as ethical values in 296.36; class Jewish law relating to secular matters in 340.58  
*For Torah, see 222.1; for Talmudic Halakhah, see 296.1274; for Midrashic Halakhah, see 296.141. For early rabbinical writings to 1400 on a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., creation 296.34; for laws on a specific religious topic, see the topic, e.g., laws concerning marriage rites 296.444*
- .180 92 Biography  
 Class here Rishonim, Aharonim
- .181 Legal writings of Maimonides  
 Class here comprehensive works on writings of Maimonides  
*For philosophical writings of Maimonides, see 181.06. For writings on a specific religious topic, see the topic, e.g., the Thirteen Articles of Faith 296.3*
- .181 2 Mishneh Torah
- .182 Work of Joseph Caro  
 Class here Shulhan 'arukh

†Add as instructed under 296.12–296.14

- .185            Responsa  
                   Class responsa on a specific religious topic with the topic, e.g., responsa concerning marriage rites 296.444
- .185 4            Responsa of reform movements  
                   Add to base number 296.1854 the numbers following 296.834 in 296.8341–296.8344, e.g., Reform responsa 296.18541
- .188            Nonreligious subjects treated in halakhah
- .188 000 1–.188 000 9            Standard subdivisions
- .188 001–.188 999            Specific nonreligious subjects treated in halakhah  
                   Add to base number 296.188 notation 001–999, e.g., agriculture in halakhah 296.18863
- .19            Aggadah (Nonlegal literature)  
                   Stories, legends, parables, proverbs, anecdotes, ancient or modern, told for religious edification  
                   Class here comprehensive works on Aggadah  
                   Class Jewish folklore in 398.2089924  
                   *For Talmudic Aggadah, see 296.1276; for Midrashic Aggadah, see 296.142*  
                   *See also 296.45371 for Passover Haggadah*
- .3            Theology, ethics, views of social issues**  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for theology, ethics, social issues together; for theology alone  
                   Class here Biblical theology, the Thirteen Articles of Faith  
                   *See also 181.06 for Jewish philosophy*  
                   *See Manual at 200 vs. 100*
- .31            God and spiritual beings
- .311            God
- .311 2            Attributes and names of God
- .311 4            Relation to the world  
                   *For revelation, see 296.3115; for miracles, see 296.3116; for relation to and action in history, see 296.3117; for creation, see 296.34*
- .311 5            Revelation
- .311 55            Prophecy  
                   Class Biblical prophecy and prophecies in 221.15; class the prophetic books of the Bible in 224; class messianic prophecies in 296.336
- .311 6            Miracles

- .311 7           Relation to and action in history
- .311 72           Relationship to the Jewish people (Covenant relationship)
- .311 73           Land of Israel
- .311 74           Specific historical events  
                  Including the Holocaust
- .311 8            Theodicy  
                  Vindication of God's justice and goodness in permitting existence of  
                  evil and suffering
- .315            Angels
- .316            Devils (Demons)
- .32            Humankind  
                  Including atonement, creation of humankind, free will, repentance, salvation,  
                  sin, soul  
                  *For eschatology, see 296.33*
- .33            Eschatology  
                  Including death, resurrection, immortality
- .336            Messianism  
                  *See also 232.906 for Jewish interpretations of Jesus*
- .34            Creation  
                  *For creation of humankind, see 296.32*
- .35            Apologetics and polemics
- .36            Ethics  
                  Including Biblical precepts, conscience, ethical wills, sin  
                  Class here general works on commandments (mitzvot) treated as ethical  
                  values  
                  Add to base number 296.36 the numbers following 17 in 172–179, e.g.,  
                  morality of family relationships 296.363  
                  Class works on commandments (mitzvot) treated as laws in 296.18; class  
                  guides to conduct of life in 296.7  
                  *See also 296.12347 for talmudic tractate Avot (Pirke Avot)*

- .37           Judaism and secular disciplines
- Class here attitudes of Judaism toward and influence on secular issues, religious views and teachings about secular disciplines, works treating relation between Jewish belief and a secular discipline
- Class Jewish philosophy of a secular discipline and Jewish theories within a secular discipline with the discipline, e.g., Jewish philosophy 181.06
- For Judaism and social issues, see 296.38*
- See also 296.12–296.14 for nonreligious subjects treated in Talmudic literature and Midrash; also 296.188 for nonreligious subjects treated in halakhah*
- .371           Judaism and philosophy, parapsychology and occultism, psychology
- .375           Judaism and natural sciences, mathematics
- .376           Judaism and technology
- Including Judaism and medicine
- .377           Judaism and the arts
- .38            Judaism and social sciences
- Attitudes of Judaism toward and influence on social issues
- Including Judaism and environment
- Class here Judaism and socioeconomic problems, Jewish social theology
- Class Judaism and ecology in 296.38; class Jewish view of marriage and family in 296.74
- .382           Judaism and politics
- Attitude toward and influence on political activities and ideologies
- Class here Judaism and civil rights
- See Manual at 322.1 vs. 201.72, 261.7, 292–299*
- .382 7        International affairs, war and peace
- Including attitude of Judaism toward civil and revolutionary wars, conscientious objectors, pacifism
- .383           Judaism and economics
- Class Judaism and environment in 296.38
- .39            Judaism and other systems of belief
- Including Judaism and atheism, Judaism and irreligion
- .396           Judaism and Christianity
- .397           Judaism and Islam
- .4            Traditions, rites, public services**
- Class individual observances not provided for here in 296.7

## SUMMARY

- 296.41 Sabbath  
 .43 Festivals, holy days, fasts  
 .44 Rites and customs for occasions that occur generally once in a lifetime  
 .45 Liturgy and prayers  
 .46 Use of the arts and symbolism  
 .47 Sermons and preaching (Homiletics)  
 .48 Pilgrimages and sacred places  
 .49 Traditions, rites, public services of ancient Judaism to 70 A.D.

## .41 Sabbath

Class liturgy and prayers for Sabbath in 296.45

## .412 Prohibited activity

> 296.43–296.44 Festivals, holy days, fasts; rites and customs for occasions that occur generally once in a lifetime

Class here personal ritual observances to be performed at specific times or in conjunction with specific rites

Class comprehensive works in 296.43

*For specific rites of ancient Judaism to 70 A.D. not provided for elsewhere, see 296.49*

## .43 Festivals, holy days, fasts

*For liturgy and prayers for festivals, holy days, fasts, see 296.453; for Sabbath, see 296.41*

*See Manual at 203.6, 263.9, 292–299 vs. 394.265–394.267*

## .431 High Holy Days

*For Yom Kippur (Day of Atonement), see 296.432*

## .431 5 Rosh Hashanah (New Year)

## .432 Yom Kippur (Day of Atonement)

## .433 Sukkot (Feast of Tabernacles)

## .433 9 Simḥat Torah

## .435 Hanukkah (Feast of the Dedication)

## .436 Purim (Feast of Lots)

## .437 Pesach (Passover)

## .438 Shavuot (Feast of Weeks, Pentecost)

## .439 Other festivals, holy days, fasts

Including Lag b'Omer, Tishah b'Av

## .439 1 Festivals, holy days, fasts associated with the land of Israel

Including Sabbatical Year (shemittah)

- .44 Rites and customs for occasions that occur generally once in a lifetime  
*See also 296.7 for rites and customs which continue throughout life*  
*For liturgy and prayers for occasions that occur generally once in a lifetime, see 296.454*
- .442 Special rites for male Jews
- .442 2 Berit milah (Circumcision)
- .442 3 Pidyon haben (Redemption of first-born male)
- .442 4 Bar mitzvah
- .443 Special rites for female Jews  
 Including naming ceremonies  
*For observance of laws of family purity, see 296.742*
- .443 4 Bat mitzvah
- .444 Marriage and divorce rites and traditions  
 Standard subdivisions are added for marriage and divorce rites and traditions together, for marriage rites alone, for marriage traditions alone  
 Including issues concerning who may be married, descent of Jewish identity  
*For guides to marriage and family life, see 296.74*
- .444 3 Interreligious marriage
- .444 4 Divorce rites and traditions  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .445 Burial and mourning rites and traditions  
 Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading  
 Including memorial services
- .446 Synagogue dedication
- .45 Liturgy and prayers  
 Description, interpretation, conduct, texts of rites and public services; private and public prayers, blessings, benedictions  
 Including prayer at meals  
 Class here Ashkenazic liturgy; worship; liturgy and prayers for Sabbath; prayer books, e.g., siddurim  
 Class devotional reading for the individual in 296.72
- .450 4 Liturgy of specific groups  
 Including Ari liturgy  
 Class Ashkenazic liturgy or liturgy of unspecified group in 296.45

- [.450 401–.450 409]            Standard subdivisions
- Do not use; class in 296.4501–296.4509
- .450 42                    Sephardic liturgy
- .450 44                    Hasidic liturgy
- .450 46                    Reform liturgy
- .450 47                    Conservative liturgy
- .450 48                    Reconstructionist liturgy
- .452                      Piyyutim
- 
- >                      296.453–296.454 Liturgy and prayers for festivals, holy days, fasts; for occasions that occur generally once in a lifetime
- Add to each subdivision identified by \* the numbers following 296.45 in 296.45042–296.45048, e.g., Passover Haggadah of the Sephardic rite 296.45371042
- Class comprehensive works in 296.45
- .453                      \*Liturgy and prayers for festivals, holy days, fasts
- Class here Mahzorim
- .453 1–.453 6            Liturgy and prayers for High Holy Days, Sukkot, Hanukkah, Purim
- Add to base number 296.453 the numbers following 296.43 in 296.431–296.436, e.g., liturgy and prayers for High Holy Days 296.4531; then add further as instructed under 296.453–296.454, e.g., Reform prayer books for High Holy Days 296.4531046
- .453 7                      \*Liturgy and prayers for Pesach (Passover)
- .453 71                    \*Passover Haggadah (Seder service)
- .453 8–.453 9            Liturgy and prayers for Shavuot, other festivals, holy days, fasts
- Add to base number 296.453 the numbers following 296.43 in 296.438–296.439, e.g., prayers for Shavuot 296.4538; then add further as instructed under 296.453–296.454, e.g., prayers for Shavuot of the Sephardic rite 296.4538042
- .454                      Liturgy and prayers for occasions that occur generally once in a lifetime
- Add to base number 296.454 the numbers following 296.44 in 296.442–296.446, e.g., liturgy and prayers for weddings 296.4544; then add further as instructed under 296.453–296.454, e.g., Reform prayer books for weddings 296.4544046
- .46                      Use of the arts and symbolism
- Including synagogue buildings

\*Add as instructed under 296.453–296.454

- .461 Liturgical articles  
Including mezuzot, prayer shawls
- .461 2 Phylacteries (Tefillin)
- .461 5 Torah scrolls  
Class here scribes (soferim)
- .462 Music  
Class here cantors  
Class works containing both text and music, interdisciplinary works on Jewish liturgical music in 782.36
- .47 Sermons and preaching (Homiletics)  
Add to base number 296.47 the numbers following 296.4 in 296.41–296.44, e.g., High Holy Day sermons 296.4731  
Class sermons on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., sermons on social issues 296.38
- .48 Pilgrimages and sacred places  
[.480 93–.480 99] Specific continents, countries, localities  
Do not use; class in 296.482–296.489
- .481 Pilgrimages  
Class pilgrimages to specific sacred places in 296.482–296.489
- .482 Jerusalem
- .483–.489 Sacred places in specific continents, countries, localities  
Add to base number 296.48 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., sacred places in Iraq 296.48567; however, for Jerusalem, see 296.482  
Class the Land of Israel as a theme in Jewish theology in 296.31173
- .49 Traditions, rites, public services of ancient Judaism to 70 A.D.  
Not provided for elsewhere
- .491 The Temple
- .492 Sacrifices and offerings
- .493 Ark of the Covenant
- .495 Ancient priesthood
- .6 Leaders, organization, religious education, outreach activity**

.61 Leaders and their work

Role, function, duties

Class here ordination, work of rabbis; activities of leaders and other congregational workers designed to promote religious and social welfare of social groups in community, pastoral care; chaplaincy

*For ancient priesthood, see 296.495*

*See also 296.4615 for scribes; also 296.462 for cantors*

[.610 92] Biography

Do not use for biography of religious leaders primarily associated with a specific religious activity; class in 296.1–296.7 e.g., a theologian 296.3092. Do not use for biography of religious leaders primarily associated with a specific denomination or movement; class in 296.8 e.g., a Reform rabbi 296.8341092. Do not use for biography of other religious leaders; class in 296.092

.65 Synagogues and congregations

Role and function

*See also 296.46 for synagogue buildings*

.650 9 History, geographic treatment, biography

Class history of specific synagogues in 296.09

.67 Organizations and organization

Theory and history of organizations other than synagogues and congregations

Including religious authority, excommunication, schism; sanhedrin

Class laws and decisions in 296.18. Class organizations sponsored by one denomination with the denomination in 296.8, e.g., Union of Orthodox Congregations of America 296.83206073

*For synagogues and congregations, see 296.65*

*See also 369.3924 for Jewish service and fraternal associations, e.g., B'nai B'rith*

.68 Religious education

Class Judaism as an academic subject in 296.071

*For religious education at the level of higher education, see 296.0711*

*See Manual at 207.5, 268 vs. 200.71, 230.071, 292–299*

.680 83 Young people

Class here afternoon weekday schools, Hebrew schools, Jewish religious schools, Sunday schools; religious education in Jewish day schools

Class comprehensive works on Jewish day schools in 371.076

.69 Outreach activity for the benefit of converts and nonobservant Jews

- .7 Religious experience, life, practice**  
 Standard subdivisions are added for religious experience, life, practice together;  
 for religious life and practice together  
 Practices which continue throughout life  
 Including asceticism  
 Class here guides to religious life, spirituality  
*For ethics, see 296.36; for traditions, rites, public services, see 296.4*
- [.708 5] Relatives  
 Do not use; class in 296.74
- .708 6 People by miscellaneous social attributes
- [.708 655] Married people  
 Do not use; class in 296.74
- .71 Religious experience
- .712 Mysticism  
 Class cabalistic literature in 296.16; class Jewish mystical movements in  
 296.8
- .714 Conversion  
 Class here conversion of non-Jews to Judaism  
 Class outreach activity for the benefit of converts and nonobservant Jews  
 in 296.69. Class conversion of Jews to another religion with the religion,  
 e.g., conversion of Jews to Christianity 248.246
- .715 Return of Jews from non-observance to religious observance
- .72 Devotional reading for the individual  
 Including meditation and meditations  
 Class devotional literature in the form of Aggadah in 296.19
- .73 Kosher observance (Kashrut observance)  
 Observance of dietary laws  
 Including ritual slaughter (shehitah)
- .74 Marriage and family life  
 Including Jewish child rearing  
 Class here social theology of marriage and family, comprehensive works on  
 marriage  
*For ethics of marriage, see 296.363; for marriage and divorce rites and  
 traditions, see 296.444*
- .742 Observance of laws of family purity  
*For ritual bath (mikveh), see 296.75*

- .75 Ritual bath (Mikveh)
- .76 People experiencing illness, trouble, bereavement
- .8 Denominations and movements**
- Class specific aspects of denominations and movements in 296.1–296.7
- .81 Denominations and movements of ancient origin
- Including Hellenistic movement, Karaites, Zealots
- .812 Pharisees
- .813 Sadducees
- .814 Essenes
- For Qumran community, see 296.815*
- .815 Qumran community
- See also 296.155 for writings of Qumran community*
- .817 Samaritans
- .82 Medieval and early modern denominations and movements to ca. 1750
- Including Sabbatianism
- .83 Modern denominations and movements after ca. 1750
- .832 Orthodox Judaism
- .833 Mystical Judaism
- .833 2 Hasidism
- .833 22 Habad Lubavitch Hasidism
- .834 Reform movements
- Including Humanistic Judaism
- .834 1 Reform Judaism
- .834 2 Conservative Judaism
- .834 4 Reconstructionist Judaism

## 297 Islam, Babism, Bahai Faith

Standard subdivisions are added for Islam, Babism, Bahai Faith together; for Islam alone

*See Manual at 200.92 and 201–209, 292–299; also at 201–209 and 292–299; also at 203.6, 263.9, 292–299 vs. 394.265–394.267; also at 322.1 vs. 201.72, 261.7, 292–299; also at 398.2 vs. 201.3, 230, 270, 292–299; also at 615.852 vs. 203.1, 234.131, 292–299; also at 616.86 vs. 158.1, 204.42, 248.8629, 292–299, 362.29*

## SUMMARY

- 297.01–.09      **Standard subdivisions**
- .1      **Sources of Islam**
- .2      **Islamic doctrinal theology ('Aqā'id and Kalām); Islam and secular disciplines; Islam and other systems of belief**
- .3      **Islamic worship**
- .4      **Sufism (Islamic mysticism)**
- .5      **Islamic ethics and religious experience, life, practice**
- .6      **Islamic leaders and organization**
- .7      **Protection and propagation of Islam**
- .8      **Islamic sects and reform movements**
- .9      **Babism and Bahai Faith**
- [.06]      **Organizations and management**
- Do not use; class in 297.6
- .07      **Education, research, related topics**
- .071      **Education**
- Class here Islamic religion as an academic subject
- Class comprehensive works on Islamic religious education, religious education to inculcate religious faith and practice in 297.77
- See Manual at 207.5, 268 vs. 200.71, 230.071, 292–299*
- .09      **History, geographic treatment, biography**
- Notation 09 from Table 1 as modified below
- Class here religious aspects of Islamic fundamentalism
- Class prophets prior to Muḥammad in 297.246; class political science aspects of Islam, of Islamic fundamentalism in 320
- For religious aspects of Islamic fundamentalism in a specific sect or reform movement, see 297.8*
- See also 909.09767 for Islamic civilization*
- See Manual at 320.557 vs. 297.09, 297.272, 322.1*
- .090 2      610–1499
- .090 21      610–1204
- Use of this notation for 500–609 discontinued because without meaning in context 201104
- .090 211      **Period of Revelation, 610–632**
- From first revelation to Muḥammad the Prophet until his death
- Class biography of and comprehensive works on Muḥammad the Prophet in 297.63; class biography of and comprehensive works on his family and Companions in 297.64; class Hijrah (emigration from Mecca to Medina, 622) in relation to Muḥammad the Prophet and his family and Companions in 297.634; class Hijrah in general history in 953.802

- .090 212                   Period of Four Rightly-Guided Caliphs, 632–661  
                                   Class here 7th century, Rashidun Caliphate  
                                   Class religious biography and theological discussion of the first four caliphs in 297.648. Class interdisciplinary biographies of the first four caliphs with the subject in 950, e.g., Abu Bakr 953.02092  
                                   *For 661–699, see 297.090213*
- .090 213                   Period of Naissance, 661–718
- .090 214                   Period of Recording and Emergence of Islamic Schools of Thought, 718–912
- .090 215                   Period of Comprehensive Works, 912–1204
- .090 22                    1204–1499  
                                   Including 14th century, 1300–1399 [*formerly* 297.09023]; 15th century, 1400–1499 [*formerly* 297.09024]  
                                   Class here period of Explanations and Briefs, 1204–1495
- [.090 23]                 14th century, 1300–1399  
                                   Relocated to 297.09022
- [.090 24]                 15th century, 1400–1499  
                                   Relocated to 297.09022
- .090 3–.090 5           16th–21st centuries  
                                   Add to base number 297.090 the numbers following —090 in notation 0903–0905 from Table 1, e.g., Islam in 20th century 297.0904
- .092                    Biography  
                                   Class interdisciplinary works on caliphs as civil and religious heads of state with the subject in 940–990, e.g., Abu Bakr 953.02092  
                                   *For Muslims primarily associated with a specific religious activity, see 297.1–297.7; for founders of Sufi orders, see 297.48; for Muḥammad the Prophet, see 297.63; for Muḥammad’s family and companions (including religious biography of the first four caliphs), see 297.64; for Muslims primarily associated with a specific sect or reform movement, see 297.8*  
                                   *See Manual at 297.092*

&gt;

---

**297.1–297.8 Islam**Class comprehensive works in 297

---

&gt;

**297.1–297.3 Sources of Islam; Islamic doctrinal theology (‘Aqā’id and Kalām); Islam and secular disciplines; Islam and other systems of belief; Islamic worship**

Class comprehensive works in 297

**.1 Sources of Islam****SUMMARY**

- 297.12 Koran and Hadith**  
**.14 Religious and ceremonial laws and decisions**  
**.18 Stories, legends, parables, proverbs, anecdotes told for religious edification**

**.12 Koran and Hadith**

Class theology based on Koran and Hadith in 297.2

**.122 Koran****.122 03 Topical dictionaries and encyclopedias**

Do not use for concordances or non-topical dictionaries; class in 297.1224–297.1225

**.122 09 History, geographic treatment, biography**

Class here geography, history, chronology of the Middle East in Koran times in relation to the Koran

Class origin of Koran, commentary about historical occasions on which passages of Koran were revealed in 297.1221; class compilation and recording of Koran in 297.1224042; class comprehensive works on geography, history, chronology of the Middle East in Koran times in 939.4

**.122 092 Biography**

*For Muḥammad, see 297.63; for Muḥammad's family and companions, see 297.64; for prophets prior to Muḥammad, see 297.246*

**.122 1 Origin and authenticity**

Including inspiration, revelation, commentary about historic occasions on which passages were revealed; Koranic prophecy and prophecies

Class compilation and recording of Koran in 297.1224042

**.122 2 Koran stories retold**

Including picture books

**> 297.122 4–297.122 5 Texts**

Class comprehensive works in 297.122

*For texts accompanied by commentaries, see 297.1227*

**.122 4 Arabic texts**

Class here textual criticism

Class Arabic texts accompanied by translations in 297.1225

**.122 404 Special topics of Arabic texts****.122 404 2 Compilation and recording of Koran**

- .122 404 5                      Recitation and readings
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Class here art of melodic reading, tajwīd (adornment of recitation); qirā'āt (science of the readings, which treats various renditions of the text according to different oral traditions)
- .122 5                              Translations
- Class here Arabic texts accompanied by translations
- Add to base number 297.1225 notation 1–9 from Table 6, e.g., the Koran in English 297.122521
- .122 6                              Interpretation and criticism (Exegesis)
- Class art of recitation in 297.1224045
- For textual criticism, see 297.1224; for commentaries, see 297.1227*
- .122 601                            Philosophy and theory
- Class here hermeneutics, principles and methods of Koranic exegesis
- .122 61                             General introductions to the Koran
- Including general introductions to the sciences necessary to study the Koran
- .122 67                             Historical criticism
- .122 68                             Allegorical and numerical interpretations
- .122 7                                Commentaries
- Criticism and interpretation arranged in textual order
- Class here texts accompanied by commentaries
- .122 8                                Nonreligious subjects treated in the Koran
- Class a religious subject treated in the Koran with the subject, e.g., Islamic ethics 297.5
- .122 800 01–.122 800 09        Standard subdivisions
- .122 800 1–.122 899 9         Specific nonreligious subjects treated in the Koran
- Add to base number 297.1228 notation 001–999, e.g., natural sciences in the Koran 297.12285
- .122 9                                Individual suras and groups of suras
- Origins, authenticity; geography, history, chronology of Koran lands in Koran times; texts; criticism, interpretation; commentaries; nonreligious subjects treated in the suras
- [.124]                                Hadith (Traditions)
- Relocated to 297.125

- .125 Hadith (Traditions) [formerly 297.124]  
 .125 012 Classification  
 Do not use for muṣṭalaḥ al-Ḥadīth; class in 297.1252
- .125 09 History, geographic treatment, biography  
 Notation 09 from Table 1 as modified under 297.09
- .125 1 General topics of Hadith  
 Class texts of Hadith, works about specific Hadith and compilations of Hadith in 297.1254–297.1259
- [.125 101–.125 109] Standard subdivisions  
 Do not use; class in 297.12501–297.12509
- .125 12 Hadith stories retold  
 Including picture books
- .125 16 Interpretation  
 Class here riwayat (study of text of Hadith)
- .125 160 1 Philosophy and theory  
 Class here hermeneutics, principles and methods of interpretation of Hadith
- .125 161 General introductions to Hadith  
 Class here sciences of Hadith  
*For dirāyah (science of authenticity of Hadith), see 297.1252*
- .125 162 Asbāb wurūd al-Ḥadīth (Causes and circumstances of Hadith)
- .125 163 Al-Nāsikh wa-al-mansūkh (Abrogation of Hadith)
- .125 18 Nonreligious subjects treated in Hadith  
 Class a religious subject treated in Hadith with the subject, e.g., Islamic ethics 297.5
- .125 180 001–.125 180 009 Standard subdivisions
- .125 180 01–.125 189 99 Specific nonreligious subjects treated in Hadith  
 Add to base number 297.12518 the notation 001–999, e.g., natural sciences in Hadith 297.125185

- .125 2                   Dirāyah (Science of authenticity of Hadith)
- Class here muṣṭalaḥ al-Ḥadīth (classification of Hadith)
- Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 297.1252 in the number coming last, e.g., Hadith that are ṣaḥīḥ (authentic) and mutawātir (have a large number of transmitters) 297.12523 (*not* 297.12521)
- Class texts of Hadith in 297.1254–297.1259. Class authenticity of specific Hadith with the Hadith in 297.1254–297.1259, plus notation 01 from add table under 297.1254–297.1259, e.g., weak Hadith of Ibn Mājah, Muḥammad ibn Yazīd 297.1255201
- .125 21                   Al-ṣaḥīḥ (Authentic Hadith) and al-ḥasan (Good Hadith)
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Including al-marfū' (narration attributed to the Prophet specifically), al-mawqūf (narration attributed to a Companion of the Prophet), al-maqtū' (narration attributed to the tabi'ī, the Successors of the Companions)
- Class here al-muttaṣil (Hadith with uninterrupted chain of transmission back to Prophet)
- .125 22                   Al-da'īf (Weak Hadith)
- Including al-mu'allaq (discontinuity in the beginning of transmission chain), al-mu'dal (two or more consecutive transmitters are dropped), al-munqati' (chain of transmission is disconnected at any point), and al-shadh (reported by trustworthy transmitter but contradicts report of more trustworthy transmitter)
- .125 222                   Al-mursal (Hadith in which transmitter between Successor and Prophet is omitted from a given chain of transmission)
- .125 225                   Al-mawḍu' (Fabricated Hadith)
- .125 23                   Al-mutawātir (Hadith with large number of transmitters at all stages of transmission)
- .125 24                   Al-āḥād (Hadith with one or a few transmitters)
- Including al-mashhūr (Hadith with more than two transmitters), al-'azīz (Hadith with only two transmitters), al-gharīb (Hadith with only one transmitter)
- .125 26                   Al-jarḥ wa al-ta'dīl (Principles of disparagement and crediting of transmitters of Hadith)
- .125 261                   Ṭabaqāt al-ruwāh (Rankings of transmitters)
- .125 262                   Al-thiqāt (Trustworthy transmitters)
- .125 263                   Al-ḍu'afā' (Untrustworthy transmitters)
- .125 264                   Asmā' al-ruwāh (Names of transmitters)
- Including al-muttafiq wa al-muftariq (same name, different identity)

.125 264 2

Al-Mu'talif wa-al-mukhtalif (Different names, written similarly but pronounced differently)

&gt; 297.125 4–297.125 9 Texts of Hadith

Class here texts of specific Hadith and compilations of Hadith, works about specific Hadith and compilations of Hadith

Add to each subdivision identified by \* as follows:

001–009 Standard subdivisions

01–08 Generalities

Add to 0 the numbers following 297.122 in 297.1221–297.1228; e.g., authenticity 01, interpretation 06

Class comprehensive works in 297.125

&gt; 297.125 4–297.125 8 Texts of Hadith of Sunnites

Class comprehensive works in 297.125

.125 4 \*Jawāmi' (Comprehensive compilations), ṣiḥāḥ (Authentic compilations), mustadrākāt

Subdivisions are added for jawāmi', ṣiḥāḥ, mustadrākāt together, for jawāmi' alone, for ṣiḥāḥ alone

.125 41 \*Al-Bukhārī, Muḥammad ibn Ismā'īl

.125 42 \*Muslim ibn al-Ḥajjāj al-Qushayrī

.125 43 \*Al-Tirmidhī, Muḥammad ibn 'Īsā

.125 45 Mustadrākāt (Compilations of Hadith meeting the conditions of other compilers but not found in their books)

.125 5 \*Sunan (Compilations according to Islamic law hierarchy), musannafat, muwaṭṭa'āt

Subdivisions are added for sunan, musannafat, muwaṭṭa'āt together, for sunan alone

.125 51 \*Abū Dā'ūd Sulaymān ibn al-Ash'ath al-Sijistānī

.125 52 \*Ibn Mājah, Muḥammad ibn Yazīd

.125 53 \*Al-Nasā'ī, Aḥmad ibn Shu'ayb

.125 54 \*Al-Dārimī, 'Abd Allāh ibn 'Abd al-Raḥmān

.125 56 \*Musannafat (Compilations according to topics)

Including muṣannaf of Ibn Abī Shaybah, 'Abd Allāh ibn Muḥammad and muṣannaf of 'Abd al-Razzāq ibn Hammām al-Ḥimyari

.125 58 \*Muwaṭṭa'āt (The well-trodden path of Hadith)

Class here Muwaṭṭa' of Mālik ibn Anas

\*Add as instructed under 297.1254–297.1259

- .125 6 Masānīd, aṭrāf, ma‘ājim, zawā‘id
- .125 61 \*Masānīd (Compilations arranged by first transmitter in the chain of transmission)
- .125 612 \*Ibn Ḥanbal, Aḥmad ibn Muḥammad
- .125 613 \*Al-Mawṣilī, Abū Ya‘lá Aḥmad ibn ‘Alī
- .125 62 \*Aṭrāf (Compilations of the beginnings, or the most well known words of a specific Hadith)  
Class here Mizzi, Yūsuf ibn al-Zakī ‘Abd al-Raḥmān
- .125 63 \*Ma‘ājim (Compilations arranged alphabetically according to names of the compilers’ sheikhs)  
Class here al-Ṭabarānī, Sulaymān ibn Aḥmad
- .125 64 \*Zawā‘id (Compilations of Hadith found in one compilation but not another)  
Class here Haythamī, Nūr al-Dīn ‘Alī ibn Abī Bakr
- .125 7 \*Mustakhrajāt (Compilations containing Hadith of other compilers with different chains of transmission) and takhrījāt (Compilations that define the degree of verification of another compilation)  
Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
Class mustakhrajāt and takhrījāt of a specific work with the work, e.g., takhrījāt of ma‘ājim of al-Ṭabarānī, Sulaymān ibn Aḥmad 297.12563
- .125 8 \*Al-Aḥādīth al-Qudusīyah (Sacred Hadith)  
Sayings of the Prophet Muḥammad divinely communicated to him
- .125 9 Texts of Hadith of sects other than Sunnites
- .125 92 Hadith of Shiites
- .125 921 \*Twelvers (Ithna Asharites)
- .125 921 1 \*Kulaynī, Muḥammad ibn Ya‘qūb
- .125 921 2 \*Ibn Bābawayh al-Qummī, Muḥammad ibn ‘Alī
- .125 921 3 \*Ṭūsī, Muḥammad ibn al-Ḥasan (Abū Ja‘far)
- .125 922 \*Seveners (Ismailites)
- .125 924 \*Zaydites
- .125 93 Hadith of other sects
- .125 933 \*Ibadites

\*Add as instructed under 297.1254–297.1259

- .14 Religious and ceremonial laws and decisions  
 Class here fiqh in relation to religious and ceremonial laws and decisions, sharia in relation to religious and ceremonial laws and decisions  
 Class Islamic law relating to secular matters, interdisciplinary works on Islamic law in 340.59. Class religious law on a specific topic with the topic, e.g., religious law concerning ḥajj 297.352
- .18 Stories, legends, parables, proverbs, anecdotes told for religious edification

Class here comprehensive works on Islamic legends

Class Islamic folklore in 398.2088297

*For Islamic legends on a specific topic, see the topic, e.g., Islamic legends about pre-Islamic prophets 297.246*

**.2 Islamic doctrinal theology ('Aqā'id and Kalām); Islam and secular disciplines; Islam and other systems of belief**

Standard subdivisions are added for Islamic doctrinal theology, Islam and secular disciplines, Islam and other systems of belief together; for Islamic doctrinal theology alone

Class Islamic ethics in 297.5; class doctrines concerning Muḥammad the Prophet in 297.63

**SUMMARY**

- |         |                                   |
|---------|-----------------------------------|
| 297.204 | Doctrines of specific sects       |
| .21     | God and spiritual beings          |
| .22     | Humankind                         |
| .23     | Eschatology                       |
| .24     | Other doctrines                   |
| .26     | Islam and secular disciplines     |
| .27     | Islam and social sciences         |
| .28     | Islam and other systems of belief |
| .29     | Apologetics and polemics          |

.204 Doctrines of specific sects

Add to base number 297.204 the numbers following 297.8 in 297.81–297.87, e.g., doctrines of Shiites 297.2042

> 297.21–297.24 Specific topics in Islamic doctrinal theology ('Aqā'id and Kalām)

Class comprehensive works in 297.2

*For doctrines of specific sects, see 297.204; for apologetics and polemics, see 297.29; for shahāda (profession of faith), see 297.34*

- .21 God and spiritual beings
- .211 God

- .211 2            Attributes and names of God  
                   Class vindication of God's justice and goodness in permitting  
                   existence of evil and suffering in 297.2118  
                   *For tawhid (unity of God), see 297.2113*
- .211 3            Tawhid (Unity of God)
- .211 4            Relation to the world  
                   Including relation to and action in history  
                   *For revelation, see 297.2115; for creation, see 297.242*
- .211 5            Revelation  
                   Including prophecy  
                   Class Koranic prophecy in 297.1221; class prophets and prophethood  
                   in 297.246
- .211 8            Theodicy  
                   Vindication of God's justice and goodness in permitting existence of  
                   evil and suffering
- .215            Angels
- .216            Devils
- .217            Jinn
- .22            Humankind  
                   Including faith, repentance  
                   *For eschatology, see 297.23*
- .221            Creation  
                   Class comprehensive works on creation in 297.242
- .225            Nature  
                   Including soul  
                   Class free will and predestination in 297.227
- .227            Free will and predestination  
                   Class here freedom of choice between good and evil
- .23            Eschatology  
                   Including day of judgment, death, eternity, future life, heaven, hell,  
                   punishment, resurrection, rewards  
                   Class doctrines of Hidden Imam, of Mahdi in 297.24
- .24            Other doctrines  
                   Including doctrines of Hidden Imam, of Mahdi

- .242           Creation  
                   Including origin of life  
                   Class here Islamic cosmology  
                   *For creation of humankind, see 297.221*
- .246           Prophets prior to Muḥammad  
                   Including Adam, Moses  
                   Class here comprehensive works on prophets and prophethood in Islam  
                   *For Muḥammad the Prophet, see 297.63*
- .246 3           Abraham
- .246 5           Jesus, son of Mary
- .26           Islam and secular disciplines  
                   Class here attitudes of Islam toward and influence on secular issues, Islamic views and teachings about secular disciplines  
                   Class relation of a specific Islamic doctrine and a secular discipline with the doctrine in 297.2, e.g., relation of Islamic doctrine about creation and scientific theories about creation 297.242; class work influenced by Islam and Islamic theories within a secular discipline with the discipline, e.g., Islamic philosophy 181.07, architecture in the Islamic world 720.91767  
                   *For Islam and social sciences, see 297.27*  
                   *See also 297.1228 for nonreligious subjects treated in Koran; also 297.12518 for nonreligious subjects treated in Hadith*  
                   *See Manual at 297.26–297.27*
- .261           Islam and philosophy, parapsychology and occultism, psychology
- .265           Islam and natural sciences, mathematics
- .266           Islam and technology
- .267           Islam and the arts
- .27           Islam and social sciences  
                   Attitudes of Islam toward and influence on social issues  
                   Including environment, war and peace  
                   Class here Islam and socioeconomic problems, Islamic social theology  
                   Class Islamic view of marriage and family in 297.577  
                   *See Manual at 297.26–297.27*

- .272        Islam and politics  
               Including civil rights, international affairs, nationalism  
               Class political science view of religiously oriented political theories and ideologies in 320.55; class political science view of relation of state to religious organizations and groups in 322.1; class political science view of religious political parties in 324.2182  
               *See Manual at 320.557 vs. 297.09, 297.272, 322.1*
- .273        Islam and economics  
               Including Islam and communism  
               *See also 297.289 for Islam and atheism*
- .28         Islam and other systems of belief  
               Attitudes toward and relations with other systems of belief  
               Class apologetics and polemics in 297.29
- .282        Islam and Judaism  
               Class Biblical figures as prophets prior to Muḥammad in 297.246
- .283        Islam and Christianity  
               Class Biblical figures as prophets prior to Muḥammad in 297.246
- .284        Islam and religions of Indic origin  
               Add to base number 297.284 the numbers following 294 in 294.3–294.6, e.g., Islam and Hinduism 297.2845
- .289        Islam and irreligion  
               Including Islam and atheism
- .29         Apologetics and polemics
- .292        Polemics against Judaism
- .293        Polemics against Christianity
- .294        Polemics against religions of Indic origin
- .298        Polemics against scientists and materialists
- .3         Islamic worship**  
               Including use of arts and symbolism in worship  
               Class here comprehensive works on Islamic worship, on non-Sufi worship, on Islamic private worship, on non-Sufi private worship, public worship  
               Class Pillars of Islam (Pillars of the Faith) in 297.31. Class applications of the arts and symbolism in worship of specific sects with the sect in 297.301–297.307, e.g., use of arts and symbolism in Sunni worship 297.301; class applications of the arts and symbolism in specific aspects of worship with the aspect in 297.31–297.38, e.g., use of arts and symbolism in mosques 297.351  
               *For Sufi worship, see 297.43*

- .300 1--300 9      Standard subdivisions
- .301--307      Specific sects  
                   Add to base number 297.30 the numbers following 297.8 in  
                   297.81–297.87, e.g., Shiite rites 297.302
- .31              Pillars of Islam (Pillars of the Faith)  
                   Comprehensive works only  
                   *For shahāda (profession of faith), see 297.34; for ḥajj (pilgrimage to  
                   Mecca), see 297.352; for ṣawm Ramaḍān (annual fast of Ramadan), see  
                   297.362; for ṣalāt (prayer five times daily), see 297.3822; for zakat, see  
                   297.54*  
                   *See also 297.72 for jīhad*
- .34              Shahāda (Profession of faith)
- .35              Sacred places and pilgrimages  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for sacred places and pilgrimages together,  
                   for sacred places alone  
                   Including non-Sufi pilgrimages, comprehensive works on Islamic  
                   pilgrimages  
                   Class here rites and ceremonies associated with sacred places and  
                   pilgrimages  
                   Class pilgrimages to specific places in 297.352–297.359  
                   *For Sufi pilgrimages, see 297.435*
- [.350 93--350 99]      Specific continents, countries, localities  
                   Do not use; class in 297.353–297.359
- .351              Mosques  
                   Class here interdisciplinary works  
                   *For organizational role and function of mosques, see 297.65; for  
                   architecture of mosques, see 726.2*
- [.351 093--351 099]      Specific continents, countries, localities  
                   Do not use; class in 297.352–297.359
- .352              Mecca  
                   Class here ḥajj (pilgrimage to Mecca)
- .353--359      Specific continents, countries, localities  
                   Add to base number 297.35 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., Medina  
                   297.35538, Jerusalem 297.35569442; however, for Mecca, see 297.352

- .36           Special days and seasons  
               Including Jum‘ah (Friday prayer); ‘Āshūrā’ (Tenth of Muḥarram); Mawlid al-Nabī (Prophet’s birthday); ‘Īd al-Aḏḥā, ‘Īd al-Fiṭr  
               Class here rites and ceremonies associated with special days and seasons, Islamic religious calendar  
               *See also 297.37 for sermons for special days and seasons*
- .362           Ṣawm Ramaḏān (Annual fast of Ramadan)  
               Including Laylat al-Qadr  
               Class comprehensive works on fasting in 297.53
- .37           Sermons and preaching  
               Class sermons on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., sermons on day of judgment 297.23
- .38           Rites, ceremonies, prayer, meditation  
               Conduct and texts  
               Including ablutions  
               Class ablutions associated with prayer and meditations in 297.382; class ablutions associated with burial and mourning in 297.385; class rites and ceremonies associated with sacred places and pilgrimages in 297.35; class rites and ceremonies associated with special days and seasons in 297.36  
               *See also 297.37 for sermons and preaching*
- .382           Prayer and meditation  
               Standard subdivisions are added for prayer and meditation together, for prayer alone  
               Including dhikr (remembrance), qiblah (direction of prayer)  
               Class here practical works on prayer and meditation  
               Class prayer and meditation associated with sacred places and pilgrimages in 297.35; class prayer and meditation associated with special days and seasons in 297.36. Class prayer and meditation associated with specific rites and ceremonies with the rites and ceremonies, e.g., funerals in 297.385; class prayers and meditations on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., unity of God 297.2113
- .382 2           Ṣalāt (Prayer five times daily)  
               *For texts of prayers, see 297.3824*
- .382 4           Texts of prayers and meditations  
               Class here prayer books
- .385           Burial and mourning rites

- .39 Popular practices  
 Including controversial practices, e.g., divination and occultism  
 Class occult practices not regarded as Islamic practices in 130; class Islamic views of occultism regarded as a secular topic in 297.261; class sociological studies of Islamic popular practices in 306.69739. Class popular practices associated with a topic provided elsewhere with the topic, e.g., popular practices associated with burial and mourning 297.385
- .4 Sufism (Islamic mysticism)**
- .41 Sufi doctrinal theology; Sufism and secular disciplines; Sufism and non-Islamic systems of belief  
 Standard subdivisions are added for Sufi doctrinal theology, Sufism and secular disciplines, Sufism and non-Islamic systems of belief together; for Sufi doctrinal theology alone  
 Add to base number 297.41 the numbers following 297.2 in 297.21–297.29, e.g., Sufi concept of God 297.4111  
 Class Sufi doctrines concerning Muḥammad the Prophet in 297.4; class Sufi ethics in 297.45
- .43 Sufi worship
- .430 01–430 09 Standard subdivisions
- .430 1–430 7 Specific sects  
 Add to base number 297.43 the numbers following 297.3 in 297.301–297.307, e.g., Sunni Sufi orders 297.4301
- .431–438 Subdivisions of Sufi worship  
 Add to base number 297.43 the numbers following 297.3 in 297.31–297.38, e.g., Sufi pilgrimages 297.435, Sufi observance of ṣawm Ramaḍān 297.4362, Sufi prayer and meditation 297.4382  
 Comprehensive works on Islamic worship, on non-Sufi worship, on Islamic private worship, on non-Sufi private worship relocated to 297.3
- .44 Sufi religious life and practice  
 Class here guides to Sufi religious life  
 Class Sufi ethics in 297.45  
*For Sufi worship, see 297.43*
- .446 Sufi individual observances  
 Including Sufi ascetic practices, dietary laws and observance  
*For Sufi fasting, see 297.45*
- .45 Sufi ethics  
 Including Sufi almsgiving, fasting, ṣadaqah, zakat  
*For Sufi observance of ṣawm Ramaḍān, see 297.4362*

- .48 Sufi orders  
Including Bektashi, Naqshabandiyah, Qādirīyah, Tijānīyah  
*See also 297.835 for Kadarites (Islamic sect)*
- .482 Mevleviyeh
- .5 Islamic ethics and religious experience, life, practice**  
Standard subdivisions are added for ethics and religious experience, life, practice together; for ethics alone  
Including conscience; general works on duty, sin, vice, virtue  
Class a specific duty, sin, vice, virtue in 297.56  
*For Pillars of Islam (Pillars of the Faith), see 297.31; for jihad, see 297.72*
- .53 Şawm (Fast)  
Class here comprehensive works on fasting  
*For şawm Ramaḍān (Annual Fast of Ramadan), see 297.362*
- .54 Zakat  
Class here almsgiving, şadaqah
- .56 Specific vices, virtues, moral issues  
Add to base number 297.56 the numbers following 17 in 172–179, e.g., Islamic sexual ethics 297.566; however, for almsgiving, see 297.54  
Class comprehensive works on vices, on virtues in 297.5
- .57 Religious experience, life, practice  
Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading  
Class here non-Sufi and comprehensive works on Islamic religious experience, life, practice; non-Sufi and comprehensive guides to religious life  
Class Islamic ethics in 297.5  
*For worship, see 297.3; for mysticism and Sufi religious experience, see 297.4; for Sufi life and practice, see 297.44*
- [.570 85] Relatives  
Do not use; class in 297.577
- .570 86 People by miscellaneous social attributes
- [.570 865 5] Married people  
Do not use; class in 297.577
- .574 Conversion  
Class here conversion of non-Muslims to Islam  
Class da'wah in 297.74. Class conversion of Muslims to another religion with the religion, e.g., conversion of Muslims to Christianity 248.246

- .576 Individual observances  
Including ascetic practices, dietary laws and observance, ritual slaughter of animals to conform with dietary laws  
*For pilgrimages, see 297.35; for fasting, see 297.53; for almsgiving, see 297.54*
- .577 Marriage and family life  
Including Muslim child rearing  
Class here comprehensive works on marriage, on family life  
*For ethics of marriage and family, see 297.563*
- .6 Islamic leaders and organization**
- .61 Leaders and their work  
Role, function, duties  
Class here ayatollahs, caliphate, caliphs, imamate, imams, ulama  
*For doctrine of Hidden Imam, see 297.24; for Muḥammad the Prophet, see 297.63; for Muḥammad's family and companions (including first four caliphs), see 297.64*
- [.610 92] Biography  
Do not use for biography of religious leaders primarily associated with a specific religious activity; class in 297.1–297.7 e.g., founders of Sufi orders 297.48. Do not use for biography of Muḥammad; class in 297.63. Do not use for biography of Muḥammad's family and companions (including first four caliphs); class in 297.64. Do not use for biography of Islamic leaders primarily associated with a specific sect or reform movement; class in 297.8. Do not use for biography of other religious leaders; class in 297.092
- .63 Muḥammad the Prophet  
Class here comprehensive works on Muḥammad and his family and companions  
Class Hadith in 297.125  
*For Muḥammad's family and companions, see 297.64*
- .630 92 Biography  
Do not use for Muḥammad the Prophet; class in 297.63  
Class here scholars who specialize in the life and works of Muḥammad the Prophet
- .632 Period prior to call to prophethood  
Including birth, childhood  
*See also 297.36 for Mawlid al-Nabī (holiday of Prophet's birthday)*

- .633      Period at Mecca  
             Including Isrā' (Night Journey to Jerusalem) and Mi'rāj (Ascent to Heaven)  
             Class comprehensive works on prophetic career in 297.635  
             *For period prior to call to prophethood, see 297.632*
- .634      Hijrah (Emigration from Mecca)
- .635      Period at Medina  
             *For emigration from Mecca to Medina, see 297.634*
- .64      Muḥammad's family and companions  
             Standard subdivisions are added for family and companions together, for family alone  
             Including descendants of Muḥammad
- .642      Wives
- .644      Children
- .648      Ṣaḥābah (Companions)  
             Including religious biography and theological discussion of the first four caliphs  
             Class interdisciplinary biographies of the first four caliphs with the subject in 950, e.g., Abu Bakr 953.02092
- .65      Organizations and organization  
             Role and function  
             Including associations, congregations, mosques  
             Class Islamic organizations in relation to political affairs in 297.272; class a specific organization limited to a specific sect or reform movement in 297.8; class political science view of relation of state to religious organizations and groups in 322.1; class political science view of religious political parties in 324.2182; class interdisciplinary works on mosques in 297.351
- .7      Protection and propagation of Islam**
- .72      Jihad
- .74      Da'wah  
             Class here call to Islam, missionary work
- .77      Islamic religious education  
             Class Islam as an academic subject in 297.071; class comprehensive works on madrasah education, treating both religious education and other subjects, in 371.077  
             *For religious education at the level of higher education, see 297.0711*  
             *See Manual at 207.5, 268 vs. 200.71, 230.071, 292-299*

- .770 83            Young people  
                       Class here Islamic religious schools, religious education in Islamic schools that teach all subjects  
                       Class comprehensive works on Islamic schools that teach all subjects in 371.077
- .8            Islamic sects and reform movements**  
                       Class specific aspects of sects and reform movements in 297.1–297.7; class secular view of relation of state to religious organizations and groups in 322.1; class secular view of religious political parties in 324.2182  
                       *For Sufism, see 297.4*
- .804            Special topics of Islamic sects and reform movements
- .804 2            Relations among sects and reform movements  
                       Class here relations between Sunni and Shia Islam
- .81            Sunnites  
                       Class relations between Sunnites and Shiites in 297.8042
- .811            Hanafites
- .812            Shafiites
- .813            Malikites
- .814            Hanbalites and Wahnābīyah
- .82            Shiites  
                       Class relations between Shiites and Sunnites in 297.8042
- .821            Twelvers (Ithna Asharites)
- .822            Seveners (Ismailites)  
                       Including Mustalians, Nizaris
- .824            Zaydites
- .83            Other sects and reform movements  
                       Including Kharijites
- .833            Ibadites
- .834            Motazilites
- .835            Kadarites  
                       *See also 297.48 for Qādirīyah (Sufi order)*
- .837            Murjiites
- .85            Druzes
- .86            Ahmadiyya movement

- .87           Black Muslim movement  
                   Including American Muslim Mission, Nation of Islam, World Community of  
                   al-Islam in the West
- .9           Babism and Bahai Faith**
- .92           Babism
- .93           Bahai Faith
- .931–.937    Specific aspects  
                   Add to base number 297.93 the numbers following 20 in 201–207, e.g.,  
                   Bahai ethics 297.935
- .938           Sources
- .938 2         Sacred books  
                   *For works by the Bab, see 297.92*
- .938 22        Works by Bahá'u'lláh
- .938 24        Works by 'Abdu'l-Bahá
- .938 6         Authoritative interpretation  
                   Class here works by Shoghi Effendi
- .938 7         Elucidation and legislation  
                   Class here works of the Universal House of Justice

**(298)       (Permanently unassigned)**

(Optional number used for Christianity if option A under 290 is chosen. Another option is described at 290)

**299        Religions not provided for elsewhere**

Including Urantia, modern revivals of long dormant religions

Class syncretistic religious writings of individuals expressing personal views and not claiming to establish a new religion or to represent an old one in 200

If a religion not named in the schedule claims to be Christian, class it in 289.9 even if it is unorthodox or syncretistic

*See Manual at 200.92 and 201–209, 292–299; also at 201–209 and 292–299; also at 203.6, 263.9, 292–299 vs. 394.265–394.267; also at 207.5, 268 vs. 200.71, 230.071, 292–299; also at 322.1 vs. 201.72, 261.7, 292–299; also at 398.2 vs. 201.3, 230, 270, 292–299; also at 615.852 vs. 203.1, 234.131, 292–299; also at 616.86 vs. 158.1, 204.42, 248.8629, 292–299, 362.29*

(Options for giving local emphasis and shorter numbers for a specific religion are described at 290)

## SUMMARY

- 299.1–.4 Religions of Indo-European, Semitic, Non-Semitic Afro-Asiatic, North and West Asian, Dravidian origin**
- .5 Religions of East and Southeast Asian origin
  - .6 Religions originating among Black Africans and people of Black African descent
  - .7 Religions of North American native origin
  - .8 Religions of South American native origin
  - .9 Religions of other origin
- .1–.4 Religions of Indo-European, Semitic, Non-Semitic Afro-Asiatic, North and West Asian, Dravidian origin**
- Not otherwise provided for
- Add to base number 299 the numbers following —9 in notation 91–94 from Table 5, e.g., Mithraism 299.15
- Class modern revivals of long dormant religions in 299
- .1 Religions of Indo-European origin**
- Number built according to instructions under 299.1–299.4
- .16 Celtic religion
- Number built according to instructions under 299.1–299.4
- .161 Specific aspects of Celtic religion
- Add to base number 299.161 the numbers following 20 in 201–209, e.g., Celtic mythology 299.16113
- .3 Religions of Non-Semitic Afro-Asiatic origin**
- Number built according to instructions under 299.1–299.4
- .31 †Ancient Egyptian religion
- Number built according to instructions under 299.1–299.4
- .5 Religions of East and Southeast Asian origin**
- See Manual at 200.9 vs. 294, 299.5*
- .51 Religions of Chinese origin
- .511 Specific aspects of Chinese religions
- Add to base number 299.511 the numbers following 20 in 201–209, e.g., Chinese gods and goddesses 299.511211
- .512 †Confucianism
- Class the Four books of Confucius, interdisciplinary works on Confucianism in 181.112
- .514 †Taoism

†Add as instructed under 290

- .54 Religions of Tibetan origin  
     Class here Bon
- .56 Religions of Japanese and Ryukyuan origin
- .561 †Shinto
- .57–.59 Other religions of East and Southeast Asian origin  
     Add to base number 299.5 the numbers following —95 in notation 957–959 from Table 5, e.g., Caodaism 299.592
- .6 Religions originating among Black Africans and people of Black African descent**  
     *For Black Muslims, see 297.87; for religions originating among peoples who speak, or whose ancestors spoke, Ethiopian languages, see 299.28; for religions originating among Cushitic and Omotic peoples, see 299.35; for religions originating among the Hausa, see 299.37; for religions originating among the Malagasy, see 299.923*
- [.609 61–.609 69] Religions in specific areas in Africa  
     Do not use; class in 299.691–299.699
- .61 Specific aspects  
     Add to base number 299.61 the numbers following 20 in 201–208, e.g., mythology and mythological foundations 299.6113  
     Class specific aspects of specific religions and movements, of religions of specific groups and peoples in 299.67–299.68
- .67 Specific religions and movements  
     Class here doctrines; practices, rites, ceremonies; mythology and mythological foundations; and other specific aspects of specific religions and movements
- .672 †Umbanda
- .673 †Candomblé
- .674 †Santeria
- .675 †Voodoo  
     Including zombiism  
     Class voodoo as an occult practice without regard to its religious significance in 133.4
- .676 †Ras Tafari movement

†Add as instructed under 290

- .68 Religions of specific groups and peoples  
 Class here doctrines; practices, rites, ceremonies; mythology and mythological foundations; and other specific aspects of specific religions and movements  
 Class specific religions and movements of specific groups and peoples in 299.67
- .681 Religions of Khoikhoi and San
- .683–.685 Religions of peoples who speak, or whose ancestors spoke, Niger-Congo, Nilo-Saharan languages  
 Add to base number 299.68 the numbers following —96 in notation 963–965 from Table 6, e.g., religion of the Yoruba 299.68333; then add further as follows:  
     001–009 Standard subdivisions  
     01–08 Specific aspects  
         Add to 0 the numbers following 20 in 201–208, e.g., mythology 013, Yoruba mythology 299.68333013
- .686–.688 Religions of national groups in Africa  
 Add to base number 299.68 the numbers following —6 in notation 66–68 from Table 2, e.g., religion of Ugandans 299.68761  
 Class national groups that predominate in specific areas in Africa in 299.69
- .689 Religions of other national groups of largely African descent  
 Add to base number 299.689 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., African religion of Haitians 299.6897294  
 Class religions of such national groups in areas where they predominate in 299.609, e.g., African religion of Haitians in Haiti 299.6097294
- .69 Religions of specific areas in Africa  
 Add to base number 299.69 the numbers following —6 in notation 61–69 from Table 2, e.g., religions of West Africa 299.696  
 Class specific aspects of religions of specific areas in 299.61; class specific religions and movements in specific areas in 299.67; class religions of specific groups and peoples in specific areas in 299.68
- .7 Religions of North American native origin**
- [.709 71–.709 79] Religions in specific areas in North America  
 Do not use; class in 299.791–299.799
- .71 Specific aspects  
 Add to base number 299.71 the numbers following 20 in 201–208, e.g., mythology and mythological foundations 299.7113  
 Class specific aspects of religions of specific groups and peoples in 299.78

**.78 Religions of specific groups and peoples**

Add to base number 299.78 the numbers following —97 in notation 971–979 from Table 5, e.g., religion of Aztecs 299.78452; then add further as follows (*not* as instructed at Table 5):

001–009 Standard subdivisions

01–08 Specific aspects

Add to 0 the numbers following 20 in 201–208, e.g., mythology and mythological foundations 013, Aztec mythology 299.78452013

**.79 Religions of specific areas in North America**

Add to base number 299.79 the numbers following —7 in notation 71–79 from Table 2, e.g., religions of Indians of Mexico 299.792

Class religions of specific groups and peoples in specific areas in 299.78

**.8 Religions of South American native origin****[.809 81–.809 89] Religions of specific areas in South America**

Do not use; class in 299.891–299.899

**.81 Specific aspects**

Add to base number 299.81 the numbers following 20 in 201–208, e.g., mythology and mythological foundations 299.8113

Class specific aspects of religions of specific groups and peoples in 299.88

**.88 Religions of specific groups and peoples**

Add to base number 299.88 the numbers following —98 in notation 982–989 from Table 5, e.g., religion of Incas 299.88323; then add further as follows (*not* as instructed at Table 5):

001–009 Standard subdivisions

01–08 Specific aspects

Add to 0 the numbers following 20 in 201–208, e.g., mythology and mythological foundations 013, Inca mythology 299.88323013

**.89 Religions of specific areas in South America**

Add to base number 299.89 the numbers following —8 in notation 81–89 from Table 2, e.g., religions of Indians of the Amazon 299.8911

Class religions of specific groups and peoples in specific areas in 299.88

**.9 Religions of other origin****.92 Religions of other ethnic origin**

Add to base number 299.92 the numbers following —99 in notation 991–999 from Table 5, e.g., religion of Polynesians 299.924; then add further as follows (*not* as instructed at Table 5):

001–009 Standard subdivisions

01–08 Specific aspects

Add to 0 the numbers following 20 in 201–208, e.g., mythology and mythological foundations 013

- .93 Religions of eclectic and syncretistic origin
- Religions and applied religious philosophies of eclectic, syncretistic, universal nature
- Including Eckankar, a Course in Miracles, Great White Brotherhood, New Thought, systems of Bhagwan Shree Rajneesh and Meher Baba, United Church of Religious Science
- Class here New Age religions
- Class syncretistic religious writings of individuals expressing personal views and not claiming to establish a new religion or to represent an old one in 200
- See also 289.98 for Christian New Thought*
- See Manual at 299.93; also at 201–209 and 292–299*
- .932 Gnosticism
- Including Manicheism
- Class Christian gnosticism in 273.1; class Christian Manicheism in 273.2
- .933 Subud
- .934 Theosophy
- .935 Anthroposophy
- .936 Scientology
- Including dianetics
- .94 Modern paganism, neopaganism, wicca
- Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- Class here religions based on modern revivals of witchcraft

## 300 Social sciences

Class here behavioral sciences, social studies

Class a specific behavioral science with the science, e.g., psychology 150; class military, diplomatic, political, economic, social, welfare aspects of a war with the history of the war, e.g., Vietnamese War 959.7043

*For language, see 400; for history, see 900*

*See Manual at 300 vs. 600; also at 300–330, 355–390 vs. 342–347, 352–354; also at 300, 320.6 vs. 352–354*

### SUMMARY

- 300.1–.9            **Standard subdivisions**
- 301                **Sociology and anthropology**
- 302                **Social interaction**
- 303                **Social processes**
- 304                **Factors affecting social behavior**
- 305                **Groups of people**
- 306                **Culture and institutions**
- 307                **Communities**
  
- 310                **Collections of general statistics**
- 314–319          **General statistics of specific continents, countries, localities in modern world**
  
- 320                **Political science (Politics and government)**
- .01–.09          **Standard subdivisions**
- .1–.9            **[Structure and functions of government, ideologies, political situation and conditions, related topics]**
- 321                **Systems of governments and states**
- 322                **Relation of the state to organized groups and their members**
- 323                **Civil and political rights**
- 324                **The political process**
- 325                **International migration and colonization**
- 326                **Slavery and emancipation**
- 327                **International relations**
- 328                **The legislative process**
  
- 330                **Economics**
- .01–.09          **Standard subdivisions**
- .1–.9            **[Systems, schools, theories, economic situation and conditions]**
- 331                **Labor economics**
- 332                **Financial economics**
- 333                **Economics of land and energy**
- 334                **Cooperatives**
- 335                **Socialism and related systems**
- 336                **Public finance**
- 337                **International economics**
- 338                **Production**
- 339                **Macroeconomics and related topics**

- 340      **Law**  
     .02-.09      **Standard subdivisions**  
     .1-.9      [Philosophy and theory of law, comparative law, law reform, legal systems, conflict of laws]
- 341      **Law of nations**  
 342      **Constitutional and administrative law**  
 343      **Military, defense, public property, public finance, tax, commerce (trade), industrial law**  
 344      **Labor, social service, education, cultural law**  
 345      **Criminal law**  
 346      **Private law**  
 347      **Procedure and courts**  
 348      **Laws, regulations, cases**  
 349      **Law of specific jurisdictions, areas, socioeconomic regions, regional intergovernmental organizations**
- 350      **Public administration and military science**  
 351      **Public administration**  
 352      **General considerations of public administration**  
 353      **Specific fields of public administration**  
 354      **Public administration of economy and environment**  
 355      **Military science**  
 356      **Foot forces and warfare**  
 357      **Mounted forces and warfare**  
 358      **Air and other specialized forces and warfare; engineering and related services**  
 359      **Sea forces and warfare**
- 360      **Social problems and services; associations**  
 361      **Social problems and services**  
 362      **Social problems of and services to groups of people**  
 363      **Other social problems and services**  
 364      **Criminology**  
 365      **Penal and related institutions**  
 366      **Secret associations and societies**  
 367      **General clubs**  
 368      **Insurance**  
 369      **Associations**
- 370      **Education**  
     .1-.9      **Standard subdivisions, education for specific objectives, educational psychology**  
 371      **Schools and their activities; special education**  
 372      **Primary education (Elementary education)**  
 373      **Secondary education**  
 374      **Adult education**  
 375      **Curricula**  
 378      **Higher education (Tertiary education)**  
 379      **Public policy issues in education**
- 380      **Commerce, communications, transportation**  
     .1-.9      **Standard subdivisions**  
 381      **Commerce (Trade)**  
 382      **International commerce (Foreign trade)**  
 383      **Postal communication**  
 384      **Communications**  
 385      **Railroad transportation**  
 386      **Inland waterway and ferry transportation**  
 387      **Water, air, space transportation**  
 388      **Transportation**  
 389      **Metrology and standardization**

- 390 Customs, etiquette, folklore
  - .01–.09 Standard subdivisions of customs
  - .1–.4 Customs of specific economic, social, occupational classes
- 391 Costume and personal appearance
- 392 Customs of life cycle and domestic life
- 393 Death customs
- 394 General customs
- 395 Etiquette (Manners)
- 398 Folklore
- 399 Customs of war and diplomacy

**.1 Philosophy and theory**

**.2 Miscellany**

**.21 Tabulated and related materials**

Do not use for statistics; class in 310

**.3–.9 Standard subdivisions**

**301 Sociology and anthropology**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here interdisciplinary works on society, humans

Class social problems and social welfare in 361–365

*For specific topics in sociology and anthropology, see 302–307; for criminal anthropology, see 364.2; for customs, etiquette, folklore, see 390; for physical anthropology, see 599.9. For a specific aspect of society not provided for in 302–307, see the aspect, e.g., general history 900*

*See Manual at 301–307 vs. 361–365*

**[.019] Psychological principles**

Do not use; class in 302

**.7 Nonliterate societies**

**> 302–307 Specific topics in sociology and anthropology**

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., friendship among women 302.34082 (*not* 305.4):

Factors affecting social behavior	304
Social processes	303
Social interaction	302
Culture and institutions	306
Groups of people	305
Communities	307

Class comprehensive works in 301. Class effect of one factor on another with the factor affected, e.g., effect of climate on social change 303.4

*See Manual at 301–307 vs. 361–365; also at 302–307 vs. 150, T1–019; also at 302–307 vs. 156; also at 302–307 vs. 320; also at 363 vs. 302–307, 333.7, 570–590, 600*

## 302 Social interaction

Class here psychological principles of sociology, interpersonal relations, social psychology

Class social psychology of a specific situation with the situation, e.g., social psychology of ethnic groups 305.8

*See also 155.92 for effect of social environment upon individuals; also 158.2 for individual aspects of interpersonal relations*

### SUMMARY

- |                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| <b>302.01–.09</b> | <b>Standard subdivisions</b>   |
| .1                | <b>General topics of social interaction</b>  |
| .2                | <b>Communication</b>   |
| .3                | <b>Social interaction within groups</b>  |
| .4                | <b>Social interaction between groups</b>   |
| .5                | <b>Relation of individual to society</b>   |
| .015 195          | Statistical mathematics<br>Class here sociometry<br><i>See Manual at 519.5, T1—015195 vs. 001.422, T1—0727</i>   |
| [.019]            | Psychological principles<br>Do not use; class in 302   |
| .072              | Research   |
| [.072 7]          | Statistical methods<br>Do not use; class in 302.015195   |
| <b>.1</b>         | <b>General topics of social interaction</b>  |
| .12               | Social understanding<br>Including attribution, risk perception<br><i>For social learning, see 303.32; for perception of norms, see 303.37</i>  |
| .13               | Social choice<br>Including attraction, influence   |
| .14               | Social participation<br>Including communalism, competition, cooperation, encounter groups, sensitivity training, voluntarism<br>Class here social acceptance, social adjustment, social skills, success<br><i>See also 302.4 for intergroup aspects of participation</i> |
| .15               | Social role (Role theory)<br>Including role conflict<br>Class social role of a specific group of people or institution with the group or institution in 305–306, e.g., social role of women 305.42   |

- .17            Social dysfunction
- Dysfunction affecting a substantial portion of society, e.g., mass hysteria, crazes
- Including apathy, fear, panic
- Class here social psychoanalysis
- Class dysfunctional responses of individuals to society in 302.542
- .2            Communication**
- Including failures and disruptions of communication
- Class here interdisciplinary works on communication, content analysis, semiotics
- For information theory, see 003.54; for censorship, see 303.376. For the semiotics of a specific subject, see the subject, plus notation 014 from Table 1, e.g., semiotics of biology 570.14*
- .22            Kinds of communication
- .222           Nonverbal communication
- Including drumbeats, smoke signals; body language, gestures; flower language
- Class here means of nonverbal communication, interdisciplinary works on nonlinguistic communication (nonstructured communication)
- Class comprehensive works on means of verbal and nonverbal communication in 302.23; class sign languages for deaf people in 419
- For iconography, see 704.9; for insignia, see 929.9*
- .222 3        Symbols
- Class here interdisciplinary works on symbols, on symbolism
- For religious symbolism, see 203.7; for Christian religious symbols, see 246.55. For symbols in a specific subject other than religion, see the subject, plus notation 0148 from Table 1, e.g., symbols in electrical engineering 621.30148*
- .224           Verbal communication
- Class media in 302.23
- For language, see 400*
- .224 2        Oral communication
- Including listening
- For conversation, see 302.346*
- .224 4        Written communication
- Class here literacy, illiteracy
- See also 301.7 for nonliterate societies*

- .23           **Media (Means of communication)**  
                   Including signboards, signs  
                   Class here electronic media, mass media, sociology of journalism  
                   Class the effect of mass media on a specific subject other than social groups with the subject, e.g., effect on social change 303.4833, on a company's advertising policy 659.111; class interdisciplinary works on a specific medium with the medium, e.g., newspapers 070, television 384.55
- .230 8           **Groups of people**  
                   Class here effect of mass media on specific groups, on social stratification  
                   Portrayal of a specific group in mass media relocated to the group in 305–306, e.g., minorities in mass media 305, scientists in mass media 306.45, gays in mass media 306.766
- .231           **Digital media**  
                   Including electronic publications, Internet, World Wide Web
- .232           **Print media**  
                   Class interdisciplinary works on the book in 002
- .232 2           **Newspapers**
- .232 4           **Periodicals and journals**  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .234           **Motion pictures, radio, television**
- .234 3           **Motion pictures**
- .234 4           **Radio**
- .234 5           **Television**
- .235           **Telephony and telegraphy**  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for telephony and telegraphy together, for telephony alone
- .24           **Content**  
                   Including gossip, rumor  
                   *See also 070.1 for journalistic aspect of content*
- .3           Social interaction within groups**  
                   Including teasing  
                   Class here group decision-making processes, group dynamics, negotiation, social networks
- .302 85           **Computer applications**  
                   Class here online social networks  
                   *For computer science aspects of online social networks, see 006.754*

- .33      **Social interaction in abstract and temporary groups**  
           Including audiences, crowds, mobs  
           Class media audiences in 302.23
- .34      **Social interaction in primary groups**  
           Groups small enough for all members to engage in face-to-face relationships  
           at one time  
           Including committees, gangs  
           Class here friendship  
           Class family in 306.85  
           *See also 362.74 for predelinquent gangs; also 364.1066 for gangs  
           engaging in crime*
- .343     **Bullying**  
           Class bullying in a specific institution with the institution, e.g., bullying  
           in school 371.58
- .346     **Conversation**  
           Including conversational rhythm
- .35      **Social interaction in complex groups**  
           Class here bureaucracies, hierarchically organized groups, organizational  
           behavior, sociology of management  
           Class general works that emphasize how to manage in 658. Class works  
           that emphasize how to manage in a specific field of activity with the field,  
           plus notation 068 from Table 1, e.g., management of commercial banks  
           332.12068
- .4      Social interaction between groups**  
           Including ingroups and outgroups  
           Class social interaction between a specific group of people and other groups of  
           people in 305
- .5      Relation of individual to society**  
           *See also 155.92 for psychological effects of social environment upon the  
           individual*
- .54      **Response of individuals**  
           Including ambition  
           Class here aggression, dysfunctional responses, individualism  
           *For conformity, see 303.32*  
           *See also 302.17 for mass manifestations of social dysfunction*
- .542     **Deviation**  
           Class here madness considered as a form of interaction of individuals  
           with society

- .544 Alienation  
 .545 Isolation

### 303 Social processes

*For social interaction, see 302; for factors affecting social behavior, see 304*

#### SUMMARY

- 303.3 Coordination and control  
 .4 Social change  
 .6 Conflict and conflict resolution

#### .3 Coordination and control

Standard subdivisions are added for coordination and control together, for coordination alone

Class here policy formulation, power

Class coordination and control in and through specific institutions in 306

#### SUMMARY

- 303.32 Socialization  
 .33 Social control  
 .34 Leadership  
 .35 Utilitarian control  
 .36 Coercion  
 .37 Social norms  
 .38 Public opinion

#### .32 Socialization

Including social learning

Class here conformity

Class interdisciplinary works on child development in 305.231

*For education, see 370*

#### .323 Socialization by family

#### .324 Socialization by school

#### .325 Socialization by religious organizations

#### .327 Socialization by peer group

Class here peer pressure

#### .33 Social control

*For socialization, see 303.32; for social control through specific means, see 303.34–303.38*

#### > 303.34–303.38 Social control through specific means

Class socialization through specific means of control in 303.32; class comprehensive works in 303.33

- .34 Leadership
- .342 Persuasion  
 By individuals  
 Class here interdisciplinary works on persuasion  
*For a specific aspect of persuasion, see the aspect, e.g., individual psychology of persuasion 153.852, persuasion by media 302.23, persuasion by propaganda 303.375*
- .35 Utilitarian control  
 Use of rewards and incentives
- .36 Coercion  
 Including authority, punishment, restraint, threat  
*See also 364.6 for treatment and punishment of offenders*
- .37 Social norms  
 Including perception of norms  
*For public opinion, see 303.38*
- .372 Belief systems and customs  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
 Class here social ethics as a method of social control; justice, values  
 Class rightness or wrongness of conduct as it affects individuals or society, interdisciplinary works on social ethics in 170  
*See also 361.61 for values in social policy toward welfare problems*
- .375 Propaganda
- .376 Censorship  
*See Manual at 363.31 vs. 303.376, 791.4*
- .38 Public opinion  
 Class here attitudes, attitude formation and change  
 Class propaganda in 303.375. Class public opinion on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., public opinion on racial stereotypes 305.8, on the political process 324  
*See also 302.12 for social understanding*
- .385 Prejudice  
 Class here social stereotypes and stereotyping  
 Class prejudices held by groups of people with specific attributes in 303.386; class prejudices held by ethnic and national groups in 303.387; class prejudices held by occupational groups in 303.388; class prejudices regarding a specific group in 305

- .386 Opinions held by groups of people with specific attributes  
 Add to base number 303.386 the numbers following —08 in notation 081–088 from Table 1, e.g., opinions of young people 303.3863, opinions of Catholics 303.3868282  
*For opinions held by ethnic and national groups, see 303.387; for opinions held by occupational groups, see 303.388*
- .387 Opinions held by ethnic and national groups  
 Add to base number 303.387 notation 1–9 from Table 5, e.g., opinions of Canadians 303.38711
- .388 Opinions held by occupational groups  
 Add to base number 303.388 notation 001–999, e.g., opinions of dentists 303.3886176
- .4 Social change**  
 Including evolutionary and revolutionary change  
 Class social change in a specific aspect of society with the aspect in 302–307, e.g., changes in religious institutions 306.6
- [.401 12] Forecasting and forecasts  
 Do not use; class in 303.49
- .44 Growth and development  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
 Class here progress, specialization
- .45 Deterioration and decay  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .48 Causes of change
- .482 Contact between cultures  
 Class here acculturation, assimilation; social effects of international assistance, of commerce  
 Class multicultural education in 370.117
- .482 09 History and biography  
 Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 303.4821–303.4829

- .482 1–.482 9      Contact between specific areas
- Add to base number 303.482 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., cultural exchanges with China 303.48251; then add 0\* and again add notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., cultural exchange between China and Japan 303.48251052
- Give priority in notation to the nation most affected. If this cannot be determined, give priority to the one coming first in Table 2  
(Option: Give priority to the area requiring local emphasis, e.g., in United States class cultural exchange between United States and France in 303.48273044)
- .483                    Development of science and technology
- Class government policy on science in 338.926
- See Manual at 303.483 vs. 306.45, 306.46*
- .483 2                Transportation
- .483 3                Communication
- Class here information technology
- Class government policy on information in 338.926
- .483 4                Computers
- Class here automation, microelectronics, robots
- .484                    Purposefully induced change
- Including dissent, radicalism
- Class here social innovation, social reform, social reform movements
- Class political aspects of reform movements in 322.44; class role of reform movements in addressing social problems in 361–365. Class innovation and reform directed to a specific end with the end, e.g., reform of banking 332.1
- .485                    Disasters
- Including earthquakes, pandemics, wars
- .49                     Social forecasts
- Class here futurology, social forecasting
- Class interdisciplinary works on forecasting in 003.2. Class forecasting in and forecasts of a specific subject with the subject, plus notation 0112 from Table 1, e.g., future of U.S. Democratic Party 324.27360112
- .490 9                History and biography
- Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 303.491–303.499
- .491–.499            Forecasts for specific areas
- Add to base number 303.49 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., Eastern Europe in the year 2010 303.4947

\*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

**.6 Conflict and conflict resolution**

Class a specific form of conflict provided elsewhere in 302–306 with the form, e.g., bullying 302.343, racial conflict 305.8, spouse abuse 306.872; class a specific conflict considered an historical event with the event in 900, e.g., disturbances of May-June 1968 in France 944.0836

**.61 Civil disobedience**

Including hunger strikes, passive resistance, sit-ins

Class here nonviolence

**.62 Civil disorder**

*For civil war and revolution, see 303.64*

**.623 Riots****.625 Terrorism**

Class interdisciplinary works on terrorism in 363.325

**.64 Civil war and revolution**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class terrorism in 303.625

**.66 War and peace**

Including pacifism, sociology of war

Class war as a cause of social change in 303.485; class prevention of war in 327.172; class causes of war in 355.027; class the art and science of warfare in 355–359. Class military, diplomatic, political, economic, social, welfare aspects of a specific war with the history of the war, e.g., of World War II 940.53

*For civil war, see 303.64*

**.69 Conflict resolution**

Including mediation

Class here conflict management

Class resolution of a specific kind of conflict with the kind of conflict, e.g., resolution of war 303.66

**304 Factors affecting social behavior****.2 Human ecology**

Class here ecological anthropology, human geography

*See Manual at 578 vs. 304.2, 508, 910*

**.208 2 Women**

Class here ecofeminism [*formerly* 305.42]

- .23      Geographic, space, time factors  
             Including territoriality
- .237      Time factors  
             Class aspects of time in relation to a specific subject with the subject in  
             302–307, e.g., time and conversation 302.346, leisure activities 306.4812  
             *See also 650.11 for time management*
- .25      Climatic and weather factors
- .27      Biological factors  
             Other than human  
             *For genetic factors, see 304.5*
- .28      Environmental abuse  
             Including greenhouse effect  
             Class here social consequences of pollution, of misuse of resources  
             Class interdisciplinary works on resources in 333.7; class interdisciplinary  
             works on pollution in 363.73  
             *See Manual at 333.72 vs. 304.28, 320.58, 363.7*
- .5      Genetic factors**  
             Class here sociobiology (biosociology), study of genetic bases of human social  
             behavior  
             Class a specific aspect of sociobiology with the aspect in 302–307, e.g.,  
             sociobiology of conflict 303.6  
             *For sociobiology of plants and animals, see 577.8*  
             *See also 304.27 for biological factors*
- .6      Population**  
             Class here demographic anthropology, demography; population composition,  
             geography, size; comprehensive works on population  
             *For movement of people, see 304.8*
- .61      Population characteristics  
             Including density
- .62      Growth and decline  
             *See also 304.63 for births; also 304.64 for deaths; also 304.8 for*  
             *movement of people*

- .63 Births  
 Including birth intervals, family size  
 Class here comprehensive works on births and deaths  
*For deaths, see 304.64*  
*See also 304.62 for growth and decline of population*
- .632 Fertility
- .64 Deaths (Mortality)
- .645 Life expectancy
- .645 09 History and biography  
 Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 304.6451–304.6459
- .645 1–.645 9 Geographic treatment  
 Add to base number 304.645 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., life expectancy in Canada 304.64571
- .66 Demographic effects of population control efforts  
 Class population policy, comprehensive works on population control in 363.9
- .663 Genocide  
 Class here ethnic cleansing
- .666 Family planning  
 Class here birth control  
*See also 363.96 for family planning programs; also 613.94 for birth control techniques*
- .667 Abortion
- .668 Infanticide
- .8 Movement of people**  
*For movement to, from, within communities, see 307.2*
- .809 History, geographic treatment, biography  
 Class here internal movement, emigration from specific areas  
*For emigration to specific areas, see 304.83–304.89*
- .81 Causes
- .82 International movement  
 Class international emigration in 304.809; class international immigration in 304.83–304.89  
*See also 325 for political aspects of international movement*

## .83--.89 Migration

Add to base number 304.8 notation 3-9 from Table 2, e.g., migration to Australia 304.894; then add 0\* and to the result add notation 1-9 from Table 2 for the place of origin, e.g., migration from United States to Australia 304.894073

**305 Groups of people**

Class here portrayal of a specific group in mass media [*formerly* 302.2308]; minorities; culture and institutions of specific groups; subcultures of specific groups; consciousness-raising groups; problems, role, social status of specific groups; group identity, social identity; discrimination; social stratification, equality, inequality; interactions between a specific group and other groups

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., African American male youths 305.235108996073 (*not* 305.3889607300835 or 305.896073008351):

People with disabilities and illnesses, gifted people	305.908
Age groups	305.2
People by gender or sex	305.3-305.4
People by social and economic levels	305.5
Religious groups	305.6
Ethnic and national groups	305.8
Language groups	305.7
People by occupation and miscellaneous social statuses	305.9
<i>(except 305.908)</i>	

Class effect of mass media on specific groups, on social stratification in 302.2308; class opinions of specific groups in 303.38; class interactions, problems, role, social status of specific groups, discrimination against and conflict involving specific groups in 305.2-305.9; class specific problems of, welfare services to groups of people in 362. Class role of a specific group in a specific institution with the institution, e.g., father-child relationship 306.8742, women in education 370.82; class people by sexual orientation with the sexual orientation in 306.76, e.g., middle-aged gay men 306.76620844; class people by kinship or marital status with the kinship or marital status in 306.8, e.g., African American mothers 306.874308996073; class a specific aspect of discrimination with the aspect, plus notation 08 from Table 1, e.g., sex discrimination against women in sports 796.082

*See also 920.008 for general collections of biography of members of a specific group*

*See Manual at 306 vs. 305, 909, 930-990; also at 920.008 vs. 305-306, 362*

**SUMMARY**

<b>305.2</b>	<b>Age groups</b>
<b>.3</b>	<b>People by gender or sex</b>
<b>.4</b>	<b>Women</b>
<b>.5</b>	<b>People by social and economic levels</b>
<b>.6</b>	<b>Religious groups</b>
<b>.7</b>	<b>Language groups</b>
<b>.8</b>	<b>Ethnic and national groups</b>
<b>.9</b>	<b>People by occupation and miscellaneous social statuses; people with disabilities and illnesses, gifted people</b>

\*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

[.08] Specific groups of people  
Do not use; class in 305.2–305.9

[.085] Relatives  
Do not use; class in 306.87

## **.2 Age groups**

Class here comprehensive works on generation gap  
*For generation gap within families, see 306.874*

### **SUMMARY**

<b>305.23</b>	<b>Young people</b>
<b>.24</b>	<b>Adults</b>
<b>.26</b>	<b>People in late adulthood</b>

[.208 1–.208 4] People by gender or sex; specific age groups  
Do not use; class in 305.23–305.26

.23 Young people  
Through age twenty  
Class here interdisciplinary works on children  
*For a specific aspect of children, see the aspect, e.g., social welfare of children 362.7*

.230 811 Boys

.230 82 Girls

[.230 83–.230 84] Age groups  
Do not use for young people in general; class in 305.23. Do not use for specific age groups; class in 305.232–305.235

.230 86 Children by miscellaneous social attributes

.230 869 23 Predelinquent children  
Do not use for juvenile delinquents; class in 364.36  
Class here runaway children

.231 Child development  
Class here interdisciplinary works on child development  
Class socialization in 303.32

*For psychological development of children, see 155.4; for physical development of children, see 612.65*

.232 Infants  
Children from birth through age two

- .233 Children three to five  
Class here preschool children
- .234 Children six to eleven  
Class here preteens, school children  
*For school children over eleven, see 305.235*
- .235 Young people twelve to twenty  
Variant names: adolescents, teenagers, young adults, youth  
Class young people twenty-one and over in 305.242
- [.235 081 1] Men  
Do not use; class in 305.2351
- [.235 082] Women  
Do not use; class in 305.2352
- [.235 083–.235 084] Age groups  
Do not use; class in 305.235
- .235 1 Males
- .235 2 Females
- .235 5 Development  
Class here interdisciplinary works on development of young people twelve to twenty  
*For psychological development, see 155.5; for physical development, see 612.661*
- .24 Adults  
Class here adulthood  
Class adult men in 305.31; class adult women in 305.4  
*For late adulthood, see 305.26*
- .242 People in early adulthood  
Class here comprehensive works on young adults  
*For young adults under twenty-one, see 305.235*
- [.242 081 1] Men  
Do not use; class in 305.2421
- [.242 082] Women  
Do not use; class in 305.2422
- [.242 083–.242 084] Age groups  
Do not use; class in 305.242
- .242 1 Young men

- .242 2 Young women
- .244 People in middle adulthood  
Class here middle age
- [.244 081 1] Men  
Do not use; class in 305.2441
- [.244 082] Women  
Do not use; class in 305.2442
- [.244 083–.244 084] Age groups  
Do not use; class in 305.244
- .244 1 Middle-aged men
- .244 2 Middle-aged women
- .26 People in late adulthood  
Class sociology of retirement in 306.38  
*See also 646.79 for guides to retirement*
- [.260 811] Men  
Do not use; class in 305.261
- [.260 82] Women  
Do not use; class in 305.262
- [.260 83–.260 84] Age groups  
Do not use; class in 305.26
- .261 Older men
- .262 Older women

### **.3 People by gender or sex**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here interdisciplinary works on men and women, gender identity, gender role, sex role, the sexes

Class sex psychology, psychology of people by gender or sex, by sexual orientation in 155.3; class sexual division of labor in 306.3615; class the relations between the sexes and within the sexes in 306.7–306.8. Class the relation of a specific gender or sex to a specific subject with the subject, plus notation 081–082 from Table 1, e.g., women in U.S. history 973.082

*For young and middle-aged men and women, see 305.24; for men and women in late adulthood, see 305.26; for women, see 305.4; for transgender and intersex people, see 306.768. For a specific aspect of gender identity, gender role, or sex role, see the aspect, e.g., psychology of gender identity 155.33*

**.31 Men**

Class here interdisciplinary works on men, on males

*For specific aspects of sociology of men, see 305.32–305.38. For a specific aspect of men not provided for in 305.3, see the aspect, e.g., legal status of men 346.013*

**[.310 8] Groups of people**

Do not use; class in 305.33–305.38

**.310 9 History, geographic treatment, biography****.310 92 Biography**

*See also 920.71 for general biography of men*

*See Manual at 920.008 vs. 305–306, 362*

**.32–.38 Specific aspects of sociology of men**

Add to base number 305.3 the numbers following 305.4 in 305.42–305.48, e.g., African American men 305.38896073; however, for engaged men, see 306.7340811; for men by sexual orientation, see 306.76; for gay men, see 306.7662; for single men, see 306.8152; for men by kinship characteristics, see 306.87; for married men, see 306.8722; for widowers, see 306.882; for separated and divorced men, see 306.892

Class comprehensive works in 305.31

**.4 Women**

Class here interdisciplinary works on women, on females

*For a specific aspect of women not provided for here, see the aspect, e.g., women's suffrage 324.623, legal status of women 346.0134*

**[.408] Groups of people**

Do not use; class in 305.43–305.48

**.409 History, geographic treatment, biography****.409 2 Biography**

*See also 920.72 for general biography of women*

*See Manual at 920.008 vs. 305–306, 362*

**.42 Social role and status of women**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here discrimination against women, feminism, women's movements

Class social role and status of specific groups of women with the group in 305.43–305.48, e.g., role of housewives 305.4364 (*not* 305.4208864)

Ecofeminism relocated to 304.2082

- .43 Women by occupation  
 Add to base number 305.43 notation 001–999, e.g., women physicians 305.43610695  
*See also 331.4 for economic aspects of women by occupation*
- .48 Specific groups of women  
 Class women by occupation in 305.43; class women with disabilities and illnesses, gifted women in 305.908  
*For engaged women, see 306.734082; for women by sexual orientation, see 306.76; for lesbians, see 306.7663; for single women, see 306.8153; for women by kinship characteristics, see 306.87; for married women, see 306.8723; for unmarried mothers, see 306.87432; for widows, see 306.883; for separated and divorced women, see 306.893*
- [.480 1–.480 9] Standard subdivisions  
 Do not use; class in 305.401–305.409
- .482 Women by social and economic levels [*formerly* 305.48962]  
 Class here women by level of cultural development [*formerly* 305.48963]  
 Add to base number 305.482 the numbers following —0862 in notation 08621–08625 from Table 1, e.g., working class women 305.48923
- .484 Women by miscellaneous social statuses [*formerly* 305.48969]  
 Add to base number 305.484 the numbers following —0869 in notation 08691–08697 from Table 1, e.g., homeless women 305.48442; however, for women offenders, see 364.374; for women inmates of penal institutions, see 365.6082
- .486–.488 Women by specific religious, language, ethnic, national groups  
 Add to base number 305.48 the numbers following 305 in 305.6–305.8, e.g., Muslim women 305.48697
- [.489] Miscellaneous groups  
 Number discontinued; class in 305.48
- [.489 6] Women by social and economic levels; by miscellaneous social statuses  
 Number discontinued; class in 305.48
- [.489 62] Women by social and economic levels  
 Relocated to 305.482
- [.489 63] Women by level of cultural development  
 Relocated to 305.482
- [.489 69] Women by miscellaneous social statuses  
 Relocated to 305.484

**.5 People by social and economic levels**

Class here class struggle, people by level of cultural development, social classes

*For theory of class struggle in Marxism, see 335.411*

*See Manual at 305.9 vs. 305.5*

**.51 General principles of social classes****.512 Principles of stratification****.512 2 Caste systems****.513 Social mobility****.52 Upper class**

Class here aristocracy, elites

Class intellectual elites in 305.552

**.522 Upper class by birth**

Class here nobility, royalty

**.523 Upper class by economic status****.523 2 Landowners with large estates and landed gentry****.523 4 Rich people**

*For landowners with large estates, see 305.5232*

**.524 Upper class by political status**

Including cabinet ministers, commissars, judges, legislative representatives

**.55 Middle class (Bourgeoisie)**

Class here moderately well-to-do, white collar workers

Class working class in 305.562

**.552 Intelligentsia**

Class here intellectual elites

**.553 Professional classes****.554 Managerial and entrepreneurial classes**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

**[.556] White collar classes**

Use of this number for white collar workers discontinued; class in 305.55

Office workers relocated to 305.96513; clerks relocated to 305.965137

- .56 Lower, alienated, excluded classes  
 Class here people with cultural and social disadvantages, interdisciplinary works on nondominant groups  
*For a specific nondominant group, see the group, e.g., nondominant ethnic groups 305.8*  
 Use of this number for comprehensive works on minorities discontinued; class in 305
- .562 Working class  
 Variant names: laboring class, proletariat  
 Including migrant workers  
 Class here blue collar workers  
 Class agricultural laborers in 305.563; class slaves in 306.362
- .563 Agricultural lower classes  
 Including agricultural laborers, migrant agricultural workers  
*For agricultural workers, see 305.963; for serfs, sharecroppers, see 306.365*
- .563 3 Peasants
- [.565] People with cultural disadvantages  
 Number discontinued; class in 305.56
- .568 Alienated and excluded classes  
 Tramps relocated to 305.569
- .568 8 Dalits  
 Variant names: scheduled castes, untouchables
- .569 Poor people  
 Including tramps [*formerly* 305.568]
- .569 2 Homeless people
- .6 Religious groups**  
 Add to base number 305.6 the numbers following 2 in 230–299, e.g., Christians 305.67, Christians in Indonesia 305.67598, Christian Scientists 305.6895, Christian Scientists in France 305.689544, Orthodox Jews 305.696832  
*See Manual at 305.6 vs. 305.92, 306.6*
- .696 Jews as a religious group  
 Number built according to instructions under 305.6  
 Class comprehensive works on Jews in 305.8924

**.7 Language groups**

Add to base number 305.7 notation 1–9 from Table 6, e.g., English-speaking people 305.721; then add 0\* and to the result add notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., English-speaking people of South Africa 305.721068

**.8 Ethnic and national groups**

Class here indigenous ethnic and national groups; ethnic and national groups associated with a specific language; ethnology, cultural ethnology, ethnography; race relations; racial groups, racism; treatment of biculturalism and multiculturalism in which difference in language is not a central element

Class physical ethnology in 599.97; class biculturalism and multiculturalism among residents in an area of divergent cultural traditions centered upon different languages in 306.446

*See also 909.04 for the comprehensive history of specific ethnic and national groups; also 920.0092 for general collections of biography of members of a specific ethnic or national group*

*See Manual at 920.008 vs. 305–306, 362*

.800 1–.800 9 Standard subdivisions

.805–.809 Ethnic and national groups with ethnic origins from more than one continent, of European descent

Add to base number 305.80 the numbers following 0 in notation 05–09 from Table 5, e.g., ethnic national groups of European descent 305.809

.81–.89 Specific ethnic and national groups

Add to base number 305.8 notation 1–9 from Table 5, e.g., comprehensive works on Jews 305.8924, Chinese 305.8951, Chinese Australians 305.8951094, Inuit 305.89712

*For Jews as a religious group, see 305.696*

**.9 People by occupation and miscellaneous social statuses; people with disabilities and illnesses, gifted people**

Standard subdivisions are added for all topics in heading together, for people by occupation alone

Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 305.9 in the number coming last, e.g., unemployed librarians 305.9092 (*not* 305.90694)

Class here occupational mobility

Class men by occupation in 305.33; class women by occupation in 305.43; class comprehensive works on nonagricultural occupations in 306.368

*See Manual at 305.9 vs. 305.5*

.900 1–.900 9 Standard subdivisions

.906 People by miscellaneous social statuses

*For victims of crime, see 362.88*

\*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

- .906 9            People with status defined by changes in residence; antisocial, asocial, unemployed people; victims of war; veterans
- .906 91            People with status defined by changes in residence  
                           Class here aliens, expatriates, foreigners  
                           Class runaway children in 305.23086923; class migrant workers in 305.562; class tramps in 305.569; class people of a specific ethnic or national group in 305.8
- .906 912            Immigrants  
                           Class displaced persons, refugees in 305.906914
- .906 914            Displaced persons  
                           Class here exiles, refugees, stateless persons  
                           *For a specific aspect of displaced persons or refugees, see the aspect, e.g., political aspects of refugees 325.21*
- .906 918            Nomads
- .906 92            Antisocial and asocial people  
                           *For offenders, see 364.3; for inmates of penal institutions, see 365.6*
- .906 94            Unemployed people
- .906 95            Victims of war
- .906 97            Veterans of military service
- .908                People with disabilities and illnesses, gifted people  
                           Add to base number 305.908 the numbers following —087 in notation 0871–0879 from Table 1, e.g., blind people 305.9081, deaf people 305.9082, gifted people 305.9089  
                           Class here people with physical disabilities
- .909                Generalists  
                           Add to base number 305.909 the numbers following 0 in 001–099, e.g., computer programmers 305.909051, librarians 305.9092
- .91–.99            People by occupation other than generalists  
                           Add to base number 305.9 notation 100–999, e.g., office workers 305.96513 [*formerly* 305.556], clerks 305.965137 [*formerly* 305.556], religious occupations 305.92, postal workers 305.9383, farmers 305.963  
                           *See Manual at 305.6 vs. 305.92, 306.6*

## 306 Culture and institutions

Culture: the aggregate of a society's beliefs, folkways, mores, science, technology, values, arts

Institutions: patterns of behavior in social relationships

Including the roles, functions, and patterns within which the groups and members of a society conduct their lives

Class here mass culture (popular culture), cultural and social anthropology

Class cultural exchange in 303.482; class physical anthropology in 599.9; class history of a specific ethnic group in 900

*For customs and folklore, see 390. For government policy on a specific aspect of culture, see the aspect, e.g., government policy on the arts 700*

*See Manual at 306 vs. 305, 909, 930–990; also at 920.008 vs. 305–306, 362*

### SUMMARY

- 306.1 Subcultures
- .2 Political institutions
- .3 Economic institutions
- .4 Specific aspects of culture
- .6 Religious institutions
- .7 Sexual relations
- .8 Marriage and family
- .9 Institutions pertaining to death

[.08] Groups of people

Do not use for culture and institutions of a specific group not provided for here; class in 305

[.085] Relatives

Do not use; class in 306.87

### .1 Subcultures

Including counterculture, drug culture

Class subcultures of specific groups in 305; class drug usage considered as a social problem in 362.29

### > 306.2–306.6 Cultural institutions

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by \* as follows:

- 01–07 Standard subdivisions
- [08] Groups of people
  - Do not use; class in the specific subject plus notation 08 from Table 1, e.g., women in education 370.82, women in sports 796.082
- 09 History, geographic treatment, biography

Class comprehensive works in 306

*See Manual at T1–08 and 306.2–306.6*

**.2 \*Political institutions**

Institutions maintaining internal and external peace

Class here political sociology; comprehensive works on patronage, on client relationships

Class political science in 320; class law in 340; class public administration and military science in 350

*For patronage and client relationships in a specific institution, see the institution, e.g., in systems of production 306.34, in art 306.47*

*See Manual at 320 vs. 306.2*

**> 306.23–306.25 Governmental institutions**

Class comprehensive works in 306.2

**.23 \*Legislative institutions****.24 \*Executive institutions**

Class military institutions in 306.27; class police in 306.28

**.25 \*Judicial institutions****.26 \*Political parties****.27 \*Military institutions**

Class here military sociology

*See also 355 for military science*

**.28 \*Police institutions**

*See also 363.2 for police services*

**.3 \*Economic institutions**

Social arrangements for production, distribution

Class here economic anthropology; economic sociology; sociology of economic development, of consumption

Class specific occupational groups in 305.909–305.99

*For economic institutions relating to housing, see 307.336*

*See also 305.5 for social classes; also 330 for economics*

**.32 \*Property systems**

Including kinds of land tenure

*For agricultural land tenure systems, see 306.349*

- .34      \*Systems of production and exchange  
           Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
           Including cooperation, syndicalism  
           Class here sociology of industrial conflict and relations  
           *See also 302.35 for organizational behavior; also 303.482 for commerce (trade) as agent of social change*
- .342     \*Capitalism (Free enterprise)  
           *See also 330.122 for economic aspects*
- .345     \*Socialism  
           Class interdisciplinary works on socialism in 335  
           *See Manual at 335 vs. 306.345, 320.53*
- .349     \*Agricultural systems  
           Including plantation as a system of production  
           Class here agricultural sociology, land tenure systems  
           *For agricultural production systems not involving ownership of land, see 306.364*
- .36      \*Systems of labor  
           Including free labor systems  
           Class here industrial sociology, sociology of work  
           Class sociology of industrial conflict and relations in 306.34; class economic aspects of work in 331
- .361     \*General aspects of systems of labor  
           Including absenteeism, quality of work life, unemployment
- .361 3     Work ethic  
           *See also 174 for philosophical aspects of ethics of work*
- .361 5     Sexual division of labor
- .362     Slavery  
           Class here slaves, interdisciplinary works on slave trade  
           *For a specific aspect of the slave trade, see the aspect, e.g., economic aspects of slave trade 381.44*
- .363     \*Contract and indentured labor  
           Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

- .364        \*Agricultural systems of labor  
               Class here systems of agricultural production not involving ownership of land, e.g., fishing, hunting, gathering systems  
               Class agricultural slavery in 306.362; class contract and indentured labor in agriculture in 306.363  
               *For agricultural occupations in general, see 305.963; for agricultural shared return systems, see 306.365*
- .365        Agricultural shared return systems  
               Class here serfdom, serfs; sharecropping, sharecroppers
- .368        \*Nonagricultural occupations  
               Class here division of labor  
               Class social groups defined by occupation in 305.9  
               *For sexual division of labor, see 306.3615*
- .38         Retirement  
               Class here retired people  
               *See also 646.79 for guides to retirement*
- .4         **Specific aspects of culture**  
               Not provided for elsewhere  
               Including magic and witchcraft, symbols
- .42        \*Sociology of knowledge  
               Class here sociology of intellectual life, of information  
               Class specific instances of sociology of knowledge in 306.43–306.48
- .43        \*Education  
               Class here educational anthropology  
               *See also 370.115 for education for social responsibility*
- .432       School and society  
               Including interdisciplinary works on relations of teachers and society, on relations of colleges and universities with society  
               *For community-school relations in education, see 371.19; for community-school relations in higher education, see 378.103*

- .44           **Language**  
               Including pragmatics  
               Class here anthropological linguistics, ethnolinguistics, sociolinguistics  
               *See Manual at 401.43 vs. 306.44, 401.45, 401.9, 412, 415*  
               Interdisciplinary works on pragmatics relocated to 401.45
- .446           **Bilingualism and multilingualism**  
               Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
               Class here biculturalism and multiculturalism among residents in an area of divergent cultural traditions centered upon different languages  
               Class treatment of biculturalism and multiculturalism in which difference in language is not a central element in 305.8; class treatment of bilingualism and multilingualism in context of language planning and policy formulation in 306.449  
               *See also 404.2 for linguistic aspects of bilingualism*
- .449           **Language planning and policy**  
               Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in the headings  
               Class here development of policies on language to solve communication problems of a community that uses more than one language
- [.449 094-.449 099]       Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
                                   Do not use; class in 306.4494-306.4499
- .449 4-.449 9        Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
                                   Add to base number 306.449 notation 4-9 from Table 2, e.g.,  
                                   language policy of India 306.44954  
                                   Subdivisions are added for language planning, language policy, or both
- .45            \***Science**  
               Class here works contrasting scientific and humanistic cultures  
               *See Manual at 303.483 vs. 306.45, 306.46*
- .46            \***Technology**  
               Class here material culture  
               *See Manual at 303.483 vs. 306.45, 306.46*
- .461           \***Medicine and health**  
               Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
               Class here sociology of illness  
               Class social aspects of medical welfare problems and services in 362.1042

- .461 3           \*Personal health  
                   Including body image, body shape, eating, physical fitness
- .47            \*Art  
                   Including arts and crafts
- .48            \*Recreation and performing arts  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for recreation and performing arts together,  
                   for recreation alone  
                   *For motion pictures, radio, television, see 302.234*
- .481           \*General topics of recreation  
                   Including play, pleasure, wit and humor
- .481 2           \*Leisure  
                   Class here free time
- .481 25          \*Vacations (Holidays)
- .481 9          \*Travel and tourism  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .482           \*Gambling
- .483           \*Sports  
                   Class gambling on athletic events in 306.482
- .484           \*Music, dance, theater  
                   Class here performing arts  
                   *For motion pictures, radio, television, see 302.234*
- .484 2          Music
- [.484 208]       Groups of people  
                   Do not use; class in 780.8
- .484 22-.484 29   Traditions of music  
                   Add to base number 306.4842 the numbers following 781.6 in  
                   781.62-781.69, e.g., jazz 306.48425; however, do not add notation  
                   08 from Table 1 for groups of people; class in 781.62-781.69, plus  
                   notation 08 from Table 1, e.g., women and jazz 781.65082
- .484 6          \*Dance
- .484 8          \*Theater
- .487           \*Games and hobbies  
                   Class gambling on games in 306.482; class sports in 306.483
- .488           \*Reading

\*Add as instructed under 306.2-306.6

- .6 Religious institutions**  
 Religious institutions considered from a secular, nonreligious viewpoint  
 Class here sociology of religion  
*See also 201.7 for social theology; also 261 for Christian social theology*  
*See Manual at 305.6 vs. 305.92, 306.6*
- [.608] Groups of people  
 Do not use; class in 200.8
- .63–.69 Institutions of specific religions  
 Add to base number 306.6 the numbers following 2 in 230–290, e.g., comprehensive works on Christian institutions 306.63, Sunday school as a social institution 306.668, synagogue as a social institution 306.69665; however, do not add notation 08 from Table 1 for groups of people; class in 230–290, plus notation 08 from Table 1, e.g., women and Christianity 270.082
- .7 Sexual relations**  
 Class here interdisciplinary works on relations between the sexes, sex, sexual love  
*For sexual ethics, see 176; for problems and controversies concerning various sexual relations, see 363.4; for sex offenses, see 364.153; for customs pertaining to relations between the sexes, see 392.6; for sexual hygiene, see 613.95; for sexual techniques, see 613.96*
- .73 General institutions  
 Class here dating behavior  
*For marriage, see 306.81*  
*See also 646.77 for practical guidance on dating behavior*
- .732 Celibacy
- .733 Premarital sexual relations
- .734 Courtship and engagement  
 Class here engaged people  
*See also 392.4 for customs of courtship*
- .736 Extramarital relations  
 Including lovers, mistresses, paramours
- .74 Prostitution  
 Class here prostitutes  
*See also 331.76130674 for prostitution as an occupation; also 363.44 for prostitution as a social problem; also 364.1534 for prostitution as a crime*

- .740 811           Men  
                     Do not use for prostitution by males; class in 306.743
- .740 82           Women  
                     Do not use for prostitution by females; class in 306.742
- .740 83           Young people  
                     Do not use for prostitution by children; class in 306.745
- .742           Prostitution by females  
                     Class child prostitution in 306.745
- .743           Prostitution by males  
                     Class child prostitution in 306.745
- .745           Prostitution by children
- .76           Sexual orientation, transgenderism, intersexuality  
                     Standard subdivisions are added for sexual orientation, transgenderism,  
                     intersexuality together; for sexual orientation and transgenderism together;  
                     for sexual orientation alone  
                     Including asexuality, asexuals  
                     Class here people by sexual orientation  
                     Class practices associated with specific orientations in 306.77
- [.762]           Asexuality  
                     Number discontinued; class in 306.76
- .764           Heterosexuality  
                     Class here heterosexuals
- .765           Bisexuality  
                     Class here bisexuals
- .766           Homosexuality  
                     Class here gay liberation movement, gays, homophobia
- .766 2           Male homosexuality  
                     Class here gay men
- .766 3           Lesbianism  
                     Class here lesbians

- .768            Transgenderism and intersexuality
- Standard subdivisions are added for transgenderism and intersexuality together, for transgenderism alone
- Including female-to-male transgender people, male-to-female transgender people
- Class here transsexuality; transgender people, transgenderists, transsexuals
- Class practices associated with transgenderism and intersexuality in 306.77
- .768 5           Intersexuality
- Class here intersex people
- .77              Sexual and related practices
- Standard subdivisions are added for sexual and related practices together, for sexual practices alone
- Including fetishism, group sex, pornography, sodomy
- Class transvestic fetishism in 306.778
- For sexual practices viewed as medical disorders, see 616.8583*
- See also 363.47 for pornography as a social problem; also 364.174 for pornography as an offense against public morals; also 364.153 for sex crimes*
- .772            Masturbation
- .774            Oral sex
- .775            Sadism
- Class here sadomasochism
- For masochism, see 306.776*
- .776            Masochism
- .778            Transvestism
- Class here cross dressing
- Class female impersonation, male impersonation in 792.028
- .8              Marriage and family**
- See also 362.8286 for premarital and marriage counseling*

- .81           Marriage and marital status
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Class here people by marital status; interdisciplinary works on marriage, on marital status
- Class patterns of mate selection in 306.82; class married people in 306.872; class alteration of marriage arrangements in 306.88
- For types of marriage, see 306.84. For other aspects of marriage, see the aspect, e.g., sexual techniques 613.96*
- .815          Single marital status
- Class here single people; comprehensive works on single, divorced and widowed marital status; people who have never been married
- Class single parents in 306.856
- For widowed people, see 306.88; for separation and divorce, see 306.89*
- [.815 081 1]           Men
- Do not use; class in 306.8152
- [.815 082]            Women
- Do not use; class in 306.8153
- .815 2          Single men
- Class single fathers in 306.87422
- .815 3          Single women
- Class single mothers in 306.87432
- .82           Patterns in mate selection
- Including endogamy, exogamy
- Class courtship in 306.734
- See also 392.4 for the customs of mate selection; also 646.77 for practical guidance on choosing a mate and dating behavior*
- .83           Types of kinship systems
- Including matrilineal, patrilineal, totemic systems
- .84           Types of marriage and relationships
- Including remarriage
- Class married people in 306.872
- .841          Partnerships and unions
- Class here civil unions, common-law marriage, de facto relationships, domestic partnerships, registered partnerships; unmarried couples living together (cohabitation)
- .842          Marriage by number of spouses

- .842 2            Monogamy
- .842 3            Polygamy  
                   Including ménage à trois  
                   Class here polyandry, polygyny; polygamists
- .843            Interreligious marriage  
                   Marriage in which the spouses belong to different religions or different  
                   branches of same religion
- .845            Intercultural marriage  
                   Class here marriage between citizens of different countries
- .846            Interracial marriage
- .848            Same-sex marriage
- .85            Family  
                   Class here interdisciplinary works on family  
                   *For kinship systems, see 306.83; for intrafamily relationships, see  
                   306.87; for stepfamilies, see 306.8747; for alteration of family  
                   arrangements, see 306.88. For a specific aspect of family, see the aspect,  
                   e.g., achieving harmonious family relations 646.78*  
                   *See also 155.924 for psychological influence of family on individual  
                   members*
- .852            Rural family  
                   *See also 307.72 for rural sociology*
- .854            Urban family  
                   *See also 307.76 for urban sociology*
- .855            Nuclear family  
                   Class the single-parent family in 306.856
- .856            Single-parent family  
                   Class here divorced families with single-parent custody, unmarried  
                   parents, unmarried parenthood  
                   *For single fatherhood, see 306.87422; for single motherhood, see  
                   306.87432*
- .857            Extended family  
                   Class kinship systems in extended family in 306.83
- .858            Patriarchal family
- .859            Matriarchal family

- .87            **Intrafamily relationships**  
 Including abuse within family; birth order; childlessness; collateral relationships between aunts/uncles and nieces/nephews; collateral relationships between cousins; dysfunctional relationships; in-law relationships  
 Class incest in 306.877. Class abuse in a specific family relationship with the relationship, e.g., spouse abuse 306.872  
*For alteration of family arrangements, see 306.88*  
*See also 362.82 for social services to families; also 646.78 for practical guides to harmonious family relationships*
- .872           **Spousal relationship**  
 Including dual-career families  
 Class here husband-wife relationship, married people  
 Class sexual practices in 306.77  
*For polygamists, see 306.8423*  
*See also 613.96 for sexual techniques*
- .872 081 1                **Men**  
 Do not use for husbands; class in 306.8722
- .872 082                **Women**  
 Do not use for wives; class in 306.8723
- .872 2                **Husbands**
- .872 3                **Wives**
- .874            **Parent-child relationship**  
 Including adopted children, children of unmarried parents, only child  
 Class here generation gap within families  
 Class comprehensive works on generation gap in 305.2  
*See also 649.1 for child rearing (parenting)*
- .874 2            **Father-child relationship**  
 Including teenage fatherhood  
 Class here sociology of fatherhood  
 Class single teenage fatherhood in 306.87422
- .874 22            **Single fatherhood**  
 Class here single fathers, unmarried fathers, unmarried fatherhood

- .874 3           Mother-child relationship  
                   Including surrogate motherhood, teenage motherhood  
                   Class here sociology of motherhood  
                   Class single teenage motherhood in 306.87432
- .874 32           Single motherhood  
                   Class here single mothers, unmarried mothers, unmarried  
                   motherhood
- .874 5           Grandparent-child relationship
- .874 7           Stepparent-stepchild relationship  
                   Class here blended families; stepchildren, stepfamilies, stepparents
- .875            Sibling relationships
- .875 2           Brother-brother relationship
- .875 3           Brother-sister relationship
- .875 4           Sister-sister relationship
- .877            Incest
- .88             Alteration of family arrangements  
                   Including desertion  
                   Class here widowed people  
                   *For separation and divorce, see 306.89*
- .880 811           Men  
                   Do not use for widowers; class in 306.882
- .880 82           Women  
                   Do not use for widows; class in 306.883
- .882            Widowers
- .883            Widows
- .89             Separation and divorce  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Including binuclear family, shared custody  
                   Class here separated and divorced people  
                   Class divorced families with single-parent custody in 306.856; class  
                   parent-child relationship in divorced families in 306.874
- [.890 811]           Men  
                   Do not use; class in 306.892
- [.890 82]           Women  
                   Do not use; class in 306.893

- .892      Separated and divorced men  
                  Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .893      Separated and divorced women  
                  Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

**.9      Institutions pertaining to death**

Class here interdisciplinary works on death

*For a specific aspect of death, see the aspect, e.g., psychology of death 155.937, funeral rites and ceremonies 393.9*

**307      Communities**

*See Manual at 307*

>      **307.1–307.3 Specific aspects of communities**

Add to each subdivision identified by \* as follows:

1      Specific kinds of communities

Add to 1 the numbers following 307.7 in 307.72–307.77, e.g., cities 16

Class comprehensive works in 307

**.1      \*Planning and development**

.12      \*Planning

*See also 711 for the physical aspect of area planning*

.14      \*Development

Class here human settlement

Class resettlement in 307.2; class redevelopment in 307.34

**.2      \*Movement of people to, from, within communities**

Including resettlement

Class comprehensive works on population in 304.6

.24      \*Movement from rural to urban communities

Class here rural exodus

.26      \*Movement from urban to rural communities

Class here urban exodus

**.3      \*Structure**

Class movement within communities in 307.2

.32      \*Physical setting

.33      \*Patterns of use

\*Add as instructed under 307.1–307.3

- .332       \*Industrial use
- .333       \*Commercial use  
          Class here business districts
- .334       \*Recreational use
- .336       \*Residential use  
          Including housing succession  
          Class here housing patterns, sociology of housing  
          *See also 363.58 for housing programs*  
          *See Manual at 363.5 vs. 307.336, 307.34*
- .336 2     \*Neighborhoods  
          Class ghettos in 307.3366
- .336 4     \*Slums
- .336 6     \*Ghettos
- .34        \*Redevelopment  
          Class community planning in 307.12  
          *See Manual at 363.5 vs. 307.336, 307.34*
- .342       \*City core  
          Class here inner cities
- .344       \*Slum clearance
- .346       \*Parks and recreational facilities
- .7        **Specific kinds of communities**  
          Class a specific aspect of specific kinds of communities in 307.1–307.3
- .72        Rural communities  
          Including plantations considered as communities  
          Class here rural sociology, rural villages  
          Class agricultural sociology, the plantation considered as a system of  
          production in 306.349
- .74        Suburban communities
- .740 9     History and biography  
          Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 307.7609

.76 Urban communities

Class here urban policy (government policy on cities), urban sociology, interdisciplinary works on cities

*For suburban communities, see 307.74. For a specific aspect of cities, see the aspect, e.g., public administration of cities 352.16*

.760 9 History, geographic treatment, biography

Class here specific suburban communities, specific urban communities regardless of size or kind

---

> 307.762–307.764 Urban communities by size

Class specific urban communities regardless of size in 307.7609; class comprehensive works in 307.76

.762 Small urban communities

Class here comprehensive works on villages

*For rural villages, see 307.72*

.763 Medium-sized urban communities

.764 Large urban communities

Class here metropolitan areas as communities

*For medium-sized communities, see 307.763*

---

> 307.766–307.768 Urban communities by kind

Class specific urban communities regardless of kind in 307.7609; class comprehensive works in 307.76

.766 Mining and industrial towns

Class company towns in 307.767

.767 Company towns

.768 New towns

.77 Self-contained communities

Class here voluntary socialist and anarchist communities

.772 Tribal communities

Class tribal communities considered in context of culture and institutions of indigenous ethnic and national groups in 305.8

.774 Communes

Class kibbutzim in 307.776

.776 Kibbutzim and moshavim

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

**[308] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 16

**[309] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 18

**310 Collections of general statistics**

Class works on collecting statistical data in 001.433. Class statistics of a specific subject, other than general statistics of a place, with the subject, plus notation 021 from Table 1, e.g., statistics on deaths by crimes of violence 364.15021

*See also 001.422 for analysis of statistical data; also 001.4226 for methods of presenting statistical data*

[.94–.99] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Do not use; class in 314–319

**[311] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 17

**[312] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 19

**[313] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 14

**314–319 General statistics of specific continents, countries, localities in modern world**

Add to base number 31 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., statistics of France 314.4

**314 General statistics of Europe**

Number built according to instructions under 314–319

**315 General statistics of Asia**

Number built according to instructions under 314–319

**316 General statistics of Africa**

Number built according to instructions under 314–319

**317 General statistics of North America**

Number built according to instructions under 314–319

**318 General statistics of South America**

Number built according to instructions under 314–319

**319 General statistics of Australasia, Pacific Ocean islands, Atlantic Ocean islands, Arctic islands, Antarctica**

Number built according to instructions under 314–319

## 320 Political science (Politics and government)

Class sociology of political institutions and processes in 306.2

*For law, see 340; for public administration and military science, see 350*

*See Manual at 302–307 vs. 320; also at 320 vs. 306.2; also at 324 vs. 320; also at 909, 930–990 vs. 320*

### SUMMARY

- |            |  |
|------------|--|
| 320.01–.09 | <b>Standard subdivisions</b>   |
| .1         | The state  |
| .3         | Comparative government   |
| .4         | Structure and functions of government  |
| .5         | Political ideologies   |
| .6         | Policy making  |
| .8         | Local government   |
| .9         | Political situation and conditions   |
| 321        | <b>Systems of governments and states</b>   |
| .001–.009  | Standard subdivisions  |
| .01–.09    | [Systems of relating parts of a state to the whole, kinds of states, change in system of government] |
| .1         | Family-based government  |
| .3         | Feudalism  |
| .5         | Elitist systems  |
| .6         | Absolute monarchy  |
| .8         | Democratic government  |
| .9         | Authoritarian government   |
| 322        | <b>Relation of the state to organized groups and their members</b>                                   |
| .1         | Religious organizations and groups   |
| .2         | Labor movements and groups   |
| .3         | Business and industry  |
| .4         | Political action groups  |
| .5         | Armed services   |
| 323        | <b>Civil and political rights</b>  |
| .01–.09    | Standard subdivisions; citizen participation; resistance, repression, persecution                    |
| .1         | Civil and political rights of nondominant groups   |
| .3         | Civil and political rights of other social groups  |
| .4         | Specific civil rights; limitation and suspension of civil rights                                     |
| .5         | Political rights   |
| .6         | Citizenship and related topics   |
| 324        | <b>The political process</b>   |
| .09        | History, geographic treatment, biography   |
| .1         | International party organizations, auxiliaries, activities   |
| .2         | Political parties  |
| .3         | Auxiliary party organizations  |
| .4         | Interest and pressure groups   |
| .5         | Nominating candidates  |
| .6         | Election systems and procedures; suffrage  |
| .7         | Conduct of election campaigns  |
| .9         | History and geographic treatment of elections  |

- 325           **International migration and colonization**  
  .1           **Immigration**  
  .2           **Emigration**  
  .3           **Colonization**  
  .4–.9       **International migration to and colonization in specific continents, countries, localities in modern world**
- 326           **Slavery and emancipation**  
  .8           **Emancipation**
- 327           **International relations**  
  .02–.09     **Standard subdivisions**  
  .1           **Foreign policy and specific topics in international relations**  
  .2           **Diplomacy**  
  .3–.9       **Foreign relations of specific continents, countries, localities**
- 328           **The legislative process**  
  .06           **Organizations and management**  
  .1           **Rules and procedures of legislative bodies**  
  .2           **Initiative and referendum**  
  .3           **Specific topics of legislative bodies**  
  .4–.9       **The legislative process in specific continents, countries, localities in modern world**
- .01           Philosophy and theory  
              Class general theory in 320.011
- .011          General theory; systems  
              Including theory of liberty  
              Class here nature, legitimacy, role of government; political change, political justice  
              Class systems in 320.0113; class biography of general theory in 320.092; class specific theories in the sense of ideologies in 320.5; class personal liberty in 323.44. Class theories on a specific aspect of political science with the aspect, e.g., social contract as a theory of origin of the state 320.11
- .011 3       Systems  
              The word “systems” here refers only to concepts derived from 003, e.g., systems theory, models  
              Add to base number 320.0113 the numbers following 003 in 003.1–003.8, e.g., forecasting and forecasts 320.01132, computer modeling and simulation 320.01133; however, for forecasting and forecasts for a specific period or area, see 320.9  
              Class systems of governments and states in 321
- .014          Communication  
              Class here political persuasion and political propaganda  
              Class interdisciplinary works on persuasion in 303.342; class interdisciplinary works on propaganda in 303.375
- .019          Psychological principles  
              Class political persuasion and propaganda in 320.014
- .02–.08      Standard subdivisions

- .09 History, geographic treatment, biography  
Do not use for political situation and conditions, for forecasting and forecasts in a specific period or area; class in 320.9
- .092 Biography  
Do not use for biography of political thinkers identified with specific ideologies; class in 320.5  
Class here political philosophers and political scientists
- .1 The state**  
Class systems by which states are organized in 321
- .101 Philosophy and theory  
Do not use for theories of origin of the state; class in 320.11
- .101 1 Systems  
The word "systems" here refers only to concepts derived from 003, e.g., systems theory, models  
Class systems of governments and states in 321
- .11 Theories of origin  
Class here social contract
- .12 Territory  
Including boundaries  
Class here geopolitics  
Class acquisition of territory in 325.32; class territory in law of nations in 341.42; class history of territorial changes in 911  
*For geopolitics in international relations, see 327.101*
- .15 Sovereignty  
Class here national self-determination  
Class states with restricted sovereignty in 321.08
- .3 Comparative government**  
Class comparison of a specific aspect of government with the aspect, e.g., comparison of committee systems in different legislatures 328.365
- .4 Structure and functions of government**  
Class here civics  
Class analysis of systems by which government is structured in 321  
*For comparative government, see 320.3*  
*See Manual at 320.9, 320.4 vs. 351; also at 909, 930-990 vs. 320.4, 321, 321.09*

- .404 Separation of powers  
 Class here interdisciplinary works on branches of government  
 Class systems of selecting chief executives in 324; class legislative control and oversight of executive branch in 328.3456  
*For legislative branch, see 328; for judicial branch, see 347; for executive branch, see 351*
- .404 09 History and biography  
 Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 320.41–320.49
- .404 9 Vertical separation of powers  
 Class here relation of central governments with regional and local jurisdictions  
*For relation of local government to higher levels of government, see 320.8; for relation of federal to state, regional, provincial governments, see 321.023*
- .409 History and biography  
 Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 320.41–320.49
- .41–.49 Geographic treatment  
 Class here systems of state and government in specific countries  
 Add to base number 320.4 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., structure of government in Cuba 320.47291; then to the result add standard subdivisions as modified under 320.4, e.g., separation of powers in Cuba 320.4729104
- .5 Political ideologies**  
 Except as provided under 320.53209, use notation 09 from Table 1 for variants of basic ideologies formulated and practiced in specific nations, e.g., Titoism 320.532309497, apartheid 320.560968  
 Class ideologies with respect to a specific aspect of political science with the aspect, e.g., ideologies with respect to revolution 321.094  
*See Manual at 324 vs. 320.5, 320.9, 909, 930–990*
- .508 Groups of people  
 Ideologies based on groups of people relocated to 320.56
- .51 Liberalism
- .512 Traditional liberalism  
 Ideologies and theories stressing rationalism, individualism, limited government  
 Including libertarianism  
*See also 320.52 for conservatism*
- .513 Modern liberalism  
 Ideologies and theories stressing responsibility of the state for welfare of its citizens

- .52            Conservatism
- Ideologies and theories stressing limits of human reason and virtue, value of tradition, caution in effecting social change
- See also 320.512 for traditional liberalism*
- .53            Collectivism and fascism
- Standard subdivisions are added for collectivism and fascism together, for collectivism alone
- Class here new left, radicalism, totalitarianism, comprehensive works on authoritarianism
- For religiously oriented authoritarianism, see 320.55*
- See Manual at 335 vs. 306.345, 320.53*
- 
- >            320.531–320.532    Specific collectivist ideologies
- Class comprehensive works in 320.53
- .531            Socialism
- Nonauthoritarian systems
- Class authoritarian systems of socialism in 320.532; class interdisciplinary works on socialism in 335
- .531 2            Non-Marxian and quasi-Marxian socialism
- Including Christian socialism, Fabian socialism
- .531 5            Marxian socialism (Democratic socialism, Social democracy)
- Class comprehensive political works on Marxian systems of collectivism in 320.532
- .532            Communism
- Class here authoritarian systems of socialism, comprehensive political works on Marxian systems of collectivism
- Class interdisciplinary works on Marxism in 335.4
- For nonauthoritarian Marxian socialism, see 320.5315*
- .532 093–.532 099    Specific continents, countries, localities
- Class communism as formulated and practiced in former Soviet Union in 320.5322; class systems of communism as formulated and practiced in specific nations outside of former Soviet Union in 320.5323093–320.5323099, e.g., Maoism 320.53230951
- .532 2            Marxism-Leninism
- Class here communism as formulated and practiced in former Soviet Union
- For variant forms of Marxism-Leninism, see 320.5323*

- .532 3 Variant forms of communism  
 Systems of communism, of Marxism-Leninism, other than ones accepted in former Soviet Union  
 Including Trotskyism
- .533 Fascism  
 Class here falangism, national socialism, neo-Nazism  
 Class interdisciplinary works on fascism in 335.6  
*See also 320.569924 for anti-Semitism*
- .54 Nationalism, regionalism, internationalism  
 Standard subdivisions are added for nationalism, regionalism, internationalism together; for nationalism and regionalism together; for nationalism alone; for regionalism alone  
 Class here regional nationalism, ethnic nationalism, pan-nationalism
- .540 1–.540 7 Standard subdivisions  
 Standard subdivisions of nationalism and regionalism by areas, regions, places in general relocated to 320.54091, plus notation 01–07 from table under 320.54091; standard subdivisions of nationalism and regionalism by specific continents, countries, localities relocated to 320.54093–320.54099, plus notation 01–07 from table under 320.54093–320.54099
- .540 8 Groups of people  
 Nationalism and regionalism with respect to groups of people by areas, regions, places in general relocated to 320.54091, plus notation 08 from table under 320.54091; nationalism and regionalism with respect to groups of people by specific continents, countries, localities relocated to 320.54093–320.54099, plus notation 08 from table under 320.54093–320.54099
- .540 899 6 Africans and people of African descent  
 Do not use for Black nationalism; class in 320.546
- .540 9 History, geographic treatment, biography
- .540 91 Areas, regions, places in general  
 Add to base number 320.54091 the numbers following  
 —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., Arab nationalism 320.5409174927; then add further as follows:  
 01–07 Standard subdivisions [*formerly* 320.5401–320.5407]  
 08 Groups of people [*formerly* 320.5408]  
 08996 Africans and people of African descent  
 Do not use for Black nationalism; class in 320.546  
 09 History, geographic treatment, biography  
 092 Biography [*formerly* 320.54092]

- .540 92                    Biography
- Biography of nationalism and regionalism with respect to groups of people by areas, regions, places in general relocated to 320.54091, plus notation 092 from table under 320.54091; biography of nationalism and regionalism with respect to groups of people by specific continents, countries, localities relocated to 320.54093–320.54099, plus notation 092 from table under 320.54093–320.54099
- .540 93–.540 99        Specific continents, countries, localities
- Add to base number 320.5409 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., Swedish nationalism 320.5409485; then add further as follows:
- 01–07    Standard subdivisions [*formerly* 320.5401–320.5407]
- 08        Groups of people [*formerly* 320.5408]
- 08996    Africans and people of African descent  
    Do not use for Black nationalism; class in 320.546
- 09        History, geographic treatment, biography
- 092       Biography [*formerly* 320.54092]
- .540 956 94                Palestine; Israel
- Number built according to instructions under 320.54093–320.54099
- Class here Zionism
- .540 96                    Africa
- Number built according to instructions under 320.54093–320.54099
- Class here Pan-Africanism
- .546                        Black nationalism
- See also 320.54096 for Pan-Africanism*
- .548                        Internationalism
- Ideology based on political activity that focuses on the universal human condition rather than the narrow interests of a particular nation
- [.549]                      Regional nationalism
- Number discontinued; class in 320.54
- .55                         Religiously oriented ideologies
- Including theocracy
- Class Zionism in 320.54095694
- For Christian socialism, see 320.5312*
- .557                        Islamic ideologies
- Class here Islamic fundamentalism, Islamism
- For ideologies of Black Muslim movement, see 320.558*
- See Manual at 320.557 vs. 297.09, 297.272, 322.1*

- .558      **Black Muslim movement**  
             Class interdisciplinary works on the Black Muslim movement in 297.87
- .56      **Ideologies based on groups of people [*formerly* 320.508]**  
             Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 320.56 in the number coming last, e.g., multicultural feminism 320.5622 (*not* 320.561)
- .561      **Multiculturalism**  
             Ideologies based on preserving the various cultural identities within a society
- .562      **Ideologies by gender or sex**
- .562 2      Feminism  
             Ideologies based on equality of the sexes
- .566      **Ideologies by miscellaneous social statuses**
- .566 2      Populism  
             Ideologies based on defending the interests of the common people
- .569      **Ideologies by ethnic and national groups**  
             Class here racism (ideologies based on assumptions of racial superiority)  
             Class Nazism in 320.533  
             *For multiculturalism, see 320.561*
- .569 001–.569 009      Standard subdivisions
- .569 05–.569 09      People of mixed ancestry with ethnic origins from more than one continent; Europeans and people of European descent  
             Add to base number 320.569 notation 05–09 from Table 5, e.g., white supremacy as a political ideology 320.56909
- .569 1–.569 9      Specific ethnic and national groups  
             Add to base number 320.569 notation 1–9 from Table 5, e.g., anti-Semitism as a political ideology 320.569924
- .57      **Anarchism**  
             Class interdisciplinary works on anarchism in 335.83
- .58      **Environmentalist political ideologies**  
             Class here ecologism, environmentalism, green politics  
             *See Manual at 333.72 vs. 304.28, 320.58, 363.7*

**.6 Policy making**

Class here decision making, planning, formulation of programs and proposals, policy studies, public policy

Class a specific aspect of policy making with the aspect, e.g., policy making on religion 322.1, legislative lobbying 328.38

*For policy making in a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., policy making for economic development 338.9*

*See Manual at 300, 320.6 vs. 352–354: Public policy*

**.8 Local government**

Including boundaries and forms of local government

Class here relation of local government to higher levels of government

Class boundaries and forms of specific kinds of local governments in 320.83–320.85; class comprehensive works on relation of parts of a state to the whole in 321.01

*For local administration, see 352.14*

**.83 Intermediate levels**

Government levels between national, state, or large provincial government and local municipalities

Class here arrondissements, counties, districts, Landkreise, provinces as intermediate level units

*For provinces as state-level units, see 321.023*

*See Manual at 352.13 vs. 352.15*

**.84 Rural government****.85 City government**

Including incorporation

Class here urban government

*See also 321.06 for city-states*

**.854 Forms of city government**

Including city manager, commission, mayor-council government

**.859 Annexation****.9 Political situation and conditions**

Class general political history in 900

*See Manual at 320.9, 320.4 vs. 351; also at 324 vs. 320.5, 320.9, 909, 930–990; also at 909, 930–990 vs. 320*

**.900 1–.900 8 Standard subdivisions**

[.900 9] History, geographic treatment, biography  
 Do not use for history; class in 320.901–320.905. Do not use for geographic treatment and biography; class in 320.91–320.99

.901–905 History  
 Add to base number 320.9 notation 01–05 from Table 2, e.g., political conditions in 19th century 320.9034

.91–99 Geographic treatment and biography  
 Add to base number 320.9 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., political conditions in Egypt 320.962

### 321 Systems of governments and states

Class here kinds of states

Class selecting chief executives in 324; class comprehensive works on heads of state and administration in 352.23. Class a kind of head of state or administration characteristic of a specific system of government with the system, e.g., prime ministers responsible to legislatures 321.8043, constitutional monarchs 321.87

*See Manual at 909, 930–990 vs. 320.4, 321, 321.09*

#### SUMMARY

- 321.001–.009 Standard subdivisions
- .01–.09 [Systems of relating parts of a state to the whole, kinds of states, change in system of government]
- .1 Family-based government
- .3 Feudalism
- .5 Elitist systems
- .6 Absolute monarchy
- .8 Democratic government
- .9 Authoritarian government

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions

.01 \*Systems of relating parts of a state to the whole

Class here unitary states (states in which full control is vested in central governments)

Class systems of relating parts of a state to the whole in specific kinds of states in 321.02–321.08

> 321.02–321.08 Kinds of states

Class kinds of states in specific jurisdictions in 320.43–320.49; class comprehensive works in 321

*For comprehensive works on unitary states, see 321.01; for kinds of states defined by source or exercise of governmental authority, see 321.3–321.9*

\*Do not use notation 093–099 from Table 1 for systems of governments and states in a specific jurisdiction; class in 320.43–320.49

- .02        \*Federations  
               Class here confederations  
               *For proposed regional and world federations, see 321.04*
- .023       \*Relation of federal to state, regional, provincial governments  
               Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading  
               Class here states and provinces in federal systems
- .03        Empires  
               Systems in which a group of states are governed by a single sovereign power  
               *See also 325.32 for imperialism*
- .04        Proposed regional and world unions  
               Unitary or federal  
               Class here supranational states
- .040 94        Europe  
                   Class European Union in 341.2422
- .05        \*Nation-states  
               States considered as political embodiments of ethnic groups  
               Class a national state or nation in the sense of a sovereign state in 320.1
- .06        \*Small states  
               Including city-states, ministates  
               *See also 320.85 for cities as local governments; also 327.101 for international role of small states*
- .07        Ideal states (Utopias)  
               Including anarchy as an ideal system  
               Class proposed regional and world unions in 321.04
- .08        \*States with restricted sovereignty and non-self-governing territories  
               Including colonies, mandates, protectorates
- .09        Change in system of government  
               Including coups d'état  
               *See Manual at 909, 930–990 vs. 320.4, 321, 321.09*
- .094        Revolution  
               Class interdisciplinary works on revolution in 303.64

\*Do not use notation 093–099 from Table 1 for systems of governments and states in a specific jurisdiction; class in 320.43–320.49

**.1 Family-based government**

Ancient and modern

Class here government in nonliterate societies, tribal government

**> 321.3–321.9 Systems of government defined by source or exercise of authority**

Class here kinds of states defined by source or exercise of governmental authority

Class comprehensive works in 321

**.3 \*Feudalism****.5 \*Elitist systems**

Including aristocracy, oligarchy, plutocracy, theocracy

**.6 \*Absolute monarchy**

Including divine right of kings

Class here autocracy

**.8 \*Democratic government**

.804 Systems defined by method of selecting chief executives

.804 2 \*Presidential government

Government by a chief executive selected independently of a legislature

.804 3 \*Cabinet government

Government by a cabinet of ministers (including a chief executive) responsible to a legislature

**.86 \*Republics**

Class republics defined by method of selecting chief executives in 321.804

**.87 \*Limited monarchy (Constitutional monarchy)**

Class cabinet government in limited monarchies in 321.8043

**.9 \*Authoritarian government**

Class here despotism, dictatorship, totalitarian government

*For elitist systems, see 321.5; for absolute monarchy, see 321.6*

\*Do not use notation 093–099 from Table 1 for systems of governments and states in a specific jurisdiction; class in 320.43–320.49

- .92      **\*Communist government**  
           Class here proletarian dictatorship  
           Class communism as a political ideology in 320.532; class interdisciplinary works on communism in 335.4

- .94      **\*Fascist government**  
           Including corporate state  
           Class here Nazi system  
           Class fascism as a political ideology in 320.533; class interdisciplinary works on fascism in 335.6

## **322      Relation of the state to organized groups and their members**

Relation of the state to groups other than regular political parties

*For groups organized for a specific purpose not provided for here, see the purpose, e.g., groups organized to promote political rights 323.5*

### **.1      Religious organizations and groups**

Class here church and state, religion and state; government policy on religion

Class freedom of religion in 323.442

*See Manual at 320.557 vs. 297.09, 297.272, 322.1; also at 322.1 vs. 201.72, 261.7, 292–299*

### **.2      Labor movements and groups**

Including general strikes

*For general strikes directed primarily toward employers or focused upon limited economic objectives, see 331.8925*

*See also 323.3223 for relation of the state to the working class*

### **.3      Business and industry**

### **.4      Political action groups**

Class here protest groups; nonelectoral tactics used by political action groups, e.g., civil disobedience; specific kinds of conflicts between political action groups and constituted authorities, e.g., riots

Class political action committees (United States fund-raising groups) in 324.4; class interdisciplinary works on conflicts and their resolution in 303.6

\*Do not use notation 093–099 from Table 1 for systems of governments and states in a specific jurisdiction; class in 320.43–320.49

- .42            Revolutionary and subversive groups
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Class here revolutionary and subversive activities and branches of political parties
- Class comprehensive works on parties and international party organizations engaged in both nonviolent political activity and revolutionary activity in 324.2
- .420 93–.420 99            Specific continents, countries, localities
- Class here specific revolutionary and subversive groups irrespective of political persuasion or stated goals, e.g., Ku Klux Klan 322.420973
- Class impact of specific revolutionary and subversive groups on general history in 930–990
- .43            Pressure groups
- Groups striving for immediate and relatively limited goals
- Class a pressure group working for a specific goal with the goal, e.g., a group working for better law enforcement 363.23
- .44            Reform movements
- Groups seeking to change a substantial social function
- Class interdisciplinary works on social reform in 303.484. Class a movement seeking to reform a specific social function with the function, e.g., women's suffrage movement 324.623, welfare reform 361.68

.5            **Armed services**

**323          Civil and political rights**

Standard subdivisions are added for civil and political rights together, for civil rights alone

Class here civil liberties, human rights, individual freedom, rights of humanity; relations of the state to its residents

Class welfare aspects of human rights in 361.614

*For relation of the state to organized groups other than political parties and related organizations, see 322; for relation of the state to political parties and related organizations, see 324; for human rights law, see 341.48; for civil rights law, see 342.085*

**SUMMARY**

- 323.01–.09            Standard subdivisions; citizen participation; resistance, repression, persecution**
- .1            **Civil and political rights of nondominant groups**
- .3            **Civil and political rights of other social groups**
- .4            **Specific civil rights; limitation and suspension of civil rights**
- .5            **Political rights**
- .6            **Citizenship and related topics**

- .01 Philosophy and theory  
Class here natural rights
- .04 Citizen participation; resistance, repression, persecution
- .042 Citizen participation  
Class here participation of citizens in governmental processes, participatory democracy  
Class citizen participation in a specific issue with the issue, e.g., participation in public school evaluation 379.158
- .044 Resistance, repression, persecution  
Class limitation and suspension of civil rights in 323.49
- .08 Groups of people  
Class here groups of people enforcing civil and political rights, groups of people participating in the abuse of civil and political rights, groups of people working for civil and political rights in general  
Do not use for civil and political rights of nondominant groups; class in 323.1. Do not use for civil and political rights of other social groups; class in 323.3
- .1 Civil and political rights of nondominant groups**  
Standard subdivisions are added for either civil or political rights or both  
Class specific civil rights of nondominant groups in 323.4; class specific political rights of nondominant groups in 323.5; class interdisciplinary works on nondominant groups in 305.5  
*For civil and political rights of specific nondominant groups other than members of ethnic and national groups, see 323.3*
- [.109 3–.109 9] Specific continents, countries, localities  
Do not use; class in 323.13–323.19
- .11 Ethnic and national groups  
Standard subdivisions are added for either civil or political rights or both  
Class interdisciplinary works on ethnic and national groups in 305.8
- [.110 93–.110 99] Specific continents, countries, localities  
Do not use; class in 323.13–323.19
- .111–.119 Specific ethnic and national groups  
Add to base number 323.11 notation 1–9 from Table 5, e.g., civil rights of Jews 323.11924, of African Americans 323.1196073  
Subdivisions are added for either civil or political rights or both (Option: Class civil and political rights of North American native peoples in 970.5; prefer 323.1197 (Option: Class civil and political rights of South American native peoples in 980.5; prefer 323.1198)  
Class members of specific ethnic and national groups who are also members of other social groups in 323.3

.13–.19 Nondominant groups, ethnic and national groups in specific continents, countries, localities

Add to base number 323.1 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., civil rights of national minorities in China 323.151

Subdivisions are added for either civil or political rights or both

Class specific ethnic and national groups in specific continents, countries, localities in 323.111–323.119; class other specific nondominant groups in specific continents, countries, localities in 323.3

### **.3 Civil and political rights of other social groups**

Groups other than ethnic and national groups

Class a specific civil right of social groups in 323.4; class a specific political right of social groups in 323.5

[.301–.309] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 323.01–323.09

.32 Groups identified by miscellaneous social attributes

Add to base number 323.32 the numbers following —086 in notation 0862–0869 from Table 1, e.g., working class 323.3223, intellectuals 323.3231

Subdivisions are added for either civil or political rights or both

.34 Women

Standard subdivisions are added for either civil or political rights or both

Class women identified by miscellaneous social characteristics in 323.32

.35 Age groups

Standard subdivisions are added for either civil or political rights or both

Class age groups identified by miscellaneous social characteristics in 323.32; class women regardless of age group in 323.34

.352 Young people

Standard subdivisions are added for either civil or political rights or both

Class here children

.353 Young and middle-aged adults

Standard subdivisions are added for either civil or political rights or both

Class comprehensive works on adults in 323

.354 People in late adulthood

Standard subdivisions are added for either civil or political rights or both

### **.4 Specific civil rights; limitation and suspension of civil rights**

[.401–.409] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 323.01–323.09

.42 Equal protection of law

- .43           Personal security  
                   Including right to bear arms, right to life  
                   Class right to privacy in 323.448; class legal aspects of right to life in 342.085
- .44           Freedom of action (Liberty)  
                   Class here freedom of expression, intellectual freedom  
                   *For rights of assembly and association, see 323.47; for right of petition, see 323.48*
- .442          Freedom of conscience and religion
- .443          Freedom of speech
- .445          Freedom of publication  
                   Class here freedom of information, freedom of the press
- .448          Right to privacy
- .448 2        Freedom from government surveillance  
                   Surveillance by interception of mail, electronic monitoring, other means  
                   Class governmental databases in 323.4483
- .448 3        Freedom from misuse of information in databases and government records
- .46           Property rights  
                   Including freedom of contract  
                   Class interdisciplinary works on economic rights in 330
- .47           Rights of assembly and association
- .48           Right of petition  
                   Class here comprehensive works on rights of petition and assembly  
                   *For right of assembly, see 323.47*
- .49           Limitation and suspension of civil rights  
                   Including harassment through abuse of power, e.g., detention of dissidents for alleged mental health problems  
                   Class limitation and suspension of specific rights in 323.42–323.48
- [.490 8]      Groups of people  
                   Do not use for limitation and suspension of rights of nondominant groups; class in 323.1. Do not use for limitation and suspension of rights of other social groups; class in 323.3

**.5 Political rights**

Including right to hold office, right to representation

Class right of assembly in 323.47; class right of petition in 323.48; class exercise of political rights in 324

*For citizenship and related rights, see 323.6; for voting rights, see 324.62*

[.508]

Groups of people

Do not use for political rights of nondominant groups; class in 323.1. Do not use for political rights of other social groups; class in 323.3

**.6 Citizenship and related topics**

Standard subdivisions are added for citizenship and related topics together, for citizenship alone

**.62 Acquisition of citizenship**

Including acquisition of citizenship by marriage

**.623 Naturalization****.63 Relation of the state to aliens and people with citizenship problems**

Including dual nationality, stateless persons

**.631 Aliens**

Including asylum

Class naturalization of aliens in 323.623

**.64 Expatriation and repatriation**

Class comprehensive works on refugees in 325.21

**.65 Duties and obligations of citizens**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Including loyalty, loyalty oaths

**.67 Passports and visas****324 The political process**

Class here elections

*See Manual at 324 vs. 320; also at 324 vs. 320.5, 320.9, 909, 930–990; also at 909, 930–990 vs. 320*

## SUMMARY

- 324.09           **History, geographic treatment, biography**  
  .1           **International party organizations, auxiliaries, activities**  
  .2           **Political parties**  
  .3           **Auxiliary party organizations**  
  .4           **Interest and pressure groups**  
  .5           **Nominating candidates**  
  .6           **Election systems and procedures; suffrage**  
  .7           **Conduct of election campaigns**  
  .9           **History and geographic treatment of elections**

[.023]           Politics as a profession, occupation, hobby

                  Do not use; class in 324.22

.09            History, geographic treatment, biography

                  Do not use for history and geographic treatment of elections; class in 324.9

**.1            International party organizations, auxiliaries, activities**

                  Not directly controlled by specific national parties

                  Class revolutionary and subversive activities and branches of party organizations in 322.42

>            324.13–324.17 International organizations, auxiliaries, activities of parties identified primarily by position on right-to-left spectrum

                  Class organizations, auxiliaries, activities of parties not primarily identified by position on right-to-left spectrum in 324.18; class comprehensive works in 324.1

.13            International organizations of rightist parties

                  Including international anticommunist leagues and their activities, monarchist parties

.14            International organizations of conservative parties

.15            International organizations of centrist parties

.16            International organizations of liberal parties

*For international organizations of social democratic parties, see 324.172*

.17            International organizations of leftist and labor-oriented parties

                  Including First International

.172           International organizations of social democratic parties

.174           International organizations of nonauthoritarian socialist parties

                  Including Second and Socialist Internationals

*For international organizations of social democratic parties, see 324.172*

- .175 International organizations of communist parties  
Including Third (Communist) and Fourth (Trotskyist) Internationals, Cominform
- .18 International organizations of other parties  
Not primarily identified by position on right-to-left spectrum  
Including libertarian parties  
Add to base number 324.18 the numbers following 08 in notation 082–087 from table under 324.24–324.29, e.g., international organizations of religious parties 324.182

## .2 Political parties

*For revolutionary and subversive activities and branches of parties, see 322.42; for international party organizations and activities, see 324.1; for auxiliary organizations, see 324.3*

### SUMMARY

- 324.201–209 Standard subdivisions and relation of political parties to state and government
- .21 Kinds of parties
- .22 Leadership
- .23 Programs and ideologies
- .24–29 Parties in specific countries and localities in modern world

- [.202 3] Party politics as a profession, occupation, hobby  
Do not use; class in 324.22
- .204 Relation of political parties to state and government  
Including political patronage
- .209 History, geographic treatment, biography
- .209 4–.209 9 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
Do not use for parties in specific countries and localities; class in 324.24–324.29  
*See Manual at 324.2094–324.2099 and 324.24–324.29*
- .21 Kinds of parties  
Class here party finance, membership, organization; political machines
- .210 94–.210 99 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
Do not use for kinds of parties in specific countries and localities; class in 324.24–324.29. Do not use for party finance, membership, organizations of parties in specific countries and localities; class in 324.24–324.29 plus notation 011 from table under 324.24–324.29

- .212–.218      Specific kinds of parties
- Add to base number 324.21 the numbers following 0 in notation 02–08 from table under 324.24–324.29, e.g., centrist parties 324.215
- For leadership of specific kinds of parties, see 324.22; for programs and ideologies of specific kinds of parties, see 324.23; for specific parties and kinds of parties in a specific country or part of a country in modern world, see 324.24–324.29; for campaign finance of specific kinds of parties, see 324.78*
- .218 2          Religious parties
- Number built according to instructions under 324.212–324.218
- Class here comprehensive works on Christian democratic parties
- For nominally religious parties identified primarily by position on right-to-left spectrum or other ideology, see the position or ideology, e.g., conservative, secular Christian democratic parties 324.214*
- .22              Leadership
- Including selection of leaders
- Class here politics as a profession, occupation, hobby; politicians as a type of person
- For nominating candidates, see 324.5*
- .220 94–.220 99      Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
- Do not use for party leadership in specific countries and localities; class in 324.24–324.29 plus notation 012 from table under 324.24–324.29
- .23              Programs and ideologies
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Class here platforms, campaign literature
- For campaign literature on a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., campaign literature on United States participation in Vietnamese War 959.7043373*
- .230 94–.230 99      Geographic areas in modern world other than specific countries and states
- Do not use for party programs and ideologies in specific countries and localities; class in 324.24–324.29 plus notation 013 from table under 324.24–324.29
- .232–.238        Programs and ideologies of specific kinds of parties
- Add to base number 324.23 the numbers following 0 in notation 02–08 from table under 324.24–324.29, e.g., programs of centrist parties 324.235
- For programs and ideologies of specific parties and kinds of parties in a specific country or part of a country in modern world, see 324.24–324.29*

## .24-.29 Parties in specific countries and localities in modern world

The following add table is limited to countries and localities other than the United Kingdom, Germany, Austria, Italy, Switzerland, Canada, United States, Australia; special developments for those countries follow the add table

Except where specifically instructed to the contrary below, for a country or for localities within a country add to base number 324.2 notation 4-9 from Table 2 for the specific country, e.g., parties of France 324.244; then add to the number according to the table below, e.g., parties in Paris 324.24400944361, French Communist Party 324.244075, French Communist Party in Paris 324.2440750944361:

- 001-009 Standard subdivisions
- 01 General topics
  - Class general topics of specific parties in 02-08
- 011 Organization, membership, finance
  - Class here political machines
  - Class leadership in 012; class comprehensive works on party organization, membership, finance in 324.21
- 012 Leadership
  - Including selection of leaders
  - Class nominating candidates in 015; class comprehensive works on party leadership in 324.22
- 013 Programs and ideologies
  - Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
  - Class here platforms, campaign literature
  - Class comprehensive works on party programs and ideologies in 324.23
  - For campaign literature on a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., campaign literature on United States participation in Vietnamese War 959.7043373*
- 014 Auxiliary party organizations
  - Class comprehensive works on auxiliary party organizations in 324.3
- 015 Nominating party candidates
  - Class here nomination campaigns; results of campaigns, e.g., delegate counts
  - Class comprehensive works on nominating candidates in 324.5; class comprehensive works on nomination and election campaigns in 324.9
- 0152 Nominating by caucuses and co-optation
- 0154 Nominating by primaries
- 0156 Nominating by conventions
  - For selecting delegates to nominating conventions by caucuses and co-optation, see 0152; for selecting delegates to nominating conventions by primaries, see 0154*
- 02 Parties existing only prior to 1945
  - Parties existing prior to 1945 and ceasing existence after 1945 relocated to 03-08
  - Class comprehensive works on parties existing only prior to 1945 in 324.212

(continued)

- .24-.29 Parties in specific countries and localities in modern world (continued)
- >03-08 Parties founded or in existence after 1945
    - Class here parties existing prior to 1945 and ceasing existence after 1945 [*formerly* 02]
    - Class comprehensive works on specific kinds of parties founded or in existence after 1945 in 324.21; class comprehensive works on parties founded or in existence after 1945 in specific countries in base number for the country in 324.24-324.29
  - >03-07 Parties founded or in existence after 1945 identified primarily by position on right-to-left spectrum
    - Class parties that are identified by position on right-to-left spectrum and another ideology in 08; class comprehensive works in base number for the country in 324.24-324.29
  - 03 Rightist parties
    - Including monarchist parties
  - 038 Neofascist and neo-Nazi parties
    - Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
    - See also 02 for fascist and Nazi parties founded before 1945*
  - 04 Conservative parties
  - 05 Centrist parties
  - 06 Liberal parties
  - 07 Leftist and worker parties
  - 072 Social democratic parties
  - 074 Socialist parties
    - For social democratic parties, see 072*
  - 075 Communist parties
  - 08 Parties founded or in existence after 1945 not identified primarily by position on right-to-left spectrum
    - Including libertarian, farmers' parties
  - 082 Religious parties
    - Class nominally religious parties identified primarily by position on right-to-left spectrum or other ideology with the position or ideology, e.g., centrist, secular Christian democratic parties 05
  - 083 Nationalist parties
  - 084 Regionalist parties
    - Class here separatist, sovereigntist parties
  - 087 Environmentalist parties (Green parties)

(Option: Arrange specific parties of a specific country alphabetically, e.g., Labour Party of United Kingdom 324.241)

Class comprehensive works on parties in 324.2; class comprehensive works on specific kinds of parties in 324.21

*See Manual at 324.2094-324.2099 and 324.24-324.29*

**Special developments follow for selected specific countries whose party systems deviate from the above pattern**

## SUMMARY

- |           |  |
|-----------|--|
| 324.241   | <b>Parties of United Kingdom</b>                                   |
| .243      | <b>Parties of Germany</b>  |
| .243 6    | <b>Parties of Austria</b>  |
| .245      | <b>Parties of Italy</b>  |
| .249 4    | <b>Parties of Switzerland</b>                                      |
| .271      | <b>Parties of Canada</b>   |
| .273      | <b>Parties of United States</b>                                    |
| .274-.279 | <b>Parties of states of United States and District of Columbia</b> |
| .294      | <b>Parties of Australia</b>  |
| .296 9    | <b>Parties in Hawaii</b>   |
- .241           Parties of United Kingdom
- .241 001-.241 009       Standard subdivisions
- .241 01           General topics of parties of United Kingdom
- Add to base number 324.24101 the numbers following 01 in notation 011-015 from table under 324.24-324.29, e.g., campaign literature of parties of United Kingdom 324.241013
- Class general topics of specific parties of United Kingdom in 324.24102-324.24109
- .241 02           Parties existing only prior to 1945
- Class here parties of Great Britain before union with Ireland, of England and Wales before union with Scotland
- Parties existing prior to 1945 and ceasing existence after 1945 relocated to 324.24104-324.24109
- 
- > 324.241 04-324.241 09 Parties founded or in existence after 1945
- Class here parties existing prior to 1945 and ceasing existence after 1945 [formerly 324.24102]
- .241 04           Conservative Party
- .241 06           Liberal Party and its successors
- Standard subdivisions are added for any or all liberal parties
- Class here Liberal Democrats
- .241 07           Labour Party
- .241 09           Other parties
- Add to base number 324.24109 the numbers following 0 in notation 03-08 from table under 324.24-324.29, e.g., Communist Party 324.2410975
- .243           Parties of Germany
- .243 001-.243 009       Standard subdivisions

- .243 01                    General topics
- Add to base number 324.24301 the numbers following 01 in notation 011–015 from table under 324.24–324.29, e.g., campaign literature of parties of Germany 324.243013
- Class general topics of specific parties of Germany in 324.24302–324.24308
- .243 02                    Parties existing only prior to 1945
- Parties existing prior to 1945 and ceasing existence after 1945 relocated to 324.24303–324.24308
- .243 023                  Rightist parties
- Including monarchist parties
- Class here rightist nationalist parties
- .243 023 8                National Socialist German Labor Party (Nazi Party)
- .243 024                  Conservative parties
- .243 025                  Centrist parties
- Class here German Center Party
- .243 026                  Liberal parties
- .243 027                  Leftist and worker parties
- 
- >                    324.243 03–324.243 08 Parties founded or in existence after 1945
- Class here parties existing prior to 1945 and ceasing existence after 1945 [*formerly* 324.24302]
- Class comprehensive works in 324.243
- 
- >                    324.243 03–324.243 07 Parties founded or in existence after 1945 identified primarily by position on right-to-left spectrum
- Class parties that are identified by position on right-to-left spectrum and another ideology in 324.24308; class comprehensive works in 324.243
- .243 03                    Rightist parties
- Including monarchist parties
- Class here rightist nationalist parties, German People's Union, National Democratic Party of Germany; Republican Party of Germany
- .243 038                  Neofascist and neo-Nazi parties
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- See also 324.2430238 for National Socialist German Labor Party (Nazi Party)*

- .243 04            Conservative parties  
                     Class here conservative religious parties, Christian Democratic Union of Germany (CDU), Christian Social Union (CSU)
- .243 05            Centrist parties
- .243 06            Liberal parties  
                     Class here Free Democratic Party
- .243 07            Leftist and worker parties
- .243 072           Social democratic parties  
                     Class here Social Democratic Party of Germany (SPD)
- .243 074           Socialist parties  
                     Class here Party of Democratic Socialism, The Left  
                     *For social democratic parties, see 324.243072*
- .243 075           Communist parties  
                     Class here German Communist Party, Communist Party of Germany, Socialist Unity Party of Germany (SED)
- .243 08            Parties founded or in existence after 1945 not identified primarily by position on right-to-left spectrum  
                     Including libertarian, farmers' parties
- .243 082           Religious parties  
                     Class conservative religious parties, Christian Democratic Union of Germany, Christian Social Union in 324.24304
- .243 083           Nationalist parties  
                     Class rightist nationalist parties, National Democratic Party of Germany in 324.24303
- .243 084           Regionalist parties  
                     Class here separatist, sovereigntist parties
- .243 087           Environmentalist parties (Green parties)  
                     Class here Greens
- .243 6             Parties of Austria
- .243 600 1–.243 600 9    Standard subdivisions
- .243 601            General topics  
                     Add to base number 324.243601 the numbers following 01 in notation 011–015 from table under 324.24–324.29, e.g., campaign literature of parties in Austria 324.2436013  
                     Class general topics of specific parties of Austria in 324.243602–324.243608

- .243 602                   Parties existing only prior to 1945  
                                   Parties existing prior to 1945 and ceasing existence after 1945  
                                   relocated to 324.243603–324.243608
- .243 602 3                Rightist parties  
                                   Class here rightist Pan-German national parties,  
                                   Pan-German People's Party (GDVP), Rural Federation (LB)
- .243 602 38             National socialist parties  
                                   Class here German National Socialist Labor Party  
                                   (DNSAP), National Socialist German Labor Party  
                                   (NSDAP), National Socialist Labor Party (NSAP)
- .243 602 4                Conservative parties  
                                   Class here Christian Social Party (CSP), Homeland Bloc
- .243 602 43             Fatherland Front
- .243 602 6                Liberal parties
- .243 602 7                Leftist and worker parties  
                                   Class here Social Democratic Worker Party (SDAP)
- 
- >                   324.243 603–324.243 608 Parties founded or in existence after 1945  
                                   Class here parties existing prior to 1945 and ceasing existence after 1945  
                                   [formerly 324.243602]  
                                   Class comprehensive works in 324.2436
- 
- >                   324.243 603–324.243 607 Parties founded or in existence after 1945 identified  
                                   primarily by position on right-to-left spectrum  
                                   Class parties that are identified by position on right-to-left spectrum and another  
                                   ideology in 324.243608; class comprehensive works in 324.2436
- .243 603                   Rightist parties  
                                   Class here rightist populist parties, Freedom Party of  
                                   Austria (FPÖ), Alliance for the Future of Austria (BZÖ)  
                                   [all formerly 324.243608]; rightist Pan-German nationalist  
                                   parties, Federation of Independents (VdU) [both formerly  
                                   324.2436083]
- .243 603 8                Neofascist and neo-Nazi parties  
                                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in  
                                   heading  
                                   Class here National Democratic Party (NDP)  
                                   *See also 324.24360238 for national socialist parties*
- .243 604                   Conservative parties  
                                   Class here Austrian People's Party (ÖVP)

- [.243 605]                    Centrist parties  
                                   Number discontinued; class in 324.2436
- .243 606                    Liberal parties  
                                   Class here Liberal Forum (LiF)
- .243 607                    Leftist and worker parties
- .243 607 2                   Social democratic parties  
                                   Class here Social Democratic Party of Austria (SPÖ)
- .243 607 5                   Communist parties  
                                   Class here Communist Party of Austria (KPÖ)
- .243 608                    Parties founded or in existence after 1945 not identified primarily  
                                   by position on right-to-left spectrum  
                                   Rightist populist parties, Freedom Party of Austria (FPÖ),  
                                   Alliance for the Future of Austria (BZÖ) relocated to  
                                   324.243603
- [.243 608 2]                Religious parties  
                                   Number discontinued; class in 324.243608
- .243 608 3                Nationalist parties  
                                   Rightist Pan-German nationalist parties, Federation of  
                                   Independents (VdU) relocated to 324.243603
- .243 608 7                Environmental parties (Green parties)  
                                   Class here Greens (Austrian Green Party)
- .245                        Parties of Italy
- .245 001–.245 009        Standard subdivisions
- .245 01                    General topics  
                                   Add to base number 324.24501 the numbers following 01 in  
                                   notation 011–015 from table under 324.24–324.29, e.g., campaign  
                                   literature of parties in Italy 324.245013  
                                   Class general topics of specific parties of Italy in  
                                   324.24502–324.24508
- .245 02                    Parties existing only prior to 1945
- 
- >                            324.245 023–324.245 027 Parties existing only prior to 1945 identified primarily  
                                   by position on right-to-left spectrum  
                                   Class parties that are identified by position on right-to-left spectrum and another  
                                   ideology in 324.245028; class comprehensive works in 324.24502
- .245 023                    Rightist parties

- .245 023 8 Fascist parties  
 Including Fascist Republican Party  
 Class here National Fascist Party
- .245 024 Conservative parties
- .245 025 Centrist parties
- .245 026 Liberal parties  
 Including Action Party (1853–1867)  
*See also 324.24506 for Action Party (1942–1947)*
- .245 027 Leftist parties  
 Including Party of Italian Workers, Socialist Party of Italian Workers (1893–1895), Socialist Party of Italian Workers (1925–1927), United Socialist Party (1922–1930)  
*See also 324.2450722 for Socialist Party of Italian Workers (1947–1951), United Socialist Party (1969–1971)*
- .245 028 Parties existing only prior to 1945 not identified primarily by position on right-to-left spectrum
- .245 028 2 Religious parties  
 Class here Italian Popular Party (1919–1926)  
 Class comprehensive works on Italian Popular Party (1919–1926) and Christian Democracy in 324.2450822  
*See also 324.245082 for Italian Popular Party (1994–2002)*
- 
- > 324.245 03–324.245 08 Parties founded or in existence after 1945  
 Class comprehensive works in 324.245
- 
- > 324.245 03–324.245 07 Parties founded or in existence after 1945 identified primarily by position on right-to-left spectrum  
 Class parties that are identified by position on right-to-left spectrum and another ideology in 324.24508; class comprehensive works in 324.245
- .245 03 Rightist parties  
 Including monarchist parties
- .245 038 Neofascist parties  
 Including Italian Social Movement, Italian Social Movement-Right National  
 Class National Alliance in 324.24504

- .245 04            Conservative parties  
                     Including Forward Italy, Italian Liberal Party (1943–1994), Italian  
                     Liberal Party (2004–), National Alliance
- .245 05            Centrist parties  
                     Including Democracy is Freedom-Daisy (Daisy), Italian  
                     Republican Party  
                     Class Democratic Party in 324.24506
- .245 06            Liberal parties  
                     Including Action Party (1942–1947), Democratic Party, Radical  
                     Party, Transnational Radical Party  
                     *See also 324.245026 for Action Party (1853–1867); also*  
                     *324.24504 for Italian Liberal Party (1943–1994), Italian*  
                     *Liberal Party (2004–)*
- .245 07            Leftist and worker parties  
                     Including Democratic Party of the Left, Democrats of the Left  
                     Class Democratic Party in 324.24506
- .245 072          Social democratic parties  
                     Including Italian Democratic Socialist Party (2004–)  
                     *See also 324.2450722 for Italian Democratic Socialist*  
                     *Party (1954–1995)*
- .245 072 2        Italian Democratic Socialist Party (1952–1995)  
                     Class here Socialist Party of Italian Workers (1947–1951),  
                     United Socialist Party (1969–1971)  
                     *See also 324.245027 for Socialist Party of Italian*  
                     *Workers (1893–1895), Socialist Party of Italian Workers*  
                     *(1925–1927), United Socialist Party (1922–1930);*  
                     *also 324.245072 for Italian Democratic Socialist Party*  
                     *(2004–)*
- .245 074          Socialist parties  
                     Including Socialist Party of Proletarian Unity (1947–1951)  
                     *For social democratic parties, see 324.245072*  
                     *See also 324.2450742 for Socialist Party of Proletarian*  
                     *Unity (1943–1947)*
- .245 074 2        Italian Socialist Party  
                     Class here Socialist Party of Proletarian Unity (1943–1947)  
                     *See also 324.245074 for Socialist Party of Proletarian*  
                     *Unity (1947–1951)*

- .245 075 Communist parties  
 Including Communist Refoundation Party, Party of Italian Communists  
 Class Democratic Party of the Left, Democrats of the Left in 324.24507
- .245 075 2 Italian Communist Party
- .245 08 Parties founded or in existence after 1945 not identified primarily by position on right-to-left spectrum
- .245 082 Religious parties  
 Including Christian Democratic Center, Italian Popular Party (1994–2002), Union of Christian and Center Democrats, United Christian Democrats  
*See also 324.2450282 for Italian Popular Party (1919–1926)*
- .245 082 2 Christian Democracy  
 Class here comprehensive works on Italian Popular Party (1919–1926) and Christian Democracy together; on Italian Popular Party (1919–1926), Christian Democracy, Italian Popular Party (1994–2002) together  
 Class Italian Popular Party (1994–2002) in 324.245082  
*For Italian Popular Party (1919–1926), see 324.2450282*
- .245 083 Nationalist parties
- .245 084 Regionalist parties  
 Including Northern League, South Tyrolean People's Party, Valdotanian Union  
 Class here separatist, sovereigntist parties
- .245 087 Environmentalist parties (Green parties)  
 Class here Federation of the Greens
- .245 1–.245 9 Parties of regions and provinces of Italy  
 Add to base number 324.245 the numbers following—45 in notation 451–459 from Table 2 for region or province, e.g., parties in Veneto region 324.2453; then add 0\* and to the result add the numbers following 324.2450 in 324.24501–324.24508, e.g., Venetian League 324.2453084
- .249 4 Parties of Switzerland
- .249 400 1–.249 400 9 Standard subdivisions

\*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

- .249 401                    General topics
- Add to base number 324.249401 the numbers following 01 in notation 011–015 from table under 324.24–324.29, e.g., campaign literature of parties in Switzerland 324.2494013
- Class general topics of specific parties of Switzerland in 324.249402–324.249408
- .249 402                    Parties existing only prior to 1945
- Parties existing prior to 1945 and ceasing existence after 1945 relocated to 324.249403–324.249408
- 
- >                    324.249 403–324.249 408 Parties founded or in existence after 1945
- Class here parties existing prior to 1945 and ceasing existence after 1945 [*formerly* 324.249402]
- Class comprehensive works in 324.2494
- 
- >                    324.249 403–324.249 407 Parties founded or in existence after 1945 identified primarily by position on right-to-left spectrum
- Class parties that are identified by position on right-to-left spectrum and another ideology in 324.249408; class comprehensive works in 324.2494
- .249 403                    Rightist parties
- Class here rightist national parties, National Action for People and Homeland (NA), Swiss Democrats (SD) [*all formerly* 324.2494083]; Swiss Peoples Party (SVP), Freedom Party of Switzerland (FPS)
- .249 404                    Conservative parties
- Class here conservative religious parties, Christian Democratic People's Party of Switzerland (CVP) [*both formerly* 324.2494082]
- .249 405                    Centrist parties
- .249 406                    Liberal parties
- Class here FDP.The Liberals, Radical Democratic Party (FDP, Free Democratic Party, Freethinking Democratic Party, Liberal Democratic Party, Radical Free Democratic Party), Swiss Liberal Party (LPS)
- .249 407                    Leftist and worker parties
- Class here leftist religious parties, Christian Social Party (CSP) [*both formerly* 324.2494082]
- .249 407 2                    Social democratic parties
- Class here Social Democratic Party of Switzerland (SPS)

- .249 407 4                    Socialist parties  
                                   Class here Swiss Labour Party (PdA)  
                                   *For social democratic parties, see 324.2494072*
- .249 407 5                    Communist parties  
                                   Class here Revolutionary Marxist League (RML), Socialist  
                                   Worker Party (SAP)
- .249 408                    Parties founded or in existence after 1945 not identified primarily  
                                   by position on right-to-left spectrum  
                                   Including libertarian parties, farmers' parties  
                                   Class here National Alliance of Independents (LdU)
- .249 408 2                    Religious parties  
                                   Class here Protestant People's Party of Switzerland (EVP),  
                                   Confederal Democratic Union (EDU)  
                                   Conservative religious parties, Christian Democratic  
                                   People's Party of Switzerland (CVP) relocated to  
                                   324.249404; leftist religious parties, Christian Social Party  
                                   (CSP) relocated to 324.249407
- .249 408 3                    Nationalist parties  
                                   Rightist national parties, National Action for People and  
                                   Homeland (NA), Swiss Democrats (SD) relocated to  
                                   324.249403
- .249 408 4                    Regionalist parties  
                                   Class here separatist, sovereigntist parties; Ticino League
- .249 408 7                    Environmental parties (Green parties)  
                                   Class here Green Party of Switzerland (GPS), Green  
                                   Alliance (GB)
- .271                    Parties of Canada
- .271 001–.271 009            Standard subdivisions
- .271 01                    General topics of parties of Canada  
                                   Add to base number 324.27101 the numbers following 01 in  
                                   notation 011–015 from table under 324.24–324.29, e.g., campaign  
                                   literature of parties of Canada 324.271013  
                                   Class general topics of specific parties of Canada in  
                                   324.27102–324.27109
- .271 02                    Parties existing only prior to 1945  
                                   Parties existing prior to 1945 and ceasing existence after 1945  
                                   relocated to 324.27104–324.27109

- > 324.271 04–324.271 09 Parties founded or in existence after 1945
- Class here parties existing prior to 1945 and ceasing existence after 1945  
[formerly 324.27102]
- .271 04 Conservative Party of Canada (2003–) and its predecessors  
Including Reform Party of Canada, Canadian Reform  
Conservative Alliance  
Class here Conservative Party of Canada (1938–1942) and the  
party under former names, e.g., Liberal-Conservative Party;  
Progressive Conservative Party
- .271 05 Social Credit Party of Canada
- .271 06 Liberal Party of Canada
- .271 07 New Democratic Party of Canada
- .271 09 Other parties  
Add to base number 324.27109 the numbers following 0 in  
notation 03–08 from table under 324.24–324.29, e.g., nationalist  
parties 324.2710983
- .271 098 4 Regionalist parties  
Number built according to instructions under 324.27109  
Class here separatist, sovereigntist parties; Bloc québécois  
*See also 324.27140984 for Parti québécois*
- .271 1–.271 9 Parties of provinces and territories of Canada  
Add to base number 324.271 the numbers following —71 in notation  
711–719 from Table 2 for province or territory, e.g., parties in the  
Yukon Territory 324.27191; then add 0\* and to the result add the  
numbers following 324.2710 in 324.27101–324.27109, e.g., Yukon  
Party 324.2719104
- .271 409 84 Regionalist parties of Quebec  
Number built according to instructions under  
324.2711–324.2719  
Class here separatist, sovereigntist parties; Parti  
québécois  
*See also 324.2710984 for Bloc québécois*
- .273 Parties of United States  
*For parties in specific states and District of Columbia, see  
324.274–324.279*
- .273 01–.273 09 Standard subdivisions

\*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

- .273 1           General topics of parties of United States
- Add to base number 324.2731 the numbers following 01 in notation 011–015 from table under 324.24–324.29, e.g., campaign literature of parties of United States 324.27313
- Class general topics of specific parties of United States in 324.2732–324.2738
- .273 2           Parties existing only prior to 1945
- Including American (“Know-Nothing”) Party, Free Soil Party
- Parties existing prior to 1945 and ceasing existence after 1945 relocated to 324.2733–324.2738
- .273 22          Federalist Party
- Variant name: Federal Party
- .273 23          Whig Party
- Including National Republican Party
- .273 26          Jeffersonian Republican Party
- Variant name: Anti-federalist Party
- .273 27          Populist and progressive parties
- Including Progressive (“Bull Moose”) Party
- See also 324.2737 for Progressive Party (1948)*
- 
- > 324.273 3–324.273 8 Parties founded or in existence after 1945
- Class here parties existing prior to 1945 and ceasing existence after 1945 [*formerly* 324.2732]
- .273 3           Nationalist parties of the right
- Including American Independent Party; sectionalist parties, e.g., States’ Rights Party (Dixiecrats)
- .273 38          National Socialist White People’s Party
- Former name: American Nazi Party
- .273 4           Republican Party
- .273 6           Democratic Party
- Including Democratic-Republican Party
- .273 7           Leftist and worker parties
- Including Progressive Party (1948), Socialist Labor Party, Socialist Party, Socialist Workers Party
- See also 324.27327 for Progressive (“Bull Moose”) Party*
- .273 75          Communist Party

- .273 8                    Other parties founded or in existence after 1945  
                                  Including environmentalist, libertarian, prohibitionist, religious,  
                                  separatist parties  
                                  *See also 324.2733 for sectionalist parties*
- .274–.279                Parties of states of United States and District of Columbia  
                                  Add to base number 324.27 the numbers following —7 in notation 74–79  
                                  from Table 2 for state or District of Columbia, e.g., parties in New York  
                                  State 324.2747; then add 0\*, and to the result add the numbers following  
                                  324.273 in 324.2731–324.2738, e.g., Republican Party in New York  
                                  State 324.274704  
                                  Class comprehensive works in 324.273  
                                  *For parties in Hawaii, see 324.2969*
- A development for New York follows**
- .274 7                    Parties in New York
- .274 700 1–.274 700 9        Standard subdivisions
- .274 701–.274 702            General topics and parties existing only prior to 1945  
                                  Add to base number 324.27470 the numbers following 324.273  
                                  in 324.2731–324.2732, e.g., Whig Party 324.2747023
- .274 703                    Nationalist parties of the right
- .274 704                    Republican Party
- .274 706                    Democratic Party
- .274 707                    Leftist and worker parties
- .274 707 5                    Communist Party
- .274 708                    Other parties founded or in existence after 1945  
                                  Including Conservative Party, Liberal Party
- .294                      Parties of Australia
- .294 001–.294 009        Standard subdivisions
- .294 01                    General topics of parties of Australia  
                                  Add to base number 324.29401 the numbers following 01 in  
                                  notation 011–015 from table under 324.24–324.29, e.g., campaign  
                                  literature of parties of Australia 324.294013  
                                  Class general topics of specific parties of Australia in  
                                  324.29402–324.29409
- .294 02                    Parties existing only prior to 1945  
                                  Parties existing prior to 1945 and ceasing existence after 1945  
                                  relocated to 324.29404–324.29409

\*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

- > 324.294 04–324.294 09 Parties founded or in existence after 1945  
 Class here parties existing prior to 1945 and ceasing existence after 1945  
 [formerly 324.29402]
- .294 04 The Nationals  
 Former names: Australian Country Party, National Country Party,  
 National Party of Australia
- .294 05 Liberal Party of Australia
- .294 06 Democratic Labor Party
- .294 07 Australian Labor Party
- .294 09 Other parties  
 Add to base number 324.29409 the numbers following 0 in  
 notation 03–08 from table under 324.24–324.29, e.g., Australian  
 Democrats 324.294095
- .294 1–.294 8 Parties in states and territories of Australia  
 Add to base number 324.294 the numbers following —94 in notation  
 941–948 from Table 2 for state or territory, e.g., parties in New  
 South Wales 324.2944; then add 0\* and to the result add the numbers  
 following 324.2940 in 324.29401–324.29409, e.g., Australian Labor  
 Party in New South Wales 324.294407
- .296 9 Parties in Hawaii
- .296 900 1–.296 900 9 Standard subdivisions
- .296 901–.296 908 Parties in Hawaii  
 Add to base number 324.29690 the numbers following 324.273  
 in 324.2731–324.2738, e.g., Democratic Party in Hawaii  
 324.296906
- .3 Auxiliary party organizations**  
 Organizations attached to political parties, e.g., political clubs, women's  
 organizations, youth groups  
 Class revolutionary and subversive branches of political parties in 322.42  
*For auxiliary organizations of international party organizations, see 324.1*
- .309 4–.309 9 Geographic areas in modern world other than specific countries and  
 states  
 Do not use for auxiliary party organizations in a specific country  
 or state; class in 324.24–324.29 plus notation 014 from table under  
 324.24–324.29

\*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

**.4 Interest and pressure groups**

Class here influence and activities of groups in extragovernmental processes; political action committees (PACs, United States fund-raising groups); comprehensive works on lobbying

Class comprehensive works on interest groups, political action groups in 322.4; class comprehensive works on pressure groups in 322.43

*For legislative lobbying, see 328.38. For lobbying for a specific goal, see the goal, e.g., lobbying for penal reform 364.6*

**.5 Nominating candidates**

Class here campaigns for nomination; results of campaigns, e.g., delegate counts

Class comprehensive works on nomination and election campaigns in 324.9

.509 4–.509 9 Geographic areas in modern world other than specific countries and states

Do not use for nominating party candidates in a specific country or state; class in 324.24–324.29 plus notation 015 from table under 324.24–324.29

.52 Nominating by caucuses and co-optation

.520 94–.520 99 Geographic areas in modern world other than specific countries and states

Do not use for nominating party candidates by caucuses and co-optation in a specific country or state; class in 324.24–324.29 plus notation 0152 from table under 324.24–324.29

.54 Nominating by primaries

.540 94–.540 99 Geographic areas in modern world other than specific countries and states

Do not use for nominating party candidates by primaries in a specific country or state; class in 324.24–324.29 plus notation 0154 from table under 324.24–324.29

.56 Nominating by conventions

*For selecting delegates to nominating conventions by caucuses and co-optation, see 324.52; for selecting delegates to nominating conventions by primaries, see 324.54*

*See also 324.21 for convention finance*

.560 94–.560 99 Geographic areas in modern world other than specific countries and states

Do not use for nominating party candidates by conventions in a specific country or state; class in 324.24–324.29 plus notation 0156 from table under 324.24–324.29

**.6 Election systems and procedures; suffrage**

Standard subdivisions are added for election systems and procedures, suffrage together; for election systems alone; for election procedures alone

Class here comprehensive works on systems and procedures for nominations and elections

Class conduct of election campaigns in 324.7

*For nominating candidates, see 324.5; for manuals outlining election procedures that discuss laws or administrative regulations, see 342.07*

**.62 Suffrage**

Class here qualifications for voting, voting rights

Class comprehensive works on political rights in 323.5

**[.620 82] Women's suffrage**

Do not use; class in 324.623

**.623 Women's suffrage****.63 Electoral systems**

Including direct and indirect elections, electoral colleges

*For electoral basis of representation in legislative bodies, see 328.3347*

**.64 Registration of voters****.65 Voting procedures**

Including absentee voting, ballots and ballot systems, counting and certification of votes, election monitoring, election officials, procedures for contested elections, voting machines

**.66 Election fraud**

Class irregularities in campaign finance in 324.78; class election fraud as a crime in 364.1324

**.68 Recall**

Removal of an official from office by popular vote

**.7 Conduct of election campaigns**

Variant name: practical politics

Class here public relations for conduct of political election campaigns

*See also 324.5 for conduct of campaigns for nomination*

**.72 Strategy**

Including citizen participation

*For use and effect of media, see 324.73*

**.73 Use and effect of media**

Class here advertising for political election campaigns

.78 Campaign finance

Class party finance in 324.21

## .9 History and geographic treatment of elections

Class here election returns and results, studies of voting behavior; comprehensive works on campaigns

Class platforms, campaign literature in 324.23

*For campaigns for nomination, see 324.5; for conduct of election campaigns, see 324.7*

.900 1–.900 8 Standard subdivisions

[.900 9] History, geographic treatment, biography

Do not use for comprehensive works on history; class in 324.9. Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 324.91–324.99

[.900 901–.900 905] Historical periods

Do not use; class in 324.901–324.905

[.900 92] Biography

Do not use; class in 324.092

.901–.905 Historical periods

Add to base number 324.90 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., election campaigns in 19th century 324.9034

.91–.99 Geographic treatment

Add to base number 324.9 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., political campaigns in the United Kingdom 324.941; then to the result add historical period numbers from appropriate subdivisions of 930–990, e.g., election campaign of 1997 in the United Kingdom 324.9410859. In all cases use one 0\* except 00† for North America and South America, e.g., the election of 1992 in United States 324.9730928, elections in South America between World Wars 324.980033

## 325 International migration and colonization

Standard subdivisions are added for international migration and colonization together, for international migration alone

Including population transfers

Class interdisciplinary works on international movement of people in 304.82. Class movement of people associated with a specific event in world history with the event in 909, e.g., Jewish Diaspora 909.04924; class movement of people associated with a specific event in the history of a country or region with the event in 930–990, e.g., emigration of Jews as a consequence of the Holocaust 940.5318142

\*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

†Add 000 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

[.094-.099] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Do not use; class in 325.4-325.9

**.1 Immigration**

*For illegal immigration, see 364.137*

[.109 4-.109 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Do not use; class in 325.4-325.9

**.2 Emigration**

[.209 3-.209 9] Specific continents, countries, localities

Do not use; class in 325.23-325.29

**.21 Refugees**

Class here displaced persons, exiles, political refugees

Class interdisciplinary works on displaced persons, refugees in 305.906914

.210 93-.210 99 Specific continents, countries, localities

Refugees from one country in another country are classed in country of origin, e.g., Polish political refugees in Canada 325.21094380971

.23-.29 Emigration from specific continents, countries, localities

Add to base number 325.2 notation 3-9 from Table 2, e.g., emigration from Japan 325.252, emigration from Japan to United States 325.2520973

**.3 Colonization**

Class here exercise of political dominion over distant territories, decolonization

.309 3 Ancient world

Do not use for colonization by specific countries in ancient world; class in 325.33

.309 4-.309 9 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Do not use for colonization by specific countries in modern world; class in 325.34-325.39. Do not use for colonization in specific places in modern world; class in 325.4-325.9

**.32 Imperialism**

The policy, practice, or advocacy of acquiring political dominion over territories outside the natural boundaries of a country

Class comprehensive works on foreign policy in 327.1

.33-.39 Colonization by specific countries

Add to base number 325.3 notation 3-9 from Table 2, e.g., colonization by United Kingdom 325.341, colonization by United Kingdom in West Africa 325.3410966

Class imperialism of specific countries in 325.32093-325.32099

**.4–.9 International migration to and colonization in specific continents, countries, localities in modern world**

Add to base number 325 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., migration to Israel 325.5694

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class emigration from specific continents, countries, localities in modern world to specific continents, countries, localities in 325.24–325.29; class colonization by specific countries in modern world in specific continents, countries, localities in 325.34–325.39; class comprehensive works on colonization by and in specific continents, countries, localities in modern world in 325.3094–325.3099

**326 Slavery and emancipation**

Standard subdivisions are added for slavery and emancipation together, for slavery alone

Class interdisciplinary works on slavery in 306.362

**.8 Emancipation**

Class here abolitionism, antislavery movements

**327 International relations**

Class military science in 355; class interdisciplinary works on relations among countries in 303.482

*For international relations with respect to a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., commerce between United Kingdom and communist bloc 382.094101717*

*See Manual at 341 vs. 327*

**SUMMARY**

<b>327.02–.09</b>	<b>Standard subdivisions</b>
<b>.1</b>	<b>Foreign policy and specific topics in international relations</b>
<b>.2</b>	<b>Diplomacy</b>
<b>.3–.9</b>	<b>Foreign relations of specific continents, countries, localities</b>

[.01] Philosophy and theory

Do not use; class in 327.101

.06 Organizations

*For intergovernmental organizations, see 341.2*

[.068] Management

Do not use; class in 353.13

.09 History, geographic treatment, biography

Class here diplomatic history, international relations of or in areas, regions, places in general, not limited by continent, country, locality, e.g., foreign relations of former Communist bloc 327.091717

.092 Biography

Do not use for diplomats; class in 327.2092

- [.093–.099] Foreign relations of specific continents, countries, localities  
Do not use; class in 327.3–327.9
- .1 Foreign policy and specific topics in international relations**  
Standard subdivisions are added for foreign policy  
Class here imperialism in international relations, international politics, power politics  
Class comprehensive works on imperialism, imperialism as national policy in 325.32  
*For diplomacy, see 327.2*
- .101 Philosophy and theory of international relations, of foreign policy  
Including role and position of small states, economic bases of international relations  
Class here geopolitics in international relations, nature of power in international relations  
Class comprehensive works on geopolitics in 320.12
- .102–.108 Standard subdivisions of foreign policy
- .109 History, geographic treatment, biography of foreign policy
- .109 2 Biography  
Do not use for diplomats; class in 327.2092
- [.109 3–.109 9] Foreign relations of specific continents, countries, localities  
Do not use; class in 327.3–327.9
- .11 Specific means of attaining foreign policy goals  
Including government information services  
*For espionage and subversion, see 327.12; for propaganda and war of nerves, see 327.14*
- .111 Economic activities  
Including foreign aid  
Class boycotts and sanctions in 327.117
- .112 Balance of power
- .114 Spheres of influence
- .116 Alliances  
Class here collective security
- .117 Use of force and threats of force  
Including boycotts, sanctions, terrorism  
Class war of nerves in 327.14; class war in 355.02

- .12           Espionage and subversion  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Class here interdisciplinary works on espionage, subversion, intelligence gathering  
                   *For military espionage, see 355.3432; for military subversion, see 355.3437*
- .120 93–.120 99           Specific continents, countries, localities  
                                   Do not use for espionage and subversion by specific nations; class in 327.123–327.129
- .123–.129           Espionage and subversion by specific nations  
                                   Add to base number 327.12 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., espionage by France 327.1244; then for espionage and subversion by that country in another area add 0\* and to the result add notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., espionage by France in developing countries 327.124401724  
                                   Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .14           Propaganda and war of nerves  
                   Including disinformation activities  
                   Class comprehensive works on political propaganda in 320.014; class comprehensive works on use of force and threats of force in 327.117; class interdisciplinary works on propaganda in 303.375
- .16           International conflict  
                   Class war in 355.02; class conflict involving specific means of attaining foreign policy goals in 327.117  
                   *See also 327.17 for peaceful resolution of international conflict*
- .17           International cooperation  
                   Class here internationalism, conflict resolution  
                   Class international governmental organizations in 341.2; class interdisciplinary works on conflict resolution in 303.69  
                   *For law of international cooperation, see 341.7*
- .172           Promotion of peace and international order
- .174           Disarmament and arms control
- .174 3           Conventional weapons limitation
- .174 5           Chemical and biological disarmament  
                                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                                   Class here disarmament of weapons of mass destruction, of specific chemical and biological weapons  
                                   *For nuclear disarmament, see 327.1747*

\*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

- .174 7 Nuclear disarmament  
Class here strategic arms limitation, limitation of specific nuclear weapons
- .2 Diplomacy**  
Including protocol  
Use 327.2 for methods and style of diplomacy; 327 for substance and content of diplomatic relations  
*For law of diplomacy, see 341.33*
- .209 2 Biography  
Do not use for biography of diplomats of specific nations; class in 327.3–327.9

**.3–9 Foreign relations of specific continents, countries, localities**

Class here foreign policy

Add to base number 327 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., foreign relations of Brazil 327.81, of eastern European countries 327.47, in Middle East 327.56; then, for relations between that nation or region and another nation or region, add 0\* and to the result add notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., relations between Brazil and France 327.81044, between Brazil and Arab world 327.810174927

Give priority in notation to the nation or region emphasized. If emphasis is equal, give priority to the nation or region coming first in Table 2

(Option: Give priority in notation to the nation or region requiring local emphasis, e.g., libraries in the United States class foreign relations between the United States and France in 327.73044)

Class specific topics in international relations of specific nations or regions in 327.11–327.17

*See Manual at T1–092: Comprehensive biography: Public figures; also at 920.009, 920.03–920.09 vs. 909.09, 909.1–909.8, 930–990*

**328 The legislative process**

Class here legislative branch, legislative bodies

*See Manual at 909, 930–990 vs. 320*

**SUMMARY**

- 328.06 Organizations and management**
- .1 Rules and procedures of legislative bodies**
  - .2 Initiative and referendum**
  - .3 Specific topics of legislative bodies**
  - .4–9 The legislative process in specific continents, countries, localities in modern world**

- .060 1 International organizations  
Class here interparliamentary unions

\*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

## .068 Management

Class here public administration of legislative branch

Do not use for management of members' offices; class in 328.331068.  
Do not use for public administration of legislative branch of specific jurisdiction; class in 328.4–328.9 plus notation 0068 from table under 328.4–328.9

## [.094–.099] The legislative process in specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Do not use; class in 328.4–328.9

**.1 Rules and procedures of legislative bodies**

Including rules and procedures for reporting legislative sessions, e.g., television coverage

Class comprehensive rules of order in 060.42

*For rules of committees of legislative bodies, see 328.3653*

## .109 4–.109 9 Specific continents and localities in modern world

Do not use for rules and procedures of specific legislative bodies in modern world; class in 328.4–328.9 plus notation 05 from table under 328.4–328.9

**.2 Initiative and referendum**

## .209 4–.209 9 Specific continents and localities in modern world

Do not use for treatment in specific jurisdictions in modern world; class in 328.24–328.29

## .22 Initiative

## .220 94–.220 99 Specific continents and localities in modern world

Do not use for initiative in specific jurisdictions in modern world; class in 328.24–328.29

## .23 Referendum

## .230 94–.230 99 Specific continents and localities in modern world

Do not use for referendum in specific jurisdictions in modern world; class in 328.24–328.29

## .24–.29 Initiative and referendum in specific jurisdictions in modern world

Add to base number 328.2 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., initiative in California 328.2794

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

**.3 Specific topics of legislative bodies**

Class specific topics of legislative bodies of specific jurisdictions in modern world in 328.4–328.9, plus notation 07 from table under 328.4–328.9

*For rules and procedures of legislative bodies, see 328.1*

## SUMMARY

- 328.304            **Legislative reform**  
           .31            **Upper houses**  
           .32            **Lower houses**  
           .33            **Members and membership**  
           .34            **Powers, privileges, restrictions**  
           .35            **Sessions**  
           .36            **Internal organization and discipline**  
           .37            **Enactment of legislation**  
           .38            **Lobbying**  
           .39            **Forms of legislative bodies**
- [.301–.303]      Standard subdivisions  
                           Do not use; class in 328.01–328.03
- .304            Legislative reform  
                           *For reform of basis of representation, see 328.334; for reform of  
                           internal organization, see 328.36*
- [.305–.309]      Standard subdivisions  
                           Do not use; class in 328.05–328.09
- .31            Upper houses  
                           Class comprehensive works on upper and lower houses in 328.39. Class a  
                           specific aspect of upper houses with the aspect, e.g., treaty making power of  
                           upper houses 328.346
- .32            Lower houses  
                           Class a specific aspect of lower houses with the aspect, e.g., basis of  
                           representation of lower houses 328.334
- .33            Members and membership  
                           Including qualifications, term of office, term limitation  
                           Class comprehensive biography of members in 328.092; class biography of  
                           members of specific legislative bodies in modern world in 328.4–328.9, plus  
                           notation 092 from table under 328.4–328.9  
                           *For personal privileges, see 328.347; for officers and leaders, see  
                           328.362; for discipline of members, see 328.366*
- .331            Work and activity of individual members  
                           Class here constituency services, work of members' offices
- .334            Basis of representation
- .334 5            Election districts  
                           Class here apportionment and reapportionment, redistricting  
                           *For districts used in proportional representation, see 328.3347*
- .334 55            Gerrymandering
- .334 7            Proportional representation

- .34 Powers, privileges, restrictions  
 Class here legislative duties  
 Class enactment of legislation in 328.37
- .341 General powers  
*For treaty and war powers, see 328.346*
- .341 2 Financial power  
 Power over appropriation, borrowing and lending, currency, taxation
- .341 3 General economic and public welfare powers
- .345 Extralegislativ powers  
 Including control and oversight of judicial branch  
 Class here hearings  
*For hearings on a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., hearings on laws 348.01*
- .345 2 Investigative power  
 Including ombudsman role  
 Class interdisciplinary works on ombudsmen in 352.88
- .345 3 Judicial power  
 Including power to impeach
- .345 4 Electoral power
- .345 5 Power over appointments
- .345 6 Control and oversight of executive branch  
 Class here general relations with executive branch  
 Class cabinet system of executives in 321.8043; class control of foreign relations in 328.346  
*For ombudsman role, see 328.3452*
- .346 Treaty and war powers  
 Class here control of international relations
- .347 Personal privileges of legislators  
*For legislative immunity, see 328.348*
- .348 Legislative immunity
- .349 Restrictions on legislative power  
 Including constitutional restrictions, checks exercised by other branches and by the electorate
- .35 Sessions  
 Class a specific aspect of legislative sessions with the aspect, e.g., internal organization of a session 328.36

- .36 Internal organization and discipline  
 Including caucuses  
 Class legislative reference bureaus in 027.65; class party caucuses in 328.369; class comprehensive works on rules and procedures in 328.1
- .362 Officers and leaders  
 Class party organization in legislative bodies in 328.369
- .365 Committees  
 Class committee hearings and reports on a specific subject that emphasize proposed legislation with the subject in 340, e.g., hearing on bills governing armed services 343.013; class committee hearings and reports on a specific subject that do not emphasize proposed legislation with the subject in 001–999, e.g., general reports on military affairs 355
- .365 3 Rules  
 Including rules of specific committees, of specific types of committees
- .365 7 Specific types of committees  
 Including conference, joint, select committees  
 Class rules of specific types of committees in 328.3653; class specific types of committees with specific subject jurisdiction in 328.3658
- .365 8 Committees of specific subject jurisdiction  
 Including rules committees  
 Class rules of committees of specific subject jurisdiction in 328.3653
- .366 Discipline of members
- .369 Party organization in legislative bodies  
 Including opposition, opposition parties, party caucuses
- .37 Enactment of legislation  
 Including repeal of legislation  
*See also 328.365 for committee procedures*
- .372 Origin of legislation  
 Submission by members, by executive, by outside interests
- .373 Drafting legislation
- .375 Passage of legislation  
 Including votes and voting procedures
- .377 Enactment of resolutions

- .378 Enactment of special types of legislation  
 Including private bills, procedures for legislative enactment of budgets  
*For enactment of resolutions, see 328.377; for enactment of budgets, see 352.48*

.38 Lobbying

.39 Forms of legislative bodies

Unicameral, bicameral

Do not use for description of various legislatures that happen to be of one form or another

*For upper houses, see 328.31; for lower houses, see 328.32*

#### **.4-9 The legislative process in specific continents, countries, localities in modern world**

Add to base number 328 notation 4-9 from Table 2, e.g., the legislative process in the Canadian Parliament or in the provincial legislatures of Canada 328.71, in eastern Europe 328.47; then add further as follows:

- 001-008 Standard subdivisions
- [009] History and biography  
 Do not use; class in 09
- 01 Journals and calendars
- 02 Debates  
 Including collections of speeches by individual members
- 03 Abstracts
- 04 Other documents  
 Class here series of miscellaneous parliamentary papers and documents
- 05 Rules and procedures  
 Including legislative manuals  
 Class committee rules in 07653
- 07 Specific topics of legislative bodies  
*For rules and procedures, see 05*
- [0701-0703] Standard subdivisions  
 Do not use; class in 001-003
- 0704 Legislative reform
- [0705-0708] Standard subdivisions  
 Do not use; class in 005-008
- [0709] History and biography  
 Do not use; class in 09
- 071-079 Other topics of legislative bodies  
 Add to 07 the numbers following 328.3 in 328.31-328.39, e.g., specific committees 07658
- 09 History and biography
- 092 Biography  
*See Manual at T1-092: Comprehensive biography: Public figures; also at 920.009, 920.03-920.09 vs. 909.09, 909.1-909.8, 930-990*

*For initiative and referendum in specific jurisdictions in modern world, see 328.24-328.29*

**[329] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 18

**330 Economics**

Including interdisciplinary works on economic rights

Class here comprehensive works on economics and management

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., finance as an economic factor in international economics 332.042 (*not* 337):

Cooperatives	334
Public finance	336
Economics of labor, finance, land, energy	331–333
Production, Commerce (381–382), Communications (383–384), Transportation (385–388)	338
Macroeconomics and related topics	339
International economics	337
Socialism and related systems	335

Class economic rights in the sense of welfare rights in 361.614

*For management, see 658. For a specific kind or aspect of economic rights, see the kind or aspect, e.g., political aspects of property rights 323.46*

*See Manual at 330 vs. 650, 658*

**SUMMARY**

<b>330.01–.09</b>	<b>Standard subdivisions</b>
.1	Systems, schools, theories
.9	Economic situation and conditions
<b>331</b>	<b>Labor economics</b>
<b>.01–.09</b>	<b>Standard subdivisions and industrial relations by industry and occupation</b>
.1	Labor force and market
.2	Conditions of employment
.3	Workers by age group
.4	Women workers
.5	Workers by personal attributes other than age
.6	Workers by ethnic and national origin
.7	Labor by industry and occupation
.8	Labor unions, labor-management bargaining and disputes
<b>332</b>	<b>Financial economics</b>
<b>.01–.09</b>	<b>Standard subdivisions, personal finance, special topics of financial economics</b>
.1	Banks
.2	Specialized banking institutions
.3	Credit and loan institutions
.4	Money
.5	Barter, commercial paper, social credit money
.6	Investment
.7	Credit
.8	Interest
.9	Counterfeiting, forgery, alteration

- 333           **Economics of land and energy**  
           .001-.009           Standard subdivisions  
           .01-.08           [Theories and land surveys]  
           .1           Public ownership of land  
           .2           Ownership of land by nongovernmental groups  
           .3           Private ownership of land  
           .4           Absentee ownership  
           .5           Renting and leasing land  
           .7           Land, recreational and wilderness areas, energy  
           .8           Subsurface resources  
           .9           Other natural resources
- 334           **Cooperatives**  
           .1           Housing cooperatives  
           .2           Banking and credit cooperatives  
           .5           Consumer cooperatives  
           .6           Producers' cooperatives  
           .7           Benefit societies
- 335           **Socialism and related systems**  
           .001-.009           Standard subdivisions  
           .02           Utopian systems and schools  
           .1           Systems of English origin  
           .2           Systems of French origin  
           .3           Systems of American origin  
           .4           Marxian systems  
           .5           Democratic socialism  
           .6           Fascism  
           .7           Christian socialism  
           .8           Other systems
- 336           **Public finance**  
           .001-.008           Standard subdivisions  
           .01-.09           [Public finance by governmental level; revenue; history, geographic  
   treatment, biography; associations of sovereign states]  
           .1           Nontax revenues  
           .2           Taxes  
           .3           Public debt and expenditures  
           .4-.9           Public finance of specific continents, countries, localities in modern  
   world
- 337           **International economics**  
           .1           Multilateral economic cooperation  
           .3-.9           Foreign economic policies and relations of specific jurisdictions and  
   groups of jurisdictions
- 338           **Production**  
           .001-.008           Standard subdivisions  
           .01-.09           [General topics]  
           .1           Agriculture  
           .2           Extraction of minerals  
           .3           Other extractive industries  
           .4           Secondary industries and services  
           .5           General production economics  
           .6           Organization of production  
           .7           Business enterprises  
           .8           Combinations  
           .9           Economic development and growth
- 339           **Macroeconomics and related topics**  
           .2           Distribution of income and wealth  
           .3           Product and income accounts  
           .4           Factors affecting income and wealth  
           .5           Macroeconomic policy

- .01           Philosophy and theory  
                   Do not use for theories; class in 330.1
- .015 1           Mathematical principles  
                           *See also 330.1543 for mathematical economics as a school of economics*
- .015 195           Statistical mathematics  
                           Class here econometrics  
                                   *See Manual at 519.5, T1—015195 vs. 001.422, T1—0727*
- .02—08       Standard subdivisions
- .09           History, geographic treatment, biography of economics as a discipline  
                   Do not use for economic situation and conditions; class in 330.9
- .1           Systems, schools, theories**  
                   *For economic rent, see 333.012; for law of supply and demand, see 338.521*
- .12           Systems
- .122          Free enterprise economy  
                   Including open economy (the economy of an area in which trade with other areas is unrestricted)  
                   Class here capitalism  
                   Class laissez-faire economic theory in 330.153  
                           *See also 382.7 for trade barriers and restrictions*
- .124          Planned economies  
                   Class here command economies  
                   Class schools of thought featuring planned economies in 335  
                           *See also 338.9 for economic planning*
- .126          Mixed economies  
                   Including interventionism, social market economy, welfare state systems  
                           *See also 330.1556 for welfare economics as a school of economic thought*
- .15          Schools of economic thought  
                   *For socialist and related schools, see 335*
- .151          Pre-classical schools  
                           *For physiocracy, see 330.152*
- .151 2       Ancient and medieval theories
- .151 3       Mercantilism

- .152        Physiocracy  
               Class here school of Quesnay
- .153        Classical economics  
               Class here schools of Smith, Ricardo, Malthus, Mill, Say; laissez-faire  
               economic theory  
               *See also 330.157 for neoclassical school*
- .154        Historical and mathematical schools
- .154 2       Historical school  
               Class here the schools of Roscher, Knies, Hildebrand, Schmoller,  
               Bücher, Knapp
- .154 3       Mathematical school  
               Class here schools of Cournot, Dupuit, Pareto  
               Class mathematical economics in 330.0151  
               *See also 330.157 for marginal utility school*
- .155        Miscellaneous schools  
               Only those named below  
               Including school of Henry George (single-tax school)
- .155 2       Institutional economics  
               Class economics of institutions in 330
- .155 3       Chicago school of economics (Monetarism)  
               Class monetary theory in 332.401
- .155 4       Supply-side economics
- .155 6       Welfare economics school
- .156        Keynesian economics  
               Class here post-Keynesian economics
- .157        Marginal utility school  
               Variant names: Austrian school, neoclassical school  
               Class here schools of Jevons, Menger, Walras, Wieser, Böhm-Bawerk,  
               Von Mises; utility theory  
               *See also 330.1543 for schools of Cournot, Dupuit, Pareto*
- (.159)       Socialist and related schools  
               (Optional number; prefer 335)  
               Add to base number 330.159 the numbers following 335 in 335.1–335.8,  
               e.g., Marxian systems 330.1594
- .16        Theories of wealth  
               Class macroeconomic aspects of wealth in 339

- .17 Theories of property
- .9 Economic situation and conditions**
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Class here economic geography, economic history; works describing situation and conditions at both macroeconomic and microeconomic levels
- Class policies to promote economic growth and development in 338.9; class macroeconomic policies in 339.5
- .900 1–.900 8 Standard subdivisions
- [.900 9] History, geographic treatment, biography
- Do not use for comprehensive works on history, on geographic treatment; class in 330.9
- [.900 901–.900 905] Historical periods
- Do not use; class in 330.901–330.905
- [.900 91] Areas, regions, places in general
- Do not use; class in 330.91
- [.900 92] Biography
- Do not use; class in 330.092
- [.900 93–.900 99] Specific continents, countries, localities
- Do not use; class in 330.93–330.99
- .901–.905 Historical periods
- Add to base number 330.90 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., economic situation in 1960–1969 330.9046
- .91 Areas, regions, places in general
- Add to base number 330.91 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., economic situation and conditions in developing countries 330.91724; then add 0\* and to the result add the numbers following 909 in 909.1–909.8, e.g., economic situation and conditions in developing countries in 1980–1989 330.917240828
- Use 0 plus notation 01 12 from Table 1 for forecasting and forecasts, e.g., forecasting and forecasts of economic situation and conditions in developing countries 330.9172400112. Do not use historical periods for forecasting and forecasts
- (Option: Class in 910.13301)

\*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

## .93-.99 Specific continents, countries, localities

Add to base number 330.9 notation 3-9 from Table 2, e.g., economic situation and conditions in France 330.944; then to the result add historical period numbers from appropriate subdivisions of 930-990, e.g., economic situation and conditions in France under Louis XIV 330.944033. In all cases use one 0\* except 00† for North and South America, e.g., economic situation in the United States during Reconstruction period 330.97308, in South America in 20th century 330.980033

Use 0 or 00 plus notation 0112 from Table 1 for forecasting and forecasts, e.g., forecasting and forecasts of economic situation and conditions in France 330.94400112. Do not use historical periods for forecasting and forecasts

(Option: Class in 910.13303-910.13309)

> **331-333 Economics of labor, finance, land, energy**

Class comprehensive works on economics of labor, finance, land, energy in 330; class comprehensive works on labor, capital, land considered as factors of production in 338.01

**331 Labor economics**

Class here industrial relations, interdisciplinary works on labor

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., compensation of women in banking 331.42813321 (*not* 331.2813321 or 331.7613321):

Choice of vocation	331.702
Labor force by personal attributes	331.3-331.6
Labor force and market	331.1
Conditions of employment	331.2
Labor unions, labor-management bargaining and disputes	331.8
Labor by industry and occupation ( <i>except</i> 331.702)	331.7

Class economic conditions of working class in 330.9; class relations between management and labor unions in 331.8; class full employment policy in 339.5

*For a specific noneconomic aspect of labor, see the aspect, e.g., relation of labor movements to the state 322.2, managerial aspects of labor 658.3*

*See also 305.562 for sociology of working class; also 306.36 for sociology of labor*

\*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

†Add 000 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

## SUMMARY

- 331.01–.09      Standard subdivisions and industrial relations by industry and occupation**
- .1      Labor force and market**
  - .2      Conditions of employment**
  - .3      Workers by age group**
  - .4      Women workers**
  - .5      Workers by personal attributes other than age**
  - .6      Workers by ethnic and national origin**
  - .7      Labor by industry and occupation**
  - .8      Labor unions, labor-management bargaining and disputes**
- .01      Philosophy and theory**
- Notation 01 from Table 1 as modified below
  - Do not use for value of labor; class in 331.013
- .011      Rights and position of labor**
- Do not use for systems analysis applied to labor economics; class in 331.01. Do not use for systems of labor; class in 331.117
  - Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
  - Class here employment rights
  - For open shop, right to work, see 331.8892*
- .011 2      Industrial democracy**
- Class producer cooperatives in 334.6; class guild socialism in 335.15; class syndicalism in 335.82; class worker control of industry in 338.6; class employee representation in management discussed from the managerial viewpoint in 658.3152
  - For role of labor unions in industrial democracy, see 331.88*
- .012      Satisfactions and dissatisfactions of labor**
- Do not use for classification of occupations; class in 331.70012
  - Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .013      Freedom, dignity, value of labor**
- .04      Industrial relations by industry and occupation**
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .041      Industrial relations in industries and occupations other than extractive, manufacturing, construction**
- Standard subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both
  - Class here industrial relations in service industries and occupations
- .041 000 1–.041 000 9      Standard subdivisions**

- .041 001-.041 999      Subdivisions for industrial relations in industries and occupations other than extractive, manufacturing, construction
- Add to base number 331.041 notation 001-999, e.g., industrial relations in clerical occupations 331.04165137
- Subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both
- .042-.049      Industrial relations in extractive, manufacturing, construction industries and occupations
- Add to base number 331.04 the numbers following 6 in 620-690, e.g., industrial relations in chemical industries 331.046
- Subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both
- .08      Groups of people
- Do not use for discrimination; class in 331.133
- Class here labor force by personal attributes [*formerly* 331.1143], comprehensive works on minorities in the labor force
- [.081]      People by gender or sex
- Do not use; class in 331.56
- [.082]      Women
- Do not use; class in 331.4
- [.083-.084]      Age groups
- Do not use; class in 331.3
- [.086]      People by miscellaneous social attributes
- Do not use; class in 331.5
- [.087]      People with disabilities and illnesses, gifted people
- Do not use; class in 331.5
- [.088]      Occupational and religious groups
- Do not use for religious groups; class in 331.58. Do not use for occupational groups; class in 331.7
- [.089]      Ethnic and national groups
- Do not use; class in 331.6
- .1      Labor force and market**
- Class here comprehensive works on employment and unemployment
- Class employment in 331.125; class unemployment in 331.137

### SUMMARY

331.11	<b>Labor force</b>	
.12	<b>Labor market</b>	
.13	<b>Discrimination in employment, labor shortages, unemployment</b>	

- .11            Labor force  
                   Class here human resources, labor supply, size of labor force, work force  
                   Class labor force in relation to demand for labor in 331.12  
                   *See also 331.8732 for union membership*
- .114            Qualifications
- .114 2            Qualifications by level of skills  
                   Including semiskilled, unskilled employees  
                   Use of this number for comprehensive works on qualifications discontinued; class in 331.114
- .114 22            Skilled workers  
                   Use of this number for qualifications by level of skills discontinued; class in 331.1142
- [.114 224]            Skilled workers  
                   Number discontinued; class in 331.11422
- [.114 23]            Qualifications by level of education  
                   Relocated to 331.1144
- [.114 3]            Labor force by personal attributes  
                   Comprehensive works on labor force by personal attributes relocated to 331.08; programs for workplace diversity relocated to 331.133
- .114 4            Qualifications by level of education [*formerly 331.11423*]
- .114 43            High school graduates
- .114 45            College graduates  
                   Regardless of degree obtained
- .117            Systems of labor  
                   *See also 306.36 for social aspects of systems of labor*
- .117 2            Free labor
- .117 3            Compulsory labor
- .117 32            State labor (Drafted workers)
- .117 34            Slave labor
- .118            Labor productivity  
                   Class industrial productivity in 338.06

- .119 Labor force by industry and occupation  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
 Class qualifications of labor force by industry and occupation in 331.114; class systems of labor by industry and occupation in 331.117; class labor productivity by industry and occupation in 331.118; class comprehensive works on labor by industry and occupation in 331.7
- .119 04 Special topics of labor force by industry and occupation
- .119 042 Labor force in general categories of occupations  
 Including blue collar, civilian, governmental (public service), service, white collar occupations
- .119 1 Labor force in industries and occupations other than extractive, manufacturing, construction  
 Standard subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both  
 Class here labor force in service industries and occupations
- .119 100 01–.119 100 09 Standard subdivisions
- .119 100 1–.119 199 9 Subdivisions for labor force in industries and occupations other than extractive, manufacturing, construction  
 Add to base number 331.1191 notation 001–999, e.g., labor force in stenography 331.11916513741; however, for labor force in general categories of occupations, e.g., governmental (public service) occupations, see 331.119042  
 Subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both
- .119 2–.119 9 Labor force in extractive, manufacturing, construction industries and occupations  
 Add to base number 331.119 the numbers following 6 in 620–690, e.g., labor force in automotive manufacturing 331.119292  
 Subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both
- .12 Labor market  
 Class here supply of labor in relation to demand  
 Class job creation in 331.120424  
*For discrimination in employment, labor shortages, unemployment, underemployment, see 331.13*

### SUMMARY

- 331.120 4 Special topics of labor market**
- .123 **Demand for labor**
- .124 **Job vacancies (Job openings)**
- .125 **Labor actively employed**
- .126 **Labor turnover**
- .127 **Labor mobility**
- .128 **Placement**
- .129 **Labor market by industry and occupation**

- .120 4 Special topics of labor market



- .124 100 1–.124 199 9      Subdivisions for job vacancies in industries and occupations other than extractive, manufacturing, construction
- Add to base number 331.1241 notation 001–999, e.g., opportunities in librarianship 331.124102
- Subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both
- .124 2–.124 9      Job vacancies in extractive, manufacturing, construction industries and occupations
- Add to base number 331.124 the numbers following 6 in 620–690, e.g., openings in paper manufacture 331.12476
- Subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both
- .125      Labor actively employed
- Class here employment, utilization of human resources, comprehensive works on employment and compensation
- Class comprehensive works on employment and unemployment in 331.1
- For compensation, see 331.21*
- See also 331.126 for turnover; also 331.137 for unemployment*
- .125 1      Labor actively employed in industries and occupations other than extractive, manufacturing, construction
- Standard subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both
- Class here labor actively employed in service industries and occupations
- .125 100 01–.125 100 09      Standard subdivisions
- .125 100 1–.125 199 9      Subdivisions for labor actively employed in industries and occupations other than extractive, manufacturing, construction
- Add to base number 331.1251 notation 001–999, e.g., labor actively employed in education 331.125137
- Subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both
- .125 2–.125 9      Labor actively employed in extractive, manufacturing, construction industries and occupations
- Add to base number 331.125 the numbers following 6 in 620–690, e.g., labor actively employed in the plumbing industry 331.125961
- Subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both
- .126      Labor turnover
- .126 1      Labor turnover in industries and occupations other than extractive, manufacturing, construction
- Standard subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both
- Class here turnover in service industries and occupations
- .126 100 01–.126 100 09      Standard subdivisions

- .126 100 1–.126 199 9      Subdivisions for turnover in industries and occupations other than extractive, manufacturing, construction
- Add to base number 331.1261 notation 001–999, e.g., turnover of nurses 331.126161073
- Subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both
- .126 2–.126 9      Labor turnover in extractive, manufacturing, construction industries and occupations
- Add to base number 331.126 the numbers following 6 in 620–690, e.g., turnover of miners 331.12622
- Subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both
- .127      Labor mobility
- .127 09      History and biography
- Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 331.1279
- .127 2      Occupational mobility
- .127 9      Geographic mobility
- .127 91      International mobility
- Including brain drain
- .127 93–.127 99      Geographic mobility within specific countries and smaller areas
- Add to base number 331.1279 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., mobility of labor within Canada 331.127971
- Class mobility between countries and continents in 331.12791
- .128      Placement
- Class here employment agencies, job banks, labor exchanges, sources of job information
- Class job vacancies in 331.124
- See also 362.0425 for employment services viewed as a solution to social welfare problems; also 650.14 for success in, techniques of job hunting*
- .129      Labor market by industry and occupation
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- For specific aspects of labor market by industry and occupation, see 331.123–331.128*
- .129 04      Special topics of labor market by industry and occupation
- .129 042      Labor market by general categories of occupations
- Including blue collar, civilian, governmental (public service), service, white collar occupations

- .129 1 Labor market by industries and occupations other than extractive, manufacturing, construction
- Standard subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both
- Class here labor market in service industries and occupations
- .129 100 01–.129 100 09 Standard subdivisions
- .129 100 1–.129 199 9 Subdivisions for labor market by industries and occupations other than extractive, manufacturing, construction
- Add to base number 331.1291 notation 001–999, e.g., labor market in stenography 331.12916513741; however, for labor market in general categories of occupations, e.g., governmental (public service) occupations, see 331.129042
- Subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both
- .129 2–.129 9 Labor market by extractive, manufacturing, construction industries and occupations
- Add to base number 331.129 the numbers following 6 in 620–690, e.g., labor market in automotive manufacturing 331.129292
- Subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both
- .13 Discrimination in employment, labor shortages, unemployment
- Including underemployment
- Class here maladjustments in labor market, programs to prevent or provide relief from maladjustments
- .133 Discrimination in employment
- Class here programs for workplace diversity [*formerly* 331.1143], affirmative action in employment, equal employment opportunity programs, hostile work environments
- Class discrimination against workers with specific personal attributes in 331.3–331.6; class personnel aspects of discrimination in government employment in 352.608; class comprehensive works on work environment in 331.256; class comprehensive works about personnel policies on discrimination in 658.3008
- For discrimination in relation to a specific aspect of industrial relations, see the aspect, e.g., discrimination as a factor affecting compensation 331.2153, discrimination by unions 331.8732*
- .136 Labor shortages
- .137 Unemployment
- Class here labor surpluses, unemployed people
- .137 04 Kinds of unemployment
- .137 041 Structural unemployment
- For technological unemployment, see 331.137042*
- .137 042 Technological unemployment
- .137 044 Seasonal unemployment

- .137 045                   Frictional unemployment
- .137 047                   Cyclical unemployment
- [.137 09]                   History, geographic treatment, biography  
                                 Do not use; class in 331.1379
- .137 2                    Causes of unemployment  
                                 *For macroeconomic causes, see 339. For a cause of unemployment that defines a specific kind of unemployment, see the kind in 331.13704, e.g., structural unemployment 331.137041*
- .137 3                    Effects of unemployment
- .137 7                    Prevention and relief of unemployment  
                                 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                                 *For a specific measure of prevention or relief, see the measure, e.g., work sharing 331.2572, economic stabilization 339.5, welfare 362.85*  
                                 *See Manual at 331.120424 vs. 331.1377*
- .137 8                    Unemployment among general groups of labor, unemployment by industry and occupation  
                                 Class specific elements regardless of group, industry, occupation in 331.1372–331.1377
- .137 804                   General groups of unemployed people  
                                 Groups defined by level of education, skill, experience  
                                 Class unemployed people having specific personal attributes in 331.3–331.6
- .137 81                   Unemployment in industries and occupations other than extractive, manufacturing, construction  
                                 Standard subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both  
                                 Class here unemployment in service industries and occupations
- .137 810 001–.137 810 009                   Standard subdivisions
- .137 810 01–.137 819 99                   Subdivisions for unemployment in industries and occupations other than extractive, manufacturing, construction  
                                 Add to base number 331.13781 notation 001–999, e.g., unemployment in clerical occupations 331.1378165137  
                                 Subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both

- .137 82–.137 89      Unemployment in extractive, manufacturing, construction industries and occupations
- Add to base number 331.1378 the numbers following 6 in 620–690, e.g., unemployment in the automotive industry 331.1378292
- Subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both
- .137 9      History, geographic treatment, biography
- Class history of specific elements of unemployment in 331.1372–331.1377; class history of unemployment among general groups of labor and by industry and occupation in 331.1378
- .137 900 1–.137 900 8      Standard subdivisions
- [.137 900 9]      History
- Do not use; class in 331.1379
- .137 901–.137 905      Historical periods
- Add to base number 331.13790 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., unemployment in 20th century 331.137904
- .137 91–.137 99      Geographic treatment and biography
- Add to base number 331.1379 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., unemployment in the United States 331.137973
- Class geographic treatment of specific elements of unemployment in 331.1372–331.1377; class geographic treatment and biography of unemployment among general groups of labor and by industry and occupation in 331.1378

## **.2      Conditions of employment**

Class here comprehensive works on collective bargaining to determine conditions of employment and the resulting conditions of employment

Class conditions of employment discussed from the managerial viewpoint in 658.312

*For collective bargaining to determine conditions of employment, see 331.89*

### **SUMMARY**

- |         |   |
|---------|---|
| 331.204 | <b>Conditions of employment by industry and occupation</b>      |
| .21     | <b>Compensation</b>   |
| .22     | <b>Compensation differentials</b>                               |
| .23     | <b>Guaranteed-wage plans</b>                                    |
| .25     | <b>Other conditions of employment</b>                           |
| .28     | <b>Compensation by industry and occupation</b>                  |
| .29     | <b>History, geographic treatment, biography of compensation</b> |
- .204      Conditions of employment by industry and occupation
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading



- .215 3            Discrimination and anti-discrimination policies  
                     Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                     Class here equal pay for equal work, pay equity  
                     Class discrimination because of a specific personal characteristic in  
                     331.3–331.6
- .216            **Methods of compensation**  
                     Class here wage payment systems  
                     Class employee benefits (fringe benefits) in 331.255
- .216 2            Time payments  
                     Including hourly, weekly, monthly, annual periods; overtime pay  
                     Class guaranteed-wage plans in 331.23
- .216 4            Incentive compensation  
                     Including bonuses, merit pay, performance awards; piecework,  
                     combined timework and piecework  
                     Class tips in 331.2166
- .216 47           Profit sharing  
                     Class here gain sharing
- .216 49           Employee stock ownership plans  
                     Class here employee stock options, employee stock purchase plans  
                     Class stock options as a form of speculation in 332.632283; class  
                     comprehensive works on employee ownership in 338.69
- .216 6            Other methods of compensation  
                     Including longevity pay, locality pay (weighting), professional and  
                     subcontracting fees, severance pay, tips  
                     Class paid leave in 331.2576
- .22            **Compensation differentials**  
                     Including differences among, firms, industries, occupations, regions  
                     Class differentials as a factor affecting compensation in 331.215
- .220 9            History, geographic treatment, biography  
                     Class geographic treatment of compensation not emphasizing  
                     differentials in 331.29
- .23            **Guaranteed-wage plans**  
                     Class here minimum wage  
                     Class guaranteed minimum income in 362.582
- .236            **Guaranteed annual wage**
- .25            **Other conditions of employment**

## SUMMARY

- |         |  |
|---------|--|
| 331.252 | <b>Pensions</b>  |
| .255    | <b>Employee benefits (Fringe benefits)</b>                     |
| .256    | <b>Work environment</b>  |
| .257    | <b>Hours</b>   |
| .259    | <b>Training, worker security, regulation of worker conduct</b> |
- 
- |                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| .252                      | Pensions   |
|                           | Including retirement age   |
|                           | Class here retirement benefits, superannuation, interdisciplinary works on pensions  |
|                           | Class pensions for government (public service) employees in 331.25291351   |
|                           | <i>For pensions provided by unions, see 331.8735; for retirement planning, see 332.024014; for public administration of pensions for government workers, see 353.549; for pensions (annuities) provided through insurance, see 368.37; for government pension plans for the population at large, see 368.43; for comprehensive works on administration of pensions, see 658.3253</i> |
| .252 2                    | Pension reform   |
|                           | Class here preservation, transfer of vested rights in pensions   |
| .252 4                    | Pension funds  |
|                           | Class investment by pension funds in 332.67254   |
| .252 9                    | Pensions by industry and occupation  |
|                           | Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading   |
| .252 91                   | Pensions in industries and occupations other than extractive, manufacturing, construction  |
|                           | Standard subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both   |
|                           | Class here pensions in service industries and occupations  |
| .252 910 001–.252 910 009 | Standard subdivisions  |
| .252 910 01–.252 919 99   | Subdivisions for pensions in industries and occupations other than extractive, manufacturing, construction   |
|                           | Add to base number 331.25291 notation 001–999, e.g., military pensions 331.25291355  |
|                           | Subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both  |
| .252 92–.252 99           | Pensions in extractive, manufacturing, construction industries and occupations   |
|                           | Add to base number 331.2529 the numbers following 6 in 620–690, e.g., pensions in construction trades 331.252924   |
|                           | Subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both  |

- .255 Employee benefits (Fringe benefits)  
 Class here employee assistance programs, insurance, interdisciplinary works on employee benefits  
*For stock ownership and purchase plans, see 331.21649; for pensions, see 331.252; for benefits provided by unions, see 331.8735; for benefits for veterans of military service and their survivors, see 362.86; for benefits provided through insurance, see 368.3; for benefits provided through government-sponsored social insurance, see 368.4; for comprehensive works on administration of employee benefits, see 658.325*
- .255 2 Unemployment compensation  
 Class interdisciplinary works on unemployment insurance in 368.44
- .255 4 Health services  
 Class interdisciplinary works on health insurance in 368.382
- .256 Work environment  
 Class here physical working conditions, quality of work life, working facilities, workplace relationships; work stress  
*For hostile work environment caused by hostile and discriminatory behavior, see 331.133*
- .256 7 Home labor  
 Producing goods at home for an outside employer  
 Class here cottage industries, comprehensive works on work at home  
*For telecommuting, see 331.2568*
- .256 8 Telecommuting
- .257 Hours  
 Including reduced workweek  
 Class here workweek
- .257 2 Alternative work schedules; workday  
 Including overtime, work sharing
- .257 22 Compressed workweek  
 Including four-day forty-hour week
- .257 23 Workday  
 Class a specific alternative workday schedule with the alternative work schedule elsewhere in 331.2572, e.g., part-time schedule 331.25727  
*For rest periods, see 331.2576*
- .257 24 Flexible hours  
*See also 331.2567 for home labor; also 331.2568 for telecommuting; also 331.25722 for compressed workweek*



- .259 8 Regulation of worker conduct  
Class here discipline
- .259 88 Absenteeism
- .28 Compensation by industry and occupation  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
Class specific elements of compensation by industry and occupation in 331.21–331.23
- .281 Compensation in industries and occupations other than extractive, manufacturing, construction  
Standard subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both  
Class here compensation in service industries and occupations
- .281 000 1–.281 000 9 Standard subdivisions
- .281 001–.281 999 Subdivisions for compensation in industries and occupations other than extractive, manufacturing, construction  
Add to base number 331.281 notation 001–999, e.g., compensation of legislators 331.28132833  
Subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both
- .282–.289 Compensation in extractive, manufacturing, construction industries and occupations  
Add to base number 331.28 the numbers following 6 in 620–690, e.g., compensation in the mining industry 331.2822, average factory compensation 331.287  
Subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both
- .29 History, geographic treatment, biography of compensation  
Class history of factors affecting compensation and history of methods of compensation in 331.215–331.216; class history of compensation differentials and history of guaranteed-wage plans in 331.22–331.23; class history of compensation by industries and occupations in 331.28; class wage-price policies in relation to stabilizing the economy in 339.5
- .290 01–.290 08 Standard subdivisions
- [.290 09] History  
Do not use; class in 331.29
- .290 1–.290 5 Historical periods  
Add to base number 331.290 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., compensation in 20th century 331.2904

.291–.299 Geographic treatment and biography

Add to base number 331.29 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., compensation in Australia 331.2994

Class geographic treatment and biography of specific elements of compensation in 331.215–331.23; class geographic treatment and biography of compensation by industries and occupations in 331.28

>

**331.3–331.6 Labor force by personal attributes**

Class here labor force and market, conditions of employment, industries and occupations, labor unions, labor-management bargaining with respect to special groups of workers

Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 331.3–331.6 in the number coming first, e.g., young North American native women 331.34408997 (*not* 331.408997 or 331.6997)

Class choice of vocation for people with specific personal attributes in 331.702; class comprehensive works on groups of people in 331.08. Class employment services as a form of social service to a specific group of people with the group in 362.6–362.8, e.g., sheltered employment for people in late adulthood 362.64

**.3 Workers by age group**

.31 Children

Through age thirteen

*See also 364.15554 for criminal aspects of child labor*

.318 Children through age thirteen by industry and occupation

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.34 Young workers

Through age thirty-five

*For children through age thirteen, see 331.31; for young workers by industry and occupation, see 331.38*

.341–.342 Specific aspects of employment of young workers

Add to base number 331.34 the numbers following 331 in 331.1–331.2, e.g., training of young workers 331.342592

Class specific aspects of employment of specific kinds of young workers in 331.344–331.346

.344–.346 Employment of specific kinds of young workers

Add to base number 331.34 the numbers following 331 in 331.4–331.6, e.g., African American youth 331.346396073; however, for apprentices, see 331.55

- .347            Workers aged 14 through 20  
                   Class employment of specific groups of workers aged 14 through 20 in  
                   331.344–331.346  
                   *For specific aspects of employment of workers aged 14 through 20,  
                   see 331.341–331.342*
- .38             Young workers by industry and occupation  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Through age thirty-five  
                   Class employment of specific kinds of young workers by industry and  
                   occupation in 331.344–331.346  
                   *For children through age thirteen by industries and occupations, see  
                   331.318; for specific aspects of employment of young workers by industry  
                   and occupation, see 331.341–331.342*
- .381            Young workers in industries and occupations other than extractive,  
                   manufacturing, construction  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both  
                   Class here young workers in service industries and occupations
- .381 000 1–.381 000 9            Standard subdivisions
- .381 001–.381 999                Subdivisions for young workers in industries and occupations  
   other than extractive, manufacturing, construction  
   Add to base number 331.381 notation 001–999, e.g., young  
   workers in clerical occupations 331.38165137  
   Subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both
- .382–.389        Young workers in extractive, manufacturing, construction industries  
                   and occupations  
                   Add to base number 331.38 the numbers following 6 in 620–690, e.g.,  
                   young textile workers 331.3877  
                   Subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both
- .39             Other age groups
- .394             Middle-aged workers
- .398             Older workers
- .398 1–.398 2        Specific aspects on employment of older workers  
                   Add to base number 331.398 the numbers following 331 in  
                   331.1–331.2, e.g., discrimination against older workers 331.398133
- .398 8            Older workers by industry and occupation  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

- .398 81 Older workers in industries and occupations other than extractive, manufacturing, construction
- Standard subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both
- Class here older workers in service industries and occupations
- .398 810 001–.398 810 009 Standard subdivisions
- .398 810 01–.398 819 99 Subdivisions for older workers in industries and occupations other than extractive, manufacturing, construction
- Add to base number 331.39881 notation 001–999, e.g., older workers in clerical occupations 331.3988165137
- Subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both
- .398 82–.398 89 Older workers in extractive, manufacturing, construction industries and occupations
- Add to base number 331.3988 the numbers following 6 in 620–690, e.g., older agricultural workers in 331.39883
- Subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both

#### .4 Women workers

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., women clothing workers in labor unions 331.478187 (*not* 331.4887):

Working mothers	331.44
Married women	331.43
Labor unions and labor-management bargaining and disputes	331.47
Specific aspects of employment of women	331.41–331.42
Women workers by industry and occupation	331.48

*See also 305.43 for sociology of women's occupations*

- .41–.42 Specific aspects of employment of women
- Add to base number 331.4 the numbers following 331 in 331.1–331.2, e.g., discrimination against women 331.4133
- .43 Married women
- .44 Working mothers
- Including expectant mothers, maternity leave
- .47 Labor unions and labor-management bargaining and disputes
- Add to base number 331.47 the numbers following 331.8 in 331.87–331.89, e.g., women in labor unions 331.478
- .48 Women workers by industry and occupation
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

- .481 Women workers in industries and occupations other than extractive, manufacturing, construction  
 Standard subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both  
 Class here women in service industries and occupations
- .481 000 1–.481 000 9 Standard subdivisions
- .481 001–.481 999 Subdivisions for women workers in industries and occupations other than extractive, manufacturing, construction  
 Add to base number 331.481 notation 001–999, e.g., women in advertising 331.4816591  
 Subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both
- .482–.489 Women workers in extractive, manufacturing, construction industries and occupations  
 Add to base number 331.48 the numbers following 6 in 620–690, e.g., women clothing workers 331.4887  
 Subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both
- .5 Workers by personal attributes other than age**  
 Including transgender and intersex people, retired people  
*For immigrants and aliens, see 331.62; for native-born workers by ethnic group, see 331.63*
- .51 Prisoners and ex-convicts  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
 Including political and war prisoners
- .52 Veterans  
*See also 331.25291355 for pensions received because of military service; also 331.761355 for military labor*
- .53 Gays  
 Class here gay men
- .54 Workers in special economic situations  
 Class here economically disadvantaged workers not provided for elsewhere  
 Class unemployed workers in 331.137
- .542 Contract workers
- .544 Migrant and casual workers  
 Standard subdivisions are added for migrant and casual workers together, for migrant workers alone  
 Class here migrant agricultural laborers  
*See also 331.62 for immigrant and alien workers*
- .55 Apprentices  
 Class training of apprentices in 331.25922

.56 Workers by gender or sex  
Class transgender and intersex people in 331.5

*For women, see 331.4*

.561 Men

.58 Workers by religious group

Add to base number 331.58 the numbers following 2 in 230–299, e.g., Catholics 331.5882, Muslims 331.5897

.59 Workers with disabilities and illnesses

Class here workers with physical disabilities

Add to base number 331.59 the numbers following —087 in notation 0871–0877 from Table 1, e.g., workers with impaired vision 331.591

## .6 Workers by ethnic and national origin

.62 Immigrants and aliens

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

*See also 331.544 for migrant workers*

.620 9 History, geographic treatment, biography

Class here immigrant and alien workers in specific areas, e.g., immigrant workers in Canada 331.620971

*For immigrant and alien workers from specific jurisdictions, see 331.621–331.629*

> 331.621–331.629 Immigrants and aliens by place of origin

Class comprehensive works in 331.62

*See also 331.6209 for immigrant and alien workers in specific areas*

.621 Immigrants and aliens from areas, regions, places in general

Add to base number 331.621 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., immigrant workers from developing regions 331.621724; then add 0\* and to the result add notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., immigrant workers from developing regions in California 331.6217240794

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.623–.629 Immigrants and aliens from specific continents, countries, localities

Add to base number 331.62 notation 3–9 from Table 2 for place of origin, e.g., immigrant workers from China 331.6251; then, for area located, add 0\* and to the result add notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., immigrant workers from China in California 331.62510794

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

\*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

.63 Native-born workers by ethnic group

Class here indigenous ethnic groups [*formerly* 331.69], native-born nonindigenous ethnic groups

.630 01–.630 07 Standard subdivisions

.630 08 Groups of people

[.630 089] Ethnic and national groups

Do not use for comprehensive works on native-born ethnic groups; class in 331.63. Do not use for specific native-born ethnic groups; class in 331.6305–331.6399

.630 09 History, geographic treatment, biography

.630 5–.630 9 Native-born workers of mixed ancestry with ethnic origins from more than one continent, native-born European workers and native-born workers of European descent

Add to base number 331.63 notation 05–09 from Table 5, e.g., native-born workers of European descent 331.6309, native-born workers of European descent in Australia 331.6309094

.631–.639 Native-born workers of other ethnic groups

Add to base number 331.63 notation 1–9 from Table 5, e.g., African Americans 331.6396073, African American workers in Alabama 331.63960730761, Aboriginal Australians 331.639915, Aboriginal Australian workers in Queensland 331.6399150943

[.69] Indigenous ethnic groups

Relocated to 331.63

.7 **Labor by industry and occupation**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class comprehensive works on industrial occupations in 331.794

*For professional relationships in a specific industry or occupation, see the industry or occupation, plus notation 023 from Table 1, e.g., professional relationships in accounting 657.023*

.700 1–.700 9 Standard subdivisions

.702 Choice of vocation

Class here choice of vocation for people with specific personal attributes, e.g., veterans; interdisciplinary works describing vocations and occupational specialties; interdisciplinary works on career opportunities and vocational counseling

Class studies of vocational interest in 158.6; class job hunting in 650.14

*For vocational counseling in schools, see 371.425. For descriptions of, career opportunities in, choice of vocation with regard to specific vocations and occupational specialties, see the vocation or specialty, plus notation 023 from Table 1, e.g., career opportunities in accounting 657.023*

.702 3 Choice of vocation for people at specific educational levels

- [.702 301–.702 309]      Standard subdivisions  
    Do not use; class in 331.70201–331.70209
- .702 33                      Choice of vocation for high school graduates
- .702 35                      Choice of vocation for college graduates  
    Regardless of degree obtained
- .71                          Professional occupations  
    *For specific professional occupations, see 331.761*
- .76                          Specific industries and occupations  
    Class specific groups of occupations in 331.79
- [.760 1–.760 9]          Standard subdivisions  
    Do not use; class in 331.7001–331.7009
- .761                         Industries and occupations other than extractive, manufacturing, construction  
    Standard subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both  
    Class comprehensive works on service industries and occupations in 331.793
- .761 000 1–.761 000 9      Standard subdivisions
- .761 001–.761 999          Subdivisions for industries and occupations other than extractive, manufacturing, construction  
    Add to base number 331.761 notation 001–999, e.g., managerial occupations 331.761658; however, for governmental (public service) occupations, see 331.795  
    Subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both
- .762–.769                 Extractive, manufacturing, construction industries and occupations  
    Add to base number 331.76 the numbers following 6 in 620–690, e.g., food processing 331.7664  
    Subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both  
    Class comprehensive works on industrial occupations in 331.794
- .79                         General occupation groups and government occupations  
    Occupational groups not defined by industry or discipline  
    Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 331.79 in the number coming last, e.g., white collar governmental (public service) occupations 331.795 (*not* 331.792)  
    *For professional occupations, see 331.71*
- [.790 1–.790 9]          Standard subdivisions  
    Do not use; class in 331.7001–331.7009
- .792                         White collar occupations

- .793 Service occupations  
Class here labor in service industries
- .794 Industrial occupations  
Including the work of artisans and supervisors; skilled, semiskilled work  
*For unskilled work, see 331.798*
- .795 Governmental occupations (Public service occupations)  
Including elected civil servants
- .798 Unskilled work

**.8 Labor unions, labor-management bargaining and disputes**

Class here interdisciplinary works on labor movements

Class comprehensive works on labor relations (all relations between management and individual employees or employee groups) in 331; class comprehensive works on industrial democracy in 331.0112

*For a specific aspect of labor movements, see the aspect, e.g., political activities of labor movements 322.2*

**SUMMARY**

- 331.87 **Labor union organization**  
.88 **Labor unions (Trade unions)**  
.89 **Labor-management bargaining and disputes**

- .87 Labor union organization  
Class comprehensive works on labor unions in 331.88
- .871 Constitutions, bylaws, rules
- .872 Levels of organization  
Including locals, national unions, union federations  
Class international unions in 331.88091; class descriptions of individual unions and federations, comprehensive works on unions in specific areas in 331.8809
- .873 Specific aspects of union organization  
Including discipline of members
- [.873 01–.873 09] Standard subdivisions  
Do not use; class in 331.8701–331.8709
- .873 2 Membership  
Class here membership policies  
Class discrimination by unions against workers with specific personal attributes with the characteristic in 331.3–331.6, e.g., discrimination against women 331.47732

- .873 3           Officers  
                   Including shop stewards  
                   Class here union leaders  
                   Class biography of union leaders in 331.88092
- .873 5           Benefits, funds, property
- .874            Union elections and conventions  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for union elections and conventions  
                   together, for union elections alone
- .88            Labor unions (Trade unions)  
                   Class here unions organized along religious lines, e.g., Christian trade unions  
                   Class right of workers to organize in 331.2596  
                   *For labor union organization, see 331.87; for managerial viewpoint on  
                   labor unions, see 638.3153*  
                   *See also 322.2 for political activities of labor unions*
- .880 1           Philosophy and theory  
                   Including countermonopoly theory; theories of unions as instruments  
                   of class struggle, as instruments of industrial democracy, as  
                   instruments for worker control of industry  
                   *See also 331.0112 for industrial democracy; also 338.69 for  
                   worker control of industry*
- .880 9           History, geographic treatment, biography
- .880 91          Areas, regions, places in general  
                   Class here international unions  
                   Class international unions with members from only two countries  
                   in 331.88094–331.88099, using the comprehensive notation from  
                   Table 2 for the two countries, e.g., unions with United States and  
                   Canadian workers 331.880973
- .881            Labor unions by industry and occupation  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .881 1           Labor unions in industries and occupations other than extractive,  
                   manufacturing, construction  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both  
                   Class here labor unions in service industries and occupations
- .881 100 01–.881 100 09       Standard subdivisions

- .881 100 1-.881 199 9      Subdivisions for labor unions (trade unions) in industries and occupations other than extractive, manufacturing, construction
- Add to base number 331.8811 notation 001-999, e.g., teachers' unions 331.88113711
- Subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both
- .881 2-.881 9      Labor unions in extractive, manufacturing, construction industries and occupations
- Add to base number 331.881 the numbers following 6 in 620-690, e.g., garment workers' unions 331.88187
- Subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both
- .883      Kinds of unions
- Class blue-collar unions in 331.88; class specific kinds of unions by industry and occupation in 331.881
- For revolutionary unions, see 331.886*
- .883 2      Craft unions
- Class semi-industrial unions in 331.8833
- .883 3      Industrial unions
- Class here semi-industrial unions
- .883 4      Company unions
- .883 6      White collar unions
- .886      Revolutionary unions
- Class Industrial Workers of the World (IWW) in 331.8860973
- .889      Union security issues
- .889 2      Open and closed shop
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Class here right to work, agency shop, union shop; general arrangements for union security
- Class specific issues of union security in 331.8896; class comprehensive works on rights of labor in 331.011
- .889 6      Other union security issues
- Including control of hiring, layoffs, apprenticeships; preferential hiring, sole bargaining rights; dues checkoff, featherbedding
- Class general arrangements for union security in 331.8892
- [.889 601-.889 609]      Standard subdivisions
- Do not use; class in 331.88901-331.88909
- .889 66      Grievance procedures

- .89 Labor-management bargaining and disputes
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Variant name for labor-management bargaining: collective bargaining
- Class conditions of work determined by collective bargaining in 331.2; class grievance procedures to resolve disputes in 331.88966; class works treating collective bargaining from the managerial viewpoint in 658.3154

### SUMMARY

- 331.890 4 Labor-management bargaining and disputes by industry and occupation**
- .891 Contracts and related topics**
- .892 Strikes**
- .893 Other labor measures**
- .894 Management measures**
- .898 Government measures**
- .890 4 Labor-management bargaining and disputes by industry and occupation
- Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- .890 41 Labor-management bargaining and disputes in industries and occupations other than extractive, manufacturing, construction
- Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- Class here labor-management bargaining and disputes in service industries and occupations
- .890 410 001–.890 410 009 Standard subdivisions
- .890 410 01–.890 419 99 Subdivisions for labor-management bargaining and disputes in industries and occupations other than extractive, manufacturing, construction
- Add to base number 331.89041 notation 001–999, e.g., labor-management bargaining in hospitals 331.8904136211
- Subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- .890 42–.890 49 Labor-management bargaining and disputes in extractive, manufacturing, construction industries and occupations
- Add to base number 331.8904 the numbers following 6 in 620–690, e.g., labor-management bargaining and disputes in the garment industry 331.890487
- Subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- .891 Contracts and related topics
- Standard subdivisions are added for contracts and related topics, for contracts alone
- .891 2 Organizing and contract negotiation
- Including negotiation during life of contract, recognition of unions
- Class conciliation measures in 331.8914

- .891 4            Conciliation measures
- .891 42            Mediation
- .891 43            Arbitration
- .892            Strikes
- For management measures with respect to strikes, see 331.894; for government measures with respect to strikes, see 331.898*
- See also 331.8914 for conciliation measures*
- .892 01            Philosophy and theory
- Including right to strike, general theories about effects of strikes
- Class effects of strikes on a specific thing with the thing, e.g., effect of strikes on profitability of mining industries 338.23
- [.892 09]            History, geographic treatment, biography
- Do not use; class in 331.8929
- .892 5            General strikes
- Class interdisciplinary works on general strikes in 322.2
- .892 7            Picketing
- .892 8            Strikes by industry and occupation
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .892 81            Strikes in industries and occupations other than extractive, manufacturing, construction
- Standard subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both
- Class here strikes in service industries and occupations
- .892 810 001--892 810 009            Standard subdivisions
- .892 810 01--892 819 99            Subdivisions for strikes in industries and occupations other than extractive, manufacturing, construction
- Add to base number 331.89281 notation 001-999, e.g., teachers' strikes 331.892813711
- Subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both
- .892 82--892 89            Strikes in extractive, manufacturing, construction industries and occupations
- Add to base number 331.8928 the numbers following 6 in 620-690, e.g., strikes of rubber workers 331.8928782
- Subdivisions are added for industries, occupations, or both
- .892 9            History, geographic treatment, biography
- .892 900 1--892 900 8            Standard subdivisions

- [.892 900 9] History  
Do not use; class in 331.8929
- .892 901–.892 905 Historical periods  
Add to base number 331.89290 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., strikes in 20th century 331.892904  
Class general strikes in specific periods in 331.8925; class strikes by industry and occupations in specific periods in 331.8928
- .892 91–.892 99 Geographic treatment and biography  
Add to base number 331.8929 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., strikes in Great Britain 331.892941  
Class general strikes in specific places in 331.8925; class strikes by industry and occupations in specific places in 331.8928
- .893 Other labor measures  
Including boycotts, injunctions, sabotage  
Class here comprehensive works on labor violence  
*For violence in strikes, see 331.892*
- .894 Management measures  
Including blacklisting, injunctions, labor espionage, lockouts, strikebreaking, yellow-dog contracts  
Class comprehensive works on strikes in 331.892
- .898 Government measures  
*For conciliation measures, see 331.8914*  
*See also 331.8892 for right to work*
- .898 4 Use of troops

## 332 Financial economics

*For public finance, see 336*

*See Manual at 332, 336 vs. 339; also at 332 vs. 338, 658.15*

### SUMMARY

- 332.01–.09 Standard subdivisions, personal finance, special topics of financial economics
- .1 Banks
  - .2 Specialized banking institutions
  - .3 Credit and loan institutions
  - .4 Money
  - .5 Barter, commercial paper, social credit money
  - .6 Investment
  - .7 Credit
  - .8 Interest
  - .9 Counterfeiting, forgery, alteration

- .02           Miscellaneous and personal finance  
                   Notation 02 from Table 1 as modified below
- .024          Personal finance  
                   Do not use for works on financial economics for people in specific  
                   occupations; class in 332.02  
                   Including prevention of identity theft  
                   Class here management of household finances  
                   *For a specific aspect of personal finance not provided for here, see  
                   the aspect, e.g., investing in stocks 332.6322, consumer information  
                   381.33*
- .024 001–.024 009       Standard subdivisions
- .024 01        Increasing income, net worth, financial security  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading  
                   Class here financial independence
- .024 014       Retirement planning
- .024 014 5       Retirement investment plans  
                   Class here individual retirement accounts (IRAs), 401(k)  
                   plans, Keogh plans, other investment plans regardless of  
                   name; annuities
- .024 016        Estate planning
- .024 02        Personal debt management
- .04            Special topics of financial economics
- .041          Capital  
                   *For international aspects of capital, see 332.042*
- .041 2         Working capital  
                   Including cash, inventories
- .041 4         Fixed capital  
                   *For land, see 333*
- .041 5         Capital formation and saving  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Class here capital markets, interdisciplinary works on raising money  
                   for investment in capital assets  
                   *For capital formation discussed in relation to production in  
                   specific kinds of industries, see 338.1–338.4; for financing of  
                   firms, see 338.6041; for savings and investment as a factor  
                   affecting national income, see 339.43*
- [.041 506 8]       Management  
                   Do not use; class in 658.1522

- .041 52            Self-financing  
                     Class here retained profits  
                     Class managerial aspects of self-financing in 658.15226
- .041 54            Venture capital
- .042                International finance  
                     Class international monetary system in 332.45; class comprehensive works on international economics in 337  
                     *For international banking, see 332.15; for international investment, see 332.673*
- .042 4             Capital movements  
                     Class here currency movements  
                     *For exchange of currencies, see 332.45; for international exchange of securities, see 332.65; for balance of payments, see 382.17*
- .042 46            Emigrant remittances  
                     *For a specific aspect of emigrant remittances, see the aspect, e.g., impact of emigrant remittances on economic development in Latin America 338.98*
- .06                Organizations  
                     Do not use for financial institutions and their management; class in 332.1
- .1                Banks**  
                     Including bank failures  
                     Class here banking; comprehensive works on money and banking, on financial institutions and their functions  
                     Class government guaranty of deposits in 368.854  
                     *For specialized banking institutions, see 332.2; for credit and loan institutions, see 332.3; for money, see 332.4; for credit, see 332.7; for credit unions, see 334.22. For a specific nonbanking activity of a bank, see the activity, e.g., banks selling real estate 333.33*

### SUMMARY

- |        |                                    |
|--------|------------------------------------|
| 332.11 | <b>Central banks</b>               |
| .12    | <b>Commercial banks</b>            |
| .15    | <b>International banks</b>         |
| .16    | <b>Banks with multiple outlets</b> |
| .17    | <b>Banking services</b>            |
- .11                Central banks  
                     Specific central banks are classed here, e.g., United States Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System 332.110973

- .112           Relation to monetary policy  
                   Including issuance of bank notes  
                   Class role of central bank in carrying out macroeconomic policy in 339.53; class comprehensive works on bank notes in 332.4044  
                   *For interest rates, reserve requirements, see 332.113; for open-market operations, see 332.114*
- .113           Relation to commercial banks  
                   Including clearance, interest rates (discount rates), loans, reserve requirements
- .114           Open-market operations  
                   Including purchase of government securities
- .12            Commercial banks  
                   Class here clearing banks, clearing houses  
                   Class relation to central banks in 332.113; class commercial banks with multiple outlets in 332.16  
                   *For international operations of commercial banks, see 332.15; for other banking services of commercial banks, see 332.17*
- .122           Incorporated banks  
                   Class here chartered banks
- .122 3          National banks  
                   *See also 332.11 for central banks*
- .122 4          State and provincial banks  
                   Class state and provincial chartered private banks in 332.123
- .123           Private banks
- .15            International banks  
                   Class here international operations of commercial and other banks, role of banks in international borrowing and debt  
                   Class comprehensive works on international borrowing and debt in 336.3435
- .152           International banks for monetary stabilization and balance of payments  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Class here International Monetary Fund  
                   Class comprehensive works on balance of payments in 382.17

- .153 International banks for development of resources and production  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
 Including International Development Association, International Finance Corporation  
 Class here comprehensive works on development banks  
 Class banks for development of resources and production in a specific region in 332.15309  
*For development banks serving one country, see 332.28*
- .153 094 Europe  
*For European Investment Bank, see 332.1534*
- .153 097 North America  
*For Inter-American Development Bank, see 332.1538*
- .153 2 International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (World Bank)
- .153 4 European Investment Bank
- .153 8 Inter-American Development Bank
- .154 International banks for promotion and facilitation of trade  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .155 International banks for international settlements  
 Class here Bank for International Settlements
- .16 Banks with multiple outlets  
 Class here branch banks, chain banks, interstate banking; bank holding companies, mergers, syndicates
- .17 Banking services  
*For international operations, see 332.15; for services of specialized banking institutions, see 332.2*  
*See also 332.7 for credit functions not limited to a specific type of financial institution*
- .175 General banking services
- .175 2 Deposits  
 Including time deposits, e.g., certificates of deposit, savings accounts; savings departments
- .175 22 Checking accounts  
 Including NOW (negotiable order of withdrawal) accounts  
 Class here demand deposits
- .175 3 Loans



- .35 Consumer and sales finance institutions  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .37 Labor and employee banks  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
*For credit unions, see 334.22*  
*See also 332.35 for banks specializing in consumer loans*
- .38 Credit and loan functions of insurance companies  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
Class interdisciplinary works on insurance companies in 368.0065

#### **.4 Money**

Class here mediums of exchange

Class monetary policy in 332.46; class comprehensive works on money and banking in 332.1

*For barter, commercial paper, social credit money, see 332.5*

#### **SUMMARY**

- 332.401--408 Standard subdivisions and forms and units of money**
- .41 Value of money
- .42 Monetary standards
- .45 Foreign exchange
- .46 Monetary policy
- .49 History, geographic treatment, biography of money and monetary policy
- .401 Philosophy and theory  
Including circulation and velocity theory, equation of exchange theory, income and cash balance theories, quantity theory, supply and demand theory
- .404 Forms and units of money
- .404 2 Gold and silver coins  
Class here interdisciplinary works on coins  
*For token coins, coins of nonprecious metals, see 332.4043. For a specific aspect of coins not provided for here, see the aspect, e.g., coins as an investment 332.63, artistic aspect of coins 737.4*
- .404 3 Token coins  
Coins with an intrinsic value less than their nominal value  
Class here coins of nonprecious metals
- .404 4 Paper money  
Class here bank notes

- [.409] History, geographic treatment, biography  
Do not use; class in 332.49
- .41 Value of money  
Class here inflation, stagflation, deflation; purchasing power  
Class the personal financial problem of coping with changing value of money in 332.024; class comprehensive works on purchasing power in 339.42  
*See also 331.1372 for effects of inflation on unemployment*
- .414 Factors affecting fluctuations in value  
Including variations in money supply  
*For stabilization measures, see 332.415*
- .414 2 Devaluation
- .415 Stabilization measures  
Including wage-price policy to combat inflation  
Class monetary policy in 332.46; class fiscal policy in 336.3; class comprehensive works on economic stabilization policies, on wage-price policy in 339.5
- .42 Monetary standards  
Class here credit, fiat, paper money; bank notes; legal tender; paper standard  
*For paper money as a form of currency, see 332.4044*
- .422 Monometallic standards
- .422 2 Gold standard
- .422 3 Silver standard  
Class silver question in 332.4230973
- .423 Bimetallism  
Class here bimetallism based on gold and silver
- .45 Foreign exchange  
Class here forward exchange (foreign exchange futures), international monetary systems, special drawing rights  
Class Eurocurrency and Eurodollar market in 332.456094; class Euro in 332.494; class comprehensive works on international finance in 332.042; class comprehensive works on financial futures in 332.632; class comprehensive works on speculation in 332.645; class comprehensive works on balance of payments in 382.17  
*See also 332.152 for International Monetary Fund*
- .452 Foreign exchange with a gold standard
- .456 Exchange rates  
Class here currency convertibility

- .456 01–.456 08      Standard subdivisions  
    Class standard subdivisions of specific currencies and groups of currencies in 332.45609
- .456 09                      History, geographic treatment, biography
- .456 091                    Exchange rates of specific currencies and groups of currencies in areas, regions, places in general  
    Add to base number 332.456091 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., exchange rates of currencies of developing countries 332.456091724; then add 0\* and to the result add notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., exchange rate between currencies of developing countries and Europe 332.45609172404  
    Do not follow add instructions under —091 in Table 1  
    Give priority in notation to the currency of a jurisdiction or group of jurisdictions coming first in Table 2  
    (Option: Give priority in notation to the currency of the jurisdiction requiring local emphasis, e.g., libraries in Europe class exchange rate between currencies of Europe and developing countries in 332.45609401724)
- .456 093–.456 099      Exchange rates of specific currencies and groups of currencies in specific continents, countries, localities  
    Add to base number 332.45609 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., exchange rates of currency of United Kingdom 332.4560941; then add 0\* and to the result add notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., exchange rate between currencies of United Kingdom and United States 332.4560941073  
    Do not use add table under —093–099 in Table 1  
    Give priority in notation to the currency of a jurisdiction or group of jurisdictions coming first in Table 2  
    (Option: Give priority in notation to the currency of the jurisdiction requiring local emphasis, e.g., libraries in United States class exchange rate between currencies of United States and United Kingdom in 332.4560973041)
- .456 2                      Floating exchange rates (Fluctuating exchange rates)  
    Class managed floating rates in 332.4564
- .456 4                      Fixed and flexible exchange rates  
    *For determination by international agreement, see 332.4566*
- .456 6                      Determination by international agreement  
    Class here international monetary policy, international monetary reform  
    Class International Monetary Fund in 332.152; class comprehensive works on monetary policy in 332.46

\*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

- .46      **Monetary policy**  
           Including minting policies and practices  
           Class here currency question, managed currency  
           *For relation of central banks to monetary policy, see 332.112; for international monetary policy, see 332.4566; for use of monetary policy for economic stabilization, see 339.53*
- [.460 9]      History, geographic treatment, biography  
                   Do not use; class in 332.49
- .49      **History, geographic treatment, biography of money and monetary policy**  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for money, monetary policy, or both
- .490 01–.490 08      Standard subdivisions
- [.490 09]      History  
                   Do not use; class in 332.49
- .490 1–.490 5      Historical periods  
                   Add to base number 332.490 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., money and monetary policy in 20th century 332.4904  
                   Subdivisions are added for money, monetary policy, or both
- .491–.499      **Geographic treatment and biography**  
                   Add to base number 332.49 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., money and monetary policy in India 332.4954  
                   Subdivisions are added for money, monetary policy, or both
- .5      Barter, commercial paper, social credit money**
- .54      Barter
- .55      **Commercial paper as medium of exchange**  
                   Class comprehensive works on commercial paper in 332.77
- .56      **Social credit money**
- .6      Investment**  
                   Class here investments, domestic investment, individual investment, private investment; investment prospectuses, portfolio analysis and management  
                   Class investment guides in 332.678; class description and analysis of business enterprises issuing securities in 338.7

## SUMMARY

- 332.604**                    **Special topics of investment**  
     **.62**                    **Securities brokers**  
     **.63**                    **Specific forms of investment**  
     **.64**                    **Exchange of securities and commodities; speculation**  
     **.65**                    **International exchange of securities**  
     **.66**                    **Investment banks**  
     **.67**                    **Investments in specific industries, in specific kinds of enterprise, by**  
                                  **specific kinds of investors; international investment; investment**  
                                  **guides**
- [.601 12]                    Forecasting
- Do not use; class in 332.678
- .604                    Special topics of investment
- .604 2                    Investment for specific purposes
- Including socially responsible investment
- Class retirement investment plans in 332.0240145
- [.604 201–.604 209]                    Standard subdivisions
- Do not use; class in 332.601–332.609
- .604 22                    Tax shelters
- .62                    Securities brokers
- Including discount brokers
- Class here investment brokers, investment counselors
- Class real estate brokerage in 333.33
- .63                    Specific forms of investment
- Including art, coins, stamps
- Class here speculation in specific forms of investment
- Class speculation in multiple forms of investment, comprehensive works  
on speculation in 332.645; class investment in specific kinds of enterprises  
regardless of form in 332.6722
- [.630 1–.630 9]                    Standard subdivisions
- Do not use; class in 332.601–332.609

- .632                    Securities, real estate, commodities
- Standard subdivisions are added for securities, real estate, commodities together; for securities alone
- Class here valuation (value); speculation in securities; comprehensive works on financial futures
- Class evaluation techniques in 332.632042; class buying and selling procedures for securities and commodities in 332.64; class buying and selling procedures for real estate in 333.33; class comprehensive works on speculation, on futures in 332.645
- For forward exchange (foreign exchange futures), see 332.45*
- .632 04                Special topics of securities, real estate, commodities
- .632 042              Evaluation techniques for securities, real estate, commodities
- Including analyzing corporate balance sheets, reading financial pages and ticker tapes
- Class the valuation given to securities, real estate and commodities in 332.632
- .632 044              General types of securities
- Including fixed rate, variable rate securities; gilt-edged securities
- Class stocks in 332.6322; class bonds in 332.6323
- See Manual at 332.632044 vs. 332.6323*
- .632 2                 Stocks (Shares)
- Including rights and warrants
- Class here common stock
- See Manual at 332.6322 vs. 332.6323*
- .632 21                Valuation
- Including dividends paid, price-earnings ratio
- For prices, see 332.63222*
- .632 22                Prices
- .632 220 21            Tabulated and related materials
- Do not use for statistics; class in 332.63222
- .632 25                Preferred stock
- Class valuation in 332.63221; class prices in 332.63222; class speculation in 332.63228
- .632 28                Stock speculation
- Including buying on margin, day trading, stock index futures
- Class comprehensive works on speculation in 332.645

- .632 283                   Options  
                                   Class here puts and calls  
                                   *See also 331.21649 for employee stock options*
- .632 3                    Bonds  
                                   Including mortgage bonds and certificates  
                                   Class here interest rate futures and options  
                                   *See Manual at 332.632044 vs. 332.6323; also at 332.6322 vs. 332.6323*
- .632 32                   Government securities  
                                   Class here government or treasury bonds, bills, certificates, notes  
                                   *For municipal bonds, see 332.63233*
- .632 33                   Municipal bonds
- .632 34                   Corporate bonds
- .632 4                    Real estate  
                                   Class real estate finance in 332.72; class comprehensive works on fixed capital in 332.0414; class comprehensive works on real estate business in 333.33
- .632 42                   Land
- .632 43                   Buildings and other fixtures  
                                   Standard subdivisions are added for buildings and other fixtures, for buildings alone  
                                   *See also 647.92-647.94 for management of multiple dwellings*
- .632 44                   Mortgages  
                                   *See also 332.6323 for mortgage bonds*
- .632 47                   Real estate investment trusts  
                                   Including real estate syndication
- .632 7                    Investment company securities  
                                   Including closed-end mutual funds, money market funds  
                                   Class here mutual funds, open-end mutual funds, investment companies, investment trusts, unit trusts  
                                   *For real estate investment trusts, see 332.63247*
- .632 8                    Commodities  
                                   Class here commodity futures and options, speculation in commodities

- .64 Exchange of securities and commodities; speculation  
 Class here security and commodity exchanges  
*See also 332.632 for advice on investing in specific forms of securities and commodities; also 332.678 for general investment guides*
- .642 Exchange of securities  
 Including initial public offerings, tender offers  
 Class here securities exchanges, stock exchanges, stock market  
 Class brokerage firms in 332.62; class speculation in securities in 332.632  
*For over-the-counter markets, see 332.643; for international exchange of securities, see 332.65*
- [.642 094–.642 099] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
 Do not use; class in 332.6424–332.6429
- .642 4–.642 9 Exchange of securities in specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
 Add to base number 332.642 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., exchange of securities in the Netherlands 332.642492  
 When adding from Table 2 for a specific exchange, use the number for the primary area served by the exchange, e.g., New York Stock Exchange 332.64273, Pacific Stock Exchange 332.64279
- .643 Over-the-counter markets
- .644 Exchange of commodities  
 Class here commodity exchanges, commodity futures and options markets  
 Class speculation in 332.645
- .644 1 Products of agriculture  
 Add to base number 332.6441 the numbers following 63 in 633–638, e.g., soybeans 332.6441334
- .644 2 Products of mineral industries  
 Add to base number 332.6442 the numbers following 553 in 553.2–553.9, e.g., copper 332.644243
- .645 Speculation  
 Including arbitrage, buying on margin  
 Class here speculation in multiple forms of investment  
 Class speculation in specific forms of investment in 332.63; class guides to speculation in 332.678  
*See also 332.45 for speculation in foreign exchange*
- .645 2 Futures

- .645 24 Hedging
- .645 3 Options  
Class here puts and calls
- .645 7 Derivatives
- .65 International exchange of securities  
Class comprehensive works on international investment in 332.673
- .66 Investment banks  
Class here investment banking, issuing houses  
*For international investment banks, see 332.15*  
*See also 332.1754 for investment services of commercial banks*
- .67 Investments in specific industries, in specific kinds of enterprise, by specific kinds of investors; international investment; investment guides  
Class investment in a specific form of securities with the form in 332.63, e.g., investment in railroad stocks 332.6322 (*not* 332.6722); class a specific aspect of investment with the aspect in 332.64–332.66, e.g., speculation by pension funds 332.645 (*not* 332.67254)

### SUMMARY

- 332.672 **Investment in specific industries, in specific kinds of enterprises, by specific kinds of investors**
- .673 **International investment**
- .678 **Investment guides**
- [.670 1–.670 9] Standard subdivisions  
Do not use; class in 332.601–332.609
- .672 Investment in specific industries, in specific kinds of enterprises, by specific kinds of investors  
Class foreign investment in specific industries, in specific kinds of enterprises, by specific kinds of investors in 332.673
- [.672 01–.672 09] Standard subdivisions  
Do not use; class in 332.601–332.609
- .672 2 Investment in specific industries and kinds of enterprises  
Including insurance companies, railroads  
Class here domestic investment in specific industries and specific kinds of enterprises  
Class investment in specific industries and kinds of enterprises by specific kinds of investors in 332.6725  
*See Manual at 332 vs. 338, 658.15*
- [.672 201–.672 209] Standard subdivisions  
Do not use; class in 332.67201–332.67209

- .672 22            Small business
- .672 5            Investment by specific kinds of investors  
                     Other than investment by private investors in general or by individual investors  
                     Class here domestic investment by specific kind of investors
- [.672 501–.672 509]    Standard subdivisions  
                             Do not use; class in 332.67201–332.67209
- .672 52            Investment by governments and their agencies  
                             Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .672 53            Investment by institutional investors  
                             Class here domestic investment by specific kinds of institutions other than pension funds  
                             Class investments by banks in 332.1754  
                                     *For investment by pension funds, see 332.67254*
- .672 532            Insurance companies
- .672 54            Investment by pension funds
- .673            International investment  
                             Class here foreign investment  
                             Class international investment banking in 332.15; class specific forms of foreign investment in 332.63; class history and description of multinational business ventures and subsidiaries in 338.88; class initiation of international business enterprises (including subsidiaries) in 658.1149  
                                     *For international exchange of securities, see 332.65*
- .673 09            History, geographic treatment, biography  
                             Class here the advantages and disadvantages of establishing businesses in specific areas, investment in specific areas not originating in other specific areas  
                             Class the advantages and disadvantages of establishing businesses in specific areas resulting from government policy in 332.6732  
                                     *See also 338.09 for works describing where in fact industry is located*  
                                     *See Manual at 338.091–338.099 vs. 332.67309, 338.6042*
- .673 093–.673 099    Specific continents, countries, localities  
                                     *For investment originating in specific continents and countries, see 332.6733–332.6739*

- .673 1            International investment by specific kinds of investors  
                     Other than investment by private investors in general  
                     Including individual investors
- [.673 101–.673 109]        Standard subdivisions  
                                     Do not use; class in 332.67301–332.67309
- .673 12            International investment by governments
- .673 14            International investment by institutional investors
- .673 2            Government policy  
                     Including international control
- .673 209 3–.673 209 9        Specific continents, countries, localities  
                                     Class incentives and obstacles in country of investment  
     in 332.67322; class incentives and obstacles in country of  
     investor in 332.67324
- .673 22            Incentives and obstacles in country of investment  
                     Class here incentives and obstacles in specific continent and  
                     region of investment  
                     Add to base number 332.67322 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g.,  
                     incentives and obstacles in Brazil 332.6732281  
                     Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .673 24            Incentives and obstacles in country of investor  
                     Class here incentives and obstacles in specific continent and  
                     region of investor  
                     Add to base number 332.67324 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g.,  
                     incentives and obstacles to overseas investment by British citizens  
                     332.6732441  
                     Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .673 3–.673 9        Investment originating in specific continents and countries  
                     Add to base number 332.673 notation 3–9 from Table 2 for origin of  
                     investment, e.g., British foreign investments 332.67341; then add 0\*  
                     and to the result add notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., British foreign  
                     investments in Brazil 332.67341081  
                     Class policies of specific governments in 332.6732

\*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

- .678            Investment guides
- Including forecasting, formula plans, speculation
- Class here guides to domestic investment in general, guides to investment by private investors in general, by individual investors in general
- Class guides to specific forms of investment in 332.63; class guides to investment in specific industry, by kind of enterprise, by kind of investor (other than private investors in general and individual investors) in 332.672; class guides to foreign investment in 332.673

**.7            Credit**

Class here loans

Class credit functions of banks in 332.1; class credit functions of specialized banking institutions in 332.2; class credit functions of credit and loan institutions in 332.3

*For interest, see 332.8*

.71            Agricultural credit

.72            Real estate finance and mortgages

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here discrimination in mortgage loans; mortgage delinquencies and defaults

Class finance on farm real estate in 332.71

*See also 332.32 for mortgage institutions; also 332.6323 for mortgage bonds and certificates; also 332.63244 for mortgages as an investment*

.722           Home finance (Residential finance)

.74            Other forms of credit

Class credit instruments facilitating a specific form of credit in 332.76

.742           Commercial, mercantile, industrial credit

Including export credit, small business loans

.743           Personal loans

Including consumer credit

.75            Insolvency and credit restrictions

Standard subdivisions are added for insolvency and credit restrictions together, for insolvency alone

Class here bankruptcy

- .76      **Credit instruments**  
           Including checks, debit cards, money orders, smart cards  
           Class certificates of deposit in 332.1752  
           *For commercial paper, see 332.77. For credit instruments issued by a specific type of financial institution, see the type in 332.1, e.g., commercial banks 332.178*
- .765      **Credit cards**  
           Class here comprehensive works on credit cards
- .77      **Commercial paper**  
           Including acceptances, drafts, letters of credit, promissory notes  
           Class here comprehensive works on commercial paper  
           *For commercial paper as medium of exchange, see 332.55*
- .8      Interest**  
           *See also 332.6323 for interest rate futures*
- .83      **Usury**
- .84      **Discount**  
           Including rediscount
- .9      Counterfeiting, forgery, alteration**  
           Class comprehensive works on counterfeiting in 364.1334; class comprehensive works on forgery in 364.1635  
           *See also 737.4 for counterfeit coins; also 769.55 for counterfeit paper money; also 769.562 for counterfeit stamps*

### 333      **Economics of land and energy**

Land: all natural and man-made resources over which possession of the earth gives control

Standard subdivisions are added for land and energy together, for land alone

Class here land as a factor of production

*See Manual at 333.73–333.78 vs. 333, 333.1–333.5*

#### SUMMARY

- |              |   |
|--------------|---|
| 333.001–.009 | Standard subdivisions                           |
| .01–.08      | [Theories and land surveys]                     |
| .1           | Public ownership of land                        |
| .2           | Ownership of land by nongovernmental groups     |
| .3           | Private ownership of land                       |
| .4           | Absentee ownership                              |
| .5           | Renting and leasing land                        |
| .7           | Land, recreational and wilderness areas, energy |
| .8           | Subsurface resources                            |
| .9           | Other natural resources                         |

- .001           Philosophy and theory  
                   Do not use for theories; class in 333.01
- .001 2           Classification  
                   *For land classification, see 333.73012*
- .002–.009       Standard subdivisions
- .01           Theories
- .012           Rent theories  
                   Including Ricardo's theory of earning power of land in terms of its  
                   marginal productivity  
                   Class here economic rent  
                   Class comprehensive works on rent in 333.5
- .08           Land surveys  
                   Class here work of chartered surveyors (United Kingdom)  
                   *For land surveying techniques, see 526.9. For a specific kind of land  
                   survey, see the kind, e.g., public land surveys 333.18, land use surveys  
                   333.7313*  
                   *See also 631.47 for surveys that focus on agricultural use of soils*

&gt;

### 333.1–333.5 Ownership of land

Ownership: right to possession and use; right to transfer of possession and use

Land: all natural and man-made resources over which possession of the earth gives control

Class here the kind of control that stems from ownership; ownership of natural resources

Class comprehensive economic works on ownership of land in 333.3; class interdisciplinary works on economic and legal aspects of ownership and transfer of land in 346.043

*See also 333.7–333.9 for usage of natural resources, for control of such usage not stemming from ownership*

*See Manual at 333.73–333.78 vs. 333, 333.1–333.5*

#### .1 Public ownership of land

Class public control of privately owned lands in 333.717; class comprehensive works on land policy in 333.73

*See also 333.2 for ownership and control of land by peoples subordinate to another jurisdiction; also 343.02 for law of public property*

#### .11 Acquisition and disposal of specific kinds of lands

Including forests, roads, recreational lands

- [.110 1–.110 9]      Standard subdivisions  
                             Do not use; class in 333.1
- .13      Acquisition  
             Including eminent domain, expropriation, purchase  
             Class here evaluation of lands for government acquisition  
             Class acquisition of specific kinds of land in 333.11  
                             *For nationalization, see 333.14*
- .14      Nationalization
- .16      Disposal  
             Including grants, leases, sale  
             Class disposal of specific kinds of land in 333.11
- .18      Public land surveys  
             Class surveys of public land use in 333.7313; class interdisciplinary works  
             on land surveys in 333.08  
                             *See also 526.9 for surveying techniques*

**.2      Ownership of land by nongovernmental groups**

Including common lands; enclosure of common lands; open-field system;  
 ownership and control of land by peoples subordinate to another jurisdiction,  
 e.g., lands of American native peoples in United States

*For corporate ownership, see 333.324*

**.3      Private ownership of land**

Including subdivision of private land

Class here comprehensive works on land ownership (land tenure)

*For public ownership, see 333.1; for ownership by nongovernmental groups,  
 see 333.2; for absentee ownership, see 333.4*

**SUMMARY**

- |        |  |
|--------|--|
| 333.31 | Land reform                                |
| .32    | Types of tenure                            |
| .33    | Transfer of possession and of right to use |

.31      Land reform

Class here land redistribution, settlement and resettlement of people on the  
 land

*See also 333.2 for enclosure of common lands*

- [.310 94–.310 99]      Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
                             Do not use; class in 333.314–333.319

- .314-.319 Land reform in specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
 Add to base number 333.31 notation 4-9 from Table 2, e.g., land reform in Latin America 333.318
- .32 Types of tenure
- .322 Feudal tenure
- .323 Individual tenure  
*For corporate ownership, see 333.324*
- .323 2 Ownership in fee simple
- .323 4 Qualified ownership  
 Including easements, entails, life estates, time-sharing
- .324 Corporate ownership
- .33 Transfer of possession and of right to use  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
 Including consolidation of holdings  
 Class here comprehensive works on real estate business  
 Class land reform in 333.31  
*For government acquisition and disposal, see 333.1; for renting and leasing, see 333.5; for real estate development, see 333.7315*  
*See also 332.6324 for real estate investment; also 332.72 for real estate finance*
- .332 Value and price of land  
 Standard subdivisions are added for value and price together, for value alone  
 Class here valuation (appraisal)  
 Class valuation for government acquisition and disposal in 333.11-333.16; class value and price of specific kinds of land in 333.335-333.339; class valuation for tax purposes in 352.44
- .332 2 Real estate market  
 Class here economic and social factors affecting exchange of real estate  
 Class price in 333.3323
- .332 3 Price
- .332 302 1 Tabulated and related materials  
 Do not use for statistics; class in 333.3323

- .333           Sale and gift  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for sale and gift together, for sale alone  
                   Class sale and gift of specific kinds of land in 333.335–333.339

>           333.335–333.339 Transfer of possession and use of specific kinds of land  
               Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision  
               identified by \* as follows:

- 2       Value and price  
           Standard subdivisions are added for value and price together, for  
           value alone  
           Class here valuation (appraisal)
- 22      Real estate market  
           Class here economic and social factors affecting exchange of  
           real estate  
           Class price in 23
- 23      Price
- 3       Sale and gift  
           Standard subdivisions are added for sale and gift together, for sale  
           alone
- 5       Renting and leasing  
           Standard subdivisions are added for renting and leasing together,  
           for renting alone  
           Add to 5 the numbers following 333.5 in 333.53–333.56, e.g., share  
           renting 563

Class comprehensive works in 333.33

- .335           \*Rural lands  
                   Class here agricultural lands
- .335 7        \*Forest lands
- .336           \*Industrial lands  
                   Including transportation space, e.g., right of way  
                   Class works that emphasize buildings in 333.338
- .337           \*Urban lands  
                   Residential and commercial lands  
                   Class works that emphasize buildings in 333.338  
                   *For industrial lands, see 333.336*
- .338           \*Buildings and other fixtures  
                   Including apartment houses, condominiums, mobile homes  
                   Class here residential buildings  
                   *See also 643.12 for the homemakers approach to buying and selling  
                   housing*

\*Add as instructed under 333.335–333.339

- .338 7           \*Commercial and industrial buildings  
                   Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .339           Other natural resources  
                   Appraisal, gift, leasing, renting, sale, market  
                   Including rights to use of minerals, water, air space
- .4           **Absentee ownership**
- .5           **Renting and leasing land**  
                   Class renting and leasing specific kinds of land in 333.335–333.339  
                   *For renting and leasing public land, see 333.16; for renting and leasing land owned by nongovernmental groups other than private corporations and partnerships, see 333.2; for absentee ownership, see 333.4*
- .53           Tenancy  
                   Including tenancy for years (for a specified time period), tenancy from year to year, tenancy at will  
                   *For landlord-tenant relations, see 333.54*
- .54           Landlord-tenant relations
- .56           Types of renting
- .562           Cash renting
- .563           Share renting  
                   Class here percentage renting  
                   *For sharecropping, see 333.335563*

&gt;

**333.7–333.9 Natural resources and energy**

Aspects other than ownership

Class here raw materials

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by \* as follows:

01–09 Standard subdivisions

1 General topics

Class comprehensive works on specific topics in 333.71

[101–109] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 01–09

11 Reserves

Variant names: stock, supply

Including shortages

12 Requirements

Variant names: need, demand

13 Consumption (Utilization)

Class consumption control in 17

Do not add for specific uses (e.g., water for irrigation); class with the subject in 333.7–333.9 without further subdivision

Class interdisciplinary works on consumption in 339.47

137 Abuse and wastage

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here description of abused resources, consequences of abuse and wastage

Class reclamation, rehabilitation, restoration of abused resources in 153; class prevention of abuse and wastage in 16; class pollution in 363.73

14 Environmental impact studies

Class studies emphasizing abuse and wastage in 137. Class impact on a specific environment or resource with the impact, e.g., economic impact on Rome of a major new waste treatment facility 330.945632, impact of the same treatment plant on the waters of the Tiber River 333.916214094562; class projected impacts with the program or development that is being studied, e.g., projected impact of proposed standards for water pollution 363.739462

&gt;15–17 Management and control

Class here citizen participation, planning, policy

Class comprehensive works in 333.7–333.9 without adding from this table

15 Development

152 Improvement

153 Reclamation, rehabilitation, restoration

Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

Class reclamation that is not restoration to a previous state in 152

158 Subsidies

(continued)

> **333.7–333.9 Natural resources and energy (continued)**

- 16 Conservation and protection  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
Class control of usage in 17; class comprehensive works on conservation and protection in 333.72
- 17 Control of usage  
Including allocation, price control, rationing, ways and means of efficient use  
Do not add for specific uses (e.g., water for irrigation); class with the subject in 333.7–333.9 without further subdivision

Class ownership of land and other natural resources in 333.1–333.5; class economic geology in 553; class comprehensive works on natural resources and energy in 333.7

*See Manual at 333.7–333.9 vs. 363.1, 363.73, 577; also at 333.7–333.9 vs. 363.6; also at 333.7–333.9 vs. 508, 913–919, 930–990*

**.7 Land, recreational and wilderness areas, energy**

Class here interdisciplinary works on the environment, on natural resources

Class environmentalism in 333.72

*For ownership aspects of natural resources, see 333.1–333.5; for subsurface resources, see 333.8; for natural resources other than land, recreational and wilderness areas, energy, subsurface resources, see 333.9. For noneconomic aspects of the environment, of natural resources, see the aspect, e.g., environmental protection 363.7, conservation technology 639.9*

*See Manual at 363 vs. 302–307, 333.7, 570–590, 600*

**SUMMARY**

333.71	<b>General topics of land, recreational and wilderness areas, energy</b>
.72	<b>Conservation and protection</b>
.73	<b>Land</b>
.74	<b>Grasslands</b>
.75	<b>Forest lands</b>
.76	<b>Rural lands</b>
.77	<b>Urban lands</b>
.78	<b>Recreational and wilderness areas</b>
.79	<b>Energy</b>

**.71 General topics of land, recreational and wilderness areas, energy**

Add to base number 333.71 the numbers following 1 in notation 11–17 from table under 333.7–333.9, e.g., development 333.715; however, for conservation and protection, see 333.72

.72 Conservation and protection

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here environmentalism, comprehensive works on conservation and protection of natural resources

*For conservation and protection with respect to energy or a specific type of natural resource, see the resource in 333.73–333.95, plus notation 16 from table under 333.7–333.9, e.g., conservation of wilderness areas 333.78216*

*See Manual at 333.72 vs. 304.28, 320.58, 363.7*

.73 Land

Aspects other than ownership

Including kinds of land by physical condition, e.g., mountainous land, sand dunes

Class here government policy on land; river basins

Class ownership aspects of land in 333.1–333.5; class arid and semiarid lands in 333.736

*For kinds of land by use, see 333.74–333.78; for shorelands and related areas, see 333.917; for wetlands and submerged lands, see 333.918*

*See Manual at 333.73–333.78 vs. 333, 333.1–333.5*

.731 General topics of land

Add to base number 333.731 the numbers following 1 in notation 11–17 from table under 333.7–333.9, e.g., real estate development 333.7315, comprehensive works on soil and water conservation 333.7316

Class soil and water conservation in rural lands in 333.7616; class real estate development in urban lands in 333.7715; class zoning of urban lands in 333.7717; class water conservation in 333.9116; class pollution control in 363.73966; class comprehensive works on real estate business in 333.33

*For a specific type of natural areas established for conservation, see the type, e.g., wilderness areas 333.782*

.736 \*Arid lands

Class here semiarid lands, desertification

> 333.74–333.78 Kinds of land by use

Class comprehensive works in 333.73

*See Manual at 333.73–333.78 vs. 333, 333.1–333.5*

.74 \*Grasslands

Class here grazing lands, pasture lands

- .75        \*Forest lands
- Class here national forests; jungles, rain forests, woodlands; old-growth forests
- Class parks, recreational, wilderness areas in 333.78
- See also 333.95397 for wood as a fuel*
- .751 1       Reserves
- Number built according to instructions under 333.7–333.9
- Class here forest reserves, timber reserves
- Class supply of cut timber, comprehensive works on timber in 338.17498
- .751 2       Requirements
- Number built according to instructions under 333.7–333.9
- Class here requirements for timber discussed in terms of effect on forest land and supply of uncut timber
- Class requirements for timber discussed in terms of how much timber will need to be cut to meet demand in 338.17498
- .751 3       Consumption (Utilization)
- Number built according to instructions under 333.7–333.9
- Class here consumption of forest products in terms of effect on future forest resources
- Class utilization of forests to provide products for sale in 338.17498
- .751 5       Development
- Number built according to instructions under 333.7–333.9
- Class here measures to promote growth of forests as long-term resources
- Class development of ways to exploit forest products in 338.17498
- .76        \*Rural lands
- Class here agricultural lands
- Class rural lands of a specific physical condition not devoted to a specific use in 333.73; class rural recreational lands in 333.78
- For grasslands, see 333.74; for forest lands, see 333.75*
- .765        \*Mined lands
- Class here surface-mined lands

\*Add as instructed under 333.7–333.9

- .77       \*Urban lands  
           Including commercial, industrial, residential lands; streets  
           Class urban mined lands in 333.765; class urban recreational lands in 333.78
- .78       \*Recreational and wilderness areas  
           Subdivisions are added for recreational and wilderness areas together, for  
           recreational areas alone  
           Class wildlife in 333.954; class wildlife refuges in 333.95416  
           *See also 363.68 for park and recreation services*
- .782      \*Wilderness areas  
           *For specific kinds of wilderness areas, see 333.784*
- .783      \*Parks
- .784      Specific kinds of recreational and wilderness areas  
           Including forests, mountains
- [.784 01–.784 09]   Standard subdivisions  
                           Do not use; class in 333.7801–333.7809
- 
- >       333.784 4–333.784 5 Recreational use of water  
           Class here recreational use of land adjoining water, e.g., beaches, shores  
           Class comprehensive works on recreational use of water in 333.7844; class  
           comprehensive works on uses of water and land adjoining it in 333.91
- .784 4     \*Recreational use of lakes  
           Class here comprehensive works on recreational use of water  
           *For recreational use of rivers and streams, see 333.7845; for  
           recreational use of reservoirs, see 333.7846*
- .784 5     \*Recreational use of rivers and streams  
           Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .784 6     \*Recreational use of reservoirs  
           Class comprehensive works on lakes and reservoirs in 333.7844

.79

## ‡Energy

Class here power resources, production of energy, interdisciplinary works on energy

Class electric power in 333.7932; class extraction of energy resources and comprehensive works on the economics of mineral fuels in 338.2; class comprehensive works on production economics of processing and manufacturing fuels in 338.476626; class interdisciplinary works on mineral fuels in 553

*For a specific form of energy not provided for here, see the form, e.g., wind energy 333.92; for a specific energy resource not provided for here, see the resource, e.g., fossil fuels 333.82; for a noneconomic aspect of energy, see the aspect, e.g., technology of photovoltaic power generation 621.31244*

**SUMMARY**

333.791 37

**Abuse and wastage**

.792

**Primary forms of energy**

.793

**Secondary forms of energy**

.794

**Renewable energy resources**

.796

**Energy for specific uses**

.791 37

## Abuse and wastage

Number built according to instructions under 333.7–333.9

Class utilization of waste heat in 333.793

.792

## †Primary forms of energy

Resources used directly to perform work, to produce other forms of energy

.792 3

## †Solar energy

Including electricity derived from solar energy, e.g., with photovoltaic cells

Class distribution of electricity derived from solar energy in 333.7932

.792 33

## Financial aspects

Including prices

.792 4

## †Nuclear energy

Class here electricity derived from nuclear energy

Class distribution of electricity derived from nuclear energy in 333.7932; class nuclear fuels in 333.85

.792 43

## Financial aspects

Including prices

†Add as instructed under 333.7–333.9, except use 15 for both development and generation of energy

‡Add as instructed under 333.7–333.9, except class utilization of waste heat in 333.793

- .793 †Secondary forms of energy  
 Energy produced through use of other resources  
 Including cogeneration of electric power and heat, district heating, waste heat  
 Class economics of synthetic fuel production in 338.4766266  
*For secondary forms of energy derived from a specific resource, see the resource, e.g., electricity derived from nuclear energy 333.7924*
- .793 2 †Electrical energy  
 Including distribution of electrical energy regardless of resource from which the electricity was derived, rural electrification  
 Class here electricity derived from fossil fuels, electrical utilities, comprehensive works on electrical energy  
*For electricity derived from a specific resource other than fossil fuels, see the resource, e.g., electricity derived from water 333.914*
- .793 23 Financial aspects
- .793 231 Prices
- .793 8 †Energy from waste materials  
 Class distribution of electricity derived from waste materials in 333.7932; class production economics of making fuel from waste materials in 338.4766287; class chemical technology of energy from waste materials in 662.87  
*For energy from biological wastes, see 333.9539*
- .794 †Renewable energy resources  
 Class here alternative energy resources  
 Class distribution of electricity derived from renewable energy resources in 333.7932  
*For a specific renewable or alternative energy resource, see the resource, e.g., solar energy 333.7923*
- .796 Energy for specific uses  
 Including energy for military use  
 Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 333.796 in the number coming last, e.g., energy use in school buildings 333.7964 (*not* 333.7962)  
 Class a specific kind of energy for specific uses with the kind of energy, e.g., energy from petroleum for transportation use 333.8232 (*not* 333.7968)
- [.796 01–.796 09] Standard subdivisions  
 Do not use; class in 333.7901–333.7909

†Add as instructed under 333.7–333.9, except use 15 for both development and generation of energy

- .796 2           \*Energy for use in buildings  
                   Including use in construction  
                   *See also 624 for technical aspects of energy use in construction*
- .796 3           \*Energy for residential use
- .796 4           \*Energy for social service institutions  
                   Including churches, hospitals, prisons, schools
- .796 5           \*Energy for industrial use  
                   Class here manufacturing use  
                   Class energy use in construction of buildings in 333.7962  
                   *For food processing use, see 333.7966*
- .796 6           \*Energy for use in agriculture and food processing
- .796 8           \*Energy for use in transportation and commerce  
                   Subdivisions are added for transportation and commerce together, for  
                   transportation alone
- .796 89          \*Energy for commercial use
- .8           Subsurface resources**  
                   Class here strategic materials  
                   Class mined lands, including surface-mined lands, in 333.765; class extraction  
                   of subsurface resources and comprehensive works on the economics of  
                   subsurface resources in 338.2; class interdisciplinary works on subsurface  
                   resources in 553  
                   *For ownership aspects of subsurface resources, see 333.1–333.5; for*  
                   *groundwater, see 333.9104*
- .81           General topics of subsurface resources  
                   Add to base number 333.81 the numbers following 1 in notation 11–17 from  
                   table under 333.7–333.9, e.g., reserves in storage of subsurface resources  
                   333.811; however, for development, see 338.2
- .82           Fossil fuels  
                   Class here nonrenewable fuels  
                   Class electricity derived from fossil fuels in 333.7932  
                   *For nuclear fuels, see 333.85493*
- .821           General topics of fossil fuels  
                   Add to base number 333.821 the numbers following 1 in notation 11–17  
                   from table under 333.7–333.9, e.g., reserves in storage of fossil fuels  
                   333.8211; however, for development, see 338.272; for reserves in nature,  
                   see 553.2
- .822           Coal

\*Add as instructed under 333.7–333.9

- .822 1           General topics of coal  
                   Add to base number 333.8221 the numbers following 1 in notation 11–17 from table under 333.7–333.9, e.g., reserves in storage of coal 333.82211; however, for development, see 338.2724; for reserves in nature, see 553.24
- .823           Oil and natural gas
- .823 1           General topics of oil and natural gas  
                   Add to base number 333.8231 the numbers following 1 in notation 11–17 from table under 333.7–333.9, e.g., reserves in storage of oil and natural gas 333.82311; however, for development, see 338.2728; for reserves in nature, see 553.28
- .823 2           Oil  
                   Petroleum limited to oil  
                   Class petroleum covering oil and natural gas in 333.823
- .823 21          General topics of oil  
                   Add to base number 333.82321 the numbers following 1 in notation 11–17 from table under 333.7–333.9, e.g., reserves in storage of oil 333.823211; however, for development, see 338.27282; for reserves in nature, see 553.282
- .823 3           Natural gas  
                   *See also 363.63 for gas distribution services of public utilities*
- .823 31          General topics of natural gas  
                   Add to base number 333.82331 the numbers following 1 in notation 11–17 from table under 333.7–333.9, e.g., reserves in storage of natural gas 333.823311; however, for development, see 338.27285; for reserves in nature, see 553.285
- .85           Minerals  
                   Class comprehensive works on the economics of minerals in 338.2; class interdisciplinary works on nonmetallic minerals in 553; class interdisciplinary works on metals in 669
- .851           General topics of minerals  
                   Add to base number 333.851 the numbers following 1 in notation 11–17 from table under 333.7–333.9, e.g., reserves in storage of minerals 333.8511; however, for development, see 338.2; for reserves in nature, see 553
- .852–.859       Specific minerals  
                   Add to base number 333.85 the numbers following 553 in 553.2–553.9, e.g., tin 333.85453, uranium 333.854932; however, for fossil fuels, see 333.82; for groundwater, see 333.9104  
                   Class nuclear energy in 333.7924

.88        \*Geothermal energy

Class here electricity derived from geothermal energy, thermal waters

Class distribution of electricity derived from geothermal energy in 333.7932

**.9        Other natural resources**

*For ownership aspects of other natural resources, see 333.1–333.5*

**SUMMARY**

**333.91        Water and lands adjoining bodies of water**

**.92        Air**

**.94        Space**

**.95        Biological resources**

.91        Water and lands adjoining bodies of water

Standard subdivisions are added for water and lands adjoining bodies of water together, for water alone

Class here aquatic resources, comprehensive works on the economics of aquatic resources

Class interdisciplinary works on water in 553.7

*For a specific aquatic resource, see the resource, e.g., minerals 333.85, fishes 333.956; for a specific aspect of water not provided for here, see the aspect, e.g., recreational use of water and lands adjoining bodies of water 333.7844–333.7845, regulation and control of distribution of water to consumers 363.61*

*See Manual at 363.61*

.910 01–.910 09        Standard subdivisions

.910 4        †Groundwater (Subsurface water)

*For subsurface thermal waters, see 333.88*

.911        General topics of water

Class water for specific uses in 333.912–333.915; class comprehensive works on soil and water conservation in 333.7316. Class general topics of a specific kind of water with the kind, e.g., general topics of rivers and streams 333.9162

[.911 01–.911 09]        Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 333.91001–333.91009

.911 1–.911 7        Subdivisions for topics of water

Add to base number 333.911 the numbers following 1 in notation 11–17 from table under 333.7–333.9, e.g., reserves in storage, as in reservoirs and storage tanks 333.9111; however, for water pollution, see 363.7394; for reserves in nature, see 553.7

\*Add as instructed under 333.7–333.9

†Add as instructed under 333.7–333.9, except use 11 only for reserves in storage; class reserves in nature in 553.7

- 
- > 333.912–333.915 Water for specific uses  
 Class comprehensive works in 333.91  
*For recreational use, see 333.7844*
- .912 †Water for domestic and industrial uses
- .912 2 †Water for domestic use  
 Including drinking and washing
- .912 3 †Water for industrial use  
 Class water for generation of energy in 333.914; class water for transportation in 333.915
- .913 †Water for irrigation
- .914 \*Water for generation of energy  
 Including thermal ocean power conversion  
 Class here hydroelectricity
- .914 11 Reserves  
 Number built according to instructions under 333.7–333.9  
 Class here energy-producing potential of water
- .914 15 Development  
 Number built according to instructions under 333.7–333.9  
 Class here development and generation of energy
- .915 †Water for transportation

---

> 333.916–333.918 Specific bodies of water, shorelands, wetlands and related areas

Class specific uses of water, shorelands, wetlands, and related areas in 333.912–333.915; class comprehensive works in 333.91

- .916 Specific bodies of water  
 Class specific uses of specific bodies of water in 333.912–333.915; class lands adjoining specific bodies of water in 333.917; class wetlands and submerged lands related to specific bodies of water in 333.918
- .916 2 †Rivers and streams  
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
 Class river basins in 333.73

\*Add as instructed under 333.7–333.9

†Add as instructed under 333.7–333.9, except use I1 only for reserves in storage; class reserves in nature in 553.7

- .916 3 †Lakes and ponds  
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
*For saltwater lakes, see 333.9164*
- .916 4 ‡Oceans and seas  
 Including bays, estuaries, gulfs, salt lakes  
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .917 \*Lands adjoining bodies of water  
 Including beaches, floodplains, tidelands (lands that are overflowed by the tide but exposed by low water)  
 Class here coasts, seashores, shorelands  
 Class river basins in 333.73; class comprehensive works on tidelands in 333.918  
*For wetlands and submerged lands, see 333.918*
- .918 \*Wetlands and submerged lands  
 Including continental shelves, tidelands (lands underlying the ocean beyond the low tidemark but within a nation's territorial waters), comprehensive works on tidelands  
 Subdivisions are added for wetlands and submerged lands together, for wetlands alone  
 Class recreational use in 333.784  
*For tidelands (lands that are overflowed by the tide but exposed by low water), see 333.917*  
*See also 333.916 for works focusing on bodies of water rather than the land they submerge*
- .92 \*Air  
 Class here wind energy, use of wind for generation of electricity  
 Class distribution of wind-generated electricity in 333.7932
- .94 Space  
 Class industrialization of space in 338.0919
- .95 \*Biological resources  
 Class here biodiversity, biosphere  
 Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 333.95 in the number coming last, e.g., game birds 333.95829 (*not* 333.9549)

\*Add as instructed under 333.7–333.9

†Add as instructed under 333.7–333.9, except use 11 only for reserves in storage; class reserves in nature in 553.7

‡Add as instructed under 333.7–333.9, except class reserves in 551.46

## SUMMARY

- |         |   |
|---------|---|
| 333.952 | <b>Specific kinds of biological resources</b> |
| .953    | <b>Plants and microorganisms</b>              |
| .954    | <b>Animals</b>                                |
| .955    | <b>Invertebrates</b>                          |
| .956    | <b>Fishes</b>                                 |
| .957    | <b>Reptiles and amphibians</b>                |
| .958    | <b>Birds</b>                                  |
| .959    | <b>Specific kinds of mammals</b>              |
- .952      **Specific kinds of biological resources**  
             Not limited by kind of organisms  
                     *For genetic and germ plasm resources, see 333.9534; for biomass energy, see 333.9539*
- [.952 01–.952 09]      **Standard subdivisions**  
                                 Do not use; class in 333.9501–333.9509
- .952 2      **\*Rare and endangered species**  
                     Class here extinction, threatened species, vanishing species  
                     Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .952 3      **\*Nonnative species**  
                     Class here alien, exotic, introduced, invasive, naturalized species
- .952 8      **\*Aquatic biological resources**  
                     Class here freshwater biological resources  
                                 *For marine biological resources, see 333.956*
- .952 88      **\*Wetland biological resources**
- .953      **\*Plants and microorganisms**  
                     Subdivisions are added for plants and microorganisms together, for plants alone  
                                 *For forests, comprehensive works on timber resources, see 333.75*  
                                 *See also 333.82 for peat*
- .953 2      **\*Rare and endangered plants**  
                     Class here threatened, vanishing plants  
                     Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

- .953 3           \*Nonnative and native plants  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for nonnative and native plants together, for nonnative plants alone  
                   Class here alien, exotic, introduced, invasive, naturalized plants  
                   Class rare and endangered nonnative and native plants in 333.9532
- .953 4           \*Germ plasm resources  
                   Class here plant varieties; interdisciplinary works on genetic resources, on germ plasm  
                   *For animal genetic resources, germ plasm, see 333.954; for germ plasm, plant varieties in agriculture, see 631.523*
- .953 8           \*Seaweeds  
                   Class here algae, kelp
- .953 9           †Plants as sources of energy  
                   Class here interdisciplinary works on biomass energy  
                   *For animal biomass as an energy resource, see 333.954; for production economics of making biomass fuel, see 338.4766288; for biomass fuel engineering, see 662.88*
- .953 97          \*Fuelwood
- .954            \*Animals  
                   Including biomass energy, genetic resources, germ plasm  
                   Class here wildlife; comprehensive works on mammals, on vertebrates  
                   *For invertebrates, see 333.955; for fishes, see 333.956; for reptiles and amphibians, see 333.957; for birds, see 333.958; for specific kinds of mammals, see 333.959*
- .954 11          Reserves  
                   Number built according to instructions under 333.7–333.9  
                   Class here supply of uncaught animals in nature, statistics of catches used in estimating population of animals in nature  
                   Class catches from fishing, whaling, hunting, trapping industries in 338.372
- .954 15          Development  
                   Number built according to instructions under 333.7–333.9  
                   Class here measures to increase supply of animals in nature
- .954 2           \*Rare and endangered animals  
                   Class here threatened, vanishing animals  
                   Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

\*Add as instructed under 333.7–333.9

†Add as instructed under 333.7–333.9, except use 15 for both development and generation of energy

- .954 3           \*Nonnative animals  
                   Class here alien, exotic, introduced, invasive, naturalized animals
- .954 8           \*Aquatic animals  
                   *For marine animals, see 333.956*
- .954 88          \*Wetland animals
- .954 9           \*Game animals  
                   Class economics of hunting in 338.3729  
                   *For big game animals, see 333.9596*
- 
- >           333.955–333.959 Specific taxonomic groups of animals  
                   Class comprehensive works in 333.954  
                   *See Manual at 333.955–333.959 vs. 639.97*
- .955            \*Invertebrates  
                   Class here marine invertebrates, shellfish
- 
- >           333.955 3–333.955 5 Marine invertebrates  
                   Class comprehensive works in 333.955
- .955 3            \*Coral reefs
- 
- >           333.955 4–333.955 5 Shellfish  
                   Class comprehensive works in 333.955
- .955 4            \*Mollusks  
                   Class here Bivalvia  
                   Class comprehensive works on shellfish in 333.955
- .955 41–.955 48    Specific kinds of mollusks  
                   Add to base number 333.9554 the numbers following 639.4 in  
                   639.41–639.48, e.g., scallops 333.95546; then add further as  
                   instructed under 333.7–333.9 (*not* as instructed under 592–599),  
                   e.g., supply of scallops 333.9554611
- .955 5            \*Crustaceans  
                   Class here Decapoda
- .955 54–.955 58    Specific kinds of crustaceans  
                   Add to base number 333.9555 the numbers following 595.38 in  
                   595.384–595.388, e.g., lobsters 333.95554; then add further as  
                   instructed under 333.7–333.9 (*not* as instructed under 592–599),  
                   e.g., consumption of lobsters 333.9555413

\*Add as instructed under 333.7–333.9

- .955 7            \*Insects
- .956            \*Fishes
- Class here marine biological resources, comprehensive works on finfish and shellfish
- For shellfish, see 333.955. For a specific kind of marine biological resource not provided for below, see the kind, e.g., marine algae 333.9538, marine mammals 333.9595*
- .956 2–.956 7    Specific kinds of fishes
- Add to base number 333.956 the numbers following 597 in 597.2–597.7, e.g., salmon 333.95656; then add further as instructed under 333.7–333.9 (*not* as instructed under 592–599), e.g., restoration of salmon fisheries 333.95656153
- .956 8            \*Rare and endangered fishes
- Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Class specific kinds of rare and endangered fishes in 333.9562–333.9567
- .956 9            \*Game fishes
- Class specific kinds of game fishes in 333.9562–333.9567; class game fishes (salmonids) in 333.95655; class economics of fishing in 338.3727
- .957            \*Reptiles and amphibians
- Subdivisions are added for reptiles and amphibians together, for reptiles alone
- .957 2            \*Rare and endangered reptiles and amphibians
- Subdivisions are added for all topics in heading together, for rare reptiles alone, for endangered reptiles alone
- .957 8–.957 9    Amphibians, specific reptiles
- Add to base number 333.957 the numbers following 597 in 597.8–597.9, e.g., sea turtles 333.957928; then add further as instructed under 333.7–333.9 (*not* as instructed under 592–599), e.g., protection of sea turtles 333.95792816; however, for comprehensive works on reptiles, on reptiles and amphibians, see 333.957
- .958            \*Birds
- .958 2            Specific nontaxonomic kinds of birds
- [.958 201–.958 209]    Standard subdivisions
- Do not use; class in 333.9501–333.9509
- .958 22           \*Rare and endangered birds
- Class here threatened, vanishing birds
- Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

\*Add as instructed under 333.7–333.9

- .958 28            \*Aquatic birds  
                          Class here water birds  
                          Class waterfowl in 333.95841
- .958 287            \*Sea birds
- .958 29            \*Game birds  
                          Class lowland game birds in 333.95841; class upland game birds  
                          in 333.9586
- .958 3--.958 9      Specific kinds of birds  
                          Add to base number 333.958 the numbers following 598 in  
                          598.3--598.9, e.g., wild turkeys 333.958645; then add further as  
                          instructed under 333.7--333.9 (*not* as instructed under 592--599), e.g.,  
                          demand for wild turkeys 333.95864513
- .959                Specific kinds of mammals  
                          Class comprehensive works in 333.954
- [.959 01--.959 09]      Standard subdivisions  
                          Do not use; class in 333.95401--333.95409
- .959 2--.959 8      Subdivisions for specific kinds of mammals  
                          Add to base number 333.959 the numbers following 599 in  
                          599.2--599.8, e.g., marine mammals, whales 333.9595, big game  
                          animals, ungulates 333.9596, carnivores, fur-bearing animals  
                          333.9597; then add further as instructed under 333.7--333.9 (*not* as  
                          instructed under 592--599), e.g., supply of big game 333.959611

## 334      **Cooperatives**

### .1      **Housing cooperatives**

Class here building cooperatives

Class cooperative building associations that are also cooperative savings and  
 loan associations in 334.2

### .2      **Banking and credit cooperatives**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

#### .22      Credit unions

Class comprehensive works on thrift institutions in 332.32

### .5      **Consumer cooperatives**

Class consumer housing cooperatives in 334.1; class comprehensive works on  
 cooperative marketing in 334.6

[.506 88]            Management of distribution (Marketing)

Do not use; class in 658.87

\*Add as instructed under 333.7--333.9

**.6 Producers' cooperatives**

Class here marketing, production cooperatives

*For consumer cooperatives, see 334.5*

**.68 Producers' cooperatives by industry****.681 Producers' cooperatives in industries other than extractive, manufacturing, construction**

Class here service industries

**.681 000 1–.681 000 9 Standard subdivisions****.681 001–.681 999 Subdivisions for producer's cooperatives in industries other than extractive, manufacturing, construction**

Add to base number 334.681 notation 001–999 (but not 381–382), e.g., cooperative legal services 334.68134; however, for banking and credit cooperatives, see 334.2

**.682–.688 Producers' cooperatives in extractive, manufacturing, construction industries**

Class here cooperative marketing by producers in extractive, manufacturing, construction industries

Add to base number 334.68 the numbers following 6 in 620–680, e.g., agricultural cooperatives 334.683; however, for kibbutzim and moshavim, see 307.776; for Communist collective farms, see 338.763

*For building cooperatives, see 334.1*

**.7 Benefit societies**

Class here benevolent, friendly, fraternal benefit, mutual aid, provident societies

Class a specific function of a benefit society with the function, e.g., insurance 368.3

**335 Socialism and related systems**

Standard subdivisions are added for socialism and related systems together, for socialism alone

Class here schools of thought featuring planned economies, state socialism, interdisciplinary works on socialism and related systems

Class socialism (communism) in 335.43; class comparisons of Communism (Marxism-Leninism) with other systems in 335.437; class socialism (democratic socialism) in 335.5

*For socialism as a political ideology, see 320.53; for socialist and communist political parties, see 324.217. For a specific topic of economics treated from a socialist or communist point of view, see the topic in economics, e.g., interest 332.8*

*See Manual at 335 vs. 306.345, 320.53*

(Option: Class in 330.159)

## SUMMARY

- 335.001–.009**            **Standard subdivisions**  
 .02            **Utopian systems and schools**  
 .1            **Systems of English origin**  
 .2            **Systems of French origin**  
 .3            **Systems of American origin**  
 .4            **Marxian systems**  
 .5            **Democratic socialism**  
 .6            **Fascism**  
 .7            **Christian socialism**  
 .8            **Other systems**

.001–.009            Standard subdivisions

.02            Utopian systems and schools

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

*For specific utopian systems, see 335.1–335.3*

*See also 301 for ideal societies; also 321.07 for ideal states*

---

>            **335.1–335.3 Non-Marxian and quasi-Marxian socialism**

Class comprehensive works in 335

*For national socialism, see 335.6; for Christian socialism, see 335.7*

*See also 307.77 for voluntary socialist communities*

**.1            Systems of English origin**

.12            Utopian socialism

Including Owenism

.14            Fabian socialism

.15            Guild socialism

**.2            Systems of French origin**

Including Babouvism, Icarianism

.22            Saint-Simonism

.23            Fourierism (Phalansterianism)

**.3            Systems of American origin**

**.4            Marxian systems**

Class here Marxism

*For democratic Marxian systems, see 335.5*

.401            Philosophy

Do not use for philosophic foundations; class in 335.411. Do not use for comprehensive works on theory of Marxian systems; class in 335.4

- [.409 034]                    19th century, 1800–1899  
    Do not use; class in 335.42
- .409 04                    20th century, 1900–1999
- .409 041                    1917–1919  
    Do not use for 1900–1917; class in 335.423
- .41                    Philosophic foundations, economic concepts, aims  
    Including social ownership of means of production
- .411                    Philosophic foundations  
    Including theory of class struggle  
    *For the philosophic foundations of Marxian economics, see 335.412*
- .411 2                    Dialectical materialism  
    Class comprehensive works on dialectical materialism in 146.32
- .411 9                    Historical materialism
- .412                    Economic concepts  
    Including labor theory of value
- .42                    Marxian systems, 1848–1917
- .422                    Early Communism, 1848–1875  
    Period of Communist manifesto
- .423                    Scientific socialism, 1875–1917  
    Class scientific socialism of Lenin (Marxism-Leninism) in 335.43  
    *For democratic socialism, see 335.5*
- .43                    Communism (Marxism-Leninism)  
    Class here former Soviet communism, democratic centralism  
    *For communism as a political ideology, see 320.532*
- .430 9                    History, geographic treatment, biography  
    Do not use for national variants as schools of thought; class in 335.434
- .433                    Trotskyist doctrines
- .434                    National variants as schools of thought  
    Use 335.4309 for communism in specific nations viewed as actual economic systems rather than schools of thought, e.g., Cuban communism as an existing system 335.43097291 (*not* 335.4347)  
    Soviet communism as a school of thought is classed in 335.43, as the economic system of the former Soviet Union in 335.430947
- [.434 094–.434 099]                    Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
    Do not use; class in 335.434

- .434 4           Communism of Yugoslavia (1918–1991)  
                   Class here Titoism
- .434 5           Chinese communism  
                   Class here Maoism  
                   Class comprehensive works on Asian national variants of communism  
                   in 335.4346
- .434 6           Asian national variants  
                   Including North Korean, Vietnamese communism  
                   *For Chinese communism, see 335.4345*
- .434 7           Cuban communism (Castroism)  
                   Including ideas of Che Guevara
- .437            Comparative studies  
                   Comparison of communism with capitalism, cooperation, democratic  
                   socialism, other forms of collectivism

**.5       Democratic socialism**

Marxian and non-Marxian socialism

*For Fabian socialism, see 335.14; for Christian socialism, see 335.7*

*See also 307.77 for voluntary socialist communities*

**.6       Fascism**

Class here falangism, national socialism, Neo-Nazism

*For fascism as a political ideology, see 320.533*

**.7       Christian socialism**

*For Christian socialism as a political ideology, see 320.5312*

**.8       Other systems**

.82       Syndicalism

Class here anarcho-syndicalism

.83       Anarchism

*For anarchism as a political ideology, see 320.57; for  
 anarcho-syndicalism, see 335.82*

*See also 307.77 for voluntary anarchist communities*

**336     Public finance**

Class here intergovernmental fiscal relations, comprehensive works on public  
 finance and financial administration of governments

*For public financial administration and budgets, see 352.4*

*See Manual at 332, 336 vs. 339*

## SUMMARY

- 336.001–.008      **Standard subdivisions**  
 .01–.09      **[Public finance by governmental level; revenue; history, geographic treatment, biography; associations of sovereign states]**
- .1      **Nontax revenues**  
     .2      **Taxes**  
     .3      **Public debt and expenditures**  
     .4–.9      **Public finance of specific continents, countries, localities in modern world**
- .001–.005      Standard subdivisions
- .006      Organizations
- .006 01      International organizations  
                     Class associations of sovereign states in 336.0916
- [.006 8]      Management  
                     Do not use; class in 352.4
- .007–.008      Standard subdivisions
- [.009]      History, geographic treatment, biography  
                     Do not use for treatment by governmental level; class in 336.01. Do not use for history and biography for treatment by areas, regions, places in general, for ancient world; class in 336.09
- [.009 4–.009 9]      Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
                     Do not use; class in 336.4–336.9
- .01      **Public finance by governmental level**  
                     Class here public finance in three or more jurisdictions at a specific level  
                     Class public finance at a specific level in one or two specific jurisdictions in ancient world in 336.093; class public finance at a specific level in one or two specific jurisdictions in modern world in 336.4–336.9
- .012      **Public finance at national level**
- [.012 091]      Areas, regions, places in general  
                     Do not use; class in 336.0121
- [.012 093–.012 099]      Specific continents, countries  
                     Do not use for specific continents; class in 336.0123–336.0129.  
                     Do not use for specific countries in ancient world; class in 336.093. Do not use for specific countries in modern world; class in 336.4–336.9
- .012 1      **Public finance at national level in areas, regions, places in general**  
                     Add to base number 336.0121 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., national public finance in developing countries 336.0121724

- .012 3–.012 9      Public finance at national level in specific continents  
                             Add to base number 336.012 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., national public finance in Europe 336.0124  
                             Class public finance at national level in specific nations in ancient world in 336.093; class public finance at national level in specific nations in modern world in 336.4–336.9
- .013                  Public finance at state and provincial level
- [.013 091]              Areas, regions, places in general  
                             Do not use; class in 336.0131
- [.013 093–.013 099]      Specific continents, countries, localities  
                             Do not use for specific continents, countries; class in 336.0133–336.0139. Do not use for specific states and provinces in ancient world; class in 336.093. Do not use for specific states and provinces in modern world; class in 336.4–336.9
- .013 1                Public finance at state and provincial level in areas, regions, places in general  
                             Add to base number 336.0131 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., state and provincial public finance in developing countries 336.0131724
- .013 3–.013 9      Public finance at state and provincial level in specific continents, countries  
                             Add to base number 336.013 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., provincial public finance in Canada 336.01371  
                             Class public finance at state and provincial level in specific states and provinces in ancient world in 336.093; class public finance at state and provincial level in specific states and provinces in modern world in 336.4–336.9
- .014                  Public finance at local level
- [.014 091]              Areas, regions, places in general  
                             Do not use; class in 336.0141
- [.014 093–.014 099]      Specific continents, countries, localities  
                             Do not use for specific continents, countries, states and provinces; class in 336.0143–336.0149. Do not use for specific localities in ancient world; class in 336.093. Do not use for specific localities in modern world; class in 336.4–336.9
- .014 1                Public finance at local level in areas, regions, places in general  
                             Add to base number 336.0141 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., local public finance in developing countries 336.0141724

- .014 3–.014 9      Public finance at local level in specific continents, countries, states and provinces
- Add to base number 336.014 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., local public finance in Pennsylvania 336.014748
- Class public finance at local level in specific localities in ancient world in 336.093; class public finance at local level in specific localities in modern world in 336.4–336.9
- .02                  Revenue
- For specific forms of revenue, see 336.1–336.2*
- [.020 91]            Areas, regions, places in general
- Do not use; class in 336.021
- [.020 93–.020 99]      Specific continents, countries, localities
- Do not use; class in 336.023–336.029
- .021                  Revenue in areas, regions, places in general
- Add to base number 336.021 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., revenue in developing countries 336.021724
- .023–.029            Revenue in specific continents, countries, localities
- Add to base number 336.02 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., revenue in France 336.0244
- .09                  History, geographic treatment, biography; associations of sovereign states
- .090 1–.090 5        Historical periods
- Add to base number 336.090 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., public finance in the 19th century 336.09034
- .091                  Areas, regions, places in general; associations of sovereign states
- .091 6                Associations of sovereign states
- .091 62              League of Nations
- .091 63              United Nations
- .091 68              Regional associations
- Including League of Arab States
- Class regional associations limited to specific continents in 336.4–336.9
- .091 7                Socioeconomic regions
- Add to base number 336.0917 the numbers following —17 in notation 171–177 from Table 2, e.g., public finance in developing countries 336.091724; however, for public finance in socioeconomic regions by governmental level, see 336.01
- Class regional associations of sovereign states in 336.09168

- .092            Biography  
                   Add to base number 336.092 the numbers following —092 in notation  
                   0922–0929 from Table 1, e.g., collected biography 336.0922
- .093            Ancient world  
                   Add to base number 336.093 the numbers following —3 in notation  
                   31–39 from Table 2, e.g., public finance in Roman Empire 336.0937;  
                   however, for public finance in ancient world by governmental level, see  
                   336.01
- [.094–.099]    Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
                   Do not use; class in 336.4–336.9

---

>            **336.1–336.2 Specific forms of revenue**

Class comprehensive works in 336.02

**.1            Nontax revenues**

*For public borrowing, see 336.34*

---

>            **336.12–336.15 Commercial revenues**

Class revenue from franchises in 333.16; class comprehensive works in 336.1

*For revenues from public industries and services, see 336.19*

- .12            Commercial revenues from public lands  
                   Including revenue from rent, mineral rights
- .15            Commercial revenues from deposits, investments, loans
- .16            Administrative revenues  
                   Including revenue from franchises, fines, gifts, profits on coinage, user and  
                   license fees
- .17            Revenues from lotteries
- .18            Intergovernmental and intragovernmental revenues  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for intergovernmental and  
                   intragovernmental revenues together, for intergovernmental revenues alone
- .182           Revenues from reparations and interest on war loans
- .185           Revenues from one government unit to another  
                   Including grants from higher units, payment in lieu of taxes, technical  
                   assistance funds
- .188           Revenues from international grants
- .19            Revenue from public industries and services  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

**.2 Taxes**

Class here taxation, internal (inland) revenue, interdisciplinary works on taxes

*For tax law, see 343.04; for tax administration, see 352.44*

*See Manual at 343.04–343.06 vs. 336.2, 352.44*

**SUMMARY**

<b>336.200 1–200 9</b>	<b>Standard subdivisions</b>
<b>.201–.207</b>	<b>General topics of taxes</b>
<b>.22</b>	<b>Real property taxes</b>
<b>.23</b>	<b>Personal property taxes</b>
<b>.24</b>	<b>Income taxes</b>
<b>.25</b>	<b>Poll taxes</b>
<b>.26</b>	<b>Customs (Tariff)</b>
<b>.27</b>	<b>Other taxes</b>
<b>.29</b>	<b>Principles of taxation</b>

.200 1–.200 8 Standard subdivisions

.200 9 History, geographic treatment, biography

Do not use for general works on taxes by governmental level; class in 336.201

> **336.201–336.207 General topics of taxes**

Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 336.201–336.207 in the number coming last, e.g., local business taxes 336.207 (*not* 336.2014)

Class comprehensive works in 336.2

**.201 Taxes by governmental level**

Class here taxes in three or more jurisdictions at the same level

Class taxes in one or two specific jurisdictions at a specific level in 336.20093–336.20099

.201 2 National taxes

[.201 209 1] Areas, regions, places in general

Do not use; class in 336.20121

[.201 209 3–.201 209 9] Specific continents, countries

Do not use for specific countries; class in 336.20093–336.20099. Do not use for specific continents; class in 336.20123–336.20129

.201 21 National taxes in areas, regions, places in general

Add to base number 336.20121 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., national taxes in developing countries 336.20121724

- .201 23--201 29      National taxes in specific continents  
                                  Add to base number 336.2012 notation 3--9 from Table 2, e.g.,  
                                  national taxes in Europe 336.20124  
                                  Class national taxes in specific nations in 336.20093--336.20099
- .201 3                    State and provincial taxes
- [.201 309 1]                Areas, regions, places in general  
                                  Do not use; class in 336.20131
- [.201 309 3--201 309 9]      Specific continents, countries  
                                  Do not use for specific states or provinces; class in  
                                  336.20093--336.20099. Do not use for specific continents,  
                                  countries; class in 336.20133--336.20139
- .201 31                    State and provincial taxes in areas, regions, places in general  
                                  Add to base number 336.20131 the numbers following —1 in  
                                  notation 11--19 from Table 2, e.g., provincial taxes in developing  
                                  countries 336.20131724
- .201 33--201 39          State and provincial taxes in specific continents, countries  
                                  Add to base number 336.2013 notation 3--9 from Table 2, e.g.,  
                                  provincial taxes in Canada 336.201371  
                                  Class state and provincial taxes in specific states or provinces in  
                                  336.20093--336.20099
- .201 4                    Local taxes
- [.201 409 1]                Areas, regions, places in general  
                                  Do not use; class in 336.20141
- [.201 409 3--201 409 9]      Specific continents, countries, localities  
                                  Do not use for local taxes in specific local jurisdictions;  
                                  class in 336.20093--336.20099. Do not use for local taxes in  
                                  specific continents, countries, states or provinces; class in  
                                  336.20143--336.20149
- .201 41                    Local taxes in areas, regions, places in general  
                                  Add to base number 336.20141 the numbers following —1 in  
                                  notation 11--19 from Table 2, e.g., local taxes in developing  
                                  countries 336.20141724
- .201 43--201 49          Local taxes in specific continents, countries, states and provinces  
                                  Add to base number 336.2014 notation 3--9 from Table 2, e.g.,  
                                  local taxes in Pennsylvania 336.2014748  
                                  Class local taxes in specific local jurisdictions in  
                                  336.20093--336.20099
- .205                    Tax reform  
                                  Class here proposals and innovations  
                                  Class reform of taxes at a specific governmental level in 336.201

- .206 Provisions that allow tax avoidance  
 Including tax credits, deductions, incentives, rebates  
 Class here loopholes, tax expenditure (reductions in government revenue through preferential tax treatment)
- .207 Business taxes  
 Including taxes on manufacturing, small business, international business
- .22 Real property taxes  
 Variant name: rates (United Kingdom)  
 Class here comprehensive works on property taxes  
 Class comprehensive works on taxes on personal wealth in 336.24  
*For personal property taxes, see 336.23*
- .222 Rates and assessment  
 Class rates and assessment of specific kinds of real property in 336.225
- .225 Specific kinds of real property  
 Including commercial, farm, residential property; land value taxation
- [.225 01–.225 09] Standard subdivisions  
 Do not use; class in 336.2201–336.2209
- .23 Personal property taxes  
 On tangible and intangible property  
 Including mobile homes  
 Class comprehensive works on property taxes in 336.22
- .24 Income taxes  
 Class here comprehensive works on taxes on personal wealth  
*For property taxes, see 336.22; for estate, inheritance, gift taxes, see 336.276*
- .241 General topics of income taxes  
 Class general topics applied to personal income tax in 336.242; class general topics applied to corporate income tax in 336.243
- [.241 01–.241 09] Standard subdivisions  
 Do not use; class in 336.2401–336.2409
- .241 5 Reform  
 Class reform of taxes on business income in 336.2417
- .241 6 Provisions that allow tax avoidance  
 Class provisions allowing avoidance of taxes on business income in 336.2417
- .241 7 Taxes on business income

- .242 Personal income taxes (Individual income taxes)  
*See also 362.582 for negative income tax*
- .242 1 General topics of personal income taxes  
 Class general topics applied to taxes on specific kinds of personal income in 336.2422–336.2428
- [.242 101–.242 109] Standard subdivisions  
 Do not use; class in 336.24201–336.24209
- .242 15 Reform
- .242 16 Provisions that allow tax avoidance
- .242 2 Income from wages  
 Including withholding tax
- .242 3 Self-employment income  
 Including income from individual proprietorships, from partnerships  
 Class here small business income  
*For small corporation income, see 336.243*
- .242 4 Capital gains  
 Including capital loss deduction  
 Class here comprehensive works on taxation of individual and corporate capital gains and losses  
*For taxation of corporate capital gains, see 336.243*
- .242 6 Interest income  
 Class here comprehensive works on taxation of individual and corporate interest income  
*For taxation of corporate interest income, see 336.243*
- .242 8 Retirement income
- .243 Corporate income taxes  
 Including capital gains taxes, interest income  
 Class comprehensive works on business taxes in 336.207; class comprehensive works on business income tax in 336.2417
- .243 1 General topics of corporate income taxes  
 Class general topics applied to profits taxes in 336.2432
- [.243 101–.243 109] Standard subdivisions  
 Do not use; class in 336.24301–336.24309
- .243 15 Reform
- .243 16 Provisions that allow tax avoidance  
 Including oil depletion allowance

- .243 2            Excess and undistributed profits taxes  
                     Standard subdivisions are added for excess and undistributed profits taxes together, for excess profits tax alone
- .249            Social security taxes  
                     Class actuarial and administrative aspects of finance for social security in 368.401; class actuarial and administrative aspects of rates and rate making for social security in 368.4011
- .25            Poll taxes
- .26            Customs (Tariff)  
                     Class interdisciplinary works on customs (tariff) in 382.7
- .263            Export and transit taxes  
                     Standard subdivisions are added for export and transit taxes together, for export taxes alone
- .264            Import taxes  
                     *For import tax schedules, see 336.265; for import taxes on specific products, see 336.266*
- .265            Import tax schedules  
                     *For import tax schedules on specific products, see 336.266*
- .266            Import taxes and tax schedules on specific products
- [.266 000 1–.266 000 9]      Standard subdivisions  
    Do not use for import taxes; class in 336.26401–336.26409.  
    Do not use for import tax schedules; class in 336.26501–336.26509
- .266 001–.266 999      Subdivisions of import taxes and tax schedules on specific products  
    Add to base number 336.266 notation 001–999, e.g., import taxes on paintings 336.26675  
    Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .27            Other taxes
- .271            Excise, sales, value-added, related taxes  
                     Including luxury, use taxes
- .271 3            Sales tax
- .271 4            Value-added tax
- .271 6            Severance tax
- .272            Stamp tax and revenue stamps  
                     Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

- .276 Estate, inheritance, gift taxes  
 Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading  
 Class here death duties, death tax  
 Class estate planning in 332.024016; class comprehensive works on taxes on personal wealth in 336.24
- .278 Taxes on products, services, industries  
 Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading  
 Class a specific kind of tax on a product, service, industry with the kind of tax, e.g., import taxes on coal 336.26655324, severance taxes on coal 336.2716
- .278 000 1--.278 000 9 Standard subdivisions
- .278 001--.278 999 Taxes on specific products, services, industries  
 Add to base number 336.278 notation 001--999, e.g., coal industry taxes 336.2783382724  
 Subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- .29 Principles of taxation  
 Class principles of specific kinds of taxes in 336.22--336.27
- .291 General principles of taxation  
 Including adequacy (yield), certainty, diversity, economy and convenience of collection, justice
- .293 Kinds of rate  
 Including progressive, proportional, regressive rates
- .294 Incidence  
 The final burden of tax payment and the people on whom it falls  
 Including direct, indirect, double taxation
- .3 Public debt and expenditures**  
 Class here fiscal policy, comprehensive works on monetary and fiscal policy  
*For monetary policy, see 332.46; for use of fiscal and monetary policy in economic stabilization, see 339.5*

### SUMMARY

- |        |                              |
|--------|------------------------------|
| 336.31 | <b>Government securities</b> |
| .34    | <b>Public debt</b>           |
| .36    | <b>Debt management</b>       |
| .39    | <b>Public expenditures</b>   |
- .31 Government securities  
 Including short-term securities, Eurobonds  
 Class comprehensive works on government securities in 332.63232

- .34           Public debt  
                   Class here public borrowing  
                   *For public securities, see 336.31; for debt management, see 336.36*
- [.340 9           History, geographic treatment, biography  
                   Do not use for general works on domestic public debt by  
                   governmental level; class in 336.343
- .343           Public debt by governmental level  
                   Class here public debt in three or more jurisdictions at a specific level  
                   Class public debt in one or two jurisdictions at the same level in  
                   336.34093–336.34099; class international public debt regardless of  
                   jurisdiction or level in 336.3435; class flotation of loans regardless of  
                   level in 336.344; class debt limits regardless of level in 336.346
- .343 1           Local level
- [.343 109 1]           Areas, regions, places in general  
                   Do not use; class in 336.34311
- [.343 109 3–.343 109 9]   Specific continents, countries, localities  
                   Do not use for specific continents, countries, states and  
                   provinces; class in 336.3409. Do not use for specific  
                   localities; class in 336.34313–336.34319
- .343 11           Local public debt in areas, regions, places in general  
                   Add to base number 336.34311 the numbers following —1 in  
                   notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., local public debt in developing  
                   countries 336.34311724
- .343 13–.343 19   Local public debt in specific continents, countries, states and  
                   provinces  
                   Add to base number 336.3431 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g.,  
                   local public debt in Pennsylvania 336.3431748  
                   Class local public debt in specific localities in  
                   336.34093–336.34099
- .343 2           State and provincial level
- [.343 209 1]           Areas, regions, places in general  
                   Do not use; class in 336.34321
- [.343 209 3–.343 209 9]   Specific continents, countries, localities  
                   Do not use for specific states and provinces; class in  
                   336.34093–336.34099. Do not use for specific continents,  
                   countries; class in 336.34323–336.34329
- .343 21           State and provincial public debt in areas, regions, places in general  
                   Add to base number 336.34321 the numbers following —1 in  
                   notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., state and provincial public debt  
                   in developing countries 336.34321724

- .343 23–.343 29      State and provincial public debt in specific continents, countries  
                                  Add to base number 336.3432 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g.,  
                                  provincial public debt in Canada 336.343271  
                                  Class state and provincial public debt in specific states and  
                                  provinces in 336.34093–336.34099
- .343 3                  National level  
                                  *For borrowing by one nation from another nation, see 336.3435*
- [.343 309 1]              Areas, regions, places in general  
                                  Do not use; class in 336.34331
- [.343 309 3–.343 309 9]      Specific continents, countries, localities  
                                  Do not use for specific countries; class in  
                                  336.34093–336.34099. Do not use for specific continents;  
                                  class in 336.34333–336.34339
- .343 31                  National public debt in areas, regions, places in general  
                                  Add to base number 336.34331 the numbers following —1  
                                  in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., national public debt in  
                                  developing countries 336.34331724
- .343 33–.343 39      National public debt in specific continents  
                                  Add to base number 336.3433 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g.,  
                                  national public debt in Europe 336.34334  
                                  Class national public debt in specific countries in  
                                  336.34093–336.34099
- .343 5                  International public debt  
                                  Borrowing by one nation from another, public debts owed by one  
                                  nation to another  
                                  Class here comprehensive works on international borrowing and debts  
                                  *For role of banks in international borrowing and debts, see 332.15*
- .344                      Flotation of government securities  
                                  Including forced loans  
                                  Class government securities in 336.31
- .346                      Debt limits
- .36                        Debt management  
                                  Class debt limits in 336.346  
                                  *See also 339.523 for deficit financing in macroeconomic policy*
- .363                      Repayment and redemption  
                                  Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                                  Including sinking funds

.368           Repudiation  
                   Class here public insolvency

.39            Public expenditures  
                   Class tax expenditure in 336.206

*For expenditure in macroeconomic policy, see 339.522. For expenditures by a specific agency or on a specific activity, see the agency or activity in 352–354, plus notation 249 from table under 352–354, e.g., expenditures on transportation 354.76249*

**.4–.9       Public finance of specific continents, countries, localities in modern world**

Add to base number 336 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., public finance of Australia 336.94; however, for general works on public finance by governmental level, see 336.01

**337        International economics**

Class here international economic planning; comprehensive works on international economic relations, on international economic cooperation

*For a specific aspect of international economics not provided for here, see the aspect, e.g., multinational business enterprises 338.88, international commerce 382*

[.093–.099]    Specific continents, countries, localities

Do not use; class in 337.3–337.9

**.1        Multilateral economic cooperation**

Class here economic integration, multilateral agreements and multistate organizations for economic cooperation

Class bilateral economic cooperation in 337.3–337.9; class interdisciplinary works on intergovernmental organizations in 341.2

*For trade agreements, see 382.9*

*See Manual at 337.3–337.9 vs. 337.1*

.109          History and biography

Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 337.11–337.19

.11          Multilateral economic cooperation in areas, regions, places in general

Add to base number 337.11 the numbers following —1 in notation 17–18 from Table 2, e.g., multilateral economic cooperation in developing regions 337.11724

.14          European multilateral cooperation

.142          European Union

Class here European Common Market, European Community, European Economic Community

.143          European Free Trade Association (EFTA)

- .147 Council for Mutual Economic Assistance (COMECON)
- .15-.19 Multilateral cooperation in continents other than Europe  
 Add to base number 337.1 notation 5-9 from Table 2, e.g., Andean Group 337.18

**.3-.9 Foreign economic policies and relations of specific jurisdictions and groups of jurisdictions**

Class here bilateral economic cooperation

Add to base number 337 notation 3-9 from Table 2, e.g., economic policy of United Kingdom 337.41; then, for foreign economic relations between two jurisdictions or groups of jurisdictions, add 0\* and to the result add notation 1-9 from Table 2, e.g., economic relations between United Kingdom and France 337.41044

Give priority in notation to the jurisdiction or group of jurisdictions emphasized. If the emphasis is equal, give priority to the one coming first in Table 2

(Option: Give priority in notation to the jurisdiction or group of jurisdictions requiring local emphasis, e.g., libraries in the United States class foreign economic relations between the United States and France in 337.73044)

Class multilateral economic cooperation in 337.1

*See Manual at 337.3-337.9 vs. 337.1*

**338 Production**

Class here interdisciplinary works on industry, on production

*For specific factors of production, see 331-333; for production economics of financial industries, see 332; for production economics of real estate business, see 333.33; for production economics of energy production, see 333.79; for economics of cooperative production, see 334; for production economics of insurance industry, see 368; for commerce, communications, transportation, see 380. For a specific noneconomic aspect of industry and production, see the aspect, e.g., law of industry 343.07, production technology 620-690*

*See Manual at T1-025 vs. T1-029; also at 332 vs. 338, 658.15; also at 363.5, 363.6, 363.8 vs. 338*

**SUMMARY**

<b>338.001-.008</b>	<b>Standard subdivisions</b>
<b>.01-.09</b>	<b>[General topics]</b>
<b>.1</b>	<b>Agriculture</b>
<b>.2</b>	<b>Extraction of minerals</b>
<b>.3</b>	<b>Other extractive industries</b>
<b>.4</b>	<b>Secondary industries and services</b>
<b>.5</b>	<b>General production economics</b>
<b>.6</b>	<b>Organization of production</b>
<b>.7</b>	<b>Business enterprises</b>
<b>.8</b>	<b>Combinations</b>
<b>.9</b>	<b>Economic development and growth</b>

\*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

- .001           Philosophy and theory  
                   *For a specific theory, see the theory, e.g., law of diminishing marginal utility 338.5212*
- .001 12       Forecasting  
                   Do not use for forecasting of products and services; class in 338.020112. Do not use for general production forecasting; class in 338.544
- .002–.008     Standard subdivisions
- [.009]        History, geographic treatment, biography  
                   Do not use; class in 338.09
- .01           Factors of production  
                   Class here comprehensive and theoretical works on factors of production  
                   Class factors of production as part of industrial conditions and situation in 338.09; class factors of production as costs of production in 338.512  
                   *For labor, see 331; for capital, see 332; for land, see 333*
- .02           Products and services  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for products and services together, for products alone  
                   Class general production economics in 338.5; class consumption in 339.47; class shipments and sales in 381  
                   *For specific products, see 338.1–338.4; for services alone, see 338.47*  
                   *See Manual at T1–025 vs. T1–029*
- .020 12      Classification  
                   Class here standard industrial classifications  
                   Add to base number 338.02012 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., standard industrial classifications of Canada 338.0201271
- .04           Entrepreneurship
- .06           Production efficiency  
                   Including cost-output ratio  
                   Class here industrial productivity  
                   Class conservation of energy in 333.7916  
                   *For labor productivity, see 331.118*

- .064            Effect of technological innovations
- Class here effect of automation, comprehensive works on effect of technological innovations on the economy
- For effect of technological innovations on a specific aspect of the economy, see the aspect, e.g., effect on working conditions 331.25, effect on banking 332.1*
- See also 303.483 for effect of technological innovation on society*
- .09             History, geographic treatment, biography
- Class here history, geographic treatment, biography of general principles and theories; existing and potential resources for production, industrial conditions and situation, industrial surveys, location of industry
- Class a specific resource with the resource, e.g., water for power 333.914
- .090 01–.090 08        Standard subdivisions
- [.090 09]                History
- Do not use; class in 338.09
- .090 1–.090 5         Historical periods
- Add to base number 338.090 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., industrial surveys in 20th century 338.0904
- .091–.099             Geographic treatment and biography
- Add to base number 338.09 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., industrial surveys of Canada 338.0971
- See also 338.6042 for rationale for and process of locating business enterprises*
- See Manual at 338.091–338.099 vs. 332.67309, 338.6042*
- .092             Biography
- Number built according to instructions under 338.091–338.099
- See Manual at 338.092*

> **338.1–338.4 Specific kinds of industries**

Class here finance, general production economics of specific kinds of industries

Class results of market surveys; supply and demand in relation to trade, to marketing opportunities in 381; class comprehensive works in 338; class interdisciplinary works on capital formation in 332.0415

*For financial industries, see 332; for credit for specific kinds of industries, see 332.7; for real estate business, see 333.33; for energy production, see 333.79; for cooperatives in specific kinds of industries, see 334; for organization of production in specific kinds of industries, see 338.6; for business enterprises other than cooperatives in specific kinds of industries, see 338.7; for commerce, communications, transportation, see 380. For biographies of entrepreneurs in a specific kind of industry, see the kind of industry in 338.6–338.8, e.g., biographies of small-business owners 338.642092, biographies of entrepreneurs in textile manufacturing 338.76770092; for biographies of people known for their contributions in a specific type of technology, see the type of technology in 600, e.g., biographies of mining engineers 622.092*

> **338.1–338.3 Primary industries (Extractive industries)**

Class comprehensive works in 338

**.1 Agriculture**

Class agricultural cooperatives in 334.683; class government farm policies in 338.18

*See Manual at 338.1 vs. 631.558*

**.13 Financial aspects**

Class here capital formation and other investment in agriculture, costs, prices received by farmers, farm income

Add to base number 338.13 the numbers following 63 in 633–638, e.g., prices of rice 338.13318

Class government policies that affect financial aspects in 338.18; class food prices in 338.19

*For agricultural credit, see 332.71*

*See also 338.16 for production efficiency*

*See Manual at 332 vs. 338, 658.15*

**.14 Factors affecting production**

Including drought, plant and animal diseases, shortages of materials and equipment used in farming

*For financial factors, see 338.13; for production efficiency, see 338.16; for surpluses and shortages of farm products, see 338.17; for government policies, see 338.18*

- .16            Production efficiency
- Including cost-output ratio, size of farm, use of labor
- Class here agricultural productivity; science, technological innovation in agriculture
- Class energy conservation in agriculture in 333.7966; class comprehensive works on factors affecting production in 338.14
- For labor productivity, see 331.118*
- .161          Mechanization
- Class here automation
- Class mechanization of harvesting methods in 338.163
- .162          Agricultural methods
- Including crop rotation; use of fertilizers, of insecticides
- For harvesting methods, see 338.163*
- .163          Harvesting methods
- .17           Products
- Including seed industry as a whole
- Class here surpluses and shortages of farm products, forecasts and projections of supply and demand
- Add to base number 338.17 the numbers following 63 in 633–638, e.g., rice or seed rice 338.17318, forestry 338.1749, forest products 338.17498; however, for supply of timber in nature, see 333.7511; for demand for timber, see 333.7512
- Class specific elements of production applied to specific products and groups of products in 338.13–338.16; class government farm policies applied to specific products and groups of products in 338.18; class supply, surpluses, shortages of food in 338.19; class specific producers in 338.763. Class a specific kind of seed with the kind, e.g., corn (maize) seed 338.17315
- .174 98          Forest products
- Number built according to instructions under 338.17
- Class here supply of cut timber, comprehensive works on timber
- For uncut timber, timber reserves, see 333.7511*
- .18           Government farm policies
- Class here acreage allotments, agricultural credit, drought relief, price supports, subsidies
- Class government policies with respect to food supply in 338.19
- [.180 93–.180 99]      Specific continents, countries, localities
- Do not use; class in 338.183–338.189

- .181            **International policies**  
                  Policies and programs of international bodies
- .183--.189      **Specific continents, countries, localities**  
                  Add to base number 338.18 notation 3-9 from Table 2, e.g., government farm policies of India 338.1854; however, for international policies, see 338.181
- .19            **Food supply**  
                  Class here economic causes and effects of, economic remedies for maladjustments in food supply; measures for attaining and maintaining adequate amounts of food; food requirements (demand); reserves (stocks, supply) of food; prices of food to the consumer; comprehensive works on the economics of production, storage, distribution of food  
                  Class interdisciplinary works on food supply in 363.8  
                  *For production of food, see 338.13-338.18; for supply of specific food commodities, see 338.17; for food processing, see 338.47664; for distribution of food, see 381.41*  
                  *See Manual at 363.5, 363.6, 363.8 vs. 338*
- [.190 91]            **Areas, regions, places in general**  
                  Do not use; class in 338.191
- [.190 93--.190 99]      **Specific continents, countries, localities**  
                  Do not use; class in 338.193-338.199
- .191            **Food supply in areas, regions, places in general**  
                  Add to base number 338.191 the numbers following —1 in notation 11-19 from Table 2, e.g., food supply in developing countries 338.191724
- .193--.199      **Food supply in specific continents, countries, localities**  
                  Add to base number 338.19 notation 3-9 from Table 2, e.g., food supply in Africa 338.196
- .2            Extraction of minerals**  
                  Class here extraction of energy resources, comprehensive works on economics of extraction and processing of minerals and energy resources  
                  Class conservation of mineral and energy resources in 333.7-333.9; class mined lands in 333.765  
                  *For processing of minerals and raw materials of energy, see 338.47*

- .23      **Financial aspects**  
           Class here capital formation and other investment in industries engaged in extraction of minerals; costs, income, prices  
           Add to base number 338.23 the numbers following 553 in 553.2–553.9, e.g., prices of tin 338.23453  
           Class production efficiency in 338.26  
           *For industrial credit, see 332.742*  
           *See Manual at 332 vs. 338, 658.15*
- .26      **Production efficiency**  
           Including automation, cost-output ratio, effect of technological innovation, factors of production  
           Class here industrial productivity  
           Class energy conservation in mineral extraction industries in 333.7965  
           *For labor productivity, see 331.118*
- .27      **Products**  
           Add to base number 338.27 the numbers following 553 in 553.2–553.9, e.g., coal 338.2724  
           Class supply in storage, shortages, surpluses, demand, and projections of these in 333.8; class specific elements of production applied to specific products in 338.23–338.26; class specific producers doing extraction only in 338.7622; class specific producers doing both extraction and processing in 338.766; class supply in nature in 553.2–553.9
- .3        **Other extractive industries**  
           Including financial aspects, production efficiency  
           Class energy conservation in extractive industries in 333.7965  
           *For industrial credit, see 332.742*  
           *See Manual at 332 vs. 338, 658.15*
- .37      **Products**  
           Class specific producers in 338.763
- .371     **Products of culture of invertebrates and cold-blooded vertebrates; aquaculture**  
           Add to base number 338.371 the numbers following 639 in 639.3–639.8, e.g., culture of oysters 338.37141, aquaculture 338.3718; however, for insect culture, see 338.178  
           Class comprehensive works on fishing and the culture of fishes and other water animals in 338.3727

.372

**Products of fishing, whaling, hunting, trapping**

Class here catches from fishing, whaling, hunting, trapping industries

Add to base number 338.372 the numbers following 59 in 592–599, e.g., fishing for mollusks, comprehensive works on shellfishing 338.3724; fishing for crustaceans 338.3753; finfishing, comprehensive works on fishing 338.3727; then add further as follows:

01–08 Standard subdivisions

09 History, geographic treatment, biography

Use number for the area in which industry is based, not the place where fishes or other animals are caught, e.g., fishing fleet based at Los Angeles 338.37270979494, not 338.372709722 or 338.3727091641

Class supply of uncaught animals in nature in 333.95411; class measures to increase supply of animals in nature in 333.95415; class culture of invertebrates and cold-blooded vertebrates in 338.371. Class supply of a specific non-taxonomic kind of uncaught animals in nature, statistics of catches of a specific non-taxonomic kind of animal used in estimating its population in nature, with the kind of animal in 333.9542–333.9549, plus notation 11 from table under 333.7–333.9, e.g., supply of uncaught aquatic animals 333.9594811, statistics of game animal catches used in estimating population of game animals 333.954911; class supply of a specific taxonomic kind of uncaught animals in nature, statistics of catches of a specific taxonomic kind of animal used in estimating its population in nature, with the kind of animal in 333.955–333.959, plus notation 11 from table under 333.7–333.9, e.g., supply of uncaught deer 333.9596511, statistics of game bird catches used in estimating population of game birds 333.9582911; class measures to increase supply of a specific non-taxonomic kind of animals in nature with the kind in 333.9542–333.9549, plus notation 15 from table under 333.7–333.9, e.g., development of game animals in nature 333.954915; class measures to increase supply of a specific taxonomic kind of animals in nature with the kind in 333.955–333.959, plus notation 15 from table under 333.7–333.9, e.g., development of fishes in nature 333.95615

**.4****Secondary industries and services**

Standard subdivisions are added for secondary industries and services together, for secondary industries alone

Class here products of secondary industries

Class government policies in 338.48; class comprehensive works on products in 338.02; class comprehensive works on service industries, on services in 338.47

*See Manual at T1–025 vs. T1–029*

**.43****Financial aspects**

Class here capital formation and other investments, costs, income, prices

Class production efficiency in 338.45

*For industrial credit, see 332.742*

*See Manual at 332 vs. 338, 658.15*

.430 001–.430 009

Standard subdivisions

- .430 01–.439 99      Specific industries and services
- Add to base number 338.43 notation 001–999, e.g., automobile prices 338.43629222; however, for financial aspects of financial industries, see 332; for financial aspects of real estate, see 333.33; for financial aspects of energy production, see 333.79; for financial aspects of cooperative production, see 334; for financial aspects of insurance industry, see 368.01; for financial aspects of commerce, communications, transportation, see 380
- Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .45      Production efficiency
- Including cost-output ratio, factors of production (land, labor, capital), production capacity
- Class here industrial productivity
- Class energy conservation in secondary industries in 333.796516
- For labor productivity, see 331.118*
- .454      Automation
- For automation in specific industries, see 338.456*
- .456      Production efficiency in specific industries and groups of industries
- Class here automation in specific industries
- [.456 01–.456 09]      Standard subdivisions
- Do not use; class in 338.4501–338.4509
- .456 1      Production efficiency in industries other than extractive, manufacturing, construction
- Class here service industries
- .456 100 01–.456 100 09      Standard subdivisions
- .456 100 1–.456 199 9      Subdivisions for production efficiency in industries other than extractive, manufacturing, construction
- Add to base number 338.4561 notation 001–999, e.g., production efficiency in hospital services 338.456136211; however, for production efficiency in financial industries, see 332; for production efficiency in real estate business, see 333.33; for production efficiency in cooperative enterprises, see 334; for production efficiency in the insurance industry, see 368; for production efficiency in commerce, communications, transportation, see 380
- .456 2–.456 9      Production efficiency in manufacturing and construction industries
- Add to base number 338.456 the numbers following 6 in 620–690, e.g., power equipment in textile manufacture 338.456770285; however, for production efficiency in energy production, see 333.79; for production efficiency in cooperative enterprises, see 334
- .46      Professional services
- Class specific elements of production applied to professional services in 338.43–338.45; class specific professional services in 338.47

.47 Services and specific products

Class here quantities produced, shortages, surpluses, stockpiles, forecasts and projections of supply and demand; comprehensive works on service industries, on economics of services

Class specific elements of production applied to services and specific products in 338.43–338.45; class specific producers in 338.76; class comprehensive works on products of secondary industries in 338.4

*For comprehensive works on professional services, see 338.46*

.470 001–.470 009 Standard subdivisions of services

.470 01–.479 99 Subdivisions for products and services

Add to base number 338.47 notation 001–999, e.g., pharmaceutical industry 338.476151, tourist industry 338.4791; however, for production economics of financial industries, see 332; for production economics of real estate business, see 333.33; for production economics of energy production, see 333.79; for production economics of cooperative enterprises, see 334; for production economics of commerce, communications, transportation, see 380

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.476 626 Fuel industry

Number built according to instructions under 338.47001–338.47999

Class here comprehensive works on processing and manufacturing fuels

*For processing or manufacturing a specific fuel, see the fuel, e.g., biomass fuel 338.4766288, gasoline 338.4766553827*

.48 Government policies

Class government policies with respect to a specific aspect of secondary industries and services in 338.43–338.47

**.5 General production economics**

Including risk

Class here microeconomics (economics of the firm)

Class production economics of specific kinds of industries in 338.1–338.4

*For organization of production, see 338.6*

[.501 12] Forecasting

Do not use; class in 338.544

.51 Costs

.512 Factors of production as costs of production

Including law of diminishing marginal returns, of factor proportions

Class comprehensive works on factors of production in 338.01

- .514 Elements in cost calculation
- .514 2 Kinds of cost  
Including average, fixed, marginal, variable costs
- .514 4 Size of enterprise  
Including economies and diseconomies of scale
- .516 Profits  
Including relation of marginal cost to marginal revenue
- .52 Prices  
Class here price determination, effects of changes, comprehensive works on prices  
Class effect of money on prices in 332.41; class effect of costs on prices in 338.516  
*For a specific aspect of prices not provided for here, see the aspect, e.g., effects of prices on the whole economy 339.42*
- .520 1 Philosophy and theory  
Do not use for theories; class in 338.521
- .520 2 Miscellany
- .520 21 Tabulated and related materials  
Do not use for statistics; class in 338.528
- .521 Price theories  
Class here law of supply and demand, theories of value  
*For Marxian labor theory of value, see 335.412*  
*See also 333.7 for supply and demand for natural resources and energy; also 338.1-338.4 for supply and demand for specific products*
- .521 2 Theory of demand  
Including law of diminishing marginal utility, price-demand relationship
- .521 3 Theory of supply  
Including price-supply relationship
- 
- > 338.522-338.526 Price determination  
Class comprehensive works in 338.52
- .522 Price determination in free markets  
Including interproduct competition, e.g., butter versus margarine
- .523 Price determination by monopolies, oligopolies  
Including price fixing, price leadership

- .526 Price determination by government regulation (Price control)
- .528 Price levels  
Class here indexes, statistics  
*See also 339.42 for cost of living*
- .528 021 Tabulated and related materials  
Do not use for statistics; class in 338.528
- .54 Economic fluctuations  
Including seasonal variations, secular trends
- [.540 112] Forecasting  
Do not use; class in 338.544
- .542 Business cycles  
Including prosperity, recession, depression, recovery; panics  
Class remedial and preventive measures in 338.543. Class comprehensive economic works on a specific period of prosperity or depression with the economic conditions of the specific time or place in 330.9, e.g., worldwide depression in 1930s 330.9043, economic prosperity in Germany, 1949–1962 330.9430875
- .543 Remedial and preventive action  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
Class comprehensive works on economic stabilization in 339.5
- .544 General production forecasting and forecasts  
*See also 658.40355 for forecasting as a technique of managerial decision-making*
- .544 2 Methods of forecasting  
Class comprehensive works on economic forecasting in 330.0112
- .544 3 Forecasts  
Class forecasts of economic situation in 330.900112
- .6 Organization of production**  
Class here organization of production in specific kinds of industries  
*For business enterprises and their structure, see 338.7*  
*See Manual at 338.092*
- .604 Special topics of organization of production
- .604 1 Finance  
Class finance of specific kinds of industries in 338.1–338.4; class interdisciplinary works on capital formation in 332.0415

- .604 2            Location  
                   Class here proximity to sources of power, raw materials, labor supply, transportation, markets  
                   *See Manual at 338.091–338.099 vs. 332.67309, 338.6042*
- .604 6            Specialization and comparative advantage  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Class works on specialization and comparative advantage that emphasize international commerce in 382.1042
- .604 8            Competition and restraint  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Class monopoly and monopolies in 338.82
- .61                Private enterprise  
                   Class specific systems of private enterprise in 338.63; class specific sizes of private enterprise in 338.64
- .62                Public enterprise
- .63                Systems of production  
                   *For factory system, see 338.65*
- .632              Guild system
- .634              Domestic system  
                   Class here cottage industry
- .64                Size of enterprises  
                   Including downsizing  
                   Class relation of size of enterprise to cost of production in 338.5144; class specific types of enterprises of specific sizes in 338.7–338.8
- .642              Small business  
                   Including custom production  
                   Class here small industry  
                   Class cottage industry in 338.634
- .642 089            Ethnic and national groups  
                   Class minority enterprises in 338.6422
- .642 2            Minority enterprises  
                   Class handicraft industries operated by minorities in 338.6425
- .642 5            Handicraft industries
- .644              Big business  
                   Class here large industry  
                   Class monopoly and monopolies in 338.82

.65 Factory system

.69 Worker control of industry

Class here employee ownership, worker self-management

Class role of unions in achieving worker control of industry in 331.8801; class guild socialism in 335.15; class syndicalism in 335.82; class employee participation in management in 658.3152

*For employee stock ownership plans, see 331.21649*

**.7 Business enterprises**

Not limited to private or capitalist enterprises

Class here structure of business enterprises; interdisciplinary works on business enterprises, on organizations for production

*For cooperatives, see 334; for combinations, see 338.8*

*See Manual at T1—025 vs. T1—029; also at 338.092*

.71 Initiation and dissolution of business enterprises

> 338.72—338.74 Specific kinds of business enterprises

Class specific kinds of business enterprises in specific industries and groups of industries in 338.76; class comprehensive works in 338.7

.72 Individual proprietorships

.73 Partnerships

.74 Corporations

Open and closed

*See Manual at T1—025 vs. T1—029*

.749 Government corporations

Class here interdisciplinary works on government corporations

*For a specific aspect of government corporations, see the aspect, e.g., law 346.067, public administration of government corporations 352.266*

[.749 068] Management

Do not use; class in 352.266

.76 Business enterprises by industry

Class here specific individual business enterprises, biographies of entrepreneurs in specific fields

*For biographies of people known for their contribution to technology, see the kind of contribution in 600, plus notation 092 from Table 1, e.g., biographies of mining engineers 622.092*

*See Manual at T1—025 vs. T1—029*

- .761 Business enterprises in industries other than extractive, manufacturing, construction  
 Class here service industries
- .761 000 1–.761 000 9 Standard subdivisions
- .761 001–.761 999 Subdivisions for business enterprises in industries other than extractive, manufacturing, construction  
 Add to base number 338.761 notation 001–999, e.g., law firms 338.76134; however, for financial institutions, see 332.1–332.6; for real estate business enterprises, see 333.33; for cooperative enterprises, see 334; for insurance companies, see 368.0065; for enterprises engaged in commerce, communications, transportation, see 380
- .762–.769 Business enterprises in extractive, manufacturing, construction industries  
 Add to base number 338.76 the numbers following 6 in 620–690, e.g., agriculture 338.763; however, for enterprises engaged in production of energy, see 333.79; for cooperative enterprises, see 334.682–334.688

## .8 Combinations

Organization and structure for massive production and control of production

Class here antitrust policies, economic concentration

To be classed here, works about specific individual enterprises must stress that they are combinations; otherwise, the works are classed in 338.76

*See Manual at 338.092*

### SUMMARY

- 338.804 Special topics of combinations
- .82 Restrictive practices
  - .83 Mergers
  - .85 Trusts
  - .86 Holding companies
  - .87 Informal arrangements
  - .88 Multinational business enterprises
- .804 Special topics of combinations
- .804 2 Kinds of combinations  
 Including horizontal, vertical, conglomerate
- .82 Restrictive practices  
 Class here monopoly and monopolies, oligopoly and oligopolies  
 Class price determination in 338.523; class restrictive practices of multinational business enterprises in 338.884
- .826 Restrictive practices in specific industries, groups of industries, fields of enterprise

- [.826 01–.826 09] Standard subdivisions  
Do not use; class in 338.8201–338.8209
- .826 1 Restrictive practices in industries and fields of enterprise other than extractive, manufacturing, construction  
Class here service industries
- .826 100 01–.826 100 09 Standard subdivisions
- .826 100 1–.826 199 9 Subdivisions for restrictive practices in industries and fields of enterprise other than extractive, manufacturing, construction  
Add to base number 338.8261 notation 001–999, e.g., restrictive practices in publishing 338.82610705; however, for restrictive practices by combinations in the financial industries, see 332.1–332.6; for restrictive practices by combinations in real estate business, see 333.33; for restrictive practices by combinations in cooperative enterprise, see 334; for restrictive practices by combinations in the insurance industry, see 368; for restrictive practices by combinations in commerce, communications, transportation, see 380
- .826 2–.826 9 Restrictive practices in extractive, manufacturing, construction industries and fields of enterprise  
Add to base number 338.826 the numbers following 6 in 620–690, e.g., restrictive practices by combinations engaged in computer engineering 338.8262139; however, for restrictive practices by combinations engaged in energy production, see 333.79; for restrictive practices by cooperatives, see 334

> 338.83–338.87 Specific forms of combinations and their practices

Class international combinations regardless of form in 338.88; class comprehensive works in 338.8

- .83 Mergers  
Class here acquisitions, amalgamations
- .836 Mergers in specific industries, groups of industries, fields of enterprise
- [.836 01–.836 09] Standard subdivisions  
Do not use; class in 338.8301–338.8309
- .836 1 Mergers in industries and fields of enterprise other than extractive, manufacturing, construction  
Class here service industries
- .836 100 01–.836 100 09 Standard subdivisions

- .836 100 1-.836 199 9      Subdivisions for mergers in industries and fields of enterprise other than extractive, manufacturing, construction
- Add to base number 338.8361 notation 001-999, e.g., mergers of publishers 338.83610705; however, for mergers of financial institutions, see 332.1-332.6; for mergers of real estate business enterprises, see 333.33; for mergers of cooperatives, see 334; for mergers of enterprises in the insurance industry, see 368.0065; for mergers of enterprises engaged in commerce, communications, transportation, see 380
- .836 2-.836 9      Mergers in extractive, manufacturing, construction industries and fields of enterprise
- Add to base number 338.836 the numbers following 6 in 620-690, e.g., mergers of automotive companies 338.836292; however, for mergers of enterprises engaged in energy production, see 333.79; for mergers of cooperatives, see 334
- .85      Trusts
- .86      Holding companies
- .87      Informal arrangements
- Including cartels, interlocking directorates, pools
- .88      Multinational business enterprises
- Class here foreign-owned and mostly foreign-owned enterprises, enterprises with mostly international operations

### SUMMARY

- 338.880 9      History and biography**
- .881      Growth, expansion, power**
- .883      Role in international economic development**
- .884      Restrictive practices and their control**
- .887      Multinational business enterprises in specific industries, groups of industries, fields**
- .888      Multinational business enterprises by location of operations**
- .889      Multinational business enterprises by location of owners**
- .880 9      History and biography
- Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 338.888-338.889
- .881      Growth, expansion, power
- Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- Class growth, expansion, power of multinational enterprises engaged in specific fields in 338.887
- See also 322.3 for political influence of multinational enterprises*
- .881 09      History and biography
- Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 338.888-338.889

- .883           Role in international economic development  
                   Class role in international economic development of multinational  
                   enterprises engaged in specific fields in 338.887
- .883 09           History and biography  
                   Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 338.888–338.889
- .884           Restrictive practices and their control  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Class here international monopoly, oligopoly  
                   Class restrictive practices of multinational enterprises engaged in specific  
                   fields in 338.887
- .884 09           History and biography  
                   Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 338.888–338.889
- .887           Multinational business enterprises in specific industries, groups of  
                   industries, fields
- [.887 01–.887 08]   Standard subdivisions  
                   Do not use; class in 338.8801–338.8808
- [.887 09]           History  
                   Do not use for history; class in 338.8809. Do not use for  
                   geographic treatment; class in 338.888–338.889
- [.887 092]           Biography  
                   Do not use; class in 338.88092
- .887 1           Multinational business enterprises in industries and fields of enterprise  
                   other than extractive, manufacturing, construction  
                   Class here service industries
- .887 100 01–.887 100 09   Standard subdivisions
- .887 100 1–.887 199 9   Subdivisions for multinational business enterprises in  
                   industries and fields of enterprise other than extractive,  
                   manufacturing, construction  
                   Add to base number 338.8871 notation 001–999,  
                   e.g., multinational enterprises engaged in advertising  
                   338.88716591; however, for multinational enterprises in  
                   financial industries, see 332.1–332.6; for multinational  
                   enterprises in real estate business, see 333.33; for  
                   multinational cooperatives, see 334; for multinational  
                   enterprises in the insurance industry, see 368.0065; for  
                   multinational enterprises in commerce, communications,  
                   transportation, see 380

- .887 2–.887 9      Multinational business enterprises in extractive, manufacturing, construction industries and fields of enterprise
- Add to base number 338.887 the numbers following 6 in 620–690, e.g., multinational enterprises engaged in mining petroleum and natural gas 338.88722338; however, for multinational enterprises engaged in energy production, see 333.79; for multinational cooperatives, see 334
- .888              Multinational business enterprises by location of operations
- Class multinational enterprises in specific industries and groups of industries in 338.887; class multinational enterprises by location of owners in 338.889
- [.888 01–.888 08]      Standard subdivisions
- Do not use; class in 338.8801–338.8808
- [.888 09]              History
- Do not use; class in 338.8809
- [.888 091]              Areas, regions, places in general
- Do not use; class in 338.8881
- [.888 092]              Biography
- Do not use; class in 338.88092
- [.888 093–.888 099]      Specific continents, countries, localities
- Do not use; class in 338.8883–338.8889
- .888 1              Multinational business enterprises in areas, regions, places in general
- Add to base number 333.8881 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., multinational enterprises in developing countries 338.8881724
- .888 3–.888 9              Multinational enterprises in specific continents, countries, localities
- Add to base number 338.888 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., multinational enterprises in Europe 338.8884
- .889              Multinational business enterprises by location of owners
- Class multinational enterprises in specific industries or groups of industries in 338.887; class multinational enterprises in a specific area without regard to location of owners in 338.888
- [.889 01–.889 08]      Standard subdivisions
- Do not use; class in 338.8801–338.8808
- [.889 09]              History
- Do not use; class in 338.8809
- [.889 091]              Areas, regions, places in general
- Do not use; class in 338.8891

- [.889 092]                      Biography  
     Do not use; class in 338.88092
- [.889 093–.889 099]              Specific continents, countries, localities  
     Do not use; class in 338.8893–338.8899
- .889 1                              Multinational business enterprises by owners residing in areas, regions, places in general  
     Add to base number 338.8891 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., multinational enterprises owned by citizens of developing countries 338.8891724; then, for area in which enterprise is located, add 0\* and to the result add notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., multinational enterprises owned by citizens of developing countries and located in Africa 338.889172406
- .889 3–.889 9                      Multinational business enterprises by owners residing in specific continents, countries, localities  
     Add to base number 338.889 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., multinational enterprises owned by United States nationals 338.88973; then, for area in which enterprise is located, add 0\* and to the result add notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., multinational enterprises owned by United States nationals in Canada 338.88973071

## **.9            Economic development and growth**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Including autarky and interdependence

Class here economic planning, government policies and programs

*For economic development and growth with respect to specific kinds of industries, see 338.1–338.4. For economic development and growth with respect to a specific subject not provided for here, see the subject, e.g., international development banks 332.153*

*See also 330.124 for planned economies*

- .900 1–.900 8                      Standard subdivisions
- .900 9                              History, geographic treatment, biography
- [.900 93–.900 99]                      Specific continents, countries, localities  
     Do not use; class in 338.93–338.99

## **.91            International development and growth**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here assistance by international organizations, foreign aid, technical assistance

Class foreign economic policies and relations of specific jurisdictions and groups of jurisdictions in 337.3–337.9

\*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

- .910 91            Areas, regions, places in general
- Do not use for assistance given by specific groups of jurisdictions in areas, regions, places in general to other jurisdictions; class in 338.911
- Class here assistance given to specific groups of jurisdictions in areas, regions, places in general
- .910 93–.910 99    Specific continents, countries, localities
- Do not use for assistance given by specific jurisdictions and groups of jurisdictions to other jurisdictions; class in 338.913–338.919
- Class here assistance given to specific jurisdictions and groups of jurisdictions
- .911            International assistance by specific groups of jurisdictions in areas, regions, places in general
- Add to base number 338.911 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., assistance by countries where Arabs predominate 338.91174927; then, for assistance by a specific group of jurisdictions to another group of jurisdictions or to a specific jurisdiction, add 0\* and to the result add notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., assistance by Arab countries to Africa 338.9117492706
- .913–.919        International assistance by specific jurisdictions and groups of jurisdictions in specific continents, countries, localities
- Add to base number 338.91 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., assistance by United Kingdom 338.9141; then, for assistance by a specific jurisdiction or group of jurisdictions to another jurisdiction or group of jurisdictions, add 0\* and again add notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., assistance by United Kingdom to Nigeria 338.91410669
- .92            Specific policies
- [.920 1–.920 8]    Standard subdivisions
- Do not use; class in 338.9001–338.9008
- [.920 9]            History, geographic treatment, biography
- Do not use; class in 338.9009
- [.920 93–.920 99]    Specific continents, countries, localities
- Do not use; class in 338.93–338.99
- .922            †Subsidies and grants
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Including government loans

\*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

†Do not use notation 093–099 from Table 1 for specific policies in specific areas; class in 338.93–338.99

- .924 †Nationalization  
Class here expropriation
- .925 †Privatization  
Class here denationalization
- .926 †Information policy  
Class here science policy, technology transfer  
*See Manual at 338.926 vs. 352.745, 500*
- .927 †Appropriate technology  
Class here alternative technology, environmental economics, sustainable development
- .93–.99 Economic development and growth in specific continents, countries, localities  
Add to base number 338.9 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., economic policies of United Kingdom 338.941; then add 0\* and to the result add the numbers following 338.92 in 338.922–338.927, e.g., subsidies in United Kingdom 338.94102  
Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

### 339 Macroeconomics and related topics

Standard subdivisions are added for macroeconomics and related topics together, for macroeconomics alone

*For economic fluctuations, see 338.54*

*See Manual at 332, 336 vs. 339*

#### SUMMARY

- 339.2 **Distribution of income and wealth**  
.3 **Product and income accounts**  
.4 **Factors affecting income and wealth**  
.5 **Macroeconomic policy**

#### .2 **Distribution of income and wealth**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class product and income accounts in 339.3; class factors affecting income and wealth in 339.4; class income redistribution in 339.52; class transfer payments in 339.522

#### .21 **Distribution of income and wealth among factors of production**

Factors of production: land, labor, capital, entrepreneurship, corporate profits

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

\*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

†Do not use notation 093–099 from Table 1 for specific policies in specific areas; class in 338.93–338.99

- .22            Distribution of aggregate personal income and wealth  
                  Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                  Class here consumer income, household income  
                  Class income in relation to consumption, household budget, in 339.41; class  
                  poverty in 339.46
- .23            Input-output analysis (Interindustry analysis)  
                  Including data on specific industries
- .26            Flow-of-funds accounts
- .3            Product and income accounts**  
                  *For distribution of income and wealth, see 339.2; for factors affecting  
                  income and wealth, see 339.4*
- [.309 3--309 9]    Specific continents, countries, localities  
                  Do not use for specific countries and localities; class in  
                  339.33--339.39
- .31            Product accounts  
                  Class here gross domestic product (GDP), gross national product (GNP)  
                  *For net national product (NNP), see 339.32*
- [.310 93--310 99]    Specific continents, countries, localities  
                  Do not use for specific countries and localities; class in  
                  339.33--339.39
- .32            Income accounts  
                  Class here net national product (NNP), national income (NI), personal  
                  income (PI), disposable personal income (DPI)  
                  *For distribution of aggregate personal income, see 339.22*
- [.320 93--320 99]    Specific continents, countries, localities  
                  Do not use for specific countries and localities; class in  
                  339.33--339.39
- .33--.39       Product and income accounts of specific continents, countries, localities  
                  Class here product accounts of specific continents, income accounts of  
                  specific continents  
                  Add to base number 339.3 notation 3--9 from Table 2, e.g., gross national  
                  product of United States 339.373  
                  Subdivisions are added for product accounts, income accounts, or both
- .4            Factors affecting income and wealth**  
                  Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                  *For economic stabilization, see 339.5*

- .41        Income in relation to consumption
- Including acceleration principle, consumer responses to decreases and increases in income, household budgets as a measure of relation of income to consumption
- Class purchasing power, effect of prices on consumption in 339.42; class multiplier, relation of consumption and savings, in 339.43
- See also 658.834 for consumer research in marketing management*
- .42        Cost of living
- Including effect of rising costs of specific commodities on consumers
- Class here purchasing power, effect of prices on consumers
- Class price statistics and indexes in 338.528
- For purchasing power of money, see 332.41*
- .43        Savings and investment
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Including multiplier, relation of consumption and savings
- Class here capital formation
- Class interdisciplinary works on capital formation and saving in 332.0415
- .46        Poverty
- Class here economic causes of poverty
- Class comprehensive works on poverty in 362.5
- .47        Consumption (Spending)
- Class here standard of living, interdisciplinary works on consumption
- Class consumption in relation to income in 339.41; class consumption in relation to cost of living in 339.42; class consumption in relation to savings and investment in 339.43; class consumption in relation to poverty in 339.46; class government spending in 339.522; class consumption as a measure of marketing opportunities or volume and value of trade in 381
- For sociology of consumption, see 306.3; for consumption as utilization of natural resources and energy, see 333.713; for consumption of specific products and services, of specific groups of products and services, see 339.48*
- See also 658.834 for consumer research in marketing management*
- .48        Consumption of specific products and services, of specific groups of products and services
- [.480 001–.480 009]        Standard subdivisions
- Do not use; class in 339.4701–339.4709

- .480 01–.489 99      Subdivisions for consumption of specific products and services, of specific groups of products and services  
    Add to base number 339.48 notation 001–999, e.g., consumption of agricultural products 339.4863; however, for consumption in the sense of utilization of specific natural resources, see 333.7–333.9
- .49                      Conservation of economic resources  
    Economic resources: the sum total of economic resources of a nation or other area, e.g., natural resources, human resources, resources that result from human activities  
    *For conservation of natural resources, see 333.72*
- [.490 91]              Areas, regions, places in general  
    Do not use; class in 339.491
- [.490 93–.490 99]      Specific continents, countries, localities  
    Do not use; class in 339.493–339.499
- .491                      Conservation of economic resources in areas, regions, places in general  
    Add to base number 339.491 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., conservation of economic resources of developing countries 339.491724
- .493–.499              Conservation of economic resources in specific continents, countries, localities  
    Add to base number 339.49 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., conservation of economic resources of India 339.4954
- .5                      Macroeconomic policy**  
    Class here incomes policy (wage-price policy), economic stabilization and growth, equilibrium, full employment policy  
    Class wage-price policies of specific jurisdictions in 331.29  
    *For wage policy, see 331.21; for measures to combat inflation, see 332.415; for price policy, see 338.52; for measures to control economic fluctuations, see 338.543; for measures to promote growth and development, see 338.9*
- .52                      Use of fiscal policy  
    Class here income redistribution
- .522                      Government spending  
    Including transfer payments
- .523                      Budget surpluses and deficits
- .525                      Taxes

## .53 Use of monetary policy

Including discount rates, reserve requirements, open-market operations, regulation of bank credit

Class comprehensive works on relation of central banks to monetary policy in 332.112; class comprehensive works on monetary policy in 332.46

**340 Law**

Class here jurisprudence

Instructions for building classification numbers for works on law of a jurisdiction or area are found at 342-349

*See Manual at 340 vs. 808.06634; also at 340, 342-347 vs. 340.56; also at 340, 342-347 vs. 340.57; also at 342-349*

**SUMMARY**

- |                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| <b>340.02-.09</b> | <b>Standard subdivisions</b>   |
| .1                | Philosophy and theory of law   |
| .2                | Comparative law  |
| .3                | Law reform   |
| .5                | Legal systems  |
| .9                | Conflict of laws   |
| <b>341</b>        | <b>Law of nations</b>  |
| .01-.09           | Standard subdivisions; treaties, codes, cases; relation of law of nations and domestic law |
| .1                | Sources of law of nations  |
| .2                | The world community  |
| .3                | Relations between states   |
| .4                | Jurisdiction over physical space; human rights   |
| .5                | Disputes and conflicts between states  |
| .6                | Law of war   |
| .7                | International cooperation  |
| <b>342</b>        | <b>Constitutional and administrative law</b>   |
| .001-.009         | Standard subdivisions; laws, regulations, cases, procedure, courts                         |
| .02               | Basic instruments of government  |
| .03               | Revision and amendment of basic instruments of government                                  |
| .04               | Structure, powers, functions of government   |
| .05               | Legislative branch of government   |
| .06               | Executive branch of government   |
| .07               | Election law   |
| .08               | Jurisdiction over persons  |
| .09               | Local government   |
| .1                | Socioeconomic regions  |
| .2                | Regional intergovernmental organizations   |
| .3-9              | Specific jurisdictions and areas   |

- 343           **Military, defense, public property, public finance, tax, commerce (trade), industrial law**  
           .001-.009           **Standard subdivisions; laws, regulations, cases, procedure, courts**  
           .01           **Military and defense law, veterans' law**  
           .02           **Law of public property**  
           .03           **Law of public finance**  
           .04           **Tax law**  
           .05           **Kinds of taxes by base**  
           .06           **Kinds of taxes by incidence**  
           .07           **Regulation of economic activity**  
           .08           **Regulation of commerce (trade)**  
           .09           **Control of public utilities**  
           .1           **Socioeconomic regions**  
           .2           **Regional intergovernmental organizations**  
           .3-.9           **Specific jurisdictions and areas**
- 344           **Labor, social service, education, cultural law**  
           .001-.009           **Standard subdivisions; laws, regulations, cases, procedure, courts**  
           .01           **Labor**  
           .02           **Government-sponsored insurance**  
           .03           **Social service**  
           .04           **Miscellaneous social problems and services**  
           .05           **Police services, other aspects of public safety, matters concerning public morals and customs**  
           .06           **Public works**  
           .07           **Education**  
           .08           **Educational and cultural exchanges**  
           .09           **Culture and religion**  
           .1           **Socioeconomic regions**  
           .2           **Regional intergovernmental organizations**  
           .3-.9           **Specific jurisdictions and areas**
- 345           **Criminal law**  
           .001-.009           **Standard subdivisions; laws, regulations, cases, procedure, courts**  
           .01           **Criminal courts**  
           .02           **Criminal offenses**  
           .03           **Offenders**  
           .04           **Liability, responsibility, guilt**  
           .05           **Criminal procedure**  
           .06           **Evidence**  
           .07           **Trials**  
           .08           **Juvenile procedure and courts**  
           .1           **Socioeconomic regions**  
           .2           **Regional intergovernmental organizations**  
           .3-.9           **Specific jurisdictions and areas**

- 346 Private law
- .001-.009 Standard subdivisions; laws, regulations, cases, procedure, courts; equity
  - .01 Persons and domestic relations
  - .02 Juristic acts, contracts, agency
  - .03 Torts (Delicts)
  - .04 Property
  - .05 Inheritance, succession, fiduciary trusts, trustees
  - .06 Organizations (Associations)
  - .07 Commercial law
  - .08 Banks and insurance
  - .09 Investment and negotiable instruments
  - .1 Socioeconomic regions
  - .2 Regional intergovernmental organizations
  - .3-.9 Specific jurisdictions and areas
- 347 Procedure and courts
- .001-.009 Standard subdivisions; laws, regulations, cases, procedure, courts
  - .01 Courts
  - .02 Courts with general original jurisdiction
  - .03 Appellate courts
  - .04 Courts with specialized jurisdiction
  - .05 Procedure
  - .06 Evidence
  - .07 Trials
  - .08 Appellate procedure
  - .09 Dispute resolution
  - .1 Socioeconomic regions
  - .2 Regional intergovernmental organizations
  - .3-.9 Specific jurisdictions and areas
- 348 Laws, regulations, cases
- .001-.009 Standard subdivisions and codification
  - .01 Preliminary materials
  - .02 Laws and regulations
  - .04 Cases
  - .05 Advisory opinions of attorneys-general (ministers of justice)
  - .1 Socioeconomic regions
  - .2 Regional intergovernmental organizations
  - .3-.9 Specific jurisdictions and areas
- 349 Law of specific jurisdictions, areas, socioeconomic regions, regional intergovernmental organizations
- .1 Law of specific socioeconomic regions
  - .2 Law of regional intergovernmental organizations
  - .4-.9 Law of specific jurisdictions and areas of modern world

[.01] Philosophy and theory

Do not use; class in 340.1

> 340.02-340.09 Standard subdivisions

Class comprehensive works in 340

*See Manual at 340.02-340.09 vs. 349*

.02 Miscellany

- .023 Law as a profession, occupation, hobby  
 Class here legal personnel, nature of duties, characteristics of profession  
 Class professional ethics of legal personnel in 174.3. Class works that emphasize procedures of work performed by legal personnel with the subject without adding notation 023 from Table 1, e.g., works that emphasize procedures of conducting a lawsuit 347.0504
- .03–.08 Standard subdivisions
- .09 History, geographic treatment, biography of law  
 Do not use for history and geographic treatment of law of traditional societies; class in 340.52. Do not use for comprehensive works on law of specific jurisdictions and areas in modern world; class in 349
- [.091 7] Socioeconomic regions  
 Do not use; class in 349.1
- .092 Biography  
 Do not use for theorists; class in 340.1092
- [.093] Ancient world  
 Do not use; class in 340.53
- .1 Philosophy and theory of law**  
 Class here methodology, schools of thought  
*For theory of specific legal systems, see 340.5*
- .11 Special topics of philosophy and theory of law  
 Including origin, sources, nature, limits of law; rule of law; legal reasoning; equal protection of the law  
 Class interdisciplinary works on equal protection of the law in 323.42
- .112 Law and ethics  
 Class here civil rights, law and morality, legal positivism, natural law  
 Class social justice in 340.115
- .114 Justice  
*For distributive justice, social justice, see 340.115*
- .115 Law and society  
 Including distributive justice, social justice  
 Class here sociological jurisprudence
- .12–.19 Specific aspects of philosophy and theory  
 Add to base number 340.1 the numbers following —01 in notation 012–019 from Table 1, e.g., classification of law 340.12

**.2 Comparative law**

Limited to methodological works

Class comparison of specific branches of law in 342–347

(If option A under 342–349 is chosen, class comparative law in 349

(If option B under 342–349 is chosen, class comparative law in 342)

**.3 Law reform****.5 Legal systems**

History and theory

Class here customary law

Class conflict of laws on a specific subject in specific systems of law with the subject in 340.9, e.g., conflict of divorce laws in ancient Roman law 340.91660937, conflict of divorce laws in civil law 340.9166; class a specific subject in specific systems of law with the subject in 341–347, e.g., juristic persons in Islamic law 346.167013, in ancient Roman law 346.37013, in Byzantine law 346.495013, in civil law 346.013; class religious and ceremonial laws of a specific religious body with the body, e.g., Christian canon law 262.9

**.52 Law of traditional societies**

Class here ethnological jurisprudence

*See Manual at 340.52*

[.520 93] Law of traditional societies in ancient world

Do not use; class in 340.53

[.520 94–.520 99] Law of traditional societies in specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Do not use; class in 340.524–340.529

.524–.529 Law of traditional societies in specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Add to base number 340.52 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., traditional law of the Sahara 340.5266

**.53 Ancient law**

Add to base number 340.53 the numbers following —3 in notation 31–39 from Table 2, e.g., law of ancient Greece 340.538; however, for Roman law, see 340.54

Class ancient Oriental law in 340.5

(If option B under 342–349 is chosen, class here branches of the law in jurisdictions of the ancient world by adding to the number for the jurisdiction facet indicator 0\*, notation for the branch of law, and notation for the subordinate subject in branch of law, e.g., criminal law of ancient Greece 340.53805, law of criminal trials of ancient Greece 340.538057)

\*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

- .54 Roman law  
 Including Byzantine law  
 Class comprehensive works on Roman-derived law in specific jurisdictions and areas in modern world in 349  
*For medieval Roman law, see 340.55*  
 (If option B under 342–349 is chosen, class here branches of the law in Roman Empire by adding to base number 340.54 facet indicator 0\*, notation for the branch of law, and notation for the subordinate subject in branch of law, e.g., criminal law of Roman Empire 340.5405, law of criminal trials of Roman Empire 340.54057)
- 
- > 340.55–340.59 Medieval, modern, religious systems of law  
 Class comprehensive works in 340.5; class comprehensive works on law of specific jurisdictions and areas in modern world in 349
- .55 Medieval European law  
 Including feudal law, medieval Roman law  
 Class medieval civil law in 340.56; class medieval common law in 340.57
- .56 Civil law systems  
 Systems of law derived from Roman law  
 Including Roman-Dutch law  
*See Manual at 340, 342–347 vs. 340.56*
- .57 Common law systems  
*See Manual at 340, 342–347 vs. 340.57*
- .58 Jewish law  
*For religious and ceremonial law of Judaism, see 296.18*
- .59 Islamic law  
 Class here fiqh, sharia  
*For religious and ceremonial law of Islam, fiqh and sharia in relation to religious and ceremonial laws and decisions, see 297.14*

**.9 Conflict of laws**

Body of rules governing choice of jurisdiction in cases in private law that fall under laws of two or more such jurisdictions

Class here private international law

Add to base number 340.9 the numbers following 346.0 in 346.01–346.09, e.g., conflict of divorce laws 340.9166

*For comparative law, see 340.2; for domestic conflict of laws, see 342.042. For a specific aspect of conflict of laws and of private international law not provided for here, see the aspect in 342–345, e.g., citizenship 342.083, air transportation 343.097*

*See also 341 for international law*

*See Manual at 340.9*

**341 Law of nations**

Class here international law, public international law

Class comprehensive works on public law in 342

*See also 340.9 for private international law*

*See Manual at 341 vs. 327*

(Option: Class law of nations of a specific subject with the subject, plus notation 026 from Table 1, e.g., international disarmament law 327.174026, not 341.733)

**SUMMARY**

**341.01–.09 Standard subdivisions; treaties, codes, cases; relation of law of nations and domestic law**

- .1 Sources of law of nations**
- .2 The world community**
- .3 Relations between states**
- .4 Jurisdiction over physical space; human rights**
- .5 Disputes and conflicts between states**
- .6 Law of war**
- .7 International cooperation**

**.02** Miscellany; treaties, codes, cases

Notation 02 from Table 1 as modified below

**.026** Treaties, codes, cases

Texts of treaties, codes, cases; guides, e.g., checklists, citators, digests, indexes

Class here conventions, protocols

Class treaties as a source of law of nations in 341.1; class comprehensive works on treaties in 341.37. Class treaties on a specific subject in law of nations with the subject in 341.2–341.7, plus notation 026 from add table under 341.2–341.7, e.g., collections of disarmament treaties 341.733026; class text of treaties on a specific subject in domestic law with the subject in 342–347, plus notation 0261 from add table under 342–347, e.g., text of commercial treaties 346.070261

- 
- > 341.026 1–341.026 6 Texts of treaties  
     Class comprehensive works in 341.026
- 
- > 341.026 1–341.026 3 Series of treaties compiled by intergovernmental organizations  
     Class specific kinds of treaties regardless of the organization compiling them in 341.0265–341.0266; class comprehensive works in 341.026
- .026 1           League of Nations series of treaties  
                   Class a League of Nations series relating to a specific area in 341.0264
- .026 2           United Nations series of treaties  
                   Class a United Nations series relating to a specific area in 341.0264
- .026 3           Series of treaties compiled by regional organizations  
                   Add to base number 341.0263 the numbers following 341.24 in 341.242–341.249, e.g., a series compiled by Organization of American States 341.02635
- .026 4           Collections of treaties by area  
                   Add to base number 341.0264 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., treaties on Philippines 341.0264599  
                   Class collections of treaties relating to a specific area compiled by regional organizations in 341.0263; class collections of specific kinds of treaties by area in 341.0265–341.0266
- 
- > 341.026 5–341.026 6 Kinds of treaties  
     Collections and individual treaties  
     Class comprehensive works in 341.026
- .026 5           Multilateral treaties  
                   Class an agreement between an intergovernmental organization and a specific country in 341.026
- .026 6           Bilateral treaties  
                   Add to base number 341.0266 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., treaties of the United Kingdom 341.026641; then add 0\* and again add notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., treaties between United Kingdom and France 341.026641044  
                   Give priority in notation to the country coming first in Table 2 (Option: Give priority in notation to the country requiring local emphasis, e.g., libraries in United States class treaties between United Kingdom and the United States in 341.026673041)

\*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

.026 7

## Codes

Class codes of a specific subject in law of nations with the subject in 341.2–341.7, plus notation 0267 from add table under 341.2–341.7, e.g., disarmament codes 341.7330267; class codes of a specific subject in domestic law with the subject in 342–347, plus notation 02632 from add table under 342–347, e.g., commercial codes 346.0702632

.026 8

## Cases

## Decisions and reports

Class here general collections of cases on international matters tried in any court system

Add to base number 341.0268 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., cases brought by United Kingdom 341.026841; then, for cases brought by that nation against another nation, add 0\* and again add notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., cases brought by United Kingdom against United States 341.026841073

(Option: Give priority in notation to the nation requiring local emphasis, e.g., libraries in United States class all cases involving United States and United Kingdom in 341.026873041)

Class cases about a specific subject in law of nations with the subject in 341.2–341.7, plus notation 0268 from add table under 341.2–341.7, e.g., disarmament cases 341.7330268; class cases about a specific subject in domestic law with the subject in 342–347, plus notation 0264 from add table under 342–347, e.g., commercial cases 346.070264

.04

## Relation of law of nations and domestic law

Class here works on whether domestic law or law of nations prevails in a certain situation

Class the law of a nation or lesser jurisdiction that carries out the provisions of an international agreement in 342–347

.09

## History, geographic treatment, biography

.092

## Biography

Do not use for critical works on individual publicists; class in 341.1

.1

**Sources of law of nations**

Treaties, judicial decisions, custom, general principles of law, works of publicists (theorists)

Class here critical works on individual publicists (theorists)

Class texts of treaties and reports of judicial decisions in 341.026; class comprehensive works on treaties in 341.37. Class writings of publicists on a specific subject with the subject in 341–347, e.g., international rivers 341.442, international commerce 343.087

\*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

&gt;

**341.2–341.7 Specific topics**

Add to each subdivision identified by † as follows:

- 01 Philosophy and theory  
Notation 01 from Table 1 as modified below
- 011 Special topics of philosophy and theory of law  
Including origin, sources, nature, limits of law; rule of law; legal reasoning; equal protection of the law; law and ethics; justice; law and society  
Use of this number for systems discontinued; class in 01
- 02 Miscellany  
Notation 02 from Table 1 as modified below
- 023 Law as a profession, occupation, hobby  
Class here legal personnel, nature of duties, characteristics of profession  
Class professional ethics of legal personnel in 174.3; class comprehensive works on legal personnel in 340.023. Class works that emphasize procedures of work performed by legal personnel with the subject without adding notation 023 from Table 1, e.g., works that emphasize procedures of adjudicating matters of public international law 341.55
- 026 Treaties, codes, cases  
Texts of treaties, codes, cases; guides, e.g., checklists, citators, digests, indexes  
Do not use for discussions, commentaries, or popular works; class with the subject in 341.2–341.7 without further subdivision  
Class here conventions, protocols  
Class texts of treaties on a specific subject in domestic law with the subject in 342–347, plus notation 0261 from add table under 342–347, e.g., text of commercial treaties 346.070261
- 0261–0266 Text of treaties  
Add to 026 the numbers following 341.026 in 341.0261–341.0266, e.g., multilateral treaties 0265
- 0267 Codes  
Class codes of a specific subject in domestic law with the subject in 342–347, plus notation 02632 from add table under 342–347, e.g., commercial codes 346.0702632

(continued)

> **341.2–341.7 Specific topics (continued)**

- 0268 Cases  
 Decisions and reports  
 Class here general collections of cases on international matters tried in any court system  
 Add to base number 0268 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., cases brought by United Kingdom 026841; then, for cases brought by that nation against another nation, add 0\* and again add notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., cases brought by United Kingdom against United States 026841073  
 (Option: Give priority in notation to the nation requiring local emphasis, e.g., libraries in United States class all cases involving United States and United Kingdom in 026873041)  
 Class cases about a specific subject in domestic law with the subject in 342–347, plus notation 0264 from add table under 342–347, e.g., commercial cases 346.070264
- 03–08 Standard subdivisions
- 09 History, geographic treatment, biography  
*See Manual at 342–349*

Class comprehensive works in 341

**.2 The world community**

Class here international legal personality

**.21 World government**

Proposals and schemes

> **341.22–341.24 Intergovernmental organizations**

Class here legal responsibilities of officials; privileges and immunities; interdisciplinary works on intergovernmental organizations

Class comprehensive works on intergovernmental organizations in 341.2; class interdisciplinary works on international organizations in 060. Class comprehensive works on the laws of a specific intergovernmental organization with the organization in 349, e.g., laws of European Union 349.24

*For administration of intergovernmental organizations, see 352.11. For a specialized intergovernmental organization, see the subject with which it deals, plus notation 0601 from Table 1, e.g., Interpol 363.20601; for legal aspects of a specialized intergovernmental organization, see the subject with which it deals in 341–347, e.g., Interpol 345.052; for treaties, codes, cases on a specific subject in domestic law of a non-specialized intergovernmental organization, see the specific subject in 342–347, e.g., economic law of European Union 343.2407; for a nonlegal aspect of an intergovernmental organization, see the aspect, e.g., economic aspects of European Union 337.142*

**.22 League of Nations**

\*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

- [.220 13] Value  
Number discontinued; class in 341.2201
- [.220 68] Management  
Do not use; class in 352.112
- .221–.229 Functions, activities, organization, general relations with specific nations  
Add to base number 341.22 the numbers following 341.23 in 341.231–341.239, e.g., Covenant of the League 341.222
- .23 United Nations
- .230 1 Philosophy and theory  
Notation 01 from Table 1 as modified below  
Do not use for value; class in 341.23013
- .230 13 Value  
Evaluation of and opinions about the effectiveness and worth of the United Nations
- [.230 68] Management  
Do not use; class in 352.113
- .231 †Functions and activities  
Class functions and activities of specific branches of the United Nations in 341.232. Class a specific function or activity with the function or activity in 341–347, e.g., role in the peaceful settlement of disputes 341.523, role of UNICEF in child welfare 344.0327
- .232 †Organization  
Including charter  
Class here rules of procedure  
*For legal responsibility of officials, see 341.233; for Secretariat, see 352.113*
- .232 2 †General Assembly
- .232 3 †Security Council
- .232 5 †Economic and Social Council
- .233 †Admission and membership  
*For organization, see 341.232*

†Add as instructed under 341.2–341.7

- .234–.239      General relations with specific nations
- Add to base number 341.23 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., relations with United States 341.2373
- Class relations dealing with a specific subject with the subject in 341–347, e.g., United Nations peacekeeping operations in Serbia 341.584094971, United Nations human rights activities in the United States 342.73085
- .24              Regional organizations
- For comprehensive works on the laws of regional intergovernmental organizations, see 349.2*
- .242              European regional organizations
- .242 1            †Council of Europe
- Class laws promulgated by Council of Europe with the subject in 341–347, e.g., protection of rights of individuals 342.24085
- .242 2            †European Union
- Class here European Common Market, European Community, European Economic Community
- Class political integration of European Union member states in 320.94; class economic integration of European Union member states in 337.142. Class laws promulgated by European Union with the subject in 341–347, e.g., copyright laws 346.240482
- .242 202 65      Multilateral treaties
- Number built according to instructions under 341.2–341.7
- Class here texts of founding treaties, e.g., Treaty Establishing the European Community, Maastricht Treaty on European Union; texts of treaties amending founding treaties, e.g., Treaty of Nice; Treaty Establishing a Constitution for Europe (2004)
- Class texts of accession treaties in 341.242230265
- [.242 206 8]      Management
- Do not use; class in 352.114
- .242 209           History, geographic treatment, biography
- Notation 09 from Table 1 as modified below
- .242 209 4–.242 209 9      Specific continents, countries, localities; extraterrestrial worlds
- Class here general relations with specific nations
- Class relations dealing with a specific subject with the subject in 341–347, e.g., admission to European Union 341.24223, relations concerning antitrust law and competition law 343.240721, effect of European Union law on national law of Germany 349.43

†Add as instructed under 341.2–341.7

- .242 22 †Organization  
 Class here rules of procedure  
 Class legislative process in European Union in 328.4  
*For legal responsibility of officials, see 341.24223*
- .242 222 †Council of the European Union
- .242 224 †European Parliament [formerly 341.2424]
- .242 226 †European Commission
- .242 228 †Courts of the European Union  
*For European Court of Human Rights, see 342.240850269*
- .242 228 2 †Court of First Instance of the European Communities
- .242 228 4 †Court of Justice of the European Communities
- .242 23 †Admission and membership  
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
*For organization, see 341.24222*
- .242 230 265 Multilateral treaties  
 Number built according to instructions under  
 341.2–341.7  
 Class here texts of accession treaties
- .242 24 †Relationship between European Union law and national law of  
 European Union countries  
 Class here effect of European Union law on national law of  
 European Union countries, harmonization of national law of  
 European Union countries  
*For relationship of European Union law on a specific branch  
 or subject of law with national law of a specific member state,  
 see the branch or subject of national law in 342–347, e.g.,  
 Italian labor law regulated by European Union law 344.4501;  
 for comprehensive works on relationship of European Union  
 law on a specific branch or subject and national law of  
 member countries, see the branch or subject in 342–347  
 plus the notation for European regional intergovernmental  
 organizations, e.g., effect of European Union law on labor  
 law of member states 344.2401; for comprehensive works on  
 relationship of European Union law and national law of a  
 specific member state, see the national law in 349, e.g., effect  
 of European Union law on national law of Italy 349.45*
- [.242 4] European Parliament  
 Relocated to 341.242224
- .242 7 †Council for Mutual Economic Assistance

- .243 Atlantic regional organizations
- .245 Western Hemisphere regional organizations  
Including Organization of American States
- .246 Pacific regional organizations
- .247 Asian regional organizations
- .247 3 Far East regional organizations  
Including ASEAN (Association of East Asian Nations)
- .247 7 Western Asia regional organizations  
Including League of Arab States  
Class here Middle East organizations
- .249 African regional organizations  
*For League of Arab States, see 341.2477*
- .26 †States  
Including recognition of states and governments; mergers, self-determination, liability, sovereignty, succession of states; liability of states to aliens  
  
Class liability of states with respect to a specific subject in law of nations with the subject in 341.2–341.7, e.g., liability for damages caused by testing nuclear weapons 341.734; class liability of states with respect to a specific subject in other branches of law with the subject in 342–347, e.g., liability for breach of contract 346.022  
  
*For semisovereign states, see 341.27; for relations between states, see 341.3; for jurisdiction over physical space, see 341.4*
- .27 †Semisovereign states  
Including mandates, protectorates, trusteeships
- .28 †Non-self-governing territories  
Class here colonies
- .29 †Areas having special status in international law  
Including partitioned areas, e.g., Antarctica, Cyprus
- .3 †Relations between states  
  
*For jurisdictional relations, see 341.4; for disputes and conflicts, see 341.5; for international cooperation, see 341.7*

†Add as instructed under 341.2–341.7

.302 6

Treaties, codes, cases

Number built according to instructions under 341.2–341.7

Class here texts of treaties limited to general relations between states

Class works about treaties in 341.37. Class text of treaties on a specific subject in law of nations with the subject in 341.2–341.7, plus notation 026 from add table under 341.2–341.7, e.g., text of disarmament treaties 341.733026, text of a disarmament treaty between Russia and the United States 341.733026647073; class text of treaties on a specific subject in domestic law with the subject in 342–347, plus notation 0261 from add table under 342–347, e.g., text of copyright treaties 346.04820261

.33

†Diplomatic law

Including legal aspects of functions, immunities, privileges, status of diplomatic personnel and agencies; delegations to international organizations and their staffs

Class officials and employees of intergovernmental organizations in 341.22–341.24; class interdisciplinary works on diplomacy in 327.2

*For consular law, see 341.35*

.35

†Consular law

.37

Treaties

Including negotiation and ratification, validity and binding force, termination, interpretation

Class treaties on a specific subject in law of nations with the subject in 341.2–341.7, e.g., disarmament treaties 341.733; class treaties on a specific subject in domestic law with the subject in 342–347, e.g., copyright treaties 346.0482

*For general collections of texts of treaties, see 341.026; for treaties as sources of law of nations, see 341.1*

.4

†Jurisdiction over physical space; human rights

Class here conservation and development of extraterritorial natural resources; extraterritoriality; jurisdiction over physical space; servitudes and easements; right of innocent passage

Subdivisions are added for jurisdiction over physical space and human rights together, for jurisdiction over physical space alone

*See also 346.044 for conservation and development of territorial natural resources*

&gt;

341.42–341.47 Jurisdiction over physical space

Class comprehensive works in 341.4

- .42 †Territory  
 Including acquisition, boundaries, border disputes  
 Class mergers of states in 341.26; class boundary rivers in 341.442
- .44 †Bodies of water  
*For high seas, see 341.45*
- .442 †Rivers  
 National, semi-national, boundary, internationalized rivers  
 Including combined river, lake, canal systems, e.g., Saint Lawrence Seaway  
 Class canalized rivers in 341.446
- .444 †Lakes and inland seas  
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
 Class combined river, lake, canal systems in 341.442
- .446 †Canals and straits  
 Class combined river, lake, canal systems in 341.442
- .448 †Territorial waters  
 Including bays, continental shelves  
 Class access to the sea, comprehensive works on ocean and sea waters in 341.45
- .45 †High seas  
 Class here comprehensive works on international law of ocean and sea waters  
 Class ocean transportation in 343.0962; class oceanographic research in 344.0955  
*For territorial waters, see 341.448*  
*See Manual at 341.45 vs. 343.0962*
- .455 †Seabed (Ocean bottom)]
- .46 †Airspace  
 Class air transportation in 343.097; class meteorological research in 344.0955
- .47 †Extraterrestrial space  
 Including the moon, planets  
 Class space transportation in 343.0979; class space research in 344.0952

†Add as instructed under 341.2–341.7

- .48           Human rights  
                   Class jurisdiction over persons in 342.08; class civil rights in 342.085; class personal property in 346.047; class interdisciplinary works on human rights in 323  
                   *See Manual at 342.085 vs. 341.48*
- .480 2           Miscellany  
                   Notation 02 from Table 1 as modified below
- .480 26           Treaties, codes, cases  
                   Add to base number 341.48026 the numbers following 341.026 in 341.0261–341.0268, e.g., text of multilateral treaties 341.480265
- [.480 8]           Groups of people  
                   Do not use; class in 341.485
- .483           Specific human rights  
                   Class specific rights of specific social groups in 341.485
- [.483 01–.483 09]   Standard subdivisions  
                   Do not use; class in 341.4801–341.4809
- .483 2–.483 8   Subdivisions for specific human rights  
                   Add to base number 341.483 the numbers following 342.085 in 342.0852–342.0858, e.g., freedom of religion 341.4832
- .485           Rights of specific social groups
- [.485 01–.485 09]   Standard subdivisions  
                   Do not use; class in 341.4801–341.4809
- .485 2–.485 8   Subdivisions for rights of specific social groups  
                   Add to base number 341.485 the numbers following 342.087 in 342.0872–342.0878, e.g., rights of women 341.4858; however, for rights of stateless persons and refugees, see 341.486
- .486           †Rights of stateless persons and refugees  
                   Class jurisdiction over stateless persons and refugees in 342.083
- .5           †**Disputes and conflicts between states**  
                   Class disputes on a specific subject with the subject in 341–347, e.g., jurisdictional disputes 341.4  
                   *For law of war, see 341.6*
- .52           †Peaceful settlement  
                   Including mediation  
                   *For adjudication, see 341.55*

†Add as instructed under 341.2–341.7

- .522 †Arbitration
- .522.2 †Permanent Court of Arbitration
- .523 †Role of intergovernmental organizations
  - Class peace conferences in 341.73
- .55 †Adjudication
  - Courts and court procedure
  - Including role of domestic courts in adjudicating matters of public international law, interpretation of general law of nations in courts
  - Class interpretation of a specific subject with the subject in 341–347, e.g., interpretation of war crimes 341.69, interpretation of civil rights 342.085
- .552 †International Court of Justice
- .58 †Coercive methods of settlement short of war
  - Including ultimatums
- .582 †Sanctions
  - Including boycotts, embargoes, reprisals
- .584 †Intervention
  - Including blockades, deploying peacekeeping forces, humanitarian intervention
- .6 †Law of war**
- .62 †Initiation of war
  - Including aggression
- .63 †Conduct of war
  - Including prize law
- .64 †Neutrality and neutral states
  - Class status of nationals of neutral nations in 341.67
- .65 †Treatment of prisoners
  - Including granting of quarter
  - Class humanitarian law in 341.67
- .66 Termination of war
  - Including indemnification, reparations, restitution; laws of occupation
  - Class here military government of occupied countries
  - For war claims by private individuals of one country against another country, see 340.9*

†Add as instructed under 341.2–341.7

- .660 2            Miscellany  
                     Notation 02 from Table 1 as modified below
- .660 26            Treaties and cases  
                     Class here text of treaties limited to termination of war  
                     Add to base number 341.66026 the numbers following 341.026 in  
                     341.0261–341.0268, e.g., text of multilateral treaties 341.660265  
                     Class texts of treaties that are signed at termination of a war but  
                     cover topics other than termination of the war in 341.026
- .67                †Humanitarian law  
                     Including status of enemy aliens and their property, nationals of neutral  
                     nations, combatants, noncombatants, war victims  
                     *For treatment of prisoners, see 341.65*
- .68                †Law of nations and civil war  
                     Including responsibility of the state for acts of unsuccessful insurgent  
                     governments
- .69                †War crimes
- .690 268            Cases  
                     Number built according to instructions under 341.2–341.7  
                     Class here trials of war criminals, e.g., Tokyo war crime trials
- .7                 †**International cooperation**
- .72                †Mutual security  
                     Including international security forces  
                     Class here legal aspects of international mutual security pacts, e.g., NATO  
                     (North Atlantic Treaty Organization)  
                     Class military and defense law in 343.01; class civil defense in 344.0535;  
                     class interdisciplinary works on international mutual security pacts in  
                     355.031
- .722              †Peaceful occupation (Friendly occupation)
- .73                †Peace and disarmament  
                     Class here peace conferences, general efforts to gain acceptance of  
                     renunciation of war as an instrument of national policy  
                     Subdivisions are added for peace and disarmament together, for peace alone  
                     Class peaceful settlement of disputes in 341.52

†Add as instructed under 341.2–341.7

- .733 †Disarmament  
Including suspension of weapons testing  
Class the abolition and control of specific kinds of weapons in 341.734–341.738
- .734 †Control of nuclear weapons
- .735 †Control of chemical and biological weapons  
Class here control of weapons of mass destruction  
*For control of nuclear weapons, see 341.734*
- .738 †Control of strategic weapons during time of peace  
Class control of nuclear strategic weapons in 341.734; class control of chemical and biological strategic weapons in 341.735

&gt;

### **342–349 Branches of law; laws, regulations, cases; law of specific jurisdictions, areas, socioeconomic regions**

Classification numbers for law of specific jurisdictions and areas are built from five elements, which can be arranged in different ways to produce standard or optional numbers, according to instructions following this table:

- (1) 34, the base number, indicating law
- (2) A digit indicating specific branch of law, original materials, or comprehensive works as follows:
  - 2 Constitutional and administrative law
  - 3 Military, defense, public property, public finance, tax, trade (commerce), industrial law
  - 4 Labor, social service, education, cultural law
  - 5 Criminal law
  - 6 Private law
  - 7 Procedure and courts
  - 8 Laws, regulations, cases not limited to a specific branch
  - 9 Comprehensive works
- (3) The facet indicator 0\*
- (4) One or more digits indicating a subject subordinate to specific branch of law or type of original material  
Example: 1 Courts (from 345.01 under 345 Criminal law)
- (5) Notation from Table 2 indicating the jurisdiction or area  
Example: —94 Australia

To show comprehensive works on a specific jurisdiction or area in modern world, arrange the elements as follows, using law of Australia as an example:

Base number: 34

Digit indicating comprehensive works: 9

Jurisdiction or area: Australia, —94

The complete number is 349.94

(continued)

\*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

†Add as instructed under 341.2–341.7

&gt;

### 342–349 Branches of law; laws, regulations, cases; law of specific jurisdictions, areas, socioeconomic regions (continued)

To show a specific branch, a specific subject, or a kind of original material, arrange the elements as follows, using criminal courts of Australia as an example:

Base number: 34  
 Branch of law: Criminal law, 5  
 Jurisdiction or area: Australia, —94  
 Facet indicator: 0\*  
 Subordinate subject in branch of law: Courts, 1  
 The complete number is 345.9401

Class comprehensive works in 340; class comprehensive works on law of specific ancient jurisdictions, areas, socioeconomic regions in 340.53; class comprehensive works on law of specific jurisdictions, areas, socioeconomic regions in 349

*See Manual at 342–349*

(Option: To give preferred treatment to the law of a specific jurisdiction, to jurisdictions in general, to branch of law and its subordinate subjects, or to subject, use one of the following options or the option at 342–347:

(Option A: To give local emphasis and a shorter notation to law of a specific jurisdiction or area, e.g., Australia, arrange the elements as follows, using criminal courts of Australia as an example:

Base number: 34  
 Branch of law: Criminal law, 5  
 Facet indicator: 0\*  
 Subordinate subject in the branch of law: Courts, 1  
 The complete number is 345.01

(For law of a jurisdiction subordinate to the emphasized jurisdiction or area, insert between the branch of law and facet indicator the notation indicating the subordinate jurisdiction

(To show subordinate jurisdictions of an area with regular notation from Table 2, derive the notation by dropping from the area number for subordinate jurisdiction all digits that apply to preferred jurisdiction. For example, drop area number for Australia —94 from area number for Tasmania —946 to obtain notation 6, which is used for Tasmania. Thus, the number for criminal procedure of Tasmania is 345.605

(To show subordinate jurisdictions of an area with irregular notation from Table 2, i.e., with numbers for subdivisions that are coordinate with the number for the entire area, derive notation by dropping the digits from area number that all subdivisions have in common. For example, Sudan's area number is —624, while the numbers for its regions and provinces are —625–629. Drop —62 from full area number for Darfur region —627 to obtain the notation 7, which is used for Darfur region. Thus, the number for criminal procedure of the Darfur region is 345.705

(continued)

\*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

> **342–349 Branches of law; laws, regulations, cases; law of specific jurisdictions, areas, socioeconomic regions (continued)**

(Class comprehensive works on law of the preferred jurisdiction or area in 342; class comparative law and law of other jurisdictions and areas in 349)

(Option B: To give preferred treatment to jurisdictions in general, arrange the elements as follows, using criminal courts of Australia as an example:

Base number: 34

Jurisdiction or area: Australia, —94

Facet indicator: 0\*

Branch of law: Criminal law, 5

Subordinate subject in branch of law: Courts, 1

The complete number is 349.4051. Other examples: criminal courts of Tasmania 349.46051, texts of welfare laws of Hobart 349.4610430263

(Class law of jurisdictions in the ancient world in 340.53–340.54; class comparative law in 342; class law of socioeconomic regions in 343.1; class law of regional intergovernmental organizations in 343.2)

(Option C: To give preferred treatment to branch of law and its subordinate subjects, arrange the elements as follows, using criminal courts of Australia as an example:

Base number: 34

Branch of law: Criminal law, 5

Subordinate subject in branch of law: Courts, 1

Facet indicator: 0\*

Jurisdiction or area: Australia, —94

The complete number is 345.1094)

\*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

&gt;

**342–347 Branches of law**

Class here comprehensive works on specific subjects of law

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by \* as follows:

- 01 Philosophy and theory
  - Notation 01 from Table 1 as modified below
- 011 Special topics of philosophy and theory of law
  - Including origin, sources, nature, limits of law; rule of law; legal reasoning; equal protection of the law; law and ethics; justice; law and society
  - Use of this number for systems discontinued; class in 01
- 02 Miscellany
  - Notation 02 from Table 1 as modified below
- 023 Law as a profession, occupation, hobby
  - Class here legal personnel, nature of duties, characteristics of profession
  - Class professional ethics of legal personnel in 174.3; class comprehensive works on legal personnel in 340.023. Class works that emphasize procedures of work performed by legal personnel with the subject without adding notation 023 from Table 1, e.g., works that emphasize procedures of conducting a lawsuit 347.0504
- 026 Laws, regulations, cases, procedure, courts
  - Standard subdivisions may be added to 026 and its subdivisions
  - (Option: Class laws, regulations, cases on specific subjects in law in 348)
- 0261 Treaties
  - Including negotiation and ratification, validity and binding force, termination, interpretation
  - Class here bilateral and multilateral treaties
  - Do not use for commentaries and criticism; class with the subject in 342–347 without further subdivision
  - Add to 0261 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., bilateral treaties with Great Britain 026141
- 0262 Preliminary materials
  - Including bills, hearings, reports, executive messages, statements of witnesses, legislative histories, slip laws
  - Do not use for commentaries and critical works; class with the subject in 342–347 without further subdivision
  - See Manual at 300–330, 355–390 vs. 342–347, 352–354*
- 0263 Laws and regulations
  - Do not use for commentaries and criticism; class with the subject in 342–347 without further subdivision
- 02632 Individual and collected laws
  - Including codes
- 02636 Administrative regulations
  - Collections and individual regulations
- 02638 Guides to laws and regulations
  - Digests, citators, checklists, tables, indexes

(continued)

> **342–347 Branches of law (continued)**

- 0264 Cases  
Do not use for casebooks, for popular works; class with the subject in 342–347 without further subdivision
- 02642 Reports
- 02643 Court decisions  
Class here official court decisions  
Do not use for treatises on court decisions and popular treatment of cases; class with the subject in 342–347 without further subdivision
- 02646 Decisions (Rulings) of regulatory agencies
- 02648 Guides to cases  
Including digests, citators, checklists, tables, indexes, loose-leaf services  
Class here guides to laws, regulations, cases  
*For guides to laws and regulations, see 02638*
- 0265 Advisory opinions of attorneys-general (ministers of justice)
- 0269 Courts and procedure  
Including administrative courts, regulatory agencies; practice, rules, form books, legal costs and fees  
(Option: Class courts and procedure in specific fields in 347)
- 03–05 Standard subdivisions
- 06 Organizations and management  
Notation 06 from Table 1 as modified below  
Class regulation of associations engaged in a specific type of enterprise with the enterprise in 343.076–343.078, e.g., regulation of law partnerships 343.07834; class organization of associations engaged in specific types of enterprises with the kind of association in 346.06, e.g., laws for forming a law partnership 346.0682
- 0601 International organizations  
Law limited to a specific regional intergovernmental organization is classed under the area of the organization before indicating the subject of a branch of law, e.g., economic law of European Union 343.2407. Further instructions are given under 342–349
- 07–08 Standard subdivisions
- 09 History, geographic treatment, biography
- [0917] Socioeconomic regions  
Law limited to a specific socioeconomic region is classed under the region before indicating the subject of a branch of law, e.g., railroad law in developing countries 343.124095 (*not* 343.095091724)

(continued)

> **342–347 Branches of law (continued)**

093–099 Specific localities

Limited to application of law of a specific jurisdiction to a limited area within that jurisdiction

Law limited to a specific jurisdiction or area is classed under the jurisdiction before indicating the subject of a branch of law, e.g., railroad law of Germany 343.43095 (*not* 343.0950943). Once the jurisdiction has been specified, notation 093–099 may be added for application of law of that jurisdiction to a limited area within the jurisdiction, e.g., application of German railroad law in Bavaria 343.4309509433

*See Manual at 342–349*

Class general laws, regulations, cases in 348; class comprehensive works in 340

*For a specific subject in law of nations, see the subject in 341, e.g., disarmament law 341.73*

*See Manual at 340, 342–347 vs. 340.56; also at 340, 342–347 vs. 340.57*

(Option: Class the law of a specific subject with the subject, plus notation 026 from Table 1, e.g., law of education 370.26, *not* 344.07)

**342 Constitutional and administrative law**

Standard subdivisions are added for constitutional and administrative law together, for constitutional law alone

Class here comprehensive works on public law

*For law of nations, see 341. For constitutional law on a specific subject not provided for here, see the subject in 343–347, e.g., criminal law 345*

(If option A under 342–349 is chosen, class here comprehensive works on the law of preferred jurisdiction, e.g., [assuming Australia to be preferred jurisdiction] comprehensive works on law of Australia 342, on law of Tasmania 342.6. Class specific branches of the law of preferred jurisdiction in 342–348

(If option B under 342–349 is chosen, class here comparative law and law without jurisdiction by adding to base number 342 the numbers following 34 in 342–348, but omitting the first 0 after decimal point, e.g., comparative criminal procedure 342.55 [*not* 342.505])

**SUMMARY**

342.001–.009	Standard subdivisions; laws, regulations, cases, procedure, courts
.02	Basic instruments of government
.03	Revision and amendment of basic instruments of government
.04	Structure, powers, functions of government
.05	Legislative branch of government
.06	Executive branch of government
.07	Election law
.08	Jurisdiction over persons
.09	Local government
.1	Socioeconomic regions
.2	Regional intergovernmental organizations
.3–.9	Specific jurisdictions and areas

- .001-.008      Standard subdivisions  
                     Notation from Table 1 as modified under 342-347, e.g., cases 342.00264
- .009            History, geographic treatment, biography
- [.009 17]            Socioeconomic regions  
                     Do not use; class in 342.1
- [.009 3-.009 9]      Specific continents, countries, localities  
                     Do not use; class in 342.3-342.9
- .02            \*Basic instruments of government  
                     Class here constitutions, municipal charters  
                     *For revision and amendment, see 342.03. For constitutional provisions dealing with a specific subject, see the subject in 342-347, e.g., individual rights 342.085*
- [.020 9]            History, geographic treatment, biography  
                     Do not use; class in 342.029
- .023            Texts of constitutions  
                     Including texts of proposed constitutions
- .024            Sources  
                     Class commentary on source documents without text in 342.0292
- .024 2            Convention proceedings  
                     Including debates, journals, minutes
- .024 3            Other convention documents  
                     Including enabling acts, memoranda, proposals, rules
- .029            Constitutional history  
                     *For sources, see 342.024*
- .029 2            History of conventions  
                     Class proceedings and documents of conventions in 342.024; class constitutional conventions dealing with revision and amendment of constitutions in 342.03
- .03            Revision and amendment of basic instruments of government  
                     Class here constitutional reform  
                     Class proposals for and formation of new constitutions in 342.02  
                     *For amendments dealing with a specific subject, see the subject in 342-347, e.g., an amendment establishing an income tax 343.052*
- [.030 9]            History, geographic treatment, biography  
                     Do not use; class in 342.039

\*Add as instructed under 342-347

- .032        \*Amendment procedure
- .035        Proposed and pending amendments  
               Class here collected texts of constitutional amendments  
               Class texts of proposed constitutions in 342.023
- .039        History of amendments  
               Including defeated amendments not limited to a specific subject
- .04         \*Structure, powers, functions of government  
               Class government corporations in 346.067
- .041        \*Powers and functions of government  
               *For jurisdiction over persons, see 342.08*
- .041 2      \*Conduct of relations with foreign governments  
               Including military assistance and missions; power to regulate foreign  
               diplomatic and consular personnel, to wage war; comprehensive  
               works on power to acquire territory from or cede it to other  
               jurisdictions  
               Class military and defense law in 343.012–343.019  
               *For municipal annexation, see 342.0413*  
               *See also 342.0418 for police powers; also 342.062 for war and*  
               *emergency powers of executives*
- .041 3      \*Jurisdiction over territory, dependencies, colonies  
               Including municipal annexation  
               Class comprehensive works on the power to acquire territory from or  
               cede it to other jurisdictions in 342.0412
- .041 8      \*Police powers  
               Powers to exercise control in interests of general security, health,  
               safety, morals, welfare  
               Class individual rights in 342.085. Class the exercise of a specific  
               police power with the power in 342–347, e.g., exclusion of  
               undesirable aliens 342.082, regulation of public health 344.04  
               *See also 342.062 for war and emergency powers of executives*
- .042        \*Levels of government  
               Including federal structure; relations between levels, relations among  
               subordinate units of same level; domestic conflict of laws; home rule;  
               interstate compacts  
               Class levels of government with respect to a specific subject with the  
               subject in 342–347, e.g., interstate compacts on seaports and their  
               facilities 343.0967  
               *See also 342.09 for local governments*

\*Add as instructed under 342–347

- .044      \*Branches of government  
             Including distribution and separation of powers, relations between  
             branches  
             Class relations of a specific branch of government with government  
             institutions at a different level in 342.042  
             *For legislative branch, see 342.05; for executive branch, see 342.06;  
             for judicial branch, see 347*
- .05        \*Legislative branch of government  
             Class here lobbying  
             Class relations of legislative branch with government institutions at a  
             different level in 342.042
- .052      \*Duties, functions, powers
- .053      \*Basis of representation  
             Including apportionment, districting
- .055      \*Membership  
             Including qualifications, terms of office
- .057      \*Organization and procedure  
             *For preliminary materials, see 348.01*
- .06        \*Executive branch of government  
             Class here administrative law  
             Class relations of executive branch with governmental institutions at a  
             different level in 342.042. Class standards set by an agency in connection  
             with a specific subject with the subject outside of law, e.g., standards for  
             safety in health care facilities 363.1562  
             *For administrative law on a specific subject, see the subject in 342–347,  
             e.g., air traffic control 343.0976*
- .062      \*Chief and deputy chief executives  
             Including impeachment; war and emergency powers  
             Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .062 8     \*Martial law
- .064      \*Executive departments (Ministries) and agencies  
             Class departments and agencies dealing with a specific subject with the  
             subject in 342–347, e.g., revenue agencies 343.036
- .066      \*Administrative procedure  
             Class maintenance of privacy in 342.0858  
             *See also 344.0531 for information control laws*

\*Add as instructed under 342–347

- .066 2           \*Public records  
                   Class here privacy of government records, right to information,  
                   sunshine laws
- .066 4           \*Administrative courts and regulatory agencies  
                   Including hearing examiners, provisional courts  
                   Class executive function of administering and enforcing the law in  
                   351–354. Class administrative courts, regulatory agencies dealing  
                   with a specific subject with the subject in 342–347, plus notation 0269  
                   from table under 342–347, e.g., agencies regulating civil aeronautics  
                   343.0970269
- .066 7           \*Ombudsmen
- .068            \*Officials and employees  
                   Including impeachment  
                   Class here civil service  
                   Class labor-management bargaining in government service in  
                   344.018904135  
                   *For chief and deputy chief executives, see 342.062; for official and*  
                   *employees involved with administrative procedure, see 342.066*
- .068 4           \*Employee rights and discipline  
                   Including conflict of interest, loyalty oaths, political activity of  
                   employees, security measures
- .068 6           \*Conditions of employment  
                   Including compensation, fringe benefits, leave, retirement benefits,  
                   tenure, training
- .07             \*Election law  
                   Class here manuals of election procedures that discuss laws or administrative  
                   regulations  
                   Class manuals of election procedures limited to political aspects in 324.6;  
                   class apportionment, districting in 342.053  
                   *For electing legislators, see 342.055; for electing executives, see 342.068*
- .072            \*Voting rights and qualifications for voting  
                   Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .075            \*Voting procedures  
                   Including absentee voting, voter registration
- .078            \*Campaign practices  
                   Including finance

- .08      \*Jurisdiction over persons  
           Including census law
- .082     \*Entrance to and exit from national domain  
           Including immigration, passports, visas, emigration  
           Class entry and exit of diplomatic and consular personnel in 342.0412
- .083     \*Citizenship and nationality  
           Including right of asylum, status of aliens, jurisdiction over stateless persons and refugees  
           Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
           Class liability of states to aliens in 341.26; class status of enemy aliens in 341.67; class status of diplomatic and consular personnel in 342.0412
- .084     \*Abortion  
           Class here comprehensive works  
           *For rights of fetuses, see 342.085; for rights of women, see 342.0878; for medical aspects, see 344.04192; for abortion for population control, see 344.048; for abortion control, see 344.0546; for criminal abortion, see 345.0285*
- .085     \*Rights and activities of individuals  
           Including individual rights of military personnel, rights of fetuses  
           Class here civil rights; comprehensive works on individual rights  
           Class constitutional rights of aliens in 342.083; class constitutional rights of specific social groups in 342.087; class comprehensive works on abortion in 342.084; class interdisciplinary works on civil rights, on individual rights in 323  
           *For a specific right not provided for here, see the right, e.g., right to vote 342.072, right to education 344.079*  
           *See Manual at 342.085 vs. 341.48*
- .085 2   \*Religious activities
- .085 3   \*Freedom of information and opinion  
           Including freedom of speech, freedom of the press  
           Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
           Class fairness doctrine in 343.09945; class censorship and information control laws in 344.0531; class relation of freedom of the press to the judicial process in 347.05  
           *For freedom of political opinion, see 342.0854; for academic freedom, see 344.078*  
           *See also 342.0662 for access to public records; also 344.0547 for obscenity and pornography laws*

\*Add as instructed under 342–347

- .085 4           \*Political activity  
                   Including civil disobedience and dissent, rights of assembly and  
                   petition  
                   Class election law in 342.07  
                   *For political activity of government employees, see 342.0684*
- .085 8           \*Maintenance of privacy  
                   Class privacy of government records in 342.0662
- .087            \*Groups of people  
                   Including slaves  
                   Class here affirmative action, legal status  
                   *For aliens, displaced persons, refugees, see 342.083*  
                   *See also 342.085 for rights and activities of individuals*
- [.087 08]       Groups of people  
                   Do not use; class in 342.087
- .087 2           \*Indigenous and aboriginal peoples  
                   Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Class women in 342.0878
- .087 3           \*Ethnic and national groups  
                   Class indigenous and aboriginal peoples of specific ethnic and  
                   national groups in 342.0872; class women of specific ethnic and  
                   national groups in 342.0878
- .087 7           \*Age groups  
                   Class women regardless of age group in 342.0878
- .087 72         \*Young people  
                   Class here children
- .087 74         \*People in late adulthood
- .087 8           \*Women  
                   Including abortion rights  
                   Class comprehensive works on abortion in 342.084
- .088            \*Government liability  
                   Including liability for abuse of power, corruption, denial of civil rights  
                   Class liability in a specific field with the field in 342-347, e.g., liability  
                   of military units 343.013, liability of schools, of school officials, of  
                   school districts 344.075

.09 \*Local government

Including municipal corporations, municipal government

Class home rule in 342.042; class specific local governments in 342.3–342.9. Class a specific aspect of local government with the aspect in 342–347, e.g., local real estate taxation 343.054

**.1 Socioeconomic regions**

Add to base number 342.1 the numbers following —17 in notation 171–177 from Table 2, e.g., constitutional and administrative law of developing countries 342.124; then to the result add as follows:

001–009 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 342–347

02–09 Topics of constitutional and administrative law

Add the numbers following 342 in 342.02–342.09, e.g., election law of developing countries 342.12407, administrative regulations for elections in developing countries 342.1240702636

Class socioeconomic regions of a specific regional intergovernmental organization in 342.2; class socioeconomic regions of a specific jurisdiction or area in 342.3–342.9

**.2 Regional intergovernmental organizations**

Class here relationship between the organization's law and national law of member countries

Add to base number 342.2 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., harmonization of national constitutional and administrative law of European Union countries 342.24; then to the result add as follows:

001–009 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 342–347

02–09 Topics of constitutional and administrative law

Add the numbers following 342 in 342.02–342.09, e.g., harmonization of national citizenship law of European Union countries 342.24083, harmonization of administrative regulations of citizenship law of European Union countries 342.2408302636

Class relationship of organization's law and national law of a specific member country with the national law in 342.3–342.9, e.g., effect of European Union laws on national constitutional and administrative law of Germany 342.43

*See Manual at 342–349*

.24 Regional intergovernmental organizations of Europe

Number built according to instructions under 342.2

- .240 2                    Basic instruments of government
- Class founding treaties, basic legal instruments of European Union in 341.2422
- Class here effect of European Union law on and harmonization of national constitutions of European Union countries
- Number built according to instructions under 342.2
- .240 8                    Jurisdiction over persons
- Number built according to instructions under 342.2
- Class here European Union law itself, effect of European Union law on and harmonization of national laws of European Union countries
- .240 85                  Rights and activities of individuals
- Number built according to instructions under 342.2
- .240 850 261            Treaties
- Number built according to instructions under 342.2
- Class here Charter of Fundamental Rights of the European Union, European Convention on Human Rights
- .240 850 269            Courts and procedure
- Number built according to instructions under 342.2
- Class here European Court of Human Rights

### **.3–9    Specific jurisdictions and areas**

Add to base number 342 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., constitutional and administrative law of Australia 342.94, of New South Wales 342.944, of African states 342.6; then to the result add as follows:

001–009    Standard subdivisions

                  Notation from Table 1 as modified under 342–347

02–09    Topics of constitutional and administrative law

                  Add the numbers following 342 in 342.02–342.09, e.g., election law of Australia 342.9407, of New South Wales 342.94407, of African states 342.607, administrative regulations for elections in Australia 342.940702636

*For regional intergovernmental organizations, relationship between the organization's laws and national laws of all member states, see 342.2*

*See Manual at 342–349*

## **343    Military, defense, public property, public finance, tax, commerce (trade), industrial law**

(If option B under 342–349 is chosen, class here law of socioeconomic regions and of regional intergovernmental organizations; however, for law of jurisdictions in the ancient world, see 340.53)



.011 5           \*Health care and rehabilitation for veterans  
                   Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Class disability compensation in 343.0116

.011 6           \*Disability compensation for veterans

>                   343.012–343.019 Military and defense law

Class comprehensive works in 343.01. Class a specific aspect of military or defense law not provided for here with the aspect in 342–347, e.g., regulation of industry 343.07

.012            \*Manpower procurement  
                   Including voluntary enlistment  
                   Class reserve officers' training corps and military academies in 344.0769  
                   *For manpower procurement of a specific service other than the army in general, see the service in 343.015–343.019, e.g., manpower procurement of mercenary troops 343.015354, naval manpower procurement 343.01922*

.012 2          \*Draft and selective service  
                   Including draft resistance  
                   Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Class individual rights of military personnel in 342.085; class treatment of conscientious objectors in 343.0126

.012 6          \*Conscientious objectors

.013            \*Military life, customs, resources  
                   Including rank, pay, promotion, demotion, leave, allowances, living conditions  
                   Class individual rights of military personnel in 342.085  
                   *For civilian employees of military services, see 342.068; for manpower procurement, see 343.012; for discipline and conduct, see 343.014. For military life, customs, resources of a specific service other than the army in general, see the service in 343.015–343.019, e.g., military resources of mercenary troops 343.015354, naval military resources 343.0192*

.014            \*Discipline and conduct  
                   Including desertion  
                   Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   *For discipline and conduct of a specific service other than the army in general, see the service in 343.015–343.019, e.g., discipline and conduct of mercenary troops 343.015354, naval discipline and conduct 343.01913*

- [.014 026 9] Courts and procedure  
Do not use; class in 343.0143
- .014 3 \*Military courts and procedure  
Including procedural rights of military personnel in military courts  
Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
Class international war crime trials in 341.69; class procedural rights in nonmilitary courts in 347.05  
*See also 342.085 for general rights of military personnel*
- .014 6 \*Military penology  
*For military prisons, see 344.03548*
- .015–.019 Specific aspects of military and defense law  
Add to base number 343.01 the numbers following 35 in 355–359, e.g., organization 343.0153, training 343.0155, military installations and bases 343.0157, naval law 343.019; then add further as instructed under 342–347, e.g., cases involving naval law 343.0190264; however, for military assistance to foreign nations, see 342.0412; for manpower procurement, see 343.012; for military life, customs, resources, see 343.013; for discipline and conduct, see 343.014
- .02 \*Law of public property
- .023 \*Personal property
- .025 \*Real property
- .025 2 \*Acquisition  
Including nationalization of alien property, condemnation, eminent domain (expropriation); comprehensive works on nationalization  
*For acquisition of territory from other jurisdictions, see 342.0412*
- .025 3 \*Disposal  
*See also 342.0412 for cession of territory to other jurisdictions*
- .025 6 \*Control and use  
Including construction and maintenance of government buildings  
Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
Class regulation of construction of government buildings in 343.07869051; class comprehensive works on control and use of public and private real property, control of natural resources in 346.044
- .03 \*Law of public finance  
Class here international financial law  
*For banks, see 346.082; for government securities, see 346.0922*

\*Add as instructed under 342–347

- .032           \*Monetary law  
                   Including coinage  
                   Class here currency  
                   Class comprehensive works on commemorative medals in 344.091; class  
                   comprehensive works on central banks in 346.0821
- .032 1–.032 6       Specific aspects of monetary law  
                   Add to base number 343.032 the numbers following 332.4 in  
                   332.41–332.46, e.g., foreign exchange 343.0325, monetary policy  
                   343.0326; then add further as instructed under 342–347, e.g., cases  
                   involving foreign exchange 343.03250264
- .034           \*Budgeting and expenditure  
                   Including fiscal policy, accounting and auditing, economic stabilization,  
                   grants-in-aid, intergovernmental financial relations, revenue sharing  
                   Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Class revenue law, revenue sharing as revenue in 343.036; class  
                   budgets and their preparation in 352.48. Class bills for authorization of  
                   expenditure for a specific purpose with the purpose in 342–347, e.g.,  
                   price supports 343.0742  
                   *See also 343.083 for regulation of prices; also 346.063 for public  
                   accounting*
- .036           \*Revenue law  
                   *For public borrowing and debt, see 343.037; for tax law, see 343.04*
- .037           \*Public borrowing and debt  
                   Including government bankruptcy and insolvency
- .04            \*Tax law  
                   Class here internal revenue law; tax auditing, avoidance, planning  
                   Class fiscal policy in 343.034; class tax planning applied to a specific  
                   kind of tax in 343.05–343.06; class tax evasion in 345.0233; class  
                   interdisciplinary works on taxes in 336.2  
                   *For specific kinds of taxes, see 343.05–343.06*  
                   *See Manual at 343.04–343.06 vs. 336.2, 352.44*
- .042           \*Tax assessment and collection  
                   Including tax accounting, tax appeals  
                   Class assessment and collection of taxes at specific levels in  
                   343.043; class assessment and collection of specific kinds of taxes in  
                   343.05–343.06

## .043 Taxes by level

National, state and provincial, local

Class here only comprehensive works and comparisons, e.g., national taxes in North America 343.7043, state taxes in the United States 343.73043, local taxes of the jurisdictions of Pennsylvania 343.748043

Class a specific kind of tax regardless of level with the kind in 343.05–343.06, e.g., income tax law of Michigan 343.774052

Taxes of a specific jurisdiction are classed in 343.3–343.9, plus notation 04 from 343.04, e.g., United States taxes 343.7304

## &gt; 343.05–343.06 Specific kinds of taxes

Class comprehensive works in 343.04

*See Manual at 343.04–343.06 vs. 336.2, 352.44*

## .05 Kinds of taxes by base

**SUMMARY**

<b>343.052</b>	<b>Income tax</b>
.053	Estate, inheritance, gift taxes
.054	Property taxes
.055	Excise and turnover taxes
.056	Customs taxes (Tariff)
.057	Stamp taxes

## .052 \*Income tax

Class internal revenue law in 343.04

.052 04 Special topics of income tax

.052 042 \*Assessment of income taxes

.052 044 \*Preparation of returns

.052 3 \*Provisions that allow tax avoidance

.052 304 \*Tax incentives

.052 32 \*Charitable deductions

.052 33 \*Individual retirement accounts

Including Keogh plans

.052 34 \*Depreciation and depletion allowances

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.052 36 \*Business losses

Including bad debts

.052 37 \*Tax credits

\*Add as instructed under 342–347

- .052 38           \*Tax shelters
- .052 4           Taxes on specific types of income  
                   Including proceeds from insurance, retirement income  
                   Class reductions in taxes on specific types of income in 343.0523
- .052 42           \*Wages  
                   Including payroll taxes, social security taxes
- .052 424           \*Withholding tax
- .052 44           \*Profits
- .052 45           \*Capital gains
- .052 46           \*Investment income  
                   Including income from bonds, deposits, stocks  
                   *For taxes on capital gains, see 343.05245; for taxes on real estate transactions, see 343.0546*
- .052 48           \*Foreign income  
                   Class taxes on specific types of foreign income in  
                   343.05242–343.05246
- .052 6           Income taxes by incidence  
                   Including taxes on citizens resident in foreign countries, on  
                   self-employed persons  
                   Class here double taxation  
                   Add to base number 343.0526 the numbers following 343.06 in  
                   343.062–343.068, e.g., corporation income taxes 343.05267; then add  
                   further as instructed under 342–347, e.g., cases involving corporation  
                   income taxes 343.052670264; however, for reduction in taxation  
                   regardless of incidence, see 343.0523; for taxes on specific types of  
                   income regardless of incidence, see 343.0524
- .053            \*Estate, inheritance, gift taxes  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for estate, inheritance, gift taxes  
                   together; for estate taxes alone; for inheritance taxes alone  
                   Class here death duties, death tax, estate planning  
                   Subdivisions are added for estate, inheritance, gift taxes together; for  
                   estate taxes alone; for inheritance taxes alone  
                   *For taxes on fiduciary trusts, see 343.05264*
- .053 5           \*Gift taxes
- .054            \*Property taxes  
                   Real and personal property
- .054 2           \*Assessment

\*Add as instructed under 342–347

- .054 3           \*Exemptions
- .054 6           \*Taxes on real estate transactions  
                   Including real estate sales tax  
                   Class a specific aspect of real estate tax not provided for here with the  
                   aspect in 342–347, e.g., tax assessment 343.0542
- .055            \*Excise and turnover taxes  
                   Including luxury, severance, transfer, use, value-added taxes; user fees  
                   *For taxes on real estate transactions, see 343.0546*
- .055 2           \*Sales taxes  
                   Class sales taxes on specific commodities and services in 343.0558
- .055 3           \*Excise taxes  
                   Class excise taxes on specific commodities and services in 343.0558
- .055 8           Taxes on specific commodities and services  
                   Class comprehensive works on sales taxes in 343.0552; class  
                   comprehensive works on excise taxes in 343.0553
- [.055 801–.055 809]   Standard subdivisions  
                   Do not use; class in 343.05501–343.05509
- .055 81–.055 85   Subdivisions for taxes on specific commodities and services  
                   Add to base number 343.0558 the numbers following 381.4 in  
                   381.41–381.45, e.g., taxes on products of secondary industries  
                   343.05585, on cigarettes 343.0558567973; then add further as  
                   instructed under 342–347, e.g., cases involving taxes on cigarettes  
                   343.0558679730264
- .056            \*Customs taxes (Tariff)  
                   Including custom taxes (tariff) on specific commodities
- .057            \*Stamp taxes
- .06            Kinds of taxes by incidence  
                   Class taxes on specific bases regardless of incidence in 343.05
- .062            \*Taxes on individuals  
                   Class here poll tax
- .064            \*Taxes on fiduciary trusts  
                   Including pension trusts
- .066            \*Taxes on organizations  
                   Class here tax-exempt organizations  
                   *For taxes on corporations, see 343.067*

\*Add as instructed under 342–347

- .066 2           \*Partnerships
- .066 8           \*Charitable foundations and trusts
- Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .067            \*Taxes on corporations
- .068            \*Taxes on business enterprises
- Including small business taxes
- Class taxes on individuals engaged in business in 343.062; class taxes on specific types of business organizations in 343.066
- .07             \*Regulation of economic activity
- Including daylight saving time, nationalization of industry, rationing
- Class here international economic law, international economic organizations; comprehensive works on regulation of small business, licensing, industry and commerce
- Class regulation of the practice of specific occupations in 344.01; class public health in 344.04; class safety measures in 344.047; class regulation of organizations in 346.06
- For regulation of commerce, see 343.08*
- See also 346 for impact of economic activity upon private persons and corporate bodies*

### SUMMARY

- |         |  |
|---------|--|
| 343.071 | <b>Consumer protection</b>               |
| .072    | <b>Unfair practices</b>                  |
| .074    | <b>Economic assistance</b>               |
| .075    | <b>Production controls</b>               |
| .076    | <b>Agricultural industries</b>           |
| .077    | <b>Mineral industries</b>                |
| .078    | <b>Secondary industries and services</b> |

- .071            \*Consumer protection
- Class a specific aspect of consumer protection with the aspect in 342–347, e.g., protection against misleading advertising 343.082

> 343.072–343.075 Specific aspects of regulation

Class regulation of specific industries and services regardless of aspect in 343.076–343.078; class regulation of public utilities regardless of aspect in 343.09; class comprehensive works in 343.07. Class a specific aspect of industrial regulation not provided for here with the aspect in 342–347, e.g., wages 344.0121

- .072            \*Unfair practices
- Including monopoly, industrial espionage

- .072 1           \*Antitrust law  
                   Class here competition law  
                   *For restraint of trade, see 343.0723; for price fixing and  
                   discrimination, see 343.0725*
- .072 3           \*Restraint of trade
- .072 5           \*Price fixing and discrimination  
                   Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .074            \*Economic assistance  
                   Class here technology transfer  
                   Class assistance to specific industries and services in 343.076–343.078
- 
- >           343.074 2–343.074 6 Domestic economic assistance  
                   Class comprehensive works in 343.074
- .074 2           Specific kinds of assistance  
                   Including loans, mortgage insurance, price supports, subsidies
- .074 5           \*Rural development  
                   Class specific kinds of assistance to rural areas in 343.0742; class  
                   assistance to agriculture in 343.076
- .074 6           \*Regional development  
                   Class specific kinds of assistance in 343.0742; class development of  
                   rural regions in 343.0745
- .074 8           \*Foreign economic assistance (Foreign aid)
- .075            \*Production controls  
                   Including standardization, weights and measures, packaging (containers)  
                   *See also 344.042 for product control*

- 
- >           343.076–343.078 Regulation of specific industries and services  
                   Class here regulating the production of and commerce in specific goods and  
                   services  
                   Class comprehensive works in 343.07  
                   *For commerce in specific goods and services, see 343.085; for public  
                   utilities, see 343.09; for regulation of labor of specific occupations, see  
                   344.0176*  
                   *See also 346.07 for commercial law*

- .076            \*Agricultural industries  
                  Including agricultural assistance  
                  Class here comprehensive works on primary industries  
                  *For mineral industries, see 343.077*  
                  *See also 344.049 for veterinary public health*
- .076 1           Specific production controls  
                  Including acreage allotments, price supports, production quotas  
                  Class controls of specific commodities in 343.0763–343.0769
- .076 3–.076 9    Specific commodities  
                  Add to base number 343.076 the numbers following 63 in 633–639, e.g., products of fishing 343.07692, products of whaling 343.076928, products of sealing 343.076929, products of fishery of invertebrates 343.07694, forest products 343.076498; then add further as instructed under 342–347, e.g., cases involving forest products 343.0764980264
- .077            \*Mineral industries  
                  *See also 346.043 for mineral rights; also 346.04685 for conservation of minerals*
- .077 2           \*Oil, oil shales, tar sands, natural gas
- .077 5           \*Mining of coal and nonfuel minerals
- .077 52          \*Coal
- .077 55          \*Nonfuel minerals
- .078            Secondary industries and services  
                  *See Manual at 343.078 vs. 343.08*
- .078 000 1–.078 000 9    Standard subdivisions  
                  Notation from Table 1 as modified under 342–347, e.g., cases 343.078000264
- .078 001–.078 999    Specific secondary industries and services  
                  Add to base number 343.078 notation 001–999, e.g., regulation of tourist industry 343.07891, regulation of shipbuilding industry 343.07862382; then add further as instructed under 342–347, e.g., cases involving shipbuilding industry 343.078623820264; however, for regulation of advertising industry, see 343.082; for regulation of marketing, see 343.08; for regulation of closely regulated industries, such as transportation and communication, see 343.09; for regulation of health services, see 344.0321

\*Add as instructed under 342–347

- .08      \*Regulation of commerce (trade)
- Including guarantees, warranties
- Class here commodity exchanges, marketing, domestic trade, exchange transactions
- Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., retail trade of agricultural commodities 343.0851 (*not* 343.0811):
- |   |         |
|---|---------|
| International commerce (Foreign trade)          | 343.087 |
| Specific commodities                            | 343.085 |
| Retail and wholesale trade, interstate commerce | 343.081 |
| Prices  | 343.083 |
| Advertising and labeling                        | 343.082 |
- Class regulation of real estate business in 346.0437; class law of sale in 346.072; class regulation of banks in 346.082; class regulation of insurance companies and agencies in 346.086; class regulation of organizations engaged in marketing securities in 346.0926; class comprehensive works on regulation of industry and trade in 343.07
- See Manual at 343.078 vs. 343.08*
- .081      Retail and wholesale trade, interstate commerce
- [.081 01–.081 09]      Standard subdivisions
- Do not use; class in 343.0801–343.0809
- .081 1      \*Retail trade
- Including auctions
- Class here wholesale trade through specific marketing channels [*formerly* 343.0812], marketing channels
- .081 14      Retail channels by merchandising pattern
- [.081 140 1–.081 140 9]      Standard subdivisions
- Do not use; class in 343.081101–343.081109
- .081 142      \*Electronic commerce; mail-order, telephone-order, television shopping
- Class here online shopping, teleshopping
- Subdivisions are added for electronic commerce, mail-order, telephone-order, television shopping together; for electronic commerce alone
- Class online auctions in 343.0811
- [.081 142 028 5]      Computer applications
- Do not use; class in 343.081142

\*Add as instructed under 342–347

- .081 142 8                   \*Mail-order, telephone-order, television shopping  
                                   Class here catalog shopping  
                                   Subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- .081 2                   \*Wholesale trade  
                                   Wholesale trade through specific marketing channels relocated to  
                                   343.0811
- .081 5                   \*Interstate commerce  
                                   Class interstate retail commerce in 343.0811; class interstate  
                                   wholesale commerce in 343.0812
- .082                   \*Advertising and labeling  
                                   Class restrictions on posting advertisements in 346.045
- .083                   \*Prices  
                                   Class price supports in 343.0742; class price supports for a specific  
                                   industry or service in 343.076–343.078
- [.084]                  Marketing  
                                   Number discontinued; class in 343.08
- .085                   Specific commodities  
                                   Class international commerce of a specific commodity in  
                                   343.0871–343.0875
- [.085 01–.085 09]       Standard subdivisions  
                                   Do not use; class in 343.0801–343.0809
- .085 1–.085 5       Subdivisions for specific commodities  
                                   Class here domestic trade of specific commodities  
                                   Add to base number 343.085 the numbers following 381.4 in  
                                   381.41–381.45, e.g., agricultural commodities 343.0851, rice  
                                   343.0851318; then add further as instructed under 342–347, e.g.,  
                                   cases involving rice 343.08513180264
- .087                   \*International commerce (Foreign trade)  
                                   Class here combined treatment of trade, tariffs, and general shipping  
                                   *For tariffs, see 343.056; for shipping, see 343.096*
- .087 1–.087 5       Specific commodities  
                                   Add to base number 343.087 the numbers following 381.4 in  
                                   381.41–381.45, e.g., agricultural commodities 343.0871, rice  
                                   343.0871318; then add further as instructed under 342–347, e.g.,  
                                   cases involving rice 343.08713180264
- .087 7                   \*Imports  
                                   Class imports of specific commodities in 343.0871–343.0875

\*Add as instructed under 342–347

- .087 8           \*Exports  
                   Class exports of specific commodities in 343.0871–343.0875
- .09           \*Control of public utilities

### SUMMARY

- 343.091           **General considerations of control of public utilities**  
 .092           **Water and power supply**  
 .093           **Transportation**  
 .094           **Road transportation**  
 .095           **Railroad transportation**  
 .096           **Water transportation**  
 .097           **Air transportation and space transportation**  
 .098           **Local transportation**  
 .099           **Communications**
- .091           \*General considerations of control of public utilities  
                   Including rates, operations, facilities, services  
                   Class general considerations applied to specific utilities in  
                   343.092–343.099
- .092           \*Water and power supply  
                   Subdivisions are added for water and power supply together, for power  
                   supply alone
- .092 4           \*Water
- .092 5           \*Nuclear energy
- .092 6           \*Oil and gas  
                   Class extraction in 343.0772; class processing in  
                   343.0786655–343.0786657
- .092 7           \*Coal  
                   Class extraction in 343.07752; class processing in 343.07866262
- .092 8           \*Solar energy
- .092 9           \*Electric power  
                   Including cogeneration of heat and electricity  
                   Class a specific source of electric power with the source in 342–347,  
                   e.g., nuclear power 343.0925
- .093           \*Transportation  
                   Class here comprehensive works on ground transportation, on the law of  
                   carriers  
                   Class transportation insurance in 346.0862  
                   *For specific kinds of transportation and ground transportation, see*  
                   343.094–343.098

\*Add as instructed under 342–347

- .093 2           \*Freight services  
                   Including transportation of specific goods
- .093 22           \*Hazardous materials
- .093 3           \*Passenger services  
                   Class here mass transportation
- .093 8           \*Transportation safety  
                   Class private law of transportation accidents in 346.0322
- .093 9           \*Pipeline transportation
- .093 95           \*Oil (Petroleum)
- .093 96           \*Natural gas
- .093 97           \*Coal  
                   Class here coal slurry

>           343.094–343.098 Specific kinds of transportation and ground transportation

Class comprehensive works in 343.093

*For pipeline transportation, see 343.0939*

- .094           \*Road transportation  
                   Class here highway transportation  
                   Class comprehensive works on ground transportation in 343.093  
                   *For street traffic, see 343.0982*
- .094 2           \*Roads  
                   Class here highways
- .094 4           \*Vehicles  
                   Including licensing, registration  
                   Class vehicle operation in 343.0946; class commercial vehicular services in 343.0948; class vehicle product liability in 346.038; class property laws relating to vehicles in 346.047  
                   *See also 346.043 for mobile homes*
- .094 6           \*Vehicle operation and traffic control  
                   Including drivers' licenses, speed limits, traffic signals  
                   Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Class police traffic services in 344.052332; class traffic offenses in 345.0247

\*Add as instructed under 342–347

- .094 8           \*Commercial services  
                   Class commercial vehicles in 343.0944; class operation of  
                   commercial vehicles in 343.0946
- .094 82           \*Bus
- .094 83           \*Truck
- .095            \*Railroad transportation
- .095 2            \*Stationary facilities  
                   Including signals, terminals, tracks, yards
- .095 5            \*Rolling stock  
                   Including cars, locomotives
- .095 8            \*Services  
                   Passenger, freight
- .096            \*Water transportation  
                   Including prize law  
                   Class here maritime, admiralty law  
                   Class a specific subject of maritime or admiralty law not provided for  
                   here with the subject in 342–347, e.g., maritime contracts 346.022
- 
- >            343.096 2–343.096 4 Specific kinds of water transportation  
                   Class facilities, operations, services of specific kinds of transportation in  
                   343.0965–343.0968; class comprehensive works in 343.096
- .096 2            \*Ocean transportation  
                   Class interoceanic waterways in 343.0964  
                   *See Manual at 341.45 vs. 343.0962*
- .096 4            \*Inland waterway transportation  
                   Including interoceanic canals
- 
- >            343.096 5–343.096 8 Facilities, operations, services  
                   Class comprehensive works in 343.096
- .096 5            \*Ships  
                   Including pilot's license
- .096 6            \*Navigation  
                   Class here rule of the road at sea

\*Add as instructed under 342–347

- .096 7           \*Ports  
                   Including piloting, tug services
- .096 8           \*Services  
                   Including freight, passenger services; salvage operations  
                   Class services of ports in 343.0967
- .097            \*Air transportation and space transportation  
                   Subdivisions are added for air and space transportation together, for air  
                   transportation alone

>           343.097 5–343.097 8 Air transportation

Class comprehensive works in 343.097

- .097 5           \*Aircraft  
                   Including pilot's license
- .097 6           \*Air navigation and traffic control  
                   Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .097 7           \*Airports  
                   Class here landing fields  
                   *For traffic control, see 343.0976*
- .097 8           \*Air transportation services  
                   Including freight, passenger services  
                   Class services of airports and landing fields in 343.0977
- .097 9           \*Space transportation
- .098            \*Local transportation  
                   Class police traffic services in 344.052332; class traffic offenses in  
                   345.0247  
                   *For local water transportation, see 343.096; for local air  
                   transportation, see 343.097*
- .098 1           \*Pedestrian traffic
- .098 2           \*Vehicular traffic  
                   Including parking facilities  
                   Class traffic control in 343.0946
- .098 3           \*Rail transit systems  
                   Surface, subsurface, elevated

- .099           \*Communications  
                   Class here mass media law  
                   Class censorship in 344.0531; class criminal libel in 345.0256; class libel  
                   as a tort in 346.034
- .099 2           \*Postal service  
                   Class postal offenses in 345.0236
- .099 23          \*Postal rates
- .099 25          \*Postal organization  
                   Including routes
- .099 4           \*Telecommunication  
                   Including telegraph
- .099 43          \*Telephone  
                   Class radiotelephony in 343.09945
- .099 44          \*Computer communications  
                   Class comprehensive works on computer law in 343.0999
- .099 45          \*Radio  
                   Including radiotelephony, comprehensive works on fairness  
                   doctrine  
                   Class here wireless communication  
                   *For fairness doctrine related to television, see 343.09946*
- .099 46          \*Television  
                   Including cable television
- .099 8           \*Press law  
                   Class here publishing law  
                   Class freedom of the press in 342.0853
- .099 9           \*Information storage and retrieval  
                   Class here comprehensive works on computer law  
                   *For a specific aspect of computer law, see the aspect in 342–347,  
                   e.g., invasion of privacy 342.0858*

**.1 Socioeconomic regions**

Add to base number 343.1 the numbers following —17 in notation 171–177 from Table 2, e.g., miscellaneous public law of developing countries 343.124; then to the result add as follows:

001–009 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 342–347

01–09 Topics of military, defense, public property, public finance, tax, commerce (trade), industrial law

Add the numbers following 343 in 343.01–343.09, e.g., tax law of developing countries 343.12404, administrative regulations on taxes of developing countries 343.1240402636

Class socioeconomic regions of a specific regional intergovernmental organization in 343.2; class socioeconomic regions of a specific jurisdiction or area in 343.3–343.9

(If option B under 342–349 is chosen, class here law of socioeconomic regions by adding to base number 343.1 the numbers following —17 in notation 171–177 from Table 2, e.g., law of developing countries 343.124, then adding facet indicator 0\*, notation for the branch of law, and notation for the subordinate subject in branch of law, e.g., private law of developing countries 343.12406, banking law of developing countries 343.1240682)

**.2 Regional intergovernmental organizations**

Class here relationship between the organization's law and national law of member countries

Add to base number 343.2 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., miscellaneous public law of European Union 343.24; then to the result add as follows:

001–009 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 342–347

01–09 Topics of military, defense, public property, public finance, tax, commerce (trade), industrial law

Add the numbers following 343 in 343.01–343.09, e.g., economic law of European Union 343.2407, administrative regulations of economic law of European Union 343.240702636

Class relationship of organization's law and national law of a specific member country with the national law in 343.3–343.9, e.g., effect of European Union laws on national economic law of Germany 343.43

*See Manual at 342–349*

(If option B under 342–349 is chosen, class here law of regional intergovernmental organizations by adding to base number 343.2 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., law of the European Union 343.24, then adding facet indicator 0\*, notation for the branch of law, and notation for the subordinate subject in branch of law, e.g., private law of the European Union 343.2406, banking law of the European Union 343.240682)

\*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

.240 7

Regulation of economic activity

Number built according to instructions under 343.2

Class here comprehensive works on Four Freedoms of European Union

*For a specific aspect of the Four Freedoms, see the aspect, e.g., prohibition of customs duties on goods moving from one country to another within European Union 343.24056*

**.3-9 Specific jurisdictions and areas**

Add to base number 343 notation 3-9 from Table 2, e.g., miscellaneous public law of Australia 343.94, of New South Wales 343.944, of African states 343.6; then to the result add as follows:

001-009 Standard subdivisions

01-09 Topics of military, defense, public property, public finance, tax, commerce (trade), industrial law

Add the numbers following 343 in 343.01-343.09, e.g., tax law of Australia 343.9404, of New South Wales 343.94404, of African states 343.604, administrative regulations on taxes of Australia 343.940402636

*For regional intergovernmental organizations, relationship between the organization's laws and national laws of all member states, see 343.2*

*See Manual at 342-349*

**344 Labor, social service, education, cultural law****SUMMARY**

<b>344.001-009</b>	<b>Standard subdivisions; laws, regulations, cases, procedure, courts</b>
.01	Labor
.02	Government-sponsored insurance
.03	Social service
.04	Miscellaneous social problems and services
.05	Police services, other aspects of public safety, matters concerning public morals and customs
.06	Public works
.07	Education
.08	Educational and cultural exchanges
.09	Culture and religion
.1	Socioeconomic regions
.2	Regional intergovernmental organizations
.3-.9	Specific jurisdictions and areas

.001-008 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 342-347, e.g., cases 344.00264

.009 History, geographic treatment, biography

[.009 17] Socioeconomic regions

Do not use; class in 344.1

[.009 3-.009 9] Specific continents, countries, localities

Do not use; class in 344.3-344.9

- .01        \*Labor  
             Class here social law, social legislation  
             *For social insurance, see 344.02; for public welfare, see 344.0316*
- .010 1        Philosophy and theory  
                 Including job and labor rights
- .011–.018     Specific aspects of labor  
                 Add to base number 344.01 the numbers following 331 in 331.1–331.8, e.g., child labor law 344.0131; then add further as instructed under 342–347, e.g., cases involving child labor law 344.01310264; however, for government officials and employees, see 342.068; for military personnel, see 343.013–343.019; for medical personnel, see 344.041; for certification and licensing of teachers, see 344.078
- .02        \*Government-sponsored insurance  
             Class here social insurance  
             Class comprehensive works on insurance in 346.086  
             *For a type of government-sponsored insurance not provided for here, see the type in 346.0861–346.0868, e.g., crop insurance 346.086121, bank deposit insurance 346.086854*  
             *See also 344.03 for social service law; also 343.05242 for social security taxes*  
             *See Manual at 363 vs. 344.02–344.05, 353–354*
- .021        \*Workers' compensation insurance (Workmen's compensation insurance)  
                 Class disability compensation for veterans in 343.0116
- .021 7        Occupations and industries  
                 Class disabilities and injuries in specific occupations and industries in 344.0218
- .021 8        Disabilities and injuries
- .022        \*Health and accident insurance  
                 Subdivisions are added for health and accident insurance together, for health insurance alone  
                 Class health benefits for veterans in 343.0115  
                 *For workers' compensation insurance, see 344.021*
- [.022 084 6]        Insurance for people in late adulthood  
                         Do not use; class in 344.0226
- .022 4        \*Maternity insurance
- .022 6        \*Accident and health insurance for people in late adulthood

- .023           \*Old age and survivors' insurance  
                   Class accident and health insurance for people in late adulthood in  
                   344.0226
- .024           \*Unemployment insurance
- .028           \*Insurance against crimes of violence
- .03            \*Social service  
                   *For social insurance, see 344.02; for miscellaneous social problems and  
                   services, see 344.04; for police services, other aspects of public safety,  
                   matters concerning public morals and customs, see 344.05; for public  
                   works, see 344.06; for insurance, see 346.086*  
                   *See Manual at 363 vs. 344.02–344.05, 353–354*
- .031           Specific topics of social service in general  
                   Class specific topics of a specific social problem or service in  
                   344.032–344.035
- [.031 001–.031 009]       Standard subdivisions  
                                   Do not use; class in 344.0301–344.0309
- .031 02–.031 06       Subdivisions for specific kinds of assistance in social service in  
                                   general  
                                   Add to base number 344.031 the numbers following 361 in  
                                   361.02–361.06, e.g., laws governing counseling 344.03106; then  
                                   add further as instructed under 342–347, e.g., cases involving  
                                   counseling 344.031060264
- .031 1–.031 8       Social problems and social action  
                                   Add to base number 344.031 the numbers following 361 in  
                                   361.1–361.8, e.g., laws governing charitable trusts 344.0317632;  
                                   then add further as instructed under 342–347, e.g., cases involving  
                                   charitable trusts 344.03176320264
- .032           Social welfare problems and services
- .032 01           Philosophy and theory  
                                   Notation 01 from Table 1 as modified under 342–347, e.g., sources  
                                   of law 344.032011
- .032 02           Miscellany  
                                   Notation 02 from Table 1 as modified under 342–347, e.g., cases  
                                   344.0320264
- .032 03           Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances
- .032 04           Special topics of social problems of and services to groups of people  
                                   Add to base number 344.03204 the numbers following 362.04,  
                                   e.g., social action law 344.0320425; then add further as  
                                   instructed under 342–347, e.g., cases involving social action law  
                                   344.03204250264

\*Add as instructed under 342–347



.041 \*Medical personnel and their activities

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class military medicine in 343.013; class medical institutions and their services in 344.03211–344.03216

*For control of disease, see 344.043*

.041 1 \*Medical malpractice

Class medical malpractice by a specific kind of medical personnel in 344.0412–344.0416; class medical malpractice related to a specific medical problem in 344.0419

*See also 344.03211 for malpractice by hospitals and other medical institutions*

> 344.041 2–344.041 6 Specific medical personnel and their activities

Class a specific type of medical personnel involved with specific problems in 344.0419; class comprehensive works in 344.041

.041 2 \*Physicians and their activities

Including informed consent

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.041 21 \*Malpractice

Works specifically emphasizing physicians

.041 3 \*Dentists and dentistry

Including dental assistants, dental technicians

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.041 4 \*Nurses and nursing

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.041 5 \*Midwives and midwifery

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.041 6 \*Pharmacists and pharmacy

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.041 9 Problems in medical practice

.041 92 \*Abortion

Class comprehensive works in 342.084

.041 94 \*Oversight of the human body and its parts

Including blood transfusion, organ donation, transplants

Class rights regarding frozen embryos in 346.0171

\*Add as instructed under 342–347

- .041 96           \*Human experimentation  
                  Including medical genetics
- .041 97           \*Terminal care  
                  Class here euthanasia, right to die
- .042            \*Product control  
                  Including recall of unsafe products  
                  *For motor vehicle recall, see 343.0944*
- .042 3           \*Food, drugs, cosmetics, clothing, toys
- .042 32          \*Food  
                  Including food additives
- .042 33          \*Drugs
- .042 35          \*Clothing and toys
- .042 4           \*Chemicals  
                  Class food additives, drugs, cosmetics in 344.0423
- .043            \*Control of disease  
                  Including control of carriers, quarantine, immunization measures  
                  Class control of carriers, quarantine, immunization measures of a specific  
                  disease in 344.0436–344.0438
- .043 6–.043 8   Control of specific diseases  
                  Add to base number 344.043 the numbers following 61 in  
                  616–618, e.g., control of AIDS 344.04369792; then add further as  
                  instructed under 342–347, e.g., cases involving control of AIDS  
                  344.043697920264; however, for control of mental diseases, see  
                  344.044
- .044            \*Mental health services and services to substance abusers  
                  Subdivisions are added for mental health services and services to  
                  substance abusers together, for mental health services alone  
                  Class capacity and status of persons with mental illness and disabilities in  
                  346.0138
- .044 6           \*Services to substance abusers  
                  Class here addiction
- .044 61          \*Alcoholics  
                  Class control of trade in alcoholic beverages in 344.0541

- .044 63-.044 69      Other kinds of substance abusers
- Add to base number 344.0446 the numbers following 362.29 in 362.293-362.299 for the substance only, e.g., heroin abusers 344.04463; then add further as instructed under 342-347, e.g., cases involving heroin abusers 344.044630264
- Class control of drug traffic in 344.0545
- .045                    \*Disposal of dead
- .046                    \*Environmental protection
- Class here liability for environmental damages, comprehensive works on environmental law
- Class conservation of natural resources in 346.044
- For an aspect of environmental law not provided for here, see the aspect, e.g., government control and regulation of natural resources 346.044*
- .046 2                 \*Wastes
- Including recycling
- Class here waste disposal, management
- .046 22                Kinds of waste
- Including sewage; animal, chemical, solid wastes
- Class disposal of specific kinds of wastes into specific environments in 344.04626
- .046 26                Disposal into specific environments
- Including dumping into oceans
- .046 3                 \*Pollution and noise
- .046 32                \*Pollution
- Class waste disposal in 344.0462
- For pollutants, see 344.04633; for pollution of specific environments, see 344.04634*
- .046 33                \*Pollutants
- .046 332                \*Oil
- .046 334                \*Pesticides
- .046 335                \*Asbestos
- .046 336                \*Acid rain

\*Add as instructed under 342-347

- .046 34           Pollution of specific environments  
                   Including soil pollution  
                   Class pollution of specific environments by specific pollutants in  
                   344.04633
- .046 342           \*Air pollution
- .046 343           \*Water pollution
- .046 38            \*Noise
- .046 4            \*Sanitation in places of public assembly  
                   Including hotels  
                   *For industrial sanitation, see 344.0465*
- .046 5            \*Industrial sanitation and safety
- .047            \*Safety  
                   *For transportation safety, see 343.0938; for product safety, see  
                   344.042; for industrial safety, see 344.0465; for other aspects of  
                   public safety, see 344.053*
- .047 2            \*Safety in use of hazardous materials and devices  
                   Class safety in use of hazardous materials in industry in 344.0465
- .047 6            \*Safety in recreation
- .048            \*Population control  
                   Class here birth control
- .049            \*Veterinary public health  
                   Including animal welfare, humane law
- .05            Police services, other aspects of public safety, matters concerning  
                   public morals and customs  
                   Add to base number 344.05 the numbers following 363 in 363.2–363.4,  
                   e.g., disasters 344.0534, civil defense 344.0535, fire protection 344.0537,  
                   smoking laws 344.054; then add further as instructed under 342–347,  
                   e.g., cases involving fire protection 344.05370264; however, for criminal  
                   investigation and law enforcement, see 345.052  
                   Class comprehensive works on public safety in 344.047  
                   *See Manual at 363 vs. 344.02–344.05, 353–354*
- .06            Public works  
                   Public programs not provided for elsewhere
- .060 001–.060 009       Standard subdivisions  
                   Notation from Table 1 as modified under 342–347, e.g., cases  
                   344.06000264

\*Add as instructed under 342–347

.060 01-.069 99      Specific kinds of public works  
                                  Add to base number 344.06 notation 001-999, e.g., public housing  
                                  344.063635; then add further as instructed under 342-347, e.g.,  
                                  cases involving public housing 344.0636350264

.07                    \*Education

                         Class here schools

                         Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or  
                          more subdivisions of 344.07 in the number coming last, e.g., finance of  
                          primary public schools by local governments 344.07682 (*not* 344.074,  
                          344.073, or 344.071)

*For educational exchanges, see 344.08*

>                    344.071-344.074    Kinds of education

                         Class comprehensive works in 344.07

.071                \*Public education

.072                \*Private education

.073                Education by level of government

                         National, state, local

.074                Education by level of education

                         Primary, secondary, higher, adult

.075                \*Liability of schools, of school officials, of school districts

.076                \*Finance

                         Public and private education

                         Class financial aid to students in 344.0795

.076 2             \*Financial resources

                         Including investments, natural resources, tax receipts

*For aid to education, see 344.0763*

.076 3             \*Aid to education by higher levels of government

.076 5             \*Expenditure

.076 7             Kinds of schools

                         Including trade, vocational schools

.076 8             Levels of education and schools

.076 82            \*Preschool and primary education

                         Subdivisions are added for preschool and primary education  
                          together, for primary education alone

\*Add as instructed under 342-347

- .076 83           \*Secondary education
- .076 84           \*Higher education
- .076 85           \*Adult education
- .076 9            Educational programs  
                     Including medical and public health education; schools devoted  
                     to specific educational programs, e.g., military, merchant marine  
                     academies
- .077            \*Curricula and educational materials
- .078            \*Teachers and teaching  
                     Including academic freedom  
                     Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                     Class employment rights in 344.0101
- .079            \*Students  
                     Including authority of the law over students, compulsory education, right  
                     to education
- .079 1           \*Education of specific groups of students  
                     Class here special education  
                     Class finance in 344.0769
- .079 11–.079 15    Specific groups of students  
                     Add to base number 344.0791 the numbers following 371.9 in  
                     371.91–371.95, e.g., education of students with visual impairments  
                     344.079111; then add further as instructed under 342–347, e.g.,  
                     cases involving education of students with visual impairments  
                     344.0791110264
- .079 2           \*Attendance  
                     Including school year and day, truancy
- .079 3           \*Discipline and student rights  
                     *See also 342.085 for general rights of students*
- .079 4           \*Student services  
                     Including counseling
- .079 42           \*School lunch programs
- .079 5           \*Financial aid to students  
                     Including loans, scholarships
- .079 6           \*Religion and the student  
                     Including prayer in public schools

\*Add as instructed under 342–347

- .079 8           \*Segregation and discrimination
- .08            \*Educational and cultural exchanges
- .09            \*Culture and religion
- Including information exchange, flag code, language code (the official language or languages of a specific jurisdiction)
- Subdivisions are added for culture and religion together, for culture alone
- For education, see 344.07; for educational and cultural exchanges, see 344.08*
- .091           \*Historic commemoration and patriotic events
- Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Class commemorative medals and coins that are legal tender in 343.032
- .092           \*Libraries and archives
- Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .093           \*Museums and galleries
- Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .094           \*Historic preservation
- Including archaeology, antiquities
- Class here historical buildings, monuments
- Class historic commemoration and patriotic events in 344.091
- .095           \*Science and technology
- Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .095 2           \*Astronomy and space research
- Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .095 3           \*Physics and applied physics
- Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .095 4           \*Chemistry and chemical technology
- Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .095 5           \*Geology
- Including weather control, meteorology, oceanography
- .095 7           \*Agriculture and biology
- Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .096           \*Religion



**.3-9 Specific jurisdictions and areas**

Add to base number 344 notation 3-9 from Table 2, e.g., social law of Australia 344.94, of New South Wales 344.944, of African states 344.6; then to the result add as follows:

001-009 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 342-347

01-09 Topics of labor, social service, education, cultural law

Add the numbers following 344 in 344.01-344.09, e.g., labor law of Australia 344.9401, of New South Wales 344.94401, of African states 344.601, administrative regulations on labor in Australia 344.940102636

*For regional intergovernmental organizations, relationship between the organization's laws and national laws of all member states, see 344.2*

*See Manual at 342-349*

**345 Criminal law**

Class here international criminal law

Class comprehensive works on civil and criminal procedure and courts in 347; class interdisciplinary works on criminal justice in 364. Class civil actions linked to crimes with the subject in 342-344 or 346-347, e.g., employers' civil tort liability 346.031

**SUMMARY**

**345.001-.009 Standard subdivisions; laws, regulations, cases, procedure, courts**

- .01 Criminal courts**
- .02 Criminal offenses**
- .03 Offenders**
- .04 Liability, responsibility, guilt**
- .05 Criminal procedure**
- .06 Evidence**
- .07 Trials**
- .08 Juvenile procedure and courts**
- .1 Socioeconomic regions**
- .2 Regional intergovernmental organizations**
- .3-.9 Specific jurisdictions and areas**

**.001-.008 Standard subdivisions**

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 342-347, e.g., cases 345.00264

**.009 History, geographic treatment, biography**

**[.009 17] Socioeconomic regions**

Do not use; class in 345.1

**[.009 3-.009 9] Specific continents, countries, localities**

Do not use; class in 345.3-345.9

- .01        \***Criminal courts**  
               Courts specializing in criminal cases, general and other specialized courts considered with respect to their functions in criminal cases  
               Class appellate courts hearing both civil and criminal cases in 347.03  
               *For juvenile courts, see 345.081*
- .012       **General considerations, administration and personnel, legal aid**
- .012 2        \***General considerations of criminal courts**  
                   Including criminal jurisdiction, judicial cooperation in criminal cases, judicial discretion, judicial error, judicial review, letters rogatory
- .012 3        \***Judicial administration of criminal courts**  
                   *For judges, see 345.0124; for court officials other than judges, see 345.0126*
- .012 4        \***Criminal court judges**  
                   Class judges associated with a specific criminal court with the court, e.g., judges of a juvenile court 345.081
- .012 6        **Other criminal court officials**  
                   Including coroners
- .012 62        \***Public prosecutors**  
                   Class here district attorneys
- .012 63        \***Public defenders**
- .012 7        \***Legal aid in criminal cases**  
                   Class legal aid as a welfare service, interdisciplinary works on legal aid in 362.58

.014 Criminal courts with specific kinds of jurisdiction

Add to each subdivision identified by † as follows:

- 01–09 Standard subdivisions
  - Notation from Table 1 as modified under 342–347, e.g., cases 0264
- 2 General considerations
  - Including functions, jurisdiction, organization, powers
- 3 Judicial administration
- 34 Judges
- 36 Other criminal court officials
  - Including coroners
- 362 Public prosecutors
  - Class here district attorneys
- 363 Public defenders
- 5 Procedure
  - For evidence, see 345.06; for trials, see 345.07; for juvenile procedure, see 345.08*
- 504 Special topics of criminal procedure
  - Add to 504 the numbers following 345.0504 in 345.05042–345.05044, e.g., prosecution 5042
- 52–56 Criminal investigation and law enforcement, rights of suspects
  - Add to 5 the numbers following 345.05 in 345.052–345.056, e.g., rights of suspects 56

.014 2 †Courts with original jurisdiction

Class here courts of first instance, local courts, trial courts

.014 4 †Appellate courts

Class here comprehensive works on appellate procedure in criminal cases [*formerly* 347.08]

*For appellate courts with specialized jurisdiction, see 345.0148*

.014 42 †Intermediate appellate courts

Class here courts of second instance, courts of first appeal

.014 44 †Courts of last resort (Supreme courts)

Class here courts of third instance, courts of second appeal, courts of final appeal

.014 8 †Courts with specialized jurisdiction

Class courts dealing with a specific subject with the subject in 342–347, plus notation 0269 from table under 342–347 if needed, e.g., military courts 343.0143

---

> 345.02–345.04 General considerations

Class comprehensive works in 345

†Add as instructed under 345.014

- .02        \*Criminal offenses  
               Class here contraventions, crimes, crimes without victims  
               *See Manual at 345.02 vs. 346.03*
- .023-.028    Specific crimes and classes of crime  
               Class here specific trials of specific crimes and classes of crime, e.g., trials of offenses against the person 345.025, a specific trial for murder 345.02523  
               Add to base number 345.02 the numbers following 364.1 in 364.13-364.18, e.g., terrorism 345.02317, genocide 345.0251, hijacking 345.02552, piracy 345.0264, drug traffic 345.0277, white collar crime 345.0268; then add further as instructed under 342-347, e.g., court decisions on white collar crime 345.026802643  
               Class defenses for a specific crime in 345.04
- .03        \*Offenders  
               Including juvenile delinquents  
               Class here criminals
- .04        \*Liability, responsibility, guilt  
               Including criminal capacity; criminal intent; double jeopardy; defenses, e.g., duress; defenses for a specific crime, e.g., self-defense  
               Subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading  
               *See also 345.05044 for defense*
- .05        \*Criminal procedure  
               Including legal costs and fees  
               Class here administration of criminal justice, court rules, participants in criminal proceedings  
               Class procedure in specific courts devoted exclusively to criminal cases in 345.01; class procedure in specific courts hearing both civil and criminal cases in 347.02-347.04. Class participants in criminal proceedings provided for elsewhere with the subject, e.g., criminal court judges 345.0124, witnesses 345.066  
               *For evidence, see 345.06; for trials and trial procedures, see 345.07; for juvenile procedure, see 345.08*
- .050 4        Special topics of criminal procedure
- .050 42        \*Prosecution  
               Including prosecutorial discretion  
               Class district attorneys, public prosecutors in 345.01262

\*Add as instructed under 342-347

- .050 44           \*Defense  
                   Class public defenders in 345.01263; class defenses in 345.04;  
                   class right to counsel in 345.056
- .050 46           \*Victims of crime  
                   Class a specific role of victims in criminal procedure with the  
                   role, e.g., witness 345.066; class a specific use of victim impact  
                   statements with the use, e.g., use of victim impact statements at  
                   sentencing 345.0772. Class social services for victims of crime in  
                   362.88
- .052            \***Criminal investigation and law enforcement**  
                   Including extradition, judicial assistance  
                   Class here Interpol, manuals on what police may legally do in course of  
                   carrying out their duties  
                   Class rights of suspects in 345.056; class admissibility of evidence in  
                   345.062
- .052 2           \*Search and seizure  
                   Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .052 7           \*Arrest  
                   Including preventive detention  
                   *See also 346.0334 for false arrest*
- .056            \***Rights of suspects**  
                   Including habeas corpus, jury trial, protection from self-incrimination,  
                   right to counsel  
                   Class legal aid in 345.0127
- .06            \***Evidence**  
                   Including confessions
- .062–.067       Specific aspects of evidence  
                   Add to base number 345.06 the numbers following 347.06 in  
                   347.062–347.067, e.g., admissibility of evidence 345.062; then add  
                   further as instructed under 342–347, e.g., cases involving admissibility of  
                   evidence 345.0620264
- .07            \***Trials**  
                   Class trials of specific offenses in 345.02; class hearings and trials in  
                   juvenile cases in 345.087; class comprehensive works on criminal procedure  
                   in 345.05; class comprehensive works on appellate procedure in criminal  
                   cases in 345.0144

\*Add as instructed under 342–347

- .072      \*Pretrial procedure  
             Including arraignment, discovery, grand jury proceedings, indictment, plea bargaining, pleading, preliminary hearings, pretrial release, summons
- .075      \*Trial procedure (Courtroom procedure)  
             Including juries and jury selection, examination of witnesses, instructions to juries, verdicts  
             *For final disposition of cases, see 345.077*
- .077      \*Final disposition of cases  
             Including pardon, parole, probation, rehabilitation
- .077 2    \*Sentencing  
             *For penalties, see 345.0773*
- .077 3    \*Penalties  
             Including death penalty
- .08        \*Juvenile procedure and courts  
             Subdivisions are added for procedure and courts together, for procedure alone  
             Class juvenile offenders in 345.03; class liability, responsibility, guilt of juveniles in 345.04
- .081      \*Juvenile courts
- .087      \*Hearings, trials, disposition of cases

## **.1      Socioeconomic regions**

Add to base number 345.1 the numbers following —17 in notation 171–177 from Table 2, e.g., criminal law of developing countries 345.124; then to the result add as follows:

001–009    Standard subdivisions

            Notation from Table 1 as modified under 342–347

01–08    Topics of criminal law

            Add the numbers following 345 in 345.01–345.08, e.g., the law of evidence in developing countries 345.12406, decisions on evidence in developing countries 345.1240602643

Class socioeconomic regions of a specific regional intergovernmental organization in 345.2; class socioeconomic regions of a specific jurisdiction or area in 345.3–345.9

\*Add as instructed under 342–347

**.2 Regional intergovernmental organizations**

Class here relationship between the organization's law and national law of member countries

Add to base number 345.2 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., criminal law of European Union 345.24; then to the result add as follows:

001–009 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 342–347

01–08 Topics of criminal law

Add the numbers following 345 in 345.01–345.08, e.g., law of evidence of European Union 345.2406, administrative regulations of law of evidence of European Union 345.240602636

Class relationship of organization's law and national law of a specific member country with the national law in 345.3–345.9, e.g., effect of European Union laws on national criminal law of Spain 345.46

*See Manual at 342–349*

**.3–.9 Specific jurisdictions and areas**

Add to base number 345 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., criminal law of Australia 345.94, of New South Wales 345.944, of African states 345.6; then to the result add as follows:

001–009 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 342–347

01–08 Topics of criminal law

Add the numbers following 345 in 345.01–345.08, e.g., the law of evidence in Australia 345.9406, in New South Wales 345.94406, in African states 345.606, decisions on evidence in Australia 345.940602643

*For regional intergovernmental organizations, relationship between the organization's laws and national laws of all member states, see 345.2*

*See Manual at 342–349*

**Special developments for Scotland and England follow**

.411 Criminal law of Scotland

.411 001–.411 009 Standard subdivisions

.411 01 \*Criminal courts

Including Crown Counsel, Lord Advocate, Solicitor-General; procurators fiscal

Class here appellate courts devoted exclusively to criminal cases

Class appellate courts hearing both civil and criminal cases in 347.41103

*For Children's Hearings (juvenile courts), see 345.41108*

.411 012 \*District Court

.411 014 \*Sheriff Court

\*Add as instructed under 342–347

- .411 016                   \*High Court of Judiciary
- .411 016 2                \*Court of First Instance
- .411 016 3                \*Court of Appeal
- .411 02–.411 07        General considerations and procedure  
                               Add to base number 345.41 10 the numbers following 345.0 in  
                               345.02–345.07, e.g., general criminal procedure 345.41 105
- .411 08                   \*Juvenile procedure  
                               Including Children’s Hearings (juvenile courts)  
                               Class juvenile offenders in 345.41 103; class liability,  
                               responsibility, guilt of juveniles in 345.41 104
- .42                        Criminal law of England
- .420 01–.420 09        Standard subdivisions
- .420 1                    \*Criminal courts  
                               Including Attorney-General, Director of Public Prosecutions  
                               Class here appellate courts devoted exclusively to criminal cases  
                               Class appellate courts hearing both civil and criminal cases in  
                               347.4203  
                               *For juvenile courts, see 345.42081*
- .420 12                   \*Magistrates Court  
                               *For civil jurisdiction of Magistrates Court, see 347.42023*
- .420 14                   \*Crown Court
- .420 16                   \*Divisional Court of Queen’s Bench Division of High Court of Justice
- .420 18                   \*Criminal Division of Court of Appeal
- .420 2–.420 8        General considerations, procedure, juvenile courts and procedure  
                               Add to base number 345.420 the numbers following 345.0 in  
                               345.02–345.08, e.g., juvenile courts 345.42081

## 346                    Private law

*See also 340.9 for private international law*

## SUMMARY

- 346.001-.009                    **Standard subdivisions; laws, regulations, cases, procedure, courts; equity**
- .01                    **Persons and domestic relations**
- .02                    **Juristic acts, contracts, agency**
- .03                    **Torts (Delicts)**
- .04                    **Property**
- .05                    **Inheritance, succession, fiduciary trusts, trustees**
- .06                    **Organizations (Associations)**
- .07                    **Commercial law**
- .08                    **Banks and insurance**
- .09                    **Investment and negotiable instruments**
- .1                    **Socioeconomic regions**
- .2                    **Regional intergovernmental organizations**
- .3-.9                  **Specific jurisdictions and areas**
- .001                    **Philosophy and theory**
- Notation 01 from Table 1 as modified under 342-347, e.g., sources of law 346.0011
- .002                    **Miscellany**
- Notation 02 from Table 1 as modified below and under 342-347, e.g., cases 346.00264
- .002 3                  **Private law as a profession, occupation, hobby**
- Class here nature of duties, characteristics of profession of civil-law notaries, of other notaries required to have legal education
- Class lay notaries in 347.016. Class works that emphasize procedures of work performed by notaries with the subject without adding notation 023 from Table 1, e.g., private international law 340.9, transfer of real property 346.0436
- .003                    **Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances**
- .004                    **\*Equity**
- .005-.008              **Standard subdivisions**
- .009                    **History, geographic treatment, biography**
- [.009 17]                **Socioeconomic regions**
- Do not use; class in 346.1
- [.009 3-.009 9]        **Specific continents, countries, localities**
- Do not use; class in 346.3-346.9
- .01                    **\*Persons and domestic relations**
- .012                    **\*Persons**
- Including names of persons
- For capacity and status of persons, see 346.013*
- See also 346.048 for business names*

\*Add as instructed under 342-347

- .013           \*Capacity and status of persons
- Capacity: the attribute of persons (personal or corporate) which enables them to perform civil or juristic acts
- Including capacity and status of aliens; of people in late adulthood; of people with disabilities; of ethnic, national, economic groups; of slaves
- Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Class liability of states to aliens in 341.26; class individual rights in 342.085; class the rehabilitation of a criminal's personal rights lost by judicial sentence in 345.077
- For criminal capacity, see 345.04*
- [.013 08]           Groups of people
- Do not use; class in 346.013
- .013 4           \*Women
- .013 5           \*Minors
- Including age of majority
- .013 8           \*People with mental illness and disabilities
- .015           \*Domestic relations (Family law)
- Class here comprehensive works on domestic relations and inheritance and succession
- For marriage, partnerships, unions, see 346.016; for parent and child, see 346.017; for inheritance and succession, see 346.052*
- .016           \*Marriage, partnerships, unions
- Including civil unions, common-law marriage, de facto relationships, domestic partnerships, registered partnerships; unmarried couples living together (cohabitation)
- Subdivisions are added for marriage, partnerships, unions together; for marriage alone
- Class same-sex marriage in 346.0168
- .016 3           \*Spouses
- Rights and duties
- Including legal status of homemakers
- Class here husband and wife, married people
- Class legal status of married women in 346.0134; class rights and duties in relation to divorce, annulment, separation in 346.0166
- .016 6           \*Divorce, annulment, separation
- Subdivisions are added for divorce, annulment, separation together; for divorce alone

- > 346.016 62–346.016 64 Specific aspects of divorce, annulment, separation
- Class comprehensive works in 346.0166
- For specific aspects of annulment, see 346.01665; for specific aspects of separation, see 346.01668*
- .016 62           \*Prenuptial contracts (Antenuptial contracts)
- For support aspects of the contract, see 346.01663; for marital property aspects of the contract, see 346.01664*
- .016 63           \*Support
- Class here alimony
- For separate maintenance, see 346.01668; for child support, see 346.0172*
- .016 64           \*Marital property in divorce, annulment, separation
- Including community and separate property in divorce, annulment, separation
- Comprehensive works on marital, community, separate property relocated to 346.042
- .016 65           \*Annulment
- .016 68           \*Separation
- Including separate maintenance
- .016 8            \*Same-sex marriage
- Class rights and duties of spouses in 346.0163; class divorce, annulment, separation in 346.0166
- .017            \*Parent and child
- Including surrogate motherhood
- Class here parental rights and duties regardless of marital status of parents
- .017 1            \*Unborn children
- For a specific aspect of unborn children, see the aspect, e.g., rights of fetuses 342.085*
- .017 2            \*Child support
- .017 3            \*Custody of children
- Class here joint custody, visitation rights
- .017 5            \*Paternity
- .017 8            \*Adoption
- .018            \*Guardian and ward

\*Add as instructed under 342–347

- .02        \*Juristic acts, contracts, agency  
               Subdivisions are added for juristic acts, contracts, and agency together; for juristic acts alone  
               Class juristic acts dealing with a specific legal aspect not provided for here with the aspect in 342–347, e.g., personal property 346.047
- .021        General considerations of juristic acts  
               Including cause, form, object, declaration of will
- .022        \*Contracts  
               Including breach of contract, parties to contract, rescission, subcontracting  
               Class here comprehensive works on liability  
               Class sale in 346.072; class loan in 346.073. Class contractual aspects of specific subjects in law with the subject in 342–347, e.g., partnership contracts 346.0682; class nonlegal aspects of contracts concerning a specific nonlegal subject with the subject, e.g., materials management aspects of roofing contracts 695.0687  
               *For government liability, see 342.088; for liability of schools, of school officials, of school districts, see 344.075; for criminal liability, see 345.04; for specific kinds of contracts, see 346.023–346.025; for extracontractual liability, see 346.03*
- .023        \*Public contracts (Government contracts)  
               Including defense, research and development contracts  
               Class governmental contracts themselves in 352.53
- .024        \*Contracts of service  
               Including master-servant relationships, mechanics' liens  
               Class labor contracts in 344.01891; class public contracts of service in 346.023; class contracts of service involving bailments in 346.025; class agency in 346.029  
               *See also 346.074 for liens in secured transactions*
- .025        \*Contracts involving bailments  
               Including bills of lading, pawnbroking  
               Class public contracts involving bailments in 346.023
- .029        \*Agency and quasi contract  
               Including power of attorney, unjust enrichment  
               Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

- .03      \*Torts (Delicts)  
           Class here liability for the torts of others, e.g., employees  
           Class remedies in 347.077  
           *See Manual at 345.02 vs. 346.03*
- .031     Liability of specific classes of persons  
           Including liability of employers, directors of corporations, hospitals  
           Class liability of specific classes of persons in specific situations in  
           346.032–346.038  
           *For personal liability of government officials, see 342.068*
- .032     \*Negligence  
           Including contributory negligence  
           Class environmental liability and negligence in 344.046; class  
           malpractice in 346.033
- .032 2   \*Accidents  
           Class accidents resulting in personal injury and wrongful death in  
           346.0323
- .032 3   \*Personal injury and wrongful death
- .033     \*Torts against the person  
           Including assault and battery, invasion of privacy, malpractice  
           (professional liability)  
           *For accidents, see 346.0322; for injury through negligence, see  
           346.0323; for libel and slander, see 346.034. For malpractice  
           pertaining to a specific profession, see the profession in 342–347,  
           e.g., malpractice of lay notaries 347.016, malpractice of lawyers  
           347.05041*
- .033 4   \*Malicious prosecution  
           Class here false arrest and imprisonment
- .034     \*Libel and slander (Defamation)  
           Class libel and slander as crimes in 345.0256
- .036     \*Torts involving property  
           Including nuisance, trespass, trover and conversion, wrongful entry  
           Class wrongful entry as invasion of privacy in 346.033
- .038     \*Product liability  
           Class here strict liability
- .04      \*Property  
           *For property of enemy aliens, see 341.67; for public property, see 343.02*

## SUMMARY

- 346.040 869 1                      **Property of people with status defined by changes in residence**
- .042                      **Kinds of interest in property**
- .043                      **Real property**
- .044                      **Government control and regulation of real property**
- .045                      **Regional and local community planning**
- .046                      **Government control and regulation of specific kinds of land and natural resources**
- .047                      **Personal property**
- .048                      **Intangible property**
- .040 869 1                      Property of people with status defined by changes in residence
- Class here alien property
- For nationalization of alien property, see 343.0252*
- .042                      **Kinds of interest in property**
- Including comprehensive works on marital, community, separate property [*all formerly* 346.01664]; joint tenancy, future interests
- For marital, community, separate property in divorce, annulment, separation, see 346.01664*
- .043                      **\*Real property**
- Land, permanent fixtures, natural resources
- Including mobile homes
- Class here interdisciplinary works on economic and legal aspects of ownership and transfer of land
- For economic aspects of ownership and transfer of land, see 333.1–333.5; for government control and regulation of real property, see 346.044*
- See also 343.0944 for motorized homes*
- .043 2                      **\*Ownership (Land tenure)**
- Including incidents of ownership, e.g., riparian rights, water rights; recovery, squatter's right; types of estate, e.g., fee simple
- For joint tenancy, see 346.042*
- .043 3                      **\*Horizontal property and cooperative ownership**
- Variant name for horizontal property: condominium
- Including time-sharing
- .043 4                      **\*Tenancy**
- Including eviction
- Class here landlord and tenant
- Class ejection in 346.0432

\*Add as instructed under 342–347

- .043 44            \*Rent  
                       Including rent control
- .043 46            \*Leases
- .043 462           \*Commercial leases
- .043 48            \*Farm tenancy  
                       Class rent in 346.04344; class leases in 346.04346
- .043 5             \*Easements and servitudes  
                       Including right of way
- .043 6             \*Transfer  
                       Including consolidation of land holdings, restrictions on alienation  
                       Class inheritance and succession in 346.052  
                       *For conveyancing, see 346.0438*
- .043 62            \*Acquisition and purchase
- .043 63            \*Sale  
                       Class real estate business in 346.0437
- .043 64            \*Mortgages  
                       Class here foreclosure
- .043 7             \*Real estate business  
                       Including valuation of real property  
                       Class regulation of a specific general administrative function of  
                       real estate business with the function in 342–347, e.g., wages  
                       344.0128133333, organization 346.065
- .043 71            \*Malpractice  
                       Class malpractice pertaining to closing and settlements in  
                       346.04373; class malpractice pertaining to subdivision in  
                       346.04377
- .043 73            \*Closing and settlements  
                       Including escrows
- .043 77            \*Subdivision
- .043 8             \*Conveyancing  
                       Including deeds, registration and description of land, title  
                       examinations, titles

\*Add as instructed under 342–347

- .044      \*Government control and regulation of real property
- Class here conservation of natural resources; land reform; comprehensive works on government control and regulation of public and private real property
- Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Class government as landlord or tenant in 346.0434; class comprehensive works on environmental law in 344.046
- For control and use of public real property, see 343.0256; for rent control, see 346.04344; for regional and local community planning, see 346.045; for control of specific kinds of land and natural resources, see 346.046*
- See also 341.4 for conservation of extraterritorial natural resources*
- .045      \*Regional and local community planning
- Variant name for local community planning: city planning
- Including building codes that relate to regional or local community planning or land use; land use; restrictions on posting advertisements; zoning
- Class regulations governing construction of buildings in 343.07869
- .046      Government control and regulation of specific kinds of land and natural resources
- Class here protection of specific resources
- Add to base number 346.046 the numbers following 333 in 333.7–333.9, e.g., control of power and power resources 346.04679, control of recreational lands 346.04678; then add further as instructed under 342–347, e.g., cases involving control of recreational lands 346.046780264
- Class comprehensive works in 346.044
- .047      \*Personal property
- Movable property
- Including leasing of personal property, e.g., a truck
- Class mobile homes in 346.043
- For intangible property, see 346.048; for sale, see 346.072*
- .048      \*Intangible property
- Including public lending rights
- Class here intellectual property, industrial property (intangible property of an industrial nature, e.g., business names, franchises)
- For negotiable instruments, see 346.096*
- .048 2      \*Copyright

- .048 4           \*Design protection
- .048 6           \*Patents
- .048 8           \*Trademarks
- .05            \*Inheritance, succession, fiduciary trusts, trustees
- .052            \*Inheritance and succession  
                   Class here estate planning, probate practice  
                   Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Class comprehensive works on domestic relations and inheritance and  
                   succession in 346.015  
                   *For estate planning to avoid taxes, see 343.053; for wills, see*  
                   *346.054; for administration of estates, see 346.056*
- .054            \*Wills
- .056            \*Administration of estates  
                   Including execution of wills  
                   *For unclaimed estates, see 346.057*
- .057            \*Unclaimed estates
- .059            \*Fiduciary trusts
- .06            \*Organizations (Associations)  
                   Class here organization of associations engaged in specific types of  
                   enterprises, e.g., an organization of railroad companies  
                   Class organization of labor unions in 344.0187. Class operation of  
                   organizations engaged in a specific type of enterprise with the type of  
                   enterprise, e.g., operation of railroad companies 343.095
- .063            \*Accounting  
                   Class accounting for specific kinds of organizations in 346.064–346.068  
                   *See also 343.034 for government accounting*
- .063 1           \*Malpractice
- .064            \*Nonprofit organizations  
                   Including charitable trusts and foundations, trade associations,  
                   unincorporated societies

- .065           \*Business enterprises  
                   Including combinations, record requirements, sale, valuation  
                   Class record requirements for a specific kind of organization with the  
                   kind in 342-347, e.g., record requirements for a government corporation  
                   346.067; class record requirements for a specific subject with the subject  
                   in 342-347, e.g., workers' compensation insurance records 344.021  
                   *For corporations, see 346.066; for unincorporated business*  
                   *enterprises, see 346.068*
- .065 2           \*Small business  
                   Class small corporations in 346.066
- .066           \*Corporations (Companies)  
                   Class comprehensive works on corporate and commercial law in 346.07  
                   *For government corporations, see 346.067*  
                   *See also 342.09 for municipal corporations*
- .066 2           \*Organization  
                   Including investment banking, liquidation
- .066 22           \*Incorporation
- .066 26           \*Reorganization  
                   Including acquisitions and mergers
- .066 4           \*Management  
                   Including records
- .066 42           \*Officers
- .066 45           \*Meetings  
                   Class shareholders' meetings in 346.0666
- .066 48           \*Accounting
- .066 6           \*Securities and security holders  
                   Including shareholders' voting and meetings  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Class tender offers for corporate stock in 346.0662; class securities  
                   marketing in 346.092

- .066 8           Kinds of corporations (Kinds of companies)  
                   Including close corporations; cooperatives; credit unions; holding, limited, public limited companies  
                   Class specific aspects of corporate law applied to specific kinds of corporations in 346.0662–346.0666  
                   *For nonprofit corporations, see 346.064; for government corporations, see 346.067*
- .067            \*Government corporations  
                   Including quangos  
                   Class municipal corporations in 342.09
- .068            \*Unincorporated business enterprises  
                   Including land trusts, sole traders
- .068 2           \*Partnerships  
                   Class here joint ventures
- .07             \*Commercial law  
                   Class here commercial contracts, conduct of business; laws of a specific jurisdiction governing business investment by foreign nationals, e.g., laws of China governing the conduct of business in China by foreign nationals 346.5107; comprehensive works on business law  
                   *For a specific subject of commercial law, of business law not provided for here, see the subject in 342–347, e.g., tax law 343.04, insurance law 346.086*
- .072            \*Sale  
                   Class sale of real property in 346.04363; class sale of business enterprises in 346.065; class conditional and secured sales transactions in 346.074
- .073            \*Loan  
                   Including agricultural and consumer credit, interest, truth in lending, usury  
                   Class here credit  
                   Class secured loan transactions in 346.074
- .074            \*Secured transactions  
                   Including chattel mortgages; conditional, installment sales; guaranty, liens, suretyship  
                   Class comprehensive works on mortgages in 346.04364  
                   *See also 346.024 for mechanics' liens*

\*Add as instructed under 342–347

- .077            \*Debtor and creditor  
                   Including collection of debts  
                   *For bankruptcy, see 346.078*
- .078            \*Bankruptcy  
                   Including receivership  
                   Class here insolvency
- .08             \*Banks and insurance
- .082            \*Banks  
                   Class here banking  
                   Class investment banking in 346.0662. Class regulation of a specific  
                   general administrative function with the function in 342-347, e.g., wages  
                   344.012813321, corporate organization 346.0662  
                   *For loan, see 346.073*
- .082 1-.082 3    Specific topics of banks  
                   Add to base number 346.082 the numbers following 332 in  
                   332.1-332.3, e.g., international banks 346.08215, specialized  
                   banking institutions 346.0822, credit and loan institutions 346.0823,  
                   commercial banks 346.08212; then add further as instructed under  
                   342-347, e.g., cases involving commercial banks 346.082120264
- .086            Insurance  
                   Class regulation of a specific general administrative function with the  
                   function in 342-347, e.g., wages 344.01281368, corporate organization  
                   346.0662
- .086 000 1-.086 000 9    Standard subdivisions  
                                   Notation from Table 1 as modified under 342-347, e.g.,  
                                   cases 346.086000264
- .086 01            General principles  
                   Add to base number 346.08601 the numbers following 368.01 in  
                   368.011-368.019, e.g., underwriting 346.086012; then add further  
                   as instructed under 342-347, e.g., cases involving underwriting  
                   346.0860120264
- .086 02            \*Malpractice
- .086 06-.086 09    Risks and sales groupings  
                   Add to base number 346.0860 the numbers following 368.0 in  
                   368.06-368.09, e.g., automobile insurance 346.086092; then  
                   add further as instructed under 342-347, e.g., cases involving  
                   automobile insurance 346.0860920264

\*Add as instructed under 342-347

- .086 1--.086 8      Specific topics of insurance
- Add to base number 346.086 the numbers following 368 in 368.1-368.8, e.g., fire insurance 346.08611; then add further as instructed under 342-347, e.g., cases involving fire insurance 346.086110264; however, for government-sponsored insurance, social insurance, see 344.02
- .09                    \*Investment and negotiable instruments
- .092                    \*Investment
- Class here investments
- .092 2                Specific types of investments
- Including bonds, government securities, mutual funds, stocks; commodities, real estate
- Class here securities
- Class initial promotion of securities in 346.0662; class what a corporation must do to make certain a security is valid in 346.0666; class organizations marketing specific types of securities in 346.0926
- See also 346.074 for secured transactions*
- [.092 201-.092 209]      Standard subdivisions
- Do not use; class in 346.09201-346.09209
- .092 6                \*Marketing agents and arrangements
- Including securities brokers; exchange of securities, stock exchanges
- Class investment banking in 346.0662. Class regulation of a specific general administrative function of organizations engaged in marketing securities with the function in 342-347, e.g., wages 344.01281332642, organization 346.065
- For commodity exchanges, see 343.08*
- .096                    \*Negotiable instruments
- Including bills of exchange, checks (cheques), promissory notes, trade acceptances, warehouse receipts
- For securities, see 346.092*

\*Add as instructed under 342-347

**.1 Socioeconomic regions**

Add to base number 346.1 the numbers following —17 in notation 171–177 from Table 2, e.g., private law of developing countries 346.124; then to the result add as follows:

001–009 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 342–347

01–09 Topics of private law

Add the numbers following 346 in 346.01–346.09, e.g., property law of developing countries 346.12404, cases involving property law in developing countries 346.124040264

Class socioeconomic regions of a specific regional intergovernmental organization in 346.2; class socioeconomic regions of a specific jurisdiction or area in 346.3–346.9

**.2 Regional intergovernmental organizations**

Class here relationship between the organization's law and national law of member countries

Add to base number 346.2 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., private law of European Union 346.24; then to the result add as follows:

001–009 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 342–347

01–09 Topics of private law

Add the numbers following 346 in 346.01–346.09, e.g., property law of European Union 346.2404, administrative regulations of property law of European Union 346.240402636

*See Manual at 342–349*

Class relationship of organization's law and national law of a specific member country with the national law in 346.3–346.9, e.g., effect of European Union laws on national private law of Italy 346.45

**.3–.9 Specific jurisdictions and areas**

Add to base number 346 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., private law of Australia 346.94, of New South Wales 346.944, of African states 346.6; then to the result add as follows:

001–009 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 342–347

01–09 Topics of private law

Add the numbers following 346 in 346.01–346.09, e.g., family law of Australia 346.94015, of New South Wales 346.944014, of African states 346.6015, cases involving family law of Australia 346.940150264

*For regional intergovernmental organizations, relationship between the organization's laws and national laws of all member states, see 346.2*

*See Manual at 342–349*

## 347 Procedure and courts

Class here civil procedure and courts; comprehensive works on civil and criminal procedure and courts, judicial branch of government, administration of justice, legal services

*For administrative procedure, see 342.066; for criminal procedure and courts, see 345*

*See Manual at 347*

(Option: Class here courts and procedure in a specific field of law; prefer specific field in 342–347, plus notation 0269 from table under 342–347)

### SUMMARY

- |                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| 347.001–.009    | Standard subdivisions; laws, regulations, cases, procedure, courts   |
| .01             | Courts   |
| .02             | Courts with general original jurisdiction  |
| .03             | Appellate courts   |
| .04             | Courts with specialized jurisdiction   |
| .05             | Procedure  |
| .06             | Evidence   |
| .07             | Trials   |
| .08             | Appellate procedure  |
| .09             | Dispute resolution   |
| .1              | Socioeconomic regions  |
| .2              | Regional intergovernmental organizations   |
| .3–.9           | Specific jurisdictions and areas   |
| .001–.005       | Standard subdivisions  |
|                 | Notation from Table 1 as modified under 342–347, e.g., cases 347.00264                                     |
| .006            | Organizations  |
| [.006 8]        | Management   |
|                 | Do not use; class in 347.013   |
| .007–.008       | Standard subdivisions  |
| .009            | History, geographic treatment, biography   |
| [.009 17]       | Socioeconomic regions  |
|                 | Do not use; class in 347.1   |
| [.009 3–.009 9] | Specific continents, countries, localities   |
|                 | Do not use; class in 347.3–347.9   |
| .01             | *Courts  |
|                 | Class provisional courts in 342.0664   |
|                 | <i>For juvenile courts, see 345.081; for courts with specific kinds of jurisdiction, see 347.02–347.04</i> |

\*Add as instructed under 342–347

- .012      **\*General considerations of courts**  
             Including judicial cooperation, letters rogatory; judicial discretion,  
             judicial error, judicial review, jurisdiction of courts  
             Class criminal contempt of court in 345.0234; class general  
             considerations of specific aspects of courts in 347.013–347.017  
             *See Manual at 347*
- .013      **\*Judicial administration (Court management)**  
             Including court calendars, records  
             *For judges, see 347.014; for court officials other than judges, see*  
             *347.016*
- .014      **\*Judges**  
             Class judges associated with a specific court with the court, e.g., judges  
             of a juvenile court 345.081, judges of the High Court of Justice in  
             England 347.4202534
- .016      **Other officials**  
             Including clerks, coroners, court reporters, justices of the peace,  
             marshals, lay notaries, sheriffs  
             Class nature of duties, characteristics of profession of civil-law notaries,  
             of other notaries required to have legal education in 346.0023. Class the  
             work of court officials with respect to a specific subject with the subject,  
             e.g., justices of the peace and domestic relations 346.015
- .017      **\*Legal aid**  
             Class legal aid in criminal cases in 345.0127; class legal aid as a welfare  
             service, interdisciplinary works on legal aid in 362.58

> 347.02–347.04 Courts with specific kinds of jurisdiction

Add to each subdivision identified by † as follows:

- 01–09 Standard subdivisions
  - Notation from Table 1 as modified under 342–347, e.g., cases 0264
- 2 General considerations
  - Including functions, jurisdiction, organization, powers
- 3 Judicial administration
- 34 Judges
- 36 Other officials
- 5 Procedure
  - For evidence, see 347.06; for trials, see 347.07; for appellate procedure, see 347.08*
- 504 Practice
  - Form, manner, order of instituting and conducting a suit, court case, or other judicial proceeding through its successive stages to its end in accordance with rules and principles laid down by law or by regulations and precedents of the courts
- 5041 Malpractice
- 51–57 Specific topics of procedure
  - Add to 5 the numbers following 347.05 in 347.051–347.057, e.g., formbooks 55
  - Class practice in 504

Class comprehensive works in 347.01

> 347.02–347.03 Courts with general jurisdiction

Class procedure in specific levels of courts in 347.05–347.08; class comprehensive works in 347.01

.02 †Courts with general original jurisdiction

Class here comprehensive works on courts of first instance, local courts, trial courts, on courts that have names such as Circuit, District, County, Municipal, Superior Court

.03 †Appellate courts

*For appellate courts devoted exclusively to criminal cases, see 345.0144; for appellate courts with specialized jurisdiction, see 347.04*

.033 †Intermediate appellate courts

Class here courts of second instance, courts of first appeal

.035 †Courts of last resort (Supreme courts)

Class here courts of third instance, courts of second appeal, courts of final appeal

†Add as instructed under 347.02–347.04

- .04 †Courts with specialized jurisdiction  
 Including admiralty courts, small-claims courts  
 Class courts dealing with a specific subject with the subject in 342–347, plus notation 0269 from table under 342–347, e.g., tax courts 343.040269
- .05 \*Procedure  
 Class here procedure in specific levels of courts, relation of a fair trial to freedom of the press, comprehensive works on procedure  
 Class procedure in a specific court with the court in 347.02–347.04, plus notation 5 from add table under 347.02–347.04, e.g., practice in supreme courts 347.035504; class procedure with respect to a specific subject with the subject in 342–347, plus notation 0269 from table under 342–347, e.g., court procedure in tax matters 343.040269  
*For evidence, see 347.06; for trials, see 347.07; for appellate procedure, see 347.08*
- .050 4 \*Practice  
 Form, manner, order of instituting and conducting a suit, court case, or other judicial proceeding through its successive stages to its end in accordance with rules and principles laid down by law or by regulations and precedents of the courts  
*See also 340.023 for practice of law as a profession*
- .050 41 \*Malpractice
- .051 \*Court rules  
 Class rules about legal costs and fees in 347.057; class rules of specific courts, of courts having specific kinds of jurisdiction in 347.02–347.04
- .052 Motions, limitation of actions, parties to trial, jury trial  
 Class here advocacy
- .053 Kinds of actions  
 Including class actions, lawsuits
- .055 Forms and form books  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .057 Legal costs and fees  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
 Rules and guidelines  
 Class ethical aspects of legal costs and fees in 174.3; class financial management of law firms in 340.0681; class economics of salaries of legal personnel in 331.28134; class economics of law firms in 338.7–338.8; class interdisciplinary works on legal costs and fees in 338.4334

\*Add as instructed under 342–347

†Add as instructed under 347.02–347.04

- .057 2            Fees for legal professional services  
                     Class here lawyers' fees, contingent or conditional fees
- .06            \*Evidence
- .062            \*Admissibility
- .064            Kinds of evidence  
                     *For witnesses, see 347.066*
- .066            \*Witnesses  
                     Class examination of witnesses in 347.075  
                     *For expert testimony, see 347.067*
- .067            \*Expert testimony  
                     Class forensic science in 363.25; class medical jurisprudence, forensic  
                     medicine, forensic psychiatry in 614.1
- .07            \*Trials  
                     Class a trial dealing with a specific subject with the subject in 342–347, e.g.,  
                     a product liability trial 346.038; class procedures of trials dealing with a  
                     specific subject with the subject in 342–347, plus notation 0269 from table  
                     under 342–347, e.g., procedures of product liability trials 346.0380269
- .072            \*Pretrial procedure  
                     Including discovery, pleading, service of process, summons
- .075            \*Trial procedure (Courtroom procedure)  
                     Including examination of witnesses, summations, verdicts
- .075 2            \*Juries  
                     Class here jury selection  
                     Class instructions to juries in 347.0758
- .075 8            \*Instructions to juries
- .077            \*Judgments  
                     Including attachment and garnishment, legal costs and fees awarded as  
                     part of judgments, executions of judgment, remedies
- .08            \*Appellate procedure  
                     Class here comprehensive works on appellate procedure in civil and criminal  
                     cases  
                     *For procedure in specific appellate courts hearing both civil and  
                     criminal cases, specific appellate courts devoted exclusively to civil  
                     cases, see 347.03–347.04; for procedure in appellate courts devoted  
                     exclusively to criminal cases, see 345.0144*  
                     Comprehensive works on appellate procedure in criminal cases relocated to  
                     345.0144

\*Add as instructed under 342–347

.09 \*Dispute resolution

Class here arbitration, conciliation, mediation

.1 **Socioeconomic regions**

Add to base number 347.1 the numbers following —17 in notation 171–177 from Table 2, e.g., civil procedure and courts of developing countries 347.124; then to the result add as follows:

001–009 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 342–347

01–09 Topics of procedure and courts

Add the numbers following 347 in 347.01–347.09, e.g., the law of evidence in developing countries 347.12406, court decisions on evidence in developing countries 347.1240602643

Class socioeconomic regions of a specific regional intergovernmental organization in 347.2; class socioeconomic regions of a specific jurisdiction or area in 347.3–347.9

.2 **Regional intergovernmental organizations**

Class here effect of organization's law on and harmonization of national laws of member countries

Add to base number 347.2 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., harmonization of national laws on procedure and courts of European Union countries 347.24; then to the result add as follows:

001–009 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 342–347

01–09 Topics of procedure and courts

Add the numbers following 347 in 347.01–347.09, e.g., harmonization of national law of evidence of European Union 347.2406, harmonization of individual and collected laws of evidence of European Union countries 347.240602632

Class effect of organization's laws on national laws of a specific member country with the national laws, e.g., effect of European Union laws on national laws on procedures and courts of France 347.44

Class relationship of organization's law and national law of a specific member country with the national law in 347.3–347.9, e.g., effect of European Union laws on national German laws on procedure and courts 347.43

*See Manual at 342–349*

.24 **Regional intergovernmental organizations of Europe**

Number built according to instructions under 347.2

Class here effect of European Union law on and harmonization of national laws on procedure and courts of European Union countries

Class effect of European Union law on national laws of a specific member country with the national law, e.g., effect of European Union laws on national French laws on procedures and courts 347.44

\*Add as instructed under 342–347

**.3-9 Specific jurisdictions and areas**

Add to base number 347 notation 3-9 from Table 2, e.g., civil procedure and courts of Australia 347.94, of New South Wales 347.944, of African states 347.6; then to the result add as follows:

001-009 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 342-347

01-09 Topics of procedure and courts

Add the numbers following 347 in 347.01-347.09, e.g., the law of evidence in Australia 347.9406, in New South Wales\* 347.94406, in African states 347.606; Australian court decisions on evidence in 347.940602643

*For regional intergovernmental organizations, relationship between the organization's laws and national laws of all member states, see 347.2*

*See Manual at 342-349*

**Special developments for Scotland, England, the United States follow**

.411 Civil procedure and courts of Scotland

.411 001-.411 009 Standard subdivisions

.411 01 \*Courts

*For courts with specific kinds of jurisdiction, see 347.41102-347.41104*

.411 012-.411 017 Specific aspects of courts

Add to base number 347.41101 the numbers following 347.01 in 347.012-347.017, e.g., general considerations 347.411012

> 347.411 02-347.411 04 Courts with specific kinds of jurisdiction

Add to each subdivision identified by † as instructed under 347.02-347.04, e.g., jurisdiction of the Sheriff Court 347.4110212

Class comprehensive works in 347.41101

> 347.411 02-347.411 03 Courts with general jurisdiction

Class procedure in specific levels of courts in 347.41105-347.41108; class comprehensive works in 347.41101

.411 02 †Courts with original jurisdiction

.411 021 †Sheriff Court

*For criminal jurisdiction of Sheriff Court, see 345.411014; for appellate jurisdiction of Sheriff-Principal, see 347.411032*

\*Add as instructed under 342-347

†Add as instructed under 347.02-347.04

- .411 023 †Court of Session  
*For Outer House, see 347.411024; for Inner House, see 347.411035*
- .411 024 †Outer House of Court of Session
- .411 03 †Courts with appellate jurisdiction  
 Class here comprehensive works on appellate courts  
 \*  
*For appellate courts devoted exclusively to criminal cases, see 345.41101; for appellate courts with specialized jurisdiction, see 347.41104*
- .411 032 †Sheriff-Principal
- .411 035 †Inner House of Court of Session
- .411 039 †House of Lords (Court of last resort)
- .411 04 †Courts with specialized jurisdiction  
 Including Court of the Lord Lyon, Licensing Appeals Courts, Licensing Courts  
 Class works dealing with a single specific subject with the subject in 342–347, plus notation 0269 from table under 342–347, e.g., Court of Exchequer 343.411040269
- .411 05–.411 09 Procedure and arbitration  
 Add to base number 347.4110 the numbers following 347.0 in 347.05–347.09, e.g., evidence 347.41106
- .42 Civil procedure and courts of England
- .420 01–.420 09 Standard subdivisions
- .420 1 \*Courts  
*For courts with specific kinds of jurisdiction, see 347.4202–347.4204*
- .420 12–.420 17 Specific aspects of courts  
 Add to base number 347.4201 the numbers following 347.01 in 347.012–347.017, e.g., general considerations 347.42012
- 
- > 347.420 2–347.420 4 Courts with specific kinds of jurisdiction  
 Add to each subdivision identified by † as instructed under 347.02–347.04, e.g., jurisdiction of County Court 347.420212  
 Class comprehensive works in 347.4201

\*Add as instructed under 342–347

†Add as instructed under 347.02–347.04

- > 347.420 2–347.420 3 Courts with general jurisdiction
- Class procedure in specific levels of courts in 347.4205–347.4208; class comprehensive works in 347.4201
- .420 2 †Courts with original jurisdiction
- .420 21 †County Court
- .420 23 †Domestic Court of Magistrates Court
- Class comprehensive works on Magistrates Court in 345.42012
- .420 25 †High Court of Justice
- For Family Division, see 346.420150269; for Chancery Division, see 347.42026; for Queen’s Bench Division, see 347.42027*
- .420 26 †Chancery Division of the High Court of Justice
- .420 27 †Queen’s Bench Division of High Court of Justice
- For Divisional Court of Queen’s Bench Division, see 345.42016*
- .420 29 †Supreme Court of Judicature
- For Crown Court, see 345.42014; for High Court of Justice, see 347.42025; for Court of Appeal, see 347.42032*
- .420 3 †Courts with appellate jurisdiction
- Class here comprehensive works on appellate courts
- For appellate courts devoted exclusively to criminal cases, see 345.4201; for appellate courts with specialized jurisdiction, see 347.4204*
- .420 32 †Court of Appeal
- For Criminal Division, see 345.42018; for Civil Division, see 347.42035*
- .420 35 †Civil Division of Court of Appeal
- .420 39 †House of Lords (Court of last resort)
- Criminal and civil jurisdiction
- .420 4 †Courts with specialized jurisdiction
- Including Judicial Committee of the Privy Council
- Class courts dealing with a specific subject with the subject in 342–347, plus notation 0269 from table under 342–347, e.g., Lands Tribunal 346.420430269

†Add as instructed under 347.02–347.04

.420 5--420 9 Procedure and arbitration  
 Add to base number 347.420 the numbers following 347.0 in  
 347.05--347.09, e.g., evidence 347.4206

.73 Civil procedure and courts of the United States  
 Federal procedure and courts; national and regional treatment of state and  
 local procedure and courts  
*For civil procedure and courts of specific states and localities, see  
 347.74--347.79*

.730 01--730 09 Standard subdivisions

.731 \*Courts

*For specific court systems, see 347.732--347.734*

.731 2--731 7 Specific aspects of courts

Add to base number 347.731 the numbers following 347.01 in  
 347.012--347.017, e.g., judges 347.7314

---

> 347.732--347.734 Specific court systems

Class comprehensive works in 347.731

.732 Federal courts

Add 0 to base number 347.732; then add further as instructed under  
 347.02--347.04, e.g., periodicals about federal courts 347.732005, federal  
 judges 347.732034

---

> 347.732 2--347.732 8 Federal courts with specific kinds of jurisdiction

Class here procedure in specific courts

Add to each subdivision identified by † as instructed under 347.02--347.04, e.g.,  
 Supreme Court rules 347.732651

Class comprehensive works in 347.732

---

> 347.732 2--347.732 6 Federal courts with general jurisdiction

Class procedure in specific levels of courts in 347.735--347.738; class  
 comprehensive works in 347.732

.732 2 †District courts

Courts of original jurisdiction

.732 4 †Courts of appeal

*For Supreme Court, see 347.7326*

.732 6 †Supreme Court

\*Add as instructed under 342--347

†Add as instructed under 347.02--347.04

- .732 8 †Courts of specialized jurisdiction  
 Including United States Court of Customs and Patent Appeals  
 Class courts dealing with a specific subject with the subject in United States law, plus notation 0269 from table under 342–347, e.g., tax courts 343.73040269
- .733 \*State courts  
 Class courts of specific states in 347.74–347.79
- .733 2–.733 8 Specific aspects of state courts  
 Add to base number 347.733 the numbers following 347.732 in 347.7322–347.7328, e.g., state supreme courts 347.7336
- .734 \*Local courts  
 Class courts of specific localities in 347.74–347.79
- .735–.738 Procedure  
 Class here procedure in specific levels of federal courts  
 Add to base number 347.73 the numbers following 347.0 in 347.05–347.08, e.g., rules of evidence 347.736  
 Class procedure in specific courts in 347.732–347.734
- .739 \*Arbitration, mediation, conciliation  
 Subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- .74–.79 Civil procedure and courts of specific states and localities of the United States  
 Add to base number 347 notation 74–79 from Table 2, e.g., civil procedure and courts of Pennsylvania 347.748, of Philadelphia 347.74811; then to the result add as follows:  
 001–009 Standard subdivisions  
     Notation from Table 1 as modified under 342–347  
 01–09 Topics of procedure and courts  
     Add the numbers following 347 in 347.01–347.09, e.g., the Supreme Court of Pennsylvania 347.748035, courts of Philadelphia 347.7481101  
 Class regional treatment of state and local procedure and courts in 347.73; class civil procedure and courts of Hawaii in 347.969

\*Add as instructed under 342–347

†Add as instructed under 347.02–347.04

## 348 Laws, regulations, cases

Original materials and their guides listed here are comprehensive in nature, covering the whole of the law of a specific jurisdiction or a major portion thereof

Class treatises on the whole law of a specific jurisdiction in 349. Class original materials and their guides limited to a specific branch or subject with the branch or subject in 342–347, plus notation 026 from table under 342–347, e.g., a digest of tax laws 343.0402638

(Option: Class here laws, regulations, cases covering specific subjects in law; prefer specific subject in 342–347, plus notation 026 from table under 342–347)

### SUMMARY

- |                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| <b>348.001–.009</b> | <b>Standard subdivisions and codification</b>   |
| .01                 | Preliminary materials   |
| .02                 | Laws and regulations  |
| .04                 | Cases   |
| .05                 | Advisory opinions of attorneys-general (ministers of justice)   |
| .1                  | Socioeconomic regions   |
| .2                  | Regional intergovernmental organizations  |
| .3–.9               | Specific jurisdictions and areas  |
| .001–.003           | Standard subdivisions   |
| .004                | Codification  |
|                     | Class proposed codes in 348.023   |
| .005                | Serial publications   |
| .006                | Organizations and management  |
|                     | Notation 06 from Table 1 as modified below  |
| .006 01             | International organizations   |
|                     | Laws, regulations, cases limited to a specific regional intergovernmental organization are classed under the area of the organization before indicating the subject of a branch of law, e.g., regulations of European Union 348.24025. Further instructions are given under 342–349 |
| .007–.008           | Standard subdivisions   |
| .009                | History, geographic treatment, biography  |
| [.009 17]           | Socioeconomic regions   |
|                     | Do not use; class in 348.1  |
| [.009 3–.009 9]     | Specific continents, countries, localities  |
|                     | Do not use; class in 348.3–348.9  |

.01 \*Preliminary materials  
Including bills; legislative hearings, histories; slip laws; statistical reports of bills passed or vetoed, reports on the status of bills

.02 \*Laws and regulations  
Standard subdivisions are added for laws and regulations together, for laws alone  
Class here statutes  
Including laws arranged in alphabetical order  
(If option under 348 is chosen, class here individual laws)

.020 1–.020 8 Standard subdivisions

> 348.022–348.024 Laws  
Class guides to laws in 348.026–348.028; class comprehensive works in 348.02

.022 \*Laws arranged in chronological order  
Including session laws

.023 \*Codes  
Compilations of laws in classified order  
Including compiled and consolidated statutes

.024 \*Selected laws

.025 \*Regulations  
Class guides to regulations in 348.026–348.028

.025 01–.025 08 Standard subdivisions

> 348.026–348.028 Guides to laws and regulations  
Class comprehensive works and guides in 348.026. Class guides to a specific collection of laws with the collection, e.g., a citator to the U.S. Code 348.7323

.026 \*Digests of laws and regulations  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
Including summaries of changes  
Class here comprehensive guides to laws and regulations

*For citators to laws and regulations, see 348.027; for checklists, tables, indexes of laws and regulations, see 348.028*

\*Do not use notation 0601 from Table 1 for a specific regional intergovernmental organization; class in 348.2. Do not use notation 0917 from Table 1 for socioeconomic regions; class in 348.1. Do not use notation 093–099 from Table 1 for specific continents, countries, localities; class in 348.3–348.9

- .027 \*Citators to laws and regulations  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .028 \*Checklists, tables, indexes of laws and regulations  
Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading  
Class union lists of legal material in 016.34
- .04 \*Cases  
Do not use for casebooks; class with the subject in 342–347 without further subdivision  
Class cases in a specific subject in law with the subject in 343–347, plus notation 0264 from table under 342–347, e.g., cases involving tax law 344.040264

- 
- > 348.041–348.043 Reports  
Reports of cases contain a relatively full treatment of each case as well as the ultimate decision  
Class comprehensive works in 348.04
- .041 \*National reports
- .042 \*Regional reports
- .043 \*State and provincial reports  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .044 \*Court decisions  
Texts of decisions with or without accompanying information
- .045 \*Decisions (Rulings) of regulatory agencies

- 
- > 348.046–348.048 Guides to cases  
Class here combined guides to laws, regulations, cases  
Class comprehensive works and guides in 348.046. Class guides to a specific set of court reports with the reports, e.g., a citator to U.S. Supreme Court reports 348.73413  
*For guides to laws and regulations, see 348.026–348.028*
- .046 \*Digests of cases  
Class here comprehensive guides to cases  
*For citators to cases, see 348.047; for checklists, tables, indexes of cases, see 348.048*

\*Do not use notation 0601 from Table 1 for a specific regional intergovernmental organization; class in 348.2. Do not use notation 0917 from Table 1 for socioeconomic regions; class in 348.1. Do not use notation 093–099 from Table 1 for specific continents, countries, localities; class in 348.3–348.9

- .047        \*Citators to cases
- .048        \*Checklists, tables, indexes of cases
- Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

- .05        \*Advisory opinions of attorneys-general (ministers of justice)

**.1        Socioeconomic regions**

Add to base number 348 the numbers following —17 in notation 171–177 from Table 2, e.g., laws, regulations, cases of developing countries 348.124; then to the result add as follows:

001–009    Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 348.001–348.009

01–05    Topics of laws, regulations, cases

Add the numbers following 348 in 348.01–348.05, e.g., selected laws of developing countries 348.124024

Class socioeconomic regions of a specific regional intergovernmental organization in 348.2; class socioeconomic regions of a specific jurisdiction or area in 348.3–348.9

**.2        Regional intergovernmental organizations**

Add to base number 348.2 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., laws, regulations, cases of European Union 348.24; then to the result add as follows:

001–009    Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 348.001–348.009

01–05    Topics of laws, regulations, cases

Add the numbers following 348 in 348.01–348.05, e.g., selected laws of European Union 348.24024

*See Manual at 342–349*

\*Do not use notation 0601 from Table 1 for a specific regional intergovernmental organization; class in 348.2. Do not use notation 0917 from Table 1 for socioeconomic regions; class in 348.1. Do not use notation 093–099 from Table 1 for specific continents, countries, localities; class in 348.3–348.9

**.3-9 Specific jurisdictions and areas**

Class here general collections of repealed laws

Add to base number 348 notation 3-9 from Table 2, e.g., laws, regulations, cases of Australia 348.94, of New South Wales 348.944, of African states 348.6; then to the result add as follows:

001-009 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 348.001-348.009

01-05 Topics of laws, regulations, cases

Add the numbers following 348 in 348.01-348.05, e.g., selected laws of Australia 348.94024, of New South Wales 348.944024, of African states 348.6024

Class the legislative procedure involved in enacting or repealing a law in 328.37. Class repealed laws on a specific subject with the subject in 342-347, e.g., repeal of a prohibition on the sale and consumption of alcohol 344.0541

*For regional intergovernmental organizations, relationship between the organization's laws and national laws of all member states, see 348.2*

*See Manual at 342-349*

**A special development for the United States follows****.73 Federal laws, regulations, cases of the United States**

Including national and regional treatment of state and local laws, regulations, cases

*For laws, regulations, cases of specific states and localities, see 348.74-348.79*

**.730 4 Codification**

Class proposed codes in 348.7323

**.731 Preliminary materials**

Including bills; legislative hearings, histories; slip laws

**.732 Federal laws and regulations**

Standard subdivisions are added for federal laws and regulations together, for federal laws alone

Class here federal statutes

(If option under 348 is chosen, class here individual laws)

**> 348.732 2-348.732 4 Federal laws**

Class guides to federal laws in 348.7326-348.7328; class comprehensive works in 348.732

**.732 2 Federal laws in chronological order****.732 3 United States Code****.732 4 Selected Federal laws**

- .732 5 Federal regulations  
Class guides to federal regulations in 348.7326–348.7328
- 
- > 348.732 6–348.732 8 Guides to federal laws and regulations  
Class comprehensive works and guides in 348.7326
- .732 6 Digests of federal laws and regulations  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
Including summaries of changes  
Class here comprehensive guides to federal laws and regulations  
*For citators to federal laws and regulations, see 348.7327; for checklists, tables, indexes of federal laws and regulations, see 348.7328*
- .732 7 Citators to federal laws and regulations  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .732 8 Checklists, tables, indexes of federal laws and regulations  
Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- .734 Federal cases  
Do not use for casebooks; class with the subject in 342–347 without further subdivision
- 
- > 348.734 1–348.734 2 Reports of federal cases  
Class comprehensive works and reports in 348.734
- .734 1 Federal court reports
- .734 13 Supreme Court
- .734 15 Lower Federal courts
- .734 2 National reporter system
- .734 22 Atlantic federal reporter system
- .734 23 Northeastern federal reporter system
- .734 24 Northwestern federal reporter system
- .734 25 Southeastern federal reporter system
- .734 26 Southwestern federal reporter system
- .734 27 Southern federal reporter system
- .734 28 Pacific federal reporter system
- .734 4 Court decisions
- .734 5 Decisions of regulatory agencies (Rulings of regulatory agencies)

- > 348.734 6–348.734 8 Guides to federal cases  
 Class here combined guides to federal laws, regulations, cases  
 Class comprehensive works and guides to federal cases in 348.7346  
*For guides to federal laws and regulations, see 348.7326–348.7328*
- .734 6 Digests of federal cases  
 Class here comprehensive guides to federal cases  
*For citators to federal cases, see 348.7347; for checklists, tables, indexes of federal cases, see 348.7348*
- .734 7 Citators to federal cases
- .734 8 Checklists, tables, indexes of federal cases  
 Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- .735 Advisory opinions of Attorney-General
- .74–.79 Laws, regulations, cases of specific states and localities of the United States  
 Add to base number 348 notation 74–79 from Table 2, e.g., laws, regulations, cases of Pennsylvania 348.748, of Philadelphia 348.74811; then to the result add the numbers following 348 in 348.001–348.05, e.g., Pennsylvania statutes 348.748022, Philadelphia code of ordinances 348.74811023  
 Class national and regional treatment of state and local laws, regulations, cases in 348.73; class laws, regulations, cases of Hawaii in 348.969

### 349 Law of specific jurisdictions, areas, socioeconomic regions, regional intergovernmental organizations

*For law of specific ancient jurisdictions, areas, socioeconomic regions, see 340.53; for specific branches of law of a specific jurisdiction, area, socioeconomic region, regional intergovernmental organization, see 342–347; for original materials on law of a specific jurisdiction, area, socioeconomic region, regional intergovernmental organization, see 348*

*See Manual at 340.02–340.09 vs. 349; also at 342–349*

(If option A under 342–349 is chosen, class here comparative law and law of jurisdictions other than the preferred jurisdiction by adding to base number 349 the numbers following 34 in 342–348, e.g., comparative criminal procedure 349.505, criminal procedure of New Zealand 349.59305. Assuming Australia to be the preferred jurisdiction, criminal procedure of Australia 345.05. Class comprehensive works on law of jurisdictions other than the preferred jurisdiction in 349.9)

**.1 Law of specific socioeconomic regions**

Add to base number 349.1 the numbers following —17 in notation 171–177 from Table 2, e.g., works on ordinances from developing countries 349.124; however, for Islamic law, see 340.59

Class socioeconomic regions of a specific regional intergovernmental organization in 349.2; class law of specific socioeconomic regions of a specific jurisdiction or area in 349.4–349.9

**.2 Law of regional intergovernmental organizations**

Add to base number 349.2 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., works on the ordinances of European Union 349.24

Class comprehensive works on regional intergovernmental organizations themselves in 341.2

**.24 Regional intergovernmental organizations of Europe**

Number built according to instructions under 349.2

Class comprehensive works on effect of European Union laws on national laws of member states in 341.24224. Class effect of European Union laws on national laws of a specific member state with the laws of the member state, e.g., effect on laws of Italy 349.45

**.4–9 Law of specific jurisdictions and areas in modern world**

Add to base number 349 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., works on the ordinances of the City of Los Angeles 349.79494

*For regional intergovernmental organizations, see 349.2*

**.9 Law of other parts of world**

Number built according to instructions under 349.4–349.9

(If option A under 342–349 is chosen, class here law of specific jurisdictions, areas, socioeconomic regions, regional intergovernmental organizations

*(For law of specific ancient jurisdictions, areas, socioeconomic regions, see 340.53)*

**(.91) Law of specific socioeconomic regions**

(Optional number; prefer 349.1)

(If option A under 342–349 is chosen, add to base number 349.91 the numbers following —17 in notation 171–177 from Table 2, e.g., works on ordinances from developing countries 349.9124; however, for Islamic law, see 340.59

(Class socioeconomic regions of a specific regional intergovernmental organization in 349.92; class law of specific socioeconomic regions of a specific jurisdiction or area in 349.94–349.99)

- (.92) Law of regional intergovernmental organizations  
 (Optional number; prefer 349.2)  
 (If option A under 342–349 is chosen, add to base number 349.92 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., works on the ordinances of European Union 349.924)
- .93–.99 Law of Australasia, Pacific Ocean islands, Atlantic Ocean islands, Arctic islands, Antarctica  
 Number built according to instructions under 349.4–349.9  
 (If option A under 342–349 is chosen, class here law of specific jurisdictions and areas of modern world other than the preferred jurisdiction, adding to base number 349.9 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., works on the ordinances of the City of Los Angeles 349.979494. Assuming Australia to be the preferred jurisdiction, works on the ordinances of Australia 342)
- (For law of regional intergovernmental organizations, see 349.92)*

## 350 Public administration and military science

### SUMMARY

- 351 Public administration  
 .01–.09 Standard subdivisions  
 .1 Administration in areas, regions, places in general  
 .3–.9 Administration in specific continents, countries, localities
- 352 General considerations of public administration  
 .1 Jurisdictional levels of administration  
 .2 Organization of administration  
 .3 Executive management  
 .4 Financial administration and budgets  
 .5 Property administration and related topics  
 .6 Personnel management (Human resource management)  
 .7 Public administration of general forms of assistance  
 .8 Public administration of general forms of control
- 353 Specific fields of public administration  
 .1 Public administration of external and national security affairs  
 .3 Public administration of services related to domestic order  
 .4 Public administration of justice  
 .5 Public administration of social welfare  
 .6 Public administration of health services  
 .7 Public administration of culture and related activities  
 .8 Public administration of agencies supporting and controlling education  
 .9 Public administration of safety, sanitation, waste control
- 354 Public administration of economy and environment  
 .08 Groups of people  
 .2 General considerations of public administration  
 .3 Public administration of environment and natural resources  
 .4 Public administration of energy and energy-related industries  
 .5 Public administration of agriculture  
 .6 Public administration of construction, manufacturing, service industries  
 .7 Public administration of commerce, communications, transportation  
 .8 Public administration of financial institutions, money, credit  
 .9 Public administration of labor and professions

- 355            **Military science**
  - .001–.009        **Standard subdivisions**
  - .02–.07            **Basic considerations of military science**
  - .1                **Military life and customs**
  - .2                **Military resources**
  - .3                **Organization and personnel of military forces**
  - .4                **Military operations**
  - .5                **Military training**
  - .6                **Military administration**
  - .7                **Military installations**
  - .8                **Military equipment and supplies (Matériel)**
- 356            **Foot forces and warfare**
  - .1                **Infantry**
- 357            **Mounted forces and warfare**
  - .04                **General topics of mounted forces and warfare**
  - .1                **Horse cavalry**
  - .2                **Remount services**
  - .5                **Mechanized cavalry**
- 358            **Air and other specialized forces and warfare; engineering and related services**
  - .1                **Missile forces; army artillery and armored forces**
  - .2                **Army engineering and related services**
  - .3                **Chemical, biological, radiological warfare**
  - .4                **Air forces and warfare**
  - .8                **Space forces**
- 359            **Sea forces and warfare**
  - .001–.009        **Standard subdivisions**
  - .03–.07            [**Situation and policy, naval research and development**]
  - .1–.2             **Naval life and resources**
  - .3                **Organization and personnel of naval forces**
  - .4–.7             **Naval operations, training, administration, installations**
  - .8                **Naval equipment and supplies (Naval matériel)**
  - .9                **Specialized combat forces; engineering and related services**

## 351            **Public administration**

Class here executive branch of government, programs administered by executive branch, civil service in the sense of all units of public administration outside armed services

Class relation of executive branch to other branches, works that deal comprehensively with more than one branch of government in 320.404; class civil service in the sense of merit system in 352.63; class interdisciplinary works on management in 658. Class management of government-owned enterprises operating a service with the service, plus notation 068 from Table 1, e.g., management of public hospitals 362.11068, of nationalized railroads 385.068

*For administration of legislative branch, see 328.068; for administration of judicial branch, see 347.013; for specific topics of public administration, see 352–354*

*See Manual at T1–068 vs. 353–354; also at 320.9, 320.4 vs. 351; also at 351 vs. 352.29*

### **SUMMARY**

- 351.01–.09        **Standard subdivisions**
- .1                **Administration in areas, regions, places in general**
- .3–.9             **Administration in specific continents, countries, localities**

- .025            Directories of persons and organizations  
                   Class directories of elected public officials in 324.025
- .05             Serial publications  
                   Class here official gazettes, serial administrative reports of governmental organizations
- .06             Nongovernmental organizations  
                   Do not use for governmental organizations; class in 351. Do not use for serial administrative reports of governmental organizations; class in 351.05  
                   *See Manual at T1—0601—T1—0609*
- [.068]         Management  
                   Do not use; class in 351
- .07             Education, research, related topics
- .076            Review and exercise  
                   Class here interdisciplinary works on civil service examinations  
                   *For civil service examinations in a specific subject, see the subject, plus notation 076 from Table 1, e.g., examinations in accounting 657.076*  
                   (Option: Class here civil service examinations in specific subjects; prefer the subject in 001–999, plus notation 076 from Table 1. If option is chosen, add to base number 351.076 notation 001–999, e.g., civil service examinations in accounting 351.076657)
- .08             Groups of people  
                   Do not use for programs directed to groups of people; class in 353.53
- .09             History and biography
- [.091]         Areas, regions, places in general  
                   Do not use; class in 351.1
- [.093–.099]    Specific continents, countries, localities  
                   Do not use; class in 351.3–351.9
- .1             Administration in areas, regions, places in general**  
                   Not limited by continent, country, locality  
                   Add to base number 351.1 the numbers following 1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., administration in developing regions 351.1724; however, for urban administration, see 352.16; for rural administration, see 352.17

**.3-9 Administration in specific continents, countries, localities**

Class here administration of specific jurisdictions, practical works on administration of specific subordinate jurisdictions, e.g., specific provinces

Add to base number 351 notation 3-9 from Table 2, e.g., public administration in Germany 351.43

Class theoretical works on specific kinds of subordinate jurisdictions in 352.13-352.19

*See Manual at 351.3-351.9 vs. 352.13-352.19*

(Option A: Class here treatment of specific topics of public administration in specific continents, countries, localities; prefer 352-354, plus notation 09 from table under 352-354. If option is chosen, add to each geographic subdivision as follows:

- 001-007 Standard subdivisions
  - Notation from Table 1 as modified under 351, e.g., serial administrative reports 005
- 008 Groups of people
  - Class programs directed to groups of people in 0353
- 009 History, geographic treatment, biography
  - Use for geographic treatment only when area of interest is narrower than area of jurisdiction, e.g., United States federal administration in Gulf Coast states 351.7300976
- 02-04 Specific topics of public administration
  - Add to 0 the numbers following 35 in 352-354, e.g., social welfare administration 035, programs directed to groups of people 0353

(Option B: Class here treatment of specific topics of public administration in specific continents, countries, localities not requiring local emphasis; prefer 352-354, plus notation 09 from table under 352-354. If option B is chosen, add to each geographic subdivision as instructed under option A)

&gt;

**352–354 Specific topics of public administration**

Class here public administration of specific departments and agencies

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by \* as follows:

- 01–07 Standard subdivisions
  - Notation from Table 1 as modified under 351, e.g., serial administrative reports 05
- 08 Groups of people
  - Class here programs directed to groups of people; equal opportunity programs
- 09 History, geographic treatment, biography
- 093–099 Specific continents, countries, localities
  - (Option A: Class treatment of specific topics of public administration by specific continents, countries, localities in 351.3–351.9)
  - (Option B: In order to provide local emphasis and shorter notation, class specific topics of public administration treated in jurisdictions requiring local emphasis in 352–354 without adding notation 09 from this table, and class specific topics of public administration in specific continents, countries, localities not requiring local emphasis in 351.3–351.9)
- 2 General considerations of public administration
- 21 Jurisdictional levels
- 2101–2109 Standard subdivisions
  - Add to 210 the numbers following 352.10 in 352.101–352.109, e.g., nongovernmental organizations 2106
- 211–219 Specific jurisdictional levels
  - Add to 21 the numbers following 352.1 in 352.11–352.19, e.g., international administration 211
  - Class administration at national level, combined treatment of national and other levels (*except* works that emphasize differences between administration at different levels) in base number without use of notation 21
- 22–26 Specific topics in management
  - Add to 2 the numbers following 352 in 352.2–352.6, e.g., governing boards and commissions 225, contracts and procurement 253; however; planning and policy making of a specific subject relocated from 234 to the subject outside 354, e.g., government policy on arts 700
- 27–28 Public administration of supporting and controlling functions of government
  - Do not use when redundant
  - Add to 2 the numbers following 352 in 352.7–352.8, e.g., promoting and disseminating knowledge 274, regulation 28

Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 352–354 in the number coming last, e.g., chief executive of a department of agriculture 354.52293 (*not* 352.293)

Class misconduct in office regardless of topic in 353.46; class comprehensive works in 351

*See Manual at 352–354; also at 300–330, 355–390 vs. 342–347, 352–354; also at 300, 320.6 vs. 352–354*

## 352 General considerations of public administration

Class here general considerations of public administration applying to two or more branches of government, e.g., financial administration of the legislative and judicial branches 352.4

Class general considerations of public administration applied to a specific field with the field in public administration, plus notation 2 from table under 352-354, e.g., local safety administration 353.9214

*See Manual at 352-354*

### SUMMARY

- 352.1 Jurisdictional levels of administration
- .2 Organization of administration
- .3 Executive management
- .4 Financial administration and budgets
- .5 Property administration and related topics
- .6 Personnel management (Human resource management)
- .7 Public administration of general forms of assistance
- .8 Public administration of general forms of control

[.01-.09] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 351.01-351.09

### .1 Jurisdictional levels of administration

Class programs directed to specific groups of people at specific levels of administration in 353.5321. Class a specific topic in administrative management, support, control at a specific jurisdictional level of administration with the topic in 352.2-352.8, plus notation 21 from table under 352-354, e.g., financial administration and budgets of international agencies 352.4211, regulation by local government 352.8214

Use 351 for combined treatment of national and other levels of administration except for works that emphasize differences between administration at different levels

*For administration at national level, see 351*

### SUMMARY

- 352.101-.109 Standard subdivisions
- .11 International administration
- .13 State and provincial administration
- .14 Local administration
- .15 Intermediate units of local administration
- .16 Urban administration
- .17 Rural administration
- .19 Administration of special service districts

.105 Serial publications

Class here official gazettes, serial administrative reports of governmental organizations

- .106           Nongovernmental organizations  
                   Do not use for governmental organizations; class in 352.1. Do not use for serial administrative reports of governmental organizations; class in 352.105
- [.106 8]       Management  
                   Do not use; class in 352.1
- .108           Groups of people  
                   Do not use for programs at specific levels of administration directed toward groups of people; class in 353.5321
- .11            International administration  
                   Class here administration of intergovernmental organizations  
                   Class interdisciplinary works on intergovernmental organizations in 341.2
- .110 5         Serial publications  
                   Class here official gazettes, serial administrative reports of government organizations
- .110 6         Nongovernmental organizations  
                   Do not use for governmental organizations; class in 352.11. Do not use for serial administrative reports of governmental organizations; class in 352.1105
- [.110 68]      Management  
                   Do not use; class in 352.11
- .110 8         Groups of people  
                   Do not use for international programs directed to groups of people; class in 353.53211
- .110 9         History, geographic treatment, biography
- [.110 94–.110 99]   Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
                   Do not use; class in 352.114–352.119
- .112           League of Nations
- .113           United Nations  
                   Class here secretariat  
                   Class interdisciplinary works on United Nations in 341.23
- .114–.119      International administration in specific continents and parts of continents  
                   Class here administration of international organizations serving continents and parts of continents  
                   Add to base number 352.11 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., international administration in southeast Asia 352.1159, Organization of American States 352.117

> 352.13–352.19 Administration of subordinate jurisdictions

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by † as follows:

- 01–07 Standard subdivisions
  - Notation from Table 1 as modified under 351, e.g., serial administrative reports 05
- 08 Groups of people
  - Do not use for programs directed to groups of people; class in 353.53213
- 09 History, geographic treatment, biography
- 093–099 Specific continents, countries, localities
  - Limited to comprehensive, theoretical, comparative treatment, e.g. administration of Länder in Germany 352.130943
  - Class administration of or in a specific subordinate jurisdiction with the jurisdiction in 351.3–351.9 (*not* 093–099), e.g., administration of Bavaria 351.433
  - See Manual at 351.3–351.9 vs. 352.13–352.19*
- 3 Administrative cooperation among subordinate jurisdictions
  - Class here administrative relations among subordinate jurisdictions that do not involve support and control by a higher jurisdiction, e.g., relations among coordinate city and county governments
  - Class comprehensive works on administrative cooperation among subordinate jurisdictions in 352.143
  - See also 353.33 for support and control of subordinate jurisdictions by higher jurisdictions*
- 301–308 Standard subdivisions
  - Notation from Table 1 as modified under 351, e.g., serial administrative reports 305
- 309 History, geographic treatment, biography

Class comprehensive works on administration of subordinate jurisdictions in 352.14. Class administration of or in a specific subordinate jurisdiction with the jurisdiction in 351.3–351.9, e.g., administration of Bavaria 351.433

*See Manual at 351.3–351.9 vs. 352.13–352.19*

.13 †State and provincial administration

States and provinces: regularly constituted territorial subdivisions of large countries, with responsibilities cutting across several fields of administration, and usually encompassing many local units

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

*See Manual at 352.13 vs. 352.15*

†Add as instructed under 352.13–352.19

## .14 †Local administration

Limited to comprehensive and comparative treatment, e.g., local administration in Germany 352.140943

Class here comprehensive works on administration of subordinate jurisdictions

Class local government, combined treatment of local government and local administration in 320.8; class regional divisions of administrative agencies in 352.288. Class administration in or of a specific subordinate jurisdiction with the jurisdiction in 351.3–351.9, e.g., administration of Nuremberg 351.43324

*For state and provincial administration, see 352.13; for administration of specific kinds of local jurisdictions, see 352.15–352.19; for support and control of subordinate jurisdictions by higher jurisdictions, see 353.33*

*See Manual at 351.3–351.9 vs. 352.13–352.19*

## &gt; 352.15–352.19 Administration of specific kinds of local jurisdictions

Class comprehensive works in 352.14

## .15 †Intermediate units of local administration

Intermediate units: regularly constituted relatively local territorial subdivisions, with responsibilities cutting across several fields of administration, and usually containing few component units

Class here arrondissements, counties, shires, territorial departments; provinces of small countries

*See Manual at 352.13 vs. 352.15*

## .16 †Urban administration

Class here city administration

*See also 354.2793 for public administration of urban development*

## .167 †Administration of metropolitan regions

## .169 †Suburban administration

## .17 †Rural administration

*See also 354.2794 for public administration of rural development*

## .19 †Administration of special service districts

Local districts or authorities established to provide one or a few services

Class regional divisions of state and national agencies in 352.288. Class administration of specific kinds of special service districts with the service they administer, e.g., metropolitan districts to coordinate administration of health services 353.6219, local rail transit authorities that operate trains 388.42065

†Add as instructed under 352.13–352.19

.193

Administrative cooperation among jurisdictions served by special service districts

Number built according to instructions under 352.13–352.19

Class here control of special service districts by higher jurisdictions and by other local authorities

> **352.2–352.6 Specific topics of management in public administration**

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by ‡ as follows:

01–09 Standard subdivisions

Add to 0 the numbers following 0 in notation 01–09 from table under 352–354, e.g., programs directed to groups of people 08

2 General considerations of public administration

21 Jurisdictional levels

2101–2109 Standard subdivisions

Add to 210 the numbers following 352.10 in 352.101–352.109, e.g., nongovernmental organizations 2106

211–219 Specific jurisdictional levels

Add to 21 the numbers following 352.1 in 352.11–352.19, e.g., international administration 211

Class administration at national level, combined treatment of national and other levels (*except* works that emphasize differences between administration at different levels) in base number without use of notation 21

22–26 Specific topics in management

Add to 2 the numbers following 352 in 352.2–352.6, e.g., governing boards and commissions 225, planning and policy making 234, contracts and procurement 253

Class comprehensive works on administrative aspects in 351; class interdisciplinary works on management, on specific topics of management in 658

.2 ‡**Organization of administration**

Class comprehensive works on executive management in public administration in 352.3; class interdisciplinary works on organization in management in 658.1

**SUMMARY**

352.23	Chief executives
.24	Cabinets and cabinet-level committees
.25	Governing boards and commissions
.26	Special kinds of agencies
.28	Internal organization
.29	Organization and structure of departments and agencies

‡Add as instructed under 352.2–352.6

- .23 ‡Chief executives
- Class here presidents, prime ministers, monarchs; comprehensive works on heads of state
- Class governing boards and commissions in 352.25
- For heads of departments and agencies, see 352.293. For a specific aspect of heads of state, see the aspect, e.g., presidential government 321.8042*
- .230 92 Biography
- Do not use for collected biographies of chief executives; class in 930–990 plus notation 0099 from table under 930–990, e.g., collected biography of kings and queens of Great Britain 941.0099. Do not use for individual biographies of chief executive; class in 930–990 plus notation 01–09 for the period of the person's administration from table under 930–990, plus notation 092 from Table 1, e.g., biography of Queen Elizabeth of England 942.055092
- Class here biography of chief executives as administrators
- See Manual at T1–092: Comprehensive biography: Public figures; also at 920.009, 920.03–920.09 vs. 909.09, 909.1–909.8, 930–990*
- .233 ‡Heads of state lacking administrative powers
- Presidents in countries where prime ministers are head of administration; constitutional monarchs and their representatives, e.g., governors-general in Commonwealth of Nations countries
- .233 092 Biography
- Do not use for collected biographies of heads of states lacking administrative powers; class in 930–990 plus notation 0099 from table under 930–990, e.g., collected biography of constitutional monarchs of Great Britain 941.0099. Do not use for individual biographies of heads of states lacking administrative powers; class in 930–990 plus notation 01–09 for the period of the person's administration from table under 930–990, plus notation 092 from Table 1, e.g., biography of Queen Elizabeth of Great Britain 941.085092
- See Manual at T1–092: Comprehensive biography: Public figures; also at 920.009, 920.03–920.09 vs. 909.09, 909.1–909.8, 930–990*
- .235 ‡Powers and privileges of chief executives
- Class abuse of power in 353.46
- .236 ‡Leadership role of chief executives
- .237 ‡Office of chief executive

- .237 229 3                   Heads and deputy heads of office of chief executive  
                                   Number built according to instructions under 352–354  
                                   Class here chief of staff to chief executive
- .238                   ‡Executive messages, speeches, writings  
                                   Collections, history, description, criticism  
                                   *For messages, speeches, writings on a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., budget messages of specific jurisdictions 352.493–352.499, messages on German budget 352.4943013, executive messages on economics 330, executive messages on economy of Germany 330.943*
- .238 4                   ‡Addresses to legislatures
- .238 6                   ‡Inaugural addresses
- .239                   ‡Deputy chief executives
- .239 092                   Biography  
                                   Do not use for collected biographies of deputy chief executives; class in 930–990 plus notation 0099 from table under 930–990, e.g., collected biography of deputy prime ministers of Australia 994.0099. Do not use for individual biographies of deputy chief executives; class in 930–990 plus notation 01–09 for the period of the person's administration from table under 930–990, plus notation 092 from Table 1, e.g., biography of Deputy Prime Minister Tim Fischer of Australia 994.066092  
                                   Class here biographies of deputy chief executives as administrators  
                                   *See Manual at T1–092: Comprehensive biography: Public figures; also at 920.009, 920.03–920.09 vs. 909.09, 909.1–909.8, 930–990*
- .24                   ‡Cabinets and cabinet-level committees  
                                   Class here councils of ministers, executive councils  
                                   Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                                   *For a cabinet-level committee charged with a specific activity, see the activity, plus notation 224 from table under 352–354, e.g., cabinet councils on the economy 354.224*
- .243                   ‡Cabinet secretariats
- .243 229 3                   Heads and deputy heads of cabinet secretariats  
                                   Number built according to instructions under 352–354  
                                   Class here cabinet secretaries, ministers with a portfolio of cabinet affairs
- .246                   ‡Domestic councils

‡Add as instructed under 352.2–352.6

- .25 ‡Governing boards and commissions  
 Multimember bodies (other than cabinets and cabinet-level committees) selecting executives and or participating in executive decisions  
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
 Class a specific board or commission with the topic it administers, plus notation 09 (*not* 225) from table under 352–354, e.g., United States National Labor Relations Board 354.970973 (*not* 354.972250973)  
*For regulatory boards and commissions, see 352.8*  
*See also 352.743 for advisory bodies*
- .26 ‡Special kinds of agencies  
*For a special kind of agency not provided for here, see the kind, e.g., cabinets 352.24*
- .264 ‡Independent agencies  
 Agencies that are not parts of larger (cabinet-level) departments  
 Avoid using notation 2264 from table under 352–354 for specific independent agencies, e.g., independent regulatory agencies 352.8 (*not* 352.82264)  
 Class autonomous authorities of local scope in 352.19
- .266 ‡Government corporations (Public enterprises)  
 Class interdisciplinary works on government corporations in 338.749
- .28 ‡Internal organization  
 Class here levels of management  
*For supervision, see 352.66*
- .283 ‡Distribution and delegation of authority  
 Including centralization, decentralization  
 Class here line and staff organization  
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
*For regional divisions of administrative departments, see 352.288*
- .284 ‡Middle management
- .285 ‡Top management
- .288 ‡Regional divisions of administrative agencies  
 Class here field offices, regional offices

- .29 ‡Organization and structure of departments and agencies
- Limited to generalities of organization and structure
- Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Class description and purposes of departments and agencies in general in 351. Class organization and structure of a specific kind of department or agency with the kind, plus notation 22 (*not* 229) from table under 352–354, e.g., structure of governing boards 352.2522, structure of governing boards in Germany 352.25220943
- See Manual at 351 vs. 352.29; also at 352–354*
- .293 ‡Heads and deputy heads of departments and agencies
- Class here cabinet officers, ministers of state, secretaries of state
- Class cabinet secretaries, ministers with a portfolio of cabinet affairs in 352.2432293; class secretaries of state of specific states of United States in 352.3870974–352.3870979; class secretaries of state for foreign affairs in 353.132293; class prime ministers, comprehensive works on chief executives in 352.23
- See also 352.39 for executive development*
- See Manual at 352–354*
- .3 ‡Executive management
- Class here interdisciplinary works on public administrators
- Class interdisciplinary works on executive management in 658.4
- For internal organization, see 352.28. For a specific aspect of public administrators, see the aspect, e.g., biography 351.092, law 342.068*
- .33 ‡Decision making
- Class specific means of obtaining guidance for decision making in 352.37
- .34 ‡Planning and policy making
- Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Class specific means of obtaining guidance for planning and policy making in 352.37
- See Manual at 300, 320.6 vs. 352–354*
- .35 ‡Internal control
- Including internal inspection, agency ombudsmen
- Class here accountability in public administration, administrative responsibility, oversight
- Class legislative oversight in 328.3456; class administration of control of society by government in 352.8
- For oversight by outside agencies, see 352.88*

- .357 ‡Quality control  
     Class quality control by managerial accounting in 352.43
- .36 ‡Objectives of administration  
     Class here management by objective (MBO)  
     Class means of obtaining objectives in 352.37
- .365 ‡Project management
- .367 ‡Managing change  
     Class here modernization
- .37 ‡Means of obtaining objectives  
     Class here specific means of obtaining guidance for policy and decision making  
     Class comprehensive works on decision making in 352.33; class comprehensive works on policy in 352.34; class management by objectives in 352.36  
     *For use of information, see 352.38; for fact-finding and advisory bodies, see 352.743*
- .373 ‡Use of consultants
- .375 ‡Promotion of efficiency
- .379 ‡Intelligence and security  
     Including computer and office security, security classification  
     Class military security classification in 355.3433  
     *See also 353.1 for administration of external and national security*
- .38 ‡Information management  
     Class fact-finding and advisory bodies in 352.743
- .384 ‡Communication in management
- .387 ‡Records management  
     Class here maintaining official records  
     Class archival treatment of public records in 025.1714; class secretaries of state in specific states of United States in 352.3870974–352.3870979; class programs supporting archives in 352.744  
     *See Manual at 352–354*
- .39 ‡Managing executive personnel  
     Class here executive development, leadership, management environment  
     *For leadership role of chief executive, see 352.236; for specific aspects of managing of executive personnel, see 352.6*

**.4 ‡Financial administration and budgets**

Class here management of public finance; treasury departments and ministries; works covering both government financial administration and administration of financial institutions, money, credit

Subdivisions are added for financial administration and budgets together, for financial administration alone

Class interdisciplinary works on public finance in 336; class interdisciplinary works on financial management in 658.15

*For administration of financial institutions, money, credit, see 354.8*

*See also 332.46 for monetary policy; also 336.3 for fiscal policy*

**.43 ‡Financial control**

Class here managerial accounting (financial and nonfinancial); agencies that perform management, performance, program auditing, e.g., general accounting offices

Class ordinary accounting of government agencies in 657.835

**.439 ‡Management, performance, program audits**

Internal or external audits or comparable reviews to evaluate efficiency, conformance to policies and standards, and effectiveness of expenditures of funds or other administrative activities

Class here reports of general accounting offices

Subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

Class financial auditing of government agencies in 657.835045

**.44 ‡Revenue administration**

Class here tax administration, tax collection

*See also 353.43 for tax litigation*

*See Manual at 343.04–343.06 vs. 336.2, 352.44*

**.448 ‡Customs administration****.45 ‡Debt management****.46 ‡Public expenditures**

*For payroll administration, see 352.47; for contracts, see 352.53; for financial assistance, see 352.73*

**.47 ‡Payroll administration**

*See also 352.67 for wage and salary scales of government workers; also 354.98 for wages and salaries of labor and professions*

## .48 ‡Budgeting

Including adoption of budgets, budget messages; specific kinds of budgets, e.g., capital, estimated, legislative budgets

Class here comprehensive works on budgets

*For procedures for legislative enactment of budgets, see 328.378; for budgets of specific international organizations and specific jurisdictions, see 352.49*

## .49 Budgets for specific international organizations and specific jurisdictions

Class comprehensive works on budgets in 352.48

## [.490 1–.490 9] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 352.4801–352.4809

## .491 Budgets for specific international organizations

Add to base number 352.491 the numbers following 352.11 in 352.112–352.119, e.g., budgets for United Nations 352.4913; then add further as instructed under 352.493–352.499, e.g., proposed budgets for United Nations 352.491301

‡Add as instructed under 352.2–352.6

## .493--.499 Budgets for specific jurisdictions

Add to base number 352.49 notation 3-9 from Table 2, e.g., a budget of Germany 352.4943; then add further as follows:

- 001-007 Standard subdivisions
  - Notation from Table 1 as modified under 351, e.g., official serial reports on budgets 005
- 008-009 Standard subdivisions
- >01-03 Comprehensive budgets in specific stages of adoption
  - Class here operating budgets
  - Class partial budgets in specific stages of adoption in 04-08; class comprehensive works in 352.493-352.499 without use of notation from this table
- 01 Proposed budgets
  - Class here estimated budgets, executive budgets, budget requests from recipient agencies
  - For budgets in legislative process, see 02*
- 013 Executive budget messages and supporting documents
- 02 Budgets in legislative process
  - Class here legislative budgets, legislative authorizations
- 023 Legislative hearings and reports on budgets
  - Hearings that concentrate on the objectives that a budget is to achieve are usually classed with the subject outside public administration, e.g., a hearing on the prospect that a budget will help achieve economic stabilization and growth 339.522
  - See Manual at 300-330, 355-390 vs. 342-347, 352-354*
- 03 Adopted budgets
- >04-08 Partial budgets
  - Class comprehensive works in 352.493-352.499 without use of notation from this table. Class budgets for a specific jurisdiction limited to a specific subject with the subject, plus notation 249 from table under 352-354, e.g., agricultural budgets in specific jurisdictions 354.5249, agricultural budgets for Germany 354.524943
  - For operating budgets, see 01-03*
- 04 Revenue budgets
- 05 Capital budgets
- 08 Supplemental budgets

Class works on budgeting, on budgets in general in 352.48

**.5 ‡Property administration and related topics**

Class here general services agencies

Subdivisions are added for property administration and related topics together, for property administration alone

Class records management in 352.387

‡Add as instructed under 352.2-352.6

- .53 ‡Contracts and procurement  
 Class here procurement of property, comprehensive works on public contracts  
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
*For procurement of specific forms of property, see 352.55–352.57. For public contracts not related to property, see the subject, plus notation 253 from table under 352–354, e.g., personnel contracts 352.65253*
- .538 ‡Contracting for services  
 Class here contracting out  
 Class use of consultants in 352.373
- .54 ‡Maintenance, utilization, disposal of property  
 Including inventory  
*For maintenance, utilization, disposal of specific forms of property, see 352.55–352.57*
- .55 \*Equipment and supplies  
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
 Class interdisciplinary works on supply management in 658.7
- .553 \*Contracts and procurement  
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .554 \*Maintenance, utilization, disposal
- .56 \*Buildings and their utilities  
 Class here plant management  
 Subdivisions are added for buildings and their utilities, for buildings alone  
 Class interdisciplinary works on plant management in 658.2  
*For public land management, see 352.57*
- .563 \*Contracts and procurement  
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .564 \*Maintenance, utilization, disposal
- .57 \*Public lands  
 Class comprehensive works on land resources in 354.34
- .573 \*Contracts and procurement  
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .574 \*Maintenance, utilization, disposal

\*Add as instructed under 352–354

‡Add as instructed under 352.2–352.6

**.6 ‡Personnel management (Human resource management)**

Use subdivisions of 352.6 for specific aspects of management of executive personnel

Class contracting out in 352.538; class interdisciplinary works on personnel management in 658.3

*For general management of executive personnel, see 352.39*

.602 5 Directories of people and organizations in personnel management

Class directories of public officials and employees in 351.025

.608 Groups of people

Class here equal employment opportunity programs for government employees

Class comprehensive works on equal employment opportunity programs in 354.908

.63 ‡Civil service system

Government service in which appointments are determined by merit and examination rather than by political patronage

Including management of office workers

Class here government service, merit system, interdisciplinary works on government workers

Class civil service in the sense of all units of public administration other than armed services in 351; class civil service examinations in 351.076

*For a specific aspect of government service and government workers, see the aspect, e.g., labor economics 331.795, wage and salary scales 352.67*

.64 ‡Job description

Including job analysis and classification

.65 ‡Recruiting and selection

.650 8 Groups of people

Class here preferential hiring

.66 ‡Utilization and training

Including discipline, evaluation, motivation, placement, supervision; absenteeism, turnover

Subdivisions are added for utilization and training, for utilization alone

.669 ‡Training

- .67 ‡Conditions of employment  
 Including fringe benefits, e.g., counseling, health services; hours of work, work environment  
 Class here compensation  
 Class payroll administration in 352.47; class public administration of pensions for government workers in 353.549; class comprehensive works on conditions of employment for all workers in 354.98  
*For training, see 352.669*
- .68 ‡Employer-employee relationships  
 Including labor unions and collective bargaining, other employee organizations, employee participation in management, grievances  
 Class comprehensive works on grievances against government in 352.885; class comprehensive works on labor unions and collective bargaining for all workers in 354.97
- .69 ‡Separation from service  
 Including dismissal, layoffs, reduction in force, retirement  
 Class public administration of pensions for government workers in 353.549

> **352.7–352.8 Public administration of supporting and controlling functions of government**

Class comprehensive works in 351. Class public administration of support and control of a specific topic of management with the topic, plus notation 27–28 from add table under 352–354, e.g., support for commerce and trade 354.7327, advisory bodies in commerce and trade 354.732743

.7 **\*Public administration of general forms of assistance**

Class here the promotional and supporting role of administration when considered apart from its restraining and limiting role; administration of research and development in noneconomic fields

Class comprehensive works on public administration of research and development in 354.27

*See also 352.8 for the restraining and limiting role of administration*

**SUMMARY**

352.73	<b>Financial assistance</b>
.74	<b>Promoting and disseminating knowledge</b>
.75	<b>Census and surveys</b>
.76	<b>Promoting museums and exhibitions</b>
.77	<b>Public works</b>
.78	<b>Sponsorship of volunteers and public service activities</b>
.79	<b>Assistance to urban, suburban, rural areas</b>

\*Add as instructed under 352–354

‡Add as instructed under 352.2–352.6

- .73      \*Financial assistance
- Financial assistance to subordinate jurisdictions or to private parties
- Class here grants, grants-in-aid, revenue sharing
- Class comprehensive works on support and control of subordinate jurisdictions in 353.33
- For price supports, see 352.85*
- .734      Financial support for specific kinds of subordinate jurisdictions
- Add to base number 352.734 the numbers following 352.1 in 352.13–352.19, e.g., grants to states and provinces 352.7343, grants to local governments from either national governments or states and provinces 352.7344
- .736      \*Loans and loan guarantees
- Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .74        \*Promoting and disseminating knowledge
- Class here promoting research
- Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Class governmental publishers in 070.595
- For census and surveys, see 352.75; for promoting museums and exhibitions, see 352.76; for public administration of agencies supporting and controlling education, see 353.8*
- .743      \*Fact-finding and advisory bodies
- Bodies advising the government or the public
- Temporary and permanent
- Class here counseling bodies, royal commissions
- Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- See also 352.25 for governing boards and commissions*
- .744      \*Promoting libraries and historical research
- Class here programs supporting archives
- Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Class library administration in 025.1; class archives administration in 025.1714; class records management in 352.387
- For public administration of agencies supporting public libraries, see 353.73*

- .745      \*Promoting general fields of knowledge
- Including natural sciences, social and behavioral sciences, technology; specific field of knowledge not provided for elsewhere, e.g., physics, space
- Class here promoting experimental research
- Class promoting museums and exhibitions in 352.76. Class promoting a specific field of knowledge provided for elsewhere with the field in public administration, plus notation 274 (*not* 2745) from table under 352–354 if not redundant, e.g., promoting environmental knowledge by an environmental protection agency 354.328274, but promoting public libraries 353.73 (*not* 353.73274)
- For promoting arts and humanities, see 353.77*
- See also 338.926–338.927 for science policy, policies to promote economic development through use of science and technology; also 355.07 for military research and development*
- See Manual at 338.926 vs. 352.745, 500*
- .746      \*Consumer information programs
- Class here consumer protection
- Class interdisciplinary works on consumer information in 381.33; class interdisciplinary works on consumer protection in 381.34
- For a specific aspect of consumer protection, see the aspect, e.g., price and cost controls 352.85*
- .748      \*Publicity activities
- Publicity for government's own activities
- Class here public relations
- Class interdisciplinary works on public relations in 659.2
- .749      \*Protecting intellectual property
- Regardless of subject or field
- Including copyright, patents, trademarks
- .75      \*Census and surveys
- Class here public administration of descriptive research
- Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

- .76      \*Promoting museums and exhibitions  
           Class here government participation in fairs and expositions  
           Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
           Class comprehensive works on public administration of culture and related activities in 353.7  
           *See also 069 for government policy on museums*
- .77      \*Public works  
           *For a specific program of public works, see the program, e.g., transportation public works 354.76277*
- .78      \*Sponsorship of volunteers and public service activities  
           Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .79      \*Assistance to urban, suburban, rural areas  
           Class specific form of assistance to urban and rural areas in 352.73–352.78; class comprehensive works on public administration of urban and rural development in 354.279  
           *See also 352.7091724 for assistance to underdeveloped areas*
- .793     \*Urban and suburban areas  
           Including community planning  
           Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
           Class community planning for rural areas in 352.794; class community action programs in 353.52793; class comprehensive works on public administration of community development in 354.2793  
           *See also 353.5333 for programs directed to residents of disadvantaged urban areas*
- .794     \*Rural areas  
           *See also 353.5334 for programs directed to residents of rural areas*
- .8      \*Public administration of general forms of control**  
           Class here the restraining and limiting role of administration when considered apart from its promotional and supporting role; regulation, regulatory agencies, quasi-judicial agencies  
           Class internal control of administrative activities in 352.35; class watchdog agencies in 352.88  
           *See also 352.7 for promotional and supporting role of administration*
- .83     \*Setting standards  
           Class here inspection, establishing weights and measures  
           Class inspection as a form of internal control in 352.35

- .84      \***Licensing, accreditation, certification, chartering, registration; incorporation**  
           Class here interdisciplinary works on licensing, accreditation, certification, chartering, registration  
           Subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading  
           Class interdisciplinary works on incorporation in 346.06622  
           *For licensing, accreditation, certification, chartering by nongovernmental organizations, see 060*
- .85      \***Price and cost controls**  
           Class here price supports  
           Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .86      \***Rationing**  
           Class here allocation
- .88      \***Use of watchdog and oversight agencies**  
           Including ethics agencies  
           Class here promotion of procedural rights, agencies providing checks and balances to administrative operations, interdisciplinary works on ombudsmen  
           Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
           Class oversight in executive management, ombudsmen within agencies in 352.35; class quasi-judicial agencies in 352.8; class misconduct in office in 353.46  
           *For ombudsman role in legislative bodies, see 328.3452*  
           *See also 342.06 for administrative law*
- .885     \***Processing claims against government**  
           Class here government liability, grievances against government  
           *For government-employee grievances, see 352.68; for international claims, see 353.44*

### **353      Specific fields of public administration**

*For public administration of economy and environment, see 354*

*See Manual at T1—068 vs. 353—354; also at 352—354; also at 363 vs. 344.02—344.05, 353—354*

## SUMMARY

- 353.1 Public administration of external and national security affairs
- .3 Public administration of services related to domestic order
- .4 Public administration of justice
- .5 Public administration of social welfare
- .6 Public administration of health services
- .7 Public administration of culture and related activities
- .8 Public administration of agencies supporting and controlling education
- .9 Public administration of safety, sanitation, waste control

[.01–.09] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 351.01–351.09

**.1 \*Public administration of external and national security affairs**

Subdivisions are added for external and national security affairs together, for national security affairs alone

Class interdisciplinary works on national security in 355.03

*For military and defense administration, see 355.6*

*See also 352.379 for intelligence and security in executive management*

.122 4 Cabinet-level national security councils

Number built according to instructions under 352–354

**.13 \*Foreign and diplomatic relations**

Class here departments and ministries of foreign affairs

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class interdisciplinary works on foreign relations in 327

.132 63 Foreign service

Number built according to instructions under 352–354

Class here consular and diplomatic services

.132 73 Financial assistance

Number built according to instructions under 352–354

Class here foreign aid

Class use of foreign aid to attain foreign policy objectives in 327.111; class interdisciplinary works on foreign aid in 338.91

.132 74 Promotion and dissemination of knowledge

Number built according to instructions under 352–354

Class here government information services

Class interdisciplinary works on government information services in 327.11

\*Add as instructed under 352–354

- .15           \*Administration of non-self-governing territories  
                   Class here administration of colonies, of semisovereign states  
                   Class military government of occupied territories in 355.49
- .150 93–.150 99           Specific continents, countries, localities  
                                   Do not use for administration of specific non-self-governing territories; class in 351.3–351.9 e.g., British colonial administration in Kenya 351.67620904  
                                   Limited to administration of more than one jurisdiction, e.g., British colonial administration 353.150941, British colonial administration in Africa 353.150941096
- .159           Administration of territories under international control
- .17           \*Intelligence and counterintelligence  
                   Limited to administration of operations primarily focused on foreign threats  
                   Class here espionage, subversion  
                   Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Class activities of domestic police services relating to intelligence and subversion in 363.23; class interdisciplinary works on espionage, subversion, intelligence in 327.12
- (.2)           **Military and defense administration**  
                   (Optional number; prefer 355.6)  
                   Class here army administration  
                                   *For specific topics in military and defense administration, see 355.6*
- (.25)          Naval administration  
                   (Optional number; prefer 359.6)  
                                   *For specific topics in naval administration, see 359.6*
- (.27)          Air forces administration  
                   (Optional number; prefer 358.416)  
                                   *For specific topics in air forces administration, see 358.416*
- (.29)          Administration of other military forces  
                   (Optional number; prefer numbers for specific forces in 356–359)  
                                   *For specific topics in administration of other specific forces, see the specific force, plus notation 6 from table under 356–359, e.g., executive management of marine forces 359.966*

> **353.3–353.9 Public administration in domestic fields not related to economy and environment**

Many works classed here will concern activities of national or state and provincial governments to regulate, control, or support services provided by local government agencies. These activities are in contrast to those of local governments which provide the actual services. Works on managing local agencies that directly serve the ultimate recipients are usually classed with the service outside public administration, e.g., management of city police departments 363.2068 (*not* 353.36216), of parole boards 364.62068 (*not* 353.39), of local school systems 371.2 (*not* 353.8214)

Class comprehensive works in 351

*See Manual at T1—068 vs. 353–354*

.3 **\*Public administration of services related to domestic order**

Class here home departments and ministries, European style interior ministries

*For public administration of justice, see 353.4*

*See also 354.30973 for United States Department of the Interior*

.33 **\*Support and control of subordinate jurisdictions by higher jurisdictions**

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class comprehensive works on administration of subordinate jurisdictions in 352.14

*For financial support of subordinate jurisdictions, see 352.73*

.332 13–.332 19 Administration by subordinate jurisdictions

Numbers built according to instructions under 352–354

Class support and control of specific kinds of subordinate jurisdictions in 353.333–353.339

.333–.339 Support and control of specific kinds of subordinate jurisdictions

Unless it is redundant, add to base number 353.33 the numbers following 352.1 in 352.13–352.19, e.g., support and control of counties 353.335, but comprehensive works on support and control of local administration by states and provinces or by unitary national administration 353.33 (*not* 353.334); however,

for control of special service districts, see 352.193; for support of urban, suburban, rural areas, see 352.79

.36 **\*Police services**

Including control of crowds, explosives, guns; crime prevention

Class operational management of police services in 363.2068; class operational management of bureaus of investigation in 363.25068

*For regulating personal conduct, see 353.37*

\*Add as instructed under 352–354

- .37      **\*Regulating personal conduct**  
           Including public administration of censorship; control of alcohol, drugs, gambling, pornography, prostitution, sexual mores and morals  
           Class personal liberty in 323.44; class police control of personal conduct in 363.23; class censorship in 363.31; class interdisciplinary works on controversies relating to public morals and customs in 363.4
- .39      **\*Corrections**  
           Including parole and probation services  
           Class here prisons  
           Class interdisciplinary works on administration of correctional activities in 364.6068; class interdisciplinary works on parole administration in 364.62068; class interdisciplinary works on probation administration in 364.63068; class interdisciplinary works on prison administration in 365.068
- .4        **\*Public administration of justice**  
           Class here public administration of criminal justice, departments of justice  
           *For judicial administration, see 347.013; for police services, see 353.36; for correctional activities, see 353.39*
- .43      **\*Criminal matters**  
           Including antitrust and tax litigation  
           Class here criminal prosecution  
           Class marshals service in 347.016; class criminal litigation to promote civil rights in 353.48; class administration of police services in 363.25068; class interdisciplinary works on criminal procedure in 345.05
- .44      **\*Civil matters**  
           Including international-claims litigation  
           Class administrative processing of claims against government in 352.885; class civil litigation to promote citizenship and rights in 353.48; class interdisciplinary works on civil procedure in 347.05
- .46      **\*Misconduct in office**  
           Regardless of topic or field  
           Class here abuse of power, civil rights violations, conflict of interest, corruption, whistle blowing  
           Class problems resolvable by routine administrative procedures in 352.88; class interdisciplinary works on misconduct in office in 364.132

- .463      \*Public investigations and inquiries  
             Other than normal administrative and legislative oversight  
             Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
             Class legislative oversight hearings on administrative matters with the  
             subject in public administration, e.g., on public administration of social  
             welfare 353.5  
             *See also 328.3452 for legislative investigative power; also 352.88 for  
             normal administrative oversight and watchdog agencies*
- .465      Misconduct in specific areas of public administration  
             Add to base number 353.465 the numbers following 35 in 352–354, e.g.,  
             misconduct in treasury departments 353.46524
- .48        \*Exercise of citizenship and rights  
             Including litigation  
             Class here promotion of civil rights  
             Class election procedures in 324.6  
             *For administration of public defenders, see 345.01; for promotion of  
             procedural rights, see 352.88*
- .484      \*Immigration and naturalization services  
             Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
             Class comprehensive works on activities relating to population and  
             settlement in 353.59
- .5        \*Public administration of social welfare**  
             Class here human services, social security in the sense of social welfare  
             Class social security in the sense of retirement income in 353.54  
             *For public administration of health services, see 353.6*  
             *See Manual at 361–365 vs. 353.5*

### SUMMARY

- |         |  |
|---------|--|
| 353.508 | Groups of people                                 |
| .53     | Programs directed to groups of people            |
| .54     | Income maintenance                               |
| .55     | Housing  |
| .56     | Nutrition and food                               |
| .59     | Activities relating to population and settlement |
- .508      Groups of people  
             Do not use for programs directed to groups of people; class in 353.53

\*Add as instructed under 352–354

- .53      \*Programs directed to groups of people
- Class here equal opportunity programs; programs for minorities, for socially disadvantaged groups; comprehensive works on programs in public administration directed to groups of people
- Class programs directed to victims of crime and political oppression regardless of other group characteristic in 353.5337–353.5338; class programs directed to ethnic minorities in 353.5339. Class a program directing a specific kind of service to groups of people with the kind of service, plus notation 08 from Table 1, e.g., personnel programs directed to minorities 352.608, administrative support for children's recreation 353.78083
- For programs directed to labor and professional groups, see 354.9*
- .533      Specific miscellaneous groups
- Only those named below
- [.533 01–.533 09]      Standard subdivisions
- Do not use; class in 353.5301–353.5309
- .533 1      \*Families
- Class here unmarried mothers
- See also 353.536 for children*
- .533 2      \*Poor people
- Class poor residents of disadvantaged urban and suburban areas in 353.5333; class poor residents of disadvantaged rural and sparsely populated areas in 353.5334
- .533 3      \*Residents of disadvantaged urban and suburban areas
- Class here residents of inner cities, of slums
- Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Class comprehensive works on assistance to urban and suburban areas in 352.793
- See also 354.2793 for urban and suburban development*
- .533 4      \*Residents of rural and sparsely populated areas
- Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Class comprehensive works on assistance to rural areas in 352.794
- See also 354.2794 for rural development*
- .533 7      \*Victims of crime
- Regardless of other group characteristics or kind of crime
- Class people who are victims of both crime and political oppression in 353.5338

- .533 8           \*Victims of oppression  
                   Regardless of other group characteristics or of reason for oppression  
                   Class here refugees, victims of religious persecution
- .533 9           \*Ethnic and national groups in general  
                   Class here programs directed to ethnic minorities  
                   *For specific ethnic and national groups, see 353.534*
- .534            Specific ethnic and national groups  
 [.534 001–.534 009]   Standard subdivisions  
                   Do not use; class in 353.533901–353.533909
- .534 05–.534 09    Specific ethnic and national groups with ethnic origins from more  
                   than one continent, of European descent  
                   Add to base number 353.534 notation 05–09 from Table 5, e.g.,  
                   programs directed to ethnic groups of European descent 353.53409
- .534 1–.534 9      Specific ethnic groups with other origins  
                   Add to base number 704.03 notation 1–9 from Table 5, e.g., programs  
                   for Spanish Americans 353.53468
- .535            \*Women
- .536            \*Young people to age twenty  
                   Class here children
- .536 5            Young people twelve to twenty  
                   Variant names: adolescents, teenagers, young adults, youth
- .537            \*People in late adulthood
- .538            \*Veterans
- .539            \*People with disabilities and illnesses  
                   Programs not predominantly health related, e.g., access for people with  
                   disabilities  
                   Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Class health programs for people with disabilities and illnesses in 353.6

- .54      **\*Income maintenance**  
           Including guaranteed minimum income, unemployment insurance  
           Class here pensions, social security in the sense of retirement income, comprehensive works on public administration of government sponsored insurance  
           Class social security in the sense of social welfare in 353.5; class comprehensive works on insurance in 354.85  
           *For government-sponsored health insurance, see 353.69*
- .548      Public administration of pensions limited to specific occupations and groups of occupations  
           Add to base number 353.548 the numbers following 354.9 in 354.93–354.95, e.g., public administration of railroad pensions 353.5485385  
           *For pensions of government workers, see 353.549*  
           *See also 331.252 for pension benefits*
- .549      **\*Public administration of pensions for government workers**  
           *See also 352.69 for retirement of government workers*
- .55      **\*Housing**  
           Including public housing, assistance to home owners
- .56      **\*Nutrition and food**  
           *For food purity, designation of nutritional content, see 353.997*
- .59      **\*Activities relating to population and settlement**  
           Including birth and death certificates, birth control, population movement  
           *For immigration and naturalization services, see 353.484*
- .6      **\*Public administration of health services**  
           Including disposal of the dead  
           Class here rehabilitation services, services for physical illness  
           Class comprehensive works on public administration of social welfare in 353.5
- .627 4      Promoting and disseminating knowledge  
           Number built according to instructions under 352–354  
           Class here health promotion, physical fitness programs
- .628      General forms of control  
           Number built according to instructions under 352–354  
           Class here disease control, medical screening

\*Add as instructed under 352–354

- .63 Specific kinds of physical diseases  
Including cancer, communicable diseases
- .64 \*Mental health services  
Including services for substance abuse  
*For services for people with mental retardation, see 353.65*
- .65 \*Services for people with mental retardation
- .66 \*Services for people with physical disabilities
- .68 \*Health care facilities
- .69 \*Health insurance  
Including workers' compensation insurance  
Class here hospital insurance; specific health insurance programs, e.g., United States Medicaid and Medicare 353.690973
- .7 \*Public administration of culture and related activities**  
Including programs to support and control religion, language programs  
Subdivisions are added for culture and related activities together, for culture alone  
Class public administration of communications in 354.75  
*For promoting museums and exhibitions, see 352.76; for public administration of education, see 353.8*  
*See also 306 for government policy on culture; also 322.1 for government policy on religion; also 353.48 for promotion of religious freedom*
- .73 \*Public libraries  
Public administration of agencies supporting and controlling public libraries and library systems  
Class administration of public libraries and library systems in 025.1974; class public administration of support for libraries in general in 352.744
- [.732 25] Governing boards and commissions  
Do not use; class in 021.82
- .77 \*Arts and humanities  
Including crafts, performing arts, celebrations, historical preservation  
*For recreation, see 353.78*  
*See also 001.3 for government policy on humanities; also 306.449 for government policy on language; also 700 for government policy on arts*

- .78        **\*Recreation**  
             Including parks, recreational use of environment, sports hunting and fishing  
             Class here sports  
             Class comprehensive works on hunting in 354.349; class comprehensive works on fishing in 354.57  
             *For crafts and performing arts, see 353.77*
- .8        \*Public administration of agencies supporting and controlling education**  
             Class here agencies supporting and controlling primary education, supporting and controlling secondary education  
             Class school administration and management in 371.2; class public policy issues in education in 379; class comprehensive works on promotion and dissemination of knowledge in 352.74  
             *See Manual at 371 vs. 353.8, 371.2, 379*
- .822 5        Governing boards and commissions  
                     Number built according to instructions under 352–354  
                     *For local school boards, see 379.1531*
- .824        Financial administration of public education  
                     Number built according to instructions under 352–354  
                     Class here financial administration of agencies supporting and controlling public education  
                     Class financial management of schools and school systems in 371.206
- .84        **\*Adult education**
- .88        **\*Higher education**
- .89        **\*Special education**
- .9        \*Public administration of safety, sanitation, waste control**  
             Subdivisions are added for public administration of safety, sanitation, waste control together, for public administration of safety alone
- .93        **\*Sanitation and waste control**  
             Including cleanup of pollution, recycling  
             Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
             Class operational management of waste control and disposal services in 363.728068; class comprehensive works on public administration of pollution in 354.335  
             *For sanitation in public facilities, see 353.94; for hazardous wastes, see 353.994*

\*Add as instructed under 352–354

- .94      \*Sanitation in public facilities  
           Including sanitation in common carriers, eating and drinking places, health facilities, streets, workplaces  
           Class operational management of sanitary services in 363.72068
- 
- >      353.95–353.99 Public administration of safety  
           Class here accidents, public administration of safety in economy and environment  
           Class comprehensive works in 353.9  
           *For police services, see 353.36; for contagious diseases, see 353.63*
- .95      \*Preparation for disasters  
           Class here civil defense, emergency planning  
           Class management of disaster relief in 363.348068
- .96      \*Industrial and occupational safety  
           Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
           Class here workplace safety  
           Class workplace sanitation in 353.93
- .966     Safety in specific extractive, manufacturing, construction occupations  
           Add to base number 353.966 the numbers following 6 in 620–690, e.g., mine safety 353.96622
- .97      \*Safety in miscellaneous areas  
           Including domestic, outdoor, sports safety  
           Class here safety in public facilities  
           *For workplace safety, see 353.96; for transportation safety, see 353.98*
- .979     \*Fire safety  
           Class management of fire departments in 363.37068
- .98      \*Transportation safety  
           Including space transportation safety  
           Class here ground-transportation safety  
           Class comprehensive works on transportation in 354.76
- .987     \*Water-transportation safety  
           Class here water safety  
           *For water-sports safety, see 353.97*

- .988        \*Air-transportation safety
- .99        \*Hazardous products and materials  
           Including medical instruments and supplies  
           Class here hazardous machinery  
           Subdivisions are added for hazardous products and materials together, for hazardous products alone
- .993        \*Hazardous materials  
           Class hazardous wastes in 353.994  
           *For radioactive materials, see 353.999*
- .994        \*Hazardous wastes  
           *For radioactive wastes, see 353.999*
- .997        \*Food safety  
           Class here food purity, designation of nutritional content  
           Class comprehensive works on nutrition and food services in 353.56
- .998        \*Drugs and medicines  
           Class here drug safety  
           Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .999        \*Radioactive products  
           Including radioactive wastes  
           Class here radiation safety, radioactive materials

### 354        \*Public administration of economy and environment

Subdivisions are added for public administration of economy and environment together, for public administration of economy alone

Class public administration of safety in economy and environment in 353.95–353.99

*See Manual at T1—068 vs. 353–354; also at 352–354; also at 363 vs. 344.02–344.05, 353–354*

#### SUMMARY

- 354.08        **Groups of people**
- .2        **General considerations of public administration**
- .3        **Public administration of environment and natural resources**
- .4        **Public administration of energy and energy-related industries**
- .5        **Public administration of agriculture**
- .6        **Public administration of construction, manufacturing, service industries**
- .7        **Public administration of commerce, communications, transportation**
- .8        **Public administration of financial institutions, money, credit**
- .9        **Public administration of labor and professions**

\*Add as instructed under 352–354

- .08           Groups of people  
                   Class here equal economic opportunity programs
- .27           General forms of assistance  
                   Number built according to instructions under 352–354  
                   Class here comprehensive works on public administration of development,  
                   on public administration of research and development  
                   Class urban and community development in 354.2793; class rural  
                   development in 354.2794; class comprehensive works on public  
                   administration of research and development in noneconomic fields in 352.7;  
                   class interdisciplinary works on research and development in 338.9. Class  
                   public administration of research and development of a specific economic  
                   activity with the activity in 354, plus notation 27 from table under 352–354,  
                   e.g., development of agriculture 354.527
- .274          Promotion and dissemination of knowledge  
                   Number built according to instructions under 352–354  
                   Class protection of intellectual property in 352.749
- .279          Assistance to urban, suburban, rural areas; to small business  
                   Number built according to instructions under 352–354
- .279 9        \*Assistance to small business  
                   *For a specific form of assistance to small business, see the form,  
                   e.g., assistance in securing government contracts 352.5327, small  
                   business loans 354.2736*

>           **354.3–354.8 Public administration of specific fields of economic and  
 environmental activity**

Class here public administration of industries associated with specific fields of  
 economic and environmental activity

Class public administration of labor and professions in specific fields of  
 economic and environmental activity in 354.9; class comprehensive works in  
 354

**.3           \*Public administration of environment and natural resources**

Class here departments of natural resources, public administration of primary  
 industries

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

*For public administration of recreational use of environment, see 353.78;  
 for public administration of sanitation and waste control, see 353.93; for  
 public administration of energy and energy-related resources, see 354.4; for  
 public administration of agriculture, see 354.5*

## SUMMARY

- 354.327–.328 [General forms of assistance and control]  
 .33 Special forms of environmental protection and control  
 .34 Land and biological resources  
 .35 Urban land  
 .36 Water  
 .37 Air and atmospheric phenomena  
 .39 Mineral resources
- .327 General forms of assistance  
 Number built according to instructions under 352–354  
 Class here natural resources development  
 Class interdisciplinary works on natural resources development in 333.715
- .328 General forms of control  
 Number built according to instructions under 352–354  
 Class here environmental protection  
 Class interdisciplinary works on environmental protection in 363.7  
*For special forms of environmental protection and control, see 354.33*
- .33 Special forms of environmental protection and control  
 Not provided for in subdivisions of 354.328  
 Class comprehensive works on public administration of environmental protection and control in 354.328. Class public administration of a special form of protection and control relating to a specific environment with the form of protection and control in 354.34–354.37, plus notation 3 from table under 354.34–354.37, e.g., water conservation 354.3634
- .333 \*Resource use planning  
 Class here zoning  
 Class urban zoning in 354.353; class interdisciplinary works on zoning in 333.7317
- .334 \*Conservation  
 Class interdisciplinary works on conservation in 333.72
- .335 \*Prevention and control of pollution  
 Class here comprehensive works on public administration of pollution  
 Class public administration of cleanup of pollution in 353.93; class interdisciplinary works on pollution in 363.73
- .338 \*Noise control  
 Regardless of environment

\*Add as instructed under 352–354

- .339 \*Pest control  
 Regardless of environment

> 354.34–354.37 Specific environments

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by † as follows:

- 01–09 Standard subdivisions  
 Add as instructed under 352–354, e.g., equal opportunity programs 08
- 2 General considerations of administration  
 Add as instructed under 352–354, e.g., state and provincial administration of the topic 213
- 3 Special forms of protection and control  
 Add to 3 the numbers following 354.33 in 354.333–354.335, e.g., conservation 34

Class noise control in specific environments in 354.338; class pest control in specific environments in 354.339; class mineral resources derived from a specific environment in 354.39; class comprehensive works on administration of environment in 354.3

.34 †Land and biological resources

Including wetlands

Class here real estate, real property

Subdivisions are added for land and biological resources together, for land alone

Class parks in 353.78

*For public lands, see 352.57; for urban land, see 354.35*

.349 †Biological resources

Including hunting

Class here animal resources

*For sports hunting, see 353.78; for forestry, see 354.55; for aquatic biological resources, fishing and fisheries, see 354.57*

.35 \*Urban land

.353 \*Land use planning

Class here city planning, urban zoning

Class comprehensive works on public administration of zoning in 354.333; class interdisciplinary works on city planning in 307.1216; class interdisciplinary works on urban zoning in 333.7717

\*Add as instructed under 352–354

†Add as instructed under 354.34–354.37

- .36 †Water  
 Including groundwater, estuaries  
*For aquatic biological resources, fishing and fisheries, see 354.57*
- .362 7 General forms of assistance  
 Number built according to instructions under 354.34–354.37  
 Class here development of water resources, of electricity from water resources; flood control  
 Class distribution of electricity derived from water power in 354.49
- .366 †Water supply  
*For irrigation projects, see 354.367*
- .367 †Irrigation projects
- .369 †Oceans
- .37 †Air and atmospheric phenomena  
 Class here weather bureaus
- .39 \*Mineral resources  
 Class here geological surveys, mining bureaus, subsurface resources  
*For mineral energy resources, see 354.4*
- .393 \*Conservation of mineral resources
- .4 \*Public administration of energy and energy-related industries**  
 Class here departments of energy; public administration of energy resources, public administration of mineral energy resources  
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
*For development of water power, see 354.3627*
- .428 General forms of control  
 Number built according to instructions under 352–354  
 Class here control of public utilities supplying energy  
 Class energy conservation in 354.43; class comprehensive works on control of public utilities in 354.728. Class control of a specific energy utility with the form of energy, plus notation 28 from table under 352–354, e.g., a gas utility 354.4628
- .43 \*Energy conservation  
 Class energy conservation for a specific form of energy with the form, plus notation 3 from the table under 354.44–354.49, e.g., petroleum conservation 354.453

\*Add as instructed under 352–354

†Add as instructed under 354.34–354.37

> 354.44–354.49 Specific energy resources and electricity

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by ‡ as follows:

- 01–09 Standard subdivisions
  - Add as instructed under 352–354, e.g., equal opportunity programs 08
- 2 General considerations of administration
  - Add as instructed under 352–354, e.g., international administration of the topic 211
- 3 Conservation
- 301–309 Standard subdivisions
  - Add as instructed under 352–354, e.g., equal opportunity programs 308
- 32 General considerations of administration
  - Add as instructed under 352–354, e.g., international administration of the topic 3211

Class comprehensive works in 354.4

> 354.44–354.48 Specific energy resources

Class distribution of electricity derived from specific energy resources in 354.49; class comprehensive works on energy resources in 354.4

.44 ‡Fossil fuels

Including coal

*For oil and gas, see 354.45*

.45 ‡Oil

Class here comprehensive works on petroleum

*For gas, see 354.46*

.46 ‡Gas

Natural and manufactured

.47 ‡Nuclear fuels

Class radiation safety, radioactive wastes in 353.999

.472 7 General forms of assistance

Number built according to instructions under 354.44–354.49

Class here development of electricity from nuclear fuels

Class distribution of electricity derived from nuclear fuels in 354.49

.48 ‡Other energy resources

Including geothermal and solar energy

.49 ‡Electricity

‡Add as instructed under 354.44–354.49

- .492 7            General forms of assistance
- Number built according to instructions under 354.44–354.49
- Class here comprehensive works on development of electricity
- Class development of electricity from a specific resource with the resource, plus notation 27 from table under 354.44–354.49, e.g., from water power 354.3627, from nuclear fuels 354.4727
- .492 8            General forms of control
- Number built according to instructions under 354.44–354.49
- Class here control of electric utilities, of distribution of electricity regardless of resource from which it is derived
- Class development of electricity in 354.4927
- .5            \*Public administration of agriculture**
- Class nutrition and food programs in 353.56; class rural development in 354.2794; class soil conservation in 354.3434; class irrigation projects in 354.367; class agricultural price supports in 354.5285; class agricultural credit in 354.86
- For hunting, see 354.349*
- .54            \*Plant crops
- For forestry, see 354.55*
- .55            \*Forestry
- .56            \*Animal husbandry
- .57            \*Fishing and fisheries
- Class here aquatic biological resources, marine biological resources
- Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Class comprehensive works on resources derived from water in 354.36
- For sports fishing, see 353.78*
- .59            \*Commodity programs
- Including marketing services
- Class here farm produce
- Class programs that combine inspection and marketing in 354.59283
- For agricultural price supports, see 354.5285*
- See also 354.88 for commodity exchanges*
- .6            \*Public administration of construction, manufacturing, service industries**
- Class here administration of secondary industries

- .64 \*Construction  
       Class public works in 352.77
- .66 \*Manufacturing
- .68 \*Service industries  
       *For commerce, communications, transportation, see 354.7; for financial services, see 354.8*
- .7 \*Public administration of commerce, communications, transportation

### SUMMARY

- 354.728            General forms of control
- .73            Commerce
- .74            Foreign commerce
- .75            Communications
- .76            Transportation
- .77            Road transportation
- .78            Water transportation
- .79            Air and space transportation
- .728            General forms of control  
       Number built according to instructions under 352-354  
       Class here comprehensive works on control of public utilities  
       *For control of a specific public utility, see the utility, plus notation 28 from table under 352-354, e.g., control of electric utilities 354.4928*
- .73            \*Commerce  
       Including tourist trade regardless of origin  
       Class here domestic commerce  
       *For consumer protection, see 352.746; for foreign commerce, see 354.74*  
       *See also 354.76280973 for United States Interstate Commerce Commission*
- .74            \*Foreign commerce  
       Class foreign tourism in 354.73
- .75            \*Communications  
       Class here telecommunications  
       Class management, business organizations, and description of facilities, activities, services of a publicly owned communications system with the system in 384, e.g., business organization of a publicly owned telephone system 384.6065  
       *See Manual at T1-068 vs. 353-354; also at 380: Add table: 09 vs. 065*

- .759           \*Postal service  
                   Class operational management of postal service in 383.068; class postal organization in 383.4
- .76            \*Transportation  
                   Class here ground transportation  
                   Class transportation safety in 353.98  
                   *For road transportation, see 354.77; for water transportation, see 354.78; for air and space transportation, see 354.79*
- .763           \*Passenger services  
                   Class passenger service in a specific form of transportation with the form in 354.765–354.79, e.g., rail passenger service 354.7673
- .764           \*Freight services  
                   Including pipeline transportation  
                   Class freight service in a specific form of transportation with the form in 354.765–354.79, e.g., rail freight service 354.7674
- .765           \*Automotive transportation  
                   Including parking facilities  
                   *For road transportation, see 354.77*
- .765 284       Licensing, accreditation, certification, chartering, registration; incorporation  
                   Number built according to instructions under 352–354  
                   Class here licensing to drive, registration of passenger automobiles for general use  
                   *For licensing to drive and registration of passenger automobiles for hire, see 354.7653284*
- .765 3         \*Passenger service
- .765 328 4     Licensing, accreditation, certification, chartering, registration; incorporation  
                   Number built according to instructions under 352–354  
                   Class here licensing to drive, registration of passenger vehicles for hire  
                   *For licensing to drive, registration of passenger automobiles for general use, see 354.765284*
- .765 4         \*Freight service
- .767           \*Railroad transportation  
                   Class urban rail transportation in 354.769
- .767 3         \*Passenger service

\*Add as instructed under 352–354

- .767 4           \*Freight service
- .769           \*Urban mass transportation  
                   Class here local bus transportation, local rail transportation,  
                   comprehensive works on local transportation  
                   *For a specific form of local transportation not provided for here, see  
                   the form, e.g., taxi service 354.7653, helicopter service 354.79*
- .769 3           \*Passenger service
- .769 4           \*Freight service
- .77             \*Road transportation
- .772 8           General forms of control  
                   Number built according to instructions under 352–354  
                   Class here traffic control, traffic engineering
- .773           \*Passenger service
- .774           \*Freight service
- .78             \*Water transportation  
                   Class here inland water transportation, ocean transportation
- .783           \*Passenger service
- .784           \*Freight service
- .79             \*Air and space transportation  
                   Subdivisions are added for air and space transportation together, for air  
                   transportation alone
- .793           \*Passenger service
- .794           \*Freight service
- .8             \*Public administration of financial institutions, money, credit**  
                   Subdivisions are added for financial institutions, money, credit together; for  
                   financial institutions alone  
                   Class works covering public administration of both financial system and  
                   government finances in 352.4  
                   *See also 332.46 for monetary policy*
- .84             \*Money  
                   Class credit institutions in 354.86
- .85             \*Insurance  
                   *For government-sponsored insurance, see 353.54; for  
                   government-sponsored health insurance, see 353.69*

- .86      \*Credit institutions  
           Class here banks, savings and loan institutions  
           Class government loans and loan guarantees in 352.736
- .88      \*Securities and investments
- .9      \*Public administration of labor and professions**  
           Class here departments of labor  
           Subdivisions are added for labor and professions together, for labor alone  
           Class occupational safety in 353.96
- .908     Groups of people  
           Class here affirmative action programs, equal employment opportunity programs  
           Class affirmative action programs for a government's own employees in 352.608
- .927     General forms of assistance  
           Number built according to instructions under 352-354  
           Class here job creation
- .93     Labor in specific groups of occupations  
           Including blue collar, industrial, professional occupations  
           Class labor in specific extractive, manufacturing, construction occupations in 354.94; class labor in specific occupations other than extraction, manufacturing, construction in 354.95  
           *For government workers, see 352.63*
- .94     Labor in specific extractive, manufacturing, construction occupations  
           Add to base number 354.94 the numbers following 6 in 620-690, e.g., miners 354.9422
- .95     Labor in other specific occupations  
           Add to base number 354.95 notation 001-999, e.g., railroad workers 354.95385

- > 354.96–354.98 Specific programs for labor and professions  
 Not provided for in subdivisions of 354.927 derived from 352.7  
 Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by † as follows:
- 01–09 Standard subdivisions  
 Add as instructed under 352–354, e.g., programs directed to groups of people 08
  - 2 General considerations of administration  
 Add as instructed under 352–354, e.g., state and provincial administration of the topic 213
  - 3 Specific groups of occupations  
 Class specific extractive, manufacturing, construction occupations in 4; class other specific occupations in 5  
*For government workers, see 352.63*
  - 4 Specific extractive, manufacturing, construction occupations  
 Add to 4 the numbers following 6 in 620–690, e.g., miners 422
  - 5 Other specific occupations  
 Add to 5 notation 001–999, e.g., railroad workers 5385
- Class comprehensive works in 354.9
- .96 †Employment and related services  
 Subdivisions are added for employment and related services together, for employment services alone
- .968 †Promoting training  
 Class here promoting apprenticeship  
*See also 352.669 for training of government's own workers*
- .97 †Labor unions and collective bargaining  
 Class here employer-employee relationships  
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .98 †Conditions of employment  
 Class here compensation  
 Class pensions, unemployment insurance in 353.54; class workers' compensation insurance in 353.69

## 355 Military science

Class here armed forces and services, ground forces and services

Class sociology of military institutions in 306.27

*For specific kinds of military forces and warfare, see 356–359*

*See also 322.5 for relation of the state to military organizations; also 327.174 for disarmament; also 343.01 for military and defense law*

*See Manual at 355–359 vs. 623; also at 930–990 vs. 355.009, 355–359*

†Add as instructed under 354.96–354.98

## SUMMARY

- 355.001–.009            **Standard subdivisions**
- .02–.07            **Basic considerations of military science**
- .1            **Military life and customs**
- .2            **Military resources**
- .3            **Organization and personnel of military forces**
- .4            **Military operations**
- .5            **Military training**
- .6            **Military administration**
- .7            **Military installations**
- .8            **Military equipment and supplies (Matériel)**
- .001            Philosophy and theory
- .002            Miscellany
- [.002 8]            Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
- Do not use; class in 355.8
- .003–.005            **Standard subdivisions**
- .006            **Organizations**
- [.006 8]            **Management**
- Do not use; class in 355.6
- .007            **Education and related topics**
- .007 1            **Education**
- Do not use for reserve training; class in 355.2232
- .007 11            **Higher education**
- Class here military colleges and universities
- For mid-career training of officers at academically accredited  
armed forces schools, see 355.55*
- See Manual at 378.4–378.9 vs. 355.00711*
- .007 113–.007 119            **Specific continents, countries, localities**
- Official service academies are classed in notation at the country  
level only, e.g., Royal Military Academy (Sandhurst, England)  
355.0071141
- [.007 155]            **On-the-job training**
- Do not use; class in 355.5
- [.007 2]            **Research**
- Do not use; class in 355.07
- .008            **Groups of people**

- .009           History, geographic treatment, biography  
                   Class historical and geographic treatment of military situation and policy  
                   in 355.033  
                   *See Manual at 930-990 vs. 355.009, 355-359*
- .009 3-.009 9       Specific continents, countries, localities  
                   Class organization of specific national armies in 355.3093-355.3099  
                   *For military history of a specific war, see the war in 930-990, e.g.,  
                   military history of Vietnamese War 959.70434*
- 
- >           355.02-355.07 Basic considerations of military science  
                   Class comprehensive works in 355
- .02           War and warfare  
                   Class here conventional warfare, total war; comprehensive works on military  
                   strategy  
                   Class defense in 355.03  
                   *For strategy in military operations, see 355.4*  
                   *See also 341.6 for law of war*
- .020 11           Systems  
                   Do not use for models; class in 355.48
- .021           General topics of war and warfare
- [.021 01-.021 09]   Standard subdivisions  
                   Do not use; class in 355.0201-355.0209
- .021 3           Militarism  
                   Class here antimilitarism, interdisciplinary works on  
                   military-industrial complex  
                   Class relation of military organizations to the state in 322.5; class  
                   promotion of peace in 327.172  
                   *For economic aspects of military-industrial complex, see  
                   338.47355*
- .021 5           Limited war

- .021 7            Nuclear warfare  
                   Including issues of deterrence  
                   Class here comprehensive works on nuclear forces  
                   Class comprehensive works on warfare with weapons of mass  
                   destruction in 358.3  
                   *For a specific nuclear force and its warfare, see the force, e.g.,  
                   nuclear missile forces and warfare 358.17*  
                   *See also 327.1747 for nuclear disarmament*
- .021 8            Insurgent, resistance, revolutionary warfare  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading  
                   Class here civil war, guerrilla warfare  
                   Class guerrilla tactics in 355.425
- .027              Causes of war  
                   *For causes of specific wars, see 930–990*
- .027 2            Political and diplomatic causes
- .027 3            Economic causes
- .027 4            Social causes  
                   *See also 303.66 for sociology of war*
- .027 5            Psychological causes
- .028              Aftermath of war  
                   Including military occupation  
                   Class here dislocation, reconstruction  
                   Class government of occupied territories in 355.49  
                   *For aftermath of specific wars, see 930–990*
- .03                Military situation and policy  
                   Class here defense  
                   Class defense operations in 355.4
- [.030 9]            History and geographic treatment  
                   Do not use; class in 355.033
- [.030 92]           Biography  
                   Do not use; class in 355.0092
- .031              Military relations  
                   Class here military alliances, mutual security pacts  
                   *For military assistance, see 355.032*



.033 21--033 29      Geographic treatment and biography of military capability  
                                  Add to base number 355.0332 notation 1-9 from Table 2, e.g.,  
                                  military capability of Sweden 355.0332485

.033 5                    Military policy

[.033 509 1--033 509 9]      Geographic treatment and biography  
                                  Do not use; class in 355.03351-355.03359

.033 51--033 59      Geographic treatment and biography of military policy  
                                  Add to base number 355.0335 notation 1-9 from Table 2, e.g.,  
                                  military policy of Italy 355.033545

.07                    Military research and development

                         Limited to military aspects

                         Class here relation of military science to science and technology;  
                          comprehensive works on military aspects of research and development of  
                          equipment, supplies, weapons

                         Class interdisciplinary works on military research and development in  
                          338.4735507

*For procurement and contracting aspects of research and development  
                          of equipment and supplies, see 355.6212; for military aspects of research  
                          and development (other than procurement and contracting) of specific  
                          kinds of equipment and supplies, see 355.8*

.1                    **Military life and customs**

                         Class here conditions of military employment

*For social and welfare services provided to soldiers and dependents, see  
                          355.34*

### SUMMARY

355.11            **Service periods, promotion and demotion, termination**  
                          .12            **Living conditions**  
                          .13            **Conduct and rewards**  
                          .14            **Uniforms**  
                          .15            **Colors and standards**  
                          .16            **Celebrations, commemorations, memorials**  
                          .17            **Ceremonies**

.11                    Service periods, promotion and demotion, termination

.111                  Length of service

.112                  Promotion and demotion

.113                  Inactive periods

                         Including furloughs, leaves, missing in action, reserve status, status  
                          during captivity or internment

                         Class reserve training in 355.2232

- .114 Termination of service
  - Including resignation, retirement; reinstatement
- .12 Living conditions
  - Class here living conditions of dependents, comprehensive works on military housing
    - For quarters for personnel at military installations, see 355.71*
- .123 Morale and motivation
- .129 Living conditions in specific situations
  - Class morale in specific situations in 355.123
    - For life in military prisons and prison camps (other than prisoner-of-war camps), see 365.48*
- .129 2 Living conditions in regular quarters
  - Including quarters during basic training
- .129 3 Living conditions during maneuvers, aboard ship, in transit
- .129 4 Living conditions in combat zones
- .129 6 Living conditions in prisoner-of-war camps
- .13 Conduct and rewards
  - Class here discipline, soldierly qualities
    - See also 343.014 for law of discipline and conduct*
- .133 Regulation of conduct
  - Class rewards in 355.134
- .133 2 Enforcement and punishment
  - Class offenses in 355.1334
- .133 23 Enforcement
  - Including criminal investigation, military police
- .133 25 Punishment
  - Class military prisons in 365.48
- .133 4 Offenses against military discipline
  - Including desertion, mutiny
    - Class interdisciplinary works on mutinies in 364.131
      - See also 364.138 for war crimes*
- .133 6 Etiquette
  - Class dress regulations, etiquette of uniforms in 355.14

- .134            Rewards  
                  Including special privileges  
                  Class here awards, citations
- .134 092            Biography  
                  Class a military awardee who is associated with another subject  
                  with the subject, e.g., biography of an awardee who is also a  
                  movie star 791.43028092
- .134 2            Honorary insignia  
                  Including badges, decorations, medals  
                  Class here comprehensive works on insignia  
                  Class comprehensive works on insignia and uniforms in 355.14  
                  *For insignia of rank, see 355.14*
- .134 9            Gifts and gun salutes
- .14            Uniforms  
                  Including accessories, insignia of rank and service  
                  Class here etiquette of uniforms, comprehensive works on insignia and  
                  uniforms  
                  Class issue and use of uniforms in 355.81  
                  *For honorary insignia, comprehensive works on insignia, see 355.1342*
- .140 9            History, geographic treatment, biography  
                  *See Manual at 355.1409*
- .15            Colors and standards  
                  Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                  Class here flag presentations
- .16            Celebrations, commemorations, memorials  
                  Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- .17            Ceremonies  
                  Class ceremonies for a specific occasion with the occasion, e.g., gun salutes  
                  355.1349, military celebrations 355.16
- .2            Military resources**
- .21            Preparation, evaluation, preservation  
                  Class preparation, evaluation, preservation of specific resources in  
                  355.22–355.27
- 
- >            355.22–355.27 Specific resources  
                  Class comprehensive works in 355.2

- .22 Human resources  
*For civilian personnel, see 355.23*
- [.220 68] Management  
 Do not use for management of human resources other than recruiting; class in 355.61. Do not use for recruiting; class in 355.223
- .223 Recruiting and reserve training  
 Standard subdivisions are added for recruiting and reserve training together, for recruiting alone  
 Class here enlistment
- .223 2 Reserve training
- .223 207 11 Higher education  
 Class here reserve training in academic settings, e.g., United States Reserve Officers' Training Corps 355.2232071173
- .223 4 Qualifications for service
- .223 6 Specific methods and procedures of recruiting  
 Including registration, commissioning
- [.223 601--223 609] Standard subdivisions  
 Do not use; class in 355.22301--355.22309
- .223 62 Voluntary enlistment  
 Class here all-volunteer army
- .223 63 Draft (Conscription)  
*For universal military service, see 355.225*
- .224 Conscientious objectors  
 Class here draft resistance  
 Class ethics of conscientious objection in 172.1; class techniques for evading draft in 355.22363
- .225 Universal military training  
 Class here universal military service
- .23 Civilian workers
- [.230 68] Management  
 Do not use; class in 355.619
- .24 Raw materials  
 Class here strategic materials, comprehensive works on nonhuman resources  
*For industrial resources, see 355.26; for transportation and communication facilities, see 355.27*

- .242 Metals
- .243 Nonmetallic minerals
- .245 Agricultural products
- .26 Industrial resources
  - Military appraisal and utilization
  - Class here manufacturing war matériel
- .27 Transportation and communications facilities
- .28 Mobilization
  - Including commandeering, requisition
  - Class mobilization of specific resources in 355.22–355.27
- .29 Demobilization
  - Class demobilization of specific resources in 355.22–355.27

### **.3 Organization and personnel of military forces**

Standard subdivisions are added for organization and personnel together, for organization alone

Class here organization of national armies, combat readiness of specific units

Class comprehensive works on combat readiness in 355.0332

#### **SUMMARY**

- 355.31 **Kinds of military units**
- .33 **Personnel and their hierarchy**
- .34 **Noncombat services**
- .35 **Combat units according to field of service**
- .37 **Reserves**

- .31 Kinds of military units
  - Including armies, regiments, squads; districts
  - Class here combat units
  - Class organization of national armies in 355.3
  - For a specific kind of unit limited to a specific service, see the service, e.g., reserve units 355.37, armored units 358.183*
- .33 Personnel and their hierarchy
  - Including labor relations and military employee organizations
  - Class biography of soldiers in 355.0092; class promotion and demotion in 355.112
- .330 4 Line and staff organization

- .330 41           Line organization  
                   Including evaluation, leadership, supervision  
                   Class here command and control systems, command functions  
                   *For motivation, see 355.123*
- .330 42           Staff organization  
                   Class here general staffs, joint chiefs of staff  
                   *For line functions of chiefs of staff, see 355.33041*
- .331            General and flag officers  
                   Officers above rank of colonel (naval rank of captain)
- .332            Commissioned and warrant officers  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for commissioned and warrant officers  
                   together, for commissioned officers alone  
                   Class officers' manuals in 355  
                   *For general and flag officers, see 355.331*
- .338            Enlisted personnel  
                   Including noncommissioned officers  
                   Class noncommissioned officers' manuals in 355  
                   *See also 331.8811355 for military unions*
- .34            Noncombat services  
                   Including propaganda, social services for dependents, interdisciplinary  
                   works on civic action of armed forces  
                   Class here operations of noncombat services, social services for soldiers  
                   *For a specific noncombat service not provided for here, see the service,  
                   e.g., housing 355.12, personnel management 355.61; for a specific civic  
                   action of armed forces, see the action, e.g., civil works program of U.S.  
                   Army Corps of Engineers 363.0973*
- .341            Supply issuing and related services  
                   Including canteens, mess services, post exchanges  
                   Class officers' and noncommissioned officers' clubs in 355.346; class  
                   comprehensive works on supply services in 355.621
- .342            Public relations
- .343            Unconventional warfare services
- .343 2           Intelligence  
                   Including cryptanalysis, mapping, weather forecasting  
                   Class here military espionage  
                   Class counterintelligence in 355.3433; class interdisciplinary works  
                   on espionage in 327.12

- .343 3 Counterintelligence  
Including security classification
- .343 4 Psychological warfare
- .343 7 Subversion and sabotage  
Class interdisciplinary works on subversion in 327.12
- .345 Health services  
Including ambulance, sanitation, veterinary services  
Class here medical services  
Class technology of medical services in 610; class technology of health services in 613.6; class sanitation engineering in 623.75; class veterinary sciences in 636.089
- .346 Recreational services  
Including library services, officers' and noncommissioned officers' (NCO) clubs  
Class library and informational sciences in 020; class recreational arts in 790
- .347 Religious services  
Standard subdivisions are added for specific religions, e.g., history of Jewish services 355.34709  
Class care of military personnel by religious leaders in general in 206.1; class Christian pastoral care of military personnel in 259.088355
- .348 Women's units  
Class women in armed forces in 355.0082; class women as a military resource in 355.22082. Class a specific service performed by women with the service, plus notation 082 from Table 1, e.g., women in intelligence services 355.3432082, women in combat 355.4082
- .35 Combat units according to field of service  
Class comprehensive works on combat units in 355.31
- .351 Units serving wholly within national or local frontiers  
Class here frontier troops, active units called home guards  
Class reserve units called home guards in 355.37
- .352 Expeditionary forces  
Class here expeditionary forces of colonies, forces of mother countries dedicated to service in colonies
- .354 Mercenary troops  
Class here soldiers of fortune

- .356 Allied and coalition forces  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
 Class here multinational forces  
 Class joint operations of allied and coalition forces in 355.46  
*For multinational forces commanded by international bodies, see 355.357*
- .357 International forces  
 Troops serving under command of international bodies  
 Including peacekeeping forces  
 Class interdisciplinary works on peaceful resolution of conflict in 327.17  
*See also 341.58 for legal aspects of international forces*
- .359 Foreign legions  
 Units of national armies consisting primarily of foreign recruits  
 Class here auxiliaries (troops of foreign countries serving with a state's armies)
- .37 Reserves  
 Class here home guards, home reserves, militia, national guards; military departments devoted to reserve or national guard affairs  
 Class training of reserves in 355.2232; class active units called home guards in 355.351. Class reserve units of a specific kind of military force with the force, e.g., army engineer reserves 358.223
- .4 Military operations**  
 Including mine clearing operations, peacekeeping operations  
 Class here attack and defense operations, combat; strategy in military operations  
*For mine clearing operations by civilians, see 363.34988; for engineering of mine clearing, see 623.26*
- [.409 1] Areas, regions, places in general  
 Do not use; class in 355.471
- [.409 3–.409 9] Specific continents, countries, localities  
 Do not use; class in 355.473–355.479
- .41 Support operations  
 Including camouflage, deception, handling prisoners of war  
 Class support operations in a specific situation with the situation, e.g., logistics of siege warfare 355.44
- .411 Logistics  
 Including troop movements  
*For troop support, see 355.415*

- .412 Encampment
- .413 Reconnaissance  
Class here patrolling
- .415 Troop support  
Operations for providing immediate necessities for maintenance of troops  
Class comprehensive works on operations for provisioning troops in 355.411  
*For a specific aspect of troop support, see the aspect, e.g., medical service 355.345*
- .42 Tactics  
*For nuclear tactics, see 355.43; for tactics of siege warfare, see 355.44; for tactics of defense of home territory, see 355.45*
- .422 Specific tactics  
Including anti-aircraft defenses, attacks and counterattacks, debarkation and landing, prevention of friendly fire casualties, retreats, skirmishing; mobile (blitz), commando (hit-and-run), infiltration tactics  
Class specific tactics in specific conditions in 355.423–355.426
- [.422 01–.422 09] Standard subdivisions  
Do not use; class in 355.4201–355.4209
- 
- > 355.423–355.426 Tactics in specific conditions  
Class comprehensive works in 355.42
- .423 Tactics in various kinds of terrain, climate, weather; night tactics
- .424 Use of animals
- .425 Guerrilla tactics  
Class here tribal fighting  
Class guerrilla warfare in 355.0218
- .426 Tactics in cities  
Class here house-to-house fighting, street fighting, urban warfare  
Class siege warfare in 355.44
- .43 Nuclear operations  
Class nuclear warfare in 355.0217
- .44 Siege and trench warfare, blockades  
Class urban warfare in 355.426; class naval blockades in 359.44
- .45 Defense of home territory  
Class defensive forts and installations in 355.7

- .46 Combined operations  
 Joint operations of two or more kinds of military forces  
 Including operations of forces of more than one nation  
 Class here amphibious operations  
 Class amphibious operations in which marines are main land component in 359.9646
- .47 Military geography  
 [.470 91-.470 99] Geographic treatment and biography  
 Do not use; class in 355.471-355.479
- .471-.479 Geographic treatment and biography of military geography  
 Class here geographic treatment of military operations  
 Add to base number 355.47 notation 1-9 from Table 2, e.g., military geography of Russia 355.4747
- .48 Technical analyses of military events  
 Including real and imaginary wars, campaigns, battles  
 Class here war games  
*See also 793.92 for recreational war games*
- .49 Occupation of conquered territory  
 Including military government  
 Class occupation as an aftermath of war in 355.028
- .5 Military training**  
 Training of individuals and units  
*For reserve training, see 355.2232; for universal military training, see 355.225. For military training in a specific subject, see the subject, plus notation 0715 from Table 1, e.g., military training in computer engineering 621.390715*
- .507 1 Education in military training  
 Class military training in a specific country with the country in 355.5093-355.5099, e.g., military training in Switzerland 355.509494 (not 355.50710494)
- .52 Maneuvers
- .54 Basic training  
 Including drill, survival training, tactical exercises
- .544 Encampment and field training  
 Including setting up and dismantling camps, constructing temporary fortifications, running obstacle courses

- .547 Small arms and bayonet practice  
 Class here manual of arms  
 If emphasis is on use by infantry, class in 356.115
- .548 Self-defense  
 Unarmed combat and combat with knife  
 If emphasis is on use by infantry, class in 356.115
- .55 Training of officers  
 Class here mid-career training at academically accredited armed forces schools  
 Class training through war games in 355.48; class comprehensive works on university-level service academies in 355.00711
- .56 Technical training
- .6 Military administration**  
 Class here defense administration, departments of defense  
 Class administration of a function not provided for here with the function, plus notation 068 from Table 1, e.g., administration of installations 355.7068  
*For organization of military forces, see 355.3*  
 (Option: Class comprehensive works in 353.2. If option is chosen, change heading to "Specific topics in military administration," and do not add standard subdivisions)
- [.606 8] Management  
 Do not use; class in 355.6
- .609 1 Areas, regions, places in general  
 Class here international military and defense administration  
 Class administration of international peacekeeping troops in 355.357068  
 (If option under 355.6 is chosen, class international military and defense administration in 353.2211)
- .61 Personnel management (Human resource management)  
*For service periods, promotion and demotion, termination, see 355.11; for motivation, see 355.123; for personnel and their hierarchy, see 355.33; for wage and salary administration, see 355.64*
- .614 Job description for military personnel  
 Including job analysis and classification
- .619 Civilian workers  
 Add to base number 355.619 the numbers following 352.6 in 352.63–352.69, e.g., recruiting civilian personnel 355.6195  
 Class civilian workers as a military resource in 355.23

- .62           Supply and financial administration and related topics
- .621           Supply administration and related topics  
                   Class here administration of specific kinds of equipment and supplies  
                   *For product development, see 355.07; for supply issuing and related services, see 355.341; for supply depots and installations, see 355.75*
- .621 2         Contracts and procurement  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Class here comprehensive works on military contracts  
                   *For contracts for a specific nonsupply item, see the item, plus notation 068 from Table 1, e.g., contracts for real property 355.70681*
- .621 3         Internal control and disposal of supplies  
                   Including warehouse management
- .621 32        Inventory control
- .621 37        Surplus supplies and their disposal  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .622           Financial administration  
                   Add to base number 355.622 the numbers following 352.4 in 352.43–352.49, e.g., defense budget 355.6229, defense budget of United States 355.622973  
                   *For payroll administration, see 355.64*
- .64            Salary administration  
                   Class here wage and payroll administration
- .68            Executive management  
                   Add to base number 355.68 the numbers following 352.3 in 352.33–352.38, e.g., inspection 355.685; however, for intelligence, see 355.3432; for counterintelligence, see 355.3433  
                   Class command and control systems in 355.33041  
                   *For managing executive personnel, see 355.33*
- .69            Military mail; graves registration and burial services
- .693           Military mail
- .699           Graves registration and burial services
- .7            Military installations**  
                   Class here military bases, forts, permanent camps, posts, reservations

- .709 3-.709 9      Specific continents, countries, localities  
                           Class here specific forts or systems of fortifications, installations  
                           having two or more functions  
                           Use notation for area of installation, not country maintaining it, e.g.,  
                           United States bases in Panama Canal Area 355.70972875
- .71                Quarters for personnel  
                           Housing at military installations  
                           Including barracks, prisoner-of-war camps  
                           Class comprehensive works on military housing in 355.12
- .72                Medical installations  
                           Class medical supply depots in 355.75; class veterans' hospitals in 362.11;  
                           class comprehensive works on medical services in 355.345
- .73                Artillery installations  
                           Class army artillery installations in 358.127
- .74                Engineering installations  
                           Class army engineering installations in 358.227
- .75                Supply depots and installations  
                           Class comprehensive works on supply services in 355.621
- .79                Land
- .8                Military equipment and supplies (Matériel)**  
                           Limited to equipment and supplies common to two or more land forces, or to at  
                           least two of the three major defense forces, e.g., missiles and tanks, supplies of  
                           land and sea forces  
                           Including auxiliary techniques and procedures  
                           Class here weapons (ordnance); apparatus, equipment, materials; military  
                           aspects of research and development (other than procurement and contracting)  
                           of specific kinds of equipment and supplies  
                           Class mobilization of military industrial resources in 355.28; class  
                           comprehensive works on military aspects of research and development of  
                           equipment and supplies, of weapons in 355.07; class weapons limited to a  
                           specific land force in 356-357. Class interdisciplinary works on research and  
                           development of a specific kind of supplies and equipment with the kind in  
                           338.47, e.g., small arms 338.4762344  
                           *For administration of specific kinds of equipment and supplies, see 355.621*
- [.806 8]            Management  
                           Do not use; class in 355.621
- [.807 2]            Research  
                           Do not use; class in 355.07
- .81                Clothing, food, camp equipment, office supplies

- .82            Specific kinds of weapons (ordnance)  
                   Class specific kinds of weapons limited to a specific land force in 356–357  
                   *For combat vehicles, see 355.83*  
                   *See also 327.174 for problems of arms limitation and of verifying arms-control treaty provisions for specific kinds of weapons*  
                   *See Manual at 355–359 vs. 623*
- [.820 1–.820 9]    Standard subdivisions  
                   Do not use; class in 355.801–355.809
- .821            Artillery  
                   Class army artillery in 358.1282  
                   *For specific pieces of artillery, see 355.822; for artillery projectiles, see 355.82513*
- .822            Specific pieces of artillery  
                   Class specific pieces of army artillery in 358.1282
- .823–.826        Other specific kinds of weapons  
                   Add to base number 355.82 the numbers following 623.4 in 623.43–623.46, e.g., nuclear weapons 355.825119, artillery projectiles 355.82513; however, for comprehensive works on missiles, see 358.17182; for comprehensive works on chemical, biological, radiological weapons, on weapons of mass destruction, see 358.3; for ordnance of a force or service dedicated to a specific kind of weapon, see the force or service in 356–359, plus notation 82 or 83 from table at 356–359, e.g., tank ammunition 358.1882
- .825 1          Charge-containing devices  
                   Number built according to instructions under 355.823–355.826  
                   Class here interdisciplinary works on bombs  
                   *For military engineering of bombs, see 623.451*
- .83            Transportation equipment and supplies  
                   Including fuel; aircraft used outside air forces, ships used outside naval forces, support vehicles, trains  
                   Class here combat vehicles  
                   Class comprehensive works on aircraft in 358.4183; class comprehensive works on ships in 359.83
- .85            Communication equipment  
                   Class army communication equipment in 358.248
- .88            Medical supplies  
                   Class ambulances in 355.83

&gt;

**356–359 Specific kinds of military forces and warfare**

Class here history of specific military forces not limited to any one war, services and units dedicated to specific forces, countermeasures against specific forces

All notes under 355 are applicable here

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by \* as follows:

- 01–09 Standard subdivisions
  - Notation from Table 1 as modified under 355.001–355.009, e.g., management 6 (*not* 068), management of artillery forces 358.126 (*not* 358.12068); however, class research, statistical methods in 072
- 1 Military life and customs
- 14 Uniforms
- 3 Organization and personnel
  - Class here units
    - For personnel management, see 6*
- 309 History, geographic treatment, biography
  - Class here units of specific countries regardless of size of unit
- 4 Operations
  - Class here tactics
- 5 Training
- 6 Administration
  - Including administration of equipment and supplies, executive management, financial administration, personnel management
    - For administration of a specific topic not provided for here, see the topic, plus notation 068 from Table 1, e.g., administration of installations 7068*
    - (Option: Class comprehensive works on administration in 353.29. If option is chosen, change heading to “Specific topics in administration,” and do not add standard subdivisions)
- 7 Installations
- 8 Equipment and supplies (Matériel)
  - Class here weapons
- [8068] Management
  - Do not use; class in 6
- 82 Weapons other than combat vehicles
- 83 Combat vehicles

Class comprehensive works in 355. Class a specific countermeasure with the force wielding it, e.g., coast artillery 358.16 (*not* 359)

*See Manual at 355–359 vs. 623; also at 930–990 vs. 355.009, 355–359*

&gt;

**356–357 Land forces and warfare**

Class comprehensive works in 355

*For artillery, missile, armored forces, see 358.1; for chemical, biological, radiological warfare, see 358.3*

**356****Foot forces and warfare**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

**.1 Infantry****.11 General topics of infantry**

Class general topics of irregular troops in 356.15; class general topics of troops having special combat functions in 356.16

**[.110 1–.110 9] Standard subdivisions**

Do not use; class in 356.101–356.109

**.111–.118 Specific topics of infantry**

Add to base number 356.11 notation 1–8 from table under 356–359, e.g., infantry training 356.115

**.15 \*Irregular troops**

Including guerrillas, partisans

**.16 Troops having special combat functions**

Including motorized infantry

**.162 Troops specializing in specific weapons**

Including bazookamen, grenadiers, machine gunners, sharpshooters (snipers)

**.164 \*Mountain and ski troops**

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

**.166 \*Paratroops****.167 \*Commandos and rangers**

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

**357 Mounted forces and warfare**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

**.04 General topics of mounted forces and warfare****[.040 1–.040 9] Standard subdivisions**

Do not use; class in 357.01–357.09

**.041 Military life and customs****.041 4 Uniforms****.043 Organization and personnel**

Class here comprehensive works on units that served as horse cavalry and mechanized or armored cavalry, e.g., U.S. Third Cavalry Division 357.0430973

Class a specific period of service of a unit which changed kinds of mounts with the kind of mount, e.g., U.S. Third Cavalry Division as a horse unit 357.1830973

\*Add as instructed under 356–359

- .044-.048      Operations, training, administration, installations, equipment and supplies  
                     Add to base number 357.04 notation 4-8 from table under 356-359, e.g.,  
                     training mounted forces 357.045

**.1      Horse cavalry**

Class here dragoons, lancers

*For remount services, see 357.2*

*See also 358.12 for horse artillery*

**.18      General topics of horse cavalry**

- [.180 1-.180 9]      Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 357.101-357.109

**.181-.188      Special topics of horse cavalry**

Add to base number 357.18 notation 1-8 from table under 356-359, e.g.,  
 uniforms of horse cavalry 357.1814

**.2      Remount services**

**.5      Mechanized cavalry**

*For armored cavalry, see 358.18*

**.52      \*Bicycle troops**

**.53      \*Motorcycle troops**

**.54      Large motor-vehicle cavalry**

Including jeep and truck cavalry

**358      Air and other specialized forces and warfare; engineering and related services**

**SUMMARY**

- 358.1      Missile forces; army artillery and armored forces**  
 .2      Army engineering and related services  
 .3      Chemical, biological, radiological warfare  
 .4      Air forces and warfare  
 .8      Space forces

**.1      Missile forces; army artillery and armored forces**

**.12      \*Army artillery forces**

Including antitank artillery forces

Class here field artillery forces

*For anti-aircraft artillery forces, see 358.13; for coast artillery forces, see 358.16*

\*Add as instructed under 356-359

- .13      \*Antiaircraft artillery forces
- .16      \*Coast artillery forces
- .17      Guided missile forces  
           Class here strategic missile forces, nuclear missile forces  
           Class strategic land missile forces in 358.1754  
           *For air guided missile forces, see 358.42; for naval guided missile forces, see 359.9817*
- .171     General topics of guided missile forces  
           Class general topics of specific missile forces in 358.174–358.176
- [.171 01–.171 09]   Standard subdivisions  
           Do not use; class in 358.1701–358.1709
- .171 1–.171 8      Specific topics of guided missile forces  
           Add to base number 358.171 notation 1–8 from table under 356–359, e.g., training of missile forces 358.1715
- .171 82           Weapons other than combat vehicles  
           Number built according to instructions under 358.1711–358.1718  
           Class here comprehensive works on missiles  
           *For military engineering of missiles, see 623.451*
- .174     \*Antimissile defense forces  
           Class here Strategic Defense Initiative (SDI, star wars), surface-to-air missile forces  
           Class a specific defense other than surface-to-air missiles with the defense, e.g., beam weapon forces 358.39, air-to-air missile forces 358.43
- .175     Specific surface-to-surface missile forces
- [.175 01–.175 09]   Standard subdivisions  
           Do not use; class in 358.1701–358.1709
- .175 2           \*Short-range missile forces  
           Class here tactical missile forces
- .175 3           \*Intermediate-range missile forces
- .175 4           \*Long-range missile forces  
           Class here strategic land missile forces
- .176     \*Surface-to-underwater missile forces
- .18      \*Armored forces  
           Class here tank forces, armored cavalry

\*Add as instructed under 356–359

- .2 Army engineering and related services**
- .22 \*Engineering services  
 Including property maintenance  
 Class here construction engineer services  
 Class communications services in 358.24; class transportation services in 358.25; class civil activities of army engineering services in 363
- .23 \*Demolition services  
 Including bomb disposal units
- .24 \*Communications forces (Signal forces)  
 Including military cryptography services
- .25 \*Transportation services
- .3 Chemical, biological, radiological warfare**  
 Regardless of service or force to which assigned  
 Class here warfare with weapons of mass destruction; interdisciplinary works on chemical, biological, radiological warfare; interdisciplinary works on weapons of mass destruction  
*For nuclear warfare, see 355.0217. For a specific aspect of weapons of mass destruction, see the aspect, e.g., disarmament of weapons of mass destruction 327.1745*
- .34 \*Chemical warfare
- .38 \*Biological warfare
- .39 \*Radiation and beam warfare  
 Class here passive defense against nuclear radiation
- .4 Air forces and warfare**  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
*For naval air forces, see 359.94*
- .400 1-.400 9 Standard subdivisions  
 Notation from Table 1 as modified under 355.001-355.009, e.g., air forces administration 358.416 (*not* 358.40068)
- .403 Situation and policy  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
 Class air defense operations in 358.414

.407            Air force research and development  
                   Limited to air force aspects  
                   Class here relation of air force and warfare to science and technology, comprehensive works on air force aspects of research and development of equipment and supplies  
                   Class interdisciplinary works on air force research and development in 338.47358407  
                   *For procurement and contracting aspects of research and development of air force supplies and equipment, see 358.416212; for air force aspects of research and development (other than procurement and contracting) of specific kinds of equipment and supplies, see 358.418*

.41             General topics of air forces and warfare  
                   Class general topics of specific forces in 358.42–358.47

[.410 1–.410 9]    Standard subdivisions

                  Do not use; class in 358.4001–358.4009

.411–.418        Specific topics of air forces and warfare  
                   Add to base number 358.41 the numbers following 355 in 355.1–355.8, e.g., uniforms 358.4114, comprehensive works on military aircraft 358.4183; however, for aircraft of specific forces, see 358.42–358.47

>                358.42–358.47 Specific forces  
                   Class chemical, biological, radiological warfare in 358.3; class comprehensive works in 358.4

.42             \*Bombing forces  
                   Including air-to-underwater guided missile forces  
                   Class here strategic missions of air forces; air-to-surface guided missile forces; comprehensive works on air guided missile forces, on air nuclear forces  
                   *For air-to-air guided missile forces, air-to-air nuclear forces, see 358.43*

.43             \*Pursuit and fighter forces  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Including air-to-air guided missile forces, air-to-air nuclear forces, air artillery  
                   Class here tactical missions of air forces

.44             \*Transportation services

.45             \*Reconnaissance forces and operations  
                   Including antisubmarine reconnaissance

.46 \*Communications services  
Class here signal services

.47 \*Engineering services

.8 \*Space forces

*See also 358.17 for missile forces when either launch or target is from or to the earth or its atmosphere*

## 359 Sea forces and warfare

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here naval forces and warfare

### SUMMARY

**359.001–.009** Standard subdivisions  
 .03–.07 [Situation and policy, naval research and development]  
 .1–.2 Naval life and resources  
 .3 Organization and personnel of naval forces  
 .4–.7 Naval operations, training, administration, installations  
 .8 Naval equipment and supplies (Naval matériel)  
 .9 Specialized combat forces; engineering and related services

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 355.001–355.006, e.g., naval administration 359.6 (*not* 359.0068)

.03 Situation and policy

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here naval defense

Class naval defense operations in 359.4

.07 Naval research and development

Limited to naval aspects

Class here relation of naval science to science and technology; comprehensive works on naval aspects of research and development of equipment, supplies, weapons

Class interdisciplinary works on naval research and development in 338.4735907

*For procurement and contracting aspects of research and development of naval equipment and supplies, see 359.6212; for naval aspects of research and development (other than procurement and contracting) of specific kinds of equipment and supplies, see 359.81–359.88*

**.1–.2 Naval life and resources**

Add to base number 359 the numbers following 355 in 355.1–355.2, e.g., uniforms 359.14

\*Add as instructed under 356–359

**.3 Organization and personnel of naval forces****.31 Naval units**

Including fleets, squadrons, flotillas, divisions

Class noncombat services in 359.34; class reserves in 359.37

*For ships as naval units, see 359.32*

**.32 Ships as naval units**

Class here crews of ships

Class comprehensive works on ships in the navy in 359.83

*See Manual at 359.32 vs. 359.83*

**.322 Sailing ships as naval units**

Class here sailing ships of war

**.325-.326 Specific kinds of powered ships as naval units**

Add to base number 359.32 the numbers following 623.82 in 623.825-623.826, e.g., cruisers 359.3253; however, for submarines, see 359.933; for aircraft carriers, see 359.9435; for military supply and transport ships, see 359.9853

**.33-.37 Personnel, noncombat services, fields of combat service, reserves**

Add to base number 359.3 the numbers following 355.3 in 355.33-355.37, e.g., noncombat services 359.34

**.4-.7 Naval operations, training, administration, installations**

Add to base number 359 the numbers following 355 in 355.4-355.7, e.g., naval blockades 359.44

**.8 Naval equipment and supplies (Naval matériel)**

Including auxiliary techniques and procedures

Class here weapons (ordnance); apparatus, equipment, materials; naval aspects of research and development (other than procurement and contracting) of specific kinds of supplies and equipment

Class mobilization of naval industrial resources in 359.28. Class interdisciplinary works on research and development of a specific kind of naval supplies and equipment with the kind in 338.47, e.g., warships 338.47623825

**[.806 8] Management**

Do not use; class in 359.621

**[.807 2] Research**

Do not use; class in 359.07

**.81-.88 Specific kinds of naval equipment and supplies**

Add to base number 359.8 the numbers following 355.8 in 355.81-355.88, e.g., clothing 359.81; however, for ordnance on specific kinds of ships, see 359.83; for artillery, see 359.981282; for guided missiles, see 359.981782

- .83           Transportation equipment and supplies  
                   Number built according to instructions under 359.8  
                   Including fuel, support vehicles  
                   Class here comprehensive works on ships in armed forces  
                   *For ships as naval units, see 359.32. For ships used outside the naval forces, see the force using them, e.g., coast guard ships 359.9783*  
                   *See Manual at 359.32 vs. 359.83*
- .832           Sailing ships as equipment  
                   Class here sailing ships of war
- .835-.836      Specific kinds of power-driven warships as equipment  
                   Add to base number 359.83 the numbers following 623.82 in 623.825-623.826, e.g., cruisers 359.8353; however, for submarines, see 359.9383; for aircraft carriers, see 359.94835; for military supply and transport ships, see 359.98583
- .9           Specialized combat forces; engineering and related services**  
                   Class chemical, biological, radiological warfare in 358.3
- .93            \*Submarine forces
- .933           Organization and personnel  
                   Number built according to instructions under 356-359  
                   Class here units, submarines as units  
                   *See Manual at 359.32 vs. 359.83*
- .938           Equipment and supplies (Matériel)  
                   Number built according to instructions under 356-359
- .938 3         Ships as equipment  
                   Number built according to instructions under 356-359  
                   Class here submarines as equipment  
                   *See Manual at 359.32 vs. 359.83*
- .938 32       Conventionally powered submarines
- .938 34       Nuclear powered submarines
- .94            \*Naval air forces
- .943           Organization and personnel  
                   Number built according to instructions under 356-359  
                   Class here units

- .943 4            Aircraft units  
                  Including flights, groups, squadrons, wings
- .943 5            Aircraft carriers as units  
                  *See Manual at 359.32 vs. 359.83*
- .948            Equipment and supplies (Matériel)  
                  Number built according to instructions under 356–359
- .948 3            Combat vehicles  
                  Number built according to instructions under 356–359  
                  Class combat vehicles as units in 359.943
- .948 34          Aircraft
- .948 35          Aircraft carriers as equipment  
                  *See Manual at 359.32 vs. 359.83*
- .96            Marine forces  
                  Add to base number 359.96 the numbers following 355 in 355.1–355.8, e.g.,  
                  training 355.965
- .97            \*Coast guard  
                  As a military service  
                  Class coast guard as a police service, interdisciplinary works on coast guard  
                  in 363.286
- .98            Artillery and guided missile forces; engineering and related services
- .981            Artillery and guided missile forces
- .981 2          \*Artillery services  
                  Class artillery units aboard specific kinds of ships in 359.32; class  
                  artillery ordnance aboard specific kinds of ships in 359.83
- .981 7          \*Guided missile forces  
                  Class guided missile units aboard specific kinds of ships in 359.32;  
                  class guided missile ordnance aboard specific kinds of ships in 359.83
- .982            \*Engineering services
- .983            \*Communications services (Signal services)
- .984            Special warfare services  
                  Including frogmen, underwater demolition units, underwater  
                  reconnaissance operations; sea, air, land teams
- .985            \*Transportation services  
                  Class here military sealift commands

\*Add as instructed under 356–359

- .985 3            Organization and personnel  
                   Number built according to instructions under 356-359  
                   Including troopships as units  
                   Class here units, military supply ships as units  
                   *See Manual at 359.32 vs. 359.83*
- .985 8            Supplies and equipment (Matériel)  
                   Number built according to instructions under 356-359
- .985 83           Military supply ships as equipment  
                   Number built according to instructions under 356-359  
                   Including troopships  
                   *See Manual at 359.32 vs. 359.83*

## 360      **Social problems and services; associations**

### SUMMARY

- 361            **Social problems and services**  
                   .001-.008            **Standard subdivisions**  
                   .02-.06            **Specific kinds of assistance**  
                   .1            **Social problems**  
                   .2            **Social action**  
                   .3            **Social work**  
                   .4            **Group work**  
                   .6            **Governmental action**  
                   .7            **Private action**  
                   .8            **Community action**  
                   .9            **History, geographic treatment, biography**
- 362            **Social problems of and services to groups of people**  
                   .04            **Special topics of social problems of and services to groups of people**  
                   .1            **People with physical illnesses**  
                   .2            **People with mental illness and disabilities**  
                   .3            **People with mental retardation**  
                   .4            **People with physical disabilities**  
                   .5            **Poor people**  
                   .6            **People in late adulthood**  
                   .7            **Young people**  
                   .8            **Other groups of people**  
                   .9            **History, geographic treatment, biography**
- 363            **Other social problems and services**  
                   .1            **Public safety programs**  
                   .2            **Police services**  
                   .3            **Other aspects of public safety**  
                   .4            **Controversies related to public morals and customs**  
                   .5            **Housing**  
                   .6            **Public utilities and related services**  
                   .7            **Environmental problems**  
                   .8            **Food supply**  
                   .9            **Population problems**

- 364           Criminology  
  .01-.09        Standard subdivisions and special topics of criminology  
  .1            Criminal offenses  
  .2            Causes of crime and delinquency  
  .3            Offenders  
  .4            Prevention of crime and delinquency  
  .6            Penology  
  .8            Discharged offenders  
  .9            History, geographic treatment, biography of crime and its alleviation
- 365           Penal and related institutions  
  .3            Kinds of penal institutions  
  .4            Institutions for specific classes of inmates  
  .5            Prison plant  
  .6            Inmates  
  .7            Reform of penal institutions  
  .9            History, geographic treatment, biography
- 366           Secret associations and societies  
  .01-.09        Standard subdivisions  
  .1            Freemasonry  
  .2            Knights of Pythias  
  .3            Independent Order of Odd Fellows  
  .5            Benevolent and Protective Order of Elks
- 367           General clubs  
  .9            History, geographic treatment, biography
- 368           Insurance  
  .001-.009     Standard subdivisions and insurance companies  
  .01-.09        [General principles, specific forms of risk, sales groupings]  
  .1            Insurance against damage to and loss of property  
  .2            Insurance against damage to and loss of property in transit  
  .3            Old-age insurance and insurance against death, illness, injury  
  .4            Government-sponsored insurance  
  .5            Liability insurance  
  .6            Glass insurance  
  .7            Insurance against industrial casualties (accidents)  
  .8            Other casualty insurance  
  .9            Insurance by specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
- 369           Associations  
  .01-.09        Standard subdivisions  
  .1            Hereditary, military, patriotic societies of United States  
  .2            Hereditary, military, patriotic societies  
  .3            Ethnic clubs  
  .4            Young people's societies  
  .5            Service clubs

## 361 Social problems and services

Class here social welfare; work and policy of government agencies that enforce the law in matters of social problems and services; interdisciplinary works on socioeconomic planning and development, on programs and services covering several branches of social sciences, on social problems and services

Class law of social services, including draft laws, enforcement of the law by courts, in 344.02–344.05; class the internal administration of governmental agencies dealing with social services, including their administrative annual reports, in 353.5; class insurance in 368; class personal health and safety in 613; class description of present or past social conditions in 930–990

*For social problems considered purely as social phenomena, see 301–307; for community planning and development, see 307.1; for economic planning and development, see 338.9; for social services in armed forces, see 355–359; for specific problems and services, see 362–365; for school social services, see 371.7; for social services in specific wars, see 900*

*See Manual at 361–365; also at 301–307 vs. 361–365; also at 361–365 vs. 353.5; also at 361 vs. 362–363*

### SUMMARY

<b>361.001–.008</b>	<b>Standard subdivisions</b>
<b>.02–.06</b>	<b>Specific kinds of assistance</b>
<b>.1</b>	<b>Social problems</b>
<b>.2</b>	<b>Social action</b>
<b>.3</b>	<b>Social work</b>
<b>.4</b>	<b>Group work</b>
<b>.6</b>	<b>Governmental action</b>
<b>.7</b>	<b>Private action</b>
<b>.8</b>	<b>Community action</b>
<b>.9</b>	<b>History, geographic treatment, biography</b>

.001–.007 Standard subdivisions

.008 Groups of people

Do not use for social problems of and services to groups of people; class in 362

[.009] History, geographic treatment, biography

Do not use; class in 361.9

> 361.02–361.06 Specific kinds of assistance

Class here general discussions covering various problems and client groups, and both governmental and private assistance

Class comprehensive works in 361. Class assistance with respect to a specific problem with the problem, e.g., free assistance to people in late adulthood 362.6

*For governmental assistance, see 361.6; for private assistance, see 361.7*

.02 Free assistance

Class specific kinds of free assistance in 361.05–361.06

- .04      Paid assistance  
           Assistance for which the recipient pays all or part of cost  
           Class specific kinds of paid assistance in 361.05–361.06
- .05      Material assistance  
           Including direct provision of food, clothing, shelter (temporary housing);  
           financial aid; institutional care; recreational activities and facilities; relief
- .06      Counseling, guidance, related services  
           Standard subdivisions are added for counseling, guidance, related services  
           together; for counseling alone; for guidance alone  
           Services directed toward enabling individuals and groups to assist  
           themselves  
           Including citizens advice bureaus; telephone counseling, e.g., hot lines  
           Class social work in 361.3
- .1      Social problems**  
           History, description, appraisal of areas and kinds of social breakdown, of  
           problems endemic to human society  
           Including risk assessment  
           *For specific problems, see 362–363*
- .2      Social action**  
           Class change as a social phenomenon in 303.4  
           *For a specific aspect of social action not provided for here, see the aspect in  
           361.3–361.8, e.g., social work 361.3*
- .23      Dissent and protest  
           Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .24      Reform movements
- .25      Action within established social framework  
           Class here planning, policy, programs, proposals; citizen participation;  
           comprehensive works on governmental and private action  
           *For international action, see 361.26; for social work, see 361.3; for  
           governmental action, see 361.6; for private action, see 361.7; for  
           combined governmental and private community action, see 361.8*
- .26      International action  
           Class governmental international action in 361.6; class private international  
           action in 361.77
- .3      Social work**

- .32 Practice of social work  
 Class here casework  
*For counseling, see 361.06; for group work, see 361.4*
- .322 Interviewing
- .37 Volunteer social work  
*For a specific aspect of volunteer social work, see the aspect, e.g., interviewing 361.322*
- .4 Group work**  
 Class counseling in group work in 361.06
- .43 Self-help groups  
 Class here mutual aid, support groups
- .6 Governmental action**  
 Class here intergovernmental assistance and planning, governmental international action, interdisciplinary works on government-sponsored socioeconomic planning and development  
 Class combined governmental and private action in 361.25; class governmental social work in 361.3; class combined governmental and private community action in 361.8  
*For management of governmental agencies regulating social welfare services, see 353.5*
- .61 Social policy  
 Class welfare reform in 361.68
- .612 Goals, values, priorities
- .613 Relation of politics and social action  
 Class effect of social action on political structures and values in 320
- .614 Relation of welfare and human rights  
 Including use of compulsory remedial action  
 Class interdisciplinary works on human rights in 323
- .615 Relation of government and private sectors  
 Class welfare state in 361.65
- .65 Welfare state  
 Class economics of welfare state in 330.126
- .68 Welfare reform
- .7 Private action**  
 Class combined governmental and private action in 361.25; class private social work in 361.3; class relation of government and private sectors in 361.615; class combined governmental and private community action in 361.8

- .706            Organizations and management  
                   Do not use for a specific kind of organization; class in 361.75–361.77  
                   with the kind e.g., nonprofit organizations 361.763
- .706 81            Organization and financial management  
                   Class here fund raising  
                   Class charity, thrift shops in 381.19
- .708            Groups of people  
                   Do not use for private action to a group of people; class in 362
- .74             Individual philanthropy  
                   Class an organization that controls the use of the money donated by a  
                   philanthropist with the organization, e.g., Rockefeller Foundation 361.7632
- .75             Religious organizations
- .76             Private organizations  
                   Class religious organizations in 361.75; class private international  
                   organizations in 361.77
- .763            Nonprofit organizations  
                   Including CARE
- .763 2           Charitable foundations and trusts
- .763 4           National Red Cross and Red Crescent societies  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Class here affiliated national societies, e.g., Red Crystal  
                   Class comprehensive works on International Committee of the Red  
                   Cross, International Federation of Red Cross and Red Crescent  
                   Societies in 361.772
- .765            Business organizations  
                   Class ways that management can deal with charitable donations in  
                   658.153; class programs of employers for employees in 658.38
- .766            Labor unions
- .77             Private international organizations  
                   *See also 361.76 for local organizations providing services worldwide*
- .772            International Committee of the Red Cross; International Federation  
                   of Red Cross and Red Crescent Societies  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   *For Red Cross, Red Crescent, affiliated societies of a specific nation,  
                   see 361.7634*

**.8 Community action**

Including community chests, united charities

Class community development in 307.14; class governmental community action in 361.6; class private community action in 361.7

**.9 History, geographic treatment, biography**

Class history, geographic treatment, biography of specific kinds of social action in 361.2–361.8

**.901–.905 Historical periods**

Add to base number 361.90 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., welfare work in 20th century 361.904

**.91–.99 Geographic treatment, biography**

Add to base number 361.9 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., welfare work in Arizona 361.9791

**> 362–363 Specific social problems and services**

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by \* as follows:

- 01 Philosophy and theory
- 02 Miscellany
- [0218] Standards
  - Do not use; class in 62
- [0289] Safety measures
  - Do not use; class in 363.1
- 03–05 Standard subdivisions
- 06 Organizations and management
- 0681 Organization and financial management
  - Including managerial cost control
  - Class social measures to hold down costs in 5
- 07 Education, research, related topics
- 08 Groups of people
  - Do not use for discrimination as social cause; class in 1. Do not use for actions against discrimination; class in 5
  - See also 3 for people close to those with a problem*
- 09 History, geographic treatment, biography
- >1–4 Characteristics of problem
  - Class comprehensive works in 362–363 without adding from this table
- 1 Social causes
  - Including discrimination
  - Class here sources
- 2 Incidence, extent, severity
  - Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
  - Including risk assessment

(continued)

&gt;

**362–363 Specific social problems and services (continued)**

- 3 Effects on people close to those with a problem  
Including effects on co-workers, on neighbors  
Class here families  
Class aftereffects on people close to those with a problem in 4;  
class family problems in 362.82
- 4 Aftereffects of people with a problem  
Either effects on the individual with the problem that occur after  
the problem has ceased, or effects on other people that occur after  
the problem has ceased or the other people are no longer close to  
the individual with the problem  
Class here adult children of people with a problem  
Class a specific aftereffect with the aftereffect, e.g., social aspects  
of alcoholism in victims of child abuse 362.292, medical aspects of  
depression in adult victims of child abuse 616.8527
- 5 Social action  
Class here social action to relieve discrimination, social measures  
to hold down costs  
Add to 5 the numbers following 361 in 361.2–361.8, e.g.,  
international action 526, social work 53, rationing 56  
Class governmental administration of rationing programs in  
352.86; class comprehensive works on social action in 361.2  
*For specific forms of action, see 6–8*
- >6–8 Specific forms of action  
Class comprehensive works in 5  
Works containing topics from any two of these subdivisions are  
classed in 5
- 6 Control  
Elimination and reduction of hazards, of sources and causes of  
difficulty  
Class measures to protect against and to limit effects of problems in  
7
- 62 Standards
- 63 Monitoring, surveillance, reporting  
Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- 64 Inspection and testing  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in  
heading
- 65 Investigation of specific incidents  
Class criminal investigation of specific incidents in 364.1
- 66 Certification
- 7 Measures to prevent, protect against, limit effects of problems  
Class here preparedness  
Class measures that both control and prevent problems in 6  
*For safety measures, see 363.1*
- 72 Protective measures  
Including design of environments, warning and guidance  
systems

(continued)

> **362–363 Specific social problems and services (continued)**

- 8 Remedial measures, services, forms of assistance  
 Measures applicable primarily to individuals, even if in large groups  
 Class here material assistance  
 Class remedial measures directed toward altering a social function, e.g., cost control, in 5; class social work in 53; class comprehensive works on material assistance in 361.05
- 809 History, geographic treatment, biography  
 Class here the area receiving assistance, e.g., relief to Italy provided by the United States 809450973  
 Class the area providing assistance in 8 without adding from Table 1, e.g., relief provided by the United States to many countries 8, not 80973
- 81 Rescue operations
- 82 Financial assistance  
 Class social insurance in 368.4
- 83 Provision of food, shelter (temporary housing), household assistance, clothing, other related necessities; recreation  
 Class long-term housing in 363.59
- 84 Employment services  
 Including vocational rehabilitation
- 85 Residential care  
 Care within institutions existing for the purpose
- 86 Counseling and guidance  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
 Including legal aid  
 Class comprehensive works on counseling and guidance in 361.06

Class discrimination in 305; class comprehensive works in 361

*For criminology, see 364*

*See Manual at 361 vs. 362–363; also at 362–363 vs. 364.1*

## 362 Social problems of and services to groups of people

Class here social security

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., mentally ill veterans 362.208697 (*not* 362.860874):

People with physical illnesses	362.1
People with mental illness and disabilities	362.2
People with mental retardation	362.3
People with physical disabilities	362.4
Displaced persons	362.87
Victims of crimes and war	362.88
Veterans of military service	362.86
People in late adulthood	362.6
Young people	362.7
Working class	362.85
Women	362.83
Transgender and intersex people	362.897
People by sexual orientation	362.896
People with status defined by changes in residence	362.8991
Retired people	362.8996
Poor people	362.5
Unemployed people	362.8994
People by miscellaneous social attributes (without subdivisions)	362.899
People by social and economic levels	362.892
Miscellaneous groups of people (without subdivisions)	362.89
Families	362.82
Ethnic and national groups	362.84
Other groups of people (without subdivisions)	362.8
History, geographic treatment, biography	362.9

Use notation 08 from Table 1 to indicate the specific group of people to whom the service is rendered, e.g., young adults addicted to narcotics 362.293084, poor veterans of military service 362.86086942. Do not use notation 08 from Table 1 to indicate services rendered by groups of people, e.g., services rendered by young adults to people addicted to narcotics 362.293, *not* 362.2930842

*For social problems of and services to military personnel, see 355.34; for social problems of and services to prisoners, see 365.66; for social security as a form of social insurance, see 368.4; for social problems of and services to students, see 371.7*

*See also 920.008 for general collections of biography of members of a specific group that share a social problem*

*See Manual at 920.008 vs. 305–306, 362*

## SUMMARY

- 362.04           Special topics of social problems of and services to groups of people  
  .1            People with physical illnesses  
  .2            People with mental illness and disabilities  
  .3            People with mental retardation  
  .4            People with physical disabilities  
  .5            Poor people  
  .6            People in late adulthood  
  .7            Young people  
  .8            Other groups of people  
  .9            History, geographic treatment, biography
- .04            Special topics of social problems of and services to groups of people
- .042           Social problems
- .042 2            Incidence, extent, severity  
                  Including social effects
- .042 3            Social causes
- .042 4            Prevention
- .042 5            Social action  
                  Including remedial measures  
                  Class prevention in 362.0424
- [.08]           Groups of people  
                  Do not use; class in 362.1–362.8
- [.09]           History, geographic treatment, biography  
                  Do not use; class in 362.9

---

>           **362.1–362.4 People with illnesses and disabilities**

Class incidence of and public measures to prevent physical diseases in 614.4–614.5; class comprehensive works in 362.1

*See Manual at 362.1–362.4 vs. 610; also at 362.1–362.4 and 614.4–614.5*

**.1 People with physical illnesses**

Class here interdisciplinary works on illness and disability, on medical care and treatment, on medical missions, on public health

*For religious aspects of medical missions, see 266; for sociology of medicine, of health, of illness, see 306.461; for mental illness, see 362.2; for mental retardation, see 362.3; for problems of and services to people with a specific physical disability regardless of cause, see 362.4; for technology of medicine, see 610*

## SUMMARY

**362.101-.109 Standard subdivisions and special topics of people with physical illnesses**

- .11 Hospitals and related institutions**
- .12 Clinics and related institutions**
- .14 Professional home care**
- .16 Extended medical care facilities**
- .17 Specific services**
- .18 Emergency services**
- .19 Services to patients with specific conditions**

- .102 3 Services to people with physical illnesses as a profession, occupation, hobby
- Class here interdisciplinary works on health occupations peripheral to the medical and paramedical professions
- Class works covering both the medical and peripheral occupations in 610
- For a specific peripheral profession, see the profession, e.g., medical social workers 362.10425, hospital secretaries 651.3741*
- .104 Special topics of people with physical illnesses
- .104 2 Social aspects
- Class preventive measures in 614.44-614.48
- .104 22 Social effects
- Class incidence in 614.42
- .104 25 Forms of assistance
- Including medical social work
- Class here comprehensive works on health assistance and health and accident insurance
- For health and accident insurance, see 368.382; for government sponsored health and accident insurance, see 368.42*
- .104 252 Financial assistance
- .104 256 Counseling and guidance
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .104 257 Rural health services
- .104 258 Managed care plans
- .104 258 4 Health maintenance organizations (HMOs)
- .106 8 Management
- Class here peer reviews
- Class the result of a peer reviews with the result, e.g., the result of the evaluation of New York City hospitals 362.11097471

- .108           Groups of people  
                   Do not use for services rendered by groups of people; class in 362.1  
                   Class physical illness among groups of people in 616.008
- .108 3         Young people  
                   Do not use for infants and children up to puberty; class in 362.19892
- .108 4         People in specific stages of adulthood
- [.108 46]      People in late adulthood  
                   Do not use; class in 362.19897
- .109           History, geographic treatment, biography
- [.109 173 4]   Rural regions  
                   Do not use; class in 362.104257

- 
- >           362.11–362.19 Medical services  
                   Free and paid  
                   Class medical treatment in 616; class comprehensive works in 362.1

- 
- >           362.11–362.16 Services of specific kinds of institutions  
                   Class services of health maintenance organizations in 362.1042584; class  
                   specific kinds of services provided by a specific institution in 362.17; class  
                   services by a specific institution to patients with specific conditions in 362.19;  
                   class comprehensive works in 362.1

- .11           Hospitals and related institutions  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for hospitals and related institutions  
                   together, for hospitals alone  
                   *For clinics and related institutions, see 362.12; for extended medical  
                   care facilities, see 362.16*
- .12           Clinics and related institutions  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for clinics and related institutions together,  
                   for clinics alone  
                   Including dispensaries, health centers, outpatient departments of general  
                   hospitals  
                   Class here ambulatory care, community health services
- .14           Professional home care  
                   Including visiting nurses' services, services of health visitors  
                   *See also 649.8 for home care by family members*

- .16           Extended medical care facilities
- Including convalescent homes, sanatoriums for people suffering from chronic diseases
- Class here extended medical care facilities for people in late adulthood, institutions providing complete medical care, nursing homes providing complete medical care
- Class comprehensive works on life care communities in 362.61
- [.160 846]                 People in late adulthood
- Do not use; class in 362.16
- .17           Specific services
- Class here social provision of specific kinds of medical services, interdisciplinary works covering both social provision and technology of specific kinds of medical services
- Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 362.17 in the number coming last, e.g., diagnostic services by doctors 362.177 (*not* 362.172)
- Class forms of assistance in 362.10425; class specific kinds of services to patients with specific conditions in 362.19; class group practice in 610.65
- For emergency services, see 362.18; for technology of medical services, see 610; for preventive services, see 614.44*
- .172          Services of physicians
- Including referral and consulting services
- .173          Services of nurses
- Class visiting nurses' services in 362.14
- .173 068                 Management of services of nurses
- Class here nonmedical aspects of ward management
- .174          Intensive care
- .175          Terminal care
- .175 6                 Hospices
- .176          Nutritional services
- Class here feeding of sick, comprehensive works on the provision of special diets for various classes of people with illnesses
- Class nutritional programs for the population at large in 363.8
- For nutritional services applied to nutrition disorders, see 362.19639*
- .177          Diagnostic and screening services
- Including radiology services
- .178          Therapeutic services

- .178 2           Pharmaceutical services  
                   Class nutritional services in 362.176
- .178 3           Organ and tissue banks  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Including eye banks  
                   *For blood and blood plasma banks, see 362.1784*
- .178 4           Blood and blood plasma banks  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .178 6           Rehabilitation services
- .18            Emergency services  
                   Including trauma centers
- .188           Ambulance services
- .19            Services to patients with specific conditions  
                   Class here living with a physical disease  
                   Class incidence of and public measures to prevent specific diseases in 614.5  
                   *See also 362.10425 for indigent patients; also 362.175 for terminal patients*
- [.190 1–.190 9]   Standard subdivisions  
                   Do not use; class in 362.101–362.109
- .196–.198       Specific conditions  
                   Add to base number 362.19 the numbers following 61 in 616–618 for the condition only, e.g., services to patients with diabetes 362.196462, dental care 362.1976, maternity services 362.1982; then add further as follows (*not* as instructed under 616.1–616.9, 617, or 618.1–618.8); however, for 362.19892 pediatric care, add 0 before adding further, e.g., periodicals on pediatric care 362.198920005:  
                   001–009   Standard subdivisions  
                           Notation from Table 1 as modified under 616.1–616.9, e.g., biography of an individual with diabetes 362.1964620092, periodicals on dental care 362.1976005  
                   02–08   Specific services  
                           Add to base number 0 the numbers following 362.17 in 362.172–362.178, e.g., intensive care 04  
                   *For services to people with mental illness, see 362.2*
- [.198 18]        Birth control services  
                   Do not use; class in 363.96

.198 88

Abortion services

Number built according to instructions under 362.196–362.198

Class here interdisciplinary works [*formerly* 363.46]

*For a specific aspect of abortion, see the aspect, e.g., abortion as a controversy 363.46, abortion as a crime 364.185, medical aspects of abortion 618.88*

**.2 †People with mental illness and disabilities**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here mental disabilities that consist of mental retardation combined with mental illness

Class life with a psychiatric disorder in 616.890092

*For mental retardation, see 362.3***SUMMARY**

<b>362.204</b>	<b>Special topics of people with mental illness and disabilities</b>
.21	<b>Mental health facilities</b>
.22	<b>Community mental health services</b>
.23	<b>Extended care facilities</b>
.24	<b>Professional home care</b>
.25	<b>Neuroses</b>
.26	<b>Psychoses</b>
.27	<b>Disorders of personality, intellect, impulse control</b>
.28	<b>Suicide</b>
.29	<b>Substance abuse</b>

**.204 Special topics of people with mental illness and disabilities****.204 2 Social aspects****.204 22 Incidence, extent, severity**

Including social effects

**.204 25 Prevention and forms of assistance**

Class here psychiatric social work

**.204 251 Emergency and rescue operations**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here hot lines

**.204 252 Financial assistance****.204 256 Counseling and guidance**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

†Do not use notation 08 from Table I to indicate services rendered by groups of people; class in base number

- 
- > 362.21–362.24 Medical services  
 Class care for specific problems in 362.25–362.29; class medical treatment in 616.8; class comprehensive works in 362.2
- .21 Mental health facilities  
 Class here psychiatric hospitals  
*For psychiatric clinics, see 362.22; for nursing homes and sanatoriums, see 362.23*
- .22 Community mental health services  
 Class here psychiatric clinics
- .223 Group homes
- .23 Extended care facilities  
 Class here nursing homes, sanatoriums
- .24 Professional home care
- 
- > 362.25–362.29 Specific problems  
 Class comprehensive works in 362.2
- .25 †Neuroses  
 Including anorexia nervosa, compulsive gambling, depression
- .26 †Psychoses  
 Including schizophrenia
- .27 †Disorders of personality, intellect, impulse control  
 Including food addiction, kleptomania  
*For suicide, see 362.28; for substance abuse, see 362.29*
- .28 \*†Suicide  
 Class here suicidal behavior
- .288 1 Rescue operations  
 Number built according to instructions under 362–363  
 Class here emergency services, hot lines

\*Add as instructed under 362–363

†Do not use notation 08 from Table 1 to indicate services rendered by groups of people; class in base number

## .29 †Substance abuse

Class here drug abuse; interdisciplinary works on substance abuse, addiction, habituation, intoxication

Class works on drug abuse limited to narcotic abuse in 362.293

*For subculture of substance abusers, see 306.1; for drug traffic, see 363.45; for illegal sale, possession, use of drugs, see 364.177; for drug use as a custom, see 394.1; for medical aspects of substance abuse, see 616.86*

*See also 362.27 for food addiction*

*See Manual at 616.86 vs. 158.1, 204.42, 248.8629, 292–299, 362.29*

## .291 Aspects of substance abuse

Class aspects of a specific substance in 362.292–362.299

## [.291 01–.291 09] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 362.2901–362.2909

## .291 1–.291 8 Specific aspects of substance abuse

Add to base number 362.291 notation 1–8 from table under 362–363, e.g., prevention of substance abuse 362.2917; however, for control of drug traffic, see 363.45

Notation 1–8 from table under 362–363 is added for both specific aspects of two or more of the substances provided for in 362.292–362.298 and for a combination of substances provided for in 362.292–362.298 and in 362.299, e.g., counseling for alcohol and cocaine abuse, for narcotics and stimulant abuse 362.29186

## .292 \*†Alcohol

Class here interdisciplinary works on alcoholism

*For a specific aspect of alcoholism, see the aspect, e.g., medical aspects 616.861*

## [.292 6] Control of sale of alcoholic beverages

Do not use; class in 363.41

## .292 8 Remedial measures, services, forms of assistance

Number built according to instructions under 362–363

## .292 86 Counseling and guidance

Number built according to instructions under 362–363

Class here services of Alcoholics Anonymous

\*Add as instructed under 362–363

†Do not use notation 08 from Table 1 to indicate services rendered by groups of people; class in base number

- .293      \*†Narcotics  
             Opium and its derivatives and synthetic equivalents  
             Class here specific narcotics, e.g., heroin, morphine
- .294      \*†Hallucinogens and psychedelics  
             Class here specific hallucinogens and psychedelics, e.g., LSD, mescaline, PCP  
             Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
             Class cannabis in 362.295
- .295      \*†Cannabis  
             Class here specific kinds of cannabis, e.g., hashish, marijuana
- .296      \*†Tobacco
- .298      \*†Cocaine  
             Class here specific forms of cocaine, e.g., crack
- .299      †Other substances  
             Including analgesics, depressants, inhalants, sedatives, stimulants  
             Class here designer drugs (synthetic drugs of abuse), prescription drugs  
             Class alcohol in 362.292; class cocaine in 362.298  
             *For designer hallucinogens, see 362.294*
- [.299 1]      Aspects of more than one substance  
             Number discontinued; class in 362.299
- .299 3      \*†Inhalants  
             Class here gases and solvents used as inhalants; individual gases or solvents, e.g., amyl nitrate, glue
- .299 5      \*†Stimulants  
             Class here specific kinds of stimulants, e.g., amphetamine, ephedrine, methamphetamine  
             Class cocaine in 362.298
- .3      \*†People with mental retardation**  
             Class comprehensive works on problems of and services to people with developmental disabilities (those who have neurological diseases combined with mental retardation and whose problems exhibit themselves before age 18) in 362.1968; class comprehensive works on treatment of mental retardation and mental illness in 362.2

\*Add as instructed under 362–363

†Do not use notation 08 from Table 1 to indicate services rendered by groups of people; class in base number

**.4 †People with physical disabilities**

Regardless of cause

Class here comprehensive works on people with disabilities, people with physical and mental disabilities

Class comprehensive medical works in 617

*For people with mental disabilities, see 362.3*

**.404 Special topics of people with physical disabilities, people with physical and mental disabilities**

Add to base number 362.404 notation 1–8 from table under 362–363, e.g., social work with people with physical disabilities 362.40453  
Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

**.404 84 Employment services**

Number built according to instructions under 362–363

**.404 848 Sheltered employment****.41 \*†People with blindness and visual impairments**

Class here people who are blind-deaf

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

*For people who are deaf, see 362.42*

**.42 \*†People with hearing impairments**

Class here people who are deaf

Class comprehensive works on people with linguistic and communication disabilities in 362.196855; class people who are blind-deaf in 362.41

*See also 371.912 for teaching people who are deaf*

**.43 \*†People with mobility impairments**

Subdivisions are added for services to people with specific mobility impairments, e.g., residential care for paraplegics 362.4385

**.5 \*†Poor people**

Class economic causes and effects of poverty in 339.46

**.508 Groups of people**

Do not use for services rendered by groups of people; class in 362.5

**[.508 3] Young people**

Do not use for poor young people through age seventeen; class in 362.77569

\*Add as instructed under 362–363

†Do not use notation 08 from Table 1 to indicate services rendered by groups of people; class in base number

- [.508 35] Young people eighteen to twenty  
Relocated to 362.77569
- .508 6 People by miscellaneous social attributes
- [.508 694 1] Unemployed people  
Relocated to 362.594
- [.508 694 2] Homeless people  
Do not use; class in 362.592
- .508 9 Ethnic and national groups [*formerly* 362.84]
- .57 Measures to prevent, protect against, limit effects of poverty  
Number built according to instructions under 362–363  
Class economic measures to prevent poverty in 339
- .58 Remedial measures, services, forms of assistance  
Number built according to instructions under 362–363  
Class birth control as a remedy for poverty in 363.96; class assistance to poor people under social security in 368.4  
*For food stamp programs, see 363.882*
- .582 Financial assistance  
Number built according to instructions under 362–363  
Including guaranteed minimum income, negative income tax  
Class here supplementary social security for low income people  
Class aid to families with dependent children (AFDC) in 362.713
- .583 Provision of shelter (temporary housing) [*formerly* 363.58]; provision of clothing, other related necessities; recreation  
Number built according to instructions under 362–363  
Do not use for food programs; class in 363.8  
Class long-term housing in 363.5
- .586 Counseling and guidance  
Number built according to instructions under 362–363  
Including interdisciplinary works on legal aid  
*For law of legal aid, see 347.017*
- .59 Homeless and unemployed people
- .592 \*†Homeless people

\*Add as instructed under 362–363

†Do not use notation 08 from Table 1 to indicate services rendered by groups of people; class in base number

.594 \*†Unemployed people [formerly 362.5086941]

**.6 People in late adulthood**

Class here social gerontology

[.608] Groups of people

Relocated to 362.69

> 362.61–362.66 Remedial measures, services, forms of assistance

Class comprehensive works in 362.63

*For specific problems, see 362.68; for services to groups of people in late adulthood, see 362.69*

.61 Residential care

Class here assisted living; facilities providing minimal medical care, e.g., medication maintenance; services of life care communities (continuing care retirement communities), old age homes, rest homes

Class institutions providing complete medical care in 362.16; class housing in 363.5946

.63 Remedial measures, services, forms of assistance

Measures applicable primarily to individuals, even if in large groups

Class here material assistance

Including provision of financial aid, food, shelter (temporary housing), household assistance, clothing, recreation

Class remedial measures directed toward altering a social function, e.g., cost control, in 362.675; class social work in 362.6753

*For residential care, see 362.61; for employment services, see 362.64; for counseling and guidance, see 362.66; for specific problems, see 362.68; for services to groups of people, see 362.69*

.64 Employment services

Including vocational rehabilitation

.66 Counseling and guidance

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.67 Characteristics of problems, social action

Add to base number 362.67 notation 1–7 from table under 362–363, e.g., effects on families 362.673

*For remedial measures, services, forms of assistance, see 362.63; for specific problems, see 362.68; for problems of groups of people in late adulthood, see 362.69*

\*Add as instructed under 362–363

†Do not use notation 08 from Table 1 to indicate services rendered by groups of people; class in base number

- .68            Specific problems  
                     *For problems of groups of people, see 362.69*
- .682           †Elder abuse  
                     Class parent abuse in 362.8292; class elder abuse as a crime in 364.1555.  
                     Class elder abuse in a specific situation with the situation, e.g., elder  
                     abuse in nursing homes 362.16
- .69            Groups of people [*formerly* 362.608]
- .691–.698      Miscellaneous specific groups of people  
                     Add to base number 362.69 the numbers following —08 in notation  
                     081–088 from Table 1, e.g., women in late adulthood 362.692; then add  
                     further as follows:  
                     001–007    Standard subdivisions  
                     008           Groups of people  
                             Do not use for services rendered by groups of people;  
                             class in base number  
                     009           History, geographic treatment, biography  
                     01–08       Characteristics of problems, social action  
                             Add to 0 notation 1–8 from table under 362–363, e.g.,  
                             effects on families of women in late adulthood 362.6923
- .699           People in late adulthood by ethnic or national group  
                     Class treatment with respect to miscellaneous specific groups of people  
                     in late adulthood of a specific ethnic and national group with the kind  
                     of people in 362.691–362.698, e.g., Chinese women in late adulthood  
                     362.692
- .699 001–.699 007    Standard subdivisions
- .699 008           Groups of people  
                             Do not use for services rendered by groups of people; class in  
                             362.699
- .699 009           History, geographic treatment, biography
- .699 05–.699 09      †People in late adulthood of mixed ancestry with ethnic origins from  
                     more than one continent, Europeans in late adulthood and people in  
                     late adulthood of European descent  
                     Add to base number 362.6990 the numbers following 0 in notation  
                     05–09 from Table 5, e.g., people in late adulthood of European  
                     descent 362.69909, people in late adulthood of European descent  
                     in Australia 362.6990904
- .699 1–.699 9        †People in late adulthood by specific ethnic or national groups  
                     Add to base number 362.699 notation 1–9 from Table 5, e.g.,  
                     people in late adulthood of Italian descent 362.69951, people in late  
                     adulthood of Italian descent in United States 362.69951073

†Do not use notation 08 from Table 1 to indicate services rendered by groups of people; class in base number

**.7 Young people**

Through age twenty

Class here children

**SUMMARY**

- 362.708**                    **Groups of people**
- .71**                    **Remedial measures, services, forms of assistance**
- .72**                    **Characteristics of problems, social action**
- .73**                    **Institutional and related services**
- .74**                    **Troubled young people**
- .76**                    **Abused and neglected young people**
- .77**                    **Specific groups of young people**
- .78**                    **Transgender and intersex young people, young people by sexual orientation, young people in intrafamily relationships**
- .708**                    **Groups of people**
- Do not use for services rendered by groups of people; class in 362.7
- .708 3**                    **Young people twelve to twenty**
- Do not use for children; class in 362.7
- Including young women eighteen to twenty [*formerly* 362.830835]
- Class here young men and women twelve to twenty
- Class remedial measures, services, forms of assistance in 362.71; class characteristics of problems, social action in 362.72; class specific groups of young people twelve to twenty, other than young men and women, in 362.77; class young people twenty-one and over, comprehensive works on young men and women in 362
- [.708 35]**                    **Young people twelve to twenty**
- Do not use; class in 362.7083
- .708 5**                    **Relatives**
- Young people as parents relocated to 362.7874
- [.708 6]**                    **Young people by miscellaneous social attributes**
- Relocated to 362.77
- [.708 66]**                    **Young people by sexual orientation**
- Relocated to 362.786
- [.708 67]**                    **Transgender and intersex young people**
- Do not use; class in 362.785
- [.708 9]**                    **Ethnic and national groups**
- Relocated to 362.778

- > 362.71–362.73 Specific kinds of services to young people  
 Class services to maladjusted young people in 362.74; class services to abused and neglected children in 362.76; class comprehensive works in 362.7
- .71 Remedial measures, services, forms of assistance  
 Measures applicable primarily to individuals, even if in large groups  
 Including recreational services  
 Class here material assistance  
 Class remedial measures directed toward altering a social function, e.g., cost control, in 362.725; class social work in 362.7253  
*For institutional and related services, see 362.73; for services to groups of young people, see 362.77*
- .712 Day care services
- .713 Aid to families with dependent children (AFDC)
- .716 Counseling and guidance  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
 Including legal aid
- .72 Characteristics of problems, social action  
 Add to base number 362.72 notation 1–7 from table under 362–363, e.g., effects on families 362.723  
*For remedial measures, services, forms of assistance, see 362.71; for problems of groups of young people, see 362.77*
- .723 Effects on people close to those with a problem  
 Number built according to instructions under 362.72  
 Class here a family problem when focused on the child  
 Class a family problem when focused on the parent with the problem in 362.82, e.g., families with missing children 362.8297
- .73 Institutional and related services  
 Class here abandoned children, orphans
- .732 Institutional care  
 Including children's homes, orphanages; houseparents
- .733 Foster home care  
 Class here comprehensive works on foster home care and adoption  
*For adoption, see 362.734*

.734

## Adoption

Including confidentiality of adoption records

Class comprehensive works on the activities of adopted people seeking their natural parents in 362.8298

&gt;

## 362.74–362.78 Groups of young people

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., poor gay abused young people 362.76 (*not* 362.77569 or 362.7866):

Troubled young people	362.74
Abused and neglected young people	362.76
Young people by intrafamily relationships	362.787
Young people by sexual orientation	362.786
Transgender and intersex young people	362.785
Transgender and intersex young people, young people by sexual orientation, young people by intrafamily relationships (without subdivision)	362.78
Young people by social and economic levels	362.775
Young people by religious groups	362.776
Young people by ethnic and national group	362.778
Young people by language groups	362.77
Unemployed young people	362.7794
Young people with status defined by changes in residence	362.7791
Young people with status defined by changes in residence, unemployed young people (without subdivision)	362.779
Specific groups of young people (without subdivision)	362.77

Class comprehensive works in 362.7

&gt;

## 362.74–362.76 Specific kinds of young people

Class comprehensive works in 362.7

*For abandoned children, orphans, see 362.73*

- .74 \*†Troubled young people  
 Former heading: Maladjusted young people  
 Including predelinquents, runaways  
 Class here halfway houses for young people who have not committed any crimes  
 Class young people with mental illness in 362.2083; class families with missing children in 362.8297; class halfway houses for the transition from reform school to society in 365.42  
*For juvenile delinquents, see 364.36*
- .76 \*†Abused and neglected young people  
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
 Class child abuse as a crime in 364.15554
- .77 Specific groups of young people  
 Class here young people by miscellaneous social attributes [*formerly* 362.7086]  
*For transgender and intersex young people, see 362.785; for young people by sexual orientation, see 362.786; for young people in intrafamily relationships, see 362.787*
- [.770 1–.770 9] Standard subdivisions  
 Do not use; class in 362.701–362.709
- .775–.777 Young people by social and economic levels, religious groups, language groups  
 Add to base number 362.77 the numbers following 305 in 305.5–305.7, e.g., young workers eighteen to twenty 362.77562 [*formerly* 362.850835], poor young people 362.77569; then add further as follows:  
 001–007 Standard subdivisions  
 008 Groups of people  
 Do not use for services rendered by groups of people; class in base number  
 009 History, geographic treatment, biography  
 01–08 Characteristics of problems, social action  
 Add to 0 notation 1–8 from table under 362–363, e.g., effects on families of poor young people 362.7756903  
*For abandoned children, orphans, see 362.73; for abused children, see 372.76*

\*Add as instructed under 362–363

†Do not use notation 08 from Table 1 to indicate services rendered by groups of people; class in base number

- .775 69           \*†Poor young people  
                     Number built according to instructions under 362.775–362.777  
                     Class here poor young people eighteen to twenty [*formerly*  
                     362.50835]  
                     Class aid to families with dependent children in 362.713
- .778           †Young people by ethnic or national group [*formerly* 362.7089]  
                     Class here young people eighteen to twenty by ethnic or national group  
                     [*formerly* 362.84]
- .778 001–.778 007       Standard subdivisions
- .778 008           Groups of people  
                     Do not use for services rendered by groups of people; class in  
                     362.778
- .778 009           History, geographic treatment, biography
- .778 05–.778 09       †Young people of mixed ancestry with ethnic origins from more than  
                     one continent, European young people and young people of European  
                     descent  
                     Add to base number 362.7780 the numbers following 0 in notation  
                     05–09 from Table 5, e.g., young people of European descent  
                     362.77809, young people of European descent 362.77809094
- .778 1–.778 9       †Specific ethnic and national groups  
                     Add to base number 362.778 notation 1–9 from Table 5, e.g., young  
                     people of Italian descent 362.77851, young people of Italian descent  
                     in United States 362.77851073
- .779           Young people with status defined by changes in residence,  
                     unemployed youth
- .779 1           Young people with status defined by changes in residence  
                     Class here aliens, expatriates, foreigners
- .779 100 1–.779 100 7   Standard subdivisions
- .779 100 8           Groups of people  
                     Do not use for services rendered by groups of people; class  
                     in 362.7791
- .779 100 9           History, geographic treatment, biography
- .779 101–.779 108       Characteristics of problems, social action  
                     Add to base number 362.77910 notation 1–8 from table under  
                     362–363, e.g., effects on families of young aliens 362.779103

\*Add as instructed under 362–363

†Do not use notation 08 from Table 1 to indicate services rendered by groups of people; class in base number

- .779 12           \*†Immigrant young people  
                   Class immigrant young people of a specific ethnic or national group in 362.778
- .779 14           \*†Displaced young people  
                   Class here exiles, refugees, stateless young people
- .779 18           \*†Nomadic young people
- .779 4            \*†Unemployed young people  
                   Class poverty-stricken and destitute unemployed young people in 362.77569
- .78              Transgender and intersex young people, young people by sexual orientation, young people in intrafamily relationships
- .785            \*†Transgender and intersex young people  
                   Including female-to-male transgender young people, male-to-female transgender young people  
                   Class here transgenderists, transsexuals  
                   Subdivisions are added for transgender and intersex young people together, for transgender young people alone
- .786            †Young people by sexual orientation [*formerly* 362.70866]  
                   Including asexual young people
- .786 2–.786 6   Young people by specific sexual orientation  
                   Add to base number 362.786 the numbers following 306.76 in 306.762–306.766, e.g., gay young people 362.77866; then add further as follows:  
                   001–007   Standard subdivisions  
                   008       Groups of people  
                           Do not use for services rendered by groups of people; class in base number  
                   009       History, geographic treatment, biography  
                   01–08   Characteristics of problems, social action  
                           Add to 0 notation 1–8 from table under 362–363, e.g., effects on families of gay young people 362.7786603
- .787            †Young people by intrafamily relationships  
                   Class here young people eighteen to twenty [*formerly* 362.820835]  
                   Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 362.787 in the number coming last, e.g., 362.78792 (*not* 362.78742)

\*Add as instructed under 362–363

†Do not use notation 08 from Table 1 to indicate services rendered by groups of people; class in base number

- .787 2--787 5      Young people in husband-wife, parent-child, sibling relationships
- Add to base number 362.787 the numbers following 306.87 in 306.872-306.874, e.g., single young mothers 362.787432; then add further as follows:
- 001-007      Standard subdivisions
- 008          Groups of people  
                    Do not use for services rendered by groups of people; class in base number
- 009          History, geographic treatment, biography
- 01-08      Characteristics of problems, social action  
                    Add to 0 notation 1-8 from table under 362-363, e.g., financial assistance to single young women 362.787432082
- .787 4              \*†Parent-child relationship
- Number built according to instructions under 362.7872-362.7875
- Class here young people as parents [*formerly* 362.7085]
- .787 43             \*†Mother-child relationship
- Number built according to instructions under 362.7872-362.7875
- Class here teenage pregnancy
- .787 432            \*†Single motherhood
- Number built according to instructions under 362.7872-362.7875
- Class here unmarried mothers eighteen to twenty [*formerly* 362.8392], single young mothers
- Class comprehensive works on single motherhood in 362.839532
- .787 8--787 9      Young people in altered family arrangements
- Add to base number 362.787 the numbers following 306.8 in 306.88-306.89, e.g., divorce young mothers 362.78793; then add further as follows:
- 001-007      Standard subdivisions
- 008          Groups of people  
                    Do not use for services rendered by groups of people; class in base number
- 009          History, geographic treatment, biography
- 01-08      Characteristics of problems, social action  
                    Add to 0 notation 1-8 from table under 362-363, e.g., financial assistance to divorces young women 362.78793082

## .8      Other groups of people

\*Add as instructed under 362-363

†Do not use notation 08 from Table 1 to indicate services rendered by groups of people; class in base number

## SUMMARY

362.82	<b>Families</b>
.83	<b>Women</b>
.84	<b>Ethnic and national groups</b>
.85	<b>Working class</b>
.86	<b>Veterans of military service</b>
.87	<b>Displaced persons</b>
.88	<b>Victims of crimes and war</b>
.89	<b>Miscellaneous groups of people</b>

- .82      \*Families
- Class here parents, family problems focused on the parent
- Class family welfare when synonymous with general welfare in 362; class family welfare when synonymous with general welfare of a specific ethnic or national group in 362.84. Class a family problem when focused on the child with the problem in 362.7, e.g., abused children 362.76
- .820 8      Groups of people
- Do not use for services rendered by groups of people; class in 362.82
- [.820 83]      Young people by intrafamily relationships
- Do not use for young people through age seventeen; class in 362.787
- [.820 835]      Young people eighteen to twenty
- Relocated to 362.787
- .820 86      People by miscellaneous social attributes
- [.820 865 3]      Separated parents, divorced parents
- Relocated to 362.8294
- [.820 865 4]      Widowed people
- Relocated to 362.8293
- .820 865 5      Married people
- Do not use for married women; class in 362.83952
- .820 89      Ethnic and national groups [*formerly* 362.84]
- .828      Remedial measures, services, forms of assistance
- Number built according to instructions under 362-363
- Class services and forms of assistance for specific problems in 362.829; class family planning programs in 363.96
- .828 2      Financial assistance
- Number built according to instructions under 362-363
- Class aid to families with dependent children (AFDC) in 362.713

\*Add as instructed under 362-363

- .828 3 Provision of food, shelter (temporary housing), household assistance, clothing, other related necessities; recreation  
 Number built according to instructions under 362-363  
 Including visiting housekeepers  
 Class day care in 362.712
- .828 6 Counseling and guidance  
 Number built according to instructions under 362-363  
 Including premarital and marriage counseling
- .829 Specific problems  
 Class a problem not provided for here with the problem, plus notation 3 from the table under 362-363, e.g., alcoholism within the family setting 362.2923
- .829 2 \*†Abuse within the family  
 Class here parent, spouse abuse; domestic violence  
 Class elder abuse in 362.682; class abused children in 362.76; class abuse as a crime in 364.1555
- .829 3 \*†Widowed people [*formerly also* 362.8208654, 362.8294]  
 Class here widowers  
 Class widowers in late adulthood in 362.6954  
*For widows, see 362.83958*
- .829 4 \*†Single-parent family  
 Class here separated parents, divorced parents [*both formerly also* 362.8208653]  
 Class separated and divorced parents in late adulthood in 362.69653  
*For unmarried mothers, see 362.839532; for separated women, divorced women, see 362.83959*  
 Widowed people relocated to 363.8293
- .829 5 \*†Parents in prison
- .829 7 \*†Missing children  
 Class here parental kidnapping  
 Class runaway children in 362.74
- .829 8 \*†Relationship between adoptees and their biological parents  
 Class adoption in 362.734. Class a specific aspect of children seeking their biological parents with the aspect, e.g., confidentiality of adoption records 362.734, genealogical searching 929.1

\*Add as instructed under 362-363

†Do not use notation 08 from Table 1 to indicate services rendered by groups of people; class in base number

- .83           \*Women  
                   Class wife abuse, battered women, sexually abused women in 362.8292;  
                   class rape in 362.883; class transgender and intersex people in 362.896
- [.830 8]           Groups of people  
                   Relocated to 362.839
- [.830 83]           Young women  
                   Do not use for young women through age seventeen; class in  
                   362.7083
- [.830 835]           Young women eighteen to twenty  
                   Relocated to 362.7083
- .839           †Groups of people [*formerly also* 362.8308]

### SUMMARY

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>362.839 5<br/>         .839 6<br/>         .839 8<br/>         .839 9</p> | <p><b>Women by intrafamily relationships</b><br/> <b>Women by sexual orientation</b><br/> <b>Women with status defined by changes in residence, retired women, poor women</b><br/> <b>Women by ethnic or national group</b></p> |
|--|---|
- [.839 2]           Unmarried mothers  
                   Unmarried mothers eighteen to twenty relocated to 362.787432;  
                   unmarried mothers twenty-one and over relocated to 362.839532
- .839 5           †Women by intrafamily relationships  
                   Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two  
                   or more subdivisions of 362.8395 in the number coming last, e.g.,  
                   divorced mothers 362.83959 (*not* 306.83953)
- Class women by intrafamily relationships and by sexual orientation in  
                   362.8396; class women by intrafamily relationships and with special  
                   social status in 362.8398
- .839 52           \*†Spouses
- .839 53           \*†Mother-child relationship
- .839 532           \*†Single motherhood  
                   Class here unmarried mothers twenty-one and over [*formerly*  
                   362.8392], single mothers, comprehensive works on single  
                   motherhood
- Class comprehensive works on single-parent family in  
                   362.8294
- For single motherhood through age twenty, see 362.787432*
- .839 55           \*†Grandmother-child relationship

\*Add as instructed under 362–363

†Do not use notation 08 from Table 1 to indicate services rendered by groups of people; class in base number

- .839 57           \*†Stepmother-child relationship
- .839 58           \*†Widows  
                   Class widows in late adulthood in 362.6954; class comprehensive works on widowed parents in 362.8293
- .839 59           \*†Separated and divorced women  
                   Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Class comprehensive works on single-parent family in 362.8294
- .839 6           †Women by sexual orientation  
                   Including asexual women
- .839 62–.839 68   Women by specific sexual orientation  
                   Add to base number 362.8396 the numbers following 306.76 in 306.762–306.768, e.g., lesbians 362.83966; then add further as follows:  
                   001–007   Standard subdivisions  
                   008       Groups of people  
                           Do not use for services rendered by groups of people; class in base number  
                   009       History, geographic treatment, biography  
                   01–08   Characteristics of problems, social action  
                           Add to 0 notation 1–8 from table under 362–363, e.g., effects on families of lesbians 362.8396603  
                   Class women by specific sexual orientation and with status defined by changes in residence in 362.83981; class retired women by sexual orientation in 362.83984; class poor women by sexual orientation in 362.83985
- .839 8           †Women with status defined by changes in residence, retired women, poor women
- .839 81           Women with status defined by changes in residence  
                   Class here aliens, expatriates, foreigners
- .839 810 01–.839 810 07   Standard subdivisions
- .839 810 08           Groups of people  
                           Do not use for services rendered by groups of people; class in 362.83981
- .839 810 09           History, geographic treatment, biography
- .839 810 1–.839 810 8   Characteristics of problems, social action  
                           Add to base number 362.839810 notation 1–8 from table under 362–363, e.g., effects on families of women expatriates 362.8398103

\*Add as instructed under 362–363

†Do not use notation 08 from Table 1 to indicate services rendered by groups of people; class in base number

- .839 812           \*†Immigrant women  
                           Class immigrant women of a specific ethnic or national group  
                           in 362.8399
- .839 814           \*†Displaced women  
                           Class here exiles, refugees, stateless women
- .839 818           \*†Nomadic women
- .839 84            \*†Retired women
- .839 85            \*†Poor women  
                           Including homeless women
- .839 9            Women by ethnic or national group  
                           Class women of a specific ethnic or national group in intrafamily  
                           relationships in 362.8395; class women of a specific ethnic or national  
                           group by sexual orientation in 362.8396; class women of a specific  
                           ethnic or national group with a specific social status in 362.8398
- .839 900 1–.839 900 7       Standard subdivisions
- .839 900 8           Groups of people  
                           Do not use for services rendered by groups of people; class  
                           in 362.8399
- .839 900 9           History, geographic treatment, biography
- .839 905–.839 909       †Women of mixed ancestry with ethnic origins from more than one  
                           continent, European women and women of European descent  
                           Add to base number 362.83990 the numbers following 0  
                           in notation 05–09 from Table 5, e.g., women of European  
                           descent 362.839909, women of European descent in Australia  
                           362.839909094
- .839 91–.839 99       †Specific ethnic and national groups  
                           Add to base number 362.8399 notation 1–9 from Table 5, e.g.,  
                           women of Italian descent 362.839951, women of Italian descent in  
                           United States 362.839951073
- .84                Ethnic and national groups  
                           Poor people by ethnic or national group relocated to 362.5089; young people  
                           eighteen to twenty by ethnic or national group relocated to 362.778; families  
                           by ethnic or national group relocated to 362.82089
- .840 01–.840 07       Standard subdivisions
- .840 08            Groups of people  
                           Do not use for services rendered by groups of people; class in  
                           362.84

\*Add as instructed under 362–363

†Do not use notation 08 from Table 1 to indicate services rendered by groups of people; class in base number

- .840 09 History, geographic treatment, biography
- .840 5--.840 9 †People of mixed ancestry with ethnic origins from more than one continent, Europeans and people of European descent  
 Add to base number 362.840 the numbers following 0 in notation 05-09 from Table 5, e.g., people of European descent 362.8409, people of European descent in Australia 362.8409094
- .841--.849 †Specific ethnic and national groups  
 Add to base number 362.84 notation 1-9 from Table 5, e.g., Italians in United States 362.8451073  
 Class a social problem of a specific ethnic or national group in a place where the group predominates with the problem, plus notation 093-099 from Table 1, e.g., poor Italians in Rome 362.50945632; class comprehensive works on the social problems of a specific ethnic or national group in a place where the group predominates with the place in 362.9, e.g., social problems of Italians in Italy 362.945
- .85 \*Working class  
 Including migrant workers
- .850 8 Groups of people  
 Do not use for services rendered by groups of people; class in 362.85
- [.850 83] Young people  
 Do not use for young workers through age seventeen from lower class; class in 362.77562
- [.850 835] Young people eighteen to twenty  
 Relocated to 362.77562
- .86 \*†Veterans of military service  
 Class here veterans' rights and benefits
- .868 2 Financial assistance  
 Number built according to instructions under 362-363  
 Class veterans' pensions in 331.25291355  
*For veterans' education benefits, see 371.223; for veterans' higher education benefits, see 378.32*
- .87 \*†Displaced persons  
 Former heading: Victims of oppression  
 Class here exiles, refugees, stateless persons  
 Victims of war relocated to 362.88

\*Add as instructed under 362-363

†Do not use notation 08 from Table 1 to indicate services rendered by groups of people; class in base number

- .88           Victims of crimes and war
- Standard subdivisions are added for victims of crimes and war together, for victims of crimes alone
- Including inmates of concentration or internment camps
- Class here victimology
- Class services to abused family members, victims of domestic violence in 362.8292; class crime prevention for society as a whole in 364.4; class prevention by individuals in 613.6; class comprehensive works on crimes in 364.1
- For works on why people become victims of specific crimes, see 364.1*
- .880 8           Groups of people
- Do not use for services rendered by groups of people; class in 362.88
- .880 83           †Young people
- Class neglected children in 362.76
- .881           Characteristics of problems, social action
- Add to base number 362.881 notation 1–8 from table under 362–363, e.g., effects on families of victims of crime 362.88103
- .883           †Rape
- Class rape prevention by individuals in 613.663
- .885           †Assault and battery
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Class here victims of abuse
- .885 083           †Young people
- Class abused children in 362.76
- .885 084           †People in specific ages of adulthood
- .885 084 6           †People in late adulthood
- Class elder abuse in 362.682
- .89           Miscellaneous groups of people
- Limited to the groups provided for below
- .892           \*†People by social and economic levels
- Class here social classes
- For working class, see 362.85*

\*Add as instructed under 362–363

†Do not use notation 08 from Table 1 to indicate services rendered by groups of people; class in base number

- .896       \*†People by sexual orientation  
               Including asexuals
- .896 2       \*†Heterosexuals
- .896 3       \*†Bisexuals
- .896 4       \*†Gays
- .897       \*†Transgender and intersex people  
               Including female-to-male transgender people, male-to-female  
               transgender people  
               Class here transgenderists, transsexuals  
               Subdivisions are added for transgender and intersex people together, for  
               transgender people alone
- .899       People by miscellaneous social attributes  
               *For poor people, see 362.5; for unmarried mothers, see 362.839532;  
               for victims of crime and war, see 362.88; for offenders, see 364.3*
- .899 1       People with status defined by changes in residence  
               Class here aliens, expatriates, foreigners  
               Class retired people with status defined by changes in residence in  
               362.8994  
               *For displaced persons, see 362.87*
- .899 100 1–.899 100 7       Standard subdivisions
- .899 100 8       Groups of people  
               Do not use for services rendered by groups of people; class  
               in 362.8991
- .899 100 9       History, geographic treatment, biography
- .899 101–.899 108       Characteristics of problems, social action  
               Add to base number 362.89910 notation 1–8 from table under  
               362–363, e.g., effects on families of expatriates 362.899103
- .899 12       \*†Immigrants  
               Class here comprehensive works on immigration  
               *For immigrants of a specific ethnic or national group, see  
               362.84; for population problems, see 363.9; for illegal  
               immigration, see 364.137*
- .899 4       \*†Unemployed people
- .899 6       \*†Retired people

\*Add as instructed under 362–363

†Do not use notation 08 from Table 1 to indicate services rendered by groups of people; class in base number

**.9 History, geographic treatment, biography**

Class here comprehensive works on the social problems of a specific ethnic or national group in a place where the group predominates, e.g., social problems of Italians in Italy 362.945

Class history, geographic treatment, biography of specific social problems in 362.1–362.8

*For a social problem of a specific ethnic or national group in a place where the group predominates, see the problem, plus notation 093–099 from Table 1, e.g., poor Italians in Rome 362.50945632*

**.901–.905 Historical periods**

Add to base number 362.90 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., social welfare in 20th century 362.904

**.91–.99 Geographic treatment, biography**

Add to base number 362.9 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., social welfare in France 362.944

**363 Other social problems and services**

Standard subdivisions are added for comprehensive treatment of environmental and safety problems of society, e.g., assuring a safe and secure environment for Japan 363.0952

Class here public works

*For communication facilities, see 384; for transportation facilities, see 388*

*See Manual at 363 vs. 302–307, 333.7, 570–590, 600; also at 363 vs. 344.02–344.05, 353–354*

**SUMMARY**

- 363.1 Public safety programs**
- .2 Police services**
- .3 Other aspects of public safety**
- .4 Controversies related to public morals and customs**
- .5 Housing**
- .6 Public utilities and related services**
- .7 Environmental problems**
- .8 Food supply**
- .9 Population problems**

**.1 Public safety programs**

Class here safety measures, interdisciplinary works on safety

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., use of hazardous materials in health care facilities 363.17 (*not* 363.15):

Hazardous materials	363.17
Hazards in sports and recreation	363.14
Transportation hazards	363.12
Hazardous machinery	363.18
Product hazards	363.19
Domestic hazards	363.13
Hazards in health care facilities	363.15
Occupational and industrial hazards	363.11

Class terrorism and responses to terrorism associated with a particular aspect of public safety in 363.325; class managerial response to safety requirements, comprehensive works on safety management in 658.408. Class safety management in a specific industry with the industry, plus notation 0684 from Table 1, e.g., safety management in petroleum industry 665.50684

*For police services, see 363.2; for aspects of public safety not provided for here, see 363.3; for personal safety, see 613.6; for survival after accidents, see 613.69. For a specific kind of remedial measure other than rescue operations, see the measure, e.g., medical care for the injured 362.1; for safety technology of a specific subject, see the subject, plus notation 0289 from Table 1, e.g., safety technology in hydraulic engineering 627.0289*

*See Manual at 363.1; also at 333.7–333.9 vs. 363.1, 363.73, 577; also at 363.1 vs. 600*

**SUMMARY**

<b>363.100 1–.100 9</b>	<b>Standard subdivisions</b>
<b>.101–.108</b>	<b>[General topics of public safety programs]</b>
<b>.11</b>	<b>Occupational and industrial hazards</b>
<b>.12</b>	<b>Transportation hazards</b>
<b>.13</b>	<b>Domestic hazards</b>
<b>.14</b>	<b>Hazards in sports and recreation</b>
<b>.15</b>	<b>Hazards in health care facilities</b>
<b>.17</b>	<b>Hazardous materials</b>
<b>.18</b>	<b>Hazardous machinery</b>
<b>.19</b>	<b>Product hazards</b>
<b>.100 1–.100 9</b>	<b>Standard subdivisions</b>
	As modified under 362–363
<b>.101–.105</b>	<b>General topics of public safety programs</b>
	Add to base number 363.10 notation 1–5 from table under 362–363, e.g., public action to promote safety 363.1056
<b>.106</b>	<b>Public control of safety</b>
<b>.106 2</b>	<b>Standards</b>
<b>.106 3</b>	<b>Monitoring, surveillance, reporting</b>
	Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

- .106 4            Inspection and testing  
                     Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .106 5            Investigation of specific incidents  
                     Class here interdisciplinary works on safety investigation  
                     *For a technical or engineering aspect of the investigation, see the aspect in 600, e.g., safety engineering 620.86, wreckage studies of automobile accidents 629.2826; for accounts of a specific incident that affected general social life and history, see the incident in 900, e.g., San Francisco earthquake of 1906 979.461051*
- .106 6            Certification
- .107–.108        Measures to prevent, protect against, limit effects of problems; remedial measures, services, forms of assistance  
                     Add to base number 363.10 notation 7–8 from table under 362–363, e.g., alarm and warning systems 363.1072, counseling 363.1086
- .11                \*Occupational and industrial hazards  
                     Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .119              Occupational and industrial hazards in specific industries and occupations  
                     Standard subdivisions  
                     Do not use; class in 363.1101–363.1109
- [.119 000 1–.119 000 9]        Standard subdivisions  
                     Do not use; class in 363.1101–363.1109
- .119 001–.119 999        Subdivisions for specific industries and occupations  
                     Add to base number 363.119 notation 001–999, e.g., school safety programs 363.119371, hazards in coal mining 363.119622334; however, for hazards to transportation workers, see 363.12; for hazards to domestic workers, see 363.13; for hazards to professional athletes, see 363.14; for hazards to workers in health care facilities, see 363.15
- .12                Transportation hazards  
                     Class here accidents, fires resulting from accidents  
                     Class comprehensive works on fires in transportation facilities in 363.379  
                     *See Manual at 900: Historic events vs. nonhistoric events*
- .120 01–.120 09        Standard subdivisions  
                     As modified under 362–363
- .120 1–.120 8        Characteristics of transportation hazards, social action  
                     Add to base number 363.120 notation 1–8 from table under 362–363, e.g., accident prevention 363.1207
- .122              \*Rail transportation

\*Add as instructed under 362–363

- .123        \*Water transportation  
               Class here water safety  
               Class safety in water sports in 363.14
- .124        \*Air and space transportation  
               Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .124 1        Causes of air and space accidents  
                   Number built according to instructions under 362–363
- .124 12        Natural factors  
                   Including birds, clear-air turbulence (CAT)
- .124 14        Operator failures
- .124 16        Vehicle failures
- .124 18        Failures of traffic control  
                   Class comprehensive works on air traffic control in 387.740426
- .124 6        Control of air and space transportation  
                   Number built according to instructions under 362–363
- .124 65        Investigation of specific air and space accidents  
                   Number built according to instructions under 362–363  
                   Class here general investigations of aircraft accidents  
                   Class wreckage studies in 629.13255
- .124 9        Specific types of accidents and accidents in specific types of services
- .124 92        Specific types of accidents  
                   Including midair collisions, takeoff accidents
- .124 93        Accidents in specific types of services  
                   Including air-taxi services, helicopter services  
                   Class specific types of accidents in specific types of services in  
                   363.12492
- .125        \*Highway and urban vehicular transportation  
               Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .125 1        Causes of accidents  
                   Number built according to instructions under 362–363  
                   Including road rage  
                   *See also 364.147 for traffic offenses as causes of accidents*

- .125 14            Use of drugs  
                     Class here drunk driving
- .125 6            Control of highway and urban vehicular transportation  
                     Number built according to instructions under 362–363  
                     Class traffic control by the police in 363.2332
- .125 65           Investigation of specific vehicular and highway accidents  
                     Number built according to instructions under 362–363  
                     Class here general investigations of automobile accidents  
                     Class wreckage studies in 629.2826
- .125 9            Hazards in use of specific types of vehicles other than automobiles  
                     Including bicycles, motorcycles, trucks
- .13                \*Domestic hazards
- .14                \*Hazards in sports and recreation  
                     Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .15                \*Hazards in health care facilities
- .17                \*Hazardous materials  
                     Manufacture, transportation, use  
                     Class here interdisciplinary works on hazardous materials, works on the control of such materials in their ordinary commercial setting (manufacture, sale, commercial and industrial use, disposal)  
                     *For hazardous materials as components of articles that become hazardous products, see 363.19; for hazardous materials as impurities in the water supply, see 363.61; for hazardous wastes, see 363.728; for hazardous materials as environmental pollutants, see 363.738; for hazardous materials as a cause of disease or injury in an organism, see 571.95; for hazardous materials as an environmental factor affecting the natural ecology, see 577.275; for hazardous materials technology, see 604.7; for chemicals as a cause of injury to people, see 615.9; for radiation hazards as a cause of injury to people, see 616.9897*
- .176 3            Monitoring, surveillance, reporting  
                     Number built according to instructions under 362–363  
                     Class here studies on the applicability of both social and technical findings of environmental chemistry and additive toxicology to the monitoring of hazardous materials
- .179                Specific types of hazardous materials  
                     Including corrosive materials

- .179 1 Toxic chemicals  
Including asbestos, lead  
Class toxic agricultural chemicals in 363.1792
- .179 2 \*Agricultural chemicals  
Class here pesticides
- .179 8 Explosives [*formerly also* 363.33], fuels, related products  
Class here explosions [*formerly* 363.3497], safety considerations with respect to especially flammable materials  
*See also* 363.19 for products e.g., sweaters, mattresses) that might constitute unsuspected fire hazards; also 363.377 for measures to control accumulation of ordinary combustible materials
- .179 9 \*Radioactive materials  
Class here nuclear accidents
- .18 \*Hazardous machinery
- .189 Specific kinds of hazardous machinery  
Including electrical and x-ray equipment
- .19 Product hazards  
Adulteration, contamination, safety, adequacy, effectiveness of products offered for human consumption and use  
Including household appliances, medical instruments and supplies, textiles, toys  
Class here hazards due to containers and applicators that accompany products
- .192 \*Foods
- .192 9 Specific foods  
Including beverages, canned goods, dairy products, meats
- .194 \*Drugs and medicines  
Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .196 \*Cosmetics
- .2 Police services**  
Class police services in control of factors affecting public morals in 363.4. Class a social service function of police with the function in 362, e.g., counseling of rape victims 362.883; class police committing a crime with the crime in 364.1, e.g., police violation of civil rights 364.1322
- [.206 83] Personnel management (Human resource management)  
Do not use; class in 363.22

- .22 Personnel  
 Duties, functions, activities  
 Class here personnel management (human resource management)  
 Class specific duties, functions, activities in 363.23–363.25
- 
- > 363.23–363.25 Specific aspects of police services  
 Class specific aspects of services of special kinds of security and law enforcement agencies in 363.28; class comprehensive works in 363.2
- .23 Police functions  
 Class here law enforcement, prevention of crime by police  
*For detection of crime, see 363.25. For police functions in relation to a type of social conflict, see the type, e.g., control of terrorism 363.32516*  
*See Manual at 363 vs. 344.02–344.05, 353–354: Law enforcement*
- .232 Patrol and surveillance  
 Including pursuit and apprehension of lawbreakers, use of deadly force, undercover work  
*For highway patrol, see 363.2332*
- .233 Enforcement of civil laws  
 Including enforcement of building codes, licensing laws and ordinances, sanitation laws
- .233 2 Traffic control  
 Including highway patrol  
 Class general investigations of traffic accidents in 363.12565; class investigation of traffic offenses in 363.25; class wreckage studies in 629.2826; class comprehensive works on traffic control in 363.1256
- .233 6 Location of missing persons
- .24 Auxiliary services  
 Including communications services, evidence preservation, fingerprint and photograph files, police records
- .25 Detection of crime (Criminal investigation)  
 Class here forensic science (criminalistics); evidence, circumstantial evidence  
 Class general investigations of transportation accidents in 363.12065  
*For evidence preservation, see 363.24; for forensic medicine, see 614.1*  
*See also 364.1 for criminal offenses*

- 
- > 363.252–363.258 Specific techniques and kinds of evidence  
 Class comprehensive works in 363.25; class comprehensive works on detection of a specific kind of crime in 363.259. Class detection of a specific crime with the crime in 364.1, e.g., detection of a murder in New York City 364.1523097471
- 
- > 363.252–363.256 Procurement and analysis of evidence  
 Class evidence used in identification of criminals not listed here in 363.258; class comprehensive works in 363.25
- .252 Procurement of evidence  
 Including electronic surveillance, search and seizure, use of informers and secret agents  
*For interrogation of witnesses, see 363.254*
- .254 Interrogation of witnesses  
 Including use of polygraph (lie detector)
- .256 Analysis of evidence  
 Class here laboratories  
 Class files resulting from criminal investigations in 363.24
- .256 2 Physical evidence  
 Including analysis of blood and hair, use of ballistics
- .256 5 Documentary evidence  
 Including analysis of handwriting and typewriting
- .258 Identification of criminals  
 Including artists' sketches, fingerprints, lineups, photographs, voice prints  
 Class files resulting from criminal investigations in 363.24
- .259 Detection of specific types of offenses  
 Add to base number 363.259 the numbers following 364.1 in 364.13–364.18, e.g., investigation of murder 363.259523  
 Class specific techniques of investigation of specific types of offenses in 363.252–363.258. Class detection of a specific crime with the crime in 364.1, e.g., detection of a murder in New York City 364.1523097471
- .28 Services of special kinds of security and law enforcement agencies  
 Including park police  
 Class agencies to carry out specific police functions in 363.23; class agencies to investigate specific kinds of crime in 363.259  
*For narcotics agents, see 363.45; for postal inspectors, see 383.46*

- .282 Marshals and sheriffs  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .283 Secret police
- .285 Border patrols
- .286 Coast guards and harbor patrols  
Standard subdivisions are added for coast guards and harbor patrols together, for coast guards alone  
Class here interdisciplinary works on coast guards  
*For coast guards as a military service, see 359.97; for inland waterway security services, see 363.2872*
- .287 Transportation security services  
*For automobile traffic control, see 363.2332; for harbor patrols, see 363.286*  
*See also 363.379 for transportation fire hazards*
- .287 2 Inland waterway security services  
Class here river security services
- .287 4 Railway security services
- .287 6 Air transportation security services  
Including airport police, sky marshals
- .289 Private detective and police services  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
Including bodyguards, campus police, store detectives
- .3 Other aspects of public safety**  
*See Manual at 363.1*
- .31 Censorship  
Class here control of information, press control; censorship as routine governmental function; interdisciplinary works on censorship  
*For a specific aspect of censorship not provided for here, see the aspect, e.g., censorship as social control 303.376, legal aspects of censorship 344.0531*  
*See Manual at 363.31 vs. 303.376, 791.4*
- .32 Social conflict  
Class here civil disorder [*formerly* 363.3497], civil disobedience; violence  
Class interdisciplinary works on conflict in 303.6; class interdisciplinary works on civil disorder and disobedience in 303.62

- .321 Aspects of social conflict  
 Class aspects of a specific kind of civil disorder or disobedience in 363.323–363.325
- [.321 01–.321 09] Standard subdivisions  
 Do not use; class in 363.3201–363.3209
- .321 1–.321 8 Specific aspects of social conflict  
 Add to base number 363.321 notation 1–8 from table under 362–363, e.g., social causes of violence 363.3211
- .321 5 Social action  
 Number built according to instructions under 362–363  
 Class here conflict resolution  
 Class interdisciplinary works on conflict resolution in 303.69
- .323 \*Crowds  
 Class here riots [*formerly* 363.3497]; demonstrations; crowd control, riot control
- [.323 6] Control  
 Do not use; class in 363.323
- .325 Terrorism  
 Including cyberterrorism  
 Class here bombing; terrorism and responses to terrorism associated with a particular aspect of public safety; interdisciplinary works on terrorism  
 Class comprehensive works on data security and cyberterrorism in 005.8; class comprehensive works on aspects of public safety and terrorism and responses to terrorism associated with the aspect in 363.1  
*For sociology of terrorism, see 303.625; for terrorism as a crime, see 364.1317; for cyberterrorism as a crime, see 364.168*
- .325 1 Aspects of terrorism  
 Class aspects of bioterrorism and chemical terrorism in 363.3253; class aspects of nuclear terrorism in 363.3255; class aspects of a specific target of terrorism in 363.3259
- [.325 101–.325 109] Standard subdivisions  
 Do not use; class in 363.32501–363.32509
- .325 11–.325 18 Specific aspects of terrorism  
 Add to base number 363.3251 notation 1–8 from table under 362–363, e.g., social causes of terrorism 363.32511

- .325 3            \*Bioterrorism and chemical terrorism  
                     Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                     Class bioterrorism and chemical terrorism against a specific target in  
                     363.3259
- .325 5            \*Nuclear terrorism  
                     Class nuclear terrorism against a specific target in 363.3259
- .325 9            Specific targets of terrorism  
                     Add to base number 363.3259 notation 001–999, e.g., terrorist attacks  
                     on food supply 363.32593638, terrorist attacks on nuclear power  
                     plants 363.3259621483
- .33                Control of firearms  
                     Class here interdisciplinary works on gun control  
                     *For gun control as a civil rights issue, see 323.43*  
                     Explosives relocated to 363.1798
- .34                \*Disasters  
                     Class survival after disasters in 613.69  
                     *For disasters caused by terrorism, see 363.325*  
                     *See Manual at 900: Historic events vs. nonhistoric events*
- .348              Remedial measures, services, forms of assistance  
                     Number built according to instructions under 362–363  
                     Class here disaster relief  
                     Class raising funds for mounting and carrying out disaster relief in  
                     363.34570681. Class disaster relief for a specific type of disasters with  
                     the type, plus notation 8 from table under 362–363, e.g., disaster relief  
                     for flood victims 363.34938  
                     *For a specific kind of remedial measure other than those applied  
                     immediately at the time and site of the disaster, see the measure, e.g.,  
                     medical care for the injured 362.1; for a specific form of disaster  
                     relief not provided for here, see the form of relief, e.g., long-range  
                     planning to replace housing lost due to a volcanic eruption 363.58*
- .348 1            Rescue operations  
                     Number built according to instructions under 362–363  
                     Forms of assistance applied immediately at time and site of disaster  
                     Class here salvage operations; comprehensive works on rescue and  
                     salvage operations for disasters in general  
                     Class rescue and salvage operations for a specific type of disaster  
                     with the type, plus notation 81 from table under 362–363, e.g., rescue  
                     operations for flood victims 363.349381

\*Add as instructed under 362–363

- .349            Specific kinds of disasters  
                   *For epidemics and pandemics, see 362.1; for fires, see 363.37. For a disaster resulting from one of the hazards listed in 363.1, see the hazard, e.g., shipwrecks 363.123, nuclear accidents 363.1799*
- .349 2            Disasters caused by weather conditions  
                   Class here storms  
                   *For floods, see 363.3493*
- .349 21           Aspects of disasters caused by weather conditions  
                   Class an aspect of disasters caused by a specific weather condition in 363.34922–363.34929
- [.349 210 1–.349 210 9]    Standard subdivisions  
                   Do not use; class in 363.349201–363.349209
- .349 211–.349 218    Specific aspects of disasters caused by weather conditions  
                   Add to base number 363.34921 notation 1–8 from table under 362–363, e.g., rescue operations during storms 363.3492181
- .349 22–.349 26    Specific kinds of storms  
                   Add to base number 363.3492 the numbers following 551.55 in 551.552–551.556, e.g., ice storms 363.34926; then add further as instructed under 362–363, e.g., rescue operations during ice storms 363.3492681  
                   *For dust storms, see 363.34929*
- .349 29            \*Droughts  
                   Including dust storms
- .349 3            \*Floods  
                   *See also 363.3494 for tsunamis*
- .349 36            Control  
                   Number built according to instructions under 362–363  
                   Class technology of flood control in 627.4
- .349 4            \*Tsunamis  
                   *See also 363.3493 for floods*
- .349 5            \*Earthquakes and volcanoes  
                   Subdivisions are added for earthquakes and volcanoes together, for earthquakes alone  
                   *See also 363.3494 for tsunamis*

- [.349 7]           Disasters induced by human activity  
                     Number discontinued; class in 363.34  
                     Explosions relocated to 363.1798; civil disorder relocated to 363.32;  
                     riots relocated to 363.323
- .349 8           \*War  
                     *For civil defense, see 363.35*  
                     *See also 303.66 for sociology of war*
- [.349 87]       Measures to prevent, protect against, limit effects of war  
                     Do not use; class in 327.17
- .349 88       Remedial measures, services, forms of assistance  
                     Number built according to instructions under 362–363  
                     Including mine clearing operations by civilians  
                     Class here war relief  
                     Class problems of war refugees when not treated directly in the  
                     context of war relief in 362.87; class interdisciplinary works  
                     on mine clearing operations in 355.4. Class war relief during a  
                     specific war with the war, e.g., relief work of Switzerland during  
                     World War II 940.54778494
- .35           Civil defense  
                     Measures to defend civilian populations against war  
                     Class comprehensive works on civil defense and emergency preparedness in  
                     363.347
- .37           \*Fire hazards  
                     Class fire fighting and fire safety technology in 628.92
- .377          Measures to prevent, protect against, limit effects of problems  
                     Number built according to instructions under 362–363  
                     Class here fire prevention, measures to control accumulation of ordinary  
                     combustible materials  
                     Class safety considerations with respect to especially flammable  
                     materials in 363.1798; class safety of products (e.g., sweaters,  
                     mattresses) that might constitute unsuspected fire hazards in 363.19
- .378          Remedial measures, services, forms of assistance  
                     Number built according to instructions under 362–363  
                     Class here fire fighting

- .379            Fire hazards in specific situations  
                   Including fire hazards in high-rise buildings, schools, transportation;  
                   forest fires  
                   *For fires resulting from transportation accidents, see 363.12*
- .4            Controversies related to public morals and customs**  
                   Treated as social problems  
                   Class censorship and control of information in 363.31. Class a controversy  
                   treated other than as a social issue with the aspect of the controversy, e.g., ethics  
                   of gambling 175 (*not* 363.42)
- .41            Sale of alcoholic beverages  
                   Class problems of and services to alcoholics in 362.292; class  
                   comprehensive works on criminal offenses associated with alcoholic  
                   beverages in 364.173  
                   *For sale of alcoholic beverages as an offense against revenue,  
                   comprehensive works on criminal offenses associated with alcoholic  
                   beverages, see 364.1332*
- .42            Gambling  
                   Class compulsive gambling in 362.25; class gambling as a crime in 364.172
- .44            Prostitution  
                   Class prostitution as a crime in 364.1534
- .45            Drug traffic  
                   Class here narcotics agents  
                   Class problems of and services to drug addicts in 362.29  
                   *For criminal offenses associated with drugs, see 364.177*  
                   *See also 363.41 for sale of alcoholic beverages*
- .46            Abortion  
                   Class abortion as a crime in 364.185  
                   Interdisciplinary works on abortion relocated to 362.19888
- .47            Obscenity and pornography  
                   Class obscenity and pornography as crimes in 364.174
- .48            Premarital and extramarital relations  
                   Class premarital and extramarital relations as crimes in 364.153  
                   *For prostitution, see 363.44*
- .49            Homosexuality  
                   Class interdisciplinary works in 306.766

**.5 \*Housing**

Class here housing as a social problem, comprehensive works on housing for poor people, interdisciplinary works on housing

*For a specific aspect of housing, see the aspect, e.g., sociological aspects 307.336, economic aspects 333.338, provision of shelter 361.05*

*See Manual at 363.5, 363.6, 363.8 vs. 338; also at 363.5 vs. 307.336, 307.34; also at 363.5 vs. 643.1*

## [.508] Housing for groups of people

Do not use; class in 363.59

## .51 Social causes

Number built according to instructions under 362–363

Class here housing conditions

## [.52] Incidence, extent, severity of housing problems

Do not use; class in 363.51

## .58 Programs and services

Do not use subdivisions of 8 from the table under 362–363

Provision of shelter (temporary housing) relocated to 362.583

## .582 Financial assistance

Class here housing allowances, rental subsidies, subsidized housing

## .583 Programs and services for specific objectives

Including home ownership, payment of energy bills, rehabilitation, resettlement, urban homesteading, weatherization

## .585 Public operated housing

Class here council housing

## .59 Housing for groups of people

Add to base number 363.59 the numbers following—08 in notation 081–089 from Table 1, e.g., housing for people in late adulthood 363.5946; however, for extended medical care for older adults, see 362.16; for comprehensive works on homelessness, see 362.5; for residential care for healthy older adults, see 362.61; for comprehensive works on housing for poor people, see 363.5

Class specific aspects of housing for poor people, of low-income housing in 363.51–363.58

*For provision of shelter for a specific group of people, see the group in 362.1–362.8, plus notation 83 from table under 362–363, e.g., shelter for women 362.8383*

**.6 Public utilities and related services**

Standard subdivisions are added for public utilities and related services together, for public utilities alone

Class here problems of allocation among end users, measures to assure abundance of immediately available supplies and services

*For electrical utilities, see 333.7932; for communication, see 384; for transportation, see 388*

*See Manual at 333.7–333.9 vs. 363.6; also at 363.5, 363.6, 363.8 vs. 338*

**.61 Water supply**

Class here comprehensive works on water supply, on water-related public works, e.g., a study covering waterworks, treatment plants, canals, flood control, hydroelectric generation

*For a specific topic of water supply, see the topic, e.g., flood control 363.34936*

*See Manual at 363.61*

**.63 Gas****.68 Park and recreation services**

Class here services maintained or proposed after land has been designated for parks, establishment and operation of recreational centers primarily serving the general public

Class park policy and park development in 333.783; class recreational centers in 790.068. Class a specific cultural institution maintained by park and recreation services with the institution, e.g., museums 069, theaters 792

**.69 Historic preservation**

Including identification and designation of historic buildings and areas

Class here public policies to protect and restore historic buildings and areas and to promote appreciation of them

Class technology of building restoration and preservation in 720.288

*See Manual at 913–919: Historic sites and buildings; also at 930–990: Historic preservation*

**.7 Environmental problems**

Class here environmental protection; impact of wastes, of pollution, of actions to control waste and pollution

Class interdisciplinary works on the environment in 333.7

*See Manual at 333.72 vs. 304.28, 320.58, 363.7*

## SUMMARY

363.700 1--700 9	Standard subdivisions
.701--708	Characteristics of environmental problems, social action
.72	Sanitation
.73	Pollution
.74	Noise
.75	Disposal of the dead
.78	Pest control
.700 1--700 9	Standard subdivisions
	Notation from Table 1 as modified under 362--363, e.g., managerial cost control 363.700681
.701--708	Characteristics of environmental problems, social action
	Add to base number 363.70 notation 1--8 from table under 362--363, e.g., international action to protect the environment 363.70526
.72	*Sanitation
.728	Wastes
	Do not use for other remedial measures, services, forms of assistance; class in 363.72
	Class here industrial, municipal wastes; waste disposal, management
	Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 363.728 in the number coming last, e.g., recycling scrap metal 363.7288 ( <i>not</i> 363.7282)
	Class dangerous wastes still in hands of processors or users in 363.17; class pollution by waste disposal in 363.73; class dangerous wastes which have escaped both safety and sanitary controls in 363.738
.728 2	Recycling
.728 4	*Liquid wastes
	Including urban water runoff; dredging spoil, water reuse planning
	Class here wastewater management
	<i>See Manual at 363.61</i>
.728 49	Specific kinds of liquid wastes
[.728 490 1--728 490 9]	Standard subdivisions
	Do not use; class in 363.728401--363.728409
.728 493	*Sewage
	Class here biosolids, sewage sludge, wastes from combined sewers
.728 5	*Solid wastes
.728 7	*Hazardous wastes

\*Add as instructed under 362--363

- .728 8            Specific kinds of wastes  
                     Including agricultural, domestic, medical wastes; beverage containers,  
                     garbage, scrap metal  
                     *For radioactive wastes, see 363.7289*
- .728 9            \*Radioactive wastes
- .729              Sanitation in specific environments
- .729 1            Streets
- .729 2            Recreational areas  
                     Including swimming pools
- .729 3            Common carriers
- .729 4            Public toilets
- .729 5            Workplaces
- .729 6            Food service establishments
- .729 7            Health facilities  
                     Including ambulances
- .729 8            Residential buildings  
                     Other than private family dwellings
- .729 9            Barbershops, beauty shops, laundries
- .73               \*Pollution  
                     Class works that discuss waste and sanitation problems as well as pollution  
                     in 363.7; class sanitation in 363.72; class noise in 363.74; class management  
                     responsibilities and measures with respect to protection and preservation of  
                     the environment in 658.408  
                     *See Manual at 333.7-333.9 vs. 363.1, 363.73, 577; also at 363.73 vs.  
                     571.95, 577.27*
- .731              Social causes  
                     Number built according to instructions under 362-363  
                     Including industrial pollution  
                     Class specific pollutants from specific sources in 363.738
- .732              Incidence, extent, severity  
                     Number built according to instructions under 362-363  
                     Class incidence, extent, severity of pollution from specific sources in  
                     363.731

- .735           Social action  
                   Number built according to instructions under 362–363  
                   Class here remedial measures
- .737           Measures to prevent, protect against, limit effects of pollution  
                   Number built according to instructions under 362–363  
                   Class waste disposal as a method of pollution prevention in 363.728;  
                   class technology of pollution prevention in 628.5
- .738           Pollutants  
                   Do not use for remedial measures; class in 363.735  
                   Class here chemical pollutants
- .738 2           \*Oil
- .738 4           \*Toxic chemicals
- .738 49           Specific types of toxic chemicals
- .738 492           \*Lead
- .738 494           \*Asbestos
- .738 498           \*Pesticides  
                   Class here agricultural pollution, agricultural runoff  
                   Class pollution by animal wastes, feedlot runoff, fertilizers in  
                   363.738
- .738 6           \*Acid rain
- .738 7           Fumes, gases, smoke  
                   Class lead emissions in 363.7384
- .738 74           \*Greenhouse gases  
                   Gases contributing to greenhouse effect (global warming)  
                   Class here interdisciplinary works on greenhouse effect (global  
                   warming)  
                   *For a specific aspect of greenhouse effect (global warming)  
                   not provided for here, see the aspect, e.g., changes in earth's  
                   temperature 551.5253, effect on ecology 577.276*
- .738 75           \*Gases contributing to ozone layer depletion  
                   Class here interdisciplinary works on ozone layer depletion  
                   *For a specific aspect of ozone layer depletion not provided for  
                   here, see the aspect, e.g., chemical changes in earth's ozone  
                   layer 551.5142, effect on ecology 577.276*

- .739           Pollution of specific environments  
                   Class specific pollutants in specific environments in 363.738
- .739 2           \*Air pollution
- .739 4           \*Water pollution  
                   Class here comprehensive works on water pollution  
                   *For assurance of clean water supply, see 363.61*  
                   *See Manual at 363.61*
- .739 6           \*Soil pollution
- .74            \*Noise
- .741            Sources of noise  
                   Number built according to instructions under 362-363  
                   Including forms of transportation, e.g., aircraft, automobile traffic;  
                   construction equipment, industry  
                   Class effects of specific sources of noise in 363.742
- .742            Incidence, extent, severity  
                   Number built according to instructions under 362-363  
                   Class incidence, extent, severity of noise from specific sources in  
                   363.741
- .75            Disposal of the dead  
                   Class here interdisciplinary works on social aspects and services, customs,  
                   technology  
                   Class interdisciplinary works on death in 306.9  
                   *For death customs, see 393; for technology of disposal of the dead, see*  
                   *614.6*
- .78            Pest control  
                   Including dog pounds, rat and mosquito abatement programs, removal of  
                   animal carcasses  
                   Class here interdisciplinary works on pest control  
                   *For control of disease-carrying pests, see 614.43; for comprehensive*  
                   *works on the technology of pest control, see 628.96; for control of*  
                   *agricultural pests, see 632.9; for control of household pests, see 648.7*

**.8 \*Food supply**

Class here famine, hunger; interdisciplinary works on food supply, on nutrition

Class food stamp programs in 363.882; class food relief in 363.883

*For economics of food supply, see 338.19; for problems of malnutrition, see 362.19639; for prevention of malnutrition, see 614.5939*

*See Manual at 363.5, 363.6, 363.8 vs. 338; also at 363.8 vs. 613.2, 641.3*

**.808 Groups of people**

Do not use for food supply problems of and services to groups of people, other than poor people; class in 362.1–362.8, plus notation 83 from table under 362–363

**.82 Incidence, extent, severity of food supply problems**

Number built according to instructions under 362–363

Class here nutrition surveys

**.85 Social action**

Number built according to instructions under 362–363

**.856 Governmental action**

Number built according to instructions under 362–363

Class here food rationing

**.9 Population problems**

Class here interdisciplinary works on population problems

Class immigration in 362.89912; class interdisciplinary works on population in 304.6

*For a specific manifestation of a population problem, see the manifestation, e.g., population growth as a cause of poverty 362.51, pressure on food supply leading to famine 363.8*

*See Manual at 301–307 vs. 361–365*

**.91 Population quantity**

Overpopulation and underpopulation

Class remedial measures for overpopulation in 363.96

**.92 Population quality**

Class here interdisciplinary works on eugenics

*For eugenic measures to reduce crime, see 364.4. For a specific aspect of eugenics, see the aspect, e.g., civil rights 323, involuntary sterilization 363.97*

*See also 613.94 for family planning techniques*

- .96 Birth control
- Class here remedial measures for overpopulation; interdisciplinary works on birth control, on family planning programs
- Class abortion in 362.19888
- For sterilization, see 363.97; for personal health aspects of birth control, see 613.94; for comprehensive medical works on birth control, see 618.18*
- .97 Sterilization
- Including involuntary sterilization
- Class here voluntary sterilization

## 364 Criminology

Crime and its alleviation

Class here comprehensive works on criminology and criminal law, on criminal justice that includes criminology, police services, and criminal law

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., punishment of specific types of offenders 364.6 (*not* 364.3):

Penology	364.6
Discharged offenders	364.8
Offenders	364.3
Prevention of crime and delinquency	364.4
Causes of crime and delinquency	364.2
Criminal offenses	364.1
History, geographic treatment, biography of crime and its alleviation	364.9

Class social services to victims of crimes and crime prevention for the individual in 362.88

*For criminal law, see 345; for police services, see 363.2*

### SUMMARY

- 364.01-.09 Standard subdivisions and special topics of criminology
- .1 Criminal offenses
  - .2 Causes of crime and delinquency
  - .3 Offenders
  - .4 Prevention of crime and delinquency
  - .6 Penology
  - .8 Discharged offenders
  - .9 History, geographic treatment, biography of crime and its alleviation

.019 Psychological principles

*For criminal psychology of specific offenses, see 364.1; for criminal psychology of offenders in general, see 364.3*

.04 Special topics of criminology

- .042            Extent and incidence of crime  
                   Criminal offenses and offenders  
                   Class criminal offenses in 364.1; class offenders in 364.3
- .08            Groups of people  
                   Class works on why people become victims of specific crimes in 364.1
- [.086 923]            Juvenile delinquents and predelinquents  
                           Do not use for predelinquents; class in 362.74. Do not use for  
                           juvenile delinquents; class in 364.36
- [.086 927]            Offenders  
                           Do not use for offenders; class in 364.3. Do not use for  
                           convicts; class in 365.6
- .086 949            Victims of war  
                           Do not use for victims of crimes; class in 362.88
- .09            History, geographic treatment, biography of criminology as a discipline  
                           Do not use for history, geographic treatment, biography of crime and its  
                           alleviation; class in 364.9
- .1            Criminal offenses**  
                           Class here conspiracy to and incitement to commit an offense, individuals  
                           identified with a specific offense or type of offense, investigation of specific  
                           crimes, crimes without victims  
                           Class social services to victims of crimes in 362.88; class investigation of  
                           specific types of offenses in 363.259; class crime as an event in history in 900  
                           *See Manual at 362–363 vs. 364.1; also at 900: Historic events vs.  
                           nonhistoric events*

### SUMMARY

- 364.101–.109            Standard subdivisions and organized crime**
- .13            Political and related offenses**  
    **.14            Offenses against public health, safety, order, environment**  
    **.15            Offenses against the person**  
    **.16            Offenses against property**  
    **.17            Offenses against public morals**  
    **.18            Other offenses**
- .106            Organized crime  
                           Do not use for organizations dealing with criminal offenses; class in  
                           364.06  
                           Class here Mafia
- [.106 092]            Biography  
                           Do not use for organized crime figures not associated with a  
                           specific offense; class in 364.1092. Do not use for organized  
                           crime figures associated with a specific offense; class in  
                           364.13–364.18 with the offense e.g., a hired killer 364.1523092

- .106 6           Gangsterism  
                   Engagement of organized groups in piracy, robbery, theft, hijacking
- .106 7           Racketeering  
                   Engagement of organized groups in extortion from legitimate or  
                   illegitimate enterprises through intimidation and force  
                   Including union racketeering
- .106 8           Syndicated crime  
                   Engagement of organized groups in furnishing illegal goods or  
                   services
- .109 2           Biography  
                   Criminals are classed with the crime for which they are most noted  
                   unless they are discussed with relationship to a specific crime,  
                   e.g., a general biography of Jesse James, a bank robber, is classed  
                   in 364.1552092, but a study of Jesse James' killings is classed in  
                   364.1523092  
                   Class comprehensive works on offenders in 364.3
- .13           Political and related offenses
- .131           Political offenses  
                   Including espionage, rebellion, seditious libel, subversion, treason  
                   Class genocide in 364.151; class assassination of heads of state and  
                   government in 364.1524; class sabotage in 364.164  
                   *For war crimes, see 364.138*
- .131 7          Terrorism  
                   Class interdisciplinary works on terrorism in 363.325  
                   *For terrorism as a war crime, see 364.138. For a specific type of  
                   terrorism, see the type, e.g., cyberterrorism 364.168*
- .132           Offenses against proper government  
                   *For offenses against administration of justice, see 364.134*
- .132 2          Denial and violation of civil rights  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .132 3          Corruption  
                   Including bribery of officials, graft
- .132 4          Election offenses  
                   Including bribery of voters, fraudulent reporting of votes, illegal  
                   voting, violations of campaign finance laws
- .133           Offenses against revenue

- .133 2            Bootlegging  
                   Class here production, sale, transportation of alcoholic beverages;  
                   illicit distilling; comprehensive works on criminal offenses associated  
                   with alcoholic beverages  
                   *For smuggling of alcoholic beverages, see 364.13361; for  
                   possession and use of alcoholic beverages, see 364.173*  
                   *See also 363.41 for sale of alcoholic beverages; also 364.1662 for  
                   bootlegging of copyrighted property, e.g., software piracy*
- .133 4            Counterfeiting of mediums of exchange  
                   Class here counterfeiting money, comprehensive works on  
                   counterfeiting  
                   *For counterfeiting of merchandise, see 364.1668*
- .133 6            Smuggling  
                   Including smuggling of tobacco products, e.g., cigarettes  
                   Class here comprehensive works on importing or exporting items on  
                   which duties have not been paid or illegal items  
                   *For human smuggling, see 364.137. For a smuggled item not  
                   provided for here, see the item, e.g., medicine 364.142*
- .133 61           Alcoholic beverages  
                   Class bootlegging in 364.1332
- .133 65           Drugs  
                   Class here narcotics  
                   Class drug traffic in 363.45; class comprehensive works on  
                   criminal offenses associated with drugs in 364.177
- .133 67           Animals  
                   Class here wildlife smuggling  
                   *For violation of animal or plant quarantine, see 364.142*
- .133 8            Tax evasion
- .134              Offenses against administration of justice  
                   Including collusion, contempt of court, lynching, perjury, subornation of  
                   perjury
- .135              International offenses  
                   *For a specific international offense, see the offense, e.g., piracy  
                   364.164*
- .136              Offenses against postal laws
- .137              Illegal immigration  
                   Class here human smuggling

- .138           War crimes  
                   Class here terrorism as a war crime  
                   Class comprehensive works on terrorism in 364.1317  
                   *For a specific war crime, see the crime, e.g., genocide 364.151*  
                   *See also 341.69 for law of war crimes*
- .14           Offenses against public health, safety, order, environment
- .142           Offenses against public health and safety  
                   Including adulteration of food and drugs, violations of product and  
                   building safety laws
- .143           Offenses against public order  
                   Including carrying concealed weapons, disorderly conduct, rioting,  
                   unlawful assembly
- .145           Offenses against the environment  
                   Class here violation of pollution laws
- .147           Traffic offenses and misuse of communications facilities  
                   Class offenses against postal laws in 364.136
- .148           Vagrancy
- .15           Offenses against the person  
                   Class here hate crimes  
                   Class prevention of crimes by individuals in 613.6
- .151           Genocide
- .152           Homicide  
                   *For lynching, see 364.134; for genocide, see 364.151*
- .152 2           Suicide  
                   Class assisted suicide in 364.1523
- .152 3           Murder  
                   Including assisted suicide  
                   *For assassination, see 364.1524*
- .152 32           Serial murder
- .152 34           Mass murder
- .152 4           Assassination
- .152 5           Manslaughter
- .153           Sex offenses  
                   Including adultery, indecent exposure, seduction, statutory rape  
                   Class rape in 364.1532; class bigamy in 364.183

- .153 2           Rape  
                   Class social services aspects of rape in 362.883  
                   *See also 364.153 for statutory rape*
- .153 4           Prostitution  
                   *See also 363.44 for prostitution as a public morals issue*
- .153 6           Sexual deviations  
                   Including incest, sodomy
- .154            Abduction, kidnapping, taking and holding of hostages  
                   Class parental kidnapping in 362.8297
- .155            Other violent offenses against the person
- .155 2           Robbery  
                   Thefts including threat of violence or bodily harm, or actual  
                   occurrence of violence  
                   Class here comprehensive works on hijacking  
                   *For a specific type of hijacking, see the type, e.g., taking hostages  
                   364.154*
- .155 5           Assault and battery  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Including elder abuse  
                   Class elder abuse as a social problem in 362.6
- .155 53          Spouse abuse  
                   Class social services to battered wives, spouse abuse as a social  
                   problem in 362.8292
- .155 54          Child abuse  
                   Class here child neglect  
                   Class child abuse as a social problem in 362.76  
                   *See also 364.1536 for incest; also 364.174 for pornography*
- .156            Offenses against reputation and honor  
                   Including defamation, invasion of privacy, libel, slander  
                   Class seditious libel in 364.131
- .158            Stalking
- .16            Offenses against property  
                   Class here looting, pillage, plundering  
                   Class prevention of crimes by individuals in 613.6

- .162           Theft
- Class here larceny
- Class robbery in 364.1552; class fraud in 364.163; class identity theft in 364.1633
- .162 2           Theft from residential and related buildings
- Standard subdivisions are added for theft from residential and related buildings together, for theft from residential buildings alone
- Including theft from garages
- Class here burglary
- Class theft of a specific item from residential or related buildings in 364.1628
- For theft from nonresidential buildings, see 364.1623*
- .162 3           Theft from nonresidential buildings
- Class here theft from commercial buildings, employee theft
- Class theft of a specific item from nonresidential buildings in 364.1628
- .162 32           Shoplifting
- .162 4           Embezzlement
- Class comprehensive works on business offenses, white collar crime in 364.168
- .162 7           Fencing
- Class fencing of a specific item in 364.1628
- .162 8           Theft of specific items
- See also 364.1662 for theft of intellectual property*
- [.162 800 01–.162 800 09]           Standard subdivisions
- Do not use; class in 364.16201–364.16209
- .162 800 1–.162 809 9           Theft of computers, books, related objects
- Add to base number 364.1628 notation 001–099, e.g., computer theft 364.1628004
- .162 81–.162 89           Theft of other specific items
- Add to base number 364.1628 notation 100–900, e.g., art thefts 364.16287
- .162 859 1           Theft of wildlife
- Number built according to instructions under 364.16281–364.16289
- Class here poaching, comprehensive works on wildlife crimes
- For wildlife smuggling, see 364.13367*



- .166 8           Product counterfeiting  
                   Class here counterfeiting of copyrighted products, counterfeiting of  
                   trademarked products, passing off  
                   Class comprehensive works on counterfeiting in 364.1334
- .168            Business, financial, professional offenses  
                   Including criminal usury, cyberterrorism, unfair trade practices; violation  
                   of antitrust laws, of laws with respect to securities and their exchange  
                   Class here computer, white collar crime  
                   *For embezzlement, see 364.1624; for fraud, see 364.163. For a  
                   specific type of computer crime not provided for here, see the type,  
                   e.g., tax evasion 364.1338*  
                   *See also 364.1628004 for theft of computers*
- .17             Offenses against public morals  
                   *For sex offenses, see 364.153*
- .172            Gambling  
                   *See also 363.42 for gambling as a public morals question*
- .173            Possession and use of alcoholic beverages  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Including public drunkenness  
                   Class drunk driving in 364.147; class comprehensive works on criminal  
                   offenses associated with alcoholic beverages in 364.1332  
                   *See also 363.41 for sale of alcoholic beverages*
- .174            Obscenity and pornography  
                   *See also 363.47 for obscenity and pornography as a public morals  
                   question*
- .177            Drugs  
                   Class here production, sale, possession, use  
                   Class drug traffic in 363.45  
                   *For smuggling of drugs, see 364.13365*  
                   *See also 364.173 for alcoholic beverages*
- .18             Other offenses  
                   Including illegal adoption
- .183            Bigamy
- .185            Criminal abortion  
                   Class abortion as a public morals question in 363.46; class  
                   interdisciplinary works on abortion in 362.19888
- .187            Cruelty to animals

- .188            Offenses against religion  
                   Offenses defined and penalized by the state  
                   Including blasphemy, heresy, sacrilege  
                   Class offenses against church law in 262.9
- .2            Causes of crime and delinquency**  
                   Class here criminal anthropology  
                   Class victimology in 362.88
- .22            Influence of physical environment  
                   Including climate, seasons, weather
- .24            Influence of personal factors  
                   Including biological factors, e.g., effects of heredity, genetic defects,  
                   physical typology; psychological factors
- .25            Influence of social factors  
                   Including leisure and recreation
- .253           Influence of family and peer group
- .254           Influence of mass media  
                   Including books, motion pictures, radio, television
- .256           Influence of social conflict  
                   Including class, ethnic group, religion, socioeconomic conditions
- .3            Offenders**  
                   Including recidivists  
                   Class here criminal psychology  
                   Class a specific aspect of the justice system for specific types of offenders with  
                   the aspect, e.g., determination of sentences for juvenile offenders 364.650835,  
                   offenders as prisoners in 365.6  
                   *For individuals chiefly identified with a specific offense or type of offense,*  
                   *see 364.1*
- [.308 11]            Men  
                           Do not use; class in 364.373
- [.308 2]            Women  
                           Do not use; class in 364.374
- [.308 3]            Young people  
                           Do not use; class in 364.36
- .308 6            People by miscellaneous social characteristics

- [.308 692 3] Juvenile delinquents and predelinquents  
Do not use; class in 364.36
- [.308 692 7] Offenders  
Do not use; class in 364.3
- [.308 74] People with mental illnesses and disabilities  
Do not use; class in 364.38
- [.308 9] Ethnic and national groups  
Do not use; class in 364.34
- .34 Offenders of ethnic and national groups  
Class juvenile delinquents of specific ethnic and national groups in 364.36; class women in 364.374; class offenders with mental illnesses and disabilities in 364.38
- .340 5-.340 9 Offenders of mixed ancestry with ethnic origins from more than one continent, European offenders and offenders of European descent  
Add to base number 364.34 notation 05-09 from Table 5, e.g., offenders of European descent 364.3409
- .341-.349 Specific ethnic and national groups  
Add to base number 364.34 notation 1-9 from Table 5, e.g., Germans as offenders
- .36 Juvenile delinquents  
Including status offenders (juveniles who have broken laws pertaining only to their age group, e.g., curfew laws, drinking below legal age)  
Class here comprehensive works on juvenile delinquency, juvenile delinquents, juvenile justice system together  
Class comprehensive works on maladjusted young people in 362.74  
*For legal aspects, see 345*
- .37 Men and women  
Class adult offenders with mental illnesses and disabilities in 364.38. Class men and women with attributes of a specific group with the group, e.g., 364.30846
- .373 Men  
Works specifically emphasizing male sex
- .374 Women
- .38 Offenders with mental illnesses and disabilities  
Class here offenders with mental retardation  
Class juvenile offenders with mental illnesses and disabilities in 364.36

- .4 Prevention of crime and delinquency**  
 Including curfew, eugenic measures  
 Class here what society does to prevent crime  
 Class penalties as a deterrent in 364.601  
*For law enforcement, see 363.23. For a specific aspect of prevention by a potential victim, see the aspect, e.g., prevention of identity theft 332.024, prevention by individuals of crimes 613.6, household security 643.16, business intelligence and security 658.47*
- .404 Special topics of prevention of crime and delinquency
- .404 5 Social action  
 Add to base number 364.4045 the numbers following 361 in 361.2–361.8, e.g., social policy 364.404561
- .41 Identification of potential offenders  
 Including genetic screening
- .43 Citizen participation  
 Class individual action in 362.88
- .44 Welfare services  
 Including financial assistance; foster home care; recreational services, e.g., camps, playgrounds  
 Class preventive police work in 363.23  
*For counseling and guidance, see 364.48*
- .48 Counseling and guidance  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .49 Environmental design
- .6 Penology**  
 Class here welfare services to offenders, reform of penal system  
 Class welfare services to prisoners in 365.66; class reform of penal institutions in 365.7  
*For discharged offenders, see 364.8; for institutions for correction of offenders, see 365*
- .601 Philosophy and theory  
 Class here punishment as retribution, deterrent, protection to society, reformation of offenders
- .62 Parole and indeterminate sentence  
 Standard subdivisions are added for parole and indeterminate sentence together, for parole alone  
 Class services to prisoners to prepare them for parole in 365.66

- .63      Probation and suspended sentence  
           Standard subdivisions are added for probation and suspended sentence together, for probation alone  
           Including reprieve  
           Class here comprehensive works on probation and parole  
           *For parole, see 364.62*
- .65      Determination of sentence  
           Including amnesty, commutation of sentence, pardon  
           Class a specific punishment with the punishment, e.g., probation 364.63, imprisonment 365
- .66      Capital punishment
- .67      Corporal punishment
- .68      Noninstitutional penalties  
           Including community service, deportation, fines, loss of citizenship, loss of vote  
           *For capital punishment, see 364.66; for corporal punishment, see 364.67*
- .8      Discharged offenders**
- .9      History, geographic treatment, biography of crime and its alleviation**  
           *For extent and incidence of crime, see 364.042*
- .901--.905      Historical periods  
           Add to base number 364.90 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901—0905 from Table 1, e.g., crime and its alleviation in 20th century 364.904
- .91--.99      Geographic treatment, biography  
           Add to base number 364.9 notation 1—9 from Table 2, e.g., people associated with crime and its alleviation 364.92; however, for victims, see 362.88; for police, see 363.2; for criminologists, see 364.092; for offenders associated with specific kinds of crime, see 364.1; for comprehensive works on offenders, see 364.3; for penologists, see 364.6092

## 365 Penal and related institutions

Institutions for correction of offenders and for incarceration of other groups considered socially undesirable

Standard subdivisions are added for penal and related institutions together, for penal institutions alone

Class here imprisonment and detention

Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 365 in the number coming last, e.g., maximum security prisons for women 365.43 (*not* 365.33)

Class parole and indeterminate sentence in 364.62; class probation and suspended sentence in 364.63

[.068 2] Plant management

Do not use; class in 365.5

[.09] History, geographic treatment, biography

Do not use; class in 365.9

### .3 Kinds of penal institutions

Class specific institutions in 365.93–365.99

.32 Institutions by level of government

National, state or provincial, local

.33 Institutions by degree of security

.34 Institutions by purpose or type of program

Including jails, penal colonies, penitentiaries, prerelease guidance centers, prison farms, reformatories, work camps

Class penal colonies as a part of history of a place with the place in 930–990, e.g., penal colony of Botany Bay as founding settlement of New South Wales 994.402

### .4 Institutions for specific classes of inmates

Including debtors' prisons

Class here personal narratives of specific classes of inmates

Class specific institutions in 365.93–365.99; class comprehensive works on inmates in 365.6

.42 Institutions for juveniles

Including borstals, reformatories; industrial, reform, training schools; halfway houses for the transition from reform school to society

.43 Institutions for adult women

.44 Institutions for adult men

Works specifically emphasizing inmates of the male sex

Class institutions in general, specific kinds of institutions for men in 365.3

- .45           Institutions for political prisoners and related groups of people  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Class here concentration camps  
                   *For concentration camps associated with a specific war, see the war, e.g., World War II concentration camps 940.5317*
- .46           Institutions for the criminally insane
- .48           Military prisons and prison camps  
                   Institutions whose inmates are military personnel  
                   Class institutions for prisoners of war in 355.1296; class military institutions for the insane in 365.46
- .5           Prison plant**  
                   Buildings, equipment, grounds  
                   Class prison architecture in 725.6
- .6           Inmates**  
                   Including reception and classification  
                   Class here offenders as inmates; community-based corrections; social aspects of prison life, e.g., conjugal rights, drug abuse  
                   Class institutions for specific classes of inmates, personal narratives of inmates in 365.4
- .602 1           Tabulated and related materials  
                   Class statistics of inmates when used to indicate general statistics of offenders in 364.3021
- .609 2           Biography  
                   Class a personal narrative of a specific class of inmate with the class of inmate in 365.4, plus notation 092 from Table 1, e.g., a personal narrative of a political prisoner 365.45092
- .64           Security, discipline, daily routine, release and discharge  
                   Class here treatment of inmates
- .641           Security  
                   Including escapes, riots
- .643           Discipline  
                   Rules, rights, privileges  
                   Including furloughs  
                   Class work furloughs in 365.65  
                   *For punishments, see 365.644*
- .644           Punishments for infractions of prison discipline

- .646            Daily routine  
                     *For labor, see 365.65; for services to prisoners, see 365.66*
- .647            Release and discharge  
                     Class work release in 365.65; class services to prepare prisoners for  
                     release in 365.66
- .65             Labor  
                     Including chain gangs, contract system, lease system, work furloughs, work  
                     release
- .66             Services to prisoners
- 
- >              365.661–365.663    Counseling, rehabilitation, prerelease programs  
                     Class here how to provide the service, how to perform the service  
                     Class comprehensive works in 365.66
- .661            Counseling and rehabilitation  
                     Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                     Class a specific service providing counseling or rehabilitation with the  
                     service, e.g., religious counseling 365.665
- .663            Prerelease programs  
                     Class prerelease institutions in 365.34
- 
- >              365.665–365.668    Religious, educational, medical, recreational services  
                     How to provide the service is classed here. How to perform the service is  
                     classed with the activity in 000–999  
                     Class comprehensive works in 365.66
- .665            Religious services  
                     Class care of prisoners by religious leaders in general in 206.1; class  
                     Christian pastoral care of prisoners in 259.5
- .666            Educational services  
                     Class education of delinquent students in 371.93; class adult education of  
                     prisoners in 374.1826927
- .667            Health services  
                     Class here medical services  
                     Class technology of medical services in 610; class technology of health  
                     services in 613
- .667 2         Mental health services
- .667 29        Substance abuse treatment

- .668           Recreational services  
                   Class recreational arts in 790
- .7           **Reform of penal institutions**  
                   Class reform of penal system, reform to eliminate prisons as form of  
                   punishment for certain types of crimes in 364.6
- .9           **History, geographic treatment, biography**  
                   Class specific aspects of penal institutions in specific times and places, of  
                   specific kinds of institutions in 365.3–365.7
- .901–.905       Historical periods  
                   Add to base number 365.90 the numbers following —090 in notation  
                   0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., penal institutions in 20th century 365.904
- .91–.99        Geographic treatment, biography  
                   Add to base number 365.9 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., prison  
                   administrators 365.92; however, for inmates, see 365.6092

## 366       **Secret associations and societies**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here semisecret associations and societies

*For Rosicrucianism, see 135.43; for orders of knighthood, see 929.71. For  
 secret associations and societies not provided for here, see the associations and  
 societies, e.g., student secret associations 371.83*

Comprehensive works on associations relocated to 369

- [.001–.008]     Standard subdivisions of associations  
                   Relocated to 369.01–369.08
- [.009]         History, geographic treatment, biography of associations  
                   Relocated to 369.09
- .01–.08        Standard subdivisions
- .09            History, geographic treatment, biography
- .093–.099     Specific continents, countries, localities  
                   Do not use for specific associations or societies not provided for in  
                   366.1–366.5; class in 366
- .1           **Freemasonry**
- .108 2         Women in Freemasonry  
                   *For Order of the Eastern Star, see 366.18*
- .12            Rituals
- .16            Nobles of the Mystic Shrine (Shriners)
- .18            Order of the Eastern Star

**.2 Knights of Pythias****.3 Independent Order of Odd Fellows**

.308 2 Women

*For International Association of Rebekah Assemblies, see 366.38*

.38 International Association of Rebekah Assemblies

**.5 Benevolent and Protective Order of Elks****367 General clubs**

Including social clubs, study clubs

Class here social clubs for specific types of people, e.g., social clubs for actors

Class clubs dealing with a specific subject with the subject, plus notation 06 from Table 1, e.g., pinochle clubs 795.41606

[.09] History, geographic treatment, biography

Do not use; class in 367.9

**.9 History, geographic treatment, biography**

.901--.905 Historical periods

Add to base number 367.90 the numbers following—090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., general clubs in 20th century 367.904

.91--.99 Geographic treatment, biography

Add to base number 367.9 notation 1--9 from Table 2, e.g., The Lamb (social club in New York City composed chiefly of actors, musicians, and playwrights) 367.97471

**368 Insurance**

Class here risk, insurance industry

Class risk management as part of management in 658.155

*See also 658.153 for managerial decisions on choosing insurance***SUMMARY****368.001--.009****Standard subdivisions and insurance companies****.01--.09****[General principles, specific forms of risk, sales groupings]****.1****Insurance against damage to and loss of property****.2****Insurance against damage to and loss of property in transit****.3****Old-age insurance and insurance against death, illness, injury****.4****Government-sponsored insurance****.5****Liability insurance****.6****Glass insurance****.7****Insurance against industrial casualties (accidents)****.8****Other casualty insurance****.9****Insurance by specific continents, countries, localities in modern world**

.001 Philosophy and theory

- [.001 51]                   Mathematical principles  
                                   Do not use; class in 368.01
- .002-.005               Standard subdivisions
- .006                   Organizations and management; insurance companies  
                                   Notation 06 from Table 1 as modified below
- .006 5                 Insurance companies  
                                   For-profit and nonprofit organizations  
                                   Class here interdisciplinary works on insurance companies  
                                   Add to base number 368.0065 notation 4-9 from Table 2, e.g.,  
                                   insurance companies of Texas 368.0065764  
                                   Class government agencies that provide insurance in 353.54  
                                   *For credit and loan functions of insurance companies, see 332.38*
- .007-.008               Standard subdivisions
- .009                   History, geographic treatment, biography
- [.009 4-.009 9]        Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
                                   Do not use; class in 368.9
- .01                    General principles  
                                   Class here actuarial science, finance, mathematical principles  
                                   Class investments by insurance companies in 332.672532
- .011                   Rates  
                                   Class here rate making
- .012                   Underwriting  
                                   Risk selection and estimation
- .012 2                 Reinsurance
- .014                   Claims  
                                   Including adjustment of claims, fraudulent claims, settlement of losses  
                                   Class fraudulent claims, insurance fraud as crimes in 364.163
- .016                   Lapse, persistence, termination  
                                   Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- .019                   Government policies with respect to insurance, insurance industry

---

> 368.06-368.08 Specific forms of risk

Class comprehensive works in 368

- .06      Property risks  
           Risk of loss from impairment or destruction of property  
           Class risk of consequential loss in 368.08
- .062     Risks to tangible property
- .063     Risks to intangible property
- .07      Personal risks  
           Risk of loss of income or augmented expenditure due to hazards to the person
- .08      Other risks  
           Including liability risks, risk of consequential loss, risks due to the failure of others, statutory liability risks
- .09      Conventional comprehensive sales groupings  
           Combinations of different lines of insurance, e.g., property-casualty, property-casualty-life and health  
           Class here all-risk, multiple-line coverage  
           Class a single line of insurance with the line, e.g., homeowner's liability insurance 368.56
- .092     Motor vehicle insurance  
           Class here automobile insurance  
           *For motor vehicle transportation insurance as a branch of inland marine insurance, see 368.232; for motor vehicle liability insurance, see 368.572*
- .093     Aviation insurance  
           *For air transportation insurance as a branch of inland marine insurance, see 368.24; for aviation liability insurance, see 368.576*
- .094     Business insurance  
           Broad property and liability coverage  
           Class here businessowners insurance, comprehensive business policies; commercial insurance, commercial multi-peril insurance; special multi-peril insurance (SMP)  
           *For a single line of insurance, see the line, e.g., business liability insurance 368.81*
- .096     Multi-peril real property insurance  
           Coverage of perils associated with land and whatever is growing on or affixed to it  
           Class here homeowner's insurance

> **368.1–368.8 Specific kinds of insurance**

Add to each subdivision identified by \* as follows:

- 001–005 Standard subdivisions
- 006 Organizations and management; insurance companies  
Notation 06 from Table 1 as modified below
- 0065 Insurance companies  
For-profit and nonprofit organizations  
Add to 0065 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., insurance companies in Great Britain 006541
- 007–009 Standard subdivisions
- 01 General principles  
Add to 01 the numbers following 368.01 in 368.011–368.019, e.g., underwriting 012

Class comprehensive works in 368

**.1 \*Insurance against damage to and loss of property**

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class multi-peril real property insurance in 368.096. Class property damage (liability) insurance as part of a specific type of liability insurance with the type, e.g., property damage insurance as part of public liability 368.56

*For insurance against damage to and loss of property in transit, see 368.2; for casualty insurance, see 368.5–368.8*

**.11 \*Fire insurance**

*For extended coverage endorsement, see 368.129*

*See also 368.12 for allied fire insurance lines*

**.12 \*Allied fire insurance lines and extended coverage endorsement**

Perils and losses traditionally associated with fire insurance

Including explosion, smoke damage, vandalism and malicious mischief (VMM) insurance

Class here commercial property insurance

Subdivisions are added for allied fire insurance lines and extended coverage endorsement together, for allied fire insurance lines alone

Class business interruption insurance in 368.815

*See also 368.56 for livestock liability insurance*

**.121 \*Crop insurance**

Class here government-sponsored crop insurance

- .122        \*Disaster insurance  
                  Including insurance against damage and loss from storms  
                  *For insurance for damage to crops from storms and other disasters,  
                  see 368.121*
- .122 2       \*Flood insurance
- .122 6       \*Earthquake insurance
- .125        \*Civil commotion and riot insurance  
                  Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .129        \*Extended coverage endorsement
- .14         \*War risk insurance  
                  Class ocean marine war risk insurance in 368.22; class war risk life  
                  insurance in 368.364
- .2         \*Insurance against damage to and loss of property in transit**  
                  Variant names: Marine insurance, Transportation insurance  
                  Including postal and satellite insurance  
                  Class here insurance against damage to and loss of instrumentalities of  
                  transportation  
                  Class a combination of transportation property insurance and transportation  
                  liability insurance in 368.09
- .22         \*Ocean marine insurance  
                  Over-the-sea transportation insurance  
                  Including ocean marine war risk insurance
- .23         \*Inland marine insurance  
                  Land or over-the-land (including over inland waterways) transportation  
                  insurance  
                  *For air transportation insurance, see 368.24*
- .232        \*Motor vehicle insurance  
                  Class here automobile insurance  
                  Class comprehensive works on all types of motor vehicle insurance in  
                  368.092
- .233        \*Railroad insurance
- .24         \*Air transportation insurance  
                  Class comprehensive works on all types of air transportation and aviation  
                  insurance in 368.093

**.3 \*Old-age insurance and insurance against death, illness, injury**

Class here comprehensive works on private and government-sponsored old-age insurance and insurance against death, illness, injury; comprehensive works on group insurance, on industrial insurance, on old-age and survivors' insurance, on survivors' insurance

Class personnel management of insurance as a fringe benefit in 658.3254; class comprehensive works on insurance as a fringe benefit in 331.255

*For government-sponsored insurance, see 368.4. For a specific type of group insurance, of industrial insurance, of old-age and survivors' insurance, of survivors' insurance not provided for here, see the type, e.g., group credit insurance 368.87*

**.32 \*Life insurance**

*For special fields of life insurance, see 368.36*

**.322 \*Endowment insurance**

**.323 \*Term life insurance**

**.324 \*Universal life insurance**

**.325 \*Variable life insurance**

**.326 \*Whole life insurance**

**.36 Special fields of life insurance**

**.362 \*Industrial life insurance**

**.363 \*Fraternal insurance**

**.364 \*Life insurance for members of armed services**

Including National Service Life Insurance, veterans' life insurance, war risk life insurance

**.366 \*Burial insurance**

**.37 \*Annuities**

Class pensions as an element of personnel management in 658.3253; class comprehensive works on pensions in 331.252

**.375 \*Variable annuities**

**.38 \*Health insurance, accident insurance, disability income insurance**

.382 \*Health insurance

Including disability insurance; health maintenance organizations, preferred provider plans; long-term care insurance, Medigap (Medicare supplement insurance); reimbursement health insurance (insurance in which the insured first pays the bills)

Class here insurance aspects of managed care, prepaid health insurance (insurance in which the insurer first pays the bills), specific health insurance organizations or plans without regard to type, comprehensive works on health and accident insurance

Class interdisciplinary works on delivery of health care in 362.1

*For accident insurance, see 368.384*

*See also 368.386 for disability income insurance*

> 368.382 2–368.382 7 Basic health insurance coverage for specific kinds of services

Class here policies limited to coverage for specific kinds of services, works that focus on specific types of benefits of broader policies

Class catastrophic health insurance in 368.3828; class comprehensive works in 368.382

.382 2 \*Medical and surgical insurance

Subdivisions are added for medical and surgical insurance together, for medical insurance alone

Class major medical insurance in 368.3828

.382 3 \*Dental insurance

.382 4 \*Pharmaceutical services insurance

.382 5 \*Mental health insurance

Including coverage for treatment of substance abuse

.382 7 \*Hospital insurance

Class coverage for psychiatric hospitalization in 368.3825; class major medical insurance in 368.3828

.382 8 \*Catastrophic health insurance (Major medical insurance)

Insurance providing protection for potentially large health care expenses after basic health care insurance benefits have been exhausted

.384 \*Accident insurance

.386 \*Disability income insurance

*See also 368.382 for disability insurance*

\*Add as instructed under 368.1–368.8

**.4 \*Government-sponsored insurance**

Class here social insurance, social security as a form of social insurance

Class comprehensive works on social security taxes in 336.249

*For a type of government-sponsored insurance not provided for here, see the type, e.g., crop insurance 368.121, bank deposit insurance 368.854*

.400 68

Management

Class personnel management of insurance for government employees in 352.67

.400 9

History, geographic treatment, biography

.400 973

United States

Do not use for social security in United States; class in 368.4300973

.41

**\*Workers' compensation insurance (Workmen's compensation insurance)**

Protection against losses incurred through disablements caused on the job

Class here comprehensive works on workers' compensation insurance and employers' liability insurance

*For employers' liability insurance (insurance of an employer's liability for compensation to his employees in case of accident), see 368.56*

.42

**\*Health and accident insurance**

Subdivisions are added for health and accident insurance together, for health insurance alone

Class comprehensive works on health and accident insurance in 368.382

*For workers' compensation insurance, see 368.41*

*See also 362.1042520973 for United States' Medicaid financial benefits; also 362.10973 for United States' Medicaid health services*

[.420 084 6]

Accident and health insurance for people in late adulthood

Do not use; class in 368.426

.420 085 2

Accident and health insurance for mothers

Do not use for maternity insurance; class in 368.424

.424

**\*Maternity insurance**

.426

**\*Accident and health insurance for people in late adulthood**

Class comprehensive works on accident and health insurance for people in late adulthood in 368.38200846

.43 \*Old-age and survivors' insurance

Class here comprehensive works on government-sponsored old-age and survivors' insurance and government-sponsored accident and health insurance for people in late adulthood

Class supplementary social security for low-income people in 362.582; class comprehensive works on old-age and survivors' insurance in 368.3

*For government-sponsored accident and health insurance for people in late adulthood, see 368.426*

.430 097 3

United States

Class here social security in United States

.44 \*Unemployment insurance

.48 \*Insurance against crimes of violence

Class comprehensive works on crime insurance in 368.82

> **368.5–368.8 Casualty insurance**

Class comprehensive works in 368.5

**.5 \*Liability insurance**

Including no-fault insurance, umbrella or excess liability insurance

Class here comprehensive works on casualty insurance

Class no-fault insurance, umbrella or excess liability insurance of a specific type with the type, e.g., umbrella personal insurance 368.56, no-fault motor vehicle insurance 368.5728

*For glass insurance, see 368.6; for insurance against industrial casualties, see 368.7; for other casualty insurance, see 368.8*

.56 Miscellaneous lines of liability insurance

Only those lines named below

Including commercial general, contractual, elevator, employers', homeowners', landlords', owners', tenants' liability insurance; livestock liability insurance; personal liability insurance

Class here public liability insurance

*See also 368.121 for crop insurance*

.562 \*Product liability insurance

.563 \*Environmental impairment liability insurance

Class here pollution liability insurance

.564 \*Professional liability insurance

Class here errors and omissions insurance, malpractice insurance

- .564 2           \*Medical malpractice insurance  
                   Class here physicians' liability insurance
- .57            \*Instrumentalities of transportation
- .572           \*Motor vehicle liability insurance  
                   Class here automobile liability insurance  
                   Class comprehensive works on all types of motor vehicle insurance in  
                   368.092
- .572 8           \*No-fault motor vehicle insurance
- .576           \*Aviation liability insurance  
                   Class comprehensive works on all types of aviation insurance in 368.093
- .6            **\*Glass insurance**  
                   Including coverage on plate glass, windows
- .7            **\*Insurance against industrial casualties (accidents)**  
                   Including boiler and machinery, nuclear (nuclear energy, nuclear hazards),  
                   power interruption, power plant insurance
- .8            **Other casualty insurance**
- .81            \*Business liability insurance  
                   Casualty aspects only  
                   Class comprehensive works on business insurance in 368.094
- .815           \*Business interruption insurance  
                   Including strike insurance
- .82            \*Burglary, robbery, theft insurance  
                   Including extortion, kidnap and ransom insurance  
                   Class here comprehensive works on crime insurance  
                   Subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading  
                   *For a specific type of crime insurance not provided for here, see the type,  
                   e.g., government-sponsored insurance against crimes of violence 368.48*
- .83            \*Fidelity bonds  
                   Guarantee against loss to employers because of dishonesty of employees  
                   Class here comprehensive works on fidelity and surety bonds  
                   *For surety bonds, see 368.84*
- .84            \*Surety bonds  
                   Guarantee against loss due to failure to perform an obligation or fulfill a  
                   contract

\*Add as instructed under 368.1–368.8

- .85           Guarantees  
                   *For a specific guarantee not provided for here, see the guarantee, e.g.,  
                   surety bonds 368.84*
- .852          \*Mortgage insurance
- .853          \*Investment guarantees
- .854          \*Bank deposit insurance  
                   Class here government guaranty of deposits
- .87          \*Credit insurance  
                   Insurance of creditor against loss due to debtor's insolvency
- .88          \*Title insurance
- .9           **Insurance by specific continents, countries, localities in modern world**  
                   Add to base number 368.9 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., insurance in South  
                   America 368.98  
                   *For a specific type of insurance in a specific place, see the type, e.g.,  
                   transportation insurance in South America 368.20098*

### 369       **Associations [formerly 366]**

- Organizations formed for fraternizing or for mutual assistance  
                   Class interdisciplinary works on organizations in 060; class general rules of order  
                   in 060.42  
                   *For secret associations and societies, see 366; for general clubs, see 367; for  
                   orders of knighthood, see 929.71*  
                   *See also 200 for religious associations; also 368.363 for fraternal insurance*
- .01–.08       Standard subdivisions [formerly 366.001–366.008]
- .09          History, geographic treatment, biography [formerly 366.009]
- .093–.099     Specific continents, countries, localities  
                   Do not use for specific associations not provided for in 369.1–369.5;  
                   class in 369
- .1           **Hereditary, military, patriotic societies of United States**  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading  
                   Including state and local societies  
                   (Option: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to hereditary, military,  
                   patriotic societies of a specific country, class them in this number; in that case,  
                   class hereditary, military, patriotic societies of United States in 369.273)
- .11          General societies  
                   Including military and naval orders, Medal of Honor Legion, Military Order  
                   of Foreign Wars of the United States, Veterans of Foreign Wars

\*Add as instructed under 368.1–368.8

- .12 Colonial America societies  
Including General Society of Colonial Wars, General Society of Mayflower Descendants, National Society of the Colonial Dames of America
- .13 Revolutionary War societies  
Including Society of the Cincinnati, Sons of the American Revolution
- .135 Daughters of the American Revolution
- .14 Societies commemorating events of 1789–1861
- .15 Union Civil War societies  
Including Grand Army of the Republic  
Class here comprehensive works on societies of Civil War  
*For Confederate Civil War societies, see 369.17*
- .17 Confederate Civil War societies  
Including United Confederate Veterans, United Daughters of the Confederacy
- .18 Societies commemorating wars from 1898 to present
- .181 Spanish-American War, 1898
- .186 World Wars I and II and later wars
- .186 1 American Legion
- .186 2 American Veterans of World War II, Korea, and Vietnam (AMVETS)
- .186 3 Disabled American Veterans

**.2 Hereditary, military, patriotic societies**

Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

Class here nationality clubs

(Option: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to hereditary, military, patriotic societies of a specific country, use one of the following:

(Option A: Place them first by use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., hereditary, military, patriotic societies of France 369.F [preceding 369.1])

(Option B: Class them in 369.1; in that case, class hereditary, military, patriotic societies of United States in 369.273)

[.209 3–.209 9] Specific continents, countries, localities

Do not use; class in 369.23–369.29

.21 International societies

.23–.29      Specific continents, countries, localities

Add to base number 369.2 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., patriotic societies of Italy 369.245; however, for hereditary, military, patriotic societies of United States, see 369.1

Notation 09 from Table 1 is added to indicate nationality clubs not located with the nation of interest, e.g., Order Sons of Italy in America 369.2450973

Class clubs of ethnic groups not defined by specific country or locality in 369.3

**.3      Ethnic clubs**

Class clubs of ethnic groups defined by specific country or locality in 369.23–369.29

.305–.309      Ethnic clubs for people of mixed ancestry with ethnic origins from more than one continent, ethnic clubs for Europeans and for people of European descent

Add to base number 369.3 notation 05–09 from Table 5, e.g., ethnic clubs for people of European descent 369.309

.31–.39      Specific ethnic and national groups

Add to base number 369.3 notation 1–9 from Table 5, e.g., B'nai B'rith 369.3924

**.4      Young people's societies**

Class a specific aspect of young people's societies with the aspect, e.g., Boy Scout camps 796.5422

.42      Boys' societies

*For Boy Scouts, see 369.43*

.43      Boy Scouts

Including Cub Scouts, Explorers

.46      Girls' societies

*For Explorers, see 369.43; for Camp Fire, see 369.47*

.463      Girl Scouts and Girl Guides

.47      Camp Fire

**.5      Service clubs**

Including Lions International

.52      Rotary International

## 370 Education

Class here basic education, public education

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., special education at primary level 371.90472 (*not* 372):

Public policy issues in education	379
Special education	371.9
Specific levels of education	372–374
Higher education	378
Schools and their activities ( <i>except</i> 371.9)	371
Education for specific objectives	370.11
Curricula	375
Standard subdivisions, educational psychology ( <i>except</i> 370.11)	370.1–370.9

Class sociology of education in 306.43; class special education in a specific subject in 371.9; class primary education in a specific subject in 372.3–372.8. Class comprehensive works on education in a specific subject and on secondary, higher, and adult education in a specific subject with the subject, plus notation 071 from Table 1, e.g., education in science 507.1

### SUMMARY

- 370.1–.9      **Standard subdivisions, education for specific objectives, educational psychology**
  
- 371          **Schools and their activities; special education**
  - .001–.009      **Standard subdivisions**
  - .01–.07        **Specific kinds of schools**
  - .1              **Teachers and teaching, and related activities**
  - .2              **School administration; administration of student academic activities**
  - .3              **Methods of instruction and study**
  - .4              **Student guidance and counseling**
  - .5              **School discipline and related activities**
  - .6              **Physical plant; materials management**
  - .7              **Student welfare**
  - .8              **Students**
  - .9              **Special education**
  
- 372          **Primary education (Elementary education)**
  - .01–.08        **Standard subdivisions, primary education for specific objectives**
  - .1              **Organization and activities in primary education**
  - .2              **Specific levels of primary education**
  - .3              **Knowledge, computer science, library and information sciences, science, technology**
  - .4              **Reading**
  - .5              **The arts**
  - .6              **Language arts (Communication skills)**
  - .7              **Mathematics**
  - .8              **Other studies**
  - .9              **History, geographic treatment, biography of primary education**

- 373           **Secondary education**
  - .01–.09       **Standard subdivisions, secondary education for specific objectives**
  - .1           **Organization and activities in secondary education**
  - .2           **Secondary schools and programs of specific kinds, levels, curricula, focus**
  - .3–.9       **Secondary education in specific continents, countries, localities**
- 374           **Adult education**
  - .001–.008     **Standard subdivisions**
  - .01           **Adult education for specific objectives**
  - .1           **Organization and activities in adult education**
  - .2           **Groups, media, computers in adult education**
  - .4           **Distance education**
  - .8           **Specific kinds of institutions and agencies in adult education**
  - .9           **History, geographic treatment, biography**
- 375           **Curricula**
  - .000 1–.000 9   **Standard subdivisions**
  - .001–.006       **[Curriculum development, required and elective courses]**
- 378           **Higher education (Tertiary education)**
  - .001–.009     **Standard subdivisions**
  - .01–.07       **[Higher education for specific objectives, specific kinds of colleges and universities]**
  - .1           **Organization and activities in higher education**
  - .2           **Academic degrees and related topics**
  - .3           **Student aid and related topics**
  - .4–.9       **Higher education in specific continents, countries, localities in modern world**
- 379           **Public policy issues in education**
  - .1           **Specific elements of support and control of public education**
  - .2           **Specific policy issues in public education**
  - .3           **Public policy issues in private education**
  - .4–.9       **Public policy issues in specific continents, countries, localities in modern world**
- .1           Philosophy and theory, education for specific objectives, educational psychology**
  - Notation 01 from Table 1 as modified below
  - Do not use for philosophical foundations; class in 370.12. Do not use for value; class in 370.13
- .11           Education for specific objectives**
  - Do not use for systems; class in 370.1
  - Class here curricula directed toward specific educational objectives
  - See also 371 for school systems*
- .111          Fundamental education**
  - Preparation of educationally disadvantaged students for participation in community life
  - Class here compensatory education
  - Class fundamental education of adults in 374.012
- .112          Humanistic education (Liberal education)**

- .113 Vocational education  
 Class here career education, occupational training, vocational schools  
 Class on-the-job training, vocational training provided by industry in 331.2592  
*For vocational education at secondary level, see 373.246; for adult vocational education, see 374.013*  
*See also 331.702 for choice of vocation; also 371.425 for vocational guidance in schools*
- .114 Moral, ethical, character education  
 Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading  
 Class education for social responsibility in 370.115; class moral and character training of children at home in 649.7
- .115 Education for social responsibility  
 Including critical pedagogy, education for democracy, popular education (education for socioeconomic transformation); social education  
 Class education for international understanding in 370.116  
*See also 306.43 for sociology of education*
- .116 Education for international understanding  
 Class here educational exchanges, foreign study
- .116 2 Exchange of students  
 Class grants for student exchanges in 371.223
- .116 3 Exchange of teachers
- .117 Multicultural and bilingual education  
 Multicultural education: programs to promote mutual understanding among cultures  
 Standard subdivisions are added for multicultural and bilingual education together, for multicultural education alone
- .117 5 Bilingual education
- .118 Education for creativity
- .119 Education for effective use of leisure  
 Class here education for individual fulfillment
- .12 Classification and philosophical foundations  
 Including idealism, pragmatism, realism
- .13 Value of education
- .14 Communication

- .15            Educational psychology  
                  Do not use for scientific principles; class in 370.1  
                  Class here psychology of teaching  
                  Class interdisciplinary works on psychology in 150. Class psychology of a specific topic in education with the topic, plus notation 019 from Table 1, e.g., psychology of special education 371.9019  
                  *See also 153.15 for studies that use students as subjects for research into fundamental processes of learning*
- .151           Differential psychology  
                  Class a specific aspect of psychology of specific groups of people in 370.152–370.158
- .152           Conscious mental processes and intelligence  
                  Subdivisions are added for conscious mental processes and intelligence together, for conscious mental processes alone  
                  Including critical thinking  
                  Class here cognition  
                  *For emotions, see 370.1534; for perception, see 370.155; for creativity and imagination, see 370.157*
- .152 2        Memory
- .152 3        Learning  
                  *For motivation to learn, see 370.154*
- .152 4        Reasoning  
                  Class here problem solving
- .152 8        Behavior modification  
                  Class behavior modification methods of instruction in 371.393
- .152 9        Intelligence  
                  Class here multiple intelligences  
                  *For emotional intelligence, see 370.1534*
- .153           Personality and emotions  
                  Class behavior modification in 370.1528
- .153 2        Personality
- .153 4        Emotions  
                  Class here feelings
- .154           Motivation to learn  
                  Class comprehensive works on learning in 370.1523

- .155 Perception, movement, psychological drives  
Including motor skills, sensory perception  
Class emotions in 370.1534
- .157 Creativity and imagination  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
*See also 370.118 for education to promote creativity*
- .158 Psychological adjustment to education  
Class here effect of school education and environment on students
- [.19] Psychological principles  
Do not use; class in 370.15
- .2 Miscellany**
- .28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures
- [.284] Apparatus, equipment, materials  
Do not use; class in 371.67
- [.287] Testing and measurement  
Do not use; class in 371.26
- [.288] Maintenance and repair  
Do not use; class in 371.68
- .6 Organizations**
- [.68] Management  
Do not use; class in 371.2
- .7 Education, research, related topics**  
Class here education, research, related topics in teaching  
Class education, research, related topics at a specific level with the level, e.g.,  
education for teachers at primary level 372.071
- .71 Education  
Class here practice teaching
- .8 Groups of people**  
Do not use for students; class in 371.8. Do not use for education of specific  
groups of students; class in 371.82, e.g., education of ethnic minorities 371.829  
Class here discrimination in education [*formerly* 379.26]
- .82 Women in education  
Do not use for education of women; class in 371.822

**.9 History, geographic treatment, biography**

Class here comparative education

**371 Schools and their activities; special education**

Standard subdivisions are added for schools and their activities, special education together; for schools and their activities together; for schools alone

Class here school systems, school policy; comprehensive works on schools, school activities, public policy issues in education together

Class schools and their activities in primary, secondary, and adult education in 372–374; class schools and their activities in higher education in 378

*For curricula, see 375; for public policy issues in education, see 379*

*See Manual at 371 vs. 353.8, 371.2, 379*

**SUMMARY**

- |                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| <b>371.001–.009</b> | <b>Standard subdivisions</b>   |
| <b>.01–.07</b>      | <b>Specific kinds of schools</b>   |
| <b>.1</b>           | <b>Teachers and teaching, and related activities</b>   |
| <b>.2</b>           | <b>School administration; administration of student academic activities</b>  |
| <b>.3</b>           | <b>Methods of instruction and study</b>  |
| <b>.4</b>           | <b>Student guidance and counseling</b>   |
| <b>.5</b>           | <b>School discipline and related activities</b>  |
| <b>.6</b>           | <b>Physical plant; materials management</b>  |
| <b>.7</b>           | <b>Student welfare</b>   |
| <b>.8</b>           | <b>Students</b>  |
| <b>.9</b>           | <b>Special education</b>   |
| <br>                |  |
| <b>.001</b>         | <b>Philosophy and theory</b>   |
| <br>                |  |
| <b>.001 1</b>       | <b>Systems</b>   |
|                     | The word “systems” as used here refers only to concepts derived from 003, e.g., systems theory, analysis, and design applied to schools and school systems |
|                     | <i>See also 371.01–371.07 for specific kinds of school systems</i>   |
| <br>                |  |
| <b>.002</b>         | <b>Miscellany</b>  |
| <br>                |  |
| <b>[.002 8]</b>     | <b>Auxiliary techniques and procedures</b>   |
|                     | Do not use; class in 370.28  |
| <br>                |  |
| <b>[.002 84]</b>    | <b>Apparatus, equipment, materials</b>   |
|                     | Do not use; class in 371.67  |
| <br>                |  |
| <b>[.002 87]</b>    | <b>Testing and measurement</b>   |
|                     | Do not use; class in 371.26  |
| <br>                |  |
| <b>[.002 88]</b>    | <b>Maintenance and repair</b>  |
|                     | Do not use; class in 371.68  |
| <br>                |  |
| <b>.003–.005</b>    | <b>Standard subdivisions</b>   |
| <br>                |  |
| <b>.006</b>         | <b>Organizations</b>   |

- [.006 8] Management  
 Do not use; class in 371.2
- .007 Education, research, related topics
- .008 Groups of people  
 Do not use for schools for specific groups of people; class in 371.82
- .009 History, geographic treatment, biography
- .009 4--009 9 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
 Class here specific all-age schools and school systems

> 371.01–371.07 Specific kinds of schools

Class here specific kinds of school systems; types of education characteristic of specific kinds of schools other than public and community schools

Class comprehensive works in 371. Class a specific topic with respect to a specific kind of school with the topic in 371.1–371.8, e.g., teaching in private schools 371.102; class a specific kind of school defined by a method of instruction or study with the method, e.g., Montessori schools 371.392; class a specific kind of school for a specific group of students with the group in 371.82, e.g., schools for ethnic minorities 371.829, schools for African Americans 371.82996073

*See Manual at 371.01–371.8 vs. 372–374, 378*

.01 Public schools

Class public education in 370; class public community schools in 371.03; class public alternative schools in 371.04; class publicly supported religious schools in 371.07; class public policy issues concerning public schools in 379

Public schools distinguished by source of funding, locus of control, and mandate relocated to 371.05

.02 Private schools

Class here publicly supported private schools, schools not under government control

Class private community schools in 371.03; class private alternative schools in 371.04; class public policy issues in private education in 379.3

*For religious schools, see 371.07*

.03 Community schools

.04 Alternative schools

Class here experimental schools, free schools

.042 Home schools

Class here home schooling

*See also 371.39 for home instruction by visiting teachers*

- .05 Public schools distinguished by source of funding, locus of control, and mandate [*formerly* 371.01]  
 Class here academy schools, charter schools
- .07 Religious schools  
 Class religious education to encourage belief and to promote religious life and practice in 207
- .071 Christian religious schools  
 Add to base number 371.071 the numbers following 28 in 281–289, e.g., Catholic schools 371.0712, Catholic schools in Quebec 371.0712714  
 Class Christian education to encourage belief and to promote religious life and practice in 268
- .072–.079 Other religious schools  
 Add to base number 371.07 the numbers following 29 in 292–299, e.g., Islamic schools 371.077

&gt;

**371.1–371.8 Schools and their activities**

Class schools and their activities in special education in 371.9; class public policy issues relating to schools and their activities taken as a whole in 379; class comprehensive works in 371

*For comprehensive works on specific kinds of schools, see 371.01–371.07*

*See Manual at 371.01–371.8 vs. 372–374, 378*

**.1 Teachers and teaching, and related activities**

Standard subdivisions are added for a combination of two or more topics in heading, for teachers alone

- .100 1–.100 6 Standard subdivisions
- .100 7 Research and related topics
- [.100 71] Education  
 Do not use; class in 370.71
- .100 8–.100 9 Standard subdivisions
- .102 Teaching  
 Class here mentoring  
 Class substitute teaching in 371.14122; class evaluation of teachers in 371.144; class team teaching in 371.148  
*For practice teaching, see 370.71; for methods of instruction, see 371.3*
- [.102 019] Psychology of teaching  
 Do not use; class in 370.15

- [.102 07] Education, research, related topics  
Do not use; class in 370.7
- .102 2 Communication in teaching
- .102 3 Teacher-student relations
- .102 4 Classroom management  
Class here classroom discipline  
Class classroom techniques of instruction in 371.3; class comprehensive works on school discipline in 371.5
- .103 Teacher-parent conferences  
One-on-one teacher-parent relations  
Class comprehensive works on teacher-parent relations in 371.192
- .104 Academic status  
Privileges, prerogatives, immunities, responsibilities  
Including academic freedom, sabbatical leave, tenure  
*For teacher-community relations, see 371.19*  
*See also 331.2596 for economic aspects of tenure*
- .106 Relation of teachers to school administration and nonteaching staff  
Including teacher participation in administration  
Class labor unions in 331.88113711; class collective bargaining in 331.890413711
- [.11] Personal characteristics of teachers  
Number discontinued; class in 371.1
- .12 Professional qualifications of teachers  
Class here teacher certification
- .14 Organization of teaching force  
Including teacher turnover  
Class performance contracting in 371.15
- .141 Staffing and nonteaching activities
- .141 2 Staffing  
Including teacher workload  
*For team teaching, see 371.148*
- .141 22 Substitute teaching
- .141 23 Differentiated staffing  
Class use of teacher aides in 371.14124

- .141 24                    Use of teacher aides (teachers' assistants)  
                                     Paid or volunteer
- .141 4                    Nonteaching activities  
                                     *For teacher participation in management, see 371.106*
- .144                    Evaluation of teachers  
                                     Class here accountability, probation  
                                     *See also 371.15 for performance contracting; also 379.158 for overall educational accountability*
- .148                    Team teaching  
                                     Two or more people teaching a class
- .15                    Performance contracting  
                                     *See also 371.144 for teacher accountability*
- .19                    Community-school relations  
                                     Including teacher-community relations  
                                     Class here community involvement in schools, community-school partnerships, school involvement in the community  
                                     Class interdisciplinary works on relations of schools and society, teachers and society in 306.432
- .192                    Parent-school relations  
                                     Class here parent participation in schools; comprehensive works on teacher-parent relations  
                                     *For teacher-parent conferences, see 371.103*
- .192 06                    Organizations and management  
                                     Class here home and school associations, parent-teacher associations
- .195                    Industry-school relations  
                                     Class here industry involvement in schools, industry-school partnerships  
                                     *See also 370.113 for vocational education; also 371.227 for student employment in connection with ongoing academic work*
- .2                    School administration; administration of student academic activities**  
                                     Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                                     *See Manual at 371 vs. 353.8, 371.2, 379*

## SUMMARY

- |                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| 371.200 1--200 9 | Standard subdivisions  |
| .201--207        | School administration  |
| .21              | Admissions and related topics  |
| .22              | Student aid and cooperative education  |
| .23              | School year  |
| .24              | Schedules and school day   |
| .25              | Grouping students for instruction  |
| .26              | Examinations and tests; academic prognosis and placement   |
| .27              | Classroom and school examinations and tests; marking systems   |
| .28              | Promotion and failure  |
| .29              | Student mobility and school attendance   |
| .200 1           | Philosophy and theory  |
| .200 2           | Miscellany   |
| [.200 28]        | Auxiliary techniques and procedures  |
|                  | Do not use; class in 370.28  |
| [.200 284]       | Apparatus, equipment, materials  |
|                  | Do not use; class in 371.67  |
| [.200 288]       | Maintenance and repair   |
|                  | Do not use; class in 371.68  |
| .200 3--200 5    | Standard subdivisions  |
| .200 6           | Organizations  |
| [.200 68]        | Management   |
|                  | Do not use; class in 371.2   |
| .200 7--200 8    | Standard subdivisions  |
| .200 9           | History, geographic treatment, biography   |
| .200 92          | Biography  |
|                  | Class here collected biography of school administrators and biography of specific administrators not associated with a specific level of education or school   |
|                  | Class biography of school administrators best known as leaders in education in 370.92; class biography of administrators best known as leaders in primary education in 372.92; class biography of administrators best known as leaders in adult education in 374.92. Class biography of administrators best known as leaders at a specific level of education other than primary and adult limited to a specific area or school with the geographic area under the specific level, plus notation 092 from Table 1, e.g., a biography of a president of University of California at Berkeley 378.79467092 |

- > 371.201–371.207 School administration
- Class comprehensive works in 371.2. Class management of a specific function with the function in 371, plus notation 068 from Table 1, e.g., management of student welfare 371.7068
- For plant management, see 371.6; for materials management, see 371.67*
- .201 Personnel management
- Class here staff
- For teachers, see 371.1; for support staff, see 371.202*
- .201 1 School administrators
- Role and function
- Including school superintendents
- Class here leadership, top and middle management
- Class education of school administrators in 371.20071; class biography of school administrators in 371.20092
- For principals, see 371.2012*
- .201 2 Principals
- .202 Personnel management of support staff
- Other than administrators and teachers
- Class personnel management of staff providing a specific function with the function, plus notation 0683 from Table 1, e.g., personnel management of school nurses 371.7120683
- .202 3 Management of administrative support personnel
- .203 School supervision (Instructional supervision)
- See also 375.001 for curriculum development*
- .206 Financial management
- Including tuition
- Class here financial administration of public schools and school systems
- Class financial administration of agencies supporting public education in 353.824; class student aid in 371.22
- .207 Executive management
- Including internal organization
- Class here planning, school improvement programs
- Class government policies in 379
- For leadership, school administrators, top and middle management, see 371.2011; for school boards, see 379.1531*

- > 371.21–371.29 Administration of student academic activities  
 Class methods of instruction in 371.3; class student participation in administration in 371.59; class comprehensive works in 371.2  
*For educational and vocational guidance, see 371.42*
- .21 Admissions and related topics  
 Standard subdivisions are added for admissions and related topics, for admissions alone  
 Class here articulation, matriculation
- .216 Admission procedures
- .217 Entrance requirements  
 Class entrance examinations in 371.262; class academic prognosis and placement in 371.264
- .218 Credits  
 Class use of credits in placement in 371.264; class use of credits to determine promotion and failure in 371.28
- .219 School enrollment
- .219 09 History and biography  
 Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 371.2191–371.2199
- .219 1–.219 9 Geographic treatment of school enrollment  
 Add to base number 371.219 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., school enrollment in Russia 371.21947
- .22 Student aid and cooperative education  
 Standard subdivisions are added for student aid and cooperative education together, for student aid alone  
*See also 371.206 for tuition*
- .223 Scholarships and fellowships  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
 Including veterans' education benefits  
 Class here grants
- .224 Student loans
- .225 Student employment  
 Including employment for service to the community  
 Class here employment of students by their own school, work-study programs  
*For employment by industry and nonschool agencies in connection with ongoing academic work, see 371.227*

- .227            Cooperative education  
                   Student employment by industry and nonschool agencies in connection  
                   with ongoing academic work  
                   Class here apprenticeship programs, work-study plan  
                   Class apprenticeship programs without school sponsorship,  
                   interdisciplinary works on apprenticeship in 331.25922
- .23             School year  
                   Class here school calendar
- .232            Summer school
- .236            Year-round school  
                   Class here extended school year
- .24             Schedules and school day  
                   *See also 371.294 for school attendance*
- .242            Schedules  
                   Including flexible scheduling  
                   Class here scheduling, school week
- .244            School day  
                   Class here length of school day  
                   Class scheduling within school day in 371.242
- .25             Grouping students for instruction  
                   Including multigraded classes (mixed-level classrooms, combination of  
                   grades)  
                   Class here school classes  
                   Class one-room schools in 372.125
- .251            Class size
- .252            Mixed ability grouping (Heterogeneous grouping)  
                   Class here mainstreaming outside context of special education  
                   Class comprehensive works on mainstreaming in 371.9046
- .254            Ability grouping (Homogeneous grouping)  
                   Class here streaming  
                   Class mainstreaming for ordinary students in 371.252; class nongraded  
                   grouping in 371.255
- .255            Nongraded grouping

- .256           Open classroom grouping  
                   Class here open plan schools  
                   Class open classroom methods of instruction in 371.3941
- .26           Examinations and tests; academic prognosis and placement  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for examinations and tests, academic prognosis and placement together; for examinations alone; for tests alone  
                   Including test-taking skills  
                   Class use of examinations and tests in guidance in 371.42  
                   *For classroom and school examinations and tests, see 371.271*
- .260 1       Philosophy and theory, validity and reliability of tests  
                   Notation 01 from Table 1 as modified below
- .260 13      Validity and reliability of tests  
                   Including test bias  
                   Class here comprehensive works on validity and reliability of standardized tests  
                   *For validity and reliability of specific kinds of standardized tests, see 371.262*
- .261        Test construction  
                   Class evaluation of tests in 371.26013
- .262        Standardized tests  
                   Class here organizations producing standardized tests, comprehensive works on specific kinds of educational tests and their validity and reliability  
                   Class comprehensive works on validity and reliability of standardized tests in 371.26013; class interdisciplinary works on intelligence tests in 153.93; class interdisciplinary works on aptitude tests in 153.94. Class standardized tests for a specific subject in primary school with the subject in 372.3–372.8, plus notation 076 from Table 1, e.g., mathematics tests for primary school 372.7076; class standardized tests for a specific subject at secondary or higher level with the subject in 001–999, plus notation 076 from Table 1, e.g., mathematics tests for secondary school 510.76  
                   *For construction of standardized tests, see 371.261; for specific kinds of educational tests devised by individual teachers, see 371.271*  
                   *See Manual at 371.262 vs. 371.264*
- .264        Academic prognosis and placement  
                   Including accreditation of prior learning (APL), advanced placement  
                   Class standardized tests, use of specific tests of academic achievement and general education, comprehensive works on specific kinds of educational tests in 371.262  
                   *See Manual at 371.262 vs. 371.264*

- .27 Classroom and school examinations and tests; marking systems
- .271 Classroom and school examinations and tests
  - Tests devised by individual teacher or school
  - Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- .272 Marking systems
  - Methods used for recording and reporting students achievement
- .28 Promotion and failure
  - Including educational acceleration, underachievement
- .283 Promotion
- .285 Failure
  - Including grade repetition
- .29 Student mobility and school attendance
- .291 Student mobility
  - .291 2 School completion
    - Class here graduation; diplomas, other certificates of completion
  - .291 3 Dropouts (Early school leavers)
    - Class student failure in 371.285
  - .291 4 Transfers
- .294 School attendance
  - Class compulsory education in 379.23
  - For truancy, school attendance officers, see 371.295*
- .295 Truancy
  - Class here school attendance officers, truant officers
  - Class dropouts in 371.2913
- .3 Methods of instruction and study**
  - Class here classroom techniques, creative activities, seatwork
  - Class classroom management in 371.1024; class comprehensive works on teaching in 371.102. Class methods of instruction in a specific subject at primary level with the subject in 372.3–372.8, plus notation 044 from table under 372.3–372.8, e.g., methods of teaching mathematics in primary school 372.7044; class methods of instruction in a specific subject at secondary and higher levels with the subject in 001–999, plus notation 071 from Table 1, e.g., methods of teaching mathematics in secondary school 510.712



- .333 2            Sound recordings and their players  
                     Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .334            Computer science  
                     Class here data processing, computer-assisted instruction (CAI),  
                     electronic programmed instruction  
                     Unless it is redundant, add to base number 371.334 the numbers  
                     following 00 in 004--006, e.g., instructional use of software 371.33453,  
                     use of computer graphics in teaching 371.33466  
                     *For computer modeling and simulation, see 371.397*
- .335            Audiovisual and visual materials and equipment  
                     Standard subdivisions are added for audiovisual and visual materials or  
                     equipment together, for audiovisual materials or equipment alone  
                     Class audio materials and equipment in 371.333  
                     *See also 371.32 for textbooks*
- .335 2            Slides and filmstrips, motion pictures and video, pictures
- .335 22           Slides and filmstrips  
                     Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in  
                     heading
- .335 23           Motion pictures and video recordings  
                     Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in  
                     heading
- .335 6            Bulletin boards
- .335 8            Television  
                     Including videoconferencing  
                     Class video recordings in 371.33523
- .337            Educational games and toys  
                     Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                     *See also 371.397 for simulation*
- .35            Distance education  
                     Class here extension services, open and distance learning (ODL)
- .356            Correspondence courses
- .358            Electronic distance education  
                     Including teleconferencing  
                     Class here instructional use of mass media  
                     *For distance education by radio, see 371.3331; for distance education  
                     by computer, see 371.334; for distance education by television, see  
                     371.3358*

- .36 Project methods (Cooperative learning)  
 Methods that emphasize student direction of group projects  
 Class here group work, unit method  
 Class group teaching (in which class is divided into groups, but activity is still directed by teacher) in 371.395
- .37 Recitation and discussion  
 Including seminars
- .38 Methods employed outside classroom  
*See also 371.39 for home instruction by visiting teachers*
- .382 Laboratory method  
 Class laboratory method with electronic and visual materials and equipment in 371.33
- .384 Outdoor education  
 Class here field trips to indoor locations, open air schools
- .39 Other methods of instruction  
 Including home instruction by educational personnel, monitorial system of education, Morrison plan, rote learning  
*See also 371.042 for home schooling*
- .391 Waldorf method
- .392 Montessori method  
 Montessori method is usually limited to primary level in 372.1392.  
 Discussion of advancing it to higher grades is classed with higher level
- .393 Behavior modification methods  
 Including student performance contracting  
 Class use of behavior modification in classroom discipline in 371.1024
- .394 Individualized instruction  
 Class here tutoring
- .394 1 Open classroom instruction  
 Class grouping students for open classroom instruction in 371.256
- .394 2 Honors work  
 Class here honors programs, honors courses  
*See also 371.264 for advanced placement*
- .394 3 Independent study  
 Class independent honors work in 371.3942  
*For programmed instruction, see 371.3944*



**.5 School discipline and related activities**

Standard subdivisions are added for school discipline and related activities together, for school discipline alone

*For classroom discipline, see 371.1024*

**.51 General regulations for student conduct**

Including honor system

**.53 Rewards**

Class rewards to discourage specific disciplinary problems in 371.58

**.54 Punishment**

Class punishment for specific discipline problems in 371.58

**.542 Corporal punishment****.543 Probation, suspension, expulsion****.58 Specific discipline problems**

Class comprehensive works on crime, delinquency, sexual abuse, substance abuse, vandalism, violence in schools in 371.78

*For truancy, see 371.295*

**.59 Student participation in administration**

Including monitors, student participation in maintenance of discipline

Class here student government

*See also 371.39 for monitorial system of education*

**.6 Physical plant; materials management**

Standard subdivisions are added for physical plant and materials management together; for physical plant alone

Class here plant management, educational buildings, school facilities

*See also 727 for architecture of educational buildings*

**[.602 84] Apparatus, equipment, materials**

Do not use; class in 371.67

**[.602 88] Maintenance and repair**

Do not use; class in 371.68

**.61 School grounds, sites, location****.62 Specific kinds of buildings and rooms**

Class here furnishings, apparatus, equipment, supplies for specific kinds of buildings and rooms

Class teaching aids, equipment, materials regardless of kind of building or room in 371.33

- .621            Instructional spaces  
                   Including study facilities  
                   Class here classrooms  
                   *For laboratories, see 371.623*
- .623            Laboratories
- .625            Noninstructional facilities  
                   Class facilities for a specific noninstructional objective with the  
                   objective, e.g., cafeterias 371.716
- .63             School furnishings  
                   Class furnishings for specific kinds of buildings and rooms in 371.62
- .67             Apparatus, equipment, materials  
                   Class here materials management  
                   Class apparatus, equipment, supplies for specific kinds of buildings and  
                   rooms in 371.62  
                   *For teaching aids, equipment, materials, see 371.33; for school  
                   furnishings, see 371.63*
- .68             Custodial and maintenance services, renovation  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for a combination of two or more topics in  
                   heading, for custodial services alone, for maintenance services alone  
                   Including repair services  
                   *For technical maintenance and repair of a specific facility or piece of  
                   equipment, see the facility or piece of equipment, plus notation 0288  
                   from Table 1, e.g., repair of educational computers 371.3340288;  
                   for custodial and maintenance services, renovation of a specific  
                   noninstructional facility, see the facility, plus notation 0682 from Table  
                   1, e.g., maintenance services for school cafeterias 371.7160682*
- .7             Student welfare**  
                   Class here school social services  
                   *For a specific provision for student welfare not provided for here, see the  
                   provision, e.g., personal counseling 371.46, student housing 371.871*
- .71             Student health and related topics  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for student health and related topics  
                   together, for student health alone
- .712            School nursing programs  
                   Class use of school nurses in mental welfare programs in 371.713; class  
                   use of school nurses in birth control, pregnancy, sex hygiene programs in  
                   371.714

- .713 Mental health services  
 Class here school psychologists  
*For substance abuse programs, see 371.784*
- .714 Sex hygiene, birth control, pregnancy programs  
 Standard subdivisions are added for sex hygiene, birth control, pregnancy programs together; for sex hygiene programs alone
- .716 Food services  
 Including milk programs, nutrition programs  
 Class here school cafeterias, school lunch programs
- .78 School programs related to crime, substance abuse, sexual abuse  
 Class here crime, substance abuse, sexual abuse problems in schools; assistance to victims of crime and abuse  
 Class crime, substance abuse, sexual abuse as school discipline problems in 371.58
- .782 Crime prevention and alleviation  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
 Class here delinquency in schools, school violence  
 Class campus police in 363.289; class prevention and alleviation of crime relating to substance abuse in 371.784; class prevention and alleviation of crime related to sexual abuse in 371.786; class interdisciplinary works on victims of crime in 362.88; class interdisciplinary works on crime prevention in 364.4
- .784 Substance abuse programs
- .786 Sexual abuse programs
- .8 Students**  
 Including class reunions  
 Class here extracurricular activities, student life  
*For a specific aspect of students not provided for here, see the aspect, e.g., student discipline 371.5*
- .801 9 Student psychology  
 Class educational psychology in 370.15
- .805 Serial publications  
 Limited to serials about students, student life, extracurricular activities  
*See also 371.897 for student journalism*
- .806 Organizations and management  
 Do not use for student organizations; class in 371.83

- [.808]           Groups of people  
                   Do not use; class in 371.82
- .81            Student movements  
                   Student efforts to achieve reform on campus and social change  
                   Including student strikes  
                   Class here student activism, protest, unrest  
                   Class a student movement to achieve a specific objective with the objective,  
                   e.g., a movement to achieve electoral reform 324.63
- .82            Specific groups of students; schools for specific groups of students  
                   Class here discrimination, group identity, minorities; education of young  
                   people; comprehensive works on education of specific groups of students  
                   *For a specific aspect of education of specific groups of students, see the  
                   aspect, e.g., counseling for women students 371.4082*
- [.820 1–.820 9]   Standard subdivisions  
                   Do not use; class in 371.801–371.809
- .821–.829      Subdivisions for specific groups of students; for schools for specific  
                   groups of students  
                   Add to base number 371.82 the numbers following —08 in notation  
                   081–089 from Table 1, e.g., education of females 371.822, education of  
                   students of specific ethnic or national origin 371.829; however, education  
                   of young people discontinued from 371.823 to 371.82; education of boys  
                   relocated from 371.823 to 371.8211; education of girls relocated from  
                   371.823 to 371.822; for students who are the focus of special education,  
                   delinquent and problem students, students with disabilities and illnesses,  
                   gifted students, see 371.9
- .83            Student organizations  
                   Class here student clubs  
                   Class student movements in 371.81. Class a student organization in a  
                   specific field with the field, plus notation 06 from Table 1, e.g., student  
                   literary societies 806  
                   *For Greek-letter societies, see 371.85*
- .85            Greek-letter societies  
                   Class here alumni units  
                   Class a Greek-letter society in a specific field with the field, plus notation 06  
                   from Table 1, e.g., a Greek-letter medical society 610.6
- .852           Honor societies
- .855           Men's Greek-letter social societies  
                   Class here fraternities
- .856           Women's Greek-letter social societies  
                   Class here sororities

- .87           Housing and transportation of students
- .871           Housing
- .872           Transportation
- Class busing for school integration in 379.263
- See also 363.1259 for school bus safety*
- .89           Miscellaneous student activities
- Only those named here or below
- Including competitions
- For a specific student competition, see the competition, plus notation 079 from Table 1, e.g., a photographic competition 770.79*
- .895           School assemblies
- .897           Student journalism
- Class interdisciplinary student journals in 050. Class a student journal on a specific subject with the subject, plus notation 05 from Table 1, e.g., a journal on student life and extracurricular activities 371.805, a student literary journal 805
- .897 4         Producing newspapers
- .897 5         Producing magazines
- .897 6         Producing yearbooks
- Class a yearbook of a specific school with the school, e.g., a yearbook of a preparatory school in New York city 373.7471

**.9 Special education**

Class here exceptional students, learning disabilities, underachievers in special education; schools and school activities pertaining to special education

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by \* as follows:

- [0284] Apparatus, equipment, materials  
Do not use; class in 5
- [0288] Maintenance and repair  
Do not use; class in 5
- [0682] Plant management  
Do not use; class in 5

3-7 General topics

Add to base number the numbers following 371.904 in 371.9043-371.9047, e.g., equipment 5, equipment for students with reading disorders 371.91445

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., emotionally disturbed gifted students 371.95 (*not* 371.94):

Gifted students	371.95
Students with mental disabilities	371.92
Students with emotional disturbances	371.94
Students with physical disabilities	371.91
Delinquent and problem students	371.93

Class comprehensive works on underachievers in 371.28

**SUMMARY**

<b>371.901-.909</b>	<b>Standard subdivisions and general topics of special education</b>
<b>.91</b>	<b>Students with physical disabilities</b>
<b>.92</b>	<b>Students with mental disabilities</b>
<b>.93</b>	<b>Delinquent and problem students</b>
<b>.94</b>	<b>Students with emotional disturbances</b>
<b>.95</b>	<b>Gifted students</b>

[.902 84]	Apparatus, equipment, materials Do not use; class in 371.9045
[.902 88]	Maintenance and repair Do not use; class in 371.9045
.904	General topics of special education
.904 3	Teaching methods Including academic prognosis and placement
.904 302 8	Auxiliary techniques and procedures, techniques of study, lesson plans Notation 028 from Table 1 as modified below

- .904 302 81                      Techniques of study  
    Including book reports, homework, note-taking, reading  
    for content, report writing  
    Class here techniques for parents, study skills
- [.904 302 84]                      Apparatus, equipment, materials  
    Do not use; class in 371.90433
- [.904 302 85]                      Computer applications  
    Do not use; class in 371.904334
- [.904 307 8]                      Use of apparatus, equipment, materials in study and teaching  
    Do not use; class in 371.90433
- .904 32-.904 39                  Specific teaching methods  
    Add to base number 371.9043 the numbers following 371.3 in  
    371.32-371.39, e.g., project methods 371.90436
- .904 4                              Programs in specific subjects  
    Class here curricula  
    Add to base number 371.9044 the numbers following 372 in  
    372.3-372.8, e.g., mathematics 371.90447
- .904 5                              Buildings, rooms, furnishings, apparatus, equipment, supplies  
    Including maintenance and repair  
    Class here plant management
- .904 6                              Mainstreaming  
    Educating exceptional students in regular school programs  
    Including identifying students for special education  
    Class here inclusive education  
    *See also 371.252 for mainstreaming outside the context of special  
    education*
- .904 7                              Special education by level  
    Class a specific topic in special education at a specific level with the  
    topic, e.g., teaching at primary level 371.9043
- .904 72                              Special education at primary level
- .904 73                              Special education at secondary level
- .904 74                              Special education at higher level
- .904 75                              Adult special education  
    Other than in colleges and universities
- [.906 82]                              Plant management  
    Do not use; class in 371.9045

- .908           Groups of people  
                   Do not use for groups of students requiring special education; class in 371.9
- .91            Students with physical disabilities  
                   Including general works on students with brain damage  
                   Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., students with blindness and mobility impairments 371.916 (not 371.911):
- |  |         |
|--|---------|
| Students with linguistic disorders             | 371.914 |
| Students with mobility impairments             | 371.916 |
| Students with blindness and visual impairments | 371.911 |
| Students with hearing impairments              | 371.912 |
- Class students with a specific disorder caused by brain damage with the disorder in 371.911–371.94, e.g., emotional disorders caused by brain damage 371.94
- .911           \*Students with blindness and visual impairments  
                   Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .912           Students with hearing impairments  
                   Class here deaf students
- [.912 028 4]           Apparatus, equipment, materials  
                           Do not use; class in 371.9125
- [.912 028 8]           Maintenance and repair  
                           Do not use; class in 371.9125
- [.912 068 2]           Plant management  
                           Do not use; class in 371.9125
- .912 3–.912 6       Teaching methods, specific subjects, facilities, mainstreaming  
                           Add to base number 371.912 the numbers following 371.904 in 371.9043–371.9046, e.g., instruction in lipreading 371.91246, teaching methods 371.9123
- .912 8           Education by level  
                           Add to base number 371.9128 the numbers following 371.9047 in 371.90472–371.90475, e.g., university education for deaf people 371.91284
- .914           Students with linguistic disorders
- .914 2           \*Students with speaking disorders  
                           Including aphasia, stuttering

\*Add as instructed under 371.9

- .914 4           \*Students with reading disorders  
                   Class here dyslexia  
                   *See also 372.43 for remedial reading in primary education*
- .916           \*Students with mobility impairments
- .92            Students with mental disabilities  
                   Class here students with developmental disabilities  
                   Class students with mental illness in 371.94
- .926           \*Students with moderate mental disabilities
- .928           Students with severe mental disabilities
- .928 001           Philosophy and theory
- .928 002           Miscellany
- [.928 002 84]           Apparatus, equipment, materials  
                           Do not use; class in 371.92805
- [.928 002 88]           Maintenance and repair  
                           Do not use; class in 371.92805
- .928 003--.928 005       Standard subdivisions
- .928 006           Organizations and management
- [.928 006 82]           Plant management  
                           Do not use; class in 371.92805
- .928 007--.928 009       Standard subdivisions
- .928 03--.928 07       General topics of students with mental retardation  
                           Add to base number 371.9280 the numbers following 371.904 in  
                           371.9043--371.9047, e.g., teaching methods 371.92803
- .93            \*Delinquent and problem students  
                   Not suffering emotional disturbances  
                   Including maladjusted students  
                   Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Class delinquent and problem students suffering emotional disturbances in  
                   371.94

- .94           \*Students with emotional disturbances  
                   Including attention-deficit-disordered students, autistic students, hyperactive students  
                   Class here students with mental illness  
                   *For delinquent and problem students not suffering severe emotional disturbances, see 371.93*
- .95           Gifted students
- [.950 284]           Apparatus, equipment, materials  
                           Do not use; class in 371.955
- [.950 288]           Maintenance and repair  
                           Do not use; class in 371.955
- [.950 682]           Plant management  
                           Do not use; class in 371.955
- .952           Mainstreaming  
                   Educating gifted students in regular school programs  
                   Including identification
- .953           Programs in specific subjects  
                   Class here curricula  
                   Add to base number 371.953 the numbers following 372 in 372.3–372.8, e.g., programs in mathematics 371.9537
- .955           Buildings, rooms, furnishings, apparatus, equipment, supplies  
                   Including maintenance and repair  
                   Class here plant management
- .956           Teaching methods  
                   Including motivating gifted underachievers
- .956 028           Auxiliary techniques and procedures, techniques of study, lesson plans  
                           Notation 028 from Table 1 as modified below
- .956 028 1           Techniques of study  
                           Including book reports, homework, note-taking, reading for content, report writing  
                           Class here techniques for parents, study skills
- [.956 028 4]           Apparatus, equipment, materials  
                           Do not use; class in 371.9563

\*Add as instructed under 371.9

- [.956 028 5] Computer applications  
Do not use; class in 371.95634
- [.956 078] Use of apparatus, equipment, materials in study and teaching  
Do not use; class in 371.9563
- .956 2-.956 9 Specific teaching methods  
Add to base number 371.956 the numbers following 371.3 in 371.32-371.39, e.g., use of computers 371.95634
- .957 Education by level  
Add to base number 371.957 the numbers following 371.9047 in 371.90472-371.90475, e.g., educating gifted students at primary level 371.9572

## > 372-374 Specific levels of education

Unless other instructions are given, class works treating two sublevels of education that are not subdivisions of the same number with the higher level, e.g., kindergarten and first grade 372.241 (*not* 372.218)

Class special education at any level in 371.9; class public policy issues relating to a specific level of education taken as a whole in 379; class comprehensive works on education and works dealing comprehensively with primary and secondary education, with secondary and higher education in 370; class comprehensive works on schools in 371

*For higher education, see 378*

*See Manual at 371.01-371.8 vs. 372-374, 378*

## 372 Primary education (Elementary education)

Class here elementary schools, primary schools; lower sections of all-age schools

*For adult primary education, see 374.012*

### SUMMARY

- 372.01-.08 Standard subdivisions, primary education for specific objectives
- .1 Organization and activities in primary education
  - .2 Specific levels of primary education
  - .3 Knowledge, computer science, library and information sciences, science, technology
  - .4 Reading
  - .5 The arts
  - .6 Language arts (Communication skills)
  - .7 Mathematics
  - .8 Other studies
  - .9 History, geographic treatment, biography of primary education
- .01 Philosophy and theory; primary education for specific objectives

Notation 01 from Table 1 as modified below

- .011            Primary education for specific objectives  
                   Do not use for systems; class in 372.01  
                   Class here curricula directed toward specific educational objectives  
                   Add to base number 372.011 the numbers following 370.11 in  
                   370.111–370.119, e.g., character education 372.0114  
                   Class a specific topic with respect to primary education for a specific  
                   objective with the topic in 372.11–372.18, e.g., administration of primary  
                   schools 372.12  
                   *See also 372.1042 for specific kinds of primary school systems*
- [.028 4]        Apparatus, equipment, materials  
                   Do not use; class in 372.167
- [.028 7]        Testing and measurement  
                   Do not use; class in 372.126
- [.028 8]        Maintenance and repair  
                   Do not use; class in 372.168
- [.068]           Management  
                   Do not use; class in 372.12
- .08             Groups of people  
                   Do not use for students; class in 372.18. Do not use for education of specific  
                   groups of students; class in 372.182, e.g., education of ethnic minorities  
                   372.1829
- [.09]           History, geographic treatment, biography  
                   Do not use; class in 372.9
- .1             Organization and activities in primary education**  
                   *For comprehensive works on primary education for specific objectives, see*  
                   *372.011; for comprehensive works on specific levels of primary education,*  
                   *see 372.2*
- [.101–.103]    Standard subdivisions  
                   Do not use; class in 372.01–372.03
- .104            Special topics of primary schools

- .104 2            Specific kinds of primary schools
- Class here specific kinds of school systems, kinds of primary education (other than public primary education) defined by specific kinds of schools
- Add to base number 372.1042 the numbers following 371.0 in 371.01–371.07, e.g., primary church schools 372.104271, Catholic primary schools 372.1042712
- Class a specific kind of primary schools at a specific level in 372.2; class specific schools regardless of kind in 372.9. Class a specific topic with respect to a specific kind of primary school with the topic in 372.11–372.19, e.g., administration of primary private schools 372.12
- [.105–.108]      Standard subdivisions
- Do not use; class in 372.05–372.08
- [.109]            History, geographic treatment, biography
- Do not use; class in 372.9
- .11–.18          School organization and activities in primary education
- Add to base number 372.1 the numbers following 371 in 371.1–371.8, e.g., administration 372.12; however, for use of drama as a method of instruction, see 372.66
- .19               Primary education in subject areas
- Class here curricula
- Class curricula directed toward a specific primary education objective in 372.011
- For primary education in a specific subject, see 372.3–372.8*
- .2                Specific levels of primary education**
- Class specific schools at a specific level in 372.9. Class a specific topic with respect to primary education at a specific level with the topic in 372.11–372.19, e.g., administration of kindergarten 372.12
- [.201–.208]      Standard subdivisions
- Do not use; class in 372.01–372.08
- [.209]            History, geographic treatment, biography
- Do not use; class in 372.9
- .21                Preschool education
- School-based or center-based pre-primary education
- Class here early childhood education
- Class preschool education by parents in the home as part of child-rearing in 649.68
- [.216]            Nursery schools
- Number discontinued; class in 372.21

- .218 Kindergarten
- .24 Specific levels of primary education  
Class primary education covering grades 1–4 in 372  
*See Manual at 372.24 and 373.23*
- [.240 1–.240 8] Standard subdivisions  
Do not use; class in 372.01–372.08
- [.240 9] History, geographic treatment, biography  
Do not use; class in 372.9
- .241 Lower level  
Class here grades 1–3
- .242 Intermediate level  
Former heading: Upper level  
Class here grades 4–6  
Class lower secondary schools, middle schools (grades 5–8), junior high schools (grades 7–9) in 373.236  
(Option: Class lower secondary level, grades 7–10 of compulsory primary education in 372.243)
- (.243) Upper level  
(Optional number; prefer 373.236)  
Class here lower secondary level, grades 7–10 of compulsory primary education

&gt;

**372.3–372.8 Primary education in specific subjects**

Add to each subdivision identified by \* as follows:

- 04 General topics
- 042 Place of subject in education
- 043 Curricula
- 044 Teaching  
Class here methods of instruction, teaching materials  
Class textbooks with the subject in 001–999, e.g., primary textbooks on arithmetic 513
- (045) Textbooks  
(Optional number; prefer the subject in 001–999, e.g., primary textbooks on arithmetic 513)  
Including readers (if option at 372.4122 is used)
- 049 Instruction at specific levels  
Including kindergarten  
Class a specific aspect of instruction at a given level with the aspect, e.g., curricula for kindergarten 043

Class comprehensive works in 372.19

**.3 Knowledge, computer science, library and information sciences, science, technology**

Including discussion of ideas from many fields, interdisciplinary approach to knowledge

Class interdisciplinary approach to knowledge with a focus on a specific subject with the subject in 372.3–372.8, e.g., environmental studies with components of civics and geography 372.357, writing across the curriculum 372.623

**.34 \*Computer science; library and information sciences**

Class here digital literacy, information literacy

Subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

Class use of computers as a method of instruction in 372.1334. Class use of computers as a method of instruction in a specific subject with the subject in 372.3–372.8, plus notation 044 from table under 372.3–372.8, e.g., computer-assisted instruction in arithmetic 372.72044

**.35 \*Science and technology**

Subdivisions are added for science and technology together, for science alone

*For mathematics, see 372.7*

**.357 \*Nature study**

Class here environmental studies

**.358 \*Technology (Applied sciences)**

Including robots

Class here industrial arts

*For personal health and safety, home and family management, see 372.37; for physical education, see 372.86*

*See also 372.5 for manual arts*

**.37 \*Personal health and safety; social skills**

Including comprehensive works on home and family management [*formerly* 372.82]

Class here life skills

Subdivisions are added for personal health and safety, social skills together; for personal health and safety together; for personal health alone

Class food in 372.373; class social skills in 372.374

*For sewing, see 372.54; for physical education, see 372.86*

**.372 \*Sex education**

Including human reproductive physiology

- .373        \*Nutrition and food  
                  Including cooking  
                  Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .374        \*Social skills  
                  Class here family life, interpersonal relations
- .378        \*Substance abuse
- .4        Reading**  
                  Class here reading instruction in home schools  
                  Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 372.4 in the number coming last, e.g., vocabulary building by phonetic methods 372.465 (*not* 372.44)
- .402 84        Apparatus and equipment  
                  Do not use for materials; class in 372.412
- [.402 87]        Testing and measurement  
                  Do not use; class in 372.48
- .41        Instructional materials, reading readiness, methods of instruction and study
- .412        Instructional materials
- (.412 2)        Readers  
                  (Optional number; prefer specific language in 420–490, plus notation 86 from Table 4, e.g., English-language readers 428.6  
                  (If option under this number is chosen, class readers on a specific subject with the subject in 372.3–372.8, plus notation 045 from table under 372.3–372.8, e.g., science readers 372.35045)
- .414        Reading readiness
- .416        Methods of instruction and study  
                  *For a method of instruction or study not provided for here, see the method elsewhere in 372.4, e.g., individualized reading instruction 372.417, word-attack strategies 372.46*
- .416 2        Small-group reading instruction
- .416 4        Whole-class reading instruction
- .417        Individualized reading instruction (Personalized reading instruction)  
                  *See also 372.454 for independent reading*
- .42        Reading motivation
- .423        Use of national and commercial programs

\*Add as instructed under 372.3–372.8

- .425      Community-school programs  
             Class here parent participation in reading
- .427      School-based programs  
             Classroom and library programs
- .43        Remedial reading  
             Including reading failure  
             Class reading difficulties treated in special education in 371.9144
- .44        Vocabulary development
- .45        Reading-skill strategies  
             *For word-attack strategies, see 372.46; for reading comprehension strategies, see 372.47*
- .452      Oral reading
- .454      Independent reading
- [.455]    Speed reading  
             Provision discontinued because without meaning in context
- .46        Word-attack strategies (Decoding strategies)
- .462      Whole-word method (Sight method)  
             Class here word-recognition method
- .465      Part-word method (Phonetic method)  
             Including teaching alphabets  
             Class here phonetics in elementary education  
             Class pronunciation in a specific communication skill with the skill, e.g.,  
             pronunciation in speech 372.622
- .47        Reading comprehension strategies
- .472      Strategies using standardized materials  
             Including cloze procedure  
             Class a strategy using standardized materials in a specific subject  
             with the subject in 372.3–372.8, plus notation 044 from table under  
             372.3–372.8, e.g., cloze procedure in science instruction 372.35044  
             Use of this number for SQ3R technique discontinued; class in 372.47
- .474      Cognitive strategies  
             Including critical thinking
- .475      Whole-language approach  
             Class here language experience approach
- .476      Reading in content areas

- .48 Evaluation of reading skills  
     Class here testing and measurement  
     Class evaluation of reading readiness in 372.414
- .482 Standardized testing
- .484 Classroom and school testing  
     Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .486 Diagnostic testing
- .5 \*The arts**  
     *For literature, see 372.64; for drama, see 372.66; for dance, see 372.868;  
     for music, see 372.87*
- .52 \*Drawing, painting, design
- .53 \*Modeling and sculpture  
     Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .54 \*Sewing  
     Including weaving  
     Class here needlework
- .55 \*Handicrafts  
     Including paper work  
     *For needlework, see 372.54*
- .6 \*Language arts (Communication skills)**  
     Including fingerspelling, lipreading, sign languages  
     Class here literacy education  
     *For reading, see 372.4*  
     (Option: Class here language arts (communication skills) in a language other than English; in that case, class language arts (communication skills) in English in 372.6521)
- .61 Grammar  
     Including language usage, word study
- .62 Written and spoken expression  
     Class here language experience approach, whole-language approach  
     *For whole-language approach in reading, see 372.475. For a specific aspect of language experience in language arts, see the aspect, e.g., listening 372.69*

- .622           Speech  
                   Including pronunciation  
                   Class oral presentations other than public speaking in 372.66  
                   *See also 372.465 for phonetic methods of reading instruction; also  
                   372.66 for drama*
- .623           \*Composition  
                   Class here comprehensive works on written expression  
                   *For spelling and handwriting, see 372.63*
- .63            Spelling and handwriting
- .632           \*Spelling (Orthography)  
                   Class fingerspelling in 372.6
- .634           \*Handwriting (Penmanship)
- .64            \*Literature appreciation  
                   Class plays taught as theater in 372.66
- .65            \*Foreign, official, second languages; bilingual instruction  
                   Languages other than the language given preference in 372.6  
                   Subdivisions are added for all topics in heading together, for foreign  
                   languages alone, for official languages alone, for second languages alone
- .651           \*Bilingual instruction  
                   Class comprehensive works on bilingual education in 370.1175

.652–.659

## Specific foreign, official, second languages

Subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

Add to base number 372.65 notation 2–9 from Table 6, e.g., Spanish 372.6561, English as a second language 372.6521; then add further as follows:

- 04 General topics
- 041 Language arts in foreign, official, second languages
  - Add to 041 the numbers following 372.6 in 372.61–372.64, e.g., Spanish composition 372.656104123
- 042 Place of subject in education
- 043 Curricula
- 044 Teaching
  - Class here methods of instruction, teaching materials
  - Class textbooks with the subject in 001–999, e.g., primary textbooks on arithmetic 513
- (045) Textbooks
  - (Optional number; prefer the subject in 001–999, e.g., primary textbooks on arithmetic 513)
  - Including readers (if option at 372.4122 is used)
- 049 Instruction at specific levels
  - Including kindergarten
  - Class a specific aspect of instruction at a given level with the aspect, e.g., curricula for kindergarten 043

.66

## \*Drama (Theater)

Class here school plays, comprehensive works on oral presentations

Class plays taught as literature in 372.64

*For public speaking, see 372.622; for other oral presentations, see 372.67. For use of drama as a method of instruction in a specific subject in elementary education, see the subject in 372.3–372.8, plus notation 044 from table under 372.3–372.8, e.g., use of drama in teaching history 372.89044*

.67

## Other oral presentations

Other than drama and public speaking

Class here activities related to oral presentations

.672

## \*Media production and presentation

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class media production of a specific dramatic art with the art, e.g., storytelling for media 372.677

.674

## \*Puppetry

Limited to instructional use in elementary education

Class here puppet theater

Class interdisciplinary works on puppetry in 791.53

\*Add as instructed under 372.3–372.8

- .676        \*Choral speaking  
              Class here readers' theater
- .677        \*Storytelling
- .69         \*Listening
- .7         \***Mathematics**  
              Including measurement
- .71         \*Algebra
- .72         \*Arithmetic  
              Class here numeracy
- .76         \*Geometry
- .79         \*Probabilities and statistical mathematics  
              Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .8         Other studies**
- [.801–.809]    Standard subdivisions  
              Do not use; class in 372.1901–372.1909
- [.82]        Home and family management  
              Relocated to 372.37
- .83         \*Civics (Citizenship)  
              Comprehensive works on social studies relocated to 372.89
- [.832]        Civics (Citizenship)  
              Number discontinued; class in 372.83
- .84         \*Religion  
              Class religious education of children under auspices of religious bodies to inculcate religious faith and practice in 207.5; class religious education of children under church auspices to inculcate Christian faith and practice in 268.432
- .86         \*Physical education and dance  
              Subdivisions are added for physical education and dance together, for physical education alone
- .868        \*Dance  
              Class here movement education
- .87         \*Music  
              *See also 372.868 for dance*
- .872        Appreciation

\*Add as instructed under 372.3–372.8

- .873 Performance  
Including reading music
- .874 Composition
- .89 History and geography  
Standard subdivisions are added for history and geography together, for history alone  
Class here comprehensive works on social studies [*formerly* 372.83]; civilization  
*For environmental studies, see 372.357; for social skills, see 372.374; for civics, see 372.83*
- .890 4 General topics of history and geography
- .890 42–.890 44 Place of history and geography in education; curricula, teaching  
Add to base number 372.8904 the numbers following 04 in notation 042–044 from table under 372.3–372.8, e.g., teaching history 372.89044
- (.890 45) Textbooks  
(Optional number; prefer 909)  
*For textbooks on history and civilization of ancient world, of specific continents, countries, localities, see 372.893–372.899*
- .890 49 Instruction at specific levels  
Class a specific aspect of instruction at a given level with the aspect, e.g., history curricula for primary grades 372.89043
- .891 Geography
- .891 04 General topics of geography
- .891 042–.891 044 Place of geography in education; curricula, teaching  
Add to base number 372.89104 the numbers following 04 in notation 042–044 from the table under 372.3–372.8, e.g., using maps in geography 372.891044
- (.891 045) Textbooks  
(Optional number; prefer 910)  
*For textbooks on geography of specific places, see 372.8911–372.8919*
- .891 049 Instruction at specific levels  
Class a specific aspect of instruction at a given level with the aspect, e.g., geography curricula for primary grades 372.891043

- (.891 1–.891 9) Textbooks on geography of specific places  
 (Optional numbers; prefer 910.91 for geography in general, 913–919 for geography of specific continents, countries, localities)  
 Add to base number 372.891 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., geography textbooks on Asia 372.8915
- (.893–.899) Textbooks on history and civilization of ancient world, of specific continents, countries, localities  
 (Optional numbers; prefer 930–990)  
 Add to base number 372.89 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., textbooks on ancient Egypt 372.8932  
*For textbooks on geography of specific places, see 372.8911–372.8919*

### **.9 History, geographic treatment, biography of primary education**

Class here specific schools and school systems

- .901–.905 Historical periods  
 Add to base number 372.9 notation 01–05 from Table 2, e.g., primary education in the 21st century 372.905
- .91–.99 Geographic treatment, biography  
 Add to base number 372.9 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., primary education in Brazil 372.981

## **373 Secondary education**

Class here upper sections of all-age schools

*For secondary education in a specific subject, see the subject, plus notation 0712 from Table 1, e.g., secondary education in agriculture 630.712*

### **SUMMARY**

- 373.01–.09 Standard subdivisions, secondary education for specific objectives
- .1 Organization and activities in secondary education
  - .2 Secondary schools and programs of specific kinds, levels, curricula, focus
  - .3–.9 Secondary education in specific continents, countries, localities
- .01 Philosophy and theory, secondary education for specific objectives  
 Notation 01 from Table 1 as modified below

- .011           Secondary education for specific objectives  
                   Do not use for systems; class in 373.01  
                   Class here curricula directed toward specific educational objectives  
                   Add to base number 373.011 the numbers following 370.11 in 370.111–370.119, e.g., education for social responsibility in high school 373.0115; however, for vocational education, see 373.246  
                   Class a specific topic with respect to secondary education for a specific objective with the topic in 373.11–373.18, e.g., professional qualifications for teaching social responsibility in high school 373.112  
                   *See also 373.21–373.22 for specific kinds of secondary school systems*
- .02           Miscellany
- [.028 4]           Apparatus, equipment, materials  
                   Do not use; class in 373.167
- [.028 7]           Testing and measurement  
                   Do not use; class in 373.126
- [.028 8]           Maintenance and repair  
                   Do not use; class in 373.168
- .06           Organizations
- [.068]           Management  
                   Do not use; class in 373.12
- .08           Groups of people  
                   Do not use for students; class in 373.18. Do not use for schools and education for specific groups of students; class in 373.182 e.g., secondary schools for ethnic minorities 373.1829
- .082           Women in secondary education  
                   Do not use for secondary education of young women; class in 373.182352
- .09           History, geographic treatment, biography
- [.093–.099]       Specific continents, countries, localities  
                   Do not use; class in 373.3–373.9
- .1           Organization and activities in secondary education**  
                   *For comprehensive works on secondary education for specific objectives, see 373.011; for comprehensive works on schools and programs of specific kinds, levels, curricula, focus, see 373.2*
- [.101–.109]       Standard subdivisions  
                   Do not use; class in 373.01–373.09

- .11–.18      **School organization and activities in secondary education**  
 Add to base number 373.1 the numbers following 371 in 371.1–371.8, e.g., professional qualifications of teachers 373.112, secondary education of young women 373.182352; however, for cooperative education, see 373.28
- .19            **Curricula**  
 Class curricula directed toward specific secondary educational objectives in 373.011; class education in secondary schools identified by specific types of curricula in 373.24–373.26
- .2            Secondary schools and programs of specific kinds, levels, curricula, focus**  
 Class here types of education (other than public education in general) provided by schools and programs of specific kinds, levels, curricula, focus  
 Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 373.2 in the number coming last, e.g., public senior vocational schools 373.246 (*not* 373.224 or 373.238)  
 Class a specific topic relating to schools and programs of a specific kind, level, curriculum, focus in 373.11–373.18; class a specific school regardless of kind, level, curriculum, focus in 373.3–373.9; class continuation schools in 374.8; class folk high schools in 374.83

### SUMMARY

- 373.21        **Community, alternative, religious secondary schools; public secondary schools distinguished by source of funding, locus of control, and mandate**  
 .22            **Private and public secondary schools**  
 .23            **Specific levels of secondary education**  
 .24            **Academic, military, vocational schools**  
 .25            **Comprehensive secondary schools**  
 .26            **General secondary schools**  
 .27            **Apprenticeship programs in secondary education**  
 .28            **Cooperative education**

[.201–.209]      **Standard subdivisions**

Do not use; class in 373.01–373.09

- >            373.21–373.22      **Specific kinds of schools**  
 Class comprehensive works in 373
- .21            **Community, alternative, religious secondary schools; public secondary schools distinguished by source of funding, locus of control, and mandate**  
 Add to base number 373.21 the numbers following 371.0 in 371.03–371.07, e.g., public secondary schools distinguished by source of funding, locus of control, and mandate 373.215 [*formerly* 373.224]
- .22            **Private and public secondary schools**  
 Class private and public community, alternative, religious secondary schools in 373.21

.222 Private secondary schools (Preparatory schools)

Class here public schools (private secondary schools), comprehensive works on boarding schools

Class private schools (other than academic schools) identified by type of curriculum in 373.24–373.26

*For a specific kind of boarding school (other than private secondary schools), see the kind, e.g., private primary boarding schools 372.10422, military boarding schools 373.243*

.224 Public secondary schools

Class comprehensive works on public secondary education in 373

*For specific levels of public secondary schools, see 373.23; for public secondary schools identified by a specific type of curriculum, see 373.24–373.26*

Public secondary schools distinguished by source of funding, locus of control, and mandate relocated to 373.215

.23 Specific levels of secondary education

Class private schools regardless of level in 373.222; class schools identified by a specific type of curriculum regardless of level in 373.24–373.26; class comprehensive works on levels of secondary schools, four-year high schools not of a specific type in 373

*See Manual at 372.24 and 373.23*

[.230 1–.230 9] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 373.01–373.09

.236 Lower level

Including grades above 6 in primary schools

Class here middle schools (grades 5–8), junior high schools (grades 7–9); grades 7–10 of compulsory primary education

*For lower grades of middle schools, see 372.242*

(Option: Class lower secondary level, grades 7–10 of compulsory primary education in 372.243)

.238 Upper level

Including high school equivalency programs

Class here senior high schools (grades 10–12); high school postgraduate programs

> 373.24–373.26 Secondary schools identified by type of curriculum

Class here private schools (other than academic schools) identified by type of curriculum

Class comprehensive works in 373

.24 Academic, military, vocational schools

- .241            Academic schools
- Schools preparing for higher education
- Class here classical schools [*formerly* 373.242]; comprehensive works on magnet schools (specialist schools)
- Class private academic schools in 373.222; class preparing for higher education in military schools in 373.243; class preparing for higher education in comprehensive secondary schools in 373.25; class comprehensive works on secondary schools preparing for higher education in 373
- For a specific type of magnet school, see the type, e.g., magnet public primary schools 372.10421, magnet vocational schools 373.246, magnet secondary schools for science 507.12, magnet secondary schools for arts 700.712*
- [.242]        Classical schools
- Relocated to 373.241
- .243            Military schools
- Secondary schools offering professional military education but remaining basically academic in nature
- Class here naval schools
- Class schools concentrating on professional military education in 355.0071
- .246            Vocational schools
- Class here technical secondary schools, vocational education
- Class vocational education in comprehensive secondary schools in 373.24; class comprehensive works on vocational education in 370.113
- .25            Comprehensive secondary schools
- Schools offering academic, vocational, general programs when considered distinct from undifferentiated secondary schools
- .26            General secondary schools
- Schools offering nonvocational, general terminal education when considered distinct from undifferentiated secondary schools
- .27            Apprenticeship programs in secondary education
- Class apprenticeship programs offered by industry in 331.25922; class work-study plan in 373.28; class apprenticeship training as part of personnel management in 658.3124
- .28            Cooperative education
- Class here work-study plan

**.3–9 Secondary education in specific continents, countries, localities**

Class here specific schools and school systems

Add to base number 373 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., secondary schools of Australia 373.94

*For a specific school devoted primarily to a specific discipline, see the discipline, plus notation 0712 from Table 1, e.g., a science high school 507.12*

**374 Adult education**

Class here continuing, further, lifelong, permanent, recurrent education

Class on-the-job training in 331.2592; class adult high school equivalency programs in 373.238

*For adult education in a specific subject, see the subject, plus notation 0715 from Table 1, e.g., sculpture courses for adults 730.715*

- .001 Philosophy and theory
- .002 Miscellany
  - [.002 84] Apparatus, equipment, materials
    - Do not use; class in 374.167
  - [.002 87] Testing and measurement
    - Do not use; class in 374.126
  - [.002 88] Maintenance and repair
    - Do not use; class in 374.168
- .003–.005 Standard subdivisions
- .006 Organizations
  - [.006 8] Management
    - Do not use; class in 374.12
- .007 Education, research, related topics
- .008 Groups of people
  - Do not use for students; class in 374.18. Do not use for education of specific groups of students; class in 374.182, e.g., adult education of ethnic minority students 374.1829
- [.009] History, geographic treatment, biography
  - Do not use; class in 374.9

.01            **Adult education for specific objectives**

Class here curricula directed toward specific adult educational objectives, kinds of agencies promoting specific objectives

Class specific agencies for adult education regardless of objective in 374.94–374.99. Class a specific topic with respect to a specific adult educational objective with the topic in 374.11–374.18, e.g., testing in adult basic education 374.126

.012           **Adult basic education**

Class here adult primary, fundamental, remedial education

.012 4        **Literacy programs**

Limited to general discussion of programs to promote ability of adults to read and write up to a sixth-grade level

Class comprehensive works on literacy programs in 379.24; class adult education in effective composition (writing) in 808.00715. Class adult education in standard usage of a specific language with the language, plus notation 800715 from Table 4, e.g., a course in basic English for adults 428.00715

.013–.019    **Vocational, moral, ethical, character education; education for social responsibility, for international understanding; multicultural and bilingual education; education for creativity, for effective use of leisure**

Add to base number 374.01 the numbers following 370.11 in 370.113–370.119, e.g., adult education for effective use of leisure 374.019

**.1            Organization and activities in adult education**

*For groups, media, computers in adult education, see 374.2; for comprehensive works on adult education for specific objectives, see 374.01; for comprehensive works on distance education, see 374.4; for comprehensive works on specific kinds of institutions and agencies, see 374.8*

[.101–.108]   **Standard subdivisions**

Do not use; class in 374.001–374.008

[.109]        **History, geographic treatment, biography**

Do not use; class in 374.9

.11–.18      **School organization and activities in adult education**

Add to base number 374.1 the numbers following 371 in 371.1–371.8, e.g., testing 374.126; however, for use of media and computers, electronic distance education, see 374.26; for distance education, correspondence schools and courses, see 374.4

**.2            Groups, media, computers in adult education**

- .22      **Groups in adult education**  
           Class here discussion, reading, special-interest, study groups  
           Class self-help groups in 361.4  
           *See also 374.182 for specific groups of people as students*
- .26      **Use of mass media and computers**  
           Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
           Class here electronic distance education
- .4        **Distance education**  
           Class here correspondence schools and courses, open and distance learning (ODL), open learning  
           *For electronic distance education, see 374.26*
- .8        **Specific kinds of institutions and agencies in adult education**  
           Including community centers for adult education; continuation, evening, vacation schools  
           Class here specific kinds of schools  
           Class adult education role of libraries in 021.24; class specific institutions and agencies regardless of kind in 374.94–374.99. Class a specific topic with respect to a specific kind of institution or agency in adult education with the topic in 374.11–374.18, e.g., vacation school students 374.18  
           *For kinds of agencies promoting adult education for specific objectives, see 374.01; for correspondence schools, see 374.4; for alternative colleges and universities as agencies for adult education, see 378.03; for university extension services as agencies for adult education, see 378.175*
- [.801–.808]      **Standard subdivisions**  
           Do not use; class in 374.001–374.008
- [.809]        **History, geographic treatment, biography**  
           Do not use; class in 374.9
- .83        **Folk high schools**
- .830 9        **History, geographic treatment, biography**  
           Class specific folk high schools in 374.9
- .9        **History, geographic treatment, biography**
- .901–.905      **Historical periods**  
           Add to base number 374.9 notation 01–05 from Table 2, e.g., adult education in the 21st century 374.905
- .91–.99        **Geographic treatment, biography**  
           Add to base number 374.9 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., adult education in Sweden 374.9485

## 375 Curricula

*For curricula of a specific subject at the primary level, see 372.3–372.8. For curricula of a specific subject for a specific level other than primary level and for more than one level, see the subject, plus notation 071 from Table 1, e.g., curricula for health 613.071; for curricula for a specific level, see the level, e.g., secondary-school curricula 373.19*

- .000 1–.000 9      Standard subdivisions
- .001              Curriculum development
  - Class here curriculum planning
  - Class comprehensive works on curriculum development and instructional supervision in 371.203
  - For curriculum evaluation and change, see 375.006*
- .002              Required courses
  - Class here core curriculum
- .004              Elective courses
- .006              Evaluation and change
- (.01–.03)      Curricula and courses in bibliography, library and information sciences, encyclopedias
  - (Optional numbers; prefer 010–030, plus notation 071 from Table 1)
  - Add to base number 375 notation 010–030, e.g., curricula in cataloging and classification 375.0253
- (.04)             Curricula and courses in knowledge, systems study, computer science
  - (Optional number; prefer 001–006, plus notation 071 from Table 1)
  - Add to base number 375.04 the numbers following 00 in 001–006, e.g., curricula in computer science 375.044
- (.05–.09)      Curricula and courses of study in general serial publications; general organizations and museology; documentary media, educational media, news media; journalism; publishing; general collections; manuscripts, rare books, other rare printed materials
  - (Optional numbers; prefer 050–090, plus notation 071 from Table 1)
  - Add to base number 375 notation 050–090, e.g., journalism curricula 375.0704
- (.1–.9)         **Curricula and courses of study in other specific subjects**
  - (Optional numbers; prefer 100–900, plus notation 071 from Table 1)
  - Add to base number 375 notation 100–900, e.g., history curricula 375.9

**[376]**

**[Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 20

**[377] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 20

**378 Higher education (Tertiary education)**

Class here college education, university education; universities

Class four-year colleges in 378.1542

*For higher education in a specific subject, see the subject, plus notation 0711 from Table 1, e.g., medical schools 610.711*

*See Manual at 371.01–371.8 vs. 372–374, 378*

**SUMMARY**

<b>378.001–.009</b>	<b>Standard subdivisions</b>
<b>.01–.07</b>	<b>[Higher education for specific objectives, specific kinds of colleges and universities]</b>
<b>.1</b>	<b>Organization and activities in higher education</b>
<b>.2</b>	<b>Academic degrees and related topics</b>
<b>.3</b>	<b>Student aid and related topics</b>
<b>.4–.9</b>	<b>Higher education in specific continents, countries, localities in modern world</b>

.001 Philosophy and theory

.001 1 Systems

The word “systems” as used here refers only to concepts derived from 003, e.g., systems theory, analysis, and design applied to schools and school systems

*See also 378.03–378.07 for specific kinds of college and university systems*

.002 Miscellany

[.002 84] Apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use; class in 378.1967

[.002 87] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 378.166

[.002 88] Maintenance and repair

Do not use; class in 378.1968

.003–.005 Standard subdivisions

.006 Organizations

[.006 8] Management

Do not use; class in 378.101

.007 Education, research, related topics

- .008           Groups of people  
                   Do not use for students; class in 378.198. Do not use for higher education of specific groups of student; class in 378.1982 e.g., higher education of ethnic minorities 378.19829
- .008 2           Women in higher education  
                   Do not use for higher education of women; class in 378.19822. Do not use for higher education of young women; class in 378.1982422
- .009           History, geographic treatment, biography
- .009 2           Biography  
                   Class here administrators  
                   Class persons associated with specific colleges and universities in 378.4–378.9

[.009 4–.009 9]   Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Do not use; class in 378.4–378.9

- .01           Higher education for specific objectives  
                   Class here curricula directed toward specific higher educational objectives  
                   Add to base number 378.01 the numbers following 370.11 in 370.111–370.119, e.g., professional education 378.013  
                   Class professional schools in 378.155. Class a specific topic with respect to a specific higher educational objective with the topic in 378.101–378.198, e.g., seminars in professional education 378.177

>           378.03–378.07 Specific kinds of colleges and universities

Class here specific kinds of higher education (other than public higher education) characteristic of specific kinds of colleges and universities, specific kinds of college and university systems

Class a specific kind of college and university at a specific level in 378.15; class schools for specific groups of students in 378.1982; class specific institutions in 378.4–378.9; class comprehensive works in 378. Class a specific topic with respect to a specific kind of college or university with the topic in 378.1, e.g., graduate school fraternities 378.19855

.03           Alternative colleges and universities

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here experimental schools of higher education, free universities, open universities, universities without walls

*See also 378.175 for extension services*

>           378.04–378.05 Private and public colleges and universities

Class public and private alternative colleges and universities in 378.03; class public and private colleges and universities related to religious bodies in 378.07; class comprehensive works in 378

- .04 Private colleges and universities  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .05 Public colleges and universities  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
Class two-year public colleges in 378.1543; class comprehensive works on public higher education in 378
- .052 Municipal colleges and universities  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
Class here county, regional colleges and universities
- .053 State and provincial colleges and universities  
Standard subdivisions are added for either state or provincial colleges and universities  
*For municipal colleges supported by state and provincial governments, see 378.052*
- [.054-.055] Land-grant colleges and universities, national colleges and universities  
Numbers discontinued; class in 378.05
- .07 Colleges and universities related to religious bodies  
Add to base number 378.07 the numbers following 371.07 in 371.071-371.079, e.g., church-related universities 378.071, Jewish universities 378.076  
Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .1 Organization and activities in higher education**  
Including university autonomy  
*For academic degrees and related topics, see 378.2; for student aid and related topics, see 378.3; for comprehensive works on higher education for specific objectives, see 378.01; for comprehensive works on specific kinds of colleges and universities, see 378.03-378.07*

### SUMMARY

- 378.101-107 [Administration, community relations, cooperation]
- .11 Personnel management
  - .12 Faculty and teaching
  - .15 Specific levels of higher education
  - .16 Administration of student academic activities
  - .17 Methods of instruction and study
  - .19 Guidance, discipline, physical plant, welfare, students, curricula
- [.100 1-.100 9] Standard subdivisions  
Do not use; class in 378.001-378.009

- .101 College and university administration  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
 Class administrators in 378.111  
*For financial management, see 378.106; for executive management, see 378.107; for personnel management, see 378.11; for plant and materials management, see 378.196*
- .101 1 Governing bodies
- .101 2 Policies and regulations
- .103 Community relations  
 Including volunteer student service (for credit or not for credit)  
 Class interdisciplinary works on relations of colleges and universities with society in 306.432
- .103 5 Industry relations  
 Class here industry involvement in higher education, industry-school partnerships  
 Class technology transfer in 338.926  
*See also 378.37 for cooperative education*
- .104 Cooperation in higher education  
 Class here consortia in higher education  
 Class a specific instance of cooperation with the instance, e.g., cooperation in computer networking 004.6
- .106 Financial management  
 Including tuition  
*For student aid and related topics, see 378.3*
- .107 Executive management  
 Class here planning  
*For governing bodies, see 378.1011; for administrators, leadership, top and middle management, see 378.111*
- .11 Personnel management  
 Class here staff  
*For faculty, see 378.12*
- .111 Administrators  
 Including leadership, top and middle management  
*For biography of administrators, see 378.0092. For administrators of a specific function, see the function, e.g., directors of admissions 378.161*

- .112            Staff personnel  
                   Other than administrators and faculty  
                   *For a specific kind of staff personnel, see the kind, e.g., counselors*  
                   378.194
- .12             Faculty and teaching  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for faculty and teaching together, for  
                   faculty alone
- [.120 71]        Education of faculty  
                   Do not use; class in 378.0071
- .121            Academic status  
                   Privileges, prerogatives, immunities, responsibilities  
                   Including sabbatical leave
- .121 3           Academic freedom
- .121 4           Tenure
- .122            Organization of teaching force  
                   Including hierarchy  
                   Add to base number 378.122 the numbers following 371.14 in  
                   371.141–371.148, e.g., faculty workload 378.12212, evaluation of faculty  
                   378.1224
- .124            Professional qualifications  
                   Use of this number for personal qualifications discontinued; class in  
                   378.12
- .125            Teaching  
                   *For methods of instruction and study, see 378.17*
- [.125 07]        Education, research, related topics in teaching  
                   Do not use; class in 378.007
- .15             Specific levels of higher education  
                   Class specific institutions in 378.4–378.9. Class a specific topic of higher  
                   education with respect to a specific level of higher education with the topic  
                   in 378.1, e.g., teaching at the graduate level 378.125
- [.150 1–.150 9]    Standard subdivisions  
                   Do not use; class in 378.001–378.009
- .154            Undergraduate level  
                   Institutions conferring degrees or their equivalent at the undergraduate  
                   level within the national qualification structure for higher education

- .154 2            Programs leading to a bachelor's degree  
                   Class here four-year colleges, three-year institutions conferring the equivalent of a bachelor's degree, undergraduate departments and schools of universities
- .154 3            Programs leading to degrees below the bachelor's degree  
                   Class here institutions conferring degrees below the bachelor's level, two-year colleges
- .155            Graduate level  
                   Including postdoctoral programs  
                   Class here independent institutions conferring advanced degrees, graduate departments and schools of universities, comprehensive works on professional schools  
                   Class comprehensive works on professional education in 378.013  
                   *For professional schools at undergraduate level, see 378.154*
- [.158]           Evening school in higher education  
                   Number discontinued; class in 378.1
- .16            Administration of student academic activities  
                   Add to base number 378.16 the numbers following 371.2 in 371.21–371.29, e.g., admissions and related topics 378.161, standardized tests at college level 378.1662; however, for academic degrees and related topics, see 378.2; for student aid and related topics, see 378.3  
                   Class methods of instruction in 378.17; class student participation in management in 378.1959
- .17            Methods of instruction and study
- .170 28           Auxiliary techniques and procedures, techniques of study, lesson plans  
                   Notation 028 from Table 1 as modified below
- .170 281           Techniques of study  
                   Including book reports, homework, note-taking, reading for content, report writing  
                   Class here techniques for parents, study skills
- [.170 284]           Apparatus, equipment, materials  
                   Do not use; class in 378.173
- [.170 285]           Computer applications  
                   Do not use; class in 378.1734
- [.170 78]           Use of apparatus, equipment, materials in study and teaching  
                   Do not use; class in 378.173

- .172-.179      Specific methods of instruction and study  
                     Add to base number 378.17 the numbers following 371.3 in  
                     371.32-371.39, e.g., extension services 378.175, seminars 378.177
- .19              Guidance, discipline, physical plant, welfare, students, curricula
- .194-.198      Guidance, discipline, physical plant, welfare, students  
                     Add to base number 378.19 the numbers following 371 in 371.4-371.8,  
                     e.g., school discipline 378.195, higher education of specific kinds of  
                     students 378.1982
- .199              Curricula  
                     Class curricula directed toward specific educational objectives in 378.01
- .2              Academic degrees and related topics**  
                     Standard subdivisions are added for academic degrees and related topics  
                     together, for academic degrees alone
- .24              Requirements for earned degrees
- .241              Course, residence, subject requirements  
                     Class here college majors
- .242              Thesis and dissertation requirements  
                     Class preparation of theses and dissertations in 808.066378
- .25              Honorary degrees
- .28              Academic costume
- .3              Student aid and related topics**  
                     Standard subdivisions are added for student aid and related topics together, for  
                     student aid alone  
                     *For student aid in a specific field, see the field, plus notation 079 from Table*  
                     *1, e.g., student aid in medical education 610.79*
- .32              Veterans' higher education benefits
- .33              Fellowships and grants  
                     Class comprehensive works on student exchanges in higher education in  
                     378.0162
- .34              Scholarships
- .36              Loans and employment
- .362              Student loans

- .365      **Student employment**  
             Including employment for service to the community  
             Class here employment of students by their own schools, work-study programs  
             *For volunteer student service to community, see 378.103; for employment in connection with fellowships, see 378.33; for employment by industry and nonschool agencies in connection with ongoing academic work, see 378.37*
- .37      **Cooperative education**  
             Student employment by industry and nonschool agencies in connection with ongoing academic work  
             Class here work-study plan  
             Class general work-study programs for student employment in 378.365
- .38      **Costs and expenditures**  
             Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .4-9      **Higher education in specific continents, countries, localities in modern world**  
             Class here specific schools  
             Add to base number 378 notation 4-9 from Table 2, e.g., higher education in Mexico 378.72  
             (Option: If it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to a specific college or university, place it first by use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., University of South Africa 378.S [preceding 378.4])  
             *For a school or department of a college or university devoted to a specific subject, see the subject, plus notation 0711 from Table 1, e.g., Harvard Law School 340.07117444*  
             *See Manual at 378.4-378.9 vs. 355.00711*

## 379      **Public policy issues in education**

- Public policy issues at any level of education  
 Class public administration of education in 353.8; class school administration in 371.2  
*For public policy issues on a topic not provided for here, see the topic, e.g., policy on school admissions 371.21, on medical schools 610.711*  
*See Manual at 371 vs. 353.8, 371.2, 379*

### SUMMARY

- 379.1      **Specific elements of support and control of public education**  
 .2      **Specific policy issues in public education**  
 .3      **Public policy issues in private education**  
 .4-9      **Public policy issues in specific continents, countries, localities in modern world**

[.094–.099] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Do not use; class in 379.4–379.9

**.1 Specific elements of support and control of public education**

Class support and control of activities involved in specific policy issues in public education in 379.2

**SUMMARY**

379.11 **Support of public education**  
 .12 **Support by specific level of government, international support**  
 .13 **Revenue sources**  
 .15 **Control of public education**

[.101–.109] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 379.01–379.09

**.11 Support of public education**

Class here financial support; comprehensive works on financial support of education

*For support by specific levels of government, international support, see 379.12; for revenue sources, see 379.13; for financial support of private education, see 379.32*

*See also 353.824 for financial administration of agencies supporting public education*

**.111 Educational vouchers**

Regardless of level of government

Class here school choice

Class educational vouchers for a specific level of education in 379.112–379.118; class educational vouchers for special education in 379.119

*For use of educational vouchers in private education, see 379.32*

**.112 Support of public primary education**

**.112 2 Support of public preschool education**

**.113 Support of public secondary education**

**.114 Public support of adult education**

**.118 Support of public higher education**

**.119 Public support of special education**

**.12 Support by specific level of government, international support**

Class educational vouchers regardless of level of government providing them in 379.111; class revenue sources of specific levels of government in 379.13

- [.120 1–.120 9] Standard subdivisions  
Do not use; class in 379.01–379.09
- .121 Support by national governments
- .121 2 National support of primary education
- .121 22 National support of preschool education
- .121 3 National support of secondary education
- .121 4 National support of higher education
- .121 5 National support of adult education
- .121 6 National support of special education
- .122 Support by state, provincial, regional governments  
Add to base number 379.122 the numbers following 379.121 in 379.1212–379.1216, e.g., state support of adult education 379.1225
- .123 Local support
- .128 Support by regional intergovernmental organizations
- .128 2–.128 9 Support by specific regional intergovernmental organizations  
Add to base number 379.128 the numbers following 341.24 in 341.242–341.249, e.g., support by European Union 379.12822
- .129 International support  
Class here international multicultural educational aid
- .129 09 History, geographic treatment, biography  
Do not use for geographic treatment by recipient area; class in 379.1291–379.1299
- .129 1–.129 9 Geographic treatment by recipient area  
Add to base number 379.129 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., educational aid to Asia 379.1295; then, for area providing support, add 0\*, and again add notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., French educational aid to Asia 379.1295044
- .13 Revenue sources  
Class here school taxes  
Class financial assistance from higher levels of government in 379.12
- .15 Control of public education  
Class here autonomy
- 
- > 379.151–379.154 Control by specific governmental level  
Class control of specific aspects of education regardless of level in 379.155–379.158; class comprehensive works in 379.15

\*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

- .151 Control by national governments
- .152 Control by state, provincial, regional governments
- .153 Control by local governments
- .153 1 School boards
- .153 5 School districts  
Including centralization and consolidation of schools, changing school attendance boundaries
- .154 Control by regional intergovernmental organizations
- .154 2–.154 9 Control by specific regional intergovernmental organizations  
Add to base number 379.154 the numbers following 341.24 in 341.242–341.249, e.g., control by European Commission 379.1542226
- 
- > 379.155–379.158 Control of specific aspects of education  
Class comprehensive works in 379.15  
*For control of a specific aspect of education not provided for here, see the aspect, e.g., control of school discipline 371.5*
- .155 Control of curriculum  
*See also 379.28 for place of religion in public education*
- .156 Control of teaching materials  
Class here control of textbooks
- .157 Control of teachers and administrators  
Class control of specific aspects of teachers and teaching in 371.1; class control of specific aspects of school administrators in 371.2011
- .158 School standards and accreditation  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
Class here educational evaluation, school accountability  
*See also 353.8284 for government commissions on standards and accreditation; also 371.26 for examinations and tests*
- .2 Specific policy issues in public education**  
Not otherwise provided for
- [.201–.209] Standard subdivisions  
Do not use; class in 379.01–379.09
- .23 Compulsory education  
Including school-leaving age

- .24 Literacy policies
  - Class here right to read
- .26 Educational equalization (Equal educational opportunity)
  - Class here affirmative action, right to education
  - Discrimination in education relocated to 370.8
- .263 School desegregation
- .28 Place of religion in public schools
  - Regardless of faith or denomination
  - Including teaching creationism in public schools
- .3 Public policy issues in private education**
- .32 Public support of private education
  - Class here educational vouchers, financial support
  - Class comprehensive works on financial support of education in 379.11
- .322 Public support of private primary education
- .322 2 Public support of private preschool education
- .323 Public support of private secondary education
- .324 Public support of private higher education
- .326 Public support of private adult education
- .328 Public support of private special education
- .34 Public control of private education
  - Add to base number 379.34 the numbers following 379.32 in 379.322–379.328, e.g., public control of private primary education 379.342
- .4–9 Public policy issues in specific continents, countries, localities in modern world**
  - Add to base number 379 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., public educational policies in United States 379.73

## 380 Commerce, communications, transportation

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by \* as follows:

- 025 Directories of persons and organizations
- 06 Organizations and management; business enterprises  
Notation 06 from Table 1 as modified below
- 065 Business enterprises  
Including individual proprietorships, partnerships, companies, public and private corporations, combinations  
Add to 065 notation 3-9 from Table 2, e.g., business enterprises of France 06544  
Class directories of business enterprises, membership lists with directory information in 025; class organizations whose members are business enterprises, e.g., trade associations and chambers of commerce, in 06  
*See Manual at T1-025 vs. T1-0601-0609; also at 380: Add table: 09 vs. 065*
- 068 Management  
Public and private
- 09 History, geographic treatment, biography  
Class specific business enterprises in 065  
*See Manual at 380: Add table: 09 vs. 065*

Class public regulation and control in 354.7

*See Manual at 380*

### SUMMARY

- 380.1-9 Standard subdivisions
- 381 Commerce (Trade)
- 382 International commerce (Foreign trade)
- 383 Postal communication
- 384 Communications
- 385 Railroad transportation
- 386 Inland waterway and ferry transportation
- 387 Water, air, space transportation
- 388 Transportation
- 389 Metrology and standardization

[.01] Philosophy and theory

Relocated to 380.1

[.02-.09] Standard subdivisions

Relocated to 380.2-380.9

.1 Philosophy and theory [*formerly* 380.01]

.2-.9 Standard subdivisions [*formerly* 380.02-380.09]

**381 \*Commerce (Trade)**

Class here internal commerce (domestic trade), warehousing, interdisciplinary works on marketing

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., retail trade in rice 381.41318 (*not* 381.1):

Specific products and services	381.4
Marketing channels	381.1
Wholesale trade	381.2
Interregional and interstate commerce	381.5
Commercial policy	381.3

Class supply and demand in 338.1–338.5; class restrictive practices in business organizations engaged in commerce in 338.82; class comprehensive works on warehousing in 388.044; class interdisciplinary works on consumption in 339.47. Class cooperative, labor, finance, land, energy economics in relation to commerce with the branch of economics in 330, e.g., cooperative marketing 334.6

*For international commerce, see 382; for management of marketing, see 658.8*

*See Manual at T1—025 vs. T1—029*

**SUMMARY**

<b>381.029</b>	<b>Commercial miscellany</b>
.1	<b>Marketing channels</b>
.2	<b>Wholesale trade</b>
.3	<b>Commercial policy</b>
.4	<b>Specific products and services</b>
.5	<b>Interregional and interstate commerce</b>

**.029 Commercial miscellany**

Do not use for evaluation and purchasing manuals; class in 381.33

Notation 029 from Table 1 is seldom used with the subdivisions of 381

Class here interdisciplinary works on commercial miscellany

*For commercial miscellany with respect to a specific product or service, see the noncommercial number for the product or service, plus notation 029 from Table 1, e.g., buyers' guides for passenger automobiles 629.222029*

*See Manual at T1—025 vs. T1—029*

**.1 \*Marketing channels**

Including exhibitions, trade fairs (trade shows)

Class here retail trade; markets, shops, stores

Class street fairs in 381.186; class consumer problems and their alleviation in 381.3; class interdisciplinary works on exhibitions, on fairs in 907.4. Class marketing channels and marketing enterprises limited to or predominantly for a specific product or service with the product or service in 381.4, e.g., food supermarkets, comprehensive works on food and grocery trade 381.456413

Management of marketing channels limited to or predominantly for a specific product or service is classed with the product or service in 381.4, e.g., management of chain bookstores 381.45002068, management of food supermarkets 381.4564130068. Management of marketing channels not limited to or predominantly for a specific product or service is classed in 658.87, e.g., management of all kinds of chain stores 658.8702, management of supermarkets that are not predominantly food stores 658.879

*For consumer cooperatives, see 334.5; for producer cooperatives, see 334.6*

- .101–.105      Standard subdivisions
- .106            Organizations, business enterprises
  - Notation 06 from Table 1 as modified under 380
- [.106 8]        Management
  - Do not use; class in 658.87
- .107–.109      Standard subdivisions
- .11            †Shopping centers
- .12            †Chain stores
  - Class chain stores with a specific merchandising pattern in 381.14
- .13            †Franchise businesses
  - Class franchise businesses with a specific merchandising pattern in 381.14
- .14            Retail channels by merchandising pattern
  - For factory outlets, see 381.15; for outdoor and street markets, see 381.18*
- [.140 1–.140 9]      Standard subdivisions
  - Do not use; class in 381.101–381.109
- .141            †Department stores
  - Class department stores that are discount stores in 381.149

\*Add as instructed under 380

†Add as instructed under 380, except observe special instructions for management at 381.1

- .142 †Teleshopping  
 Class here catalog shopping, mail-order shopping, online shopping, telephone and television shopping; comprehensive works on electronic commerce  
*For online auctions, see 381.177*
- [.142 028 5] Computer applications  
 Do not use; class in 381.142
- .147 †Convenience stores  
 Including forecourt sales  
 Class convenience stores that are mainly grocery stores in 381.456413
- .149 †Discount stores  
 Including customer clubs, warehouse clubs, wholesale clubs  
 Class here supermarkets that are not predominantly food stores, hypermarkets, superstores  
 Class food retailing in supermarkets in 381.456413
- .15 †Outlet stores  
 Class here discount stores that are outlet stores, factory outlets, manufacturers' outlets, wholesale outlet stores
- .17 †Auctions  
 [.170 285] Computer applications  
 Do not use; class in 381.177
- .177 †Online auctions
- .18 †Outdoor and street markets  
 Class here street vending  
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
*For outdoor and street markets for secondhand goods, see 381.19*
- .186 †Street fairs  
*See also 381.457451 for antique fairs; also 381.45790132 for collectors' fairs*
- .19 †Outlets for secondhand goods  
 Including estate sales; charity, thrift shops  
 Class outdoor and street markets selling both new and secondhand goods in 381.18. Class a specific kind of estate sale with the kind, e.g., estate yard sales 381.195  
*For auctions of second hand goods, see 381.17*

†Add as instructed under 380, except observe special instructions for management at 381.1

- .192 †Flea markets
- .195 †Garage, rummage, and related sales  
 Sales held over a short time period of goods owned or contributed by individuals who no longer need them  
 Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading  
 Class here car boot, jumble, tag, white elephant, yard sales
- .2 Wholesale trade**  
 Class wholesale trade through specific marketing channels in 381.1
- .206 Organizations, business enterprises  
 Notation 06 from Table 1 as modified below
- .206 5 Business enterprises  
 Including individual proprietorships, partnerships, companies, public and private corporations, combinations  
 Add to 381.2065 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., wholesale trade business enterprises of France 381.206544  
 Class organizations whose members are business enterprises, e.g., trade associations, in 381.206  
*See Manual at 380: Add table: 09 vs. 065*
- [.206 8] Management  
 Do not use for comprehensive works on management of wholesale trade; class in 658.86. Do not use for management of wholesale trade limited to or predominantly in a specific product or service; class with the product or service in 381.4 e.g., management of wholesale trade in food 381.4564130068
- .209 History, geographic treatment, biography  
 Class specific business enterprises in 381.2065  
*See Manual at 380: Add table: 09 vs. 065*
- .3 Commercial policy**  
 Class here consumer problems and their alleviation, consumerism
- .32 Consumer movements  
 Class specific activities of consumer movements in 381.33–381.34

†Add as instructed under 380, except observe special instructions for management at 381.1

- .33      Consumer information
- Including consumer information aspects of product labeling; research, testing of products
- Class here consumer education, comprehensive works on evaluation of products and services to be purchased, interdisciplinary evaluation and purchasing manuals
- For evaluation and purchasing guides and consumer education for household and personal products and services, see 640.73. For evaluation and purchasing manuals for a specific product or service, see the product or service, plus notation 029 from Table 1, e.g., manual on evaluating passenger automobiles 629.222029*
- .34      Consumer protection
- Class product hazards in 363.19; class fraud in 364.163
- .347     Better business bureaus
- .4      Specific products and services**
- Class here works discussing consumption as a measure of the volume, value, or kind of trade in specific products; management of enterprises selling specific products and services
- Class interdisciplinary works on consumption of specific products and services in 339.48
- [.401--.409]      Standard subdivisions
- Do not use; class in 381.01--381.09
- .41      \*Products of agriculture
- Class here farmers' markets, produce trade
- [.410 29]          Commercial miscellany
- Do not use; class in 630.209
- .413--.418      Specific products
- Add to base number 381.41 the numbers following 63 in 633--638, e.g., rice 381.41318
- .42      \*Products of mineral industries
- [.420 29]          Commercial miscellany
- Do not use; class in 553.029
- .422--.429      Specific products
- Add to base number 381.42 the numbers following 553 in 553.2--553.9, e.g., oil 381.42282
- .43      \*Products of other extractive industries

- [.430 29] Commercial miscellany  
Do not use; class in 639.029
- .431 \*Products of culture of invertebrates and cold-blooded vertebrates  
Class products of insect culture in 381.418
- [.431 029] Commercial miscellany  
Do not use; class in 639.029
- .431 3–.431 7 Specific products  
Add to base number 381.431 the numbers following 639 in 639.3–639.7, e.g., oysters 381.43141
- .432–.439 Products of fishing, whaling, hunting, trapping  
Add to base number 381.43 the numbers following 59 in 592–599, e.g., fur 381.4397, comprehensive works on products of both finfishing and shellfishing industries 381.437
- .44 \*Slave trade  
Limited to works that emphasize economic aspects of slave trade  
Class interdisciplinary works on slave trade in 306.362
- .45 Products of secondary industries and services  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .450 001–.450 009 Standard subdivisions  
Notation from Table 1 as modified under 380, e.g., companies 381.4500065
- .450 01–.459 99 Specific products and services  
Add to base number 381.45 notation 001–999, e.g., clothing 381.45687; then add further as instructed under 380, e.g., clothing stores 381.45687065  
Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
*See Manual at 709.2 vs. 381.457092*
- .456 413 \*Food trade  
Number built according to instructions under 381.45001–381.45999  
Class here food retailing in supermarkets; grocery stores  
Class supermarkets that are not predominantly food stores in 381.149  
*For produce trade, see 381.41; for trade in commercially processed foods, see 381.45664. For trade in a specific food, see the food in 381.41–381.45, e.g., oysters 381.43141*

\*Add as instructed under 380

**.5 \*Interregional and interstate commerce**

Commerce between parts of a single jurisdiction

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

**382 \*International commerce (Foreign trade)**

Class here trade between nations and their colonies, protectorates, trusts

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., import trade in rice 382.41318 (*not* 382.5):

Specific products and services	382.4
Tariff policy	382.7
Import and export trade	382.5-382.6
General topics of international commerce	382.1
Trade agreements	382.9
Commercial policy	382.3

Class interdisciplinary works on international finance in 332.042; class interdisciplinary works on international economics in 337

**SUMMARY****382.01-.09 Standard subdivisions and business enterprises**

- .1 General topics of international commerce**
- .3 Commercial policy**
- .4 Specific products and services**
- .5 Import trade**
- .6 Export trade**
- .7 Tariff policy**
- .9 Trade agreements**

**.01 Philosophy and theory**

Do not use for theories of international commerce; class in 382.104

**.06 Organizations and management; business enterprises**

Notation 06 from Table 1 as modified under 380

Do not use for organizations associated with trade agreements; class in 382.9 e.g., World Trade Organization 382.92

**.09 History, geographic treatment, biography**

- .091** International commerce of areas, regions, places in general
- Add to base number 382.091 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., international commerce of developing countries 382.091724; then, for commerce between an area, region, or place and another area, region, place or a continent, country, locality, add 0† and add notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., commerce between developing countries and United Kingdom 382.091724041
- Do not follow add instructions under —091 in Table 1
- Give priority in notation to the region, area, place emphasized. If emphasis is equal, give priority to the one coming first in Table 2 (Option: Give priority in notation to the region, area, place requiring local emphasis, e.g., libraries in United States class trade between developing nations and United States in d382.097301724)
- .093–.099** International commerce in specific continents, countries, localities
- Add to base number 382.09 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., international commerce of United Kingdom 382.0941; then, for commerce between two continents, countries, localities or between a continent, country, locality and a region, area, place, add 0† and add notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., commerce between United Kingdom and communist bloc 382.094101717
- Do not use add table under —093–099 in Table 1
- Give priority in notation to the continent, country, locality emphasized. If emphasis is equal, give priority to the one coming first in Table 2 (Option: Give priority in notation to the continent, country, locality requiring local emphasis, e.g., libraries in United States class trade between United Kingdom and United States in 382.0973041)
- .1** **General topics of international commerce**
- .104** Theories
- .104 2** Specialization and comparative advantage
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Class comprehensive works on specialization and comparative advantage in 338.6046
- .17** Balance of payments
- Class here balance of trade
- .3** **Commercial policy**
- Class economic imperialism in 337
- .4** **Specific products and services**
- Class here works discussing consumption as a measure of the volume, value, or kind of trade in specific products
- Class interdisciplinary works on consumption of specific products and services in 339.48

†Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

- [.401–.409] Standard subdivisions  
Do not use; class in 382.01–382.09
- .41–.45 Specific products and services  
Add to base number 382.4 the numbers following 381.4 in 381.41–381.45, e.g., foreign trade in products of agriculture 382.41, of rice 382.41318  
Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .5 \*Import trade**  
Class here nontariff trade barriers  
Class the combined import and export trade of a country, the trade between two countries in 382.09; class agreements on nontariff trade barriers in 382.9
- .52 Import quotas
- .53 Embargoes on imports
- .54 Licensing of imports
- .6 \*Export trade**  
Class the combined import and export trade of a country, the trade between two countries in 382.09
- .609 History, geographic treatment, biography  
Do not use for the area to which goods are being exported; class in 382.6109
- .61 Export trade by export market area
- .610 9 History, geographic treatment, biography  
Class here the area to which goods are being exported  
Class the area doing the exporting in 382.609
- .63 Export policy  
Including subsidies, export trade promotion  
*For export controls and restrictions, see 382.64*
- .64 Export controls and restrictions  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
Including inspection, licensing
- .7 Tariff policy**  
Including drawbacks  
Class here interdisciplinary works on customs duties  
Class international agreements on tariffs in 382.9  
*For a specific aspect of customs duties, see the aspect, e.g., law 343.056*

- .71 Free trade  
Class international free trade agreements in 382.9
- .72 Revenue tariffs
- .73 Protectionism  
Class here protective and prohibitive tariffs, comprehensive works on trade barriers and restrictions  
*For nontariff trade barriers, see 382.5; for single and multiple column tariffs, see 382.75*
- .75 Single and multiple column tariffs
- .752 Single column tariffs  
Single rates for each product
- .753 Multiple column tariffs  
Varying rates on the same product designed to favor certain countries of origin  
Including generalized system of preference (GSP)
- .78 Tariff exemptions (Duty-free importation)  
Including educational, scientific, tourist exemptions
- .9 Trade agreements**  
Class here agreements on nontariff trade barriers, on tariffs  
Class general economic cooperation and international arrangements for this purpose in 337; class texts of treaties on tariffs in 343.0560261; class texts of treaties on international commerce in 343.0870261
- .906 Organizations and management  
Do not use for organizations associated with multilateral agreements; class in 382.91–382.92. Do not use for organizations associated with bilateral agreements; class in 382.93–382.99
- .909 History, geographic treatment, biography  
Do not use for multilateral agreements; class in 382.91. Do not use for bilateral agreements; class in 382.93–382.99
- .91 Multilateral agreements  
Class here customs unions  
Class bilateral agreements in 382.93–382.99; class interdisciplinary works on intergovernmental organizations in 341.2  
*For World Trade Organization, see 382.92*
- [.910 91] Area, regions, places in general  
Do not use; class in 382.911
- .910 93 Multilateral agreements in ancient world [*formerly* 382.913]

- [.910 94–.910 99] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
Do not use; class in 382.914–382.919
- .911 Multilateral agreements in areas, regions, places in general  
Add to base number 382.911 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., western bloc nations 382.911713
- [.913] Multilateral agreements in ancient world  
Relocated to 382.91093

> 382.914–382.919 Multilateral agreements in specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Class comprehensive works in 382.91

- .914 Multilateral agreements in Europe
- .914 2 European Union  
Class here European Common Market, European Community, European Economic Community
- .914 3 European Free Trade Association (EFTA)
- .914 7 Multilateral agreements in Eastern Europe  
Former heading: Council for Mutual Economic Assistance (COMECON)
- .915–.919 Multilateral agreements in other continents and regions  
Add to base number 382.91 notation 5–9 from Table 2, e.g., southeast Asia 382.9159
- .92 World Trade Organization (WTO)  
Class here General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT)
- .93–.99 Trade agreements by specific countries  
Add to base number 382.9 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., trade agreements of United Kingdom 382.941; then, for bilateral agreements, add 0† and again add notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., agreements between United Kingdom and France 382.941044  
Do not use add table under —093–099 in Table 1  
Give priority in notation to the country emphasized. If emphasis is equal, give priority to the one coming first in Table 2  
(Option: Give priority in notation to the country requiring local emphasis, e.g., libraries in United States class agreements between United Kingdom and United States in 382.973041)

†Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

> **383–388 Communications and transportation**

Class comprehensive works on communications in 384; class comprehensive works on communications and transportation together, on transportation alone in 388

Comprehensive works on the activities, services, and facilities of a system are classed in the number for the system, e.g., radio broadcasting activities, services, and facilities 384.54, not 384.544

**383 Postal communication**

Class comprehensive works on communications in 384

*See also 769.56 for philately*

.06 Organizations and management

Do not use for postal organizations; class in 383.4

[.09] History, geographic treatment, biography

Do not use; class in 383.49

.1 **Mail handling**

.12 Classes of mail

Class a specific mode of transportation for a specific class of mail in 383.141–383.144. Class a specific service for a specific class of mail with the service, e.g., special delivery of letters 383.183

.120 01–.120 09 Standard subdivisions

> 383.120 2–383.120 5 Special classes

Class comprehensive works in 383.12

.120 2 Free mail

Including franking privileges

.120 5 Nonmailable matter

Including obscene and subversive material

.122 Letters, postcards, sealed material

Class here first-class mail

.123 Newspapers and periodicals

Class here second-class mail

.124 Printed material

Not provided for elsewhere

Including books, catalogs, circulars; bulk mailings

Class here third-class mail

- .125        Parcels  
               Class here fourth-class mail  
               Class printed matter in 383.124
- .14        Transportation systems, collection, delivery  
               Standard subdivisions are added for transportation systems, collection,  
               delivery together; for transportation systems alone
- 
- >        383.141–383.144 Transportation systems  
               Class comprehensive works in 383.14
- .141        Facsimile transmission
- .142        Sea mail
- .143        Overland mail  
               Including inland waterway, railroad mail; star routes
- .144        Air mail  
               Including mail carried through space
- .145        Collection and delivery  
               Including postal zones  
               Class collection and delivery of mail within the military services in  
               355.69; class star routes in 383.143; class special delivery in 383.183
- .145 5      Postal codes  
               Class here zip code
- .18        Other services  
               Including express mail
- .182        Insured and registered mail  
               Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .183        Special delivery and special handling  
               Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .184        Cash on delivery (Collect on delivery, COD)
- .186        Dead letter services
- .2        Economic aspects of production**  
               Class economic aspects of mail handling in 383.1  
               *See also 330 for other economic aspects, e.g., postal workers' unions*  
               331.8811383
- .23        Rates and costs  
               Including use of postage stamps

- .24 Efficiency of operation  
Including use of mechanization and automation
- .4 Postal organization**
- [.409] History, geographic treatment, biography  
Do not use; class in 383.49
- .41 International systems and conventions
- .42 Post offices
- .46 Internal services  
Including postal inspection
- .49 History, geographic treatment, biography of postal communication, of postal organizations and systems  
Add to base number 383.49 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., postal communication in Europe 383.494

### 384 \*Communications

Including recordings, visual signaling

Class here interdisciplinary works on telecommunication

Class sociology of communication in 302.2; class services designed to facilitate communication by people with disabilities in 362.40483; class services designed to facilitate communication by people in late adulthood in 362.63; class comprehensive works on communications and transportation in 388

*For postal communication, see 383. For a specific aspect of telecommunication, see the aspect, e.g., telecommunication engineering 621.382*

#### SUMMARY

- 384.04 Special topics of communications**
- .1 **Telegraphy**
- .3 **Computer communication**
- .5 **Wireless communication**
- .6 **Telephony**
- .8 **Motion pictures**
- .04 Special topics of communications
- .041 Economic aspects of production  
Class economic aspects of facilities in 384.042; class economic aspects of activities and services in 384.043  
*See also 330 for other economic aspects, e.g., telecommunication workers' unions 331.8811384*

- .042           Facilities  
                   Including stations  
                   Class use of facilities in specific activities and services in 384.043
- .043           Activities and services  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

---

>           **384.1–384.6 Telecommunication**

Class comprehensive works in 384

**.1           \*Telegraphy**

Class here submarine cable telegraphy

*For radiotelegraphy, see 384.52*

.102 84           Materials

Do not use for apparatus and equipment; class in 384.15

.13           Economic aspects of production

Class economic aspects of activities and services in 384.14; class economic aspects of facilities in 384.15

*See also 330 for other economic aspects, e.g., telegraphy workers' unions 331.88113841*

.14           \*Activities and services

Including Morse and other code telegraphy, printing telegraphy; stock tickers, teletype, telex; comprehensive works on facsimile transmission

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class comprehensive works on electronic mail in 384.34

*For postal facsimile transmission, see 383.141*

.15           Facilities

Class use of facilities in specific activities and services in 384.14

**.3           \*Computer communication**

Transfer of computer-based information by any of various media ( e.g., coaxial cable or radio waves) from one computer to another or between computers and terminals

Class here computer communications networks, links between computers via telephone lines

Class Internet telephony in 384.6; class interdisciplinary works on computer communications in 004.6

*See Manual at 004.6 vs. 384.3*



- .523—.525      Economic aspects, activities and services, facilities  
                     Add to base number 384.52 the numbers following 384.1 in  
                     384.13—384.15, e.g., apparatus 384.525
- .53              \*Radiotelephony  
                     Including ship-to-shore communication, citizens band radio  
                     Class here portable telephones
- .533—.535      Economic aspects, activities and services, facilities  
                     Add to base number 384.53 the numbers following 384.6 in  
                     384.63—384.65, e.g., transmitting and receiving equipment 384.535
- .54              \*Radiobroadcasting  
                     Class here public broadcasting (noncommercial broadcasting), public aspects  
                     of amateur radio, interdisciplinary works on radiobroadcasting and television  
                     broadcasting  
                     *For television broadcasting, see 384.55*  
                     *See Manual at 384.54, 384.55, 384.8 vs. 791.4*
- .540 65              Business enterprises  
                     Number built according to instructions under 380  
                     Including network affiliates, public (noncommercial) networks and  
                     stations  
                     Class here stations and networks  
                     *See Manual at 384.54, 384.55, 384.8 vs. 791.4*
- .543              Economic aspects of production  
                     Class economic aspects of activities and services in 384.544; class  
                     economic aspects of facilities in 384.545  
                     *See also 330 for other economic aspects, e.g., radiobroadcasting  
                     workers' unions 331.881138454*
- .544              \*Activities and services  
                     Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .544 2              Scheduling  
                     Including sale of time
- .544 3              Programs  
                     Class techniques of producing programs in 791.44. Class a specific  
                     type of program with the type, e.g., news broadcasts 070.43
- .545              Facilities  
                     Class use of facilities in specific activities and services in 384.544

- .545 2 Broadcasting channels  
Class listings of stations by channel (assigned frequency) in 384.5453025
- .545 24 Frequency allocation
- .545 3 Stations  
Including AM, FM stations  
Class stations as business enterprises in 384.54065
- .545 5 Networks  
Class networks as business enterprises in 384.54065
- .545 6 Satellites
- .55 Television  
Including low power television (LPTV) stations (stations that rebroadcast the programs of full-service stations, originate programming that often includes pay television, and are usually limited in power to 10–1000 watts and a 10–mile to 15–mile broadcasting radius)  
Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 384.55 in the number coming last, e.g., economic aspects of cable television and controlled transmission television 384.5561 (*not* 384.5551)  
*See Manual at 384.54, 384.55, 384.8 vs. 791.4*
- .550 65 Business enterprises  
Number built according to instructions under 380  
Enterprises engaged in two or more aspects of television, e.g., pay television enterprises that produce video products  
Including network affiliates; nonaffiliated commercial, private television  
Class here stations and networks  
*See Manual at 384.54, 384.55, 384.8 vs. 791.4*
- .551 Economic aspects of production of television in general  
*See also 330 for other economic aspects, e.g., television workers' unions 331.881138455*
- .552 Facilities and channels of television in general  
Class here direct broadcast satellite (DBS) systems, satellites, satellite dishes
- .552 1 Broadcasting channels  
Including frequency allocation
- .552 2 Stations  
Class stations as business enterprises in 384.55065

- .552 3            Networks  
                   Class networks as business enterprises in 384.55065
- .553            \*Activities and services of television in general  
                   Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .553 1            Scheduling  
                   Including sale of time
- .553 2            Programs  
                   Class technique of producing programs in 791.45. Class a specific type of program with the type, e.g., news broadcasts 070.43
- .554            \*General broadcasting (Free television)  
                   Transmitting signals over the air for use by the general public  
                   Including translator stations (low-power stations for transmitting the signals of television broadcast stations to areas where reception is unsatisfactory)  
                   Class here public television (noncommercial television)  
                   Class works combining both general broadcasting and cable television in 384.55
- .554 3            Economic aspects of production  
                   *See also 330 for other economic aspects, e.g., public television workers' unions 331.8811384554*
- .554 4            \*Activities and services  
                   Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .554 42            Scheduling  
                   Including sale of time
- .554 43            Programs  
                   Including local programming  
                   Class techniques of producing programs in 791.45. Class a specific type of program with the type, e.g., news broadcasts 070.43
- .554 5            Facilities and channels  
                   Class here direct broadcast satellite (DBS) systems, satellites, satellite dishes  
                   Class use of facilities and channels in specific activities and services in 384.5544
- .554 52            Broadcasting channels
- .554 53            Stations  
                   Class stations as business enterprises in 384.554065

\*Add as instructed under 380

- .554 55            Networks  
                     Class networks as business enterprises in 384.554065
- .554 6            \*Community antenna television systems (CATV systems)  
                     Systems that provide television reception to remote communities,  
                     using a tall antenna, usually limited to no more than 12 channels
- .554 61–.554 63        Economic aspects, activities and services, facilities  
                     Add to base number 384.5546 the numbers following 384.55 in  
                     384.551–384.553, e.g., networks 384.554623
- .555            \*Pay television  
                     Systems that receive and distribute signals to customers who pay for the  
                     service  
                     Class here cable television  
                     Class works combining general broadcasting and cable television in  
                     384.55; class pay television in Canada in 384.5554; class use of cable  
                     television in closed-circuit television in 384.556
- .555 1–.555 3        Economic aspects, facilities and channels, activities and services  
                     Add to base number 384.555 the numbers following 384.55 in  
                     384.551–384.553, e.g., networks 384.55523
- .555 4            \*Premium television (Subscription television)  
                     Systems that scramble signals that are decoded for a fee  
                     Class here pay-cable, pay television in Canada  
                     *See also 384.55 for low power television (LPTV) stations*
- .555 41–.555 43        Economic aspects, activities and services, facilities  
                     Add to base number 384.5554 the numbers following 384.55 in  
                     384.551–384.553, e.g., facilities 384.55542
- .556            \*Controlled transmission television (Closed-circuit television)  
                     Systems where the signals are carried to a specific audience  
                     Including theater television  
                     Class here industrial uses, e.g., surveillance, monitoring of hazardous  
                     industrial processes
- .556 1–.556 3        Economic aspects, activities and services, facilities  
                     Add to base number 384.556 the numbers following 384.55 in  
                     384.551–384.553, e.g., rates 384.5561

- .558      **\*Video production**  
             Including camcorders, video recorders, laser optical discs  
             Class video production associated with a specific aspect of television communication with the aspect, e.g., video production in cable television 384.555
- .6      \*Telephony**  
             Class here Internet telephony; comprehensive works on wire and cable communication  
             *For telegraphy, see 384.1; for radiotelephony, portable telephones, see 384.53; for cable television, see 384.555*
- .602 5      Directories of persons and organizations  
             *See also 914–919, plus notation 0025 from table under 913–919, for telephone directories, e.g., New York City telephone directory 917.4710025*
- .63      **Economic aspects of production**  
             Class economic aspects of activities and services in 384.64; class economic aspects of facilities in 384.65  
             *See also 330 for other economic aspects, e.g., telephone unions workers' 331.88113846*
- .64      **\*Activities and services**  
             Including caller ID telephone service; conference calls; emergency services; local, long-distance, overseas service  
             Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .646      **\*Audiotex**  
             Including dial-a-message telephone calls
- .65      **Facilities**  
             Including stations, lines, switchboards, dialing systems, transmitting and receiving equipment  
             Class use of facilities in specific activities and services in 384.64
- .8      \*Motion pictures**  
             *See Manual at 384.54, 384.55, 384.8 vs. 791.4*
- .83–.85      **Economic aspects, activities and services, facilities**  
             Add to base number 384.8 the numbers following 384.1 in 384.13–384.15, e.g., activities 384.84

**385 \*Railroad transportation**

Class here standard-gage and broad-gage railways

Class comprehensive works on transportation, on ground transportation in 388

*For local rail transit systems, see 388.42*

*See Manual at 629.046 vs. 388*

**.065 Business enterprises**

Number built according to instructions under 380

Class here railroad companies

*See also 385.5065 for narrow-gage and special-duty railroad companies; also 385.6065 for inclined and mountain railroad companies*

**> 385.1–385.3 Specific aspects**

Class specific aspects of narrow-gage and special-duty railroads in 385.5; class specific aspects of inclined and mountain railroads in 385.6; class comprehensive works in 385

**.1 Economic aspects of production**

Class economic aspects of activities and services in 385.2; class economic aspects of facilities in 385.3

*See also 330 for other economic aspects, e.g., railroad workers' unions 331.8811385*

**.2 Activities and services**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

**.204 Special topics of activities and services****.204 2 Basic activities**

Including dispatching, routing, scheduling, traffic control

*For operation of rolling stock, see 385.2044*

**.204 4 Operation of rolling stock****> 385.22–385.24 Transportation activities and services**

Class comprehensive works in 385.2

**.22 \*Passenger services**

Including baggage, meal, sleeper services

**.23 \*Express transportation of goods**

\*Add as instructed under 380

- .24      \*Freight services
  - Class unitized cargo services in 385.72
  - For express transportation of goods, see 385.23*
- .26      Activities and services of terminals and stations
  - Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
  - Including fueling
- .262     \*Passenger services
  - Including passenger amenities, reservation systems
- .264     \*Freight services
  - Including freight handling, warehousing, storage
  - For railroad mail, see 383.143*
- .3      Facilities and vehicles**
  - Class use of facilities and vehicles in specific activities and services in 385.2
- .31      Stationary facilities
- .312     The way
  - Including bridges, grade crossings, tracks, tunnels
  - Class comprehensive works on tunnels in 388.13; class comprehensive works on bridges in 388.132
- .314     Terminals and stations
  - Including yards, roundhouses, train sheds, shop buildings
- .316     Communications facilities
  - Including signals
- .32–.34   Cars
  - Add to base number 385.3 the numbers following 625.2 in 625.22–625.24, e.g., dining cars 385.33
  - Class comprehensive works in 385.37
- .36      Locomotives
  - Add to base number 385.36 the numbers following 625.26 in 625.261–625.266, e.g., steam locomotives 385.361
- .37      Rolling stock
  - For cars, see 385.32–385.34; for locomotives, see 385.36; for rolling stock of local rail transit systems, see 388.42*

**.5 \*Narrow-gage and special-purpose railroads**

*For inclined and mountain railroads, see 385.6; for special-purpose railroads located entirely within a metropolitan region, see 388.42–388.46*

Monorail systems relocated to 388.44; interurban railroads (streetcar lines running between urban areas or from urban to rural areas) relocated to 388.46

**.52 \*Narrow-gage railroads**

Class narrow-gage industrial railroads in 385.54

**.54 \*Industrial railroads**

Subdivisions are added for any purpose of the railroad, e.g., lumber railroads in Georgia 385.5409758, mine railroads in Colorado 385.5409788

**.6 \*Inclined and mountain railroad systems**

Including cable, funicular, rack railroads

**.7 Railroad combined with other transportation systems****.72 \*Unitized cargo services**

Including piggyback transportation (trucks, trailers, buses, private automobiles on flatcars)

*For container-ship operations, see 387.5442*

**.77 \*Ship railroads**

Rail transportation of vessels overland between bodies of water

**386 \*Inland waterway and ferry transportation**

Subdivisions are added for inland waterway and ferry transportation together, for inland waterway transportation alone

Class comprehensive works on water transportation in 387; class comprehensive works on transportation in 388

*See Manual at 629.046 vs. 388*

**.1 Economic aspects of production**

Class economic aspects of facilities in 386.2; class economic aspects of activities and services in 386.24; class economic aspects of specific kinds of inland water and ferry transportation in 386.3–386.6

*See also 330 for other economic aspects, e.g., inland-waterway transportation workers' unions 331.8811386*

**.2 Activities, services, facilities, ships**

Class activities and facilities (*except* for ships and ports) of specific types of inland water systems in 386.3–386.6; class activities, services, facilities of ports in 386.8

- .22        **Ships**  
             Including air-cushion vehicles  
             Add to base number 386.22 the numbers following 623.82 in  
             623.821–623.829, e.g., tugboats 386.2232  
             Class use of ships in specific activities and services in 386.24
- .24        **Activities and services**  
             Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .240 4        **Special topics of activities and services**
- .240 42        **Basic activities**  
                   Including dispatching, routing, scheduling, traffic control  
                   *For operation of ships, see 386.24044*
- .240 44        **Operation of ships**
- .242        **\*Passenger services**  
                   Including baggage, meal, sleeper services
- .244        **\*Freight services**  
                   *For inland waterway mail, see 383.143*

>        **386.3–386.6 Specific kinds of inland water and ferry transportation**

Class here activities, services, facilities

Class ships for specific kinds of inland water transportation in 386.22;  
 class ports for specific kinds of inland water transportation in 386.8; class  
 comprehensive works in 386

>        **386.3–386.5 Specific kinds of waters**

Class ferry transportation on specific kinds of waters in 386.6; class  
 comprehensive works in 386

**.3        \*River transportation**

Class here transportation by canalized rivers

Class combined river, lake, canal systems in 386.5

.32        **The way**

.35        **Activities and services**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.350 4        **Special topics of activities and services**

.350 42            Basic activities  
                          Including dispatching, routing, scheduling, traffic control  
                          *For operation of ships, see 386.35044*

.350 44            Operation of ships

.352            \*Passenger services  
                          Including baggage, meal, sleeper services

.354            \*Freight services  
                          *For inland waterway mail, see 383.143*

**.4            \*Canal transportation**

Class canalized rivers in 386.3; class combined river, lake, canal systems in 386.5

.404            Special topics of canal transportation

.404 2            Activities and services

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.404 204            Special topics of activities and services

.404 204 2            Basic activities

Including dispatching, routing, scheduling, traffic control

*For operation of ships, see 386.4042044*

.404 204 4            Operation of ships

.404 22            \*Passenger services

Including baggage, meal, sleeper services

.404 24            \*Freight services

*For inland waterway mail, see 383.143*

---

>            386.42–386.48 Specific canals and kinds of canals

Existing and proposed

Class comprehensive works in 386.4

.42            Interoceanic canals

*For canals connecting specific oceans, see 386.43–386.45*

---

>            386.43–386.45 Canals connecting specific oceans

Class comprehensive works in 386.42

- .43 Canals connecting Indian and Atlantic Oceans  
Class here Suez Canal
- .44 Canals connecting Atlantic and Pacific Oceans  
Class here Panama Canal
- .445 Proposed Nicaragua Canal
- .447 Proposed Tehuantepec Canal
- .45 Canals connecting Pacific and Indian Oceans
- .46 Noninteroceanic canals  
Including canals connecting parts of one ocean  
*For kinds of noninteroceanic canals, see 386.47–386.48*
- 
- > 386.47–386.48 Kinds of noninteroceanic canals  
Class here specific canals  
Class comprehensive works in 386.46
- .47 \*Ship canals
- .48 \*Small craft and barge canals  
Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .5 \*Lake transportation**  
Class here transportation on combined river, lake, canal systems, e.g., Saint Lawrence Seaway 386.509714
- .52 The way
- .54 Activities and services  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .540 4 Special topics of activities and services
- .540 42 Basic activities  
Including dispatching, routing, scheduling, traffic control  
*For operation of ships, see 386.54044*
- .540 44 Operation of ships
- .542 \*Passenger services  
Including baggage, meal, sleeper services
- .544 \*Freight services  
*For inland waterway mail, see 383.143*

\*Add as instructed under 380

**.6 \*Ferry transportation**

Oceanic and inland

**.8 \*Ports**

Class here ports on nontidal waters

**.82-.86 Physiographic location, facilities, activities, services; free ports**

Add to base number 386.8 the numbers following 387.1 in 387.12-387.16, e.g., freight terminals 386.853

**387 Water, air, space transportation**

Class here comprehensive works on water transportation

Class comprehensive works on transportation in 388

*For inland waterway and ferry transportation, see 386*

**SUMMARY****387.01-.09 Standard subdivisions of water transportation**

**.1 Ports**

**.2 Ships**

**.5 Ocean transportation (Marine transportation)**

**.7 Air transportation**

**.8 Space transportation**

**[.001-.009] Standard subdivisions of water transportation**

Relocated to 387.01-387.09

**.01-.09 Standard subdivisions of water transportation [formerly 387.001-387.009]**

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 380, e.g., water transportation business enterprises 387.065; however, do not use for water, air, space transportation together; class in 388.01-388.09

**.1 Ports**

Class here ports on tidal waters

*For inland ports, see 386.8*

**.12 Physiographic location of ports**

Including ports on tidal rivers, roadsteads

Class facilities of specific types of ports in 387.15; class activities and services of specific types of ports in 387.16

**.1209 History, geographic treatment, biography**

Class a specific port in 387.109

- .13        **Free ports**  
             Class facilities of free ports in 387.15; class activities and services of free ports in 387.16
- .130 9        History, geographic treatment, biography  
                   Class a specific free port in 387.109
- .15        **Port facilities**  
             Including docks, marinas, piers, quays  
             Class use of port facilities in specific activities and services in 387.16
- .152        **Passenger terminals**
- .153        **Freight terminals**
- .155        **Navigational aids**  
             Class here lighthouses  
             Class piloting in 387.166
- .16        **Activities and services**  
             Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
             Including port maintenance
- .162        **\*Passenger services**  
             Including booking services
- .164        **\*Freight services**  
             Including freight handling, warehousing, storage, connection with land transportation
- .166        **Operational services**  
             Including piloting, ship-to-shore communication, towing, tug services
- .168        **Auxiliary services**  
             Including fueling
- .2        **Ships**  
             Including air-cushion vehicles  
             Class use of ships in inland waterway transportation in 386.22; class use of ships in specific activities and services in 387.54  
             *See Manual at 629.046 vs. 388*
- .204        **General types**  
             Add to base number 387.204 the numbers following 623.820 in 623.8202-623.8205, e.g., sailing craft 387.2043

\*Add as instructed under 380

- .21-.29      Specific types  
                   Add to base number 387.2 the numbers following 623.82 in  
                   623.821-623.829, e.g., cargo ships 387.245
- .5      \*Ocean transportation (Marine transportation)**  
                   *For seaports, see 387.1; for ships, see 387.2*  
                   *See Manual at 629.046 vs. 388*
- .51      Economic aspects of production  
                   Class economic aspects of ships in 387.2; class economic aspects of routes  
                   and kinds of routes in 387.52; class economic aspects of activities and  
                   services in 387.54; class economic aspects of facilities in 387.58  
                   *See also 330 for other economic aspects, e.g., ocean transportation*  
                   *workers' unions 331.88113875*
- .52      Routes and kinds of routes  
                   Class here specific routes  
                   Class activities and services on routes and kinds of routes in 387.54; class  
                   use of facilities on routes and kinds of routes in 387.58
- .522      Intercoastal routes
- .523      Auxiliary, irregular, tramp routes
- .524      Coastwise routes
- .54      Activities and services  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Class activities and services of ports in 387.16
- .540 4      Special topics of activities and services
- .540 42      Basic activities  
                   Including dispatching, routing, scheduling, traffic control  
                   *For operation of ships, see 387.54044*
- .540 44      Operation of ships  
                   Including life and activities of marine personnel at sea
- .542      \*Passenger services  
                   Including baggage, meal, sleeper services
- .544      \*Freight services
- .544 2      \*Container-ship operations  
                   Class unitized cargo in 385.72; class carriage of specific kinds of  
                   cargo in container-ship operations in 387.5448

- .544 8            Carriage of specific kinds of cargo  
                          Including dry cargo, fertilizer, petroleum  
                          *For sea mail, see 383.142*
- .55            \*Salvage
- .58            Facilities  
                          Class facilities of ports in 387.15; class ships in 387.2; class use of facilities  
                          in specific activities and services in 387.54  
                          *For lighthouses, see 387.155*
- .7            \***Air transportation**  
                          *See Manual at 629.046 vs. 388*
- .71            Economic aspects of production  
                          Class economic aspects of routes in 387.72; class economic aspects of  
                          facilities in 387.73; class economic aspects of activities and services in  
                          387.74  
                          *See also 330 for other economic aspects, e.g., air transportation*  
                          *workers' unions 331.88113877*
- .712           Rates and fares
- .72            Routes  
                          Including helicopter routes to and from airports  
                          Class use of facilities on routes and kinds of routes in 387.73; class activities  
                          and services on routes in 387.74
- .73            Aircraft and facilities  
                          Standard subdivisions are added for aircraft and facilities together, for  
                          aircraft alone
- .732–.733    Specific types of aircraft  
                          Add to base number 387.73 the numbers following 629.133 in  
                          629.1332–629.1333, e.g., helicopters 387.73352  
                          Class use of aircraft in specific activities and services in 387.74
- .736           Airports  
                          Class here landing fields
- .736 2        Facilities  
                          Including hangars, runways, terminal buildings; access to airports  
                          Class use of facilities in specific activities and services in 387.7364

- .736 4           Activities and services  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Including booking, fueling, passenger services
- .74               Activities and services  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Class activities and services of airports and landing fields in 387.7364
- .740 4           Special topics of activities and services
- .740 42          Basic activities  
                   Including dispatching, routing, scheduling; airport noise and its  
                   alleviation  
                   *For operation of aircraft, see 387.74044*
- .740 426        Air traffic control  
                   *See Manual at 629.1366 vs. 387.740426*
- .740 44         Operation of aircraft  
                   Class here operating personnel, flight crews  
                   Class maintenance and maintenance personnel in 387.73
- .742            \*Passenger services  
                   Including baggage, meal, sleeper services
- .742 2          \*Reservation systems
- .742 8          \*Charter services
- .744            \*Freight services  
                   Including all-cargo plane services  
                   *For air mail, see 383.144*
- .8            \*Space transportation**  
                   *See Manual at 629.046 vs. 388*

**388 \*Transportation**

Class here ground transportation, comprehensive works on communications and transportation, interdisciplinary works on transportation

Comprehensive works on the activities, services, and facilities of a system are classed in the number for the system, e.g., seaport activities, services, and facilities 387.1, not 387.15 nor 387.16

Class services designed to facilitate the use of transportation by people with disabilities in 362.40483; class services designed to facilitate the use of transportation by people in late adulthood in 362.63; class transportation of students in 371.872

*For transportation safety and safety measures, see 363.12; for transportation security, see 363.287; for postal transportation, see 383.14; for communications, see 384; for railroad transportation, see 385; for water, air, space transportation, see 387; for transportation technology, see 629.04*

*See also 385.7 for railroad combined with other transportation systems*

*See Manual at 629.046 vs. 388*

**SUMMARY****388.04 Special topics of transportation**

- .1 **Roads**
- .3 **Vehicular transportation**
- .4 **Local transportation**
- .5 **Pipeline transportation**
- .04 **Special topics of transportation**
  - Including facilities, vehicles
- .041 **Activities and services**
  - Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
  - Including routing, scheduling, dispatching, traffic control
  - Class specific kinds of services in 388.042–388.044
- .042 **\*Passenger services**
  - Including baggage, reservation, meal, sleeper services
  - Class here mass transportation
- .044 **\*Freight services**
  - Including handling, storage; comprehensive works on warehousing
  - Class unitized cargo services in 385.72
  - For commerce aspects of warehousing, see 381*
- .047 **Comparative studies of kinds of transportation**
  - Class a comparative study of a specific kind of transportation with the kind, e.g., comparative study of local transportation 388.4

\*Add as instructed under 380

- .049            Economic aspects of transportation
- Class economic aspects of activities and services in 388.041; class economic aspects of passenger services in 388.042; class economic aspects of freight services in 388.044
- See also 330 for other economic aspects, e.g., transportation workers' unions 331.8811388*
- .1              **\*Roads**
- Class here highways
- For highway services and use, see 388.31; for urban roads, see 388.411*
- [.102 23]        Maps, plans, diagrams
- Do not use; class in 912
- .11             Economic aspects of production
- Class economic aspects of kinds of roads in 388.12; class economic aspects of special road features in 388.13. Class economic effects of roads on a specific aspect of an economic activity with the activity, e.g., effect on business location 388.6042
- See also 330 for other economic aspects, e.g., road transportation workers' unions 331.88113881*
- .112            Costs
- .114            Finance
- Including user charges, tolls
- .12             Kinds of roads
- Including primary and secondary roads, bicycle paths, pedestrian paths
- Class special features of kinds of roads in 388.13
- For access roads, see 388.13*
- .122            Expressways
- Variant names: beltways, freeways, motorways, parkways, throughways, tollways, turnpikes
- .13             Special road features
- Including access roads, grade separations, intersections, interdisciplinary works on tunnels
- Class signs and signals for traffic control in 388.3122
- For railroad tunnels, see 385.312. For a specific aspect of tunnels, see the aspect, e.g., tunnel engineering 624.193*

- .132           Bridges
  - Class here interdisciplinary works on bridges
  - For railroad bridges, see 385.312. For a specific aspect of bridges, see the aspect, e.g., bridge engineering 624.2*
- .3       \*Vehicular transportation**
  - Class urban vehicular transportation in 388.41
  - .31       Traffic flow and maintenance
  - .312       Highway services
    - Including lighting, roadside park facilities, snow removal
    - For traffic control by police, see 363.2332; for speed limits, see 388.3144*
  - .312 2     Traffic control through signs and signals
    - Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
  - .312 4     Driver information
    - Information supplied en route
    - Including information on traffic patterns via commercial radio
  - .314       Highway use
    - .314 2     Traffic volume
      - Class peak hours in 388.3143
    - .314 3     Traffic patterns
      - Including patterns by origin, by destination; peak hours; use by specific kinds of vehicles
    - .314 4     Speed limits
  - .32       \*Vehicular activities and services
    - Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
    - See also 388.34 for vehicles*
    - See Manual at 629.046 vs. 388*
  - .321       \*Services of private passenger automobiles
    - Including limousine services
  - .322       \*Bus services
    - Class here passenger services
    - Class services of terminals, stations, stops in 388.33
  - .322 04    Special topics of bus services

\*Add as instructed under 380

- .322 042                    Basic activities  
                                  Including dispatching, routing, scheduling, traffic control  
                                  *For operation of vehicles, see 388.322044*
- .322 044                    Operation of vehicles
- .322 1                      Routes  
                                  Intercity and trunk  
                                  Class services offered on specific routes and kinds of routes in  
                                  388.3222
- .322 2                      Types of services  
                                  Including charter, baggage, meal, small package and express services;  
                                  tourism
- .322 8                      \*Stagecoach services  
                                  Class stagecoach routes in 388.3221  
                                  *For types of stagecoach services, see 388.3222*
- .324                        \*Trucking services  
                                  Class services of terminals in 388.33
- .324 04                      Special topics of trucking services
- .324 042                      Basic activities  
                                  Including dispatching, routing, scheduling, traffic control  
                                  *For operation of vehicles, see 388.324044*
- .324 044                      Operation of vehicles
- .324 2                      Routes  
                                  Including long-haul, line-haul, intercity routes
- .324 3                      Kinds of carriers  
                                  Including common (for-hire), contract, private carriers
- .33                         Terminals, stations, stops  
                                  Including activities, services, facilities (e.g., vehicle sheds, docks, booking  
                                  facilities)

- .34           Vehicles
- Including electric-powered vehicles, natural gas vehicles, snowmobiles, trolleybuses
- Class here interdisciplinary works on land vehicles
- Class use of vehicles in specific services, vehicle operation in 388.32
- For railroad rolling stock, see 385.37; for air-cushion vehicles, see 388.35; for rolling stock of local rail transit systems, see 388.42. For a specific aspect of vehicles, see the aspect, e.g., engineering of motor land vehicles 629.2*
- See Manual at 629.046 vs. 388*
- .341           Carts, wagons, carriages, stagecoaches
- Including rickshaws, animal-drawn omnibuses
- Class here nonmotor land vehicles
- Class cycles in 388.347
- .342–.348       Gasoline-powered, oil-powered, human-powered vehicles
- Add to base number 388.34 the numbers following 629.22 in 629.222–629.228, e.g., buses 388.34233, bicycles 388.3472
- For rickshaws, see 388.341*
- .35           Air-cushion vehicles
- Class here comprehensive works on air-cushion vehicles
- For air-cushion ships for inland waterways, see 386.22; for air-cushion ships for ocean transportation, see 387.2*
- .4            **\*Local transportation**
- Class here urban and suburban transportation, rapid transit, mass transit, commuter services
- .404           Special topics of local transportation
- .404 2         Economic aspects of production
- See also 330 for other economic aspects, e.g., local transportation workers' unions 331.88113884*
- 
- >            388.41–388.46 Specific kinds of local transportation
- Class terminals and parking facilities for specific kinds of transportation in 388.47; class comprehensive works in 388.4
- See Manual at 629.046 vs. 388*

- .41            Vehicular and pedestrian traffic  
                  Including moving sidewalks  
                  Class vehicles in 388.34–388.35
- .411           Urban roads  
                  Including parkways, expressways, arterial and side streets, sidewalks,  
                  bicycle paths (bikeways); intersections, traffic circles (roundabouts)  
                  Class here streets  
                  Class operation, services, use of urban roads in 388.4131
- .413           Activities and services  
                  Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .413 1          Traffic flow and maintenance  
                  Add to base number 388.4131 the numbers following 388.31 in  
                  388.312–388.314, e.g., peak hours 388.413143
- .413 2          Vehicular services
- .413 21        \*Services by private passenger automobiles
- .413 212       \*Car and van pools  
                  Class here ridesharing  
                  Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .413 214       \*Taxicabs and limousines
- .413 22        \*Bus services  
                  Including animal-drawn omnibuses  
                  *For guided-way systems, see 388.42*
- .413 223       \*Trolleybus services
- .413 24        \*Trucking services
- .42            \*Local rail transit systems  
                  Including monorail systems [*formerly* 385.5], guided-way systems  
                  Class here elevated rail transit systems [*formerly* 388.44], local surface  
                  rail systems using conventional (heavy) rail technology [*formerly* 388.46];  
                  rolling stock; underground systems; comprehensive works on local rail  
                  transit systems with multiple transit modes  
                  Class rail terminals and stations in 388.472  
                  *For light rail transit systems, see 388.46*  
                  *See also 388.34 for trolleybuses; also 388.413223 for trolleybus services*

- [.428]            Underground systems (Subway systems)  
                     Number discontinued; class in 388.42
- .44            \*Elevated rail transit systems  
                     Relocated to 388.42
- .46            \*Light rail transit systems  
                     Class here interurban railroads (streetcar lines running between urban areas  
                     or from urban to rural areas) [*formerly* 385.5]; streetcar systems, tramways,  
                     trolley-car systems  
                     Local surface rail systems using conventional (heavy) rail technology  
                     relocated to 388.42
- .47            Terminals, stations, parking facilities
- .472            Rail terminals and stations
- .473            Truck and bus stations and terminals  
                     Including bus stops
- .474            Parking facilities  
                     Including on-street and off-street parking facilities, facilities located  
                     above and below street level  
                     Class here interdisciplinary works on parking  
                     *For a specific aspect of parking, see the aspect, e.g., city planning*  
                     *711.73*
- .5            \*Pipeline transportation
- .55            \*Oil (Petroleum)
- .56            \*Natural gas
- .57            \*Coal  
                     Class here coal slurry

## 389 Metrology and standardization

- .1            Metrology  
                     Class interdisciplinary works on measurement in 530.8
- .15            Systems of measurement  
                     Including metric system (système international, SI), imperial (British)  
                     system  
                     Class adoption of metric system in 389.16; class mathematical tables of  
                     conversion from one system to another in 530.81

- .16 Adoption of metric system (système international, SI)  
*See also 658.4062 for management measures for coping with conversion to metric system*
- .17 Time systems and standards  
 Including conversion tables; daylight saving, standard, universal time; time zones  
 Class interdisciplinary works on chronology in 529
- .6 Standardization**  
 Class here interdisciplinary collections of standards [*formerly* 602.18], interdisciplinary works on standards  
*For law of standardization and standards, see 343.076; for public administration aspects of standardization and standards, see 352.83; for production management aspects of standardization and standards, see 658.562. For standardization and standards of a specific topic, see the topic, plus notation 0218 from Table 1, e.g., technical standards 602.18*
- .62 Standardization of quantity and size  
 Class here standardization for interchangeability
- .63 Standardization of quality  
 Class here performance standards

## 390 Customs, etiquette, folklore

Standard subdivisions are added for customs, etiquette, folklore together; for customs alone

Class here folkways; interdisciplinary works on ceremonies, on rites

*For customs of military life, see 355.1. For a type of ceremony or rite not provided for here, see the type, e.g., religious rites 203.8, military ceremonies 355.17*

### SUMMARY

- 390.01–.09 Standard subdivisions of customs, etiquette, folklore together;  
 standard subdivisions of customs
- .1–.4 Customs of specific economic, social, occupational classes
- 391 Costume and personal appearance
- 392 Customs of life cycle and domestic life
- 393 Death customs
- 394 General customs
- 395 Etiquette (Manners)
- 398 Folklore
- 399 Customs of war and diplomacy
- .01–.07 Standard subdivisions
- .08 Groups of people
- .086 People by miscellaneous social attributes

- [.086 2] People by social and economic levels  
Do not use for people by economic status; class in 390.1. Do not use for people by social class; class in 390.2
- .088 Religious groups  
Do not use for occupational groups; class in 390.4
- .09 History, geographic treatment, biography

> **390.1–390.4 Customs of specific economic, social, occupational classes**

Class comprehensive works in 390

**.1 Customs of people by economic status**

Class customs of slaves and serfs in 390.25

**.2 Customs of people by social class**

.22 Customs of royalty

.23 Customs of nobility

.24 Customs of common people

Class customs of common people of specific economic statuses in 390.1; class customs of specific occupations in 390.4

.25 Customs of slaves and serfs

**.4 Customs of people by occupation**

Add to base number 390.4 notation 001–999, e.g., customs of lawyers 390.434; however, for customs of military personnel, see 355.1; for customs of diplomats, see 399

> **391–394 Customs**

Class comprehensive works in 390

*For customs of specific economic, social, occupational classes, see 390.1–390.4; for customs of war and diplomacy, see 399*

**391 Costume and personal appearance**

Standard subdivisions are added for costume and personal appearance together, for costume alone

Class here interdisciplinary works on costume, clothing (apparel, garments), fashion; casual wear (sportswear)

Class costume and clothing associated with a specific occasion with the occasion in 392–394, e.g., wedding clothes 392.54

*For fashion design, see 746.92. For a specific aspect of costume and clothing, see the aspect, e.g., stage costuming 792.026, clothing construction 646.4*

*See Manual at 391 vs. 646.3, 746.92*

- .001–.007      Standard subdivisions
- .008            Groups of people
- .008 1           People by gender or sex
- [.008 11]           Men  
                     Do not use; class in 391.1
- [.008 2]           Women  
                     Do not use; class in 391.2
- .008 3           Young people  
                     Do not use for children under twelve; class in 391.3
- .008 4           People in specific stages of adulthood  
                     Do not use for clothing for men in specific stages of adulthood; class in 391.1. Do not use for clothing for women in specific stages of adulthood; class in 391.2
- .008 6           People by miscellaneous social attributes
- [.008 62]           People by social and economic levels  
                     Do not use for people by economic status; class in 391.01. Do not use for people by social class; class in 391.02
- .008 8           Religious groups  
                     Do not use for occupational groups; class in 391.04
- .009            History, geographic treatment, biography
- .01–.04        Costume of economic, social, occupational groups  
                     Add to base number 391.0 the numbers following 390 in 390.1–390.4, e.g., costume of royalty 391.022; however, for military costume, see 355.14; for costume of diplomats, see 399

&gt;

### **391.1–391.3 Costume of men, women, children**

Class costume for men, women, children by specific economic, social, occupational groups in 391.01–391.04; class kinds of garments for men, women, children in 391.4; class accessories for men, women, children in 391.44; class comprehensive works in 391

Outerwear for men, women, children relocated to 391.46; specific kinds of garments for men, women, children relocated to 391.47; garments for special purposes for men, women, children relocated to 391.48

- .1 Costume of men**
- .2 Costume of women**
- .3 Costume of children**
- .4 Kinds of garments; accessories; buttons**

Class comprehensive works on garments in 391

- [.401–.409] Standard subdivisions  
Do not use; class in 391.001–391.009
- .41 Gloves, mittens, footwear, neckwear  
Including scarves, ties  
Muffs relocated to 391.44
- .412 Gloves and mittens  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .413 Footwear  
Class here shoes and boots  
Hosiery relocated to 391.423
- .42 Undergarments, hosiery, sleepwear, loungewear
- .423 Hosiery [*formerly* 391.413] and undergarments  
Standard subdivisions are added for undergarments and hosiery together,  
for undergarments alone  
*See also 391.473 for vests (waistcoats); also 391.476 for pants (trousers)*
- .426 Sleepwear and loungewear  
Variant name for sleepwear: nightclothes  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .43 Headwear  
Including headscarves, helmets, protective headwear  
Class here bonnets, caps, hats
- .434 Masks
- .44 Accessories  
Including muffs [*formerly* 391.41], canes, combs, eyeglasses, fans, flowers,  
handbags, parasols  
*For gloves, mittens, footwear, neckwear, see 391.41; for headwear, see 391.43; for jewelry, see 391.7*
- .45 Buttons
- .46 Outerwear  
Including capes, cloaks, stoles, sweaters  
Class here outerwear for men, women, children [*all formerly* 391.1–391.3];  
overcoats, topcoats, raincoats; comprehensive works on coats and jackets  
Class garments for specific purposes in 391.48  
*For suit jackets, sport coats, see 391.473*

- .47      **Specific kinds of garments**  
           Not provided for elsewhere  
           Class here specific kinds of garments for men, women, children [*all formerly*  
           391.1–391.3]  
           Class garments for specific purposes in 391.48
- .472     **Dresses**
- .473     **Suits**  
           Class here jackets, sport coats, vests (waistcoats)  
           Class skirts in 391.477; class outerwear, comprehensive works on coats  
           and jackets in 391.46  
           *For pants (trousers), see 391.476*  
           *See also 391.423 for vests (undergarments)*
- .475     **Shirts, blouses, tops**  
           Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- .476     **Pants (Trousers)**  
           *See also 391.423 for pants (undergarments)*
- .477     **Skirts**
- .48      **Garments for special purposes**  
           Including activewear (clothing for athletic and outdoor sports), costumes,  
           maternity garments  
           Class here garments for special purposes for men, women, children [*all*  
           *formerly 391.1–391.3*]  
           Class headwear for special purposes in 391.43; class accessories for special  
           purposes in 391.44  
           *For sleepwear and loungewear, see 391.426; for wedding clothes, see*  
           *392.54*  
           *See also 391 for casual wear (sportswear)*
- .486     **Evening and formal dress**  
           Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .5      **Hairstyles**  
           Including beards, wigs
- .6      **Personal appearance**  
           *For hairstyles, see 391.5*
- .62     **Body contours**
- .63     **Use of cosmetics and perfume**

- .64 Personal cleanliness and hygiene  
Including bathing
- .65 Tattooing and scarification  
Standard subdivisions are added for tattooing and scarification together, for tattooing alone  
*See also 391.7 for body piercing*

**.7 Jewelry**

- Including body piercing  
Class here interdisciplinary works on jewelry  
*For jewelry making, see 739.27*

- .72 Finger rings

**392 Customs of life cycle and domestic life**

*For death customs, see 393*

**.1 Customs of birth, puberty, majority**

- .12 Birth customs  
Including baptism, couvade, infanticide, name giving
- .13 Child-rearing customs
- .14 Customs relating to attainment of puberty  
Including initiation rites
- .15 Customs relating to attainment of majority  
Including debuts

**.3 Customs relating to dwelling places and domestic arts**

- .36 Dwelling places  
Class here furnishings, heating, lighting, sanitation
- .37 Cooking  
Class comprehensive works on food and meals in 394.12

**.4 Courtship and engagement customs**

Standard subdivisions are added for courtship and engagement customs together, for courtship customs alone  
Including bride purchase, bundling, infant betrothal, matchmaking

**.5 Wedding and marriage customs**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
*See also 395.22 for etiquette of weddings*

- .54 Wedding clothes

**.6 Customs of sexual relations**

Including chaperonage

*For courtship and engagement customs, see 392.4; for wedding and marriage customs, see 392.5***393 Death customs**

Customs relating to disposal of the dead and to mourning

**.1 Burial**

Including entombment

**.2 Cremation****.3 Embalming****.4 Exposure****.9 Mourning**

Including wakes

**.93 Funerals****.930 954** India and neighboring south Asian countries

Including sati

**394 General customs**

Including kissing, swearing

Class etiquette in 395

**SUMMARY**

- 394.1 Eating, drinking; using drugs**
- .2 Special occasions**
- .3 Recreational customs**
- .4 Official ceremonies and observances**
- .5 Pageants, processions, parades**
- .6 Fairs**
- .7 Customs of chivalry**
- .8 Dueling and suicide**
- .9 Cannibalism**

**.1 Eating, drinking; using drugs**

Situations and methods of use, prohibited uses

**.12 Eating and drinking**

Class here food

Class table manners in 395.54

*For cooking, see 392.37; for drinking of alcoholic beverages, see 394.13; for customs of tea, see 394.15; for food taboos, see 394.16***.125 Meals**

- .125 2 First meal of the day [*formerly* 394.15]  
 Class here breakfasts, brunches
- .125 3 Light meals [*formerly* 394.15]  
 Class here snacks; dinners, lunches, suppers, teas as light meals  
 Class breakfasts, brunches in 394.1252; class dinners, lunches, suppers, teas as main meals in 394.1254  
*See also* 394.15 for *Japanese tea ceremony*
- .125 4 Main meal of the day [*formerly* 394.15]  
 Class here dinners; lunches, suppers, teas as main meals  
 Class breakfasts, brunches in 394.1252; class dinners, lunches, suppers, teas as light meals in 394.1253
- .13 Drinking of alcoholic beverages
- .14 Use of drugs  
 Including marijuana, narcotics, tobacco  
*For alcoholic beverages, see* 394.13
- .15 Customs of tea  
 Class here tea ceremonies  
*See also* 394.1253 for *teas as a light meal*  
 First meal of the day relocated to 394.1252; light meals relocated to 394.1253; main meal of the day relocated to 394.1254
- .16 Food taboos
- .2 **Special occasions**  
 Including anniversaries, birthdays, celebrations, fast days  
 Class official ceremonies in 394.4; class pageants, processions, parades in 394.5
- .25 Carnival  
 Pre-Lenten festival  
 Class here Mardi Gras; festivals of pre-Lenten origin  
*See also* 394.26 for *carnivals other than pre-Lenten festivals*
- .26 Holidays  
 Class here carnivals other than pre-Lenten festivals, festivals; independence days; patriotic, seasonal, secular holidays  
 Class a season associated with a holiday with the holiday, e.g., the Christmas season 394.2663; class a technology or craft associated with holidays with the technology or craft, e.g., making fireworks 662.1, decorating Easter eggs 745.5944  
*For Carnival, Mardi Gras, see* 394.25

[.260 9] History, geographic treatment, biography

Do not use; class in 394.269

> 394.261–394.264 Secular holidays

Class here patriotic holidays, seasonal holidays

Class religious holidays of a specific season in 394.265; class comprehensive works in 394.26

.261 Holidays of December, January, February

Class here wintertime holidays of the northern hemisphere, summertime holidays of the southern hemisphere

.261 2 Kwanzaa

.261 4 New Year

.261 8 Valentine's Day

.262 Holidays of March, April, May

Class here springtime holidays of the northern hemisphere, autumn holidays of the southern hemisphere

.262 7 May Day

Class here May Day as a springtime festival, as a labor holiday

.262 8 Mother's Day

Class here Mothering Sunday

.263 Holidays of June, July, August

Class here summertime holidays of the northern hemisphere, wintertime holidays of the southern hemisphere

.263 4 Fourth of July

.263 5 Bastille Day

.264 Holidays of September, October, November

Class here autumn holidays of the northern hemisphere, springtime holidays of the southern hemisphere

.264 4 Oktoberfest

.264 6 Halloween

.264 9 Thanksgiving

- .265      Religious holidays
- Add to base number 394.265 the numbers following 29 in 292–299 for the religion only, e.g., Hindu holidays 394.26545; however, for Jewish holidays, see 394.267
- Class secular holidays with a religious or quasi-religious origin in 394.261–394.264
- For Christian holidays, see 394.266*
- See Manual at 203.6, 263.9, 292–299 vs. 394.265–394.267*
- .266      Christian holidays
- Holidays of the church year
- For pre-Lenten festivals, see 394.25*
- .266 3      Christmas
- .266 7      Easter
- .267      Jewish holidays
- .269      History, geographic treatment, biography
- Class history, geographic treatment, biography of specific holidays and of specific kinds of holidays in 394.261–394.267
- .269 01–.269 05      Historical periods
- Add to base number 394.2690 the numbers following—090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., holidays in 20th century 394.26904
- .269 1–.269 9      Geographical treatment, biography
- Add to base number 394.269 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., holidays of Mexico 394.26972
- .3      Recreational customs**
- Including dances, gambling, games, toys
- .4      Official ceremonies and observances**
- Including coronations, inaugurations, jubilees, state visits, triumphs
- For military ceremonies, see 355.17*
- .5      Pageants, processions, parades**
- Class planning, promoting, staging of pageants, processions, parades in 791.6.
- Class pageants, processions, parades associated with a specific activity with the activity, e.g., Thanksgiving Day parades 394.2649
- .6      Fairs**
- .7      Customs of chivalry**

**.8      Dueling and suicide**

Standard subdivisions are added for dueling and suicide together, for dueling alone

.88      Suicide

**.9      Cannibalism****395      Etiquette (Manners)**

Prescriptive and practical works on social behavior

Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 395 in the number coming last, e.g., table manners for children 395.54 (*not* 395.122)

Class customs in 391–394

*For protocol of diplomacy, see 327.2*

[.081–.084]      People by gender or sex; age groups

Do not use; class in 395.1

**.1      Etiquette for people by gender or sex; for age groups**

.12      Etiquette for age groups

.122      Children

From birth through age eleven

.123      Young people twelve to twenty

Variant names: adolescents, teenagers, young adults, youth

People in early adulthood, comprehensive works on young adults relocated to 395.124

.123 2      Males twelve to twenty

.123 3      Females twelve to twenty

.124      People in early adulthood [*formerly* 395.123]

Class here comprehensive works on young adults [*formerly* 395.123]

*For young adults under twenty-one, see 395.123*

.124 1      Young men

.124 2      Young women

.126      Adults aged sixty-five and over

.14      Etiquette for people by gender or sex

Class etiquette for age groups regardless of gender or sex in 395.12

.142      Male

.144      Female

**.2      Etiquette for stages in life cycle**

- .22 Engagements and weddings
- .23 Funerals
- .24 Occasions associated with birth, puberty, majority
  - Including christening, confirmation, bar mitzvah, debut
- .3 **Etiquette for social occasions**
  - Including dances
  - Class here hospitality and entertainment
  - Class etiquette for stages in life cycle in 395.2; class invitations in 395.4
- .4 **Social correspondence**
  - Including invitations and announcements
  - Class here written and spoken styles and forms of address and greeting
- .5 **Etiquette by situations**
  - Including online, school, sports etiquette
- .52 Business and office etiquette
- .53 Public behavior
  - Including etiquette in church, at theater, in stores and shops
- .54 Table manners
- .59 Conversation
  - Class here telephone etiquette

**[396] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 16

**[397] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 16

**398 Folklore**

*See also 201.3 for religious mythology; also 800 for belles-lettres by identifiable authors, anonymous literary classics*

**SUMMARY**

- 398.09 **History, geographic treatment, biography of folklore**
  - .2 Folk literature
  - .3 Real phenomena as subjects of folklore
  - .4 Paranatural and legendary phenomena as subjects of folklore
  - .6 Riddles
  - .7 Jokes and jests
  - .8 Rhymes and rhyming games
  - .9 Proverbs

- .09 History, geographic treatment, biography of folklore  
*For history, geographic treatment, biography of folk literature, see 398.209*
- .2 Folk literature**
- Folklore as literature
- Standard subdivisions may be added to subdivisions of this number for any topic even if the subject of the work does not approximate the whole, e.g., 18th century folktales about elves 398.2109033
- Class here fairy tales, literary appraisal and criticism of folk literature; interdisciplinary works on mythology
- Class an anonymous classic or a work by a known author with the classic or work in 800, e.g., Icelandic sagas 839.63, fairy tales by Hans Christian Andersen 839.8136
- For religious mythology, see 201.3; for riddles, see 398.6; for rhymes and rhyming games, see 398.8; for proverbs, see 398.9; for folk poetry other than rhymes and rhyming games, see 808.81; for folk drama, see 808.82*
- See Manual at 398.2; also at 398.2 vs. 201.3, 230, 270, 292–299; also at 398.2 vs. 398.3–398.4; also at 800 vs. 398.2*
- Jokes and jests relocated to 398.7
- .204 Folk literature by language
- Add to base number 398.204 notation 1–9 from Table 6, e.g., folk tales from French-speaking areas of the world 398.20441; however, for tales of a specific language from an area where that language predominates, see the area in 398.209, e.g., French folk tales from France 398.20944, from Quebec 398.209714
- .208 Groups of people
- .208 9 Ethnic and national groups
- Class here individual tales, collections of tales, lore on a specific topic
- Class collections of tales or lore by ethnic and national groups from a specific continent, country, locality where they predominate with the continent, country, locality in 398.2093–398.2099, e.g., French tales and lore from France 398.20944, from Quebec 398.209714; class individual tales, collections of tales, lore on a specific topic by ethnic and national groups from a specific continent, country, locality where they predominate with the continent, country, locality in 398.2093–398.2099, plus the notation for the topic from table under 398.2093–398.2099, e.g., French tales and lore from France about witches 398.2094401, from Quebec about witches 398.20971401
- .209 History, geographic treatment, biography

.209 3--209 9

## Specific continents, countries, localities

Class here individual tales, collections of tales, lore on a specific topic from a specific continent, country, locality; collections of tales and lore from a specific continent, country, locality; works consisting equally of the tales and lore and criticism of them

Unless other instructions are given in the add table below, observe the following table of preference, e.g., periodicals of statistics 0021 (*not* 005):

Tales and lore on a specific topic	01-08
Forecasting and forecasts	001
Museums, collections, exhibits	0074
Collecting folk literature	0075
Illustrations	0022
Statistics	0021
Serial publications	005

Add to base number 398.209 notation 3-9 from Table 2, e.g., folk literature of France 398.20944; then add further as follows (*not* as instructed under notation 093-099 from Table 1):

001	Forecasting and forecasts
002	Statistics and illustrations
0021	Statistics
0022	Illustrations Including cartoons, drawings, pictures, pictorial charts and designs, sketches; graphs; maps, plans, diagrams Class statistical drafts in 0021; class humorous cartoons in 398.2093-398.2099 without adding from this table
005	Serial publications Regardless of form (print or electronic) or frequency Class here house organs, magazines, newspapers, yearbooks
007	Museums, collections, exhibits; collecting objects
0074	Museums, collections, exhibits Class here exhibitions, fairs, festivals; catalogs, lists regardless of whether or not articles are offered for sale; guidebooks, history and description Add to base number 0074 notation 4-9 from Table 2, e.g., museums in Germany 007443
0075	Collecting folk literature Class here collectibles, memorabilia, price trends for collectors

(continued)

.209 3–.209 9

Specific continents, countries, localities (continued)

- 01–08 Tales and lore on a specific topic  
 Class here literary criticism  
 Add to base number the numbers following 398.2 in 398.21–398.28, e.g., animal tales 045  
 Class comprehensive works in the base number for the specific continent, country, locality in 398.2093–398.2099. Class comprehensive works on history and criticism of a specific topic with the topic in 398.3–398.4, e.g., history and criticism of tales and lore about witches 398.45  
*See Manual at 398.2 vs. 398.3–398.4*
- 09 History and geographic treatment  
 Class here literary criticism
- 09005 Serial publications
- 0901–0905 Historical periods  
 Class here literary criticism  
 Add to base number 090 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., folk literature of Middle Ages 0902
- 091 Areas, regions, places in general  
 Add to base number 091 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., folk literature of urban regions 091732
- 093–099 Specific continents, countries, localities  
 Add to base number 09 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., folk literature of United States 0973  
 Use to add notation for a specific continent, country, locality when first area notation is used to specify area of origin of the tales and lore, while second one identifies area in which the tales and lore are discussed or modified, e.g., French tales 398.20944, Haitian version of French tales 398.20944097294

(Option: Class individual tales, collections of tales, lore on a specific topic from a specific continent, country, locality in 398.21–398.28)

- > 398.21–398.28 Tales and lore on a specific topic
- Add to each subdivision identified by \* as follows:
- 01–07 Standard subdivisions
  - 08 Groups of people
  - [089] Individual tales, collections of tales, lore on a specific topic by ethnic and national groups
    - Do not use; class in 398.2089
    - (Option: Continue to use 089; prefer 398.2089)
  - 09 History, geographic treatment, biography
    - Class here literary criticism
    - Class comprehensive works on history and criticism of a specific topic with the topic in 398.3–398.4, e.g., history and criticism of tales and lore about witches 398.45
    - See Manual at 398.2 vs. 398.3–398.4*
  - [093–099] Individual tales, collections of tales, lore on a specific topic from a specific continent, country, locality
    - Do not use; class in 398.2093–398.2099
    - (Option: Continue to use 093–099; prefer 398.2093–398.2099)
- Class comprehensive works in 398.2
- .21 \*Tales and lore of paranatural beings of human and semihuman form
    - For werewolves, see 398.2454; for ghosts, see 398.25*
    - See also 398.2 for comprehensive works on fairy tales (tales of paranatural beings)*
  - .22 \*Tales and lore of persons without paranormal powers
    - Class here legendary or mythological persons
  - .23 \*Tales and lore of places and times
    - Class historical and quasi-historical events in 398.27
  - .232 \*Real places
    - Class tales of real places at special times in 398.236
    - See also 398.209 for tales originating in specific places*
  - .232 1–.232 9 Specific places
    - Add to base number 398.232 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., tales about India 398.23254; then add further as instructed under 398.21–398.28, e.g., 18th century tales about India 398.2325409033
  - .234 \*Legendary places
  - .236 \*Times
    - Class here holidays, seasons

\*Add as instructed under 398.21–398.28

- .24            \*Tales and lore of plants and animals  
                   Class here agriculture  
                   Class comprehensive works on tales and lore involving science in 398.26
- .242           \*Plants  
                   Real and legendary
- .245           \*Animals  
                   *See Manual at 800, T3C---362 vs. 398.245, 590, 636*
- .245 2           \*Real animals
- .245 22--.245 29      Specific animals  
                   Add to base number 398.2452 the numbers following 59 in 592-599, e.g., cats 398.24529752; then add further as instructed under 398.21-398.28, e.g., 18th century tales about cats 398.2452975209033
- .245 4           \*Legendary animals
- .25            \*Ghost stories
- .26            \*Tales and lore involving physical and natural phenomena  
                   Real and legendary  
                   Class here comprehensive works on tales and lore involving scientific and technical themes  
                   *For tales and lore of plants and animals, see 398.24; for tales and lore involving technical themes, see 398.27*
- .27            \*Tales and lore of humanity and human existence  
                   *For tales and lore of persons without paranormal powers, see 398.22; for tales and lore of agriculture, see 398.24*  
                   Tales and lore of other topics relocated to 398.28
- .273--.278      Specific human, social, technical, artistic, recreational, literary, historical, political, military themes  
                   Add to base number 398.27 the numbers following —35 in notation 353-358 from Table 3C, e.g., tales of everyday life 398.275, of historical events 398.278; then add further as instructed under 398.21-398.28, e.g., 18th century tales about everyday life 398.27509033
- .28            \*Tales and lore of other topics [*formerly* 398.27]  
                   Tales and lore not provided for elsewhere

\*Add as instructed under 398.21-398.28

> **398.3–398.4 History and criticism of specific subjects of folklore**

Standard subdivisions may be added to subdivisions of 398.3–398.4 for any topic even if the subject of the work does not approximate the whole, e.g., history and criticism of folktales from France about elves 398.450944

Limited to works without extended text of folk tales

Class here origin, role, function of themes and subjects of folklore as cultural and social phenomena

Class comprehensive works in 398.09. Class literary criticism of individual tales, collections of tales, lore on a specific topic by a specific ethnic or national group with the group in 398.2089, e.g., literary criticism of Navajo tales and lore about witches 398.20899726; class literary criticism of individual tales, collections of tales, lore on a specific topic from a specific continent, country, locality with the continent, country, locality in 398.2093–398.2099, plus the notation for the topic from table under 398.2093–398.2099, plus notation 09 from table under 398.21–398.28, e.g., literary criticism of French tales and lore about witches 398.209440109; class comprehensive treatment of literary criticism of tales or lore on a specific topic with the topic in 398.2, plus notation 09 from table under 398.21–398.28, e.g., literary criticism of tales and lore about witches 398.2109

*See Manual at 398.2 vs. 398.3–398.4*

**.3 Real phenomena as subjects of folklore**

.32 Places

.322 Physiographic regions

.329 Specific places

Class historical and political themes, historical events in specific places in 398.358

[.329 01–.329 09] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 398.3201–398.3209

.329 3–.329 9 Specific continents, countries, localities

Add to base number 398.329 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., London as a subject for folklore 398.329421

.33 Times

Class here holidays, seasons

.35 Humanity and human existence

.352 Persons without paranormal powers

- .353–.358      **Specific human, social, technical, artistic, recreational, literary, historical, political, military themes**
- Add to base number 398.35 the numbers following —35 in notation 353–358 from Table 3C, e.g., tales of historical events 398.358; however, medical folklore relocated from 398.353 to 398.3561; food relocated from 398.355 to 398.3564; recreation relocated from 398.55 to 398.3579
- Class specific human, social, technical, artistic, recreational, literary, historical, political, military themes related to a specific kind of person without paranormal powers in 398.352; class specific human, social, technical, artistic, recreational, literary, historical, political, military themes related to paranormal beings of human and semihuman form in 398.45; class agriculture, comprehensive works on scientific and technical themes in 398.36
- .36              **Scientific themes**
- Class here agriculture, nature, physical phenomena, comprehensive works on scientific and technical themes
- For technical themes, see 398.356*
- .362             **Heavenly bodies**
- .363             **Weather**
- .364             **Fire and water**
- .365             **Minerals**
- .368             **Plants**
- Add to base number 398.368 the numbers following 58 in 582–588, e.g., flowers 398.368213
- .369             **Animals**
- Add to base number 398.369 the numbers following 59 in 592–599, e.g., rabbits 398.369932
- .4              Paranatural and legendary phenomena as subjects of folklore**
- Class here magic
- See also 133.43 for magic in occultism*
- .41              **Folk beliefs**
- Class here superstitions
- .42              **Legendary places**
- .45              **Paranormal beings of human and semihuman form**
- For ghosts, see 398.47*
- .46              **Legendary minerals, plants, animals**
- .465             **Minerals**
- Class here philosopher's stone
- .468             **Plants**

.469           Animals

.47            Ghosts

Class here haunted places

**[.5]       Chapbooks**

Interdisciplinary works on chapbooks relocated to 002; chapbooks with content limited to a specific subject relocated to the subject, e.g., murder 364.1523, 18th-century English fiction 823.5

**.6        Riddles**

Class riddles as a type of puzzle similar to logic puzzles in 793.735; class riddle as jokes by known authors in 808.882

*See Manual at T3A—8 + 02, T3B—802, T3B—8 + 02 vs. 398.6, 793.735*

Interdisciplinary works on riddles relocated to 808.882

**.7        Jokes and jests [both formerly 398.2]**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here jokebooks, jestbooks

Class jokes and jests by known authors, interdisciplinary works on jokes and jests in 808.882

*See Manual at 800 vs. 398.2*

**.8        Rhymes and rhyming games**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Including jump rope rhymes, lullabies, tongue twisters

Class here anonymous children's rhymes from the oral tradition, nursery rhymes

Class forms of folk poetry not provided for here with the form in 800, e.g., medieval metrical romances 808.8133

*See Manual at 800 vs. 398.2*

Interdisciplinary works on tongue twisters relocated to 808.882

[.808 3]       Young people

Do not use; class in 398.8

.84           Counting-out rhymes (Counting rhymes)

.87           Street cries and songs

**.9        Proverbs**

Class here folk aphorisms

Add to base number 398.9 notation 1–9 from Table 6, e.g., French proverbs 398.941

*See Manual at 800 vs. 398.2*

**399 Customs of war and diplomacy**

Including dances, peace pipe

Class protocol of diplomacy in 327.2; class customs of military life in 355.1; class cannibalism in 394.9

## 400 Language

Class here interdisciplinary works on language and literature

*For government policy on language, see 306.449; for literature, see 800; for rhetoric, see 808. For the language of a specific subject, see the subject, plus notation 014 from Table 1, e.g., language of science 501.4*

(Option A: To give local emphasis or a shorter number to a specific language, class in 410, where full instructions appear)

(Option B: To give local emphasis or a shorter number to a specific language, place before 420 through use of a letter or other symbol. Full instructions appear under 420–490)

### SUMMARY

401–409	Standard subdivisions, international languages, special topics of languages
410	Linguistics
420	English and Old English (Anglo-Saxon)
430	German and related languages
440	French and related Romance languages
450	Italian, Dalmatian, Romanian, Rhaetian, Sardinian, Corsican
460	Spanish, Portuguese, Galician
470	Latin and related Italic languages
480	Classical Greek and related Hellenic languages
490	Other languages

## 401 Philosophy and theory; international languages

Notation 01 from Table 1 as modified below

Class interdisciplinary works on philosophy of language in 121.68

### .3 International languages

Class here universal languages; general discussions of international languages, e.g., diplomatic languages, lingua francas

Class artificial languages in 499.99. Class a specific international sign language with the language in 419, e.g., American Sign Language as a universal language 419.7; class a other specific international languages with the language in 420–490, e.g., Latin as a diplomatic language 470, Swahili as a lingua franca 496.392

- .4      Communication; semantics, pragmatics, languages for special purposes**
- Notation 014 from Table 1 as modified below
- Class here lexicology, interdisciplinary works on terminology
- Class interdisciplinary works on communication, content analysis, semiotics in 302.2. Class the semiotics of a specific subject with the subject, plus notation 014 from Table 1, e.g., semiotics of biology 570.14
- For dictionaries of linguistics, see 410.3; for general polyglot dictionaries, see 413; for lexicography, see 413.028; for applied linguistics treatment of terminology, see 418. For terminology (including pronunciation and spelling) of a specific subject, see the subject, plus notation 014 from Table 1, e.g., terminology of linguistics 410.14, terminology of engineering 620.0014*
- See also 121.68 for semiotics as a topic in philosophy*
- .41      Discourse analysis**
- Including pragmatics in discourse analysis
- Class discourse analysis of languages for special purposes in 401.47; class interdisciplinary works on pragmatics in 401.45. Class discourse analysis of a specific subject with the subject, plus notation 014 from Table 1, e.g., discourse analysis of political science 320.014
- Use of this number for content analysis, semiotics discontinued; class in 401.4
- [.42]      Etymology**
- Do not use; class in 412
- .43      Semantics**
- For history of word meanings, see 412*
- See also 121.68 for semantics as a topic in philosophy; also 149.94 for general semantics as a philosophical school*
- See Manual at 401.43 vs. 306.44, 401.45, 401.9, 412, 415*
- .430 285      Computer applications**
- .430 285 635      Natural language processing**
- Class here word sense disambiguation
- .45      Pragmatics**
- Class here interdisciplinary works on pragmatics [*formerly 306.44*]
- For pragmatics in sociolinguistics, see 306.44; for pragmatics in discourse analysis, see 401.41; for pragmatics in psycholinguistics, see 401.9*
- .452      Speech acts**
- Class here illocutionary acts

- .454            Presupposition  
                   Class here implication, entailment  
                   Class presupposition, implication, entailment in 160
- .456            Reference  
                   Class here anaphora, deixis; comprehensive works on reference  
                   Class reference in philosophy of language in 121.68
- .47             Languages for special purposes  
                   Class here sublanguages, discourse analysis of languages for special purposes  
                   Class teaching of languages for special purposes as second languages in 418.0071; class translation of languages for special purposes in 418.03.  
                   Class dictionaries of languages for special purposes with the purpose, plus notation 03 from Table 1, e.g., medical dictionaries 610.3
- [.48]           Abbreviations, acronyms, symbols  
                   Do not use for abbreviations, acronyms, symbols as part of writing systems; class in 411. Do not use for dictionaries of abbreviations, acronyms, symbols; class in 413.15
- .5             Scientific principles**
- .51             Mathematical principles  
                   Class mathematical linguistics in 410.151
- .9             Psychological principles, language acquisition, speech perception**  
                   Notation 019 from Table 1 as modified below  
                   Including speech errors  
                   Class here psycholinguistics  
                   Class speech errors in language acquisition in 401.93; class psychology of bilingualism in 404.2019  
                   *See also 306.44 for sociolinguistics*  
                   *See Manual at 401.43 vs. 306.44, 401.45, 401.9, 412, 415*
- .93             Language acquisition  
                   *See also 418.0071 for study and teaching of language; also 418.4019 for psychology of reading*  
                   *See Manual at 407.1, T1—071 vs. 401.93, T4—019, 410.71, 418.0071, T4—80071*
- .95             Speech perception  
                   *See also 152.15 for auditory perception*

## 402            Miscellany

.85 Computer applications

Class computational linguistics in 006.35

## 403 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances

*For dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances of linguistics, see 410.3; for general polyglot dictionaries, see 413; for dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances of literature, see 803*

## 404 Special topics of language

### .2 Bilingualism

Class here multilingualism

Specific instances of bilingualism are classed with the language dominant in the country in which the linguistic interaction occurs, e.g., a discussion of Spanish-English bilingualism in Los Angeles 420.42610979494. If neither language is dominant, class with the one coming later in 420–490 (if both languages are sign languages, class with the one coming later in 419)

*See also 306.446 for sociology of bilingualism and multilingualism*

## 405 Serial publications

## 406 Organizations and management

## 407 Education, research, related topics

*See Manual at 407.1, T1—071 vs. 401.93, T4—019, 410.71, 418.0071, T4—80071*

### .2 Research

#### .21 Research methods

Class corpus-based research methods in 410.188

## 408 Groups of people

*See also 306.44 for sociology of language*

### .9 Treatment of language with respect to ethnic and national groups

Class ethnolinguistics in 306.44

## 409 Geographic treatment and biography

Do not use for language history not limited by area; class in 417.7

Class specific sign languages and groups of sign languages in 419; class other specific languages and groups of languages in 420–490

*See also 410.9 for geographic treatment and biography of linguistics*

## 410 Linguistics

Class here descriptive, synchronic linguistics; comprehensive works on Eurasianic languages, on Indo-European languages, on Indo-Germanic languages, on Indo-Hittite languages

Class linguistics of specific sign languages in 419; class linguistics of other specific languages in 420–490

*For sociolinguistics, see 306.44; for lexicology, semiotics, see 401.4; for semantics, see 401.43; for specific Indo-European languages other than east Indo-European languages and Celtic languages, see 420–480; for east Indo-European and Celtic languages, see 491*

*See Manual at 410*

(Option A: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to a specific language, e.g., Russian, class it here and add to base number 41 as instructed under 420–490; in that case class linguistics in 400, its subdivisions in 401–409, standard subdivisions of language and of linguistics in 400.1–400.9. Option B is described under 420–490)

### SUMMARY

410.1–9	Standard subdivisions
411	Writing systems of standard forms of languages
412	Etymology of standard forms of languages
413	Dictionaries of standard forms of languages
414	Phonology and phonetics of standard forms of languages
415	Grammar of standard forms of languages
417	Dialectology and historical linguistics
418	Standard usage (Prescriptive linguistics)
419	Sign languages

#### .1 Philosophy and theory

Notation 01 from Table 1 as modified below

Do not use for philosophy and theory of language and languages; class in 401.  
Do not use for schools and theories of linguistics; class in 410.18

#### .151 Mathematical principles

Class here mathematical linguistics

#### .18 Schools, theories, methodologies of linguistics

Including functionalism, structural linguistics

*For works on schools, theories, methodologies of linguistics that stress syntax, or syntax and phonology, see 415.018*

.188

**Corpus linguistics**

Including language data samples collected as corpora to support corpus-based analysis, corpus linguistics applied to texts in a specific subject

Class corpus linguistics applied to a specific topic in linguistics with the topic, e.g., corpus-based analysis of noun phrases 415.5; class corpus linguistics applied to a specific work or the works of a specific author with the work or author, e.g., versions of the Bible 220.4, Shakespeare's works 822.33

.19

**Psychological principles**

Class psycholinguistics in 401.9

.2

**Miscellany**

Do not use for miscellany of language and languages; class in 402

.285

**Computer applications**

Class computer applications in corpus linguistics in 410.188. Class a computational linguistics application of a linguistic process with the process, plus notation 0285635 from Table 1, e.g., part-of-speech tagging 415.0285635

*See Manual at 006.35 vs. 410.285*

Computational linguistics relocated to 006.35

.3–.9

**Standard subdivisions**

Do not use for standard subdivisions of language and languages; class in 403–409

*See Manual at 407.1, T1–071 vs. 401.93, T4–019, 410.71, 418.0071, T4–80071*

**411****Writing systems of standard forms of languages**

Including alphabets, ideographs, syllabaries; braille; abbreviations, acronyms, capitalization, punctuation, spelling, transliteration

Class dictionaries of abbreviations and acronyms in 413.15; class writing systems of geographic variations, of modern nongeographic variations of languages in 417.2; class manual alphabets, fingerspelling in 418

*See also 652 for practical works on how to write by hand or machine, e.g., penmanship 652.1*

.7

**Paleography and epigraphy**

Study of ancient and medieval handwriting and inscriptions

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

*See also 417.7 for paleography covering all aspects of early writings*

## 412 Etymology of standard forms of languages

Class etymology of geographic variations, of modern nongeographic variations of languages in 417.2; class comprehensive works on historical linguistics in 417.7; class interdisciplinary works on onomastics in 929.97. Class a specific aspect of etymology with the aspect, e.g., phonetic development of words 414

*See Manual at 401.43 vs. 306.44, 401.45, 401.9, 412, 415*

.03 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances

Including dictionaries of eponyms [*formerly* 413.1]

## 413 Dictionaries of standard forms of languages

Class here polyglot dictionaries

Class dictionaries of geographic variations, of modern nongeographic variations of languages in 417.2

*For bilingual dictionaries, see the language, plus notation 32–39 from Table 4, e.g., French-English dictionary 443.21*

.028 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Class here basic techniques and procedures; lexicography

### .1 Specialized dictionaries

Including synonym dictionaries

Class etymological dictionaries in 412.03. Class subject dictionaries with the subject, plus notation 03 from Table 1, e.g., dictionary of medicine 610.3

*For crossword-puzzle dictionaries, see 793.73203*

Dictionaries of eponyms relocated to 412.03

.15 Dictionaries of abbreviations, acronyms, symbols

Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

Class subject dictionaries of abbreviations, acronyms, symbols with the subject, plus notation 0148 from Table 1, e.g., dictionary of scientific abbreviations and acronyms 501.48

.17 Picture dictionaries

Limited to dictionaries with pictures of what words represent

*See also 419.03 for dictionaries with pictures of sign-language signs*

### .2–.9 Polyglot dictionaries with entry words or definitions in only one language

Add to base number 413 notation 2–9 from Table 6, e.g., a dictionary with terms in English, French, and German, but with definitions only in English 413.21

**414 Phonology and phonetics of standard forms of languages**

Standard subdivisions are added for phonology and phonetics together, for phonology alone

Class here consonants, vowels; morphophonology, morphophonemics, phonemics

Class phonology and phonetics of geographic variations, of modern nongeographic variations of languages in 417.2; class comprehensive works on phonology, morphology, syntax; on phonology and morphology; on phonology and syntax in 415

**.6 Suprasegmental features**

Phonology and phonetics of vocal effects extending over more than one sound element

Including juncture (pauses), pitch, stress

Class here intonation

**.8 Phonetics**

*For phonetic aspects of suprasegmental features, see 414.6*

**415 Grammar of standard forms of languages**

Class here grammatical categories, sentences, syntax, topic and comment; word order; comprehensive works on phonology, morphology, syntax; on phonology and morphology; on phonology and syntax

Class grammar of geographic variations, of modern nongeographic variations of languages in 417.2

Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 415 in the number coming last, e.g., number expressed by verbs 415.6 (*not* 415.5)

*For phonology, see 414; for prescriptive grammar, see 418*

*See Manual at 401.43 vs. 306.44, 401.45, 401.9, 412, 415*

**.01 Philosophy and theory**

Notation 01 from Table 1 as modified below

Do not use for schools and theories of grammar; class in 415.018

**.018 Schools, theories, methodologies**

Including case, categorial, relational grammar

**.018 2 Generative grammar****.018 4 Dependency grammar****.02 Miscellany****.028 5 Computer applications****.028 563 5 Natural language processing**

Class here part-of-speech tagging, parsing

- 
- >           **415.5–415.7 Word classes**  
               Class here parts of speech  
               Class comprehensive works in 415
- .5       Nouns, pronouns, adjectives, articles**  
               Including case, number, person  
               Class here noun phrases
- .54       Nouns
- .55       Pronouns
- .6       Verbs**  
               Including modality, mood, voice; comprehensive works on words derived from  
               verbs, on infinitives, on participles  
               Class here verb phrases  
               Class works that treat a specific function (other than the verb function) of words  
               derived from verbs with the function, e.g., gerunds as nouns 415.54
- .62       Tense
- .63       Aspect
- .7       Miscellaneous word classes**  
               Including conjunctions, interjections, particles, prepositions, prepositional  
               phrases  
               Class clitics in 415.92
- .76       Adverbs  
               Including adverbials
- .9       Morphology**  
               Class morphophonology, morphophonemics in 414  
               *For morphology of specific word classes, see 415.5–415.7*
- .92       Word formation  
               Including affixes (infixes, prefixes, suffixes), clitics; formation of compound  
               words  
               Class here derivational morphology  
               Class etymology in 412
- .95       Inflection  
               *For inflectional schemata designed for use as aids in learning a  
               language, see 418*

**[416] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 18

**417 Dialectology and historical linguistics****.2 Dialectology**

Including argot, cant, jargon, slang

Class here dialects, patois, provincialisms

Works on writing systems, etymology, dictionaries, phonology, phonetics, grammar, applied linguistics are classed here when applied to geographic variations, to modern nongeographic variations, e.g., morphology of geographic variations

**.22 Pidgins, creoles, mixed languages**

Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

*See Manual at T4—7*

**.7 Historical linguistics (Diachronic linguistics)**

Study of development of language over time

Class here language history not limited by area, language change, paleography covering all aspects of early writings

*For change in and history of a specific element of language, see the element, e.g., paleography limited to study of ancient and medieval handwriting 411.7, grammar 415*

*See also 409 for geographic treatment of language history; also 410.9 for history of linguistics*

*See Manual at 410*

**418 Standard usage (Prescriptive linguistics)**

General, formal, informal usage

Including comprehensive works on instruction in lipreading with respect to multiple languages, comprehensive works on use of signs and fingerspelling for manual coding of multiple standard spoken languages

Class here applied linguistics

Class purely descriptive linguistics in 411–415; class prescriptive and applied linguistics applied to geographic variations, to modern nongeographic variations of languages in 417.2; class dictionaries in 413; class lexicography in 413.028

*For rhetoric, see 808.04. For use of signs and fingerspelling for manual coding of a specific spoken language, see the language plus notation 891 from Table 4, e.g., use of signs and fingerspelling to represent standard English 428.91, use of British Sign Language signs to represent standard English 428.9141; for lipreading a specific language, see the language, plus notation 8954 from Table 4, e.g., lipreading English 428.954*

.001–.006 Standard subdivisions

.007 Education, research, related topics

- .007 1            Education  
                   Class here second language teaching  
                   *See Manual at 407.1, T1—071 vs. 401.93, T4—019, 410.71, 418.0071, T4—80071*
- .008–.009        Standard subdivisions
- .02            Translating  
                   Class here interpreting  
                   Translating materials on specific subjects relocated to 418.03; translating literature (*belles-lettres*) and rhetoric relocated to 418.04
- .020 285            Computer applications
- .020 285 635            Natural language processing  
                             Class here machine translation
- .03            Translating materials on specific subjects [*formerly* 418.02]  
                   Class here interpreting materials on specific subjects  
                   Add to base number 418.03 three-digit numbers 001–999 (but stop before any zero that follows a non-zero number), e.g., translating natural history materials 418.035 (*not* 418.03508), translating medical materials 418.0361  
                   Class translating a specific work or the works of a specific author with the work, translations of the work, or author, e.g., translating the Bible 220, translating the Bible into English 220.52, translating the works of Aristotle 185  
                   *For translating literature (belles-lettres) and rhetoric, see 418.04*
- .04            Translating literature (*belles-lettres*) and rhetoric [*formerly* 418.02]  
                   Class here interpreting literature and rhetoric, translating works about literature, rhetoric  
                   Class translating a specific work or works of a specific author with the work or author, e.g., translating the Aeneid 873.01, translating the works of Shakespeare 822.33
- .041–.048        Translating specific forms of literature  
                   Add to base number 418.04 one-digit notation 1–8 from Table 3B, e.g., translating poetry 418.041, translating tragedy 418.042 (*not* 418.0420512)
- .07            Multilingual phrase books
- .4            **Reading**

## 419 Sign languages

Class here comprehensive works on fingerspelling, use of fingerspelling as part of sign languages

Class nonlinguistic (nonstructured) communication (e.g., use of gestures) in 302.222

*For comprehensive works on use of signs and fingerspelling for manual coding of multiple standard spoken languages, see 418; for use of signs and fingerspelling for manual coding of specific standard spoken languages, see notation 891 from Table 4*

### .03 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances

Class a dictionary of a specific sign language with the language, e.g., dictionary of American Sign Language 419.703

### .09 History, geographic treatment, biography

### [.094–.099] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Do not use for sign languages used primarily for purposes other than communication among deaf people or between hearing and deaf people; class in 419.1. Do not use for sign languages used primarily for communication among deaf people or between hearing and deaf people; class in 419.4–419.9. Do not use for comprehensive works on all types of sign languages; class in 419

## .1 Sign languages used primarily for purposes other than communication of deaf people

Including monastic sign languages, sign languages used as lingua francas among hearing people

(Option: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to a specific sign language used primarily for purposes other than communication of deaf people, class it in 419.3. Prefer 419.1)

## (.3) Specific sign language

(Optional number; prefer 419.1 or 419.4–419.9)

#### **.4-.9 Sign languages used primarily for communication among deaf people or between hearing and deaf people**

Class here indigenous sign languages of deaf communities, comprehensive works on methods of communication of deaf-blind people

Add to base number 419 notation 4-9 from Table 2, e.g., British Sign Language 419.41, Spanish Sign Language 419.46, Catalanian Sign Language 419.467, American Sign Language 419.7; then for a specific sign language add 0 and to the result add further as instructed at beginning of Table 4, e.g., grammar of British Sign Language 419.4105, grammar of Spanish Sign Language 419.4605, grammar of Catalanian Sign Language 419.46705, grammar of American Sign Language 419.705

Class sign languages used primarily for purposes other than communication of deaf people in 419.1

*For braille, see 411*

(Option: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to a specific sign language used primarily for communication among deaf people or between hearing and deaf people, class it in 419.3. Prefer 419.4-419.9)

>

### **420-490 Specific languages**

Class here comprehensive works on specific languages and their literatures

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to base number for each language identified by \* as instructed at beginning of Table 4, e.g., grammar of Japanese 495.65. The base number is the number given for the language unless the schedule specifies a different number

(Option: For any group of languages, add notation 04 to the base number and then add as instructed at beginning of Table 4, e.g., grammar of Celtic languages 491.6045)

The numbers used in this schedule for individual languages do not necessarily correspond exactly with those in 810-890 or with notation in Table 6. Use notation from Table 6 only when so instructed, e.g., at 494

Class polyglot dictionaries in 413; class comprehensive works in 410

*For specific sign languages, see 419; for literatures of specific languages, see 810-890*

*See Manual at 420-490*

(Option B: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to a specific language, place it first by use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., Arabic language 4A0 [preceding 420], for which the base number is 4A. Option A is described under 410)

>

### **420-480 Specific Indo-European languages other than east Indo-European languages and Celtic languages**

Class comprehensive works on Indo-European languages in 410

## 420 English and Old English (Anglo-Saxon)

### .1-.9 Standard subdivisions of English

Notation from Table 1 as modified under —01-09 in Table 4, e.g., semantics of Italian 420.143

### 421-428 Subdivisions of English

Class here comprehensive works on English and Old English (Anglo-Saxon)

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to base number 42 notation 1-8 from Table 4, e.g., phonology of English 421.5

*For Old English (Anglo-Saxon), see 429*

### 421 Writing system, phonology, phonetics of standard English

Number built according to instructions under 421-428

#### .52 Spelling (Orthography) and pronunciation

Number built according to instructions under 421-428

Including standard Canadian spelling and pronunciation

*For standard American (U.S.) spelling and pronunciation, see 421.54;  
for standard British spelling and pronunciation, see 421.55*

#### .54 Standard American (U.S.) spelling and pronunciation

#### .55 Standard British spelling and pronunciation

### 422 Etymology of standard English

Number built according to instructions under 421-428

### 423 Dictionaries of standard English

Number built according to instructions under 421-428

### [424] [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 16

### 425 Grammar of standard English

Number built according to instructions under 421-428

### [426] [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 18

### 427 Historical and geographic variations, modern nongeographic variations of English

Number built according to instructions under 421-428

*For Old English (Anglo-Saxon), see 429*

#### .001-.008 Standard subdivisions

#### .009 History, geographic treatment, biography

[.009 02] 6th–15th centuries, 500–1499

Do not use for Middle English; class in 427.02

[.009 4–.009 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Do not use; class in 427.9

.02 Middle English, 1100–1500

*See also 429 for Old English (Anglo-Saxon)*

[.09] Modern nongeographic variations

Number discontinued; class in 427

### [.1–.8] **Geographic variations in parts of England**

Relocated to 427.9421–427.9428

### **.9 Geographic variations**

[.901–.909] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 427.001–427.009

.91 Geographic variations in areas, regions, places in general

Add to base number 427.91 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., dialects of the British empire 427.9171241

.94–.99 Geographic variations in specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Add to base number 427.9 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., geographic variations in parts of England 427.9421–427.9428 [*formerly* 427.1–427.8], slang of British Isles 427.941, geographic variations in England 427.942, dialects of Canada 427.971, Tok Pisin 427.9953

*For geographic variations of Middle English, see 427.02094–427.02099*

## **428 Standard English usage (Prescriptive linguistics)**

Number built according to instructions under 421–428

Class here Basic English

## **429 \*Old English (Anglo-Saxon)**

*See also 427.02 for Middle English*

## **430 German and related languages**

Class here Germanic languages

*For English and Old English (Anglo-Saxon), see 420*

.01–.03 Standard subdivisions of Germanic languages

Notation from Table 1 as modified under —01–03 in Table 4, e.g., semantics of Germanic languages 430.0143

\*Add to base number as instructed under 420–490

- .04      **Special topics of Germanic languages**  
           Add to base number 430.04 notation 1–8 from Table 4, e.g., grammar of  
           Germanic languages 430.045
- .05–.09      **Standard subdivisions of Germanic languages**
- .1–.9      Standard subdivisions of German**  
           Notation from Table 1 as modified under —01–09 in Table 4, e.g., semantics of  
           German 430.143

### **431–438 Subdivisions of German**

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to base number 43  
 notation 1–8 from Table 4, e.g., phonology of German 431.5

- 431      Writing systems, phonology, phonetics of standard German**  
           Number built according to instructions under 431–438
- 432      Etymology of standard German**  
           Number built according to instructions under 431–438
- 433      Dictionaries of standard German**  
           Number built according to instructions under 431–438
- [434]      [Unassigned]**  
           Most recently used in Edition 16
- 435      Grammar of standard German**  
           Number built according to instructions under 431–438
- [436]      [Unassigned]**  
           Most recently used in Edition 18
- 437      Historical and geographic variations, modern nongeographic  
           variations of German**  
           Number built according to instructions under 431–438  
           Class Low German in 439.4
- .001–.008      **Standard subdivisions**
- .009      **History, geographic treatment, biography**
- [.009 02]      **6th–15th centuries, 500–1499**  
                   Do not use for Old High German; class in 437.01. Do not use  
                   for Middle High German and Early New High German; class in  
                   437.02
- [.009 4–.009 9]      **Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world**  
                   Do not use; class in 437.9

- .01 Old High German to 1100
- .02 Middle High German and Early New High German, 1100–1500  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- [.09] Modern nongeographic variations  
Number discontinued; class in 437
- [.1–.5] **Geographic variations in parts of Germany**  
Relocated to 437.9431–437.9435
- [.6] **Geographic variations in Austria**  
Relocated to 437.9436
- .9 **Geographic variations**  
*See also 439.1 for Yiddish*
- [.901–.909] Standard subdivisions  
Do not use; class in 437.001–437.009
- .91 Geographic variations in areas, regions, places in general  
Add to base number 437.91 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., dialects of rural regions 437.91734
- .94–.99 Geographic variations in specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
Add to base number 437.9 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., geographic variations in parts of Germany 437.9431–437.9435 [*formerly* 437.1–437.5], geographic variations in Austria 437.9436 [*formerly* 437.6], geographic variations in Germany 437.943, German dialects of Alsace 437.94439  
*For geographic variations of Old High German, see 437.01094–437.01099; for geographic variations of Middle High German and Early New High, see 437.02094–437.02099*
- 438 Standard German usage (Prescriptive linguistics)**  
Number built according to instructions under 431–438
- 439 Other Germanic languages**
- .1 **\*Yiddish**
- 
- > **439.2–439.4 Low Germanic languages**  
Class here West Germanic languages  
Class comprehensive works in 439

\*Add to base number as instructed under 420–490

- .2 \*Frisian**  
Including Old Frisian
- .3 Netherlandish languages**
- .31 \*Dutch**  
Including Old Low Franconian  
Class here Flemish
- .36 \*Afrikaans**
- .4 \*Low German (Plattdeutsch)**  
Including Old Low German, Old Saxon
- .5 North Germanic languages (Nordic languages)**  
Including proto-Nordic language  
Class here comprehensive works on east Scandinavian languages, comprehensive works on west Scandinavian languages, comprehensive works on modern west Scandinavian languages; comprehensive works on languages in the Nordic countries  
*For specific North Germanic languages, see 439.6–439.8; for Finnish, see 494.541; for Sámi, see 494.57*
- 
- > **439.6–439.8 Specific North Germanic languages**  
Class comprehensive works in 439.5
- .6 Old Norse (Old Icelandic), Icelandic, Faroese**  
Class comprehensive works on west Scandinavian languages in 439.5
- [.600 1–.600 9] Standard subdivisions of comprehensive works on Old Norse (Old Icelandic), Icelandic, Faroese  
Relocated to 439.601–439.609
- .601–.609** Standard subdivisions of comprehensive works on Old Norse (Old Icelandic), Icelandic, Faroese [*formerly* 439.6001–439.6009]; Old Norse (Old Icelandic)  
Notation from Table 1 as modified under —01–09 in Table 4, e.g., semantics of Old Norse 439.60143
- .61–.68** Subdivisions of Old Norse (Old Icelandic)  
Add to base number 439.6 notation 1–8 from Table 4, e.g., grammar of Old Norse 439.65

\*Add to base number as instructed under 420–490

- .69 Icelandic and Faroese  
Icelandic ca. 1500–  
Class comprehensive works on modern west Scandinavian languages in 439.5
- [.690 01–.690 09] Standard subdivisions of comprehensive works on Icelandic and Faroese  
Relocated to 439.6901–439.6909
- .690 1–.690 9 Standard subdivisions of comprehensive works on Icelandic and Faroese [formerly 439.69001–439.69009]; Icelandic  
Notation from Table 1 as modified under —01–09 in Table 4, e.g., semantics of Icelandic 439.690143
- .691–.698 Subdivisions of Icelandic  
Add to base number 439.69 notation 1–8 from Table 4, e.g., grammar of Icelandic 439.695
- .699 \*Faroese
- .7 \*Swedish**
- .77 Historical and geographic variations, modern nongeographic variations  
Number built according to instructions under 420–490
- .770 01–.770 09 Standard subdivisions
- [.770 090 1] To 499 A.D.  
Do not use; class in 439.5
- [.770 090 2] 6th–15th centuries, 500–1499  
Do not use for proto-Nordic language; class in 439.5. Do not use for Old Swedish; class in 439.7701
- [.770 094–.770 099] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
Do not use; class in 439.779
- .770 1 Old Swedish to 1526
- [.776–.778] Geographic variations in parts of Sweden  
Relocated to 439.779486–439.779488
- .779 Geographic variations
- [.779 01–.779 09] Standard subdivisions  
Do not use; class in 439.77001–439.77009
- .779 1 Geographic variations in areas, regions, places in general  
Add to base number 439.7791 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., dialects of rural regions 439.7791734

\*Add to base number as instructed under 420–490

- .779 4-.779 9      Geographic variations in specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
- Add to base number 439.779 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., geographic variations in parts of Sweden 439.779486–439.779488 [formerly 439.776–439.778], geographic variations in Sweden 439.779485, dialects of Finland 439.7794897
- .8      Danish and Norwegian**
- .81      \*Danish
- Class Dano-Norwegian in 439.82
- .817      Historical and geographic variations, modern nongeographic variations
- Number built according to instructions under 420–490
- .817 001–.817 009      Standard subdivisions
- [.817 009 01]      To 499 A.D.
- Do not use; class in 439.5
- [.817 009 02]      6th–15th centuries, 500–1499
- Do not use for proto-Nordic language; class in 439.5. Do not use for Old Danish; class in 439.81701
- [.817 009 4–.817 009 9]      Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
- Do not use; class in 439.8179
- .817 01      Old Danish to 1500
- [.817 1–.817 5]      Geographic variations in parts of Denmark
- Relocated to 439.81794891–439.81794895
- .817 9      Geographic variations
- [.817 901–.817 909]      Standard subdivisions
- Do not use; class in 439.817001–439.817009
- .817 91      Geographic variations in areas, regions, places in general
- Add to base number 439.81791 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., dialects of rural regions 439.81791734
- .817 94–.817 99      Geographic variations in specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
- Add to base number 439.8179 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., geographic variations in parts of Denmark 439.81794891–439.81794895 [formerly 439.8171–439.8175], geographic variations in Denmark 439.8179489, dialects of Germany 439.817943

\*Add to base number as instructed under 420–490

- .82            \*Norwegian  
                   Class here Bokmål, Dano-Norwegian, Riksmål; New Norse, Landsmål
- .827            Historical and geographic variations, modern nongeographic variations  
                   Number built according to instructions under 420–490
- .827 001–.827 009            Standard subdivisions
- [.827 009 01]                To 499 A.D.  
                                   Do not use; class in 439.5
- [.827 009 02]                6th–15th centuries, 500–1499  
                                   Do not use for proto-Nordic language; class in 439.5.  
                                   Do not use for Old Norse; class in 439.6. Do not use for  
                                   Middle Norwegian; class in 439.82702
- .827 009 03                Modern period, 1500–  
                                   Do not use for Middle Norwegian; class in 439.82702
- [.827 009 4–.827 009 9]            Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
                                   Do not use; class in 439.8279
- .827 02                Middle Norwegian, 1350–1525
- [.827 2–.827 4]            Geographic variations in parts of Norway  
                                   Relocated to 439.8279482–439.8279484
- .827 9                Geographic variations
- [.827 901–.827 909]            Standard subdivisions  
                                   Do not use; class in 439.827001–439.827009
- .827 91                Geographic variations in areas, regions, places in general  
                                   Add to base number 439.82791 the numbers following —1  
                                   in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., dialects of rural regions  
                                   439.82791734
- .827 94–.827 99            Geographic variations in specific continents, countries, localities in  
                                   modern world  
                                   Add to base number 439.8279 notation 4–9 from  
                                   Table 2, e.g., geographic variations in parts of Norway  
                                   439.8279482–439.8279484 [*formerly* 439.8272–439.8274],  
                                   geographic variations in Norway 439.8279481, dialects of United  
                                   States 439.827973

## .9            East Germanic languages

Including Burgundian, Gothic, Vandalic

\*Add to base number as instructed under 420–490

## 440 French and related Romance languages

Class here Romance languages

Class comprehensive works on Italic languages in 470

*For Italian, Dalmatian, Romanian, Rhaetian, Sardinian, Corsican, see 450; for Spanish, Portuguese, Galician, see 460*

.01–.03 Standard subdivisions of Romance languages

Notation from Table 1 as modified under —01–03 in Table 4, e.g., semantics of Romance languages 440.0143

.04 Special topics of Romance languages

Add to base number 440.04 notation 1–8 from Table 4, e.g., grammar of Romance languages 440.045

.05–.09 Standard subdivisions of Romance languages

.1–.9 **Standard subdivisions of French**

Notation from Table 1 as modified under —01–09 in Table 4, e.g., semantics of French 440.143

### 441–448 Subdivisions of French

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to base number 44 notation 1–8 from Table 4, e.g., phonology of French 441.5

**441 Writing systems, phonology, phonetics of standard French**

Number built according to instructions under 441–448

**442 Etymology of standard French**

Number built according to instructions under 441–448

**443 Dictionaries of standard French**

Number built according to instructions under 441–448

[444] **[Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 16

**445 Grammar of standard French**

Number built according to instructions under 441–448

[446] **[Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 18

**447 Historical and geographic variations, modern nongeographic variations of French**

Number built according to instructions under 441–448

*See also 449 for Occitan, Franco-Provençal*

.001–.008 Standard subdivisions

- .009 History, geographic treatment, biography  
 [.009 02] 6th–15th centuries, 500–1499  
 Do not use for Old French; class in 447.01. Do not use for Middle French; class in 447.02
- [.009 031] 16th century, 1500–1599  
 Do not use; class in 447.02
- [.009 4–.009 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
 Do not use; class in 447.9
- .01 Old French to 1400
- .02 Middle French, 1400–1600
- [.09] Modern nongeographic variations  
 Number discontinued; class in 447

**[.1–.8] Geographic variations in parts of France**

Relocated to 447.9441–447.9448

**.9 Geographic variations**

- [.901–.909] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 447.001–447.009

- .91 Geographic variations in areas, regions, places in general

Add to base number 447.91 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., dialects of the overseas regions of the French Republic 447.9171244

- .94–.99 Geographic variations in specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Add to base number 447.9 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., geographic variations in parts of France 447.9441–447.9448 [formerly 447.1–447.8], geographic variations in France 447.944, dialects of Quebec 447.9714, Haitian Creole 447.97294

*For geographic variations of Old French, see 447.01094–447.01099; for geographic variations of Middle French, see 447.02094–447.02099*

*See also 449.709449 for Provençal dialect of Occitan; also 459.984 for Corsican*

**448 Standard French usage (Prescriptive linguistics)**

Number built according to instructions under 441–448

**449 Occitan, Catalan, Franco-Provençal**

Class here Langue d'oc; Provençal (Occitan)

Class Provençal (dialect of Occitan) in 449.709449

- .01--09      Standard subdivisions of Occitan, Langue d'oc  
                   Notation from Table 1 as modified under —01–09 in Table 4, e.g., semantics of Occitan 449.0143  
                   Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

**.1--8      Subdivisions of Occitan, Langue d'oc**

- Add to base number 449 notation 1–8 from Table 4, e.g., grammar of Occitan 449.5  
                   Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

- .709 449                      Provençal dialect

                                  Number built according to instructions under 449.1–449.8

                                  Class Provençal (Occitan) in 449

*See also 449 for Franco-Provençal*

**.9            \*Catalan**

**450        Italian, Dalmatian, Romanian, Rhaetian, Sardinian, Corsican**

                  Class Dalmatian in 457.94972; class comprehensive works on Romance languages in 440; class comprehensive works on Italic languages in 470

**.1--9        Standard subdivisions of Italian**

                  Notation from Table 1 as modified under —01–09 in Table 4, e.g., semantics of Italian 450.143

**451–458    Subdivisions of Italian**

                  Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to base number 45 notation 1–8 from Table 4, e.g., phonology of Italian 451.5

**451        Writing systems, phonology, phonetics of standard Italian**

                  Number built according to instructions under 451–458

**452        Etymology of standard Italian**

                  Number built according to instructions under 451–458

**453        Dictionaries of standard Italian**

                  Number built according to instructions under 451–458

**[454]      [Unassigned]**

                  Most recently used in Edition 16

**455        Grammar of standard Italian**

                  Number built according to instructions under 451–458

\*Add to base number as instructed under 420–490

**[456] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 18

**457 Historical and geographic variations, modern nongeographic variations of Italian**

Number built according to instructions under 451–458

.001–.008 Standard subdivisions

.009 History, geographic treatment, biography

[.009 02] 6th–15th centuries, 500–1499

Do not use for Old Italian; class in 457.01. Do not use for Middle Italian; class in 457.02

[.009 031] 16th century, 1500–1599

Do not use; class in 457.02

[.009 4–.009 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Do not use; class in 457.1–457.9

.01 Old Italian to 1300

.02 Middle Italian, 1300–1600

[.09] Modern nongeographic variations

Number discontinued; class in 457

**[.1–.7] Geographic variations in parts of Italian Peninsula**

Relocated to 457.9451–457.9457

**[.8] Geographic variations in Sicily**

Relocated to 457.9458

**.9 Geographic variations**

*For geographic variations of Old Italian, see 457.01094–457.01099; for geographic variations of Middle Italian, see 457.02094–457.02099*

Sardinian relocated to 459.982

[.901–.909] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 457.001–457.009

.91 Geographic variations in areas, regions, places in general

Add to base number 457.91 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., dialects of rural regions 457.91734

Geographic variations in Cagliari province of Sardinia relocated to 459.98271

[.92] Geographic variations in Nuoro province of Sardinia

Relocated to 459.98272

- [.93]            Geographic variations in Sassari province of Sardinia  
                  Relocated to 459.98273
- .94            Geographic variations in Europe  
                  Add to base number 457.94 the numbers following —4 in notation 41–49  
                  from Table 2, e.g., geographic variations in parts of Italian Peninsula  
                  457.9451–457.9457 [*formerly* 457.1–457.7], geographic variations in  
                  Sicily 457.9458 [*formerly* 457.8], Dalmatian language 457.94972 [*formerly*  
                  457.994972], geographic variations in Italian Peninsula 457.945  
                  Geographic variations in Oristano province of Sardinia relocated to  
                  459.98274
- .949 72            Dalmatian language
- .95            Geographic variations in Asia  
                  Add to base number 457.95 the numbers following —5 in notation 51–59  
                  from Table 2, e.g., geographic variations in Philippines 457.9599  
                  Corsican relocated to 459.984
- .96–.98        Geographic variations in Africa, North America, South America  
                  Add to base number 457.9 notation 6–8 from Table 2, e.g., geographic  
                  variations in Libya 457.9612
- .99            Geographic variations in other parts of world  
                  Add to base number 457.99 the numbers following —9 in notation 91–98  
                  from Table 2, e.g., geographic variations in Australia 457.994
- [.994 972]            Dalmatian language  
                  Relocated to 457.94972

## 458        **Standard Italian usage (Prescriptive linguistics)**

Number built according to instructions under 451–458

## 459        **Romanian, Rhaetian, Sardinian, Corsican**

- .01–.09        Standard subdivisions of Romanian  
                  Notation from Table 1 as modified under —01–09 in Table 4, e.g., semantics  
                  of Romanian 459.0143
- .1–.8        **Subdivisions of Romanian**  
                  Add to base number 459 notation 1–8 from Table 4, e.g., grammar of Romanian  
                  459.5
- .9            **Rhaetian languages; Sardinian, Corsican**
- .92            \*Friulian language
- .94            \*Ladin language

*See also 467.9496 for Judeo-Spanish (Ladino)*

\*Add to base number as instructed under 420–490



**463 Dictionaries of standard Spanish**

Number built according to instructions under 461–468

**[464] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 16

**465 Grammar of standard Spanish**

Number built according to instructions under 461–468

**[466] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 18

**467 Historical and geographic variations, modern nongeographic variations of Spanish**

Number built according to instructions under 461–468

.001–.008 Standard subdivisions

.009 History, geographic treatment, biography

[.009 02] 6th–15th centuries, 500–1499

Do not use for Old Spanish; class in 467.01. Do not use for Middle Spanish; class in 467.02

[.009 031] 16th century, 1500–1599

Do not use; class in 467.02

[.009 4–.009 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Do not use; class in 467.9

.01 Old Spanish to 1100

.02 Middle Spanish, 1100–1600

[.09] Modern nongeographic variations

Number discontinued; class in 467

**[.1–.8] Geographic variations in parts of Spain**

Relocated to 467.9461–467.9468

**.9 Geographic variations**

[.901–.909] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 467.001–467.009

.91 Geographic variations in areas, regions, places in general

Add to base number 467.91 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., dialects of rural regions 467.91734

- .94–.99 Geographic variations in specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Add to base number 467.9 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., geographic variations in parts of Spain 467.9461–467.9468 [*formerly* 467.1–467.8], geographic variations in Spain 467.946, Judeo-Spanish (Ladino) 467.9496, Papiamento 467.972986, Latin American dialects 467.98

*For geographic variations of Old Spanish, see 467.01094–467.01099;  
for geographic variations of Middle Spanish, see 467.02094–467.02099*

## 468 Standard Spanish usage (Prescriptive linguistics)

Number built according to instructions under 461–468

### 469 \*Portuguese

- .01–.09 Standard subdivisions of Portuguese

Notation from Table 1 as modified under —01–09 in Table 4, e.g., semantics of Portuguese 469.0143

#### .1–.5 Subdivisions of Portuguese

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to base number 469 notation 1–5 from Table 4, e.g., phonology of Portuguese 469.15

#### .7 Historical and geographic variations, modern nongeographic variations

Number built according to instructions under 420–490

- .700 1–.700 8 Standard subdivisions
- .700 9 History, geographic treatment, biography
- [.700 902] 6th–15th centuries, 500–1499  
Do not use for Old Portuguese; class in 469.701. Do not use for Middle Portuguese; class in 469.702
- [.700 903 1] 16th century, 1500–1599  
Do not use; class in 469.702
- [.700 94–.700 99] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
Do not use; class in 469.79
- .701 Old Portuguese to 1100
- .702 Middle Portuguese, 1100–1600
- [.709] Modern nongeographic variations  
Number discontinued; class in 469.7

\*Add to base number as instructed under 420–490

- [.71–.76]      Geographic variations in Portuguese parts of Iberian Peninsula  
                   Geographic variations of Portuguese in Portuguese parts of Iberian Peninsula relocated to 469.794691–469.794696; geographic variations of Galician in Portuguese parts of Iberian Peninsula relocated from 469.71–469.72 to 469.9
- [.78]            Geographic variations in Madeira  
                   Relocated to 469.794698
- .79             Geographic variations  
                   Class here pidgins, creoles
- [.790 1–.790 9]      Standard subdivisions  
                   Do not use; class in 469.7001–469.7009
- .791            Geographic variations in areas, regions, places in general  
                   Add to base number 469.791 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., dialects of the Portuguese Empire 469.791712469  
                   Geographic variations in Azores relocated to 469.794699
- .794            Geographic variations in Europe  
                   Add to base number 469.794 the numbers following —4 in notation 41–49 from Table 2, e.g., geographic variations in Portuguese parts of Iberian Peninsula 469.794691–469.794696 [*formerly* 469.71–469.76], geographic variations in Madeira 469.794698 [*formerly* 469.78], geographic variations in Azores 469.794699 [*formerly* 469.791], geographic variations in Spain 469.7946, geographic variations in Portugal 469.79469  
                   *For geographic variations of Old Portuguese, see 469.701094–469.701099; for geographic variations of Middle Portuguese, see 469.702094–469.702099*  
                   Geographic variations of Galician in Spain relocated to 469.9
- .795–.797      Geographic variations in Asia, Africa, North America  
                   Add to base number 469.79 notation 5–7 from Table 2, e.g., Crioulo of Guinea-Bissau 469.796657 [*formerly* 469.7996657], Crioulo of Cape Verde Islands and comprehensive works on Crioulo 469.796658 [*formerly* 469.7996658]  
                   *See also 467.972986 for Papiamentu*
- .798            Geographic variations in South America  
                   Add to base number 469.798 the numbers following —8 in notation 81–89 from Table 2, e.g., geographic variations in Brazil 469.7981, dialects of São Paulo 469.798161  
                   Notation 81–87 from Table 2 replaces notation 811–817 from Table 2 with the result that many numbers have been reused with new meanings
- .799            Geographic variations in other parts of world  
                   Add to base number 469.799 the numbers following —9 in notation 93–98 from Table 2, e.g., geographic variations of Australia 469.7994

- [.799 01–.799 09] Standard subdivisions  
Do not use; class in 469.79001–469.79009
- .799 1 Geographic variations in areas, regions, places in general  
Add to base number 469.7991 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., dialects of rural regions 469.7991 734
- [.799 665 7] Crioulo of Guinea-Bissau  
Relocated to 469.796657
- [.799 665 8] Crioulo of Cape Verde Islands; comprehensive works on Crioulo  
Relocated to 469.796658
- .8 Standard Portuguese usage (Prescriptive linguistics)**  
Add to base number 469.8 the numbers following —8 in notation 8001–8955 from Table 4, e.g., reading Portuguese 469.84
- .9 \*Galician [formerly 469.71–469.72, 469.794]**  
Class here Gallegan

## 470 Latin and related Italic languages

Class here Italic languages

Class comprehensive works on Latin and Greek in 480

*For Romance languages, see 440*

.01–.09 Standard subdivisions of Italic languages

**.1–.9 Standard subdivisions of Latin**

Notation from Table 1 as modified under —01–09 in Table 4, e.g., semantics of Latin 470.143

### 471–478 Subdivisions of Latin

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to base number 47 notation 1–8 from Table 4, e.g., phonology of Latin 471.5

*See Manual at 471–475, 478 vs. 477*

### 471 Writing systems, phonology, phonetics of classical Latin

Number built according to instructions under 471–478

### 472 Etymology of classical Latin

Number built according to instructions under 471–478

### 473 Dictionaries of classical Latin

Number built according to instructions under 471–478

\*Add to base number as instructed under 420–490

**[474] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 16

**475 Grammar of classical Latin**

Number built according to instructions under 471–478

**[476] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 18

**477 Old, postclassical, Vulgar Latin**

Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

Variant name for Old Latin: preclassical Latin

Number built according to instructions under 471–478

**478 Classical Latin usage (Prescriptive linguistics)**

Number built according to instructions under 471–478

Class here classical-revival Latin usage during medieval or modern times

**479 Other Italic languages****.4-.9 Specific languages**

Add to base number 479 the numbers following —79 in notation 794–799 from Table 6, e.g., Umbrian 479.9

**480 Classical Greek and related Hellenic languages**

Classical Greek: the Greek that flourished between 750 and 350 B.C.

Class here Hellenic languages, comprehensive works on classical (Greek and Latin) languages

*For Latin, see 470*

.01-.09 Standard subdivisions of classical (Greek and Latin) languages

**.1-.9 Standard subdivisions of Hellenic languages, of classical Greek****481–488 Subdivisions of classical, preclassical, postclassical Greek**

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to base number 48 notation 1–8 from Table 4, e.g., phonology of classical Greek 481.5

Dialects of classical Greek are classed in the numbers for classical Greek (480.1–480.9, 481–485, 488)

*For standard subdivisions of classical Greek, see 480.1–480.9*

**481 Writing systems, phonology, phonetics of classical Greek**

Number built according to instructions under 481–488

**482 Etymology of classical Greek**

Number built according to instructions under 481–488

**483 Dictionaries of classical Greek**

Number built according to instructions under 481–488

**[484] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 16

**485 Grammar of classical Greek**

Number built according to instructions under 481–488

**[486] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 18

**487 Preclassical and postclassical Greek**

Number built according to instructions under 481–488

**.1 Preclassical Greek**

Including Mycenaean Greek, Linear B

*See also 492.6 for Linear A*

**.3 Postclassical Greek**

Including Byzantine Greek

*For Koine, see 487.4*

**.4 Koine (Hellenistic Greek)**

Class here Biblical Greek

**488 Classical Greek usage (Prescriptive linguistics)**

Number built according to instructions under 481–488

**489 Other Hellenic languages****.3 \*Modern Greek**

Including Demotic, Katharevusa

**490 Other languages**

\*Add to base number as instructed under 420–490

## SUMMARY

- 491 East Indo-European and Celtic languages  
 492 Afro-Asiatic languages  
 493 Non-Semitic Afro-Asiatic languages  
 494 Altaic, Uralic, Hyperborean, Dravidian languages, miscellaneous languages of south Asia  
 495 Languages of east and southeast Asia  
 496 African languages  
 497 North American native languages  
 498 South American native languages  
 499 Non-Austronesian languages of Oceania, Austronesian languages, miscellaneous languages

**491 East Indo-European and Celtic languages**

Class comprehensive works on Indo-European languages in 410

## SUMMARY

- 491.1 Indo-Iranian languages  
 .2 Sanskrit  
 .3 Middle Indo-Aryan languages  
 .4 Modern Indo-Aryan languages  
 .5 Iranian languages  
 .6 Celtic languages  
 .7 Russian and related East Slavic languages  
 .8 Slavic (Slavonic) languages  
 .9 Baltic and other Indo-European languages

**.1 Indo-Iranian languages**

Class here comprehensive works on languages of south Asia

*For Indo-Aryan languages, see 491.2–491.4; for Iranian languages, see 491.5; for Dravidian languages and miscellaneous languages of south Asia, see 494.8; for languages of south Asia closely related to languages of east and southeast Asia, see 495; for Andamanese languages, see 495.9*

**> 491.2–491.4 Indo-Aryan languages**

Class comprehensive works in 491.1

**.2 \*Sanskrit**

.29 Vedic (Old Indo-Aryan)

**.3 Middle Indo-Aryan languages**

Former heading: Middle Indic languages

Class here comprehensive works on Prakrit languages

*For modern Prakrit languages, see 491.4*

.37 \*Pali

\*Add to base number as instructed under 420–490

- .4 Modern Indo-Aryan languages**  
 Former heading: Modern Indic languages  
 Class here modern Prakrit languages  
 Class comprehensive works on Prakrit languages in 491.3
- .41 Sindhi and Lahnda  
 .410 1–.410 9 Standard subdivisions of Sindhi  
 Notation from Table 1 as modified under —01–09 in Table 4, e.g., semantics of Sindhi 491.40143
- .411–.418 Subdivisions of Sindhi  
 Add to base number 491.41 notation 1–8 from Table 4, e.g., grammar of Sindhi 491.415
- .419 \*Lahnda
- .42 \*Panjabi
- .43 Western Hindi languages  
 Class here comprehensive works on Hindi languages  
*For languages of east central zone of Indo-Aryan languages (Eastern Hindi languages), see 491.492*
- [.430 01–.430 09] Standard subdivisions of Western Hindi languages  
 Relocated to 491.4301–491.4309
- .430 1–.430 9 Standard subdivisions of Western Hindi languages [formerly 491.43001–491.43009], Hindi  
 Notation from Table 1 as modified under —01–09 in Table 4, e.g., semantics of Hindi 491.430143
- .431–.438 Subdivisions of Hindi  
 Add to base number 491.43 notation 1–8 from Table 4, e.g., grammar of Hindi 491.435
- .439 \*Urdu
- .44 \*Bengali  
 Class here comprehensive works on Bengali and Assamese  
*For Assamese, see 491.451*
- .45 Assamese, Bihari, Oriya
- .451 \*Assamese
- .454 \*Bihari

\*Add to base number as instructed under 420–490



- .489        \*Divehi (Maldivian)
- .49        Other Indo-Aryan languages  
           Including Nuristani (Kafiri)  
           *See also 494.8 for Dravidian languages; also 495.4 for Tibeto-Burman  
           languages; also 495.95 for Munda languages*
- .492        Languages of east central zone of Indo-Aryan languages (Eastern  
           Hindi languages)  
           Including Awadhi, Bagheli, Chattisgarhi, Fijian Hindustani (Fiji Hindi)  
           Class comprehensive works on Hindi languages in 491.43
- .495        \*Nepali language
- .496        Pahari languages  
           Including Garhwali  
           Class here languages of northern zone of Indo-Aryan languages  
           *For Nepali, see 491.495*
- .497        \*Romani
- .499        Dardic (Pisacha) languages  
           Including Kashmiri, Khowar, Kohistani, Shina
- .5        Iranian languages**
- .51        \*Old Persian  
           Class here ancient west Iranian languages  
           *See also 491.52 for Avestan language*
- .52        \*Avestan  
           Class here ancient east Iranian languages
- .53        Middle Iranian languages  
           Including Khotanese (Saka), Pahlavi (Middle Persian), Sogdian
- .55        \*Modern Persian (Farsi)  
           Class Tajik in 491.57
- .56        \*Dari
- .57        \*Tajik
- .59        Other modern Iranian languages  
           Including Pamir languages; Osetin (Ossetic)
- .593        \*Pashto (Afghan)

- .597           Kurdish languages  
                   Including central and southern Kurdish  
                   Class here Kurdish (Kurmanji, northern Kurdish)
- .597 01–.597 09       Standard subdivisions of Kurdish (Kurmanji)  
                           Notation from Table 1 as modified under —01–09 in Table 4, e.g.,  
                           semantics of Kurdish 491.5970143
- .597 1–.597 8       Subdivisions of Kurdish (Kurmanji)  
                           Add to base number 491.597 notation 1–8 from Table 4, e.g.,  
                           grammar of Kurdish 491.5975
- .598           \*Baluchi
- .6           Celtic languages**  
                   Including Gaulish
- .62           \*Irish Gaelic
- .63           \*Scottish Gaelic
- .64           \*Manx
- .66           \*Welsh (Cymric)
- .67           \*Cornish
- .68           \*Breton
- .7           Russian and related East Slavic languages**  
                   Class here East Slavic languages  
                   Class comprehensive works on Slavic (Slavonic) languages in 491.8
- .700 1–.700 9       Standard subdivisions of East Slavic languages
- .701–.709       Standard subdivisions of Russian  
                           Notation from Table 1 as modified under —01–09 in Table 4, e.g.,  
                           semantics of Russian 491.70143
- .71–.75       Writing systems, phonology, phonetics, etymology, dictionaries,  
                   grammar of Russian  
                           Add to base number 491.7 notation 1–5 from Table 4, e.g., grammar of  
                           Russian 491.75
- .77           Historical and geographic variations, modern nongeographic variations  
                   of Russian
- .770 01–.770 08       Standard subdivisions
- .770 09       History, geographic treatment, biography
- [.770 090 2]       6th–15th centuries, 500–1499  
                           Do not use; class in 491.7701

\*Add to base number as instructed under 420–490

- [.770 090 31] 16th century, 1500–1599  
Do not use for Old Russian; class in 491.7701. Do not use for Middle Russian; class in 491.7702
- [.770 090 32] 17th century, 1600–1699  
Do not use; class in 491.7702
- .770 090 33 18th century, 1700–1799  
Do not use for Middle Russian; class in 491.7702
- [.770 094–.770 099] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
Do not use; class in 491.774–491.779
- .770 1 Old Russian to 1550
- .770 2 Middle Russian, 1550–1750
- [.770 9] Modern nongeographic variations  
Number discontinued; class in 491.77
- .774–.779 Geographic variations  
Add to base number 491.77 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., dialects of Far Eastern Siberia 491.77577  
*For geographic variations of Old Russian, see 491.7701094–491.7701099; for geographic variations in Middle Russian, see 491.7702094–491.7702099*
- .78 Standard Russian usage (Prescriptive linguistics)
- .780 01–.780 09 Standard subdivisions
- .780 2–.780 4 Translating  
Add to base number 491.78 the numbers following —8 in notation 802–804 from Table 4, e.g., translating Russian literature (belles-lettres) and rhetoric 491.7804
- .781–.786 Words, approaches to expression, reading, readers  
Add to base number 491.78 the numbers following —8 in notation 81–86 from Table 4, e.g., reading Russian 491.784
- .79 Ukrainian and Belarusian
- .790 1–.790 9 Standard subdivisions of Ukrainian  
Notation from Table 1 as modified under —01–09 in Table 4, e.g., semantics of Ukrainian 491.790143
- .791–.798 Subdivisions of Ukrainian  
Add to base number 491.79 notation 1–8 from Table 4, e.g., grammar of Ukrainian 491.795
- .799 \*Belarusian

\*Add to base number as instructed under 420–490

- .8 Slavic (Slavonic) languages**  
 Including Common Slavic  
 Class here comprehensive works on Balto-Slavic languages  
*For East Slavic languages, see 491.7; for Baltic languages, see 491.9*
- .801–.803 Standard subdivisions  
 Notation from Table 1 as modified under —01–03 in Table 4, e.g., semantics of Slavic languages 491.80143
- .804 Special topics of Slavic languages  
 Add to base number 491.804 notation 1–8 from Table 4, e.g., grammar of Slavic languages 491.8045
- .805–.809 Standard subdivisions
- .81 Bulgarian and related South Slavic languages  
 Class here South Slavic languages  
*For Serbian, see 491.82; for Croatian and Bosnian, see 491.83; for Slovenian, see 491.84*
- [.810 01–.810 09] Standard subdivisions of South Slavic languages  
 Relocated to 491.8101–491.8109
- .810 1–.810 9 Standard subdivisions of South Slavic languages [*formerly* 491.81001–491.81009], Bulgarian  
 Notation from Table 1 as modified under —01–09 in Table 4, e.g., semantics of Bulgarian 491.810143
- .811–.815 Writing systems, phonology, phonetics, etymology, dictionaries, grammar of Bulgarian  
 Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to base number 491.81 notation 1–5 from Table 4, e.g., phonology of Bulgarian 491.8115  
 Class comprehensive works in 491.81
- .817 Historical and geographic variations, modern nongeographic variations of Bulgarian  
 Number built according to instructions under 420–490
- .817 001–.817 008 Standard subdivisions
- .817 009 History, geographic treatment, biography  
 Do not use for Old Bulgarian; class in 491.81701
- .817 01 \*Old Bulgarian (Church Slavic)
- .818 Standard Bulgarian usage (Prescriptive linguistics)
- .818 001–.818 009 Standard subdivisions

\*Add to base number as instructed under 420–490

- .818 02-.818 04      Translating  
                                  Add to base number 491.818 the numbers following —8 in notation 802–804 from Table 4, e.g., translating Bulgarian literature (belles-lettres) and rhetoric 491.81804
- .818 1-.818 6      Words, approaches to expression, reading, readers  
                                  Add to base number 491.818 the numbers following —8 in notation 81–86 from Table 4, e.g., reading Bulgarian 491.8184
- .819                \*Macedonian
- .82                 \*Serbian  
                                  Class here Serbo-Croatian (languages of Serbs, Croats, and Bosnians treated together as a single language)  
                                  Croatian relocated to 491.83; Bosnian relocated to 491.839
- .83                 \*Croatian [*formerly* 491.82] and Bosnian  
                                  Subdivisions are added for Croatian and Bosnian together, for Croatian alone
- .839                \*Bosnian [*formerly* 491.82]
- .84                 \*Slovenian
- .85                 Polish and related West Slavic languages  
                                  Including Kashubian  
                                  Class here West Slavic languages  
                                  *For Czech, see 491.86; for Slovak, see 491.87; for Wendish, see 491.88; for Polabian, see 491.89*
- [.850 01-.850 09]      Standard subdivisions of West Slavic languages  
                                  Relocated to 491.8501–491.8509
- .850 1-.850 9      Standard subdivisions of West Slavic languages [*formerly* 491.85001–491.85009], Polish  
                                  Notation from Table 1 as modified under —01–09 in Table 4, e.g., semantics of Polish 491.850143
- .851-.858          Subdivisions of Polish  
                                  Add to base number 491.85 notation 1–8 from Table 4, e.g., grammar of Polish 491.855
- .86                 \*Czech
- .867                Historical and geographic variations, modern nongeographic variations  
                                  Number built according to instructions under 420–490  
                                  Including Moravian dialects
- .87                 \*Slovak

\*Add to base number as instructed under 420–490

.88 \*Wendish (Lusatian, Sorbian)

.89 \*Polabian

**.9 Baltic and other Indo-European languages**

> 491.91–491.93 Baltic languages

Class comprehensive works in 491.9

.91 Old Prussian

.92 \*Lithuanian

.93 \*Latvian (Lettish)

.99 Other Indo-European languages

Add to base number 491.99 the numbers following —9199 in notation 91991–91998 from Table 6, e.g., Albanian 491.991, Phrygian 491.993; then to the number given for each language listed below add further as instructed at beginning of Table 4, e.g., grammar of Albanian 491.9915

491.991 Albanian

491.992 Armenian

491.994 Tocharian

491.998 Hittite

**492 Afro-Asiatic languages**

Class here Semitic languages

*For non-Semitic Afro-Asiatic languages, see 493*

.01–.03 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under —01–03 in Table 4, e.g., semantics of Semitic languages 492.0143

.04 Special topics of Afro-Asiatic and Semitic languages

Add to base number 492.04 notation 1–8 from Table 4, e.g., grammar of Semitic languages 492.045

.05–.09 Standard subdivisions

**.1 East Semitic languages**

Including Assyrian, Babylonian

Class here Akkadian (Assyro-Babylonian)

*For Eblaite, see 492.6*

*See also 499.95 for Sumerian*

\*Add to base number as instructed under 420–490



- .701–.709      Standard subdivisions of Arabic  
                     Notation from Table 1 as modified under —01–09 in Table 4, e.g.,  
                     semantics of Arabic 492.70143
- .71–.78      Subdivisions of Arabic  
                     Add to base number 492.7 notation 1–8 from Table 4, e.g., grammar of  
                     Arabic 492.75  
                     Class Maltese in 492.79
- .79            \*Maltese
- .8            Ethiopian languages**  
                     Including Gurage, Harari  
                     Class here comprehensive works on South Semitic languages  
                     *For South Arabian languages, see 492.9*
- .81            \*Ge'ez language
- .82            \*Tigré
- .83            \*Tigrinya
- .87            \*Amharic
- .877            Historical and geographic variations, modern nongeographic  
                     variations  
                     Number built according to instructions under 420–490
- .9            South Arabian languages**  
                     Including Mahri, Sokotri  
                     Class comprehensive works on South Semitic languages in 492.8  
                     *See also 492.7 for Arabic*

**493 Non-Semitic Afro-Asiatic languages**

Add to base number 493 the numbers following —93 in notation 931–937 from Table 6, e.g., Afar 493.5, Oromo 493.55; then to the number for each language listed below add further as instructed at beginning of Table 4, e.g., grammar of Oromo 493.555

493.1 Egyptian

493.2 Coptic

493.33 Tamazight

493.34 Kabyle

493.38 Tamashek

493.54 Somali

493.55 Oromo

493.72 Hausa

**494 Altaic, Uralic, Hyperborean, Dravidian languages, miscellaneous languages of south Asia**

Add to base number 494 the numbers following —94 in notation 941–948 from Table 6, e.g., Mongolian 494.23, Altai 494.33; then to the number for each language listed below add further as instructed at beginning of Table 4, e.g., grammar of Mongolian 494.235

494.23 Mongolian proper, Halh Mongolian (Khalkha Mongolian)

494.315 Chuvash

494.323 Uighur

494.325 Uzbek

494.332 Yakut

494.345 Kazakh

494.347 Kyrgyz

494.35 Turkish, Osmanli, Ottoman Turkish

494.361 Azerbaijani

494.364 Turkmen

494.387 Tatar

494.388 Crimean Tatar

494.511 Hungarian (Magyar)

(continued)

**494 Altaic, Uralic, Hyperborean, Dravidian languages, miscellaneous languages of south Asia (continued)**

- 494.541 Finnish (Suomi)
  - 494.542 Tornedalen Finnish, Meänkieli
  - 494.545 Estonian
  - 494.5722 South Sámi
  - 494.5743 Lule Sámi
  - 494.5745 North Sámi
  - 494.811 Tamil
  - 494.812 Malayalam
  - 494.814 Kannada (Kanarese)
  - 494.823 Gondi
  - 494.824 Kui (Khond, Kandh)
  - 494.827 Telugu
  - 494.83 Brahui
  - 494.892 Burushaski
- For Japanese, see 495.6; for Korean, see 495.7*  
*See also 497.1 for Inuit, Yupik, Aleut languages*

**495 Languages of east and southeast Asia**

Including Karen

Here are classed languages of south Asia closely related to the languages of east and southeast Asia

Class here Sino-Tibetan languages

*For Austronesian languages of east and southeast Asia, see 499.2*

**.1 \*Chinese**

Class here Beijing dialect; Mandarin (Putonghua) (standard written Chinese)

**.17 Historical and geographic variations, modern nongeographic variations of Chinese**

Number built according to instructions under 420–490

Class Mandarin Chinese in 495.1

\*Add to base number as instructed under 420–490

- [.170 94–.170 99]      Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
                                  Do not use; class in 495.179
- [.171–.178]      Geographic variations in parts of China  
                                  Relocated to 495.179511–495.179518
- .179      Geographic variations
- [.179 01–.179 09]      Standard subdivisions  
                                  Do not use; class in 495.17001–495.17009
- .179 1      Geographic variations in areas, regions, places in general  
                                  Add to base number 467.91 the numbers following —1 in notation  
                                  11–19 from Table 2, e.g., dialects of rural regions 495.1791734
- .179 4–.179 9      Geographic variations in specific continents, countries, localities in  
                                  modern world  
                                  Add to base number 495.179 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g.,  
                                  geographic variations in parts of China 495.179511–495.179518  
                                  [*formerly* 495.171–495.178]; dialects of Guangdong Sheng,  
                                  comprehensive works on Yue (Cantonese) dialects 495.1795127  
                                  [*formerly* 495.1727]; works that focus narrowly on the Cantonese  
                                  dialect as spoken in the municipality of Canton 495.17951275  
                                  [*formerly* 495.17275]; geographic variations in China 495.17951,  
                                  Chinese dialects in Malaysia 495.179595, Yue (Cantonese) dialects as  
                                  spoken in North America 495.1797

#### .4      **Tibetan and related Tibeto-Burman languages**

Including Baric, Bodish, Loloish languages

Class here Tibeto-Burman languages

Class Karen in 495

*For Burmese, see 495.8*

- [.400 1–.400 9]      Standard subdivisions of Tibeto-Burman languages  
                                  Relocated to 495.401–495.409
- .401–.409      Standard subdivisions of Tibeto-Burman languages [*formerly*  
                                  495.4001–495.4009], Tibetan  
                                  Notation from Table 1 as modified under —01–09 in Table 4, e.g.,  
                                  semantics of Tibetan 495.40143
- .41–.48      Subdivisions of Tibetan  
                                  Add to base number 495.4 notation 1–8 from Table 4, e.g., grammar of  
                                  Tibetan 495.45
- .49      Eastern Himalayan languages  
                                  Including Chepang, Limbu, Magari, Sunwar; Newari  
                                  Class here Kiranti languages, Mahakiranti languages  
                                  *See also 491.495 for Nepali*

- .6 \*Japanese**
- .7 \*Korean**
- .8 \*Burmese**
- .9 Miscellaneous languages of southeast Asia; Munda languages**  
 Only those languages provided for below  
 Including Kadai languages, Kam-Sui languages  
 Class here Daic languages  
 Class Austroasiatic languages in 495.93  
*For Austronesian languages, see 499.2*
- .91 Thai (Siamese) and related Tai languages  
 Class here Tai languages
- [.910 01–.910 09] Standard subdivisions of Tai languages  
 Relocated to 495.9101–495.9109
- .910 1–.910 9 Standard subdivisions of Tai languages [*formerly*  
 495.91001–495.91009], Thai (Siamese)  
 Notation from Table 1 as modified under —01–09 in Table 4, e.g.,  
 semantics of Thai 495.910143
- .911–.918 Subdivisions of Thai (Siamese)  
 Add to base number 495.91 notation 1–8 from Table 4, e.g., grammar of  
 Thai 495.915
- .919 Other Tai languages  
 Including Shan  
*For Viet-Muong languages, see 495.92*
- .919 1 \*Lao
- .92–.97 Viet-Muong, Austroasiatic, Munda, Hmong-Mien (Miao-Yao)  
 languages  
 Add to base number 495.9 the numbers following —959 in notation  
 9592–9597 from Table 6, e.g., Vietnamese 495.922, Khasi 495.93; then  
 to the number for each language listed below add further as instructed at  
 beginning of Table 4, e.g., grammar of Vietnamese 495.9225
- 495.922 Vietnamese
- 495.932 Khmer (Cambodian)
- 495.972 Hmong (Miao)
- 495.978 Yao

\*Add to base number as instructed under 420–490

**496 African languages**

Class Afrikaans in 439.36; class Malagasy in 499.3. Class an African creole having a non-African primary source language with the source language, plus notation 7 from Table 4, e.g., Krio 427.9664

*For Ethiopian languages, see 492.8; for non-Semitic Afro-Asiatic languages, see 493*

**.1 Khoisan languages**

Including Khoikhoi, San

**.3 Niger-Congo languages**

Including Ijoid, Kordofanian languages; Dogon

**.32 West Atlantic languages****.321 Senegambian languages**

Former heading: Senegal group

Including Serer (Serer-Sine)

*For Fula, see 496.322*

**.321 4 \*Wolof****.322 \*Fula (Fulani)****.33 Igboid, Defoid, Edoid, Idomoid, Nupoid, Akpes, Oko, Ukaan languages; Kwa languages; Kru languages**

Igboid, Defoid, Edoid, Idomoid, Nupoid, Akpes, Oko, Ukaan languages, formerly considered Kwa languages, are now considered Benue-Congo languages

Add to base number 496.33 the numbers following—9633 in notation 96332–96338 from Table 6, e.g., Yoruba 496.333, Baoulé 496.338; then to the number for each language listed below add further as instructed at beginning of Table 4, e.g., grammar of Yoruba 496.3335

496.332 Ibo (Igbo)

496.333 Yoruba

496.3374 Ewe

496.3378 Gã

496.3385 Akan, Fante, Twi

Class comprehensive works on Benue-Congo languages in 496.36

**.34 Mande languages****.345 Manding-Mokole languages**

Class here Mandekan languages

\*Add to base number as instructed under 420–490

- .345 2            \*Bambara
- .348            Mende-Bandi languages  
                   Including Bandi (Gbandi)  
                   Class here Mende
- .348 01–.348 09        Standard subdivisions of Mende  
                               Notation from Table 1 as modified under —01–09 in Table 4, e.g.,  
                               semantics of Mende 496.3480143
- .348 1–.348 8        Subdivisions of Mende  
                               Add to base number 496.348 notation 1–8 from Table 4, e.g.,  
                               grammar of Mende 496.3485
- .35            Gur (Voltaic) languages  
                   Including Dagomba, Moré, Senufo  
                   Class Dogon in 496.3
- .36            Benue-Congo and Adamawa-Ubangi languages  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for Benue-Congo and Adamawa-Ubangi  
                   languages together, for Benue-Congo languages alone  
                   Including Bamileke  
                   Class here Bantoid languages  
                   Class Mbam languages (from zone A) in 496.396  
                   *For Igboïd, Defoid, Edoid, Idomoid, Nupoid, Akpes, Oko, Ukaan*  
                   *languages, see 496.33; for Bantu languages, see 496.39*
- .361            Adamawa-Ubangi languages  
                   Including Gbaya, Zande
- .361 6            \*Sango
- .364            Cross River languages  
                   Including Ibibio
- .364 2            \*Efik
- .39            Bantu languages  
                   Bantu proper (Narrow Bantu)  
                   *See also 496.36 for Bantoid languages other than Bantu proper*  
                   *See Manual at T6—9639*
- .390 1–.390 3        Standard subdivisions  
                               Notation from Table 1 as modified under —01–03 in Table 4, e.g.,  
                               semantics of Bantu languages 496.390143

\*Add to base number as instructed under 420–490

- .390 4                   Special topics of Bantu languages  
                                   Add to base number 496.3904 notation 1–8 from Table 4, e.g.,  
                                   grammar of Bantu languages 496.39045
- .390 5–.390 9           Standard subdivisions
- .391–.399               Specific Bantu languages and language families  
                                   Add to base number 496.39 the numbers following —9639 in notation  
                                   96391–96399 from Table 6, e.g., Ewondo 496.396, Zulu 496.3986; then  
                                   to the number for each language listed below add further as instructed at  
                                   beginning of Table 4, e.g., grammar of Zulu 496.39865
- 496.3915 Bemba
- 496.3918 Nyanja, Chichewa (Chewa)
- 496.392 Swahili
- 496.3931 Kongo (Koongo)
- 496.3932 Mbundu (Kimbundu)
- 496.39461 Rwanda (Kinyarwanda)
- 496.39465 Rundi
- 496.3954 Kikuyu
- 496.3957 Ganda (Luganda)
- 496.3962 Duala
- 496.39686 Lingala
- 496.3975 Shona
- 496.3976 Venda (Tshivenda)
- 496.39771 Northern Sotho
- 496.39772 Southern Sotho
- 496.39775 Tswana
- 496.3978 Tsonga
- 496.3985 Xhosa
- 496.3986 Zulu
- 496.3987 Swazi (siSwati)
- 496.3989 Ndebele (South Africa)

**.5 Nilo-Saharan languages**

Including Nilotic, Nubian languages; Luo, Songhai

Class here Chari-Nile (Macrosudanic) languages

**497 North American native languages**

Class here comprehensive works on North and South American native languages

*For South American native languages, see 498*

**.1-.2 Inuit, Yupik, Aleut, Na-Dene languages**

Add to base number 497 the numbers following --97 in notation 971-972 from Table 6, e.g., Na-Dene languages 497.2, Navajo 497.26; then to the number for each language listed below add further as instructed at beginning of Table 4, e.g., grammar of Navajo 497.265

497.124 Eastern Canadian Inuktitut

497.19 Aleut

497.256 Mescalero-Chiricahua Apache (Chiricahua, Mescalero)

497.26 Navajo (Diné)

497.27 Tlingit

497.28 Haida

**.3 Algic and Muskogean languages**

Standard subdivisions are added for Algic and Muskogean languages together, for Algic languages alone

Including Lumbee, Yurok

Class here Algonquian languages

.31–.38      Specific Algic and Muskogean languages and language families

Add to base number 497.3 the numbers following —973 in notation 9731–9738 from Table 6, e.g., Cree 497.323, Muskogean languages 497.38; then to the number for each language listed below add further as instructed at beginning of Table 4, e.g., grammar of Cree 497.3235

- 497.312 Kickapoo
- 497.313 Menomini
- 497.314 Mesquakie, Fox
- 497.315 Miami
- 497.316 Potawatomi
- 497.317 Shawnee
- 497.323 Cree
- 497.333 Ojibwa, Chippewa
- 497.336 Ottawa
- 497.343 Micmac
- 497.344 Mohegan, Narragansett
- 497.345 Unami (Delaware, Lenni Lenape)
- 497.347 Powhatan
- 497.348 Wampanoag
- 497.352 Blackfoot, Siksika
- 497.353 Cheyenne
- 497.354 Arapaho
- 497.385 Muskogee (Creek)
- 497.3859 Seminole
- 497.386 Chickasaw
- 497.387 Choctaw

**.4      Penutian, Mayan, Mixe-Zoque, Uto-Aztecan, Kiowa Tanoan languages**

.41–.49      **Specific Penutian, Mayan, Mixe-Zoque, Uto-Aztecan, Kiowa Tanoan languages and language families**

Add to base number 497.4 the numbers following —974 in notation 9741–9749 from Table 6, e.g., Uto-Aztecan languages 497.45, Nahuatl 497.452; then to the number for each language listed below add further as instructed at beginning of Table 4, e.g., grammar of Nahuatl 497.4525

497.4122 Klamath, Modoc

497.4124 Nez Percé

497.4127 Yakama

497.4128 Tsimshian

497.4133 Miwok

497.422 Cakchikel

497.423 Quiché

497.427 Maya, Yucatec Maya

497.4287 Tzotzil

497.452 Nahuatl (Aztec)

497.4542 Yaqui

497.4544 Huichol

497.4546 Tarahumara

497.4552 Tohono O'odham

497.45529 Akimel O'odham

**.5      Siouan, Iroquoian, Hokan, Chumash, Yuki languages**

Class Keresan languages in 497.9; class Caddoan languages in 497.93

*See also 497.9 for Yuchi*

.52-.58 Specific Siouan, Iroquoian, Hokan, Chumash, Yuki languages and language families

Add to base number 497.5 the numbers following —975 in notation 9752–9758 from Table 6, e.g., Iroquoian languages 497.55, Cherokee 497.557; then to the number for each language listed below add further as instructed at beginning of Table 4, e.g., grammar of Cherokee 497.5575

497.522 Mandan

497.5243 Dakota

497.5244 Lakota

497.5253 Omaha

497.52539 Ponca

497.5254 Osage

497.526 Winnebago

497.5272 Crow

497.5274 Hidatsa

497.5542 Mohawk

497.5543 Oneida

497.5546 Seneca

497.555 Wyandot, Huron

497.557 Cherokee

497.5722 Mohave

497.5724 Havasupai, Walapai, Yavapai

497.576 Washo

**.6-9    Oto-Manguean, Chibchan languages of North America, Misumalpan, other North American languages**

Add to base number 497 the numbers following —97 in notation 976-979 from Table 6, e.g., Oto-Manguean languages 497.6, Zapotec 497.68; then to the number for each language listed below add further as instructed at beginning of Table 4, e.g., grammar of Zapotec 497.685

- 497.63 Mixtec
- 497.68 Zapotec
- 497.83 San Blas Kuna (San Blas Cuna)
- 497.882 Miskito
- 497.922 Taino
- 497.932 Arikara
- 497.933 Pawnee
- 497.9435 Kalispel, Pend d'Oreille
- 497.953 Kwakiutl
- 497.955 Nootka
- 497.96 Purépecha (Tarasco)
- 497.992 Kutenai
- 497.994 Zuni

**498    South American native languages**

Add to base number 498 the numbers following —98 in notation 982-989 from Table 6, e.g., Quechua 498.323, Tucanoan languages 498.35; then to the number for each language listed below add further as instructed at beginning of Table 4, e.g., grammar of Quechua 498.3235

- 498.323 Quechua (Kechua)
- 498.324 Aymara
- 498.372 Shuar
- 498.3822 Paraguayan Guaraní
- 498.3832 Tupí (Nhengatu)
- 498.422 Carib (Galibi)
- 498.72 Mapudungun (Mapuche)
- 498.92 Yanomamo

## 499 **Non-Austronesian languages of Oceania, Austronesian languages, miscellaneous languages**

Add to base number 499 the numbers following —99 in notation 991–999 from Table 6, e.g., Polynesian languages 499.4, Maori 499.442; then to the number for each language listed below add further as instructed at beginning of Table 4, e.g., grammar of Maori 499.4425; however, for sign languages, see 419

- 499.211 Tagalog (Filipino)
- 499.221 Indonesian (Bahasa Indonesia)
- 499.222 Javanese
- 499.2232 Sunda (Sundanese)
- 499.2234 Madura (Madurese)
- 499.2238 Bali (Balinese)
- 499.2242 Aceh (Achinese)
- 499.2244 Minangkabau
- 499.22462 Batak Toba
- 499.22466 Batak Dairi
- 499.2248 Lampung
- 499.2256 Banjar (Banjarese)
- 499.2262 Bugis (Buginese)
- 499.2264 Makasar
- 499.28 Malay (Bahasa Malaysia, Standard Malay)
- 499.3 Malagasy
- 499.42 Hawaiian
- 499.442 Maori
- 499.444 Tahitian
- 499.462 Samoan
- 499.482 Tongan (Tonga)
- 499.484 Niue (Niuean)

(continued)

**499 Non-Austronesian languages of Oceania, Austronesian languages, miscellaneous languages (continued)**

- 499.59 Fijian
- 499.92 Basque
- 499.95 Sumerian
- 499.9623 Abkhaz
- 499.9625 Adyghe
- 499.969 Georgian
- 499.992 Esperanto
- 499.993 Interlingua

# 500

## 500 Natural sciences and mathematics

Natural sciences: sciences that deal with matter and energy, or with objects and processes observable in nature

Class here interdisciplinary works on natural and applied sciences

Class natural history in 508. Class scientific principles of a subject with the subject, plus notation 015 from Table 1, e.g., scientific principles of photography 770.15

*For government policy on science, see 338.926; for applied sciences, see 600*

*See Manual at 231.7652 vs. 213, 500, 576.8; also at 338.926 vs. 352.745, 500; also at 500 vs. 001*

### SUMMARY

- 500.2-.8 [Physical sciences, space sciences, groups of people]
- 501 Philosophy and theory
- 502 Miscellany
- 503-506 Standard subdivisions
- 507 Education, research, related topics
- 508 Natural history
- 509 History, geographic treatment, biography
  
- 510 Mathematics
  - .1 Philosophy and theory
  - 511 General principles of mathematics
  - 512 Algebra
  - 513 Arithmetic
  - 514 Topology
  - 515 Analysis
  - 516 Geometry
  - 518 Numerical analysis
  - 519 Probabilities and applied mathematics
  
- 520 Astronomy and allied sciences
  - 521 Celestial mechanics
  - 522 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials
  - 523 Specific celestial bodies and phenomena
  - 525 Earth (Astronomical geography)
  - 526 Mathematical geography
  - 527 Celestial navigation
  - 528 Ephemerides
  - 529 Chronology

- 530           **Physics**  
   .01-.09       **Standard subdivisions**  
   .1-.8           **[Theories, mathematical physics, states of matter, instrumentation, measurement]**
- 531           **Classical mechanics**  
532           **Fluid mechanics**  
533           **Pneumatics (Gas mechanics)**  
534           **Sound and related vibrations**  
535           **Light and related radiation**  
536           **Heat**  
537           **Electricity and electronics**  
538           **Magnetism**  
539           **Modern physics**
- 540           **Chemistry and allied sciences**  
   .1-.9       **Standard subdivisions**
- 541           **Physical chemistry**  
542           **Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials**  
543           **Analytical chemistry**  
546           **Inorganic chemistry**  
547           **Organic chemistry**  
548           **Crystallography**  
549           **Mineralogy**
- 550           **Earth sciences**  
551           **Geology, hydrology, meteorology**  
552           **Petrology**  
553           **Economic geology**  
554-559       **Earth sciences by specific continents, countries, localities in modern world; extraterrestrial worlds**
- 560           **Paleontology**  
   .1-.9       **Standard subdivisions; stratigraphic paleontology; special topics of paleontology and paleozoology**
- 561           **Paleobotany; fossil microorganisms**  
562           **Fossil invertebrates**  
563           **Miscellaneous fossil marine and seashore invertebrates**  
564           **Fossil Mollusca and Molluscoidea**  
565           **Fossil Arthropoda**  
566           **Fossil Chordata**  
567           **Fossil cold-blooded vertebrates**  
568           **Fossil Aves (birds)**  
569           **Fossil Mammalia**
- 570           **Biology**  
   .1-.9       **Standard subdivisions**
- 571           **Physiology and related subjects**  
572           **Biochemistry**  
573           **Specific physiological systems in animals, regional histology and physiology in animals**
- 575           **Specific parts of and physiological systems in plants**  
576           **Genetics and evolution**  
577           **Ecology**  
578           **Natural history of organisms and related subjects**  
579           **Natural history of microorganisms, fungi, algae**

- 580      **Plants**  
       .1–9      **Standard subdivisions**  
 581      **Specific topics in natural history of plants**  
 582      **Plants noted for specific vegetative characteristics and flowers**  
 583      **Magnoliopsida (Dicotyledons)**  
 584      **Liliopsida (Monocotyledons)**  
 585      **Pinophyta (Gymnosperms)**  
 586      **Cryptogamia (Seedless plants)**  
 587      **Pteridophyta**  
 588      **Bryophyta**

- 590      **Animals**  
       .1–9      **Standard subdivisions**  
 591      **Specific topics in natural history of animals**  
 592      **Invertebrates**  
 593      **Miscellaneous marine and seashore invertebrates**  
 594      **Mollusca and Molluscoidea**  
 595      **Arthropoda**  
 596      **Chordata**  
 597      **Cold-blooded vertebrates**  
 598      **Aves (Birds)**  
 599      **Mammalia (Mammals)**

## .2      **Physical sciences**

*For astronomy and allied sciences, see 520; for physics, see 530; for chemistry and allied sciences, see 540; for earth sciences, see 550*

## .5      **Space sciences**

*For astronomy, see 520; for earth sciences in other worlds, see 550. For space sciences aspects of a specific subject, see the subject, plus notation 0919 from Table 1, e.g., chemical reactions in space 541.390919*

*See Manual at 520 vs. 500.5, 523.1, 530.1, 919.9*

## .8      **Groups of people**

Add to base number 500.8 the numbers following —08 in notation 081–089 from Table 1, e.g., women in science 500.82

## 501      **Philosophy and theory**

Class scientific method as a general research technique in 001.42; class scientific method applied in the natural sciences in 507.21

## 502      **Miscellany**

### .8      **Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials**

Notation 028 from Table 1 as modified below

**.82      Microscopy**

Including photomicrography, stereology

Class here microscopes; interdisciplinary works on microscopy

Class interdisciplinary works on photomicrography in 778.31

*For manufacture of microscopes, see 681.413. For microscopy in a specific subject, see the subject, plus notation 028 from Table 1, e.g., microscopy in archaeology 930.1028*

**.823      Compound microscopy**

Class stereology with compound microscopes in 502.82

**.825      Electron microscopy**

Class stereology with electron microscopes in 502.82

**.84      Apparatus, equipment, materials**

Do not use for microscopes; class in 502.82

**503      Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances****[504]      [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 16

**505      Serial publications****506      Organizations and management****507      Education, research, related topics****.2      Research**

Class research covering the sciences in the broad sense of all knowledge in 001.4

*See Manual at 500 vs. 001*

**.21      Research methods**

Class scientific method as a general research technique in 001.42

**.8      Use of apparatus and equipment in study and teaching**

Class here science fair projects, science projects in schools

**508      Natural history**

Do not use for groups of people; class in 500.8

Class here description and surveys of phenomena in nature

Class natural history of organisms in 578

*See Manual at 333.7–333.9 vs. 508, 913–919, 930–990; also at 578 vs. 304.2, 508, 910*

- .09 History and biography  
Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 508.3–508.9

**.2 Seasons**

Class here interdisciplinary works on seasons

*For a specific aspect of seasons, see the aspect, e.g., effect of seasons on organisms 577.23*

**.3 Areas, regions, places in general; specific continents, countries, localities in ancient world**

- .31 Areas, regions, places in general

Add to base number 508.31 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., natural history of the sea 508.3162

- .33 Specific continents, countries, localities in ancient world

Add to base number 508.33 the numbers following —3 in notation 31–39 from Table 2, e.g., natural history of ancient Greece 508.338

**.4–9 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world**

Add to base number 508 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., natural history of Brazil 508.81

**509 History, geographic treatment, biography**

Class history, geographic treatment, biography of natural phenomena in 508

**510 Mathematics**

Class here pure mathematics

*See Manual at 510; also at 510, T1—0151 vs. 003, T1—011; also at 510, T1—0151 vs. 004—006, T1—0285*

**SUMMARY**

- 510.1 Philosophy and theory**  
**511 General principles of mathematics**  
**512 Algebra**  
**513 Arithmetic**  
**514 Topology**  
**515 Analysis**  
**516 Geometry**  
**518 Numerical analysis**  
**519 Probabilities and applied mathematics**

**.1 Philosophy and theory**

Including metamathematics

Class mathematical logic in 511.3

**511 General principles of mathematics**

Class general principles applied to a specific branch of mathematics with the branch, e.g., finite geometry 516.11

## SUMMARY

- 511.1 **Finite mathematics**
- .3 **Mathematical logic (Symbolic logic)**
- .4 **Approximations and expansions**
- .5 **Graph theory**
- .6 **Combinatorics (Combinatorial analysis)**
- .8 **Mathematical models (Mathematical simulation)**

**.1 Finite mathematics**

Class here discrete mathematics

*For a specific aspect of finite mathematics, see the aspect, e.g., finite groups 512.23*

*See Manual at 004.0151 vs. 511.1, 511.35*

**.3 Mathematical logic (Symbolic logic)**

Including logic operators, truth tables; axiom of choice, completeness theorem, decidability, formal languages, Gödel's theorem, type theory; combinatory logic, intermediate logic

Class here formal logic, propositional calculus (sentential calculus), predicate calculus; first-order logic, higher-order logic; axioms, hypotheses; interdisciplinary works on logic

Class formal logic, propositional calculus (sentential calculus), predicate calculus, first-order logic, logic operators, truth tables from the perspective of philosophical logic in 160

*For philosophical logic, see 160; for category theory, see 512.62*

**.31 Nonclassical logic**

Including abduction; default, defeasible, nonmonotonic logic; linear, paraconsistent, relevance, substructural logic

Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 511.31 in the number coming last, e.g., conditional probability 511.318 (*not* 511.317)

*For intuitionistic logic, see 511.36*

**.312 Many-valued logic (Multiple-valued logic)****.313 Fuzzy logic**

Class here fuzzy mathematics, fuzzy systems

Class fuzzy sets in 511.3223

**.314 Modal logic**

Including alethic, deontic, dynamic, epistemic, provability, temporal logic; possible worlds

**.317 Conditional logic**

Including counterfactuals

- .318 Probabilistic logic  
*See also 161 for induction; also 519.2 for applied mathematical probabilities*
- .32 Sets  
*For point sets, see 511.33; for partially ordered sets, see 511.332*
- .322 Set theory  
 Including axiomatic set theory, cardinal numbers, combinatorial set theory, continuum hypothesis, transfinite numbers  
*For natural numbers, see 512.72*
- .322 3 Fuzzy sets
- .324 Set algebra  
 Class here Boolean algebra
- .326 Functions and relations  
 Including automorphisms, equations, isomorphisms, variables  
 Class here mappings, transformations
- .33 Order, lattices, ordered algebraic structures  
 Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading  
 Including point sets  
*See also 511.326 for functions and relations*
- .332 Partially ordered sets
- .34 Model theory  
*See also 511.8 for mathematical models*
- .35 Recursion theory  
 Including cellular automata, lambda calculus, Petri nets, recursive functions  
 Class here automata theory, machine theory, sequential machines, Turing machines  
 Class computer mathematics in 004.0151  
*See Manual at 004.0151 vs. 511.1, 511.35*
- .352 Recursive functions  
 Including NP-complete problems  
 Class here computability, computable functions, computational complexity
- .36 Proof theory and constructive mathematics  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
 Including intuitionistic logic, intuitionistic mathematics

**.4      Approximations and expansions**

Class numerical approximation in 518.5; class stochastic approximation in 519.623

**.42      Methods**

Including curve fitting, least squares

**.422      Interpolation****.422 3      Splines****.43      Error analysis****.5      Graph theory**

Including network theory

Class interdisciplinary works on network theory in 003.72; class matching theory in 511.66

*See also 518.23 for nomography*

**.52      Trees****.54      Directed graphs (Digraphs)**

Including tournaments

**.56      Coloring of graphs**

Class here map coloring

**.6      Combinatorics (Combinatorial analysis)**

Including algebraic combinatorics; combinatorial configurations and designs; matroids

Class graph theory in 511.5; class design of experiments in 519.57

**.62      Enumeration****.64      Permutations and combinations**

Including Latin and magic squares

**.65      Choice**

*See also 511.3 for axiom of choice; also 519.3 for decision making in game theory*

**.66      Extremal combinatorics**

Including matching theory

Class here maxima, minima

**.8      Mathematical models (Mathematical simulation)**

*See also 511.34 for model theory*

Algorithms relocated to 518.1

## 512 Algebra

Class here universal algebra, modern algebra (abstract algebra combined with number theory)

Class foundations of algebra in 512.9

*For numerical algebra, see 518.42*

### SUMMARY

<b>512.001–.009</b>	<b>Standard subdivisions</b>
.02	Abstract algebra
.1	Algebra combined with other branches of mathematics
.2	Groups and group theory
.3	Fields
.4	Rings
.5	Linear algebra
.6	Category theory, homological algebra, K-theory
.7	Number theory
.9	Foundations of algebra

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions

.02 Abstract algebra

*For subdivisions of abstract algebra, see 512.2–512.5*

**.1 Algebra combined with other branches of mathematics**

*For arithmetic and algebra, see 513.12*

*See Manual at 510: Combination of topics*

.12 Algebra and Euclidean geometry

.13 Algebra and trigonometry

.14 Algebra and analytic geometry

.15 Algebra and calculus

### > 512.2–512.5 Subdivisions of abstract algebra

Class comprehensive works in 512.02

**.2 Groups and group theory**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here cosets, subgroups

*For Brauer groups, see 512.46; for topological and related algebras and groups, see 512.55; for groups, semigroups, groupoids viewed as categories, see 512.62; for algebraic topology, see 514.2*

.21 Permutation groups

.22 Representations of groups

- .23      Finite groups  
             *For finite Abelian groups, see 512.25*
- .25      Abelian groups (Commutative groups)  
             Including cyclic groups  
             Class here finite Abelian groups
- .27      Semigroups
- .28      Groupoids
- .3      Fields**  
             Class here field theory  
             Class linear algebra in 512.5; class differential algebras in 512.56; class number theory in 512.7
- .32      Galois theory
- .4      Rings**  
             Including algebras based on group properties, flexible algebras, free algebras, subrings; extension theory  
             Class here integral domains, radical theory  
             Class algebras defined by dimension of space in 512.5; class topological algebras in 512.55  
             *For fields, see 512.3*
- .42      Modules and ideals
- .44      Commutative rings  
             Class here commutative algebras
- .46      Associative rings  
             Including Brauer groups  
             Class here associative algebras, noncommutative algebras, noncommutative rings
- .48      Nonassociative rings  
             Including Jordan algebras  
             Class here nonassociative algebras
- .482     Lie algebras and groups
- .5      Linear algebra**  
             Including Cayley algebra, multidimensional algebra, multilinear algebra, quaternions  
             Class here linear algebra combined with analytic geometry; vector algebra  
             Class foundations of algebra in 512.9; class analysis combined with linear algebra in 515.14; class numerical linear algebra in 518.43

- .52      Vector spaces  
           Class bilinear forms in 512.944; class topological vector spaces in 515.73
- .55      Topological and related algebras and groups  
           Standard subdivisions are added for topological and related algebras and groups together, for topological algebras alone, for topological groups alone  
           Including Fréchet, Hopf, reductive, Stein, uniform algebras and their groups  
           *For Lie algebras and groups, see 512.482; for differential algebras, see 512.56; for factor algebras, see 512.57; for homological algebra, see 512.64*  
           *See also 512.62 for category theory; also 512.64 for algebraic K-theory; also 514.2 for algebraic topology*
- .554     Banach algebras
- .556     Self-adjoint operator algebras  
           Including  $C^*$ -algebras, Von Neumann algebras,  $W^*$ -algebras  
           Class here operator algebras
- .56      Differential algebras  
           Class here difference algebras
- .57      Factor algebras  
           Including Clifford, exterior, spinor, tensor algebras
- .6      Category theory, homological algebra, K-theory**
- .62      Category theory  
           Including Abelian categories; functors, morphisms, toposes
- .64      Homological algebra
- .66      K-theory  
           Including algebraic K-theory  
           *For topological K-theory, see 514.23*
- .7      Number theory**  
           Class numerical methods in 518.47  
           *For theory of equations, see 512.94*
- .72      Elementary number theory  
           Including congruences, continued fractions, Diophantine equations, divisibility, factorization, Fibonacci numbers, integers, natural numbers, operations, power residues, quadratic residues, residues, roots, sequences of integers
- .723     Prime numbers

- .73 Analytic number theory  
Including Diophantine approximations, distribution theory of prime numbers, functions, L-functions, modular forms, multiplicative properties, number theoretic functions, partitions, Riemann hypothesis, sieves, transcendental numbers, Zeta function
- .74 Algebraic number theory  
Including algebraic function theory, class groups, class numbers, discriminants, Fermat's last theorem, field extensions, fields, ideals, p-adic numbers, quadratic forms, reciprocity, rings, unit theory  
*For factorization, see 512.72*
- .75 Geometry of numbers
- .76 Probabilistic number theory
- .78 Specific fields of numbers
- .782 Rational numbers  
Including specific rational numbers which are not integers  
Class rational functions in 512.96
- .784 Algebraic numbers  
Including specific algebraic numbers which are not rational numbers
- .786 Real numbers  
Class transcendental numbers in 512.73; class real functions in 515.8
- .788 Complex numbers  
Class here imaginary numbers  
Class complex functions in 515.9
- .9 Foundations of algebra**  
Class algebra combined with other branches of mathematics in 512.1
- [.900 1–.900 9] Standard subdivisions  
Relocated to 512.901–512.909
- .901–.909 Standard subdivisions [*formerly* 512.9001–512.9009]
- .92 Algebraic operations  
Class here addition, subtraction, multiplication, division
- .922 Exponents and logarithms
- .923 Root extraction  
Including factorization
- .924 Approximation, ratio, proportion
- .94 Theory of equations
- .942 Specific types and systems of equations

- .942 2 Polynomial equations
  - Including binomial, cubic, quartic equations
- .942 22 Quadratic equations
- .942 6 Simultaneous equations
- .943 Determinants and matrices
- .943 2 Determinants
- .943 4 Matrices
  - Class determinants of matrices in 512.9432
  - For eigenvalues and eigenvectors, see 512.9436*
- .943 6 Eigenvalues and eigenvectors
  - Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .944 Theory of forms and algebraic invariant theory
  - Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .96 Algebra of non-equation functions
  - Including rational functions
  - For inequalities, see 512.97*

.97 Inequalities

## 513 Arithmetic

Including numeracy

Class numerical methods in 518.45

### .1 Arithmetic combined with other branches of mathematics

*See Manual at 510: Combination of topics*

.12 Arithmetic and algebra

.13 Arithmetic and geometry

.14 Arithmetic, algebra, geometry

### .2 Arithmetic operations

*For approximations, see 511.4*

.21 Basic operations

.211 Addition

Including counting

.212 Subtraction

.213 Multiplication

.214 Division

- .22 Exponents and logarithms
- .23 Root extraction
  - Including factorization; square root, cube root
- .24 Ratio and proportion
- .245 Percentage
- .26 Fractions
  - For ratio, see 513.24; for percentage, see 513.245*
  - See also 512.782 for rational numbers*
- .265 Decimal fractions
- .5 Numeration systems**
  - Including base 3, 5, 20 systems
- .52 Binary system (Base 2 system)
- .55 Decimal system (Base 10 system)
  - Class decimal fractions in 513.265
- .6 Modular arithmetic**
- .9 Rapid calculations**
  - Class here mental arithmetic, ready reckoners, shortcuts

## 514 Topology

Class here analysis situs, homeomorphisms, homogeneous spaces, mappings

Class topology combined with analysis in 515.13; class topology combined with geometry in 516

*For topological vector spaces, see 515.73*

- .2 Algebraic topology**
  - See also 512.55 for topological algebras*
- .22 Combinatorial topology
- .223 Combinatorial elements
  - Including simplexes, complexes, nets
- .224 Structures and spaces
  - Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
  - Including braids, fiber bundles, fiber spaces, links, path spaces, sheaves, vector bundles
- .224 2 Knots

- .23 Homology and cohomology theories  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
 Including topological K-theory  
 Class homological algebra in 512.64; class K-theory in 512.66  
*See also 512.55 for topological groups*
- .24 Homotopy theory  
 Including retracts, shape theory
- .3 Topology of spaces**  
 Class here metric topology
- .32 Systems and spaces  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .322 Point set topology (General topology)
- .323 Proximity spaces
- .325 Metric spaces
- .34 Topological manifolds  
 Class here manifold topology  
*For differentiable manifolds, see 516.36*
- .7 Analytic topology**
- .72 Differential topology  
 Including cobordism theory, differentiable mappings, foliations
- .74 Global analysis  
 Including Hodge theory, index theorems  
*For differentiable manifolds, see 516.36*  
*See also 515.39 for dynamical systems*
- .742 Fractals
- .744 Catastrophes
- .746 Singularity theory  
 Class here comprehensive works on singularities  
*For singularities in a specific subject, see the subject, e.g.,  
 singularities in functions of several complex variable 515.94*

## 515 Analysis

Class here calculus; comprehensive works on the theory of functions

Class probabilities in 519.2

*For numerical analysis, see 518. For theory of a specific function or group of functions, see the function or group of functions, e.g., analysis of continued fractions 512.72*

### SUMMARY

- 515.1 Analysis and calculus combined with other branches of mathematics
- .2 General aspects of analysis
- .3 Differential calculus and equations
- .4 Integral calculus and equations
- .5 Special functions
- .6 Other analytic methods
- .7 Functional analysis
- .8 Functions of real variables
- .9 Functions of complex variables

#### .1 Analysis and calculus combined with other branches of mathematics

*For algebra and calculus, see 512.15*

*See Manual at 510: Combination of topics*

- .13 Analysis and topology
- .14 Analysis and linear algebra
- .15 Calculus and analytic geometry
- .16 Calculus and trigonometry

#### .2 General aspects of analysis

Class a specific application with the application, e.g., operations on functions of real variables 515.823

- .22 Properties of functions
- .222 Continuity, dimension, limit
  - Class here continuous functions

#### .23 Operations on functions

*For differentiation, see 515.33; for integration, see 515.43*

#### .24 Sequences and series

Standard subdivisions are added for sequences and series together, for sequences alone

Including algebraic progressions, arithmetic progressions, geometric progressions

Class here infinite processes

- .243 Series  
 Including summability  
 Class here infinite series  
 Class number theory of continued fractions in 512.72
- .243 2 Power series
- .243 3 Fourier and harmonic analysis  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
 Including wavelets  
 Class here Fourier series  
 Class Fourier transforms in 515.723  
*For abstract harmonic analysis, see 515.785*
- .25 Equations and functions  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .252 Equations and functions by degree  
 Including linear, nonlinear, quadratic equations
- .253 Equations and functions by property  
 Including homogeneous, indeterminate, reciprocal equations
- .26 Inequalities
- .3 Differential calculus and equations**  
 Class differential topology in 514.72; class differential operators in 515.7242; class differential geometry in 516.36; class comprehensive works on differential and integral calculus and equations in 515
- .33 Differential calculus  
 Including ordinary, partial, total differentiations; total and directional derivatives, mean value theorems  
 Class vector differentiation in 515.63; class numerical differentiation in 518.53; class probability calculus in 519.2
- .35 Differential equations  
 Class here Cauchy problem; orders, degrees; comprehensive works on boundary-value problems  
 Class mixed equations in 515.38; class numerical solutions in 518.63  
*For dynamical systems, see 515.39 For boundary-value problems of finite differences, see 515.62*
- .352 Ordinary differential equations
- .353 Partial differential equations
- .353 3 Elliptic equations

- .353 4           Parabolic equations
- .353 5           Hyperbolic equations
- .354            Linear differential equations  
                   Class linear ordinary differential equations in 515.352; class linear partial  
                   differential equations in 515.353
- .355            Nonlinear differential equations  
                   Class nonlinear ordinary differential equations in 515.352; class  
                   nonlinear partial differential equations in 515.353
- .357            Inverse problems  
                   Class inverse problems of specific kinds of equations in  
                   515.352–515.355
- .36             Differential inequalities
- .37             Differential forms
- .38             Mixed equations  
                   Including differential-difference and integro-differential equations
- .39             Dynamical systems  
                   Including chaos theory, Hamiltonian systems
- .392            Stability theory  
                   Including bifurcation theory, perturbation theory
- .4             Integral calculus and equations**  
                   Class special functions in 515.5; class integral transforms in 515.723; class  
                   integral geometry in 516.362
- .42             Theory of measure and integration  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Class here abstract measure theory  
                   *For functionals, see 515.7*  
                   Ergodic theory relocated to 515.48
- .43             Integral calculus  
                   Including integration, summation, arc length, convolutions, cubature,  
                   quadrature; Cauchy, definite, Denjoy, Green, Haar, improper, Lebesgue,  
                   line, Poisson, Poisson-Stieltjes, proper, Riemann, Stokes', surface integrals  
                   Class vector integration in 515.63; class numerical integration in 518.54;  
                   class probability integration in 519.2
- .45             Integral equations  
                   Class mixed equations in 515.38; class numerical solutions in 518.66
- .46             Integral inequalities
- .48             Ergodic theory

**.5 Special functions****.52 Eulerian integrals**

Including beta and gamma functions

**.53 Harmonic functions**

Including Bessel, Hankel, Laplace, Legendre, Neumann functions

**.54 Mathieu functions****.55 Orthogonal polynomials**

Including Chebyshev, Hermite, hypergeometric, Jacobi, Lagrange, Laguerre, Legendre polynomials

**.56 Zeta function**

Class application of Riemann zeta function with respect to prime number theory in 512.73

**.6 Other analytic methods***For functional analysis, see 515.7***.62 Calculus of finite differences**

Class here boundary-value problems when either limit has a numerical value

**.625 Difference equations**

Class difference-differential equations in 515.38

**.63 Vector, tensor, spinor analysis**

Standard subdivisions are added for vector, tensor, spinor analysis together; for vector analysis alone; for tensor analysis alone

Including vector and tensor calculus

Class algebraic vector analysis in 512.52; class geometric vector analysis in 516.182

**.64 Calculus of variations****.642 Control theory**

Class here optimal control

Class optimization in 519.6

*See also 003.5 for interdisciplinary works on control theory; also 629.8312 for control theory in engineering***.7 Functional analysis**

Class here comprehensive works on real-valued, complex-valued, vector-valued functions

Class theory of measure and integration in 515.42; class potential theory in 515.9

*For topological algebras, see 512.55; for functions of real variables, see 515.8; for functions of complex variables, see 515.9*

- .72           Operational calculus  
                   Class a specific application with the application, e.g., differential operators  
                   in topological vector spaces 515.73
- .722           Spectral and representation theories
- .722 2           Spectral theory  
                   Class spectral theory of a specific kind of operator with the kind of  
                   operator, e.g., spectral theory of differential operators 515.7242
- .722 3           Representation theory  
                   Class abstract harmonic analysis in 515.42
- .723           Transforms (Integral operators, integral transforms)  
                   Including Fourier, Hilbert, Laplace, Legendre, Radon, Z transforms
- .724           Operator theory  
                   *For integral operators, see 515.723*
- .724 2           Differential operators  
                   Including elliptic operators
- .724 6           Linear operators  
                   Class linear integral operators in 515.723; class linear differential  
                   operators in 515.7242
- .724 8           Nonlinear operators  
                   Class here nonlinear functional analysis  
                   Class nonlinear integral operators in 515.723; class nonlinear  
                   differential operators in 515.7242
- .73           Topological vector spaces  
                   Including spaces of analytic functions; spaces of continuous functions;  
                   spaces of measurable functions, e.g.,  $L^p$  spaces, Orlicz spaces; Hermitian  
                   (unitary) and Riesz spaces  
                   Class here linear topological spaces  
                   *For functionals, see 515.7*
- .732           Banach spaces  
                   Class here normed linear spaces  
                   *For Hilbert spaces, see 515.733*
- .733           Hilbert spaces  
                   Class here inner product spaces
- .75           Functional equations  
                   Class difference equations in 515.625
- .78           Special topics of functional analysis

- .782      Distribution theory  
             Including duality, Sobolev spaces  
             Class here generalized functions
- .785      Abstract harmonic analysis  
             Including Fourier analysis on groups
- .8      Functions of real variables**  
             Class here real analysis  
             Class combined treatment of functions of real and complex variables in 515.9  
             *See also 512.786 for real numbers*
- .82      General aspects of functions of real variables  
             Add to base number 515.82 the numbers following 515.2 in 515.22–515.26,  
             e.g., expansion of functions 515.823  
             Class a specific application with the application, e.g., expansion of functions  
             of several real variables 515.84
- .83      Functions of one real variable  
             Including fractional calculus
- .84      Functions of several real variables
- .88      Specific types of real variable functions  
             Including real variable analytic functions
- .882      Convex functions  
             Class here convex analysis
- .9      Functions of complex variables**  
             Class here automorphic functions, complex analysis, conformal mapping  
             *See also 512.788 for complex numbers*
- .92      General aspects of functions of complex variables  
             Add to base number 515.92 the numbers following 515.2 in 515.22–515.26,  
             e.g., expansion of functions 515.923  
             Class a specific application with the application, e.g., expansion of functions  
             of several complex variables 515.94
- .93      Functions of one complex variable  
             Including Riemann surfaces
- .94      Functions of several complex variables  
             Including singularities in functions of several complex variables,  
             Teichmüller spaces  
             Class comprehensive works in singularities in 514.746

- .942 Analytic spaces  
       Generalization of Riemann surfaces to n-dimensional spaces
- .946 Complex manifolds
- .96 Potential theory  
       *For a specific application of potential theory, see the application, e.g.,  
       harmonic analysis and potential theory 515.2433*
- .98 Specific types of complex variable functions  
       Including entire, holomorphic, pseudoanalytic functions
- .982 Meromorphic functions
- .983 Elliptic functions  
       Class special elliptic functions in 515.5
- .984 Theta function

## 516 Geometry

Class here geometry combined with topology

Class algebra combined with geometry in 512.1; class arithmetic combined with geometry in 513.13; class analysis combined with geometry in 515.1; class geometric probability in 519.2

*For topology, see 514*

### SUMMARY

- 516.001–.009**            **Standard subdivisions**  
   **.02–.08**            **[Classical and modern geometry; manifolds, convex sets]**  
   **.1**            **General aspects of geometry**  
   **.2**            **Euclidean geometry**  
   **.3**            **Analytic geometries**  
   **.4**            **Affine geometry**  
   **.5**            **Projective geometry**  
   **.6**            **Abstract descriptive geometry**  
   **.9**            **Non-Euclidean geometries**

- .001–.009            Standard subdivisions
- .02            Classical geometry
- .04            Modern geometry
- .07            Manifolds

*For topological manifolds, see 514.34*

- .08            Convex sets  
       Class here convex geometry

- .1 **General aspects of geometry**
  - Including symmetry
  - Class here automorphisms, metric geometry, transformations
  - Class general aspects applied to a specific geometry with the geometry, e.g., conic sections in Euclidean geometry 516.2152
- .11 Finite geometry
  - Class here discrete geometry
- .12 Incidence geometry
- .13 Combinatorial geometry
- .132 Tilings
  - Class here tessellations
- .15 Geometric configurations
  - Including mensuration, patterns, sizes, space
  - Class here measures, shapes
  - Class geometric configurations in a specific subject with the subject, e.g., measuring the sphere in solid geometry 516.23
- .152 One-dimensional configurations
  - Including angles, circles, conic sections, lines, spirals
  - Class here curves
- .154 Two-dimensional configurations
  - Including cones, cylinders, disks, polygons, spheres, squares, triangles
  - Class here planes, surfaces
  - See also 516.22 for plane geometry*
- .156 Three-dimensional configurations
  - Including balls, cubes, polyhedra, prisms, pyramids
  - Class here solids
  - See also 516.23 for solid geometry*
- .158 Four-dimensional and higher-dimensional configurations
  - Including hypercubes, polytopes
- .16 Coordinate systems
  - Including Cartesian, curvilinear, homogeneous systems
- .18 Nonpoint base geometries
- .182 Vector geometry
  - Class vector algebra in 512.5
- .183 Line geometry

**.2 Euclidean geometry**

Class here congruences, similarity, metric geometry

Class a specific type of Euclidean geometry with the type, e.g., Euclidean analytic geometry 516.3

.200 1--200 9 Standard subdivisions

.204 Famous problems

Including trisecting an angle, squaring the circle, doubling the cube

.21 General aspects of Euclidean geometry

Add to base number 516.21 the numbers following 516.1 in 516.12--516.18, e.g., conic sections 516.2152

Class a specific application with the application, e.g., conic sections in plane geometry 516.22

.22 Plane geometry

Including Pythagorean theorem

.23 Solid geometry

.24 Trigonometry

.242 Plane trigonometry

.244 Spherical trigonometry

.246 Trigonometric functions

Class analytic trigonometry in 516.34

**.3 Analytic geometries**

Class linear algebra combined with analytic geometry in 512.5; class analytic affine geometry in 516.4; class analytic projective geometry in 516.5

.32 Plane analytic geometry

.33 Solid analytic geometry

.34 Analytic trigonometry

Plane and spherical

.35 Algebraic geometry

Geometries based on linear algebra

Including enumerative geometry, lattice point geometry, singularities

Class here birational and conformal transformations, connections, dual geometries, intersections; bilinear and sesquilinear forms; complex multiplication

Class comprehensive works in singularities in 514.746

- .352      Curves and surfaces on projective and affine planes  
             Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
             Including Mordell conjecture  
             Class here theory of curves
- .353      Algebraic varieties of higher dimensions  
             Including Abelian varieties
- .36        Differential and integral geometry  
             Standard subdivisions are added for differential and integral geometry  
             together, for differential geometry alone  
             Including symplectic manifolds  
             Class here curves, differentiable manifolds, surfaces, torsion  
             *For metric differential geometries, see 516.37*
- .362      Integral geometry (Global differential geometry)  
             Including arc length, curvature, evolutes, geodesics, involutes, tangent  
             space at a point; analytic, convex, developable, minimal, ruled surfaces;  
             analytic, asymptotic, minimal curves; Riemannian manifolds, symmetric  
             spaces  
             Class here modern differential geometry  
             *For fiber bundles, fiber spaces, see 514.224*
- .37        Metric differential geometries
- .373      Riemannian geometry  
             Including Sasakian geometry
- .374      Minkowski geometry  
             Including Einstein geometry
- .375      Finsler geometry
- .376      Cartan geometry
- .4        **Affine geometry**  
             Class affine differential geometry in 516.36
- .5        **Projective geometry**  
             Class projective differential geometry in 516.36
- .6        **Abstract descriptive geometry**  
             *See also 604.2015166 for descriptive geometry in technical drawing*

**.9 Non-Euclidean geometries**

Including Bolyai, elliptic, Gauss, hyperbolic, inversive, Lobachevski geometries; imbeddings of non-Euclidean spaces in other geometries

Class a specific type of non-Euclidean geometry with the type, e.g., non-Euclidean analytic geometries 516.3

**[517] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 17

**518 Numerical analysis**

Class here applied numerical analysis, numerical calculations, numerical mathematics

Class approximations and expansions in 511.4

*For numerical statistical mathematics, see 519.5*

**.1 Algorithms****.2 Specific numerical methods**

Class specific numerical methods applied to a particular field in 518.4–518.6

**.23 Graphic methods**

Including nomography

**.25 Finite element analysis**

Class here finite strip method, finite volume method

**.26 Iterative methods****.28 Probabilistic methods**

Class here statistical methods, stochastic methods

**.282 Monte Carlo method****.4 Numerical methods in algebra, arithmetic, number theory****.42 Numerical methods in algebra**

Class here numerical algebra

*For numerical linear algebra, see 518.43*

**.43 Numerical linear algebra****.45 Numerical methods in arithmetic****.47 Numerical methods in number theory****.5 Numerical approximation****.53 Numerical differentiation****.54 Numerical integration**

**.6 Numerical methods in analysis**

Class here numerical methods in calculus

Class numerical approximation in 518.5

**.63 Numerical solutions of ordinary differential equations**

Including Galerkin method, relaxation methods, Runge-Kutta method

**.64 Numerical solutions of partial differential equations****.66 Numerical solutions of integral equations****519 Probabilities and applied mathematics**

Standard subdivisions are added for probabilities and applied mathematics together; for applied mathematics alone

Class a specific application with the application, e.g., statistics in physics 530.1595, game theory in gambling 795.01

**SUMMARY**

<b>519.2</b>	<b>Probabilities</b>
.3	Game theory
.5	Statistical mathematics
.6	Mathematical optimization
.7	Programming
.8	Special topics of applied mathematics

**.2 Probabilities**

Class here conditional probabilities, geometric probability, probability calculus

Class probabilistic methods of numerical analysis in 518.28; class probabilities applied to statistical mathematics in 519.5

**.22 Stochastic analysis****.23 Random processes (Stochastic processes)**

*For queuing processes, see 519.82*

**.232 Stationary processes**

Including time series

**.233 Markov processes**

Including Markov chains

**.234 Branching processes****.236 Martingales****.24 Probability distribution**

Including binomial distribution, Poisson distribution

- .27 Games of chance (Stochastic games)  
     Class here gambling  
     *See Manual at 795.015192 vs. 519.27*
- .28 Special topics of probabilities
- .282 Random walks
- .287 Expectation and prediction  
     Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
     Including estimation, reliability, renewal theories; Markov risk
- .3 Game theory**  
     Class games of chance in 519.27
- .32 Differential games
- .5 Statistical mathematics**  
     Class here parametric and nonparametric methods  
     *See Manual at 519.5, T1—015195 vs. 001.422, T1—0727*
- .52 Theory of sampling
- .53 Descriptive statistics, multivariate analysis, analysis of variance and covariance  
     Including cluster analysis
- .532 Frequency distributions
- .533 Measures of central tendency  
     Including median, mean, mode  
     Class here averaging
- .534 Measures of deviation  
     Including standard deviation
- .535 Multivariate analysis  
     Including latent structure analysis  
     *For regression analysis, see 519.536; for correlation analysis, see 519.537*
- .535 4 Factor analysis  
     Including principal components analysis
- .536 Regression analysis  
     Including autoregression
- .537 Correlation analysis (Association analysis)  
     Including autocorrelation

- .538 Analysis of variance and covariance
  - Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .54 Statistical inference
  - Including bootstrap methods, confidence regions, expectation, nonparametric inference, parametric inference, prediction, resampling methods, sequential analysis
- .542 Decision theory
  - Including Bayesian statistical decision theory
- .544 Estimation theory
- .546 Survival analysis
  - Class here censored observations
- .55 Time-series analysis
- .56 Hypothesis testing
  - Including chi-square test, goodness-of-fit tests
- .57 Design of experiments
  - Including factorial experiment designs
- .6 Mathematical optimization**
  - Class control theory in 515.642
  - For a specific mathematical optimization technique, see the technique, e.g., mathematical programming 519.7*
  - See also 511.65 for choice and decision making in combinatorial analysis*
- .62 Stochastic optimization
- .623 Stochastic approximation
- .625 Genetic algorithms
- .64 Combinatorial optimization
- .7 Programming**
  - .700 1–.700 9 Standard subdivisions
  - .702 Single-stage programming
  - .703 Multistage programming
    - Including dynamic programming
  - .72 Linear programming
  - .76 Nonlinear programming
    - Including convex and quadratic programming
    - Class integer programming in 519.77
  - .77 Integer programming

**.8 Special topics of applied mathematics**

- .82 Queuing  
     Including congestion  
     Class here queuing processes
- .83 Inventory and storage
- .84 Success runs
- .85 Epidemics and fluctuations
- .86 Quality control

**520 Astronomy and allied sciences**

*See Manual at 520 vs. 500.5, 523.1, 530.1, 919.9; also at 520 vs. 523.1, 523.112, 523.8*

**SUMMARY**

- |     |   |
|-----|---|
| 521 | Celestial mechanics                                     |
| 522 | Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials |
| 523 | Specific celestial bodies and phenomena                 |
| 525 | Earth (Astronomical geography)                          |
| 526 | Mathematical geography                                  |
| 527 | Celestial navigation                                    |
| 528 | Ephemerides   |
| 529 | Chronology  |
- [.153] Physical principles  
     Do not use; class in 523.01
- [.154] Chemical principles  
     Do not use; class in 523.02
- [.28] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials  
     Do not use; class in 522

**> 521–525 Astronomy**

Class comprehensive works in 520

*For geodetic astronomy, see 526.6*

**521 Celestial mechanics**

Including equilibrium, problems of three and n bodies

Class here motion

Class applications to specific celestial bodies and phenomena in 523

**.1 Gravitation**

**.3 Orbits**

Class here Kepler's laws

**.4 Perturbations****.9 Precession**

Including nutation

Class corrections of precession in 522.9

**522 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials**

Class here astrometry, positional and practical astronomy

Class positional astronomy as an aspect of mathematical geography in 526.6

[.028] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use for general works; class in 522. Do not use for specific auxiliary techniques and procedures; class in 522.8

**> 522.1–522.6 Practical astronomy**

Class comprehensive works in 522

*For corrections, see 522.9; for practical astronomy of specific celestial bodies and phenomena, see 523*

**.1 Observatories**

Optical and nonoptical

.109 History and biography

Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 522.19

.19 Geographic treatment

Add to base number 522.19 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., space observatories 522.1919, observatories in China 522.1951

**.2 Astronomical instruments**

Including meridional instruments [*formerly* 522.3], extrameridional instruments [*formerly* 522.4]

Class here movable nonspace telescopes; comprehensive works on telescopes

*For auxiliary instruments, see 522.5; for astronomical instruments used in nonoptical astronomy, see 522.68; for sextants, see 527.0284*

.29 Fixed-location and space telescopes

.290 9 History and biography

Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 522.291–522.299

- .291--.299      **Geographic treatment**  
                     Add to base number 522.29 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., fixed  
                     location telescopes in Chile 522.2983
- [.3]      **Meridional instruments**  
                     Relocated to 522.2
- [.4]      **Extrameridional instruments**  
                     Extrameridional instruments relocated to 522.2; sextants relocated to 527.0284
- .5      **Auxiliary instruments**  
                     Including chronographs, chronometers  
                     *For auxiliary instruments in special methods of observation, see 522.6*
- .6      **Special methods of observation**
- .62      Photometry
- .622      Photographic photometry
- .623      Photoelectric photometry
- .63      Photography  
                     *For photographic photometry, see 522.622*
- .65      Polarimetry
- .67      Spectroscopy  
                     Class spectroscopy of a specific celestial body with the body, plus notation  
                     0287 from Table I, e.g., spectroscopy of planets 523.40287
- .68      Nonoptical astronomy  
                     Class here nonoptical telescopes  
                     *For nonoptical observatories, see 522.1*
- .682      Radio astronomy
- .683      Infrared astronomy
- .686      Particle methods of observation
- .686 2      Gamma-ray astronomy
- .686 3      X-ray astronomy
- .7      **Spherical astronomy**  
                     Including celestial reference systems  
                     Class comprehensive works on geodetic coordinates in 526.6

**.8 Specific auxiliary techniques and procedures**

Add to base number 522.8 the numbers following —028 in notation 0285–0289 from Table 1, e.g., testing and measurement 522.87

Class spectroscopy in 522.67

**.9 Corrections**

Corrections of aberration, astronomical refraction, parallax, precession; of instrumental errors

**523 Specific celestial bodies and phenomena**

Including zodiac

Class phenomena of celestial bodies directly comparable to terrestrial phenomena with the terrestrial phenomena in 550, e.g., volcanic activity on Mars 551.21099923

*See Manual at 523 vs. 550*

**SUMMARY**

523.01–.02	[Astrophysics and cosmochemistry]
.1	The universe, galaxies, quasars
.2	Planetary systems
.3	Moon
.4	Planets, asteroids, trans-Neptunian objects of solar system
.5	Meteors, solar wind, zodiacal light
.6	Comets
.7	Sun
.8	Stars
.9	Satellites and rings; eclipses, transits, occultations

**[.001–.009] Standard subdivisions**

Do not use; class in 520.1–520.9

**.01 Astrophysics**

*For celestial mechanics, see 521*

**.013 Heat**

Add to base number 523.013 the numbers following 536 in 536.1–536.7, e.g., heat transfer 523.0132

**.015 Light and related radiation**

Standard subdivisions are added for light and related radiation together, for light alone

**.015 01 Infrared and ultraviolet radiation; philosophy and theory of light and related radiation**

Class here radiation of nonvisible spectral regions

Add to base number 523.01501 the numbers following 535.01 in 535.012–535.019, e.g., infrared radiation 523.015012

Class a specific element of infrared and ultraviolet radiation in 523.0152–523.0156

- .015 1--015 8      Specific aspects of light and related radiation  
                          Add to base number 523.015 the numbers following 535 in  
                          535.1–535.8, e.g., polarization 523.01552
- .018              Electricity and magnetism  
                          Add to base number 523.018 the numbers following 53 in 537–538, e.g.,  
                          magnetism 523.0188
- .019              Molecular, atomic, nuclear physics  
                          Add to base number 523.019 the numbers following 539 in 539.1–539.7,  
                          e.g., cosmic rays 523.0197223
- .02              Cosmochemistry
- .1              The universe, galaxies, quasars**  
                          Standard subdivisions are added for the universe, galaxies, quasars together; for  
                          the universe alone  
                          Class here cosmology  
                          *See also 523.8875 for black holes*  
                          *See Manual at 520 vs. 500.5, 523.1, 530.1, 919.9; also at 520 vs. 523.1,  
                          523.112, 523.8*
- .11              Galaxies and quasars
- .112              Galaxies  
                          *For Milky Way, see 523.113*  
                          *See Manual at 520 vs. 523.1, 523.112, 523.8: Stars and galaxies*
- .112 5            Interstellar and intergalactic matter  
                          Standard subdivisions are added for interstellar and intergalactic  
                          matter together, for interstellar matter alone  
                          Class here cosmic dust  
                          *See also 523.1126 for dark matter*
- .112 6            Dark matter
- .113              Milky Way
- .113 5            Interstellar matter  
                          Including diffuse and planetary nebulas  
                          *For dark matter, see 523.1126*
- .115              Quasars
- .12              Cosmogony  
                          *For expanding universe theories, see 523.18*
- .18              Expanding universe theories  
                          Class here big bang theory

- .19 End of universe theories
- .2 Planetary systems**  
 Class here solar system  
*For specific parts of solar system, see 523.3–523.7*
- .24 Extrasolar systems  
 Class here extrasolar planets
- 
- > **523.3–523.7 Specific parts of solar system**  
 Class comprehensive works in 523.2
- .3 Moon**
- .31 Constants and dimensions  
 Including gravity, size, mass
- .32 Optical, electromagnetic, radioactive, thermal phenomena  
 Including phases
- .33 Orbit and motions  
 Including librations, sidereal month
- .38 Eclipses
- .4 Planets, asteroids, trans-Neptunian objects of solar system**  
 Standard subdivisions are added for planets, asteroids, trans-Neptunian objects of solar system together, for planets of solar system alone  
 Class here comprehensive works on planets, satellites, rings of solar system  
 Add to notation for each number identified by \* the numbers following 523.3 in 523.31–523.33, e.g., orbit of Jupiter 523.453  
*For meteors, see 523.51; for satellites and rings, see 523.98; for transits, occultations, see 523.99; for earth, see 525*  
*See also 523.24 for extrasolar planets*
- .41 \*Mercury
- .42 \*Venus
- .43 \*Mars
- .44 Asteroids (Planetoids)  
 Including Ceres  
 Class comprehensive works on meteors and asteroids in 523.5
- .45 \*Jupiter

\*Add as instructed under 523.4

- .46      \*Saturn
- .47      \*Uranus
- .48      \*Neptune
  - Former heading: Trans-Uranian planets
  - Trans-Neptunian objects relocated to 523.49
- .481     Constants and dimensions
  - Number built according to instructions under 523.4
  - Use of this number for Neptune discontinued; class in 523.48
- .482     Optical, electromagnetic, radioactive, thermal phenomena
  - Number built according to instructions under 523.4
  - Pluto relocated to 523.4922
- .49      Trans-Neptunian objects [*formerly* 523.48]
- .492     Kuiper belt objects
- .492 2    \*Pluto [*formerly* 523.482]
- .494     Scattered disk objects
- .497     Oort cloud objects
- .5      Meteors, solar wind, zodiacal light**
  - Class here interplanetary matter, comprehensive works on meteors and asteroids
  - For asteroids, see 523.44*
- .51      Meteors
  - Class here meteoroids, meteorites
  - For meteor showers, see 523.53*
- .53      Meteor showers
  - Including radiant points
- .58      Solar wind
- .59      Zodiacal light
  - Including counter glow (*gegenschein*)
- .6      Comets**
- .63      Motion and orbits
  - Class motion and orbits of specific comets in 523.64
- .64      Specific comets

\*Add as instructed under 523.4

- [.640 1–.640 9]      Standard subdivisions  
                                  Do not use; class in 523.601–523.609
- .642              Halley's comet
- .66              Physical phenomena and constitution  
                                  Class physical phenomena and constitution of specific comets in 523.64
- .7      Sun**
- .702 1              Tabulated and related materials  
                                  Class sun tables indicating orbits and motions of earth in 525.38
- .71              Constants and dimensions  
                                  Including gravity, size, mass
- .72              Optical, electromagnetic, radioactive, thermal phenomena  
                                  Class here solar energy, solar radiation  
                                  *For phenomena of photosphere, see 523.74; for phenomena of  
                                  chromosphere and corona, see 523.75*  
                                  *See also 523.59 for zodiacal light*
- .73              Motions  
                                  Including apparent motion, rotation
- .74              Photosphere  
                                  Including faculae, solar granulation, sunspots
- .75              Chromosphere and corona  
                                  Including solar flares and prominences  
                                  *See also 523.58 for solar wind*
- .76              Solar interior
- .78              Eclipses
- .8      Stars**  
                                  Class here comprehensive works on stars and galaxies  
                                  *For galaxies, see 523.112; for sun, see 523.7*  
                                  *See also 523.115 for quasars; also 523.24 for extrasolar systems*  
                                  *See Manual at 520 vs. 523.1, 523.112, 523.8: Stars and galaxies*
- [.802 87]              Testing and measurement  
                                  Do not use; class in 523.87

- 
- > 523.81–523.83 Properties and phenomena
- Class comprehensive works in 523.8
- For physical constitution, see 523.86. For properties and phenomena of a specific kind of star or aggregation of stars, see the kind or aggregation, e.g., properties of supernovas 523.84465, properties of spectral types 523.87*
- .81 Constants and dimensions
- Including gravity, size, mass, parallax
- .82 Optical, electromagnetic, radioactive, thermal phenomena
- Class here stellar radiation
- .822 Magnitudes
- .83 Motion
- Including velocity
- .84 Aggregations and variable stars
- Standard subdivisions are added for aggregations and variable stars together, for aggregations alone
- Class here comprehensive works on binary stars and clusters
- For clusters, see 523.85*
- See also 523.112 for galaxies*
- .841 Binary and multiple stars
- Standard subdivisions are added for binary and multiple stars together, for binary stars alone
- Including optical and visual binaries
- Class here astrometric binaries
- For spectroscopic binaries, see 523.842; for eclipsing binaries, see 523.8444*
- .842 Spectroscopic binaries
- .844 Variable stars
- .844 2 Intrinsic variables
- For eruptive variables, see 523.8446*
- .844 25 Pulsating variables
- Class here Cepheids
- For long-period and semiregular variables, see 523.84426; for pulsars, see 523.8874*
- .844 26 Long-period and semiregular variables
- .844 4 Eclipsing binaries (Extrinsic variables)

- .844 6 Eruptive variables  
Including flare stars, novas
- .844 65 Supernovas
- .85 Clusters
- .852 Open clusters
- .855 Globular clusters
- .86 Physical constitution  
Class physical constitution of a specific kind or aggregation of star with the kind or aggregation, e.g., constitution of neutron stars 523.8874
- .87 Spectral types  
Class here spectroscopy, testing and measurement  
Class spectral types representative of specific stages in the evolution of stars in 523.88. Class spectroscopy of a specific kind or aggregation of star with the kind or aggregation, plus notation 0287 from Table 1, e.g., spectroscopy of neutron stars 523.88740287
- .88 Kinds of stars characteristic of stages of stellar evolution  
Including giant (R, N, or S spectral type), main sequence, red dwarf, Wolf-Rayet stars; star formation  
Class here stellar evolution  
*For intrinsic variables, see 523.8442*
- .887 Terminal stages  
Including white dwarfs
- .887 4 Neutron stars  
Class here pulsars
- .887 5 Black holes
- .9 Satellites and rings; eclipses, transits, occultations**
- .91 Transits of Mercury
- .92 Transits of Venus
- .98 Satellites and rings  
Variant name for satellites: moons  
Add to base number 523.98 the numbers following 523.4 in 523.43–523.48, e.g., satellites of Jupiter 523.985, orbits of Jovian satellites 523.9853  
Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
*For earth's moon, see 523.3*

.99 Eclipses, transits, occultations

*For transits of Mercury, see 523.91; for transits of Venus, see 523.92.  
For eclipses of a specific celestial body, see the body, e.g., eclipses of the moon 523.38*

**[524] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 14

**525 Earth (Astronomical geography)**

*For magnetic properties, see 538.7*

**.1 Constants and dimensions**

Including size, shape

Class determination of size and shape in 526.1

*For gravity, see 531.14*

**.2 Optical, radioactive, thermal properties**

**.3 Orbit and motions**

.35 Rotation

.36 Foucault's pendulum

.38 Sun tables

Class here sunrise and sunset tables

**.5 Seasons and zones of latitude**

Standard subdivisions are added for seasons and zones of latitude together, for seasons alone

Limited to astronomical causes of seasons and zones of latitude

Class climatology in 551.6; class interdisciplinary works on seasons in 508.2

**.7 Twilight**

Class here dawn

**526 Mathematical geography**

Class here cartography, map drawing, map making

Class map making for a specific purpose with the purpose, e.g., military map making 623.71

*For astronomical geography, see 525*

*See also 912.014 for map reading*

**.1 Geodesy**

*For geodetic surveying, see 526.3; for geodetic astronomy and geographic positions, see 526.6; for gravity determinations, see 526.7*

- .3 Geodetic surveying**  
 Surveying in which curvature of earth is considered
- .31 Reconnaissance surveys
- .32 Bench marks
- .320 9 History and biography  
 Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 526.321–526.329
- .321–.329 Geographic treatment  
 Add to base number 526.32 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., bench marks in California 526.32794
- .33 Triangulation, trilateration, traversing  
 Standard subdivisions are added for triangulation, trilateration, traversing together; for triangulation alone  
 Including base lines, nets
- .36 Leveling  
 Class here spirit leveling  
*For bench marks, see 526.32; for barometric leveling, see 526.37; for trigonometric leveling, see 526.38*
- .37 Barometric leveling
- .38 Trigonometric leveling
- .6 Geodetic astronomy and geographic positions**  
 Standard subdivisions are added for geodetic astronomy and geographic positions together, for geodetic astronomy alone  
 Class here geodetic aspects of positional astronomy; comprehensive works on geodetic coordinates  
 Class comprehensive works on positional astronomy in 522  
*For coordinates in spherical astronomy, see 522.7*
- .61 Latitude  
*For latitude in celestial navigation, see 527.1*
- .62 Longitude  
*For longitude in celestial navigation, see 527.2*
- .63 Azimuth
- .64 Geographic positions  
 Including effect of irregularities of earth's surface on determining geographic positions
- .7 Gravity determinations**

**.8 Map projections**

Class map reading in 912.014

.82 Conformal projections (Orthomorphic projections)

.85 Equal-area projections (Equivalent projections)

**.9 Surveying**

Class here plane surveying (surveying in which curvature of earth is disregarded), land surveying

Class work of chartered surveyors (United Kingdom), interdisciplinary works on land surveys in 333.08; class engineering surveys in 622–629

*For geodetic surveying, see 526.3*

.98 Topographic surveying

.981 Contour surveying

.982 Photogrammetry

Class here aerial and space surveying

.982.5 Ground photogrammetry (Terrestrial photogrammetry)

.99 Hydrographic surveying

**527 Celestial navigation**

*For celestial navigation of specific craft, see the craft, e.g., navigation of nautical craft 623.89*

.028.4 Apparatus, equipment, materials

Including sextants [*formerly 522.4*]

**.1 Latitude**

**.2 Longitude**

**.3 Position determination**

Including Sumner's method

*For determination of latitude, see 527.1; for determination of longitude, see 527.2*

**528 Ephemerides**

Variant names: astronomical, nautical almanacs

Class tables of specific celestial bodies in 523

.093–.099 Treatment in ancient world, treatment by specific continent

Do not use for treatment by specific country or locality; class in 528.1–528.8

**.1–.8 Ephemerides of specific countries and localities**

Add to base number 528 the numbers following 06 in 061–068, e.g.,  
ephemerides of England 528.2

**.9 Ephemeris making****529 Chronology****.1 Days**

Including apparent and mean days, equation of time, sidereal and solar days

**.2 Intervals of time**

Including years, months, weeks

*For sidereal month, see 523.33; for days, see 529.1*

*See also 525.5 for seasons*

**.3 Calendars**

*For western calendars, see 529.4; for calendar reform, see 529.5*

**.32 Calendars of specific religions and traditions**

Add to base number 529.32 the numbers following 29 in 292–299, e.g.,  
Jewish calendar 529.326; however, for Julian calendar, see 529.42

*For Christian calendars, see 529.4*

**.4 Western calendars**

Class here Christian calendars

**.42 Julian calendar****.43 Gregorian calendar****.44 Christian church calendar**

Including determination of movable feasts and fast days

**.5 Calendar reform****.7 Horology**

Finding and measuring time

Class time systems and standards in 389.17

*For manufacture of instruments for measuring time, see 681.11*

## 530 Physics

Class here energy, matter, antimatter, classical physics; comprehensive works on classical and quantum mechanics

Class quantum mechanics, energy in quantum mechanics in 530.12; class classical mechanics in 531; class energy in classical mechanics in 531.6; class physical chemistry in 541

*For astrophysics, see 523.01*

### SUMMARY

- |                   |   |
|-------------------|---|
| <b>530.01–.09</b> | <b>Standard subdivisions</b>                              |
| .1                | Theories and mathematical physics                         |
| .4                | States of matter  |
| .7                | Instrumentation   |
| .8                | Measurement   |
| <b>531</b>        | <b>Classical mechanics</b>                                |
| .015 195          | Statistical mathematics                                   |
| .1                | Dynamics, statics, mass and gravity, particle mechanics   |
| .2                | Solid statics   |
| .3                | Solid dynamics  |
| .4                | Friction and viscosity of solids                          |
| .5                | Mass and gravity of solids; projectiles                   |
| .6                | Energy  |
| <b>532</b>        | <b>Fluid mechanics</b>                                    |
| .001–.009         | Standard subdivisions                                     |
| .02–.05           | Fluid statics and dynamics                                |
| .2                | Hydrostatics  |
| .4                | Mass, density, specific gravity of liquids                |
| .5                | Hydrodynamics   |
| <b>533</b>        | <b>Pneumatics (Gas mechanics)</b>                         |
| .1                | Statics; mass, density, specific gravity                  |
| .2                | Dynamics  |
| .5                | Vacuums   |
| .6                | Aeromechanics   |
| .7                | Kinetic theory of gases                                   |
| <b>534</b>        | <b>Sound and related vibrations</b>                       |
| .1                | Generation of sound                                       |
| .2                | Transmission of sound                                     |
| .3                | Characteristics of sound                                  |
| .5                | Vibrations related to sound                               |
| <b>535</b>        | <b>Light and related radiation</b>                        |
| .01–.09           | Infrared and ultraviolet radiation; standard subdivisions |
| .1                | Theories  |
| .2                | Physical optics   |
| .3                | Transmission, absorption, emission of light               |
| .4                | Dispersion of light                                       |
| .5                | Beams   |
| .6                | Color   |
| .8                | Special developments of light and related radiation       |

- 536      **Heat**
  - .01      **Philosophy and theory**
  - .1      **Theories**
  - .2      **Heat transfer**
  - .3      **Radiation**
  - .4      **Effects of heat on matter**
  - .5      **Temperature**
  - .6      **Specific heat**
  - .7      **Thermodynamics**
- 537      **Electricity and electronics**
  - .01      **Philosophy and theory**
  - .1      **Theories**
  - .2      **Electrostatics**
  - .5      **Electronics**
  - .6      **Electrodynamics (Electric currents) and thermoelectricity**
- 538      **Magnetism**
  - .3      **Magnetic properties and phenomena**
  - .4      **Magnetic substances and their characteristic phenomena**
  - .6      **Magnetohydrodynamics**
  - .7      **Geomagnetism and related phenomena**
- 539      **Modern physics**
  - .01      **Philosophy and theory**
  - .1      **Structure of matter**
  - .2      **Radiation (Radiant energy)**
  - .6      **Molecular physics**
  - .7      **Atomic and nuclear physics**
- .01      **Philosophy and theory**
  - Do not use for theories; class in 530.1
- [.015 1]      **Mathematical physics**
  - Do not use; class in 530.15
- .02      **Miscellany**
- .028 4      **Materials**
  - Do not use for apparatus and equipment; class in 530.7
- [.028 7]      **Testing and measurement**
  - Do not use; class in 530.8
- .03–.09      **Standard subdivisions**
- .1      **Theories and mathematical physics**
  - Standard subdivisions are added for theories and mathematical physics together, for theories alone
  - Including space
  - Class applications to specific states of matter in 530.4
  - See Manual at 520 vs. 500.5, 523.1, 530.1, 919.9*

- .11           Relativity theory  
               Including fourth dimension  
               Class here conservation of mass-energy, equivalence of mass-energy  
               ( $E=mc^2$ ), space-time  
               Class specific relativistic theories in 530.12–530.14
- .12           Quantum mechanics (Quantum theory)  
               Class here relativistic, nonrelativistic quantum mechanics  
               *For quantum statistics, see 530.133; for quantum kinetic theories, see*  
               *530.136; for quantum field theory, see 530.143; for quantum electronics,*  
               *see 537.5*  
               *See Manual at 530.475 vs. 530.12, 531.16*
- .122          Matrix mechanics (Heisenberg representation)
- .124          Wave mechanics  
               Waves considered as a fundamental property of matter  
               Class here Schrödinger wave mechanics  
               *See also 530.141 for waves in electromagnetic theory; also 531.1133*  
               *for waves in classical physics*
- .13           Statistical mechanics  
               Class here relativistic, nonrelativistic statistical mechanics  
               Including percolation theory
- .132          Classical statistical mechanics (Boltzmann statistics)
- .133          Quantum statistics (Quantum statistical mechanics)
- .136          Kinetic theories  
               Class here quantum, combined quantum-classical kinetic theories  
               *For classical kinetic theory, see 531.113*
- .138          Transport theory
- .14           Field and wave theories  
               Classical, quantum, relativistic, nonrelativistic theories accounting for  
               fundamental particles and interactions  
               Standard subdivisions are added for field and wave theories together, for  
               field theories alone  
               Including problem of few bodies, theory of continuum physics  
               *For wave mechanics, see 530.124; for string and superstring theories,*  
               *see 539.7258*

- .141            Electromagnetic theory
- Electromagnetic fields and waves considered in terms of fundamental structure of matter
- Including Maxwell's equations
- Class electromagnetic spectrum and waves in 539.2
- See also 537.1 for theories of electricity; also 538.01 for theories of magnetism*
- .142            Unified field theory
- Class here grand unified theory
- .142 3            Supergravity
- Class here comprehensive works on supergravity and supersymmetry
- For supersymmetry, see 539.725*
- .143            Quantum field theory
- .143 3            Quantum electrodynamics
- .143 5            Gauge fields
- .144            Problem of many bodies
- .15             Mathematical physics
- Add to base number 530.15 the numbers following 51 in 511–519, e.g., statistics 530.1595
- Class mathematical description of physical phenomena according to a specific theory with the theory in 530.1, e.g., statistical mechanics 530.13
- .4             States of matter**
- Class here quantum mechanics of specific states of matter; sound, light, heat, electricity, magnetism as properties of a specific state of matter
- Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 530.4 in the number coming last, e.g., tunneling in thin films 530.4175 (*not* 530.416)
- For superconductivity and superconductors, see 537.623*
- .41             Solid-state physics
- Class here physics of condensed matter
- For liquid-state physics, see 530.42; for crystallography, see 548*
- See Manual at 548 vs. 530.41*
- .411            Structure
- Including electron arrangement, lattice dynamics
- .412            Properties
- Including elastic, electrical, magnetic, optical, thermal properties

- .413           Kinds  
                   Including amorphous, crystalline and noncrystalline, metallic and nonmetallic, ordered and disordered, organic, porous solids; polymers; solid particles  
                   *For dielectric matter, see 537.24; for semiconductors, see 537.622; for crystals, see 548*
- .414           Phase transformations  
                   Transformations between different phases of condensed matter, between solid and gas phases
- .415           Diffusion and mass transfer  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Class transport theory in 530.138
- .416           Responsive behavior and energy phenomena  
                   Including bombardment, collisions, emission, excitation, excited states, excitons, field effects, internal friction, ion implantation, Jahn-Teller effect, Josephson effect, oscillation, phonons, radiation effect, relaxation, scattering, sputtering, tunneling, vibration  
                   Class responsive behavior and energy phenomena in semiconductors in 537.622  
                   *See Manual at 530.416 vs. 539.75*
- .417           Surface physics  
                   Class here interface with other states of matter  
                   Class surface physics of semiconductors in 537.622
- .417.5         Thin films  
                   Class comprehensive works on thin films in 530.4275
- .42           Liquid-state physics  
                   Including superfluidity  
                   Class here fluid-state physics  
                   *For gaseous-state physics, see 530.43*
- .424           Phase transformations  
                   Transformations between different fluid phases  
                   Including critical points  
                   Class phase transformations between fluids and solids in 530.414
- .425           Diffusion and mass transfer  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Including Brownian motion in liquids, osmosis  
                   *See Manual at 530.475 vs. 530.12, 531.16*

- .427            Surface physics  
                 Including capillarity, drops, surface tension  
                 Class here interface with gases  
                 Class interface with solids in 530.417; class surface tension of thin films  
                 in 530.4275
- .427 5           Thin films  
                 Class here bubbles
- .429            Liquid crystals  
                 Including liquid polymers
- .43             Gaseous-state physics  
                 Class interface with solids in 530.417; class interface with liquids in  
                 530.427; class ionization of gases in 530.444  
                 *For plasma physics, see 530.44*
- .435            Diffusion and mass transfer  
                 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .44             Plasma physics  
                 Physics of ionized gases  
                 Add to base number 530.44 the numbers following 530.41 in  
                 530.412–530.416, e.g., optical properties of plasmas 530.442, ionization of  
                 gases 530.444  
                 *See also 537.532 for ionization of gases in electronics*
- .47             Generalities of states of matter  
                 *For generalities of specific states of matter, see 530.41–530.44*
- .474            Phase transformations  
                 Variant names: phase changes, phase transitions  
                 Including critical phenomena, e.g., critical points; phase diagrams,  
                 equilibria, stability; triple points  
                 Class here analysis of phase transformations to matter at the molecular  
                 and submolecular level; changes of state  
                 Class phase transformations between different phases of condensed  
                 matter, between solids and gases in 530.414; class phase transformations  
                 between fluid phases in 530.424; class phase transformations between  
                 plasmas and other states of matter in 530.444

- .475            Diffusion and mass transfer  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Variant name for mass transfer: mass transport  
                   Class here Brownian motion  
                   *For heat transfer, see 536.2*  
                   *See Manual at 530.475 vs. 530.12, 531.16*
- .7              **Instrumentation**  
                   Instrumentation for measurement, control, recording
- .8              **Measurement**  
                   Including dimensional analysis, testing  
                   Class here interdisciplinary works on measurement, on mensuration  
                   Class instrumentation for measurement in 530.7  
                   *For horology, see 529.7. For measurement, mensuration in a specific subject, see the subject, plus notation 0287 from Table 1, e.g., psychological measurement 150.287*  
                   *See also 516.15 for geometric mensuration*
- .801            Philosophy and theory  
                   Class here measurement theory
- .802            Miscellany
- [.802 1]        Tabulated and related material  
                   Do not use; class in 530.81
- .81            Physical units and constants  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for physical units and constants together, for physical units alone  
                   Including dimensions, interdisciplinary works on size  
                   Class here conversion tables between systems, systems of measurement, tabulated and related materials, weights and measures  
                   Class units of dimension and size in metric system in 530.812; class units of dimension and size in British system in 530.813  
                   *For social aspects of systems of measurement, see 389.1. For a specific aspect of size, see the aspect, e.g., size of business enterprise 338.64*
- [.810 21]      Tabulated and related material  
                   Do not use; class in 530.81
- .812            Metric system (Système international, SI)

- .813 British system
  - Variant names: English, Imperial system
  - Class here United States customary units

## 531 Classical mechanics

Variant names: mechanics, continuum mechanics, Newtonian mechanics

Class here solid mechanics

*For fluid mechanics, see 532*

- .015 195 Statistical mathematics
  - Class classical statistical mechanics in 530.132

### .1 Dynamics, statics, mass and gravity, particle mechanics

Including pressure, mechanics of points

#### [.101–.109] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 531.01–531.09

#### .11 Dynamics

*For particle dynamics, see 531.163; for solid dynamics, see 531.3*

#### .112 Kinematics

Motion considered apart from mass and force

Including linear and relative motion, velocity, acceleration, vector quantities; search for a moving target

#### .113 Kinetics

Including centrifugal and centripetal forces, rotational motion

Class comprehensive works on motion in 531.11

#### .113 3 Waves

Waves observable in matter of classical physics

Including shock waves

*See also 530.124 for waves considered as a fundamental property of matter*

#### .113 4 Rheology (Deformation and flow)

Including viscosity and friction

Most works on deformation are limited to solids and are classed in 531.38; most works on flow are limited to fluids and are classed in 532.051

#### .12 Statics

Including graphic statics

*For particle statics, see 531.16; for solid statics, see 531.2*

- .14      **Mass and gravity**  
           Including density, gravity of earth, specific gravity  
           Class geodetic gravity determinations in 526.7  
           *For gravity in celestial mechanics, see 521.1*  
           *See also 539.754 for fundamental gravitational interaction*

- .16      **Particle mechanics**  
           Class here mechanics of solid particles  
           Class mechanics of molecular, atomic, and subatomic particles (quantum mechanics) in 530.12  
           *See also 620.43 for fine particle technology*  
           *See Manual at 530.475 vs. 530.12, 531.16*

- .163     **Dynamics**

>      **531.2–531.5 Mechanics of solids**

- Class here mechanics of rigid bodies  
           Class comprehensive works in 531  
           *For mechanics of solid particles, see 531.16*

.2      **Solid statics**

- Including graphic statics

.3      **Solid dynamics**

- Including solid kinematics  
           Class here solid kinetics  
           *For friction and viscosity, see 531.4; for ballistics, see 531.55*

.32     **Vibrations**

- Class here oscillations

.324    **Pendulum motion**

.33     **Waves**

- Including shock waves

.34     **Rotational motion (Spin)**

- Class here gyrodynamics  
           *For centrifugal and centripetal forces, see 531.35*

.35     **Centrifugal and centripetal forces**

- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

- .38            **Deformation; stresses and strains**  
                  Standard subdivisions are added for deformation, stresses, strains together;  
                  for deformation alone
- .381           **Stresses and strains**  
                  Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                  Including elastic constants, Poisson's ratio, yield point  
                  Class application to elasticity in 531.382; class application to plasticity in  
                  531.385
- .382           **Elasticity**  
                  Variant names: elastic, temporary deformation  
                  Including elastic limit, coefficient of restitution  
                  Class here Hooke's law  
                  Class elastic vibrations in 531.32
- .385           **Plasticity**  
                  Variant names: permanent, plastic deformation
- .4            Friction and viscosity of solids**  
                  Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .5            Mass and gravity of solids; projectiles**  
                  Including laws of falling bodies
- .54            **Density and specific gravity**  
                  Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .55            **Projectiles**  
                  Class here ballistics
- .6            Energy**  
                  Including momentum, work  
                  Class comprehensive works on energy in physics in 530; class interdisciplinary  
                  works on energy in 333.79
- .62            **Conservation of energy**  
                  *See also 333.7916 for programs to conserve energy; also 530.11 for  
                  conservation of mass-energy*
- .68            **Transformation**  
                  Change in form of energy  
                  *For a specific transformation, see the resultant form, e.g., transformation  
                  of light to heat 536*

**532 Fluid mechanics**

Class here hydraulics (hydromechanics), liquid mechanics

*For pneumatics, see 533*

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions

> 532.02–532.05 Fluid statics and dynamics

Class comprehensive works in 532

.02 Statics

Including buoyancy

*For liquid statics, see 532.2*

.05 Dynamics

Including kinematics, vibrations

Class here kinetics

*For liquid dynamics, see 532.5*

.051 Flow

Including boundary layers

Class waves and vortex motion in 532.059

*For types of flow, see 532.052; for flow properties, see 532.053*

.052 Types of flow

Class properties of specific types of flow in 532.053

*For viscous flow, see 532.0533; for rotational flow, see 532.0595*

.052 5 Laminar flow

.052 6 Transitional flow

.052 7 Turbulent flow

.053 Flow properties

.053 2 Velocity

.053 3 Viscosity and friction

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here viscous flow

.053 5 Elasticity and compressibility

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.059 Waves and vortex motion

.059 3 Waves

Including shock waves

- .059 5            Vortex motion  
                     Including centrifugal and centripetal forces  
                     Class here rotational flow
- 

>            **532.2–532.5 Hydraulics**

- In sense of liquid mechanics  
                     Class comprehensive works in 532

.2            **Hydrostatics**

- In sense of liquid statics  
                     *See also 532.02 for hydrostatics in sense of fluid statics*

.25           **Buoyancy**

- Class here floating, sinking

.4            **Mass, density, specific gravity of liquids**

.5            **Hydrodynamics**

- In sense of liquid dynamics  
                     Including kinematics  
                     Class here kinetics  
                     *See also 532.05 for hydrodynamics in sense of fluid dynamics*

.51           **Flow**

- Class waves and vortex motion in 532.59  
                     *For flow variations, see 532.52–532.56; for flow properties, see 532.58;  
                     for rotational flow, see 532.595*

.515          **Laminar flow**

.516          **Transitional flow**

.517          **Turbulent flow**

---

>            **532.52–532.56 Flow variations**

- Class comprehensive works in 532.51

.52           **Flow through openings**

.53           **Flow over and around obstacles**

- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.54           **Flow through open and closed channels**

- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

- .55 Flow through bends and irregular enclosures  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .56 Flow when pressure is variable  
Including flow over and around submerged bodies, multiphase flow
- .57 Flow velocity
- .58 Flow properties  
Including elasticity and compressibility, viscosity and friction, viscous flow  
*For flow velocity, see 532.57*  
*See also 536.413 for expansion and contraction of liquids as a result of heating and cooling*
- .59 Waves, vortex motion, cavitation
- .593 Waves  
Including shock waves
- .595 Vortex motion  
Class here rotational flow
- .597 Cavitation

### 533 Pneumatics (Gas mechanics)

#### > 533.1–533.5 Specific aspects of pneumatics (gas mechanics)

Class comprehensive works in 533

#### .1 Statics; mass, density, specific gravity

*For vacuums, see 533.5*

#### .12 Statics

Including buoyancy

*For aerostatics, see 533.61*

#### .15 Mass, density, specific gravity

#### .2 Dynamics

Including kinematics

Class here kinetics

*For aerodynamics, see 533.62; for kinetic theory of gases, see 533.7*

#### .21 Flow

Class waves and vortex motion in 533.29

*For flow at specific speeds, see 533.27; for flow properties, see 533.28; for rotational flow, see 533.295*

- .215      Laminar flow
- .216      Transitional flow
- .217      Turbulent flow
- .27      Flow at specific speeds  
           Class here velocity
- .273      Subsonic flow
- .274      Transonic flow
- .275      Supersonic flow  
           *For hypersonic flow, see 533.276*
- .276      Hypersonic flow
- .28      Flow properties  
           Including elasticity and compressibility, viscosity and friction, viscous flow  
           Class flow properties at specific speeds in 533.27  
           *See also 536.412 for expansion and contraction of gases resulting from heating and cooling*
- .29      Waves and vortex motion
- .293      Waves  
           Including shock waves
- .295      Vortex motion  
           Class here rotational flow
- .5      Vacuums**
- .6      Aeromechanics**  
           Including mass, density, specific gravity of air  
           *For vacuums, see 533.5*
- .61      Aerostatics  
           Including buoyancy
- .62      Aerodynamics
- .7      Kinetic theory of gases**

&gt;

---

### 534–538 Specific forms of energy

Class here transformation into specific forms of energy

Class specific forms of energy as properties of specific states of matter in 530.4; class comprehensive works in 530; class comprehensive works on transformation of energy in 531.68

*For mechanical energy, see 531.6*

## 534 Sound and related vibrations

Standard subdivisions are added for sound and related vibrations together, for sound alone

### > 534.1–534.3 Sound

Class comprehensive works in 534

#### .1 Generation of sound

#### .2 Transmission of sound

.200 1–.200 9 Standard subdivisions

.202 Velocity

.204 Reflection (Echoes)

.208 Absorption (Damping)

.22 Transmission in solids

.23 Transmission in liquids

.24 Transmission in gases

#### .3 Characteristics of sound

Including Doppler effect

#### .5 Vibrations related to sound

Class here vibrations that can not be heard by the human ear

.52 Subsonic vibrations

.55 Ultrasonic vibrations

## 535 Light and related radiation

Standard subdivisions are added for light and related radiation together, for light alone

Class here optics

*See also 537.56 for electron and ion optics*

.01 Infrared and ultraviolet radiation; philosophy and theory of light and related radiation

Notation 01 from Table 1 as modified below

Class here radiation of nonvisible spectral regions

Class a specific element of infrared and ultraviolet radiation in 535.2–535.6

.010 1–.010 9 Standard subdivisions of infrared and ultraviolet radiation

.012 Infrared radiation

Class heat radiation in 536.3

- [.013] Visible region  
     Number discontinued; class in 535
- .014 Ultraviolet radiation
- .019 Philosophy and theory of light and related radiation  
     Add to base number 535.019 the numbers following —01 in notation  
     011–019 from Table 1, e.g., abbreviations, acronyms, symbols in optics  
     535.01948  
     Class theories in 535.1
- .02 Miscellany
- .028 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment,  
     materials  
     Class spectroscopy in 535.84
- .1 Theories**  
     *See also 539.7217 for photons*
- .12 Corpuscular theory
- .13 Mechanical wave theory
- .14 Electromagnetic theory
- .15 Quantum theory

> **535.2–535.6 Specific elements of light**

Class comprehensive works in 535

*For spectroscopy, see 535.84*

**.2 Physical optics**

Including coherent and nonlinear optics

*For dispersion of light, see 535.4; for beams, see 535.5*

.22 Intensity of light

.220 287 Testing and measurement

Class here photometry

.24 Velocity of light

**.3 Transmission, absorption, emission of light**

.32 Geometrical optics

.323 Reflection

.324 Refraction

.326 Absorption

.35 Luminescence

- .352            Fluorescence  
                   Class fluorescence by source of exciting energy in 535.355–535.357
- .353            Phosphorescence  
                   Class phosphorescence by source of exciting energy in 535.355–535.357
- 
- >            535.355–535.357 Luminescence by source of exciting energy  
                   Class comprehensive works in 535.35  
                   *For chemiluminescence, see 541.35; for bioluminescence, see 572.4358*
- .355            Photoluminescence
- .356            Thermoluminescence
- .357            Electroluminescence
- .4            Dispersion of light**  
                   Including shadows  
                   Class comprehensive works on beams and their dispersion in 535.5  
                   *See also 774.0153 for physical properties of holography*
- .42            Diffraction
- .420 284            Apparatus, equipment, materials  
                   Class here interdisciplinary works on prisms  
                   *For a specific aspect of prisms, see the aspect, e.g., geometry of prisms 516.156*
- .43            Scattering
- .47            Interference
- .5            Beams**
- .52            Polarization
- .6            Color**
- .8            Special developments of light and related radiation**
- .84            Optical, infrared, ultraviolet spectroscopy  
                   Class here comprehensive works on spectroscopy in physics  
                   Class interdisciplinary works on spectroscopy in 543.5  
                   *For a specific kind of spectroscopy in physics other than optical, infrared, or ultraviolet, see the kind, e.g., radiofrequency spectroscopy 537.534*
- .842            Infrared spectroscopy
- .843            Light spectroscopy
- .844            Ultraviolet spectroscopy

.845 Vacuum ultraviolet spectroscopy

.846 Raman spectroscopy  
Including Raman effect

## 536 Heat

.01 Philosophy and theory  
Do not use for theories; class in 536.1

### .1 Theories

### .2 Heat transfer

*For radiation, see 536.3*

.200 1–.200 9 Standard subdivisions

.201 Heat-transfer properties of matter

Class specific heat in 536.6

*For heat-transfer properties of matter at low temperatures, see 536.56; for heat-transfer properties of matter at high temperatures, see 536.57*

*See also 620.11296 for thermal properties of engineering materials*

.201 2 Thermal conductivity

.201 4 Thermal diffusivity

.23 Conduction

Class here heat transfer in solids

Class thermal conductivity in 536.2012

*For conduction in fluids, see 536.25*

.25 Convection

Class here heat transfer in fluids

### .3 Radiation

Class here absorption, scattering

### .4 Effects of heat on matter

Class here effects of heat that can be readily observed or measured with simple instruments

.41 Expansion and contraction

Class here coefficients of expansion

Class expansion and contraction in fusion and solidification in 536.42; class expansion and contraction in vaporization and condensation in 536.44

- .412           Gases  
                   *For liquefaction and solidification of gases at low temperatures, see 536.56*
- .413           Liquids
- .414           Solids
- .42            Fusion (Melting) and solidification  
                   Including freezing and melting points, latent heat of fusion and solidification  
                   Class comprehensive works on fusion and solidification(536.42) and vaporization and condensation (536.44) in 536.4
- .44            Vaporization and condensation  
                   Including boiling points, dew points, latent heat of evaporation and condensation, liquefaction of gases  
                   *For liquefaction of gases at low temperatures, see 536.56*
- .5            Temperature**  
                   Class here absolute temperature
- .502 87           Testing and measurement  
                   Including resistance thermometry  
                   Class here thermometry  
                   *For measurement at a specific range of temperature, see 536.51–536.54*
- 
- >            536.51–536.54 Measurement at a specific range of temperature  
                   Class comprehensive works in 536.50287
- .51            Measurement of normal-range temperatures  
                   Including liquid-in-glass thermometry
- .52            Measurement of high temperatures (Pyrometry)  
                   Including thermocouples
- .54            Measurement of low temperatures (Cryometry)
- .56            Cryogenics and low temperatures  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Including liquefaction and solidification of gases at low temperatures, properties of matter at low temperatures  
                   Class a specific property of matter at low temperature with the property, e.g., conduction of electricity at low temperatures 537.62
- .560 287           Testing  
                   Do not use for measurement; class in 536.54

**.57 High temperatures**

Including properties of matter at high temperature

Class a specific property of matter at high temperature with the property, e.g., conduction of electricity 537.62

**.570 287 Testing**

Do not use for measurement; class in 536.52

**.6 Specific heat**

Class here calorimetry, heat capacity

Class heat of transformation in fusion and solidification in 536.42; class heat of transformation in vaporization and condensation in 536.44

**.63 Solids and liquids****.65 Gases****.7 Thermodynamics****.701 Philosophy and theory**

Do not use for theories; class in 536.71

**.71 Theories**

Including Carnot cycle, Joule's law, Maxwell's thermodynamic formulas

Class here laws of thermodynamics

**.73 Entropy****537 Electricity and electronics**

Standard subdivisions are added for electricity and electronics together, for electricity alone

Class here electromagnetism

Class interdisciplinary works on electricity in 333.7932

*For magnetism, see 538*

**.01 Philosophy and theory**

Do not use for theories; class in 537.1

**.1 Theories****.12 Wave theories**

Class electromagnetic theory of matter in 530.141

**.2 Electrostatics****.21 Electric charge and potential**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Including triboelectricity

- .24 Dielectrics  
Including electrets, electrocapillarity, electrostriction
- .243 Dipole moments
- .244 Piezoelectricity and ferroelectricity  
*See also 548.85 for electrical properties of crystals*
- .244 6 Piezoelectricity
- .244 8 Ferroelectricity
- .5 Electronics**  
Including exploding wire phenomena  
Class here quantum electronics  
*For semiconductors, see 537.622*
- .52 Disruptive discharges  
Including coronas, electric arcs  
Class discharge through rarefied gases and vacuums in 537.53
- .53 Discharge through rarefied gases and vacuums
- .532 Ionization of gases  
Class comprehensive works on ionization of gases in 530.444
- .534 Radio wave and microwave electronics  
Standard subdivisions are added for radio wave and microwave electronics together, for radio wave electronics alone  
Class here spectroscopy
- .534 2 Long waves
- .534 3 Short waves
- .534 4 Microwaves and ultrahigh-frequency waves
- .535 X-ray and gamma-ray electronics
- .535 2 Spectroscopy  
Including Mössbauer spectroscopy and effect  
Class a specific application of spectroscopy with the application, e.g., X-ray spectroscopy in chemical analysis 543.62
- .54 Photoelectric phenomena  
Including photoconductivity, photoemission, photovoltaic effect
- .56 Electron and ion optics  
Standard subdivisions are added for electron and ion optics together, for electron optics alone

**.6 Electrostatics (Electric currents) and thermoelectricity**

Standard subdivisions are added for electrostatics and thermoelectricity together, for electrostatics alone

*For quantum electrodynamics, see 530.1433*

**.62 Electric conductivity and resistance**

*For dielectrics, see 537.24*

**.622 Semiconductivity**

Class here solid-state physics of semiconductors

**.622 1 Structure of semiconductors**

Class structure of specific kinds of semiconductors in 537.6223

**.622 3 Kinds of semiconductors**

Class diffusion and mass transfer in specific kinds of semiconductors in 537.6225; class interactions in and specific properties of specific kinds of semiconductors in 537.6226

**.622 5 Diffusion and mass transfer in semiconductors**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

**.622 6 Interactions in and specific properties of semiconductors**

Including effects of beams and electromagnetic fields, Hall effects; adsorption, instabilities, resistivity, tunneling

**.623 Superconductivity**

Class here solid-state physics of superconductors

Add to base number 537.623 the numbers following 537.622 in 537.6221–537.6226, e.g., ternary superconductors 537.6233

**.624 Thermal effects of currents****.65 Thermoelectricity****538 Magnetism****.3 Magnetic properties and phenomena**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Including hysteresis, magnetic moment and relaxation

Class specific magnetic substances and their characteristic phenomena in 538.4

**.36 Magnetic resonance****.362 Nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR)**

Including nuclear quadrupole resonance (NQR), electron-nuclear double resonance (ENDOR)

**.364 Electron paramagnetic resonance (EPR)**

Variant name: electron spin resonance (ESR)

- .4 Magnetic substances and their characteristic phenomena**  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
 Class here magnetic induction, natural magnets  
 Class comprehensive works on specific magnetic phenomena in 538.3
- .42 Diamagnetism
- .43 Paramagnetism
- .44 Ferromagnetism
- .45 Ferrimagnetism
- .6 Magneto hydrodynamics**
- .7 Geomagnetism and related phenomena**  
 Standard subdivisions are added for geomagnetism and related phenomena together, for geomagnetism alone
- .709 History, geographic treatment, biography  
 Do not use for geographic treatment of magnetic surveys; class in 538.78. Do not use for geographic treatment of magnetic observations at observatories; class in 538.79
- .72 Magnetic fields of solid earth  
 Class here secular variations  
 Class transient variations in magnetism of solid earth in 538.74; class observations of magnetic fields of solid earth at observatories in 538.79  
*For magnetic surveys, see 538.78*
- .727 Paleomagnetism  
 Class here geomagnetic reversals, paleomagnetic observations at observatories, paleomagnetic surveys
- .74 \*Transient magnetism  
*For auroras, see 538.768*
- .742 \*Diurnal variations
- .744 \*Magnetic storms
- .746 \*Sunspot effects
- .748 \*Earth currents
- .76 Magnetosphere, ionosphere, auroras
- .766 Magnetosphere  
 Including Van Allen radiation belts  
 Class transient magnetism of magnetosphere in 538.74

\*Do not use notation 09 from Table I for magnetic observations at permanent observatories; class in 538.79

- .767            Ionosphere  
                   Class here atmospheric ionization
- .767 2           D region
- .767 3           E region  
                   Variant name: Kennelly-Heaviside layers
- .767 4           F region  
                   Variant name: Appleton layers
- .768            Auroras  
                   Class here northern lights
- .78             Magnetic surveys  
                   *For paleomagnetic surveys, see 538.727*
- .780 9           History and biography  
                   Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 538.781–538.789
- .781–.789       Geographic treatment  
                   Add to base number 538.78 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., surveys of Ireland 538.78415
- .79             Magnetic observations at observatories  
                   *For paleomagnetic observations at observatories, see 538.727*
- .790 9           History and biography  
                   Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 538.791–538.799
- .791–.799       Geographic treatment  
                   Add to base number 538.79 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., findings from observatories in Russia 538.7947

## 539            Modern physics

Class here quantum physics

*For theories of modern physics, see 530.1; for states of matter, see 530.4; for modern physics of specific forms of energy, see 534–538*

### SUMMARY

- 539.01           Philosophy and theory
- .1            Structure of matter
- .2            Radiation (Radiant energy)
- .6            Molecular physics
- .7            Atomic and nuclear physics
- .01             Philosophy and theory  
                   Do not use for theories; class in 530.1

- [.015 1]           Mathematical principles  
                           Do not use; class in 530.15
- .1           Structure of matter**  
                           *For structure of specific states of matter, see 530.4*
- .12           Molecular structure  
                           Use 539.12 only for studies of molecular structure without reference to chemical characteristics. Prefer 541.22 if there is discussion of chemical phenomena
- .14           Atomic structure  
                           *For nuclear structure, see 539.74*
- .2           Radiation (Radiant energy)**  
                           Class here electromagnetic radiation, spectrum, waves  
                           *For a specific kind of radiation, see the kind, e.g., ultraviolet radiation 535.014, ionizing radiation 539.722*
- .6           Molecular physics**  
                           Atom-atom and molecule-molecule relationships  
                           Including molecular and vibrational spectra  
                           *For molecular structure, see 539.12*
- .602 87           Testing and measurement  
                           Class here comprehensive works on mass spectrometry in physics  
                           Class interdisciplinary works on mass spectrometry in 543.65  
                           *For spectrometry of a specific nonmolecular particle, see the particle, e.g., atomic spectrometry 539.7*
- .7           Atomic and nuclear physics**  
                           Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                           *For atomic structure, see 539.14*

### SUMMARY

539.72	<b>Particle physics; ionizing radiation</b>
.73	<b>Particle acceleration</b>
.74	<b>Nuclear structure</b>
.75	<b>Nuclear activities and interactions</b>
.76	<b>High-energy physics</b>
.77	<b>Detecting and measuring particles and radioactivity</b>

.72 Particle physics; ionizing radiation

Standard subdivisions are added for particle physics and ionizing radiation together, for particle physics alone

Class here antiparticles, relativistic particles

*For field and wave theories accounting for fundamental particles, see 530.14; for particle acceleration, see 539.73; for nuclear activities and interactions, see 539.75; for detection and measurement of particles and radioactivity, see 539.77*

[.720 287] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 539.77

.721 Specific kinds of subatomic particles

Including bosons, fermions, Regge poles

Class subatomic particles considered as a cosmic ray in 539.7223

[.721 01--.721 09] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 539.7201--539.7209

.721 1 Leptons

*For neutrinos, see 539.7215; for photons, see 539.7217*

.721 12 Electrons

Including beta particles

*For beta positrons, see 539.7214*

*See also 537.5 for electronics*

.721 14 Muons (Mu-mesons)

.721 2 Nucleons

*For neutrons, see 539.7213*

.721 23 Protons

Class here antiprotons

Class protons considered as cosmic rays in 539.7223

.721 3 Neutrons

.721 4 Positrons

.721 5 Neutrinos

.721 6 Hadrons

Class here strange particles and strangeness

.721 62 Mesons

Including pions (pi-mesons), kaons (K-mesons)

*For mu-mesons, see 539.72114*

- .721 64            Baryons  
                          Including hyperons  
                                  *For nucleons, see 539.7212*
- .721 67            Quarks  
                          Including quantum flavor  
                                  *See also 539.7548 for quantum chromodynamics*
- .721 7            Photons  
                                  *See also 539.756 for photonuclear reactions*
- .722            Ionizing radiation  
                                  *For a specific kind of ionizing radiation not provided for here, see the kind, e.g., alpha particles 539.7232*  
                                  *See also 537.532 for ionization of gases by electron discharge*
- .722 2            X and gamma rays  
                          Including bremsstrahlung (secondary X rays), gamma particles  
                                  *See also 537.535 for X-ray and gamma-ray electronics*
- .722 3            Cosmic rays  
                          Class here any particle considered as a cosmic ray
- .723            Nuclei and atoms considered as particles
- .723 2            Nuclei  
                          Including alpha particles, deuterons  
                          Class component particles of nuclei in 539.721; class nuclei considered as cosmic rays in 539.7223; class nuclear structure in 539.74
- .723 4            Heavy ions
- .725            Particle characteristics  
                          Including angular momentum, charge, energy levels, orbits, spin, symmetry, supersymmetry  
                          Class characteristics of a specific particle with the particle, e.g., orbits of electrons 539.72112, strangeness of strange particles 539.7216  
                                  *For supergravity, comprehensive works on supergravity and supersymmetry, see 530.1423; for magnetic properties, see 538.3*
- .725 8            String theory  
                          Class here superstring theory
- .73            Particle acceleration  
                          Including bombardment, particle beams

- .732 High-voltage accelerators  
Including Van de Graaff electrostatic generators
- .733 Resonance accelerators  
Including cyclotrons, linear accelerators
- .734 Induction accelerators  
Including betatrons
- .735 Synchronous accelerators  
Including synchro-cyclotrons and synchrotrons (betatron-synchrotrons)
- .736 Supercolliders  
Class here superconducting supercolliders
- .737 Acceleration of specific particles  
Class acceleration of specific particles in specific accelerators in  
539.732–539.736
- [.737 01–.737 09] Standard subdivisions  
Do not use; class in 539.7301–539.7309
- .737 1–.737 7 Specific particles  
Add to base number 539.737 the numbers following 539.721 in  
539.7211–539.7217, e.g., proton acceleration 539.73723
- .74 Nuclear structure  
Class here isotope and nuclide structure, nuclear models
- .742 Liquid-drop model
- .743 Shell model
- .744 Interpretation through spectroscopy
- .75 Nuclear activities and interactions  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
Including annihilation, capture, coupling, creation  
*For ionizations of gases, see 530.444; for high-energy physics, see  
539.76*  
*See Manual at 530.416 vs. 539.75*
- .752 Natural radioactivity  
Including half-life  
Class here decay schemes, radioactive substances (radioelements),  
radioisotopes, radionuclides; comprehensive works on radioactivity  
*For artificial radioactivity, see 539.753*
- [.752 028 7] Testing and measurement  
Do not use; class in 539.77

- .752 2            Alpha decay
- .752 3            Beta decay
- .752 4            Gamma decay
- .753            Artificial radioactivity  
                   Including radioactive fallout  
                   *See also 363.738 for pollution from radioactive fallout*
- [.753 028 7]            Testing and measurement  
                                   Do not use; class in 539.77
- .754            Fundamental interactions  
                   Including gravitational interaction, gravitational waves  
                   Class field theories covering fundamental interactions in 530.14  
                   *See also 531.14 for gravity*
- .754 4            Weak interaction  
                                   *For beta decay, see 539.7523*
- .754 6            Electromagnetic interaction
- .754 8            Strong interaction  
                                   Including quantum chromodynamics
- .756            Photonuclear reactions
- .757            Collision
- .758            Scattering
- .76            High-energy physics  
                   Class high-energy levels of particles in 539.725
- .762            Nuclear fission
- .764            Nuclear fusion (Thermonuclear reaction)
- .77            Detecting and measuring particles and radioactivity  
                   Class here radiation measurement
- .772            Ionization chambers
- .773            Proportional counters
- .774            Geiger-Müller counters
- .775            Scintillation counters
- .776            Crystal conduction counters
- .777            Wilson cloud chambers
- .778            Photography

## 540 Chemistry and allied sciences

Standard subdivisions are added for chemistry and allied sciences together, for chemistry alone

Class cosmochemistry in 523.02

### SUMMARY

540.1–9	Standard subdivisions
541	Physical chemistry
542	Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials
543	Analytical chemistry
546	Inorganic chemistry
547	Organic chemistry
548	Crystallography
549	Mineralogy

### .1 Philosophy and theory

Do not use for theoretical chemistry; class in 541.2

#### .11 Alchemy and systems

#### .112 Alchemy

#### .113 Systems

Add to base number 540.113 the numbers following 003 in 003.1–003.8, e.g., computer modeling and simulation 540.1133

#### [.28] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use; class in 542

### .7 Education, research, related topics

#### .72 Research; statistical methods

Do not use for laboratories; class in 542.1

## > 541–547 Chemistry

Class comprehensive works in 540

### 541 Physical chemistry

Inorganic and combined inorganic-organic chemistry

Class physical crystallography in 548

*For physical chemistry of specific kinds of inorganic chemicals, see 546; for physical chemistry of organic compounds, see 547*

*See Manual at 541 vs. 546*

## SUMMARY

- 541.04 Special topics of physical chemistry**
- .2 Theoretical chemistry**
  - .3 Miscellaneous topics in physical chemistry**
  - .7 Optical activity**
- .04 Special topics of physical chemistry
- .042 Chemistry of states of matter
- Add to base number 541.042 the numbers following 530.4 in 530.41–530.44, e.g., solid-state chemistry 541.0421
- .2 Theoretical chemistry**
- .22 Molecular structure
- For molecular structure studied without reference to chemical characteristics, see 539.12; for quantum chemistry, see 541.28*
- .222 Molecular weights
- .223 Stereochemistry
- Class comprehensive works on stereochemistry in 547.1223
- For structural variations, see 541.225*
- .224 Chemical bonds, valence, radicals
- Standard subdivisions are added for chemical bonds, valence, radicals together; for chemical bonds alone; for valence alone
- Class bond angles and distances in 541.223
- .224 2 Coordination chemistry
- Including ligands
- Class chelates in 547.59044242
- .225 Structural variations
- .225 2 Isomers
- Class here tautomerism
- Class comprehensive works on isomers in 547.12252
- .225 4 Polymers
- Class comprehensive works on polymerization in 547.28; class comprehensive works on polymers in 547.7
- .226 Intermolecular forces
- Class here supramolecular chemistry
- Class comprehensive works on supramolecular chemistry in 547.1226
- .24 Atomic structure
- For periodic law, see 546.8*

.242 Atomic weight  
Class here atomic mass and number

.26 Stoichiometry

.28 Quantum chemistry

Including molecular and atomic orbitals

Class radiochemistry in 541.38

**.3 Miscellaneous topics in physical chemistry**

Limited to topics named below

**SUMMARY**

541.33	Surface chemistry
.34	Solution chemistry
.35	Photochemistry
.36	Thermochemistry and thermodynamics
.37	Electrochemistry and magnetochemistry
.38	Radiochemistry
.39	Chemical reactions

[.301–.309] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 541.01–541.09

.33 Surface chemistry

Including absorption, adhesion

Class surface chemical reactions in 541.39

.335 Adsorption

Including chemisorption

.34 Solution chemistry

*For electrolytic solutions, see 541.372*

.341 Properties of solutions

.341 3 Mechanical properties

.341 4 Optical properties

.341 5 Colligative properties

Including effect of osmotic pressure

.341 6 Thermal properties

.342 Solutions by type of solvent

Class here solubility

Class properties of specific type of solvent in 541.341

.342 2 Aqueous solutions

.342 3 Nonaqueous solutions

- .345            Colloid chemistry
- .345 1            Specific types of colloids
- [.345 101--.345 109]        Standard subdivisions
- Do not use; class in 541.34501--541.34509
- .345 13            Matter dispersed in solids
- Including gels, solid foams
- .345 14            Hydrosols
- Including emulsions, foams, froths, lathers
- Class solid foams in 541.34513
- .345 15            Aerosols
- Including fogs, mists, smokes
- .348            Solution components
- .348 2            Solvents
- .348 3            Solutes
- .348 5            Precipitates
- Including Liesegang rings
- .35            Photochemistry
- Including chemiluminescence
- For bioluminescence, see 572.4358*
- .351            Energy transformations
- .353            Photochemical reactions due to specific radiation
- [.353 01--.353 09]        Standard subdivisions
- Do not use; class in 541.3501--541.3509
- .353 2            Infrared radiation
- .353 3            Visible light
- .353 4            Ultraviolet radiation
- .36            Thermochemistry and thermodynamics
- Standard subdivisions are added for thermochemistry and thermodynamics together, for thermochemistry alone
- 
- > 541.361--541.368 Thermochemistry
- Class comprehensive works in 541.36
- .361            Combustion
- Including explosion, flame, ignition

- .362 Exothermic and endothermic reactions  
Including latent heat  
*For combustion, see 541.361*
- .363 Changes of state (Phase transformations)  
Including Gibbs' phase rule  
Class interdisciplinary works on phase transformations in 530.474  
*For latent heat, see 541.362*  
*See also 541.042 for chemistry of specific states of matter*
- .364 Thermal dissociation
- .368 Reactions under temperature extremes
- .368 6 Low temperatures  
Reactions below  $-100^{\circ}\text{C}$
- .368 7 High temperatures
- .369 Thermodynamics
- .37 Electrochemistry and magnetochemistry  
Standard subdivisions are added for electrochemistry and magnetochemistry together, for electrochemistry alone
- 
- > 541.372–541.377 Electrochemistry  
Class comprehensive works in 541.37
- .372 Electrolytic solutions  
Including electro dialysis, electrolyte conductivity, electrophoresis  
Class here ions  
*For nonelectrical properties, see 541.374*
- .372 2 Ionization (Electrolytic dissociation)
- .372 3 Ion exchange and ionic equilibria  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .372 4 Electrodes and electrode phenomena  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .372 8 Hydrogen-ion concentration  
Class here pH
- .374 Nonelectrical properties of electrolytic solutions  
Add to base number 541.374 the numbers following 541.341 in 541.3413–541.3416, e.g., optical properties 541.3744
- .377 Semiconductors

- .378            Magnetochemistry
- .38            Radiochemistry  
              Class here nuclear chemistry  
              Class quantum chemistry in 541.28
- .382            Radiation chemistry  
              Class here radiolysis
- .388            Isotopes
- .388 4          Radioisotopes
- .39            Chemical reactions  
              Including addition, condensation, hydrolysis, polymerization, substitution  
              Class here synthesis  
              Class thermochemistry of reactions in 541.36; class comprehensive works on  
              polymerization in 547.28
- .392            Chemical equilibrium
- .393            Oxidation-reduction reaction (Redox reaction)  
              Class here oxidation, reduction
- .394            Reaction kinetics  
              Class kinetics of oxidation-reduction reaction in 541.393  
              *For catalysis, see 541.395*
- .395            Catalysis
- .7            **Optical activity**  
              Including optical rotation

## **542            Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials**

Of inorganic and combined inorganic-organic chemistry

Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

Class techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials used in a specific application with the application, e.g., techniques and equipment for chemical analysis 543

### **.1            Laboratories**

Class containers and accessory equipment in 542.2; class specific techniques and procedures of laboratories in 542.3–542.8

**.2 Containers and accessory equipment**

Standard subdivisions are added for containers and accessory equipment together, for containers alone

Including crucibles, test tubes

Class containers and accessory equipment for specific techniques and procedures in 542.3–542.8

**> 542.3–542.8 Specific techniques and procedures**

Class here apparatus, equipment, materials used in specific techniques and procedures

Class comprehensive works in 542

**.3 Testing and measuring**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

*For gas measuring, see 542.7; for analytical chemistry, see 543*

**.4 Heating and distilling**

Standard subdivisions are added for heating and distilling together, for heating alone

Including blowpipes

**.6 Filtering and dialysis**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class dialysis in chemical analysis in 543.2

**.7 Gas production, processing, measuring****.8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures, electrical and electronic equipment**

Add to base number 542.8 the numbers following —028 in notation 0284–0289 from Table 1, e.g., electrical and electronic equipment 542.84; however, for comprehensive works on apparatus, equipment, materials, see 542; for testing and measurement, see 542.3

**543 Analytical chemistry**

Of inorganic or organic chemicals in general

Class here analytical chemistry of metals in general

Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 543 in the number coming last, e.g., chromatography in organic chemical analysis 543.8 (*not* 543.17)

*For analytical chemistry of specific elements, compounds, mixtures, groupings (other than metals and metallic compounds in general), see 546; for analytical chemistry of specific organic compounds, see 547*

- .028 4                    Materials  
                                  Including reagents  
                                  Do not use for apparatus and equipment; class in 543.19

**.1            General topics in analytical chemistry**  
                                  Including qualitative analysis, quantitative analysis

.17            Analytical organic chemistry

.19            Techniques of general application

                                 Including sample preparation

                                 Class here instrumentation

---

>            **543.2–543.8 Specific methods**

                                 Class comprehensive works in 543

**.2            Classical methods**

                                 Not provided for elsewhere

                                 Including diffusion methods, gravimetric analysis

.22            Microchemistry (Microanalysis)

                                 Including microscopic analysis, spot tests

.24            Volumetric analysis

                                 Class here titration

.26            Thermal analysis

                                 Including thermogravimetry

**.4            Electrochemical analysis**

                                 Including coulometry, electrophoresis, polarography

**.5            Optical spectroscopy (Spectrum analysis)**

                                 Class here atomic and ultraviolet spectroscopy, interdisciplinary works on spectroscopy

*For spectroscopy in physics, see 535.84; for spectroscopic interpretation of chemical structure, see 541.2; for nonoptical spectroscopy, see 543.6*

.52            Atomic emission spectroscopy

                                 Including flame emission spectroscopy

.54            Molecular spectroscopy

.55            Spectrophotometry

                                 Class here colorimetry

- .56 Luminescence spectroscopy  
Class here fluorescence spectroscopy
- .57 Infrared and Raman spectroscopy  
Standard subdivisions are added for infrared and Raman spectroscopy together, for infrared spectroscopy alone
- .59 Methods based on refraction, interference, scattering  
Including interferometry, polariscopic analysis, refractometry  
*For Raman spectroscopy, see 543.57*
- .6 Nonoptical spectroscopy**  
Including gamma-ray, microwave spectroscopy  
Class here nuclear spectroscopy
- .62 X-ray and electron spectroscopy  
Standard subdivisions are added for X-ray and electron spectroscopy together, for X-ray spectroscopy alone
- .63 Radiochemical analysis  
Including nuclear activation analysis
- .65 Mass spectrometry (Mass spectroscopy)
- .66 Nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy
- .67 Electron paramagnetic resonance spectroscopy  
Variant name: electron spin resonance spectroscopy
- .8 Chromatography**
- .82 Ion-exchange chromatography
- .84 Liquid chromatography  
Including paper and thin-layer chromatography
- .85 Gas chromatography
- .86 Supercritical fluid chromatography  
Variant name: supercritical gas chromatography

**[544] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 21

**[545] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 21

## 546 Inorganic chemistry

Class here general topics of chemistry applied to specific elements, compounds, mixtures, groupings; comprehensive works on inorganic and organic chemistry of specific elements, compounds, mixtures, groupings

Specific compounds are classed with the first element named, except that hydrogen is disregarded for acids

Add to each subdivision identified by \* as follows:

- >1-3 The element, compounds, mixtures
  - Class theoretical, physical, analytical chemistry of the element, compounds, mixtures in 4-6; class comprehensive works in base number for the element in 546.3-546.7
- 1 The element
- 2 Compounds
  - Names of compounds usually end in -ide or one of the suffixes listed in 22 and 24 below
  - For organo compounds, see 547.01-547.08*
- 22 Acids and bases
  - Names of acids usually end in -ic or -ous
- 24 Salts
  - Names of salts frequently end in -ate or -ite
- 25 Complex compounds
- 3 Molecular and colloidal mixtures
  - Class here alloys
- 4 Theoretical chemistry
  - Add to 4 the numbers following 541.2 in 541.22-541.28, e.g., molecular structure 42
  - Class comprehensive works on physical chemistry in 5
- 5 Physical chemistry
  - Add to 5 the numbers following 541.3 in 541.33-541.39, e.g., radiochemistry 58
  - For theoretical chemistry, see 4*
- 6 Analytical chemistry

Class physical chemistry applied to inorganic chemistry as a whole in 541

*For organic chemistry of specific elements, compounds, mixtures, groupings, see 547*

*See Manual at 541 vs. 546; also at 549 vs. 546*

### SUMMARY

- 546.2 Hydrogen and its compounds
- .3 Metals, metallic compounds, alloys
- .4 Group 3
- .5 Groups 4, 5, 6, 7
- .6 Groups 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14
- .7 Groups 15, 16, 17, 18
- .8 Periodic law and periodic table

## .2 Hydrogen and its compounds

Standard subdivisions are added for hydrogen and its compounds together, for hydrogen compounds alone

Class here hydrogen chemistry

Class the element hydrogen studied by itself in 546.21

- .21 The element
- .212 Deuterium
- .213 Tritium
- 
- > 546.22–546.24 Hydrogen compounds
- Class comprehensive works in 546.2
- For bases, see 546.32*
- .22 Water
- Including deuterium oxide (heavy water)
- .224 Theoretical chemistry
- Class comprehensive works on physical chemistry in 546.225
- .225 Physical chemistry
- For theoretical chemistry, see 546.224*
- .226 Analytical chemistry
- .24 Acids
- For a specific acid, see the distinguishing element, plus notation 22 from table under 546, e.g., hydrochloric acid 546.73222*
- .25 Theoretical chemistry of hydrogen
- Class comprehensive works on physical chemistry of hydrogen in 546.26
- .26 Physical chemistry of hydrogen
- For theoretical chemistry of hydrogen, see 546.25*
- .3 Metals, metallic compounds, alloys**
- Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- Class analytical chemistry of metals in general in 543; class metallic elements studied collectively in 546.31; class physical and chemical metallurgy in 669.9; class interdisciplinary works on metals in 669
- For metals of groups other than 1 and 2, see 546.4–546.7; for organometallic compounds, see 547.05*
- .31 Metallic elements
- For a specific metal treated as an element, see the metal in 546.38–546.7, plus notation 1 from table under 546, e.g., the element iron 546.6211*
- .32 Bases
- For bases of a specific metal, see the metal in 546.38–546.7, plus notation 22 from table under 546, e.g., bases of iron 546.62122*

.34 Salts

*For salts of a specific metal, see the metal in 546.38–546.7, plus notation 24 from table under 546, e.g., salts of iron 546.62124*

*See also 546.38224 for table salt*

> 546.38–546.39 Alkali and alkaline-earth metals

Class comprehensive works in 546.38

.38 Alkali metals (Group 1)

Class here comprehensive works on alkali and alkaline-earth metals

*For alkaline-earth metals, see 546.39*

.381 \*Lithium

.382 \*Sodium

.383 \*Potassium

.384 \*Rubidium

.385 \*Cesium

.386 \*Francium

.39 Alkaline-earth metals (Group 2)

.391 \*Beryllium

.392 \*Magnesium

.393 \*Calcium

.394 \*Strontium

.395 \*Barium

.396 \*Radium

#### .4 Group 3

.400 1–.400 9 Standard subdivisions

.401 \*Scandium

.403 \*Yttrium

.41 Rare earth elements (Lanthanide series)

.411 \*Lanthanum

.412 \*Cerium

.413 Praseodymium and neodymium

.414 \*Promethium

.415 Samarium and europium

\*Add as instructed under 546

- .416 Gadolinium and terbium
- .417 Dysprosium and holmium
- .418 Erbium and thulium
- .419 Ytterbium and lutetium
- .42 Actinide series  
*For uranium, see 546.431; for transuranium elements, see 546.44*
- .421 \*Actinium
- .422 \*Thorium
- .424 \*Protactinium
- .43 Uranium, neptunium, plutonium
- .431 \*Uranium
- .432 \*Neptunium
- .434 \*Plutonium
- .44 Transuranium elements  
*For neptunium, see 546.432; for plutonium, see 546.434; for rutherfordium, see 546.51; for dubnium, see 546.52; for seaborgium, see 546.53; for bohrium, see 546.54; for darmstadtium, hassium, meitnerium, see 546.62; for roentgenium, see 546.65*
- .441 Americium
- .442 Curium
- .444 Berkelium
- .448 Californium
- .449 Other transuranium elements  
 Including einsteinium, fermium, lawrencium, mendelevium, nobelium
- .5 Groups 4, 5, 6, 7**
- .51 Titanium group (Group 4)  
 Including rutherfordium
- .512 \*Titanium
- .513 \*Zirconium
- .514 \*Hafnium
- .52 Vanadium group (Group 5)  
 Including dubnium
- .522 \*Vanadium

- .524        \*Niobium (Columbium)
- .526        \*Tantalum
- .53        Chromium group (Group 6)  
            Including seaborgium
- .532        \*Chromium
- .534        \*Molybdenum
- .536        \*Tungsten
- .54        Manganese group (Group 7)  
            Including bohrium
- .541        \*Manganese
- .543        \*Technetium
- .545        \*Rhenium
- .6        Groups 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14**  
            Class here comprehensive works on transition metals  
            *For group 3, see 546.4; for groups 4, 5, 6, 7, see 546.5*
- .62        Groups 8, 9, 10  
            Former heading: Iron, cobalt, nickel  
            Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading  
            Including darmstadtium, hassium, meitnerium  
            *For platinum metals, see 546.63*
- .621        \*Iron
- .623        \*Cobalt
- .625        \*Nickel
- .63        Platinum metals  
            *For osmium, iridium, platinum, see 546.64*
- .632        \*Ruthenium
- .634        \*Rhodium
- .636        \*Palladium
- .64        Osmium, iridium, platinum
- .641        \*Osmium
- .643        \*Iridium

- .645        \*Platinum  
                   Class comprehensive works on platinum metals in 546.63
- .65        Group 11  
                   Including roentgenium
- .652        \*Copper
- .654        \*Silver
- .656        \*Gold
- .66        Group 12
- .661        \*Zinc
- .662        \*Cadmium
- .663        \*Mercury
- .67        Group 13
- .671        \*Boron
- .673        \*Aluminum
- .675        \*Gallium
- .677        \*Indium
- .678        \*Thallium
- .68        Group 14
- .681        \*Carbon
- .681 2        Carbon compounds  
                   Number built according to instructions under 546  
                   Use this number for carbon oxides, carbonates, metal carbonyls,  
                   carbon halides when treated as inorganic compounds. Class other  
                   carbon compounds, comprehensive works on carbon compounds, in  
                   547
- .683        \*Silicon
- .684        \*Germanium
- .686        \*Tin
- .688        \*Lead
- .7        **Groups 15, 16, 17, 18**  
                   Class here nonmetals  
                   *For a specific nonmetallic element not provided for here, see the element,*  
                   *e.g., silicon 546.683*
- .71        Group 15

\*Add as instructed under 546

- .711      \*Nitrogen
- .712      \*Phosphorus
- .715      \*Arsenic
- .716      \*Antimony
- .718      \*Bismuth
- .72       Chalcogens (Group 16)
- .721      \*Oxygen
- .723      \*Sulfur
- .724      \*Selenium
- .726      \*Tellurium
- .728      \*Polonium
- .73       Halogens (Group 17)
- .731      \*Fluorine
- .732      \*Chlorine
- .733      \*Bromine
- .734      \*Iodine
- .735      \*Astatine
- .75       Noble gases (Group 18)
- Variant names: inert, rare gases
- .751      \*Helium
- .752      \*Neon
- .753      \*Argon
- .754      \*Krypton
- .755      \*Xenon
- .756      \*Radon
- .8       Periodic law and periodic table**
- Class here periodicity
- Class comprehensive works on atomic structure in 541.24

**547 Organic chemistry**

Class here biochemicals when not considered in their biological context

Add to each subdivision identified by \* as follows:

- 04 Special topics
- 044 Theoretical chemistry
  - Add to 044 the numbers following 541.2 in 541.22–541.28, e.g., molecular structure 0442
  - Class comprehensive works on physical chemistry in 045
- 045 Physical chemistry
- 0453–0458 Specific topics of physical chemistry
  - Add to 045 the numbers following 541.3 in 541.33–541.38, e.g., solution chemistry 0454
  - For theoretical chemistry, see 044*
- 046 Analytical chemistry

Class interdisciplinary works on biochemicals in 572

*For biochemistry, see 572*

**SUMMARY**

- 547.001–.009 Standard subdivisions
  - .01–.08 Kinds of compounds identified by component elements
    - .1 Physical and theoretical chemistry
    - .2 Organic chemical reactions
    - .4 Aliphatic compounds
    - .5 Cyclic compounds
    - .6 Aromatic compounds
    - .7 Macromolecules and related compounds
    - .8 Other organic substances

.001 Philosophy and theory

Do not use for theoretical organic chemistry; class in 547.12

.002–.009 Standard subdivisions

> 547.01–547.08 Kinds of compounds identified by component elements

Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 547.01–547.08 in the number coming last, e.g., sulfonamides 547.067 (*not* 547.042)

Class chemical reactions of compounds identified by component elements in 547.2; class kinds of compounds identified by structure and function in 547.4–547.8; class comprehensive works in 547

- .01 \*Hydrocarbons
- .02 \*Halocarbons
- .03 \*Oxy and hydroxy compounds
- .031 \*Alcohols
- .035 \*Ethers

\*Add as instructed under 547

- .036      \*Aldehydes and ketones  
            Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .037      \*Acids
- .038      \*Esters
- .04        \*Organonitrogen compounds
- .041      \*Nitro and nitroso compounds
- .042      \*Amines and amides  
            Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .043      \*Azo compounds
- .044      \*Nitriles and isonitriles  
            Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .05        \*Organometallic compounds
- .053--.057    Specific organometallic compounds  
            Add to base number 547.05 the numbers following 546 in 546.3–546.7 for the element only, e.g., organozinc compounds 547.05661; then add further as instructed under 547, e.g., analytic chemistry of organozinc compounds 547.05661046; however, for organophosphorus compounds, see 547.07; for organosilicon compounds, see 547.08
- .06        \*Organosulfur compounds
- .061      \*Sulfides
- .063      \*Hydrosulfides
- .064      \*Thio acids
- .065      Oxy derivatives of sulfides  
            Including sulfones, sulfoxides, thioaldehydes, thioketones
- .066      \*Sulfinic acids
- .067      \*Sulfonic acids
- .07        \*Organophosphorus compounds
- .08        \*Organosilicon compounds
- .1         **Physical and theoretical chemistry**  
            Add to base number 547.1 the numbers following 541 in 541.2–541.3, e.g., stereochemistry 547.1223; however, for organic chemical reactions, see 547.2  
  
            Class physical and theoretical chemistry of specific kinds of compounds identified by component elements in 547.01–547.08; class physical and theoretical chemistry of kinds of compounds identified by structure and function in 547.4–547.8

**.2 Organic chemical reactions**

Class here chemical reactions of compounds identified by component elements, chemical reactions of compounds identified by structure and function; addition, synthesis

.21 General topics in chemical reactions

.212 Chemical equilibrium

.214 Reaction kinetics

*For catalysis, see 547.215*

.215 Catalysis

.23 Oxidation-reduction reaction (Redox reaction)

Including hydrogenation

Class here oxidation, reduction

.27 Reactions producing specific kinds of organic compounds

Including amination, aromatization, diazotization, esterification, halogenation, nitration, nitrosation, saponification, sulfonation

Class comprehensive works on a specific kind of organic compound identified by its component element and the reaction producing it with the kind in 547.01–547.08, e.g., halocarbons and halogenation 547.02; class comprehensive works on a specific kind of organic compound and the reactions producing it with the kind in 547.4–547.8, e.g., aromatic compounds and aromatization 547.6

*For polymerization, see 547.28*

.28 Polymerization

Class comprehensive works on polymers and polymerization in 547.7

.29 Fermentation

---

> **547.4–547.8 Kinds of compounds identified by structure and function**

Class comprehensive works in 547; class chemical reactions of compounds identified by structure and function in 547.2

**.4 \*Aliphatic compounds**

Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 547.4 in the number coming last, e.g., aliphatic sulfonamides 547.467 (*not* 547.442)

Class aliphatic macromolecular compounds in 547.7

.41 \*Hydrocarbons

.411 \*Paraffins (Alkanes)

*See also 547.77 for paraffin wax*

.412 \*Olefins (Alkenes)

.413 \*Acetylenes (Alkynes)

.42--.48 Other compounds

Add to base number 547.4 the numbers following 547.0 in 547.02–547.08, e.g., carboxylic acids 547.437

*For proteins, see 547.7*

**.5 \*Cyclic compounds**

Class here alicyclic compounds

*For aromatic compounds, see 547.6*

> 547.51–547.58 Alicyclic compounds

Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 547.51–547.58 in the number coming last, e.g., alicyclic sulfonamides 547.567 (*not* 547.542)

Class comprehensive works in 547.5

.51 \*Alicyclic hydrocarbons

.511 \*Cycloparaffins

.512 \*Cycloolefins

.513 \*Cycloacetylenes

.52--.58 Other alicyclic compounds

Add to base number 547.5 the numbers following 547.0 in 547.02–547.08, e.g., alicyclic halocarbons 547.52

.59 \*Heterocyclic compounds

.592 \*Hetero oxygen compounds

Including furans, oxazoles, pyrans

.593 \*Hetero nitrogen compounds

Including chlorophylls, diazines, imidazoles, porphyrins, pyrazoles, pyridines, pyrroles

.594 \*Hetero sulfur compounds

Including thiazoles, thiophenes

.595 Compounds with two or more different hetero atoms

Including oxazines, oxdiazines, oxdiazoles

.596 \*Fused heterocyclic compounds

Including purines, quinolines

\*Add as instructed under 547

**.6 \*Aromatic compounds**

Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 547.6 in the number coming last, e.g., aromatic sulfonamides 547.667 (*not* 547.642)

**.61 \*Hydrocarbons****.611 \*Benzenes****.613 \*Polyphenyl hydrocarbons**

Including diphenyl hydrocarbons

**.615 \*Fused hydrocarbons**

Including naphthalenes

*For anthracenes, see 547.616*

**.616 \*Anthracenes****.62 \*Halogenated compounds****.63 \*Oxy and hydroxy compounds**

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

**.631 \*Alcohols**

Class phenols in 547.632

**.632 \*Phenols**

Including monohydric hydroxy aromatics

**.633 \*Polyhydroxy aromatics**

Including dihydroxy and trihydroxy aromatics, catechols, hydroquinones, resorcinols

**.635 \*Ethers****.636 \*Aldehydes and ketones**

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

**.637 \*Acids****.638 \*Esters****.64-.68 Other aromatic compounds**

Add to base number 547.6 the numbers following 547.0 in 547.04-547.08, e.g., aromatic amines 547.642

**.7 \*Macromolecules and related compounds**

Including alkaloids, antibiotics, hormones, nucleic acids, proteins, steroids, vitamins

Class here macromolecules when not considered in their biological context; comprehensive works on polymers

Subdivisions are added for macromolecules and related compounds, for macromolecules alone

Class interdisciplinary works on macromolecules in 572

*For inorganic polymers, see 541.2254; for fossil substances, see 547.82; for comprehensive works on high polymers, see 547.84; for dyes and pigments, see 547.86*

*See also 668.9 for synthetic polymers*

**.71 Terpenes and essential oils**

Including camphors

**.77 \*Lipids**

Including waxes

Class here fats

Class steroids in 547.7

*For essential oils, see 547.71*

*See also 547.411 for paraffin hydrocarbons*

**.78 \*Carbohydrates**

Including sugars, starches, gums

**.8 Other organic substances****.82 \*Fossil substances**

Including coal tar

Class a specific compound derived from a fossil substance with the compound, e.g., synthetic rubber 678.72

*For petroleum, see 547.83*

**.83 \*Petroleum****.84 \*High polymers**

Class high polymers of a specific chemical group with the group, e.g., starches 547.78

**.842 \*Elastomers****.842 5 \*Latexes****.842 6 \*Rubber**

\*Add as instructed under 547

.843 \*Flexible polymers

.843 4 \*Resins

.86 \*Dyes and pigments

Standard subdivisions are added for dyes and pigments together, for dyes alone

.869 \*Pigments

## 548 Crystallography

Class crystallographic mineralogy in 549.18; class comprehensive works on solid-state physics in 530.41

*See Manual at 548 vs. 530.41; also at 549 vs. 548*

.015 1 Mathematical principles

Do not use for mathematical crystallography; class in 548.7

### .3 Chemical crystallography

Relationship between structure and bonding

Including isomorphism, polymorphism, pseudomorphism

### .5 Crystallization

Class here crystal growth

### .7 Mathematical crystallography

Measurement and calculation of angles

Class geometric crystallography in 548.81

### .8 Physical and structural crystallography

Standard subdivisions are added for physical and structural crystallography together, for physical crystallography alone

.81 Structural crystallography

Class here crystal lattices, geometrical crystallography

Class structural crystallography of a specific substance with the substance, e.g., structural chemistry of silicates 549.6

*For diffraction methods, see 548.83*

.810 151 Mathematical principles

Do not use for mathematical crystallography; class in 548.7

.83 Diffraction crystallography

Including crystallograms

Class optical methods of crystal study in 548.9

- > 548.84–548.86 Physical properties of crystals  
 Class comprehensive works in 548.8  
*For optical properties, see 548.9*
- .84 Mechanical properties
- .842 Stresses, deformation, strength properties  
 Including elasticity, plasticity; dislocation, fracture, hardness
- .85 Electrical, electronic, magnetic properties  
 Including conductivity, dielectricity
- .86 Thermal properties  
 Including fusibility
- .9 Optical crystallography**  
 Optical properties of crystals and optical methods of crystal study

## 549 Mineralogy

Occurrence, description, classification, identification of naturally occurring minerals

Class crystallography in 548; class economic geology in 553

*See Manual at 549 vs. 546; also at 549 vs. 548*

### SUMMARY

- 549.09 History, geographic treatment, biography**
- .1 Determinative mineralogy**
- .2 Native elements**
- .3 Sulfides, antimonides, arsenides, selenides, tellurides; sulfosalts**
- .4 Halides**
- .5 Oxides**
- .6 Silicates**
- .7 Other minerals**
- .9 Geographic treatment of minerals**
- .09 History, geographic treatment, biography  
 Do not use for geographic treatment of minerals; class in 549.9
- .1 Determinative mineralogy**  
 Class determinative mineralogy of specific minerals in 549.2–549.7
- .11 Minerals in specific kinds of formations
- .112 Meteorite minerals  
 Class here petrology of meteorites  
 Class comprehensive works on meteorites in 523.51

- .114 Minerals in rocks  
 Add to base number 549.114 the numbers following 552 in 552.1–552.5, e.g., determinative mineralogy in sedimentary rocks 549.1145  
 Class comprehensive works on rocks in 552
- .116 Minerals in pegmatite dikes  
 Class comprehensive works on dikes in 551.88
- .12 Physical mineralogy
- .121 Mechanical properties  
 Including cleavage, fracture, hardness
- .125 Optical properties  
 Including color, fluorescence, luminescence
- .127 Electrical, electronic, magnetic properties
- .13 Chemical mineralogy
- .131 Composition, properties, reactivity
- .133 Analysis
- .18 Crystallographic mineralogy  
 Study of crystalline structure and properties of minerals

> **549.2–549.7 Specific minerals**

Class comprehensive works in 549

**.2 Native elements**

Use 549.7 for mineral compounds of specific elements not provided for elsewhere in 549.3–549.6

**.23 Metals**

Native metals only

Class interdisciplinary works on physico-chemical characteristics of metals in 669.9

**.25 Semimetals**

Including antimony, arsenic, bismuth, boron, selenium, tellurium

**.27 Nonmetals**

Including graphite (carbon)

**.3 Sulfides, antimonides, arsenides, selenides, tellurides; sulfosalts**

Class sulfates in 549.75

**.32 Sulfides, antimonides, arsenides, selenides, tellurides**

Including chalcocite, cinnabar, galena, molybdenite, pyrite, sphalerite

- .35 Sulfosalts (Double sulfides)
  - Including tetrahedrite
- .4 Halides**
  - Including carnallite, cryolite, fluorite (fluorspar), halite, rock salt
- .5 Oxides**
  - .52 Simple and multiple oxides
    - Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
  - .522 Cuprite, ice, zincite
  - .523 Hematite group
    - Including corundum, ilmenite
  - .524 Rutile group
    - Including cassiterite
  - .525 Goethite group
    - Including diaspore
  - .526 Spinel group
    - Including chromite, magnetite
  - .528 Other groups of oxides
    - Including uraninite
- .53 Hydroxides
  - Including bauxite, limonite
- .6 Silicates**
  - Class here clay
  - .62 Nesosilicates
    - Including andalusite, cyanite, garnet, kyanite, sillimanite, staurolite, topaz, zircon
  - .63 Sorosilicates
    - Including epidote
  - .64 Cyclosilicates
    - Including beryl, chrysocolla, cordierite, tourmaline
  - .66 Inosilicates
    - Including amphiboles, pyroxenes, spodumene, wollastonite
  - .67 Phyllosilicates
    - Including chlorite, glauconite, kaolinite, mica, pyrophyllite, serpentine, talc

- .68        Tectosilicates  
            Including feldspar, leucite, opal, quartz, scapolite, zeolite
- .7        Other minerals**
- [.701–.709]    Standard subdivisions  
            Do not use; class in 549.01–549.09
- .72        Phosphates, arsenates, vanadates  
            Including apatite, monazite, turquoise
- .73        Nitrates and borates
- .732        Nitrates  
            Including saltpeter (niter), Chile saltpeter (soda niter)
- .735        Borates  
            Including borax, colemanite
- .74        Molybdates and tungstates  
            Including scheelite, wolframite
- .75        Sulfates and chromates  
            Standard subdivisions are added for sulfates and chromates together, for  
            sulfates alone
- .752        Chromates and anhydrous sulfates  
            Including anhydrite, barite, celestite
- .755        Hydrous and basic sulfates  
            Including alunite, gypsum
- .78        Carbonates
- .782        Calcite group  
            Including dolomite, magnesite, siderite
- .785        Aragonite group  
            Including malachite
- .9        Geographic treatment of minerals**  
            Add to base number 549.9 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., minerals of  
            Greenland 549.9982

## 550 Earth sciences

Class here geophysics; phenomena of celestial bodies directly comparable to terrestrial phenomena, e.g., volcanic activity on Mars 551.21099923

Use 550 and its standard subdivisions for works that deal comprehensively with geology, hydrology, and meteorology; for works on geology in the sense of all earth sciences. Use 551 and its standard subdivisions for works on geology in the sense limited to properties and phenomena of the solid earth

*See Manual at 523 vs. 550; also at 550 vs. 910*

### SUMMARY

- 551**        **Geology, hydrology, meteorology**  
**552**        **Petrology**  
**553**        **Economic geology**  
**554–559**    **Earth sciences by specific continents, countries, localities in modern world; extraterrestrial worlds**

[.154]        Chemical principles

Do not use; class in 551.9

[.94–.99]    Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world; extraterrestrial worlds

Do not use; class in 554–559

## 551 Geology, hydrology, meteorology

Geology: science that deals with properties and phenomena of the solid earth (lithosphere)

Use 550 and its standard subdivisions for works that deal comprehensively with geology, hydrology, and meteorology; for works on geology in the sense of all earth sciences. Use 551 and its standard subdivisions for works on geology in the sense limited to properties and phenomena of the solid earth

*For astronomical geography, see 525; for geodesy, see 526.1; for petrology, see 552; for economic geology, see 553; for physical geography, see 910.02*

*See also 363.34 for disasters; also 904.5 for history of events of natural origin*

### SUMMARY

- 551.01–.09**        **Standard subdivisions of geology**  
  **.1**        **Gross structure and properties of the earth**  
  **.2**        **Volcanoes, earthquakes, thermal waters and gases**  
  **.3**        **Surface and exogenous processes and their agents**  
  **.4**        **Geomorphology and hydrosphere**  
  **.5**        **Meteorology**  
  **.6**        **Climatology and weather**  
  **.7**        **Historical geology**  
  **.8**        **Structural geology**  
  **.9**        **Geochemistry**

.01        Philosophy and theory of geology

[.015 4]        Chemical principles

Do not use; class in 551.9



.23 Thermal waters and gases

Standard subdivisions are added for thermal waters and gases together, for thermal waters alone

Including volcanic volatiles

Class here surface manifestations, e.g., fumaroles, hot springs

**.3 Surface and exogenous processes and their agents**

Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

Class here sedimentology as study of surface processes

Class comprehensive works on landforms in 551.41; class comprehensive works on sedimentology in 552.5

.300 1–.300 9 Standard subdivisions

> 551.302–551.307 Erosion and weathering, sediments and sedimentation, soil formation, mass movement

Class comprehensive works in 551.3

*See Manual at 551.302–551.307 vs. 551.35*

.302 Erosion and weathering

Class here soil erosion, interdisciplinary works on erosion

Class role of weathering in soil formation in 551.305

*For a specific aspect of erosion, see the aspect, e.g., erosion engineering 627.5, control of agricultural soil erosion 631.45*

.303 Transporting and depositing of materials

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here sedimentation

.304 Transported materials (Sediments)

.305 Soil formation

Class here role of water in soil formation

.307 Mass movement (Mass wasting)

Including avalanches, creep, mud flows, rockfalls; subsidence

Class here landslides, slope failure, work of water in mass movement

*See also 363.349 for disasters resulting from avalanches and other mass movements*

.31 Glaciology

Class here geologic work of ice; interdisciplinary works on ice

*For ice in water and other forms of ice, see 551.34; for geologic work of frost, see 551.38. For a specific aspect of ice, see the aspect, e.g., ice manufacture 621.58*

- .312        Glaciers  
               *For icebergs, shelf ice, growlers, see 551.342*
- .313        Glacial action  
               Including work of glaciers in erosion, soil formation, weathering
- .314        Material transported by glaciers  
               Class here glacial drift and till, moraines regarded as materials  
               Class glacial drift and till, moraines regarded as landforms in 551.315
- .315        Landforms created by glaciers  
               Including cirques, drumlins, kames, kettles, roches moutonnées  
               Class here glacial drift and till, moraines regarded as landforms
- .34         Ice in water and other forms of ice  
               Standard subdivisions are added for ice in water and other forms of ice  
               together, for ice in water alone  
               *For snow, see 551.5784; for hail, see 551.5787*
- .342        Ice in the sea  
               Including icebergs, shelf ice, growlers  
               *For sea ice, see 551.343*
- .343        Sea ice (Frozen seawater)
- .344        Anchor and frazil ice
- .345        Lake and river ice  
               Class here ice cover  
               *For anchor and frazil ice, see 551.344*
- .35         Geologic work of water  
               Work of precipitation, of surface and subsurface waters  
               *For role of water in soil formation, see 551.305; for geologic work of  
               marine waters, see 551.36*  
               *See Manual at 551.302–551.307 vs. 551.35*
- .352        Erosion and weathering  
               Standard subdivisions are added for erosion and weathering together, for  
               erosion alone
- .353        Transporting and depositing materials  
               Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
               Class here sedimentation in water  
               *For role of water in mass movement, see 551.307*
- .354        Transported materials (Sediments)

- .355 Landforms created by water  
*For specific landforms created by water, see 551.42–551.45*
- .36 Geologic work of marine waters  
 Including wave action, beach erosion  
*For specific landforms created by marine waters, see 551.42–551.45*
- .37 Geologic work of wind
- .372 Erosion  
 Class here weathering
- .373 Transporting and depositing materials  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .374 Transported materials
- .375 Landforms created by wind  
 Class here dunes
- .38 Geologic work of frost  
 Class here nivation; work of frost in erosion, in soil formation, in weathering; comprehensive works on frost  
*For frost as a cold spell, see 551.5253; for condensation of frost, see 551.5744*
- .382 Fragmentation of rocks
- .384 Permafrost
- .39 Geologic work of other agents  
 Including temperature changes
- .397 Meteorites  
 Class here meteorite craters
- .4 Geomorphology and hydrosphere**

### SUMMARY

- 551.41 **Geomorphology**
- .42 **Islands and reefs**
- .43 **Elevations**
- .44 **Depressions and openings**
- .45 **Plane and coastal regions**
- .46 **Oceanography and submarine geology**
- .48 **Hydrology**
- .49 **Groundwater (Subsurface water)**

.41           Geomorphology  
                   Creation and modification of topographic landforms by erosional and  
                   depositional processes

Class here geomorphology of continents, comprehensive works on  
 landforms

*For landforms created by water, see 551.355; for specific landforms, see  
 551.42–551.45; for submarine geomorphology, see 551.4683*

*See also 551.136 for continental drift*

[.410 916 2--.410 916 8]           Treatment in oceans and seas

Do not use; class in 551.4683

.415           Arid-land geomorphology  
                   Class here desert geomorphology

.417           Wetland geomorphology

>           551.42–551.45   Specific landforms

Class here specific land formations created by water; comprehensive works  
 on specific kinds of topographical features, on present and past examples of  
 specific landforms

Class comprehensive works in 551.41

*For a specific landform created by plutonic action, see the landform in  
 551.2, e.g., volcanic mountains 551.21; for a specific landform created  
 primarily by exogenous agents other than water or living organisms, see the  
 landform in 551.3, e.g., glacial moraines 551.315; for a specific landform  
 created by tectonic deformations, see the landform in 551.8, e.g., rift valleys  
 551.872*

.42           Islands and reefs  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for islands and reefs together, for islands  
                   alone

.423           Barrier islands  
                   Class barrier reefs in 551.424

.424           Reefs  
                   Including atolls

.43           Elevations  
                   Including slopes  
                   Class slopes of specific kinds of elevations in 551.432–551.436; class  
                   orogeny in 551.82

.432           Mountains

.434           Plateaus

.436           Hills

- .44       Depressions and openings  
           Including sedimentary basins  
           *For craters, see 551.21*
- .442       Valleys  
           Including canyons, gorges, ravines; floodplains; river beds  
           *For deltas, see 551.456; for rift valleys, see 551.872*
- .447       Caves and related features  
           Standard subdivisions are added for caves and related features together,  
           for caves alone  
           Including karst formations, sink holes
- .45       Plane and coastal regions
- .453       Plane regions  
           Class here pampas, plains, prairies, steppes, tundras; comprehensive  
           works on grasslands  
           *For floodplains, see 551.442; for deltas, see 551.456. For a specific  
           kind of grassland not in a plane region, see the kind, e.g., alpine  
           meadows 551.432*
- .456       Deltas
- .457       Coastal regions  
           Including beaches  
           *For deltas, see 551.456; for shorelines, see 551.458*
- .458       Shorelines  
           Marine and lake  
           Class here changes in sea and lake levels
- .46       Oceanography and submarine geology  
           Standard subdivisions are added for oceanography and submarine geology  
           together, for oceanography alone  
           Class here hydrography, hydrosphere; physical oceanography, seawater;  
           interdisciplinary works on marine science, on oceans and seas  
           Class ice in 551.31; class geologic work of water in 551.35; class  
           ocean-atmosphere interactions in 551.5246; class interdisciplinary works on  
           water in 553.7  
           *For hydrology, see 551.48. For a specific aspect of marine science, of  
           oceans and seas, not provided for here, see the aspect, e.g., international  
           law of ocean and sea waters 341.45, marine biology 578.77*  
           *See Manual at 578.76–578.77 vs. 551.46, 551.48*
- .460 9     History, geographic treatment, biography

- [.460 916 3–.460 916 7] Treatment in specific oceans and seas  
Do not use; class in 551.4613–551.4617
- [.460 916 8] Special oceanographic forms and inland seas  
Do not use for coastal water saltwater bodies; class in 551.4618. Do not use for inland seas; class in 551.4829
- .461 Specific oceans and seas, coastal saltwater bodies  
Class treatment of a specific topic in oceanography in specific oceans and seas in 551.462–551.468
- .461 3–.461 7 Specific oceans and seas  
Add to base number 551.461 the numbers following —16 in notation 163–167 from Table 2, e.g., Atlantic Ocean 551.4613
- .461 8 Coastal saltwater bodies  
Including fjords, saltwater lagoons  
Class here estuaries  
*For coastal saltwater bodies in a specific ocean or sea, see the ocean or sea in 551.4613–551.4617, e.g., estuaries in Atlantic Ocean 551.4613*  
*See also 551.4829 for salt lakes and inland seas*

- > 551.462–551.468 Specific topics in oceanography; submarine geology  
Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by \* as follows:
- 01–09 Standard subdivisions  
As modified under 551.46
  - 1 Specific oceans and seas, coastal saltwater bodies
  - 13–17 Specific oceans and seas  
Add to 1 the numbers following —16 in notation 163–167 from Table 2, e.g., Atlantic Ocean 13
  - 18 Coastal saltwater bodies  
Including fjords, saltwater lagoons  
Class here estuaries  
*For coastal saltwater bodies in a specific ocean or sea, see the ocean or sea in 13–17, e.g., estuaries in Atlantic Ocean 13*

Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 551.462–551.468 in the number coming last, e.g., physical properties of sediments 551.4686 (*not* 551.465)

Class comprehensive works in 551.46

- .462 \*Ocean circulation  
Including eddies, mixing, turbulence, upwelling  
Class here dynamic oceanography, ocean currents

\*Add as instructed under 551.462–551.468

- .463      \*Waves  
           Including seiches, storm surges  
           Class here wind waves  
           Class comprehensive works on ocean-atmosphere interactions in 551.5246  
           *See also 551.36 for geologic work of waves*
- .463 7     \*Tsunamis  
           Variant names: seismic sea waves, tidal waves
- .464      \*Tides  
           Class here tidal currents  
           *See also 551.36 for geologic work of tides*
- .465      \*Physical properties of seawater
- .465 3     \*Temperature
- .465 4     \*Acoustical properties
- .465 5     \*Optical properties
- .466      \*Chemical oceanography
- .466 4     \*Salinity
- .466 43    \*Temperature-salinity relationships
- .468      \*Submarine geology  
           Class here ocean floor  
           *For sea-floor spreading, see 551.136*
- .468 3     \*Submarine geomorphology  
           Class here topography of ocean floor
- .468 6     \*Sediments
- .48      Hydrology  
           Class here hydrological cycle, limnology, water balance  
           Class comprehensive works on oceanography and hydrology in 551.46; class water resources, interdisciplinary works on water in 553.7  
           *For fumaroles, see 551.23; for groundwater, see 551.49; for hydrometeorology, see 551.57*  
           *See also 551.417 for wetland geomorphology*  
           *See Manual at 578.76–578.77 vs. 551.46, 551.48*
- .482      Lakes and inland seas  
           Class here freshwater lakes, freshwater ponds, freshwater lagoons

\*Add as instructed under 551.462–551.468

- .482 9            Salt lakes and inland seas  
                     Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                     Class interdisciplinary works on a specific inland sea or salt lake in  
                     940–990, e.g., Caspian Sea 947.5
- .483            Rivers and streams  
                     Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                     *For waterfalls, see 551.484; for floods, see 551.489*
- .484            Waterfalls
- .488            Runoff
- .489            Floods
- .49            Groundwater (Subsurface water)  
                     Class here aquifers  
                     *For thermal waters, see 551.23*
- .492            Water table
- .498            Surface manifestations  
                     Including springs, wells  
                     *For hot springs, see 551.23*

## .5            **Meteorology**

Class here atmosphere

Class forecasting and forecasts of specific phenomena in 551.64; class forecasts of specific phenomena in specific areas in 551.65; class micrometeorology in 551.66

*For climatology and weather, see 551.6*

*See Manual at 551.5 vs. 551.6*

### **SUMMARY**

- 551.51            **Composition, regions, dynamics of atmosphere**  
 .52            **Thermodynamics, atmosphere interactions with earth's surface, temperatures, radiation**  
 .54            **Atmospheric pressure**  
 .55            **Atmospheric disturbances and formations**  
 .56            **Atmospheric electricity and optics**  
 .57            **Hydrometeorology**

[.501 12]            Forecasting and forecasts

Do not use; class in 551.63

.51            Composition, regions, dynamics of atmosphere

.511            Composition

Class here chemistry, photochemistry of atmosphere

- .511 2 Gases
- .511 3 Aerosols and dust  
Class dust storms in 551.559
- 

- > 551.513–551.514 Atmospheric regions  
Class comprehensive works in 551.51. Class a specific aspect with the aspect, e.g., upper-atmosphere temperatures 551.5257
- .513 Troposphere
- .514 Upper atmosphere  
Including magnetosphere, mesosphere  
Class magnetic phenomena in magnetosphere, comprehensive works on magnetosphere in 538.766
- .514 2 Stratosphere  
Class here ozone layer
- .514 5 Ionosphere
- .515 Dynamics  
Including gravity waves  
Class here mechanics  
*For circulation, see 551.517*
- .515 1 Kinematics
- .517 Circulation  
*For wind, see 551.518; for atmospheric disturbances and formations, see 551.55*
- .518 Wind  
Class wind in atmospheric disturbances and formations in 551.55
- 

- > 551.518 3–551.518 5 Wind systems in troposphere  
Class comprehensive works in 551.518
- .518 3 Planetary wind systems  
Including jet streams, trade winds, westerlies
- .518 4 Monsoons
- .518 5 Local wind systems  
Including land and sea breezes; mountain and valley winds, e.g., chinooks, foehns
- .518 7 Winds in upper atmosphere

- .52 Thermodynamics, atmosphere interactions with earth's surface, temperatures, radiation
- .522 Thermodynamics  
Class thermodynamics in microclimatology in 551.66
- .523 Land-atmosphere interactions  
Class here earth temperatures affecting atmosphere
- .524 Atmosphere interactions with earth's surface  
Class here water-atmosphere interactions, water temperatures affecting atmosphere  
*For land-atmosphere interactions, see 551.523*
- [.524 091 62–.524 091 68] Treatment in oceans and seas  
Do not use; class in 551.5246
- [.524 091 69] Fresh and brackish waters  
Do not use; class in 551.5248
- .524 6 Ocean-atmosphere interactions
- [.524 609 163–.524 609 167] Treatment in specific oceans and seas  
Do not use; class in 551.52463–551.52467
- .524 63–.524 67 Specific oceans and seas  
Add to base number 551.5246 the numbers following —16 in notation 163–167 from Table 2, e.g., temperatures of Indian Ocean 551.52465
- .524 8 Lake and river interactions with atmosphere
- .525 Temperatures  
Class here air temperatures, energy budget, energy flow  
*For earth temperatures affecting atmosphere, see 551.523; for water temperatures affecting atmosphere, see 551.524; for radiant energy, see 551.527*  
*See also 333.79 for economic aspects of energy budgets*
- .525 091 732 Urban regions  
Class here urban heat islands  
*For specific urban heat islands, see 551.525093–551.525099*
- .525 3 Variations over time at earth's surface  
Including maximums, minimums, frosts  
Class comprehensive works on frost in 551.38
- .525 4 Vertical distribution in troposphere
- .525 7 Upper-atmosphere temperatures

- .527            Radiation  
                   *For optical phenomena, see 551.565*
- .527 1           Solar radiation
- .527 2           Terrestrial radiation  
                   *For radiation originating in atmosphere, see 551.5273*
- .527 3           Radiation originating in atmosphere
- .527 6           Cosmic radiation  
                   Including cosmic noise  
                   Class here cosmic rays

- .54            Atmospheric pressure
- .543            Variations over time at earth's surface
- .543 09          History and biography  
                   Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 551.5409

- .547            Upper-atmosphere pressures
- .55            Atmospheric disturbances and formations  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for atmospheric disturbances and  
                   formations together, for atmospheric disturbances alone  
                   Class here storms  
                   Class precipitation from storms in 551.577  
                   *See also 363.3492 for storms as disasters*

- .551            Atmospheric formations
- .551 2           Air masses and fronts
- .551 3           Cyclones  
                   *See also 551.552 for hurricanes; also 551.553 for tornadoes*
- .551 4           Anticyclones

---

>            551.552–551.559 Atmospheric disturbances

                  Class comprehensive works in 551.55

- .552            Hurricanes  
                   Variant names: typhoons, baguios, tropical cyclones, willy-willies
- .553            Tornadoes  
                   Variant names: cyclones, twisters  
                   Including waterspouts

- .554 Thermal convective storms  
Including hailstorms  
Class here thunderstorms  
*For tornadoes, see 551.553*
- .555 Snowstorms  
Class here blizzards
- .556 Ice storms
- .559 Dust storms
- .56 Atmospheric electricity and optics
- .561 Electricity in stable atmosphere  
Including conductivity, ionization
- .563 Atmospheric electricity  
Class magnetic phenomena in 538.7  
*For electricity in stable atmosphere, see 551.561*
- .563 2 Lightning  
*For ball lightning, see 551.5634*
- .563 4 Ball lightning
- .565 Atmospheric optics  
Class here optical phenomena produced by refraction, e.g., mirages, scintillation  
Class visibility in 551.568  
*For optical phenomena produced by absorption and scattering, see 551.566; for optical phenomena produced by condensation products, see 551.567*
- .566 Optical phenomena produced by absorption and scattering  
Including sky color, twilight, night skies
- .567 Optical phenomena produced by condensation products  
Including cloud colors, rainbows
- .568 Visibility
- .57 Hydrometeorology
- .571 Humidity  
Variations of humidity over time
- .571 3
- .572 Evapotranspiration  
Class here evaporation

- .574            Condensation of moisture  
                   *For condensation of moisture in a specific form, see the form, e.g., clouds 551.576*
- .574 1          Condensation processes  
                   Class here atmospheric nucleation, formation of particles on which moisture condenses  
                   Class condensation processes on earth's surface in 551.5744; class comprehensive works on atmospheric aerosols and dust in 551.5113
- .574 4          Condensations on earth's surface  
                   Including dew, glaze, hoarfrost  
                   Class comprehensive work on frost in 551.38
- .575            Fog and mist  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for fog and mist together, for fog alone
- .576            Clouds  
                   Class cloud colors in 551.567
- .577            Precipitation  
                   Class here liquid precipitation, rain, rainfall  
                   Class geologic work of precipitation in 551.35  
                   *For frozen precipitation, see 551.578*
- .577 09        History and biography  
                   Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 551.5772
- .577 1          Properties  
                   Including composition, temperature; meteorology of acid rain  
                   Class interdisciplinary works on acid rain in 363.7386
- .577 2          Geographic distribution of precipitation  
                   Add to base number 551.5772 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., rainfall in Nigeria 551.5772669  
                   Class geographic distribution of variations over time in 551.5773
- .577 3          Variations over time  
                   Including droughts, maximums, minimums  
                   *See also 551.489 for floods*
- .577 5          Factors affecting precipitation  
                   Including bodies of water, cities, topography, vegetation  
                   Class comprehensive works on atmosphere interactions with earth's surface in 551.524
- .578            Frozen precipitation

- .578 4            Snow  
                   Class snowstorms in 551.555
- .578 409            History and biography  
                   Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 551.57842
- .578 41–.578 43    Properties, geographic distribution, variations over time  
                   Add to base number 551.5784 the numbers following 551.577 in  
                   551.5771–551.5773, e.g., variations in snow and snowfall over  
                   time 551.57843
- .578 46            Snow cover  
                   *For snow surveys, see 551.579*
- .578 464            Ablation  
                   Class here melting
- .578 47            Snow formations  
                   Including drifts  
                   *For avalanches, see 551.57848*
- .578 48            Avalanches
- .578 7             Hail and graupel  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for hail and graupel together, for hail  
                   alone  
                   Class hailstorms in 551.554
- .579                Snow surveys
- .579 09            History and biography  
                   Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 551.5791–551.5799
- .579 1–.579 9    Geographic treatment  
                   Add to base number 551.579 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., snow  
                   surveys in Nevada 551.579793

## .6            **Climatology and weather**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

*See Manual at 551.5 vs. 551.6*

- [.601 12]            Forecasting and forecasts  
                   Do not use; class in 551.63
- .609                History, geographic treatment, biography  
                   Do not use for geographic treatment of weather; class in 551.65. Do not  
                   use for geographic treatment of climate, of climate and weather taken  
                   together; class in 551.69
- .62                 General types of climate

- .620 9           History and biography  
                   Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 551.69
- .63               Weather forecasting and forecasts, reporting and reports  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for weather forecasting and forecasts, reporting and reports together; for weather forecasting alone; for weather forecasts alone  
                   *For forecasting and forecasts of specific phenomena, see 551.64*
- .630 284           Materials  
                   Do not use for apparatus and equipment; class in 551.635
- .630 9            History and biography  
                   Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 551.65
- .631             Historical methods of forecasting  
                   Class here weather lore
- .632             Reporting and reports  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Class reports of specific weather phenomena in 551.5  
                   *For instrumentation in reporting, see 551.635*
- .632 09          History, geographic treatment, biography  
                   Do not use for geographic treatment of weather reports; class in 551.65
- .633             Statistical forecasting
- .634             Numerical forecasting
- .635             Instrumentation in reporting and forecasting  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .635 2            Radiosondes
- .635 3            Radar
- .635 4            Weather satellites
- .636             Short-range and long-range forecasts  
                   Class a specific aspect of short-range and long-range forecasts with the aspect, e.g., satellites in long-range forecasts 551.6354
- .636 2            Short-range forecasts  
                   Forecasts for a maximum of a week
- .636 5            Long-range forecasts  
                   Forecasts more than a week in advance
- .64              Forecasting and forecasts of specific phenomena

- [.640 1–.640 9]      Standard subdivisions  
                             Do not use; class in 551.6301–551.6309
- .641–.647      Specific meteorological phenomena  
                             Class here methods of forecasting specific phenomena for specific areas  
                             Add to base number 551.64 the numbers following 551.5 in  
                             551.51–551.57, e.g., hurricane warnings 551.6452  
                             Class flood forecasting and forecasts in 551.4890112; class forecasts of  
                             specific phenomena for specific areas in 551.65
- .65      Geographic treatment of weather  
                             Class here geographic treatment of weather forecasts and reports, of  
                             forecasts of specific phenomena  
                             Class geographic treatment of climate and weather taken together in 551.69
- [.650 1–.650 9]      Standard subdivisions  
                             Do not use; class in 551.601–551.609
- .651–.659      Specific regions and areas  
                             Class here forecasts of specific phenomena for specific regions and areas  
                             Add to base number 551.65 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., forecasts for  
                             South Africa 551.6568
- .66      Microclimatology  
                             Small-scale interactions of atmosphere with land and water  
                             Class here micrometeorology  
                             Class specific meteorological phenomena other than thermodynamics in  
                             551.5; class comprehensive works on atmosphere interactions with earth's  
                             surface in 551.524
- .68      Artificial modification and control of weather  
                             Add to base number 551.68 the numbers following 551.5 in 551.51–551.57,  
                             e.g., cloud seeding 551.6876  
                             Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .69      Geographic treatment of climate  
                             Class here paleoclimatology of specific areas, geographic treatment of  
                             climate and weather taken together  
                             Add to base number 551.69 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., climate of  
                             Australia 551.6994  
                             Class general types of climate in 551.62; class microclimatology of specific  
                             areas in 551.6609; class comprehensive works on paleoclimatology in  
                             551.60901
- For geographic treatment of weather, see 551.65*

[.690 1–.690 9] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 551.601–551.609

**.7 Historical geology**

Class here paleogeography, stratigraphy

Class history of a specific kind of geologic phenomenon with the kind, e.g., history of Jurassic volcanism in Pacific Northwest 551.210979509012, Devonian reefs 551.42409012, paleozoic orogeny 551.8209012

*For paleontology, see 560*

*See Manual at 551.7 vs. 560*

.700 1–.700 8 Standard subdivisions

.700 9 History, geographic treatment, biography

Do not use for geographic treatment of historical geology during a specific geological era or period; class in 551.71–551.79

[.700 94–.700 99] Historical geology of specific continents, countries, localities in modern world; extraterrestrial worlds

Do not use; class in 554–559

.701 Geologic time and age measurements

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

> 551.71–551.79 Specific geological periods

Class comprehensive works in 551.7

.71 Precambrian era

Variant name: Cryptozoic eon

.712 Archean era

Variant names: Archeozoic, Lower Precambrian era

.715 Proterozoic era

Variant names: Algonkian, Upper Precambrian era

.72 Paleozoic era

*For Ordovician and Silurian periods, see 551.73; for Devonian period, see 551.74; for Carboniferous and Permian periods, see 551.75*

.723 Cambrian period

Standard subdivisions are added for the period as a whole and for specific epochs, stages, or formations

.73 Ordovician and Silurian periods

.731 Ordovician period  
Standard subdivisions are added for the period as a whole and for specific epochs, stages, or formations

Former name: Lower Silurian epoch

.732 Silurian period  
Standard subdivisions are added for the period as a whole and for specific epochs, stages, or formations

Former name: Upper Silurian epoch

.74 Devonian period  
Standard subdivisions are added for the period as a whole and for specific epochs, stages, or formations

.75 Carboniferous and Permian periods  
Standard subdivisions are added for Carboniferous and Permian periods together, for Carboniferous period alone

> 551.751–551.752 Carboniferous period

Class comprehensive works in 551.75

.751 Mississippian period (Lower Carboniferous period)  
Standard subdivisions are added for the period as a whole and for specific epochs, stages, or formations

.752 Pennsylvanian period (Upper Carboniferous period)  
Standard subdivisions are added for the period as a whole and for specific epochs, stages, or formations

.756 Permian period  
Standard subdivisions are added for the period as a whole and for specific epochs, stages, or formations

.76 Mesozoic era  
*For Cretaceous period, see 551.77*

.762 Triassic period  
Standard subdivisions are added for the period as a whole and for specific epochs, stages, or formations

.766 Jurassic period  
Standard subdivisions are added for the period as a whole and for specific epochs, stages, or formations

.77 Cretaceous period  
Standard subdivisions are added for the period as a whole and for specific epochs, stages, or formations

- .78           Cenozoic era  
                   Class here Tertiary period  
                   *For Quaternary period, see 551.79*
- .782          Paleogene period  
                   *For Paleocene epoch, see 551.783; for Eocene epoch, see 551.784;  
                   for Oligocene epoch, see 551.785*
- .783          Paleocene epoch  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for the epoch as a whole and for specific  
                   stages or formations
- .784          Eocene epoch  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for the epoch as a whole and for specific  
                   stages or formations
- .785          Oligocene epoch  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for the epoch as a whole and for specific  
                   stages or formations
- .786          Neogene period (Neocene period)  
                   Class Quaternary period in 551.79  
                   *For Miocene epoch, see 551.787; for Pliocene epoch, see 551.788*
- .787          Miocene epoch  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for the epoch as a whole and for specific  
                   stages or formations
- .788          Pliocene epoch  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for the epoch as a whole and for specific  
                   stages or formations
- .79          Quaternary period
- .792          Pleistocene epoch (Ice age)  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for the epoch as a whole and for specific  
                   stages or formations
- .793          Holocene epoch  
                   Standard subdivisions are added for the epoch as a whole and for specific  
                   stages or formations  
                   Variant names: postglacial, recent epoch
- .8          Structural geology**  
                   Class here deformation, diastrophism, epeirogeny, tectonics  
                   Class geomorphology in 551.41  
                   *For plate tectonics, see 551.136*
- .81          Stratifications

- .810 9            History, geographic treatment, biography  
                     Do not use for geographic treatment of stratifications during a specific geologic era or period; class in 551.71–551.79
- [.810 94–.810 99]    Stratifications by specific continents, countries, localities in modern world; extraterrestrial worlds  
                     Do not use; class in 554–559
- .82            Orogeny  
                     Class here lateral compression of earth's crust, specific orogenies  
                     Class comprehensive works on elevations (e.g., mountains, plateaus, hills) in 551.43. Class a specific aspect of orogeny with the aspect, e.g., volcanism 551.21
- .84            Joints and cleavages  
                     Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .85            Dips, outcrops, strikes
- .86            Anticlines and synclines
- .87            Faults and folds
- .872            Faults  
                     Including nappes, rift valleys  
                     Class here dislocations  
                     Class nappes produced by folding in 551.875
- .875            Folds  
                     *For anticlines and synclines, see 551.86*
- .88            Intrusions  
                     Including dikes, laccoliths, necks, sills, veins  
                     Class volcanoes in 551.21
- .9            **Geochemistry**  
                     *For geochemistry of a specific subject in earth sciences or mineralogy, see the subject, e.g., organic geochemistry 553.2*

## 552    **Petrology**

- Class here petrography, lithology, rocks  
 Class structural geology in 551.8  
*For mineralogy, see 549; for petrology of geologic materials of economic utility other than structural and sculptural stone, see 553*
- .001–.008    Standard subdivisions
- .009            History, geographic treatment, biography  
                     Do not use for geographic distribution of rocks; class in 552.09

- .03      Petrogenesis  
           Class here diagenesis
- .06      Properties, composition, analysis, structure of rocks  
           Class comprehensive works on geochemistry in 551.9
- .09      Geographic distribution of rocks  
           Add to base number 552.09 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., rocks of Sahara Desert 552.0966  
           Class rocks studied in their stratigraphic setting in 554–559

>      **552.1–552.5 Specific kinds of rocks**

Class comprehensive works in 552

**.1      Igneous rocks**

*For volcanic rocks, see 552.2; for plutonic rocks, see 552.3*

**.2      Volcanic rocks**

Class here aphanite

*See also 551.23 for volcanic volatiles*

**.22     Lava**

Including felsite, obsidian, rhyolite

Class pyroclastic felsite in 552.23

*For basalt, see 552.26*

**.23     Pyroclastic rocks**

Including andesite, pumice, tuff, volcanic ash

Class andesitic lava in 552.22

**.26     Basalt**

Including pillow lava

Class basaltic pyroclastic rocks in 552.23

**.3      Plutonic rocks**

Including diorite, dolerite, gabbro, granite, norite, peridotite, porphyry, syenite

Class here phanerite

**.4      Metamorphic rocks**

Including gneiss, marble, quartzite, schist, serpentinite, slate

**.5 Sedimentary rocks**

Including gypsum, sandstone, shale, tufa; clay, diatomaceous earth, sand, silt, soil

Class here comprehensive works on sedimentology

Class pyroclastic tufa (tuff) in 552.23

*For sedimentology as study of surface processes, see 551.3*

**.58 Carbonate rocks**

Including chalk, dolomite, limestone, oolite

**.8 Microscopic petrology**

Class microscopic petrology of specific kinds of rocks in 552.1–552.5

**553 Economic geology**

Quantitative occurrence and distribution of geologic materials of economic utility

Class here interdisciplinary works on nonmetallic geologic materials

Class economic aspects other than reserves of geologic materials in 333.7; class interdisciplinary works on metals in 669

*For a specific aspect of nonmetallic geologic materials other than economic geology, see the aspect, e.g., mining 622*

**SUMMARY**

- 553.1 **Formation and structure of deposits**
- .2 **Carbonaceous materials**
- .3 **Iron**
- .4 **Metals and semimetals**
- .5 **Structural and sculptural stone**
- .6 **Other economic materials**
- .7 **Water**
- .8 **Gems**
- .9 **Inorganic gases**

**.1 Formation and structure of deposits**

Class formation and structure of deposits of specific materials in 553.2–553.9

.13 Placer deposits

.14 Stratified layers and beds

.16 Pegmatite dikes

.19 Veins and lodes

**553.2–553.9 Specific materials**

Class comprehensive works in 553

**.2 Carbonaceous materials**

Class here fossil fuels, nonrenewable fuels, organic geochemistry;  
comprehensive works on fuels

Class interdisciplinary works on fuels in 662.6

*For nuclear fuels, see 553.493; for diamonds, see 553.82; for jet, see  
553.87; for amber, see 553.879*

**> 553.21–553.25 Coal**

Class comprehensive works in 553.24

**.21 Peat**

Including peat coal

**.22 Lignite (Brown coal)****.23 Cannel coal****.24 Bituminous and semibituminous coal**

Standard subdivisions are added for bituminous and semibituminous coal  
together, for bituminous coal alone

Class here comprehensive works on coal

*For peat, see 553.21; for lignite, see 553.22; for cannel coal, see 553.23;  
for anthracite, see 553.25; for jet, see 553.87*

**.25 Anthracite****.26 Graphite**

Variant names: black lead, plumbago

Class graphitic anthracite coal in 553.25

**.27 Solid and semisolid bitumens**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Including ozokerite

Class here asphalt (pitch)

Class liquid bitumens (oil) in 553.282; class rocks and sands impregnated  
with solid or semisolid bitumens in 553.283

**.28 Oil, oil shales, tar sands, natural gas**

Class here petroleum geology

Use 553.28 for petroleum covering oil and gas, use 553.282 for petroleum  
limited to oil

**.282 Oil****.283 Oil shale and tar sands**

Variant names for oil shale: bituminous shale, black shale; for tar sands:  
bituminous sands, oil sands

- .285 Natural gas
- .29 Fossil resins and gums  
Standard subdivisions are added for fossil resins and gums together, for fossil resins alone  
*For amber, see 553.879*
- .3 Iron**
- .4 Metals and semimetals**  
Standard subdivisions are added for metals and semimetals together, for metals alone  
*For iron, see 553.3*
- .41 Gold
- .42 Precious metals  
*For gold, see 553.41*
- .421 Silver
- .422 Platinum
- .43 Copper
- .44 Lead
- .45 Zinc, tin, mercury
- .452 Zinc
- .453 Tin
- .454 Mercury
- .46 Metals used in ferroalloys  
*For cobalt and nickel, see 553.48*
- .462 Titanium, vanadium, manganese
- .462 3 Titanium
- .462 6 Vanadium
- .462 9 Manganese
- .464 Chromium, molybdenum, tungsten
- .464 3 Chromium
- .464 6 Molybdenum
- .464 9 Tungsten
- .465 Zirconium and tantalum
- .47 Antimony, arsenic, bismuth
- .48 Cobalt and nickel

- .483 Cobalt
- .485 Nickel
- .49 Other metals
- .492 Light metals
- .492 3 Beryllium
- .492 6 Aluminum
- .492 9 Magnesium
- .493 Fissionable metals
  - Including radium, thorium
  - Class here nuclear fuels
- .493 2 Uranium
- .494 Rare-earth metals
  - Class here lanthanide series
- .494 2 Scandium
- .494 3 Cerium group
- .494 7 Yttrium group
- .495 Platinum metals
  - For platinum, see 553.422*
- .499 Metals not provided for elsewhere
  - Including barium, indium, lithium, niobium, sodium, tellurium
  - Class here semimetals
  - For antimony, arsenic, bismuth, see 553.47*

## **.5 Structural and sculptural stone**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class petrology of structural and sculptural stone in 552

*For semiprecious sculptural stone, see 553.87*

- .51 Marble and limestone
- .512 Marble
  - For verd antique and onyx marble, see 553.55*
- .516 Limestone
  - Including dolomite, travertine
- .52 Granite and syenite
  - Standard subdivisions are added for granite and syenite together, for granite alone

- .53 Sandstone  
 Including bluestone, flagstones  
*For flagstones of a specific stone other than sandstone, see the stone, e.g., slate 553.54*
- .54 Slate
- .55 Serpentine, soapstone (steatite), and their variants  
 Including verd antique and onyx marble  
*See also 553.87 for onyx*
- .6 Other economic materials**  
 Including diatomaceous earth  
 Class here earthy materials, industrial minerals  
*For inorganic gases, see 553.9; for soils, see 631.4*
- .61 Clay  
 Including bentonite, diaspore clay, kaolin; fuller's earth  
 Class here comprehensive works on ceramic materials  
*For fireclay, see 553.67. For a specific nonclay ceramic material, see the material, e.g., glass sands 553.622*
- .62 Sand and gravel  
 Class here aggregates
- .622 Sand  
 Including glass sand
- .626 Gravel
- .63 Salts  
*For saltpeter, see 553.64; for mineral waters, see 553.73*
- .632 Rock salt (Sodium chloride)
- .633 Borates  
 Including borax
- .635 Gypsum  
 Including alabaster
- .636 Potash salts  
 Class here potassium minerals
- .64 Nitrates and phosphates  
 Including apatites, saltpeter  
 Class here mineral fertilizers

- .65           Abrasives  
              Including corundum, flint, industrial diamonds  
              Class comprehensive works on abrasives that are also gems in 553.8  
              *For sand, see 553.622*
- .66           Mineral pigments and sulfur
- .662           Mineral pigments  
              Including barite
- .668           Sulfur
- .67           Refractory materials  
              Including alumina, fireclay  
              *For soapstone, see 553.55*
- .672           Asbestos
- .674           Mica
- .676           Talc
- .678           Vermiculite
- .68           Cement materials  
              Including chalk, lime, marl  
              *For gypsum, see 553.635*
- .7           Water**  
              Including ice  
              Class interdisciplinary works on thermal waters in 333.88; class  
              interdisciplinary works on ice in 551.31  
              *For geology of thermal waters, see 551.23*  
              *See Manual at 363.61*
- .72           Saline water
- .73           Mineral waters  
              *For saline water, see 553.72*
- .78           Surface water
- .79           Groundwater (Subsurface water)
- .8           Gems**  
              Class here comprehensive works on stones that are both gems and abrasives  
              *For gemstones treated as abrasives, see 553.65*

- > 553.82–553.86 Precious stones  
 Class comprehensive works in 553.8
- .82 Diamonds  
*For industrial diamonds, see 553.65*
- .84 Rubies and sapphires
- .86 Emeralds
- .87 Semiprecious stones  
 Including agates, amethysts, garnet, jet, tourmaline, turquoise
- .873 Opals
- .876 Jade  
 Class here jadite, nephrite
- .879 Amber
- .9 Inorganic gases**
- .92 Hydrogen
- .93 Nitrogen
- .94 Oxygen
- .95 Chlorine and fluorine
- .97 Noble gases  
 Variant name: inert, rare gases  
 Including radon
- .971 Helium

## **554–559 Earth sciences by specific continents, countries, localities in modern world; extraterrestrial worlds**

Class here geology, geological surveys, stratifications

Add to base number 55 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., geology of Japan 555.2, of moon 559.91

Class historical geology and stratifications of specific continents, countries, localities during a specific era or period in 551.71–551.79; class geological surveys of specific areas emphasizing materials of economic importance in 553.094–553.099; class comprehensive works on earth sciences in 550; class comprehensive works on geology in 551. Class a specific geologic topic (other than historical geology taken as a whole) in a specific area with the topic, e.g., volcanoes in Japan 551.210952, geomorphology of Japan 551.410952

## **554 Earth sciences of Europe**

Number built according to instructions under 554–559

**555 Earth sciences of Asia**

Number built according to instructions under 554–559

**556 Earth sciences of Africa**

Number built according to instructions under 554–559

**557 Earth sciences of North America**

Number built according to instructions under 554–559

**558 Earth sciences of South America**

Number built according to instructions under 554–559

**559 Earth sciences of Australasia, Pacific Ocean islands, Atlantic Ocean islands, Arctic islands, Antarctica, extraterrestrial worlds**

Number built according to instructions under 554–559

**.9 Earth sciences of extraterrestrial worlds**

Number built according to instructions under 554–559

*See Manual at 523 vs. 550; also at 629.43, 629.45 vs. 559.9, 919.904*

**560 Paleontology**

Including organisms of uncertain status as plant or animal, as chordate or invertebrate

Class here paleozoology

Class the analysis of paleontological evidence to determine geological time and age in 551.701; class the analysis of paleontological evidence to determine a specific geological age in 551.71–551.79; class comprehensive works on paleontology and historic geology in 551.7

*See Manual at 551.7 vs. 560; also at 576.8 vs. 560*

**SUMMARY**

**560.1–.9** Standard subdivisions; stratigraphic paleontology; special topics of paleontology and paleozoology

**561** Paleobotany; fossil microorganisms

**562** Fossil invertebrates

**563** Miscellaneous fossil marine and seashore invertebrates

**564** Fossil Mollusca and Molluscoidea

**565** Fossil Arthropoda

**566** Fossil Chordata

**567** Fossil cold-blooded vertebrates

**568** Fossil Aves (birds)

**569** Fossil Mammalia

**.1 Philosophy and theory; stratigraphic paleontology**

- .17      **Stratigraphic paleontology**  
           Class here stratigraphic paleozoology  
           Add to base number 560.17 the numbers following 551.7 in 551.71–551.79,  
           e.g., Precambrian paleontology 560.171  
           Class fossils of specific kinds of organisms in 561–569
- .4      Special topics of paleontology and paleozoology**
- .41      Fossilization (Taphonomy)
- .43      Trace fossils  
           Class here fossil footprints, ichnology
- .45      Paleoeology and fossils of specific environment  
           Class here zoological paleoecology and fossil animals of specific  
           environments  
           Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .450 1–.450 8      Standard subdivisions  
                       Notation from Table 1 as modified under 578.01–578.08, e.g.,  
                       microscopy 560.450282
- .450 9      History, geographic treatment, biography
- [.450 914–.450 919]      Areas, regions, places in general other than polar, temperate,  
                                   tropical regions  
                                   Do not use; class in 560.453–560.457
- .451–.457      Specific aspects of paleoecology and fossils of specific environment  
                       Add to base number 560.45 the numbers following 577 in 577.1–577.7,  
                       e.g., marine paleoecology 560.457
- .47      Micropaleontology  
           Class here microfossils  
           Class a specific kind of microfossil with the kind, e.g., fossil  
           microorganisms 561.9
- .9      History, geographic treatment, biography**  
           Class stratigraphic paleontology and paleozoology in 560.17
- [.914–.919]      Areas, regions, places in general other than polar, temperate, tropical  
                                   regions  
                                   Do not use; class in 560.45

**561 Paleobotany; fossil microorganisms**

Standard subdivisions are added for paleontology and fossil microorganisms together, for paleontology alone

Including plantlike fossils of uncertain taxonomic position

Class here fossil Spermatophyta, Angiospermae; taxonomic paleobotany

Class fernlike fossils of uncertain taxonomic position in 561.597

.09 History, geographic treatment, biography

*For geographic treatment of fossil plants, see 561.19*

[.091 4–.091 9] Areas, regions, places in general other than polar, temperate, tropical regions

Do not use; class in 561.1

**.1 General topics of paleobotany**

Including botanical paleoecology, plant fossils of specific environments

Class general topics of specific plants and groups of plants in 561.3–561.9

.11 Stratigraphic paleobotany

Add to base number 561.11 the numbers following 551.7 in 551.71–551.79, e.g., Carboniferous paleobotany 561.115

.13 Fossil pollen and spores

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here paleopalynology

Class comprehensive works on palynology, comprehensive works on pollen in 571.8452; class comprehensive works on spores in 571.847

.14 Fossil fruits and seeds

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.15 Fossil leaves

.16 Trees and petrified wood

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.19 Geographic treatment of fossil plants

Add to base number 561.19 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., plant fossils of West Indies 561.19729; however, for treatment by areas, regions, places in general other than polar, temperate, tropical regions, see 561.1

**> 561.3–561.9 Specific plants and groups of plants**

Class comprehensive works in 561

.3 **Fossil Magnoliopsida (dicotyledons)**

.4 **Fossil Liliopsida (monocotyledons)**

- .45        **Arecidae**  
             Class here Arecales (Palmales), Arecaceae (Palmae, palm family)
- .49        **Poales**  
             Variant names: Graminales, grasses
- .5        Fossil Pinophyta and fernlike fossils of uncertain taxonomic position**  
             Standard subdivisions are added for fossil Pinophyta and fernlike fossils of uncertain taxonomic position together, for fossil Pinophyta alone  
             Variant name for fossil Pinophyta: fossil gymnosperms  
             Class here Coniferales (conifers)
- .52-.58    **Pinophyta (Gymnosperms)**  
             Add to base number 561.5 the numbers following 585 in 585.2-585.8, e.g., fossil Pinaceae 561.52  
             *For Cycadales, Cycadeoidales, Pteridospermales, Cordaitales, see 561.59*
- .59        **Cycadales, Cycadeoidales, Pteridospermales, fernlike fossils of uncertain taxonomic position, Cordaitales**
- .591       **Cycadales (True cycads)**
- .592       **Cycadeoidales (Bennettitales)**  
             Including Cycadeoidaceae, Williamsoniaceae
- .595       **Pteridospermales**  
             Variant names: Cycadofilicales, seed ferns  
             Including Calamopityaceae, Lyginopteridaceae, Medullosaceae
- .597       **Fernlike fossils of uncertain taxonomic position**  
             Including Archaeopteris, Callipteris, Glossopteris, Mariopteris, Megalopteris, Neuropteris, Odontopteris, Pecopteris, Sphenopteris
- .6        Fossil Cryptogamia**  
             *For Pteridophyta, see 561.7; for Bryophyta, see 561.8; for microorganisms, fungi, algae, see 561.9*
- .7        Fossil Pteridophyta**  
             Class fernlike fossils of uncertain taxonomic position in 561.597
- .72        **Sphenopsida**  
             Including Calamitales, Equisetales, Hyeniales, Pseudoborniales, Sphenophyllales
- .73        **Polypodiopsida (Filicopsida)**  
             Including Coenopteridales, Filicales, Marattiales, Ophioglossales

- .74 Psilopsida  
Including Psilophytales, Psilotales
- .79 Lycopsidea (Club mosses)  
Including Isoetales, Lepidodendrales, Pleuromeiales, Protolepidodendrales
- .8 Fossil Bryophyta**
- .9 Fossil microorganisms, fungi, algae**  
Class comprehensive works on micropaleontology in 560.47
- .91 Prokaryotes  
Class here bacteria
- .92 Fungi
- .93 Algae  
Add to base number 561.93 the numbers following 579.8 in 579.82–579.89, e.g., fossil diatoms 561.935
- .99 Protozoa
- .992 Zoomastigophorea
- .994 Foraminifera
- .995 Radiolaria

> **562–569 Specific taxonomic groups of animals**

Class here taxonomic paleozoology

Class comprehensive works in 560

**562 Fossil invertebrates**

*For Protozoa, see 561.99; for miscellaneous marine and seashore invertebrates, see 563; for Mollusca and Molluscoidea, see 564; for Arthropoda, see 565*

**.2 Conodonts**

**.3–.7 Worms and related animals**

Add to base number 562 the numbers following 592 in 592.3–592.7, e.g., Annelida 562.6

Class comprehensive works in 562.3

**563 Miscellaneous fossil marine and seashore invertebrates**

[.01–.09] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 562.01–562.09

**.4 Porifera (Sponges) and Archaeocyatha**

Standard subdivisions are added for Porifera and Archaeocyatha together, for Porifera alone

Class here Parazoa

.47 Archaeocyatha

**.5 Cnidaria (Coelenterata)**

Including Scyphozoa

*For Anthozoa, see 563.6*

.55 Hydrozoa

Including Graptolitoidea

.58 Stromatoporoidea

**.6 Anthozoa**

Class here corals

Class Archaeocyatha in 563.47

**.8 Ctenophora****.9 Echinodermata and Hemichordata**

Standard subdivisions are added for Echinodermata and Hemichordata together, for Echinodermata alone

> 563.92–563.96 Echinodermata

Class comprehensive works in 563.9

.92 Crinozoa, Blastozoa, Homalozoa

Standard subdivisions are added for Crinozoa, Blastozoa, Homalozoa together; for Crinozoa alone

Including Camerata, Flexibilia, Inadunata; carpoids

.93 Asterozoa (Starfish)

*For Ophiuroidea, see 563.94*

.94 Ophiuroidea

.95 Echinozoa

Including Cystoidea

*For Holothurioidea, see 563.96*

.96 Holothurioidea

Including Arthrochirotida

- .99 Hemichordata  
 Including Enteropneusta, Planctosphaeroidea  
 Class here Pterobranchia

## 564 Fossil Mollusca and Molluscoidea

### > 564.2–564.5 Mollusca (Mollusks)

Class comprehensive works in 564

#### .2–.4 Specific Mollusca other than Cephalopoda

Add to base number 564 the numbers following 594 in 594.2–594.4, e.g.,  
 Bivalvia 564.4

#### .5 Cephalopoda

.52 Nautiloidea

.53 Ammonoidea

.56 Octopoda

.58 Decapoda

#### .6 Molluscoidea

Including Entoprocta

.67 Bryozoa

.68 Brachiopoda (Lamp shells)

## 565 Fossil Arthropoda

### .3 Crustacea and Trilobita

Standard subdivisions are added for Crustacea and Trilobita together, for  
 Crustacea alone

Including Bradoriida, Phospatocopida

#### .32–.38 Specific kinds of Crustacea

Add to base number 565.3 the numbers following 595.3 in 595.32–595.38,  
 e.g., Ostracoda 565.33

.39 Trilobita

#### .4 Chelicerata

Including Architarbi

Class here Arachnida

.49 Merostomata and Pycnogonida

Standard subdivisions are added for Merostomata and Pycnogonida together,  
 for Merostomata alone

.492 Xiphosura (Horseshoe crabs)

.493 Eurypterida

**.6 Myriapoda**

**.7 Insecta**

Class here Uniramia, Hexapoda, Pterygota

Add to base number 565.7 the numbers following 595.7 in 595.72–595.79, e.g., Coleoptera 565.76

*For Myriapoda, see 565.6*

**566 Fossil Chordata**

Including Cephalochordata, Urochordata (Tunicata)

Class here Vertebrata (Craniata, vertebrates), Tetrapoda (land vertebrates)

*For fossil cold-blooded vertebrates, see 567; for fossil Aves, see 568; for fossil Mammalia, see 569*

**567 Fossil cold-blooded vertebrates**

Including Leptolepis

Class here Pisces (fishes); Actinopterygii, Osteichthyes, Teleostei

Class specific kinds of Actinopterygii, Osteichthyes, Teleostei in 567.4–567.7

---

> **567.2–567.7 Fossil Pisces (fishes)**

Class comprehensive works in 567

**.2 Agnatha, Acanthodii, Placodermi**

Including Cyclostomata

**.3 Chondrichthyes and Sarcopterygii**

Standard subdivisions are added for Chondrichthyes and Sarcopterygii together, for Chondrichthyes alone

Including Bradyodonti, Cladoselachii, Pleuracanthodii

Class here Elasmobranchii, Selachii; sharks

Add to base number 567.3 the numbers following 597.3 in 597.33–597.39, e.g., Sarcopterygii 567.39

**.4-.7 Specific fossil Actinopterygii**

Class here Osteichthyes, Teleostei

Add to base number 567 the numbers following 597 in 597.4-597.7, e.g., Salmoniformes 567.5

Class fossil Actinopterygii not traceable to surviving superorders, e.g., Leptolepis; comprehensive works on Actinopterygii, Osteichthyes, Teleostei in 567

*For Sarcopterygii, see 567.39*

**.8 Amphibia**

Including Anura, Gymnophiona, Labyrinthodontia, Lepospondyli, Urodela

**.9 Reptilia**

Class here Archosauria, Diapsida, Dinosaurs

**.91 Specific dinosaurs and other Archosauria**

Including Thecodontia

*For Crocodilia, see 567.98. For a "dinosaur" of an order not assigned to Archosauria, see the order, e.g., Ichthyosauria 567.937*

[.910 1-.910 9] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 567.901-567.909

**> 567.912-567.915 Specific dinosaurs**

Class comprehensive works in 567.9

**.912 Saurischia**

Including Allosaurus, Baryonyx, Coelophysis, Deinonychus, Oviraptor

Class here Theropoda (carnivorous dinosaurs)

*For Sauropodomorpha, see 567.913*

**.912 9 Tyrannosaurus****.913 Sauropodomorpha (Herbivorous Saurischia)**

Including Diplodocus, Seismosaurus

**.913 8 Apatosaurus (Brontosaurus)****.914 Ornithischia**

Including Hadrosauridae (duck-billed dinosaurs); Anatosaurus, Corythosaurus, Hyspilophodon, Iguanodon, Maiasaura, Pachycephalosaurus, Parasaurolophus

Class here Ornithopoda

*For Stegosauria, Ankylosauria, Ceratopsia, see 567.915*

- .915            Stegosauria, Ankylosauria, Ceratopsia (horned dinosaurs)  
                   Including Protoceratops  
                   Class here armored dinosaurs
- .915 3           Stegosaurus
- .915 8           Triceratops
- .918            Pterosauria (Flying reptiles)  
                   Including Pteranodon, Pterodactylus  
                   Class comprehensive works on flying and marine reptiles in 567.937
- .92            Anapsida  
                   Including Chelonia (Testudines), Cotylosauria  
                   *For Mesosauria, see 567.937*
- .93            Euryapsida, Synapsida; Mesosauria  
                   Including Araeoscelidia, Pelycosauria, Placodontia, Therapsida
- .937            Marine reptiles  
                   Including Ichthyosauria, Mesosauria, Sauropterygia (Nothosauria and Plesiosauria)  
                   *For Mosasauridae, see 567.95*
- .94            Lepidosauria  
                   Including Eosuchia  
                   Class here Squamata  
                   *For Sauria, see 567.95; for Serpentes, see 567.96*
- .945            Rhynchocephalia
- .95            Sauria  
                   Including Mosasauridae (marine lizards)  
                   Class comprehensive works on Sauria and Serpentes in 567.94
- .96            Serpentes
- .98            Crocodilia

## 568        **Fossil Aves (birds)**

Class here Neornithes

- .2            **Archaeornithes, Hesperornithiformes, Ichthyornithiformes**
- .22            Archaeornithes
- .23            Hesperornithiformes and Ichthyornithiformes
- .3            **Charadriiformes, Ciconiiformes, Diatrymiformes, Gruiformes, Phoenicopteriformes**

**.4 Water birds**

Including Anseriformes, Gaviiformes, Pelecaniformes, Podicipediformes, Procellariiformes, Sphenisciformes

*For Hesperornithiformes and Ichthyornithiformes, see 568.23;  
for Charadriiformes, Ciconiiformes, Diatrymiformes, Gruiformes,  
Phoenicopteriformes, see 568.3*

**.5 Palaeognathae**

Including Aepyornithiformes, Apterygiformes, Caenagnathiformes, Casuariiformes, Rheiformes, Struthioniformes, Tinamiformes

Class here ratites

**.6 Galliformes and Columbiformes**

Standard subdivisions are added for Galliformes and Columbiformes together, for Galliformes alone

**.7 Miscellaneous land birds**

Limited to those named herein

Including Apodiformes, Coliiformes, Coraciiformes, Cuculiformes, Piciformes, Psittaciformes, Trogoniformes

Class comprehensive works on land birds in 568

[.701–.709] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 568.01–568.09

**.8 Passeriformes****.9 Falconiformes, Caprimulgiformes, Strigiformes**

Standard subdivisions are added for Falconiformes, Caprimulgiformes, Strigiformes, together; for Falconiformes alone

**569 Fossil Mammalia****.2 Metatheria and Prototheria**

Standard subdivisions are added for Metatheria and Prototheria together, for Metatheria alone

Including Trituberculata

Class here Marsupialia

**.29 Prototheria**

Including Allotheria, Eotheria

Class here Monotremata

**> 569.3–569.9 Eutheria**

Class comprehensive works in 599

**.3 Miscellaneous orders of Eutheria**

Limited to those named below

[.301--.309] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 569.01--569.09

.31 Edentata, Palaeonodonta, Pholidota, Taeniodontia, Tillodontia, Tubulidentata

.32--.37 Dermoptera, Insectivora, Lagomorpha, Macroscelidea, Rodentia, Scandentia

Add to base number 569.3 the numbers following 599.3 in 599.32--599.37, e.g., Insectivora 569.33

**.4 Chiroptera (Bats)**

Including Megachiroptera

Class here Microchiroptera

**.5 Cetacea, Desmostylia, Sirenia**

Standard subdivisions are added for Cetacea, Desmostylia, Sirenia together; for Cetacea alone

Including Archaeoceti

Class here Mysticeti, Odontoceti; marine mammals, whales

*For Pinnipedia, see 569.79*

**.6 Ungulates**

Class Desmostylia, Sirenia in 569.5

.62 Extinct orders of ungulates

Including Astrapotheria, Condylarthra, Dinocerata, Embrithopoda, Litopterna, Notoungulata, Pantodonta, Pyrotheria, Xenungulata

Class extinct members of surviving orders in 569.63--569.68

.63--.68 Surviving orders of ungulates

Add to base number 569.6 the numbers following 599.6 in 599.63--599.68, e.g., Proboscidea 569.67

**.7 Carnivores**

Including Creodonta

Class here Fissipedia

Add to base number 569.7 the numbers following 599.7 in 599.74--599.79, e.g., Pinnipedia 567.79

**.8 Primates**

Class here Anthroidea, monkeys

Add to base number 569.8 the numbers following 599.8 in 599.83–599.88, e.g., Hominidae 569.88

Class Tupaiidae in 569.338

*For Homo and related genera, see 569.9*

**.9 Homo and related genera**

Humans and forebears, including species and genera that are more closely related to the species *Homo sapiens* than to any other living species, e.g., *Ardipithecus*

Including Piltdown forgery

**.93 Australopithecus**

Including *Paranthropus*, *Plesianthropus*

Class here australopithecines

Class australopithecines not assigned to genus *Australopithecus* in 569.9

**.97 Homo erectus**

Including Heidelberg man, Java man, Peking man

**.98 Homo sapiens**

Including Cro-Magnon man, Kabwe (Rhodesian) man

**.986 Homo sapiens neanderthalis (Neanderthals)****570 Biology**

Class here life sciences

*For paleontology, see 560; for plants, see 580; for animals, see 590; for medical sciences, see 610*

*See Manual at 363 vs. 302–307, 333.7, 570–590, 600; also at 578 vs. 304.2, 508, 910*

**SUMMARY**

570.1–.9	Standard subdivisions
571	Physiology and related subjects
.01–.09	Standard subdivisions
.1	Animals
.2	Plants and microorganisms
.3	Anatomy and morphology
.4	Biophysics
.5	Tissue biology and regional physiology
.6	Cell biology
.7	Biological control and secretions
.8	Reproduction, development, growth
.9	Diseases

- 572      **Biochemistry**  
         .3      **General topics of biochemistry**  
         .4      **Metabolism**  
         .5      **Miscellaneous chemicals**  
         .6      **Proteins**  
         .7      **Enzymes**  
         .8      **Biochemical genetics**
- 573      **Specific physiological systems in animals, regional histology and physiology in animals**  
         .1      **Circulatory system**  
         .2      **Respiratory system**  
         .3      **Digestive system**  
         .4      **Endocrine and excretory systems**  
         .5      **Integument**  
         .6      **Reproductive system**  
         .7      **Musculoskeletal system**  
         .8      **Nervous and sensory systems**  
         .9      **Miscellaneous systems and organs in animals, regional histology and physiology in animals**
- 575      **Specific parts of and physiological systems in plants**  
         .4      **Stems**  
         .5      **Roots and leaves**  
         .6      **Reproductive organs**  
         .7      **Circulation, food storage, excretion**  
         .8      **Transpiration**  
         .9      **Animal-like physiological processes**
- 576      **Genetics and evolution**  
         .01-.09      **Standard subdivisions**  
         .5      **Genetics**  
         .8      **Evolution**
- 577      **Ecology**  
         .01-.09      **Standard subdivisions**  
         .1      **Specific ecosystem processes**  
         .2      **Specific factors affecting ecology**  
         .3      **Forest ecology**  
         .4      **Grassland ecology**  
         .5      **Ecology of miscellaneous environments**  
         .6      **Aquatic ecology**  
         .7      **Marine ecology**  
         .8      **Synecology and population biology**
- 578      **Natural history of organisms and related subjects**  
         .01-.09      **Standard subdivisions**  
         .4      **Adaptation**  
         .6      **Miscellaneous nontaxonomic kinds of organisms**  
         .7      **Organisms characteristic of specific kinds of environments**
- 579      **Natural history of microorganisms, fungi, algae**  
         .01-.09      **Standard subdivisions**  
         .1      **Specific topics in natural history of microorganisms, fungi, algae**  
         .2      **Viruses and subviral organisms**  
         .3      **Prokaryotes**  
         .4      **Protozoa**  
         .5      **Fungi**  
         .6      **Mushrooms**  
         .7      **Lichens**  
         .8      **Algae**

- .1 Philosophy and theory**  
 Class here nature of life, differences between living and nonliving substances  
 Class origin of life, conditions needed for life to begin in 576.83
- .12 Classification  
 Class taxonomic classification in 578.012
- .15 Scientific principles
- .151 95 Statistical mathematics  
 Class here biometrics, biostatistics  
*See Manual at 519.5, T1—015195 vs. 001.422, T1—0727*
- .2 Miscellany**
- .28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, procedures  
 Notation 028 from Table 1 as modified below
- .282 Microscopy  
 Including photomicrography, stereology  
 Class here microscopes  
 Class interdisciplinary works on microscopy in 502.82
- .282 3 Light microscopy  
 Including magnifying glasses (simple microscopes)  
 Class here compound microscopes  
 Class stereology with compound microscopes in 570.282
- .282 5 Electron microscopy  
 Class stereology with electron microscopes in 570.282
- .282 7 Slide preparation  
 Including fixation, staining; microtomy
- .284 Apparatus, equipment, materials  
 Do not use for microscopes; class in 570.282
- .288 Maintenance and repair  
 Do not use for preservation of biological specimens; class in 570.752
- .7 Education, research, related topics**
- .72 Research
- .724 Experimental research  
 Class here experimental biology  
 Class tissue and organ culture in 571.538; class cell culture in 571.638
- .75 Museum activities and services

.752 Preserving biological specimens

**.9 History, geographic treatment, biography**

Do not use for geographic treatment of organisms; class in 578.09

.919 Space

Do not use for space biology; class in 571.0919

.999 Extraterrestrial worlds

Do not use for extraterrestrial life; class in 576.839

> **571–575 Internal biological processes and structures**

Class here internal biological processes and structures in plants and animals

Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 571–575 in the number coming last, e.g., cytology of animal circulatory system 573.136 (*not* 571.1 or 571.6)

Class comprehensive works in 571

*See Manual at 571–575 vs. 630; also at 579–590 vs. 571–575*

> **571–572 General internal processes common to all organisms**

Add to each subdivision identified by \* as follows:

01–08 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 570.1–570.8, e.g., microscopy 0282

09 History, geographic treatment, biography

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 571.09, e.g., space biology 0919

1–2 Specific kinds of organisms

Add the numbers following 571 in 571.1–571.2, e.g., the subject in animals 1, the subject in plants and microorganisms 2

Class comprehensive works in 571

*See Manual at 571–573 vs. 610*

**571 Physiology and related subjects**

Standard subdivisions are added for physiology and related subjects, for physiology alone

Class here comprehensive works on internal biological processes

*For biochemistry, see 572; for specific physiological systems in animals, regional histology and physiology in animals, see 573; for specific parts of and physiological systems in plants, see 575; for genetics, see 576.5*

*See Manual at 571–575 vs. 630*

## SUMMARY

- 571.01–.09**      **Standard subdivisions**
- .1      **Animals**
  - .2      **Plants and microorganisms**
  - .3      **Anatomy and morphology**
  - .4      **Biophysics**
  - .5      **Tissue biology and regional physiology**
  - .6      **Cell biology**
  - .7      **Biological control and secretions**
  - .8      **Reproduction, development, growth**
  - .9      **Diseases**
- .01–.08      **Standard subdivisions**
- Notation from Table 1 as modified under 570.1–570.8, e.g., microscopy in physiology 571.0282
- .09      **History, geographic treatment, biography**
- .091 9      **Space**
- Class here space biology
- .099 9      **Extraterrestrial worlds**
- Class extraterrestrial life in 576.839
- .1      Animals**
- Class here comparative physiology
- Class comprehensive works on animals in 590
- For comparative physiology of plants and microorganisms, see 571.2; for physiology of Protozoa, see 571.294*
- .101–.109      **Standard subdivisions**
- Notation from Table 1 as modified under 590.1–590.9, e.g., microscopy in animal physiology 571.10282
- .11–.19      **Specific kinds of animals**
- Add to base number 571.1 the numbers following 59 in 591–599, e.g., marine animals 571.1177, mammals 571.19; however, for physiology and related subjects in humans, see 612; for physiology and related subjects in domestic animals, see 636.0892
- .2      Plants and microorganisms**
- Standard subdivisions are added for plants and microorganisms together, for plants alone
- Class here comparative physiology of plants and microorganisms, physiology of agricultural plants
- Class comprehensive works on plants in 580
- .201–.209      **Standard subdivisions**
- Notation from Table 1 as modified under 580.1–580.9, e.g., microscopy in plant physiology 571.20282

.21-.28      Specific kinds of plants

Add to base number 571.2 the numbers following 58 in 581-588, e.g., aquatic plants 571.2176, monocotyledons 571.24

*For physiology of fungi, see 571.295; for physiology of algae, see 571.298*

.29            Microorganisms, fungi, algae

Subdivisions are added for microorganisms, fungi, algae together, for microorganisms alone

Class comprehensive works on microorganisms, fungi, algae in 579

*See Manual at 571.629 vs. 571.29*

.290 1-.290 9      Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 579.01-579.09, e.g., microscopy in microorganism physiology 571.290282

.291-.298        Specific kinds of microorganisms, fungi, algae

Add to base number 571.29 the numbers following 579 in 579.1-579.8, e.g., marine microorganisms 571.29177, Protozoa 571.294

**.3            \*Anatomy and morphology**

Class here comparative anatomy

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

*For anatomy and morphology of microorganisms, see 571.63329*

**.4            \*Biophysics**

Class here effects of physical forces on organisms

Class comprehensive works on biophysics and biochemistry in 572

*For bioenergetics, physical biochemistry, see 572.43*

**.43           \*Biomechanics and effects of mechanical forces**

Class here biodynamics, solid biomechanics

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class biomechanics of locomotion in 573.79343

**.435        \*Gravity**

**.437        \*Pressure**

**.44        \*Effects of mechanical vibrations, sound, related vibrations**

**.443        \*Mechanical vibrations**

Class here subsonic vibrations

**.444        \*Sound**

- .445        \*Ultrasonic vibrations
- .45        \*Radiobiology
- .453        \*Radio waves and microwaves  
              Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .454        \*Infrared radiation
- .455        \*Light
- .456        \*Ultraviolet radiation
- .457        \*X rays  
              Including beta, gamma, neutron radiation; cosmic rays  
              *For X rays, see 571.457*
- .46        \*Effects of temperature
- .464        \*Low temperatures  
              \*Cryogenic temperatures (Cryobiology)
- .467        \*High temperatures
- .47        \*Effects of electricity and magnetism  
              Subdivisions are added for effects of electricity and magnetism together, for effects of electricity alone, for effects of electromagnetism alone
- .49        \*Environmental biophysics  
              Effects of combinations of physical forces characteristic of unusual environments  
              Including effects of climate, of high altitudes  
              Class effects of a specific physical force with the force in 571.43–571.47
- .499        \*Extraterrestrial biophysics  
              Class here bioastronautics

> **571.5–571.9 Tissue biology, regional physiology, cell biology, biological control and secretions, reproduction, development, growth, diseases**

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by † as follows:

- 01–08 Standard subdivisions
  - Notation from Table 1 as modified under 570.1–570.8, e.g., microscopy in physiology 0282
- 09 History, geographic treatment, biography
  - Notation from Table 1 as modified under 571.09, e.g., space biology 0919
- 1–2 Specific kinds of organisms
  - Add the numbers following 571 in 571.1–571.2, e.g., the subject in animals 1, the subject in plants 2
- 3 Anatomy and application of processes to other processes
  - [301–309] Standard subdivisions
    - Do not use; class in 01–09
- 33–38 Anatomy and application of specific processes to other processes
  - Add to 3 the numbers following 571 in 571.3–571.8, e.g., anatomy 33, biophysics 34, cell biology 36

Class comprehensive works in 571.5

**.5 \*Tissue biology and regional physiology**

Class here histology, histophysiology; comprehensive works on tissue and cell biology

Subdivisions are added for tissue biology and regional physiology together, for tissue biology alone

Class biophysics of tissues in general in 571.4; class biophysics of specific tissues in 571.55–571.58

*For cell biology, see 571.6; for histogenesis, see 571.835*

**.53 Tissue anatomy, morphology, culture**

[.530 1–.530 9] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 571.501–571.509

**.533 \*Tissue anatomy and morphology**

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

**.538 \*Tissue culture**

Class here organ culture, comprehensive works on tissue and cell culture

*For cell culture, see 571.638*

- > 571.55–571.57 Specific tissues in animals
- Class comprehensive works in 571.51
- For tissues of a specific physiological system, see the system in 573, plus notation 35 from table under 573, e.g., tissues of circulatory system 573.135*
- .55 †Epithelial tissues
- .555 †Endothelium
- .56 †Connective tissues
- For adipose tissues, see 571.57*
- .57 †Adipose tissues
- .58 Specific tissues in plants
- Class comprehensive works in 571.52
- For tissues of a specific part or physiological system, see the part or physiological system in 575, plus notation 35 from table under 575, e.g., tissues of leaves 575.5735*
- [.580 1–.580 9] Standard subdivisions
- Do not use; class in 571.5201–571.5209
- .585 †Parenchyma
- Class here pith, sclerenchyma
- .59 Regional histology and physiology
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- For regional histology and physiology of animals, see 573.99; for regional physiology of plants, see 575.4; for regional histology of plants, see 575.4359*
- .590 1–.590 9 Standard subdivisions
- Notation from Table 1 as modified under 570.1–570.9, e.g., microscopy in regional physiology 571.590282
- .592 Fungi and algae
- .592 9 Specific fungi and algae
- Add to base number 571.5929 the numbers following 579 in 579.5–579.8, e.g., regional physiology of mushrooms 571.59296
- .6 \*Cell biology
- Class here cell physiology, cytology, eukaryotic cells, protoplasm
- For reproduction and growth of cells, see 571.84; for cytopathology, see 571.936; for cytochemistry, see 572; for cell digestion, metabolism, nutrition, see 572.4; for cell respiration, see 572.47*

\*Add as instructed under 571–572

†Add as instructed under 571.5–571.9

- .629           Microorganisms, fungi, algae  
                   Number built according to instructions under 571-572  
                   *See Manual at 571.629 vs. 571.29*
- .63            Cell anatomy, morphology, biophysics, culture  
 [.630 1-.630 9]   Standard subdivisions  
                   Do not use; class in 571.601-571.609
- .633           \*Cell anatomy and morphology  
                   Class here ultrastructure  
                   Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .634           \*Cell biophysics  
 .634 3-.634 9    Specific topics of cell biophysics  
                   Add to base number 571.634 the numbers following 571.4 in  
                   571.43-571.49, e.g., effect of high temperatures on cells 571.63467
- .638           \*Cell culture  
                   Class comprehensive works on tissue and cell culture in 571.538
- .64            †Membranes  
                   Class here biological transport  
                   Class lipid membranes and their chemistry in 572.577; class protein  
                   membranes and their chemistry in 572.696  
                   *For membranes of specific cellular components, see 571.65-571.68; for  
                   ion transport, see 572.3*
- .65            †Cytoplasm  
                   Class here endoplasmic reticulum, organelles
- .654           †Cytoskeleton  
                   Class here microfilaments, microtubules
- .655           †Vacuoles  
                   Including peroxisomes  
                   Class here lysosomes, vesicles
- .656           †Golgi apparatus
- .657           †Mitochondria
- .658           †Ribosomes
- .659           †Plastids

\*Add as instructed under 571-572

†Add as instructed under 571.5-571.9

- .659 2           Plants and microorganisms  
                   Number built according to instructions under 571.5–571.9  
                   Class here chloroplasts
- .66           †Nucleus  
                   Including linin network, nuclear envelope, nuclear membrane, nucleolus  
                   Class here nucleoplasm  
                   Class nucleic acids in 572.8  
                   *For chromosomes, see 572.87*
- .67           †Cell movement  
                   Including basal body  
                   Class here cilia, flagella, irritability, pseudopoda
- .68           †Cell walls
- .7           †**Biological control and secretions**  
                   Biological control: control of an organism's own physiological processes  
                   Subdivisions are added for biological control and secretions together, for  
                   biological control alone  
                   *See also 632.96 for biological control of agricultural pests*
- .71           Animals  
                   Number built according to instructions under 571.5–571.9  
                   Class here comprehensive works on endocrine and nervous systems  
                   *For endocrine system, see 573.4; for nervous and sensory systems, see  
                   573.8*
- .72           Plants and microorganisms  
                   Number built according to instructions under 571.5–571.9  
                   *See also 575.9 for animal-like physiological processes in plants*
- .74           †Biochemistry of control  
                   Class here comprehensive works on hormones  
                   *For animal hormones, see 573.44*  
                   *See Manual at 573.44 vs. 571.74*
- .75           †Homeostasis and physiological balance  
                   Including electrolytic balance, fluid balance  
                   Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

†Add as instructed under 571.5–571.9

- .76 †Body temperature  
Class here homiothermy, poikilothermy
- .77 †Periodicity  
Class here biorhythms, chronobiology
- .78 †Dormancy
- .785 †Diapause
- .786 †Aestivation
- .787 †Hibernation  
Class comprehensive works on hibernation in 591.565
- .79 †Secretion  
Other than hormones  
Class here exocrine glands, comprehensive works on glands  
Class excretory system of animals in 573.49  
*For endocrine glands, see 573.4. For secretions of a specific organ or system, or ones related to a specific process, see the organ, system or process, plus notation 379 from add tables under 571.5–571.9, 573, 575, e.g., digestive secretions 573.3379*
- .8 †Reproduction, development, growth**  
Class here physiology of life cycle, sexual reproduction  
Subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading  
*See Manual at 571.8 vs. 573.6, 575.6*
- .81 Animals  
Number built according to instructions under 571.5–571.9  
Class comprehensive works on life cycle of animals in 591.56  
*For reproduction, sexual reproduction in animals, see 573.6*
- .82 Plants and microorganisms  
Number built according to instructions under 571.5–571.9  
*For reproduction, sexual reproduction in plants, see 575.6*
- .829 Fungi and algae  
Number built according to instructions under 571.5–571.9  
Class reproduction and development of unicellular microorganisms in 571.8429; class sexual reproduction of unicellular microorganisms in 571.84529

- .835           Histogenesis  
                   Number built according to instructions under 571.5–571.9  
                   Class here cell differentiation, tissue differentiation  
                   Class cell differentiation in embryology, cell determination in 571.8636
- [.836]        Cell biology  
                   Do not use for cell differentiation; class in 571.835. Do not use for cell  
                   reproduction and growth; class in 571.84
- .84           †Reproduction and growth of cells  
                   Subdivisions are added for reproduction and growth together, for  
                   reproduction alone  
                   Class chromosome recombination in 572.877  
                   *For cell differentiation, see 571.835*
- .844        †Cell division  
                   Including centromeres, chromatids  
                   Class here mitosis
- .845        †Gametogenesis  
                   Including egg cells  
                   Class here meiosis; germ, haploid, sex cells  
                   *For maturation and fertilization of gametes, see 571.864*
- .845 2       Plants  
                   Number built according to instructions under 571.5–571.9  
                   Class here comprehensive works on palynology
- .847        †Reproduction by asexual spores  
                   Class here asexual spores, sporulation  
                   Class sexual spores (gametes) in 571.845
- .849        †Cell growth  
                   Class cell differentiation in 571.835  
                   *See also 571.936 for cell pathology and death*
- .85        †Developmental genetics
- .86        †Embryology  
                   Class comprehensive works on developmental biology in 571.8

†Add as instructed under 571.5–571.9

- .864 †Fertilization  
Including maturation of gametes  
Class here zygotes
- .864 2 Fertilization in plants and microorganisms  
Number built according to instructions under 571.5–571.9  
Class here pollination  
*For coevolution of pollination, see 576.875*
- .865 †Early cell division  
Class here blastulas, gastrulation
- .87 †Development after embryo  
Class here maturation  
Class comprehensive works on development in 571.8
- .876 †Development in distinct stages  
Including larvae  
Class here comprehensive works on metamorphosis  
*For embryo stage, see 571.86*
- .878 †Aging  
Class pathological aging and death in 571.939
- .879 †Longevity
- .88 Miscellaneous topics in reproduction  
Limited to topics named below
- [.880 1–.880 9] Standard subdivisions  
Do not use; class in 571.801–571.809
- .882 †Sex differentiation  
*For gametogenesis, see 571.845*
- .882 157 9 Sex differentiation in Hymenoptera  
Number built according to instructions under 571.5–571.9  
Class here physiology of caste differentiation among social insects
- .884 †Alternation of generations (Metagenesis)
- .886 †Hermaphroditism
- .887 †Parthenogenesis  
Class comprehensive works on asexual reproduction in 571.89

- .889 †Regeneration
- .89 †Vegetative reproduction  
Class here asexual reproduction  
*For asexual reproduction of microorganisms, see 571.8429; for parthenogenesis, see 571.887*
- .892 Microorganisms, fungi, algae  
Number built according to instructions under 571.5–571.9  
Do not use for vegetative reproduction of plants; class in 575.49
- .892 9 Specific microorganisms, fungi, algae  
Number built according to instructions under 571.5–571.9  
Add to base number 571.8929 the numbers following 579 in 579.2–579.8, e.g., vegetative reproduction of fungi 571.89295
- .9 \*Diseases**  
Class here pathology, histopathology, pathogenicity, pathophysiology; noncommunicable diseases  
*For human diseases, results of experimental research on human diseases in animals, see 616; for comprehensive works on agricultural diseases, see 632. For diseases of a specific physiological system in animals, see the system in 573, plus notation 39 from table under 573, e.g., bone diseases 573.7639; for diseases of specific parts of and physiological systems in plants, see the part or system in 575, plus notation 39 from table under 575, e.g., diseases of leaves 575.5739*
- .91 Animal diseases  
Number built according to instructions under 571–572  
*For diseases of domestic animals, see 636.0896*
- .92 Plant diseases  
Number built according to instructions under 571–572  
*For diseases of domestic plants, see 632.3*
- .93 Generalities of diseases
- [.930 1–.930 9] Standard subdivisions  
Do not use; class in 571.901–571.909
- .933–.938 General topics of disease  
Add to base number 571.93 the numbers following 571 in 571.3–571.8, e.g., physical causes of diseases 571.934; however, for pathological aging, see 571.939  
Class comprehensive works in 571.9

\*Add as instructed under 571–572

†Add as instructed under 571.5–571.9

- .939 †Pathological aging and death  
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
 Class comprehensive works on physiology and pathology of aging in 571.878
- .94 \*Pathological biochemistry
- .943–.948 Specific topics of pathological biochemistry  
 Add to base number 571.94 the numbers following 572 in 572.3–572.8, e.g., protein deficiency 571.946
- .95 †Toxicology  
 Class here diseases and stress caused by pollutants, by water pollution; ecotoxicology, environmental diseases, poisons  
*For environmental diseases induced by physical stresses, see 571.934*  
*See Manual at 363.73 vs. 571.95, 577.27*
- .954 Specific elements and groups of elements
- [.954 01–.954 09] Standard subdivisions  
 Do not use; class in 571.9501–571.9509
- .954 3–.954 7 Specific elements and groups of elements  
 Add to base number 571.954 the numbers following 546 in 546.3–546.7 for the element or group of elements only, e.g., metal toxicology 571.9543, mercury toxicology 571.954663
- .956 †Air pollutants  
 Class here toxicology of combustion gases
- .957 †Organic compounds  
 Including toxins  
 Class organic pesticides in 571.959
- .959 †Pesticides
- .96 †Immunity  
 Class here disease resistance, immune system, immunology, leukocytes, lymphocytes  
 Class allergies in 571.972; class autoimmunity in 571.973; class immune deficiency diseases in 571.974  
*For immunity in relation to diseases in humans, see 616.079*
- .964 †Immunochemistry and immune response  
 Subdivisions are added for immunochemistry and immune response together, for immunochemistry alone

\*Add as instructed under 571–572

†Add as instructed under 571.5–571.9

- .964 4 †Interferons
- .964 5 †Antigens  
     Class blood groups in 573.154  
     *See also 573.154 for blood groups*
- .964 6 †Immune response  
     Including clonal selection  
     Class here antigen recognition  
     Class antigen-antibody reactions in 571.9677
- .964 8 †Immunogenetics  
     Including transduction, transfection, transformation
- .966 †T cells (T lymphocytes)  
     Class here cell-mediated (cellular) immunity, cytotoxic T cells  
     *See also 571.968 for killer cells*
- .967 †B cells (B lymphocytes)  
     Class here antibodies (immunoglobulins)  
     *For maternally acquired antibodies, see 571.9638; for antibody-dependent immune mechanisms, see 571.968*
- .967 7 †Antigen-antibody reactions
- .968 †Phagocytes and complement  
     Including granulocytes, killer cells  
     Class here antibody-dependent immune mechanisms  
     Subdivisions are added for phagocytes and complement together, for phagocytes alone  
     *See also 571.966 for cytotoxic T cells*
- .968 5 †Macrophages
- .968 8 †Complement  
     Class activation of macrophages by complement in 571.9685
- .97       Miscellaneous diseases  
     Limited to those named below
- [.970 1–.970 9]     Standard subdivisions  
     Do not use; class in 571.901–571.909
- .972       †Allergies

†Add as instructed under 571.5–571.9

- .973 †Autoimmunity  
Class here autoimmune diseases
- .974 †Immune deficiency diseases
- .975 †Injuries and wounds  
Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .976 †Deformities  
Class here teratology
- .978 †Tumors  
Class here cancer
- .98 †Communicable diseases  
Class here diseases caused by living organisms, by microorganisms  
Class poisons in 571.95; class comprehensive works on immunity to communicable diseases in 571.96  
*For specific communicable diseases, see 571.99*
- .986 †Disease vectors
- .99 Specific communicable diseases
- [.990 1–.990 9] Standard subdivisions  
Do not use; class in 571.9801–571.9809
- .992–.995 Diseases caused by microorganisms and fungi  
Add to base number 571.99 the numbers following 579 in 579.2–579.5 for the organism only, e.g., protozoan diseases 571.994; then add 1 and to the result add further the numbers following 571 in 571.1–571.2, e.g., protozoan diseases in animals 571.99411, protozoan diseases in plants 571.99412  
Do not add notation 12 (derived from 571.2) to 571.9928 (diseases caused by plant viruses) except for viral diseases of specific kinds of plants. Do not add notation 1293 (derived from 571.293) to 571.9926 (diseases caused by bacterial viruses) except for viral diseases of specific kinds of bacteria  
Class comprehensive works in 571.98
- .999 †Parasitic diseases  
Class here diseases caused by animals, by endoparasites, by worms, comprehensive works on parasitism  
*For protozoan diseases, see 571.994; for ecology of parasitism, see 577.857*

**572 \*Biochemistry**

Class here cytochemistry, histochemistry; comprehensive works on biochemistry of nonmetallic elements and their compounds; comprehensive works on biochemistry and biophysics; interdisciplinary works on biochemicals, on macromolecules

*For chemistry of biochemicals, see 547; for chemistry of macromolecules, see 547.7; for biophysics, see 571.4; for biochemistry of control processes, see 571.74; for pathological biochemistry, see 571.94; for immunochemistry, see 571.964; for biogeochemistry, see 577.14; for industrial biochemistry, see 660.63. For biochemistry of a specific physiological system in animals, see the system in 573, plus notation 4 from table under 573, e.g., chemistry of circulatory fluids in animals 573.154; for biochemistry of a reproductive organ or physiological system in plants, see the organ or system in 575.6–575.9, plus notation 4 from table under 575.6–575.9, e.g., chemistry of circulatory fluids in plants 575.754*

**SUMMARY**

<b>572.3</b>	<b>General topics of biochemistry</b>
.4	<b>Metabolism</b>
.5	<b>Miscellaneous chemicals</b>
.6	<b>Proteins</b>
.7	<b>Enzymes</b>
.8	<b>Biochemical genetics</b>

**.3 General topics of biochemistry**

Including ion transport

[.301–.309] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 572.01–572.09

**.33 \*Molecular structure**

Class here bonds, conformation, sequences of polymers and other component units of large molecules, theoretical chemistry

Class structure-activity relationships in 572.4; class molecular biology (biochemical genetics) in 572.8

**.36 \*Analytical biochemistry****.38 \*Biochemical evolution**

Class comprehensive works on molecular evolution in 572.838

*For biochemistry of origin of life, see 576.83*

**.39 \*Nutritional requirements**

Class conditions needed for life to begin in 576.83

*For a specific kind of chemical requirement, see the chemical in 572.5–572.8, plus notation 39 from table under 572.5–572.8, e.g., vitamin requirements 572.5839*

**.4 \*Metabolism**

Class here cell digestion and metabolism, structure-activity relationships, comprehensive biological works on nutrition

Class molecular structure in 572.33; class interdisciplinary works on human nutrition in 363.8

*For metabolism of a specific chemical, see the chemical in 572.5–572.8, plus notation 4 from table under 572.5–572.8, e.g., metabolism of enzymes 572.74, enzyme kinetics 572.744; for a specific aspect of biology of nutrition, see the aspect, e.g., nutritional requirements 572.39, digestive system 573.3*

**.41 Animal metabolism**

Number built according to instructions under 571–572

Class comprehensive works on animal digestion in 573.3

**.43 \*Energy metabolism**

Class here biochemical interactions, reactions; bioenergetics, energy phenomena in organisms, physical biochemistry

Class effects of physical agents on organisms, comprehensive works on biophysics in 571.4

*For bonds, see 572.33*

**.435 \*Photobiochemistry and bioluminescence**

Subdivisions are added for photobiochemistry and bioluminescence together, for photobiochemistry alone

*For photosynthesis, see 572.46*

**.435 8 \*Bioluminescence**

*For bioluminescent organs, see 573.95*

**.436 \*Thermodynamics**

Class here thermobiology, thermochemistry

**.437 \*Bioelectrochemistry**

*For electric organs, see 573.97*

**.44 \*Reaction kinetics****.45 \*Biosynthesis (Anabolism)**

*For photosynthesis, see 572.46*

**.46 \*Photosynthesis**

Class here chlorophylls

**.47 \*Cell respiration**

Class here tissue respiration, comprehensive works on respiration

- .471 Cell respiration in animals  
 Number built according to instructions under 571–572  
 Class comprehensive works on respiration in animals in 573.2
- .472 Cell respiration in plants and microorganisms  
 Number built according to instructions under 571–572  
*For gas exchange from surface tissues of plants, see 575.8*
- .475 \*Tricarboxylic acid cycle  
 Variant names: citric acid cycle, Krebs cycle  
 Class here adenosine triphosphate
- .478 \*Anaerobic respiration
- .48 \*Catabolism
- .49 \*Fermentation

> **572.5–572.8 Specific biochemicals and biochemical genetics**

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by † as follows:

- 01–08 Standard subdivisions  
 Notation from Table 1 as modified under 570.1–570.8, e.g.,  
 microscopy in physiology 0282
- 09 History, geographic treatment, biography  
 Notation from Table 1 as modified under 571.09, e.g., space  
 biology 0919
- 1–2 Specific kinds of organisms  
 Add the numbers following 571 in 571.1–571.2, e.g., the subject in  
 animals 1, the subject in plants 2
- 3 General topics in biochemistry
- [301–309] Standard subdivisions  
 Do not use; class in 01–09
- 33–39 Anatomy and application of specific processes to other processes  
 Add to 3 the numbers following 572.3 in 572.33–572.39, e.g.,  
 molecular structure 33, nutritional requirements 39
- 4 Metabolism and genetic aspects  
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- 401–408 Standard subdivisions  
 Notation from Table 1 as modified under 570.1–570.8, e.g.,  
 microscopy 40282
- 409 History, geographic treatment, biography  
 Notation from Table 1 as modified under 571.09, e.g., space  
 biology 40919
- 41–49 Specific aspects of metabolism  
 Add to 4 the numbers following 572.4 in 572.41–572.49, e.g.,  
 biosynthesis 45

Class comprehensive works in 572

\*Add as instructed under 571–572

**.5 Miscellaneous chemicals**

Not provided for elsewhere

## [.501--.509] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 572.01–572.09

## .51 †Bioinorganic chemistry

Class here biomineralization, coordination biochemistry, metals in biochemistry

*For bioinorganic chemistry of metals other than calcium, iron, copper, see 572.52; for bioinorganic chemistry of nonmetallic elements, see 572.53–572.55*

## .511 Animals

Number built according to instructions under 572.5–572.8

*For biomineralization in animals, see 573.76451*

## .515 †Trace elements

Class here micronutrients

*For a specific trace element, see the element in 572.51–572.55, e.g., iron 572.517*

## .516 †Calcium

## .517 †Iron

## .518 †Copper

## .52 Bioinorganic chemistry of metals other than calcium, iron, copper

## [.520 1--.520 9] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 572.5101–572.5109

## .523--.527 Specific metals

Add to base number 572.52 the numbers following 546 in 546.38–546.72, e.g., magnesium 572.52392; however, for calcium, see 572.516; for iron, see 572.517; for copper, see 572.518

## &gt; 572.53–572.55 Nonmetallic elements and their compounds in biochemistry

Class comprehensive works in 572

## .53 †Oxygen

*For oxygen in respiration, see 572.47*

## .539 †Water

Class fluid balance in 571.75

†Add as instructed under 572.5–572.8

- .54 †Nitrogen  
*For biogeochemical nitrogen cycle, see 577.145*
- .545 †Nitrogen fixation
- .548 †Amines  
*For alkaloids, see 572.549; for amino acids, see 572.65*
- .549 †Alkaloids
- .55 Other nonmetallic elements and their compounds in biochemistry  
 Class carbon, hydrogen in 572
- [.550 1--.550 9] Standard subdivisions  
 Do not use; class in 572.01--572.09
- .553 †Phosphorus
- .554 †Sulfur
- .555 †Selenium
- .556 †Halogens
- .56 †Carbohydrates  
 Class here saccharides
- .565 †Sugars  
 Including insulin  
 Class here monosaccharides, oligosaccharides
- [.565 49] Fermentation  
 Do not use; class in 572.49
- .566 †Polysaccharides
- .566 8 †Structural polysaccharides  
 Class cellulose in 572.56682; class chitin in 573.774
- .567 †Conjugated carbohydrates  
 Including glycosides
- .567 2 Plants and microorganisms  
 Number built according to instructions under 572.5--572.8  
 Including gums
- .57 †Lipids  
 Including waxes  
 Class here fats, fatty acids

†Add as instructed under 572.5--572.8

- .577 †Membrane lipids  
Class here bilayer lipid membranes
- .579 †Steroids
- .579.5 †Sterols  
Class here cholesterol
- .58 †Vitamins
- .59 †Pigments  
Class chlorophyll in 572.46
- .6 †Proteins**  
*For hormones, see 571.74; for antibodies, see 571.967; for enzymes, see 572.7; for nucleoproteins, see 572.84; for prions, see 579.29*
- .633 Molecular structure  
Number built according to instructions under 572.5–572.8  
Class here amino acid sequence
- .645 Biosynthesis (Anabolism)  
Number built according to instructions under 572.5–572.8  
Class here genetic translation
- .65 †Components of proteins  
Class here amino acids, peptides, polypeptides  
Class amino-acid sequence in 572.633
- .66 †Simple proteins  
Including albumins, globulins, histones
- .67 †Structural proteins  
Class here collagen, scleroproteins
- .68 †Conjugated proteins  
Including chromoproteins, glycoproteins, lipoproteins, phosphoproteins
- .69 †Bioactive proteins
- .696 †Carrier and transport proteins  
Including cell receptors  
Class here membrane proteins  
Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

**.7 †Enzymes**

Class here coenzymes, cofactors

*For enzymes performing a specific physiological function, see the physiological function, e.g., enzymes in cellular respiration 572.47, digestive enzymes 573.347*

**.75–.78 Enzymes catalyzing reactions of specific chemicals**

Add to base number 572.7 the numbers following 572 in 572.5–572.8, e.g., proteolytic enzymes 572.76; however, for oxidases, see 572.791

Class comprehensive works on classes of enzymes named according to the reaction they catalyze in 572.79

**.79 Classes of enzymes named according to specific kind of reaction they catalyze**

Including isomerases, ligases, lyases

*For enzymes catalyzing specific kinds of chemicals, see 572.75–572.78*

**[.790 1–.790 9] Standard subdivisions**

Do not use; class in 572.701–572.709

**.791 †Oxidoreductases**

Oxidizing and reducing enzymes

Including catalases, dehydrogenases, oxidases, zymases

Class cellular respiration in 572.47

**.792 †Transferases****.793 †Hydrolases****.8 †Biochemical genetics**

Class here cytogenetics, molecular biology, molecular genetics, physiological genetics; nucleic acids

Class developmental genetics in 571.85; class comprehensive works on genetics in 576.5. Class genetic aspects of a specific biochemical with the specific biochemical in 572.5–572.7, plus notation 4 from table under 572.5–572.8, e.g., genetic regulation of enzymes 572.74

*See Manual at 576.5 vs. 572.8*

- .838           Molecular evolution
- Number built according to instructions under 572.5–572.8
- Including mutagenesis, radiogenetics
- Class here evolutionary genetics, genetic evolution
- Class molecular evolution of a specific biochemical with the biochemical, plus notation 38 from table under 572.5–572.8, e.g., biochemical evolution of enzymes 572.738
- For molecular evolution during origin of life, see 576.83*
- .84             Metabolism
- Number built according to instructions under 572.5–572.8
- Class here nucleic-acid hybridization, nucleic acid-protein interactions, comprehensive works on nucleoproteins
- For nucleoproteins in a specific situation, see the situation, e.g., nucleoproteins in chromosomes 572.87*
- .85             †Nucleotides
- Class here nucleosides
- .86             †DNA (Deoxyribonucleic acid)
- Class here chromosomal DNA, codons, genes, genomes
- Class genetic transfection and transformation in 571.9648; class DNA as a component of chromosomes in 572.87
- .863 3           Molecular structure
- Number built according to instructions under 572.5–572.8
- Class here DNA topology, double helix, genetic code; chromosome, gene, genome mapping; base, gene, nucleotide sequences
- Class amino acid sequence in 572.633
- For base and nucleotide sequence in RNA, see 572.8833*
- .864 5           Biosynthesis
- Number built according to instructions under 572.5–572.8
- Class here DNA replication
- Class genetic transcription in 572.8845
- .864 59           \*DNA repair
- .865             †Gene expression
- Class here genetic regulation, regulation of gene expression

\*Add as instructed under 571–572

†Add as instructed under 572.5–572.8

- .869 †Extrachromosomal DNA  
 Including plasmid DNA, plasmids, transposons  
 Class here chloroplastic DNA, cytoplasmic inheritance, mitochondrial DNA  
 Class viruses in 579.2  
*For transduction, transfection, transformation, see 571.9648*  
*See also 572.877 for genetic recombination*
- .87 †Chromosomes  
 Class here chromatin, chromosome numbers, nucleosomes
- .873 3 Molecular structure  
 Number built according to instructions under 572.5–572.8  
*For chromosome mapping, nucleotide sequences in chromosomes, see 572.8633*
- .877 †Genetic recombination  
 Including aneuploidy, crossing over, inversion, translocation  
 Class somatic variation resulting from genetic recombination in 576.54; class recombinant DNA in 660.65
- .88 †RNA (Ribonucleic acid)  
*For viroids, see 579.29*
- .884 5 Biosynthesis  
 Number built according to instructions under 572.5–572.8  
 Class here genetic transcription  
 Class genetic translation, protein synthesis in 572.645
- .886 †Transfer RNA

## 573 Specific physiological systems in animals, regional histology and physiology in animals

Class here comprehensive works on specific physiological systems

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by \* as follows:

- 01-08 Standard subdivisions
  - Notation from Table 1 as modified under 570.1-570.8, e.g., microscopy 0282
- 09 History, geographic treatment, biography
  - Notation from Table 1 as modified under 571.09, e.g., space biology 0919
- 1 Comparative physiology of the system
  - Add to 1 the numbers following 59 in 591-599, e.g., the system in mammals 19
- 2 Operation of one physiological system within another system
  - Class hormones in 374
- 21 Circulation in the system
- 2101-2108 Standard subdivisions
  - Notation from Table 1 as modified under 570.1-570.8, e.g., microscopy 210282
- 2109 History, geographic treatment, biography
  - Notation from Table 1 as modified under 571.09, e.g., space biology 210919
- 211 Comparative physiology of circulation in the system
  - Add to 211 the numbers following 59 in 591-599, e.g., circulation in the system in mammals 2119
- 213 Anatomy and general biological processes of circulation
  - Add to 213 the numbers following 571 in 571.3-571.9, e.g., anatomy of circulation 2133, development of circulation 2138
- 25 Integument of the system
  - Class here membranes enveloping an organ even if not an integral part of the organ, e.g., pericardium 573.1725
- 2501-2508 Standard subdivisions
  - Notation from Table 1 as modified under 570.1-570.8, e.g., microscopy 250282
- 2509 History, geographic treatment, biography
  - Notation from Table 1 as modified under 571.09, e.g., space biology 250919
- 251 Comparative physiology of integument in the system
  - Add to 251 the numbers following 59 in 591-599, e.g., integument of the system in mammals 2519
- 253 Anatomy and general biological processes of integument
  - Add to 253 the numbers following 571 in 571.3-571.9, e.g., cytology of integument of an organ 2536
- 27 Muscles of the system
- 2701-2708 Standard subdivisions
  - Notation from Table 1 as modified under 570.1-570.8, e.g., microscopy 270282
- 2709 History, geographic treatment, biography
  - Notation from Table 1 as modified under 571.09, e.g., space biology 270919

(continued)

## 573 Specific physiological systems in animals, regional histology and physiology in animals (continued)

- 271 Comparative physiology of muscles of the system  
Add to 271 the numbers following 59 in 591–599, e.g., muscles of the system in mammals 2719
- 273 Anatomy and general biological processes of muscles  
Add to 273 the numbers following 571 in 571.3–571.9, e.g., biophysics of muscles 2734
- 28 Innervation of the system
- 2801–2808 Standard subdivisions  
Notation from Table 1 as modified under 570.1–570.8, e.g., microscopy 280282
- 2809 History, geographic treatment, biography  
Notation from Table 1 as modified under 571.09, e.g., space biology 280919
- 281 Comparative physiology of innervation of the system  
Add to 281 the numbers following 59 in 592–599, e.g., innervation of the system in mammals 2819
- 283 Anatomy and general biological processes of innervation  
Add to 283 the numbers following 571 in 571.3–571.9, e.g., diseases of innervation of an organ 2839
- 3 Anatomy and general biological processes of the system or region  
Class anatomy of, or a specific biological process within, a specific physiological subsystem in 2
- [301–309] Standard subdivisions  
Do not use; class in 01–09
- 33–39 Anatomy and specific biological processes of the system or region  
Add to 3 the numbers following 571 in 571.3–571.9, e.g., anatomy 33, biophysics 34, cell biology 36
- 4 Biochemistry
- 401–408 Standard subdivisions  
Notation from Table 1 as modified under 570.1–570.8, e.g., microscopy 40282
- 409 History, geographic treatment, biography  
Notation from Table 1 as modified under 571.09, e.g., space biology 40919
- 41 Biochemistry of the system in specific kinds of animals  
Add to 41 the numbers following 59 in 591–599, e.g., biochemistry of the system in mammals 419
- 43–48 Specific topics of biochemistry  
Add to 4 the numbers following 572 in 572.3–572.8, e.g., enzymes, biochemical genetics 573

Class comprehensive works on physiological systems in 571

*For specific physiological systems in plants, see 575; for specific physiological systems in humans, see 612; for specific physiological systems in domestic animals, see 636.0892*

*See Manual at 571–573 vs. 610*

## SUMMARY

- 573.1      **Circulatory system**
- .2      **Respiratory system**
- .3      **Digestive system**
- .4      **Endocrine and excretory systems**
- .5      **Integument**
- .6      **Reproductive system**
- .7      **Musculoskeletal system**
- .8      **Nervous and sensory systems**
- .9      **Miscellaneous systems and organs in animals, regional histology and physiology in animals**

[.01–.09]      Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 571.101–571.109

**.1      \*Circulatory system**

Class here cardiovascular system

*For circulation in a specific system or organ, see the system or organ, plus notation 21 from table under 573, e.g., circulation in brain 573.8621*

**.15      \*Circulatory fluids**

Class here blood

*For lymph, see 573.16*

**.153 6      Cell biology**

Number built according to instructions under 573

Class here blood cells, erythrocytes

*For leukocytes, see 571.96; for platelets, see 573.159*

**.154      Biochemistry**

Number built according to instructions under 573

Including blood groups

**.155      \*Hematopoiesis**

Class here hematopoietic (blood-forming) system

**.155 5      \*Spleen**

**.155 6      \*Bone marrow**

**.156      \*Plasma**

**.159      \*Blood coagulation**

Class here blood coagulation factors, platelets (thrombocytes)

.16        **\*Lymphatic system**  
             Class here lymph  
             *For role of lymphatic system in immunity, see 571.96; for spleen, see 573.1555*

.163 6        Cell biology  
             Number built according to instructions under 573  
             *For leukocytes, lymphocytes, see 571.96*

>            573.17–573.18   Circulatory organs

            Class comprehensive works in 573.1

.17        **\*Pumping mechanisms**

            Class here heart

.18        **\*Blood vessels**

.185        **\*Arteries**

.186        **\*Veins**

.187        **\*Capillaries**

.2         **\*Respiratory system**

            Class here aerobic respiration, comprehensive works on respiration in animals

*For cell and tissue respiration in animals, see 572.471*

.25        **\*Lungs**

.26        **\*Organs accessory to lungs**

            Including diaphragm, nasal sinuses, nose, trachea

            Class olfactory nerves in 573.877; class use of accessory respiratory organs in vocal communication in 573.92

*For larynx, see 573.925*

.28        **\*Gills**

.3         **\*Digestive system**

            Class here digestion

            Class comprehensive works on biology of nutrition in 572.4; class interdisciplinary works on human nutrition in 363.8

*For cell digestion, see 572.4*

.35        **\*Mouth and esophagus**

            Class here physiology of eating, ingestion

            Subdivisions are added for mouth and esophagus together, for mouth alone

\*Add as instructed under 573

- .355        \*External mouth parts  
                   Class here beak, bill, cheeks, lips; feeding appendages and tentacles
- .356        \*Teeth  
                   *See also 591.47 for fangs and tasks*
- .357        \*Tongue
- .359        \*Esophagus
- .36         \*Stomach  
                   Including pylorus
- .37         \*Intestine
- .377        \*Pancreas  
                   Including islands of Langerhans  
                   Class insulin in 572.565
- .378        \*Small intestine  
                   Including duodenum, ileum, jejunum
- .379        \*Large intestine  
                   Including colon, rectum
- .38         \*Biliary tract  
                   Including bile ducts, gallbladder  
                   Class here liver
- .383 79        Bile  
                   Number built according to instructions under 573  
                   Including bile acids
- .4         \*Endocrine and excretory systems**  
                   Class here endocrinology  
                   Subdivisions are added for endocrine and excretory systems together, for  
                   endocrine system alone  
                   Class comprehensive works on animal endocrine and nervous systems in 571.71

**.44 Biochemistry**

Number built according to instructions under 573

Class here comprehensive works on animal hormones

*For hormones of a specific endocrine gland, see the gland, plus notation 4 from table under 573, e.g., pituitary hormones 573.454, estrogen 573.6654; for hormones controlling a specific function in 571.5–571.9, see the function, plus notation 374 from tables under 571.5–571.9, e.g., growth hormones 571.8374; for hormones controlling a specific animal physiological system, see the function in 573, plus notation 374 from table under 573, e.g., gastrointestinal hormones 573.3374*

*See Manual at 573.44 vs. 571.74*

**> 573.45–573.47 Specific endocrine glands**

Class comprehensive works in 573.4

*For islands of Langerhans, see 573.377; for testes, see 573.655; for ovaries, see 573.665; for nervous system, see 573.8*

**.45 \*Pituitary gland and hypothalamus**

Subdivisions are added for pituitary gland and hypothalamus together, for pituitary gland alone

Class comprehensive works on neurohormones in 573.8374

**.459 \*Hypothalamus****.46 \*Adrenal glands****.47 \*Thyroid and parathyroid glands**

Subdivisions are added for thyroid and parathyroid glands together, for thyroid gland alone

**.478 \*Parathyroid glands****.49 \*Excretory system**

Class here excretion, urinary system

**.496 \*Kidneys****.5 \*Integument**

Including physiology of color

Class here skin

Class color of hair, fur, scales, feathers, horns, related topics in 573.58–573.59; class exoskeleton in 573.77; class comprehensive works on color of animals in 591.472

*For integument of a specific system or organ, see the system or organ, plus notation 25 from table under 573, e.g., pericardium 573.1725, meninges 573.8625*

\*Add as instructed under 573

- .58      \*Hair and fur  
          Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .59      \*Scales, feathers, horns, related topics  
          Including claws, nails
- .595     \*Scales
- .597     \*Feathers
- .6      \*Reproductive system**  
          Class here genital organs, reproduction, sexual reproduction, comprehensive works on urogenital system  
  
          Class comprehensive works on reproduction, development, growth of animals in 571.81  
  
          *For urinary system, see 573.49*  
  
          *See Manual at 571.8 vs. 573.6, 575.6*
- .65      \*Male reproductive system
- .655     \*Testes  
          Class sperm in 571.845
- .656     \*Penis
- .658     \*Prostate
- .66      \*Female reproductive system  
          Class pregnancy and lactation in 573.67
- .665     \*Ovaries  
          Class egg cells in 571.845; class eggs in 573.68; class plant ovaries in 575.665
- .667     \*Uterus
- .67      \*Pregnancy and lactation  
          Subdivisions are added for pregnancy and lactation together, for pregnancy alone
- .679     \*Lactation  
          Class here mammary glands
- .68      \*Eggs  
          *For embryology of animals, see 571.861*
- .7      \*Musculoskeletal system**  
          Class here physiology of movement

- .735 6           Connective tissues  
                   Number built according to instructions under 573  
                   *For tendons, see 573.75356; for cartilage, see 573.76356; for ligaments, see 573.78356*
- .75            \***Muscles**  
                   *For muscles of a specific system or organ, see the system or organ, plus notation 27 from table under 573, e.g., heart muscles 573.1727*
- .76            \***Bones**  
                   Class here comprehensive works on skeleton  
                   *For bone marrow, see 573.1556; for horns, see 573.59; for exoskeleton, see 573.77*
- .764 51        Bioinorganic chemistry  
                   Number built according to instructions under 573  
                   Class here comprehensive works on biomineralization in animals  
                   *For biomineralization in a specific system or organ, see the system or organ, plus notation 451 from table under 573, e.g., biomineralization in teeth 573.356451*
- .77            \***Exoskeleton**
- .78            \***Joints**
- .79            \***Locomotion and related activities**  
                   Including rest  
                   Class here crawling, running, walking, work  
                   Subdivisions are added for locomotion and related activities together, for locomotion alone  
                   Class behavioral aspects of locomotion in 591.57
- .798          \***Flying**  
                   Class here physiology of wings  
                   Class comprehensive works on wings in 591.479
- .8            \*Nervous and sensory systems**  
                   Subdivisions are added for nervous and sensory systems together, for nervous system alone  
                   Class comprehensive works on regulation and control in animals, on endocrine and nervous systems in 571.71

- .85      \*Nerves and nerve fibers  
           Class here irritability, peripheral nerves  
           Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
           Class comprehensive works on nerves, nerve fibers, central nervous system in 573.8  
           *For cell irritability, see 571.67; for nerves and nerve fibers in central nervous system, see 573.86. For innervation of a specific system or organ, see the system or organ, plus notation 28 from table under 573, e.g., innervation of muscles 573.7528*
- .86      \*Central nervous system  
           Class here brain
- .868     \*Physiology of sleep  
           Class sleep behavior in 591.56; class interdisciplinary works on sleep in 154.6
- .869     \*Spinal cord
- .87      \*Sense organs  
           Including physiology of navigation  
           Class here sensation, senses  
           Class migration in 591.568  
           *For eyes, see 573.88; for ears, see 573.89*
- .875     \*Touch
- .877     \*Chemical senses  
           Class here olfaction, olfactory nerves, smell  
           *For taste, see 573.878*
- .878     \*Taste  
           Class here taste buds
- .88      \*Eyes  
           Including light sensing by pineal gland  
           Class here sight, vision
- .89      \*Ears  
           Class here hearing
- .9      **Miscellaneous systems and organs in animals, regional histology and physiology in animals**  
           Limited to topics provided for below

- [.901–.909]      Standard subdivisions  
                     Do not use; class in 571.101–571.109
- .92                \*Communication systems  
                     Class here vocal communication  
                     Class comprehensive works on animal communication in 591.59  
                     *For receiving sensory systems, see 573.87; for bioluminescent communication, see 573.95; for communication involving electric organs, see 573.97*
- .925              \*Larynx  
                     Class here vocal cords
- .927              \*Nonvocal sound communication  
                     Class here physiology of stridulation
- .929              \*Chemical communication  
                     Production of chemicals that arouse behavioral responses
- .95                \*Bioluminescent organs  
                     Class here bioluminescent communication
- .97                \*Electric organs
- .99                \*Regional histology and physiology in animals  
                     Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .995              \*Head
- .996              \*Thorax
- .997              \*Abdomen
- .998              \*Appendages  
                     Class locomotor functions of appendages in 573.79

**[574]      [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 20

## 575 Specific parts of and physiological systems in plants

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by † as follows:

- 01–09 Standard subdivisions
  - Notation from Table 1 as modified under 570.1–570.9, e.g., microscopy 0282
- 2 Specific kinds of plants
  - Class here comparative physiology, evolution of the part or system
  - Add to 2 the numbers following 58 in 581–588, e.g., monocotyledons 24
  - For physiological systems in fungi and algae, see 571; for specific parts of fungi and algae, see 571.5929*
- 3 Generalities of parts or processes
  - [301–309] Standard subdivisions
    - Do not use; class in 01–09
- 33–39 Generalities of specific parts or processes
  - Add to 3 the numbers following 571 in 571.3–571.9, e.g., histology 35, pathology 39

*For external description of parts and organs and their configurations, see 581.4*

### SUMMARY

- 575.4 Stems
- .5 Roots and leaves
- .6 Reproductive organs
- .7 Circulation, food storage, excretion
- .8 Transpiration
- .9 Animal-like physiological processes

[.01–.09] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 571.201–571.209

#### .4 †Stems

Class here comprehensive works on regional physiology, on shoots

*For regional physiology of roots, see 575.54; for leaves, see 575.57*

.435 9 Regional histology

Number built according to instructions under 575

Class here comprehensive works on regional histology of plants

*For regional histology of roots, see 575.54359; for regional histology of leaves, see 575.57359*

.45 Special features of stems

Limited to those named below

[.450 1–.450 9] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 575.401–575.409

- .451 †Primary epidermis  
 Including physiology of color  
 Class here comprehensive works on epidermis of plants  
 Class comprehensive works on color of plants in 581.47  
*For bark, see 575.452; for transpiration from primary epidermis, see 575.8. For color of a specific organ or part, see the organ or part, e.g., color of leaves 575.57*
- .452 †Bark  
 Class here phloem  
*For circulation in phloem, see 575.7*
- .454 †Nodes
- .457 †Thorns
- .46 †Wood  
 Class here xylem  
*For circulation in phloem, see 575.7*
- .48 †Growing points and layers  
 Class here meristem  
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .485 †Apical meristem
- .486 †Buds
- .488 †Cambium
- .49 †Stems specialized for reproduction  
 Class here asexual reproduction, vegetative reproduction, underground stems  
 Class food storage in specialized stems in 575.78; class comprehensive works on reproduction of plants in 575.6
- .495 †Bulbs
- .496 †Corms
- .497 †Rhizomes
- .498 †Tubers
- .499 †Runners (Stolons)
- .5 Roots and leaves**

## .54 †Roots

*For absorption of water and nutrients by roots, see 575.76*

*See also 575.49 for underground stems*

## .545–.548 Specific aspects of roots

Add to base number 575.54 the numbers following 575.4 in 575.45–575.48, e.g., xylem in roots 575.546

## .57 †Leaves

*For transpiration from leaves, see 575.8*

> **575.6–575.9 Reproductive organs and physiological systems in plants**

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by \* as follows:

## 01–09 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 570.1–570.9, e.g., microscopy 0282

## 2–3 Specific kinds of plants; generalities of organs and systems

Add as instructed under 575, e.g., the organ or process in monocotyledons 24, histology 35

## 4 Biochemistry

## 401–408 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 570.1–570.8, e.g., microscopy 40282

## 409 History, geographic treatment, biography

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 571.09, e.g., space biology 40919

## 42 Biochemistry in specific kinds of plants

Add to 42 the numbers following 58 in 581–588, e.g., biochemistry of the organ or process in monocotyledons 42

## 43–48 Specific topics of biochemistry

Add to 4 the numbers following 572 in 572.3–572.8, e.g., enzymes 47, biochemical genetics 48

Class comprehensive works in 571.2

**.6 \*Reproductive organs**

Class here flowers, reproduction, sexual reproduction, sporangia

Class pollination in 571.8642; class comprehensive works on reproduction, development, growth of plants in 571.82; class interdisciplinary works on flowers in 582.13

*For asexual reproduction, vegetative reproduction, see 575.49*

*See Manual at 571.8 vs. 573.6, 575.6*

\*Add as instructed under 575.6–575.9

†Add as instructed under 575

- .65      \*Male reproductive organs  
           Class here anthers, microsporangia, stamens  
           Class pollen (microspores) in 571.845
- .66      \*Female reproductive organs  
           Class here pistils  
           Class fruits in 575.67
- .665     \*Ovaries  
           Class here carpels, megasporangia  
           Class egg cells (megaspores) in 571.845; class seeds in 575.68
- .67      \*Fruits  
           Including nuts  
           *For seeds, see 575.68*
- .68      \*Seeds  
           *For embryology of plants (including germination of seeds), see 571.862*
- .69      \*Other flower parts  
           Class here petals, sepals
- .7       **\*Circulation, food storage, excretion**  
           Subdivisions are added for circulation, food storage, excretion together; for  
           circulation alone  
           Class transpiration in 575.8  
           *For a specific circulatory tissue, see the tissue, e.g., phloem 575.452, xylem  
           575.46*
- .75      \*Circulatory fluids  
           Class here sap
- .76      \*Absorption of water and nutrients  
           Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .78      \*Food and water storage  
           Subdivisions are added for food and water storage together, for food storage  
           alone
- .79      \*Excretion  
           Class here internal isolation of unusable substances

**.8 \*Transpiration**

Class here gas exchange from surface tissues

*For a specific tissue or organ of transpiration, see the tissue or organ, e.g., leaves 575.57*

**.9 \*Animal-like physiological processes**

Class here behavior of plants

**.97 \*Movement**

*For movement that is a direct result of growth, see 571.82*

**.98 \*Sensitivity**

Class here irritability

**.99 \*Physiology of predatory activity**

Trapping mobile organisms

Class comprehensive works on carnivorous plants in 583.75

**> 576–578 General and external biological phenomena**

Class general and external biological phenomena of microorganisms, fungi, algae in 579; class general and external biological phenomena of plants in 580; class general and external biological phenomena of animals in 590; class comprehensive works in 578

**576 Genetics and evolution**

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by † as follows:

01–09 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 570.1–570.9, e.g., microscopy 0282

**.01–.09 Standard subdivisions**

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 570.1–570.9, e.g., microscopy in study of genetics and evolution 576.0282

**.5 †Genetics**

Class here heredity, experimental works on genetics of specific organisms; interdisciplinary works on genetics

*For biochemical, molecular, physiological genetics; cytogenetics, see 572.8; for genetics of microorganisms, fungi, algae, see 579.135; for genetics of plants, see 581.35; for genetics of animals, see 591.35. For a specific aspect of genetics, see the aspect, e.g., eugenics 363.92, medical genetics 616.042, genetic engineering 660.65*

*See Manual at 576.5 vs. 572.8*

\*Add as instructed under 575.6–575.9

†Add standard subdivisions as instructed under 576

- .52 †Laws of genetics  
Class here Mendel's laws
- .53 †Genetic makeup  
Class here genotypes, phenotypes  
Class biochemical aspects of genetic makeup in 572.8
- .54 †Variation  
Class here factors affecting heredity and variation  
*For genetic recombination as a factor affecting heredity and variation, see 572.877*  
*See also 571.9648 for transduction, transformation; also 572.869 for transposons*
- .542 †Environmental factors (Mutagens)  
Class here chemical mutagens  
Class toxic aspects of mutagens in 571.95; class mutagenesis, radiogenetics in 572.838
- .544 †Breeding patterns  
Class here inbreeding
- .549 †Mutation  
Class biochemistry of mutation (mutagenesis) in 572.838
- .58 †Population genetics  
Class here ecological genetics, gene pools, role of populations as vehicles of evolution  
Class role of species in evolution in 576.86; class comprehensive works on population biology in 577.88
- .8 †Evolution**  
Including homoplasmy  
Class creationism in 231.7652  
*For evolution of microorganisms, see 579.138; for evolution of plants, see 581.38; for evolution of animals, see 591.38. For evolution of a specific internal process or structure, see the process or structure, e.g., molecular evolution 572.838, evolution of circulatory system 573.1*  
*See Manual at 231.7652 vs. 213, 500, 576.8; also at 576.8 vs. 560*
- .801 Philosophy and theory  
Do not use for theories; class in 576.82

- .82 †Theories of evolution  
 Including punctuated equilibrium  
 Class here Darwinism, natural selection  
 Class sexual selection in 591.562
- .827 †Lamarckian theories  
 Class here inheritance of acquired characteristics
- .83 †Origin of life  
 Including spontaneous generation  
 Class here conditions needed for life to begin, biochemistry of forms of life before achievement of full self-replication  
 Class comprehensive works on molecular evolution in 572.838
- .839 †Extraterrestrial life  
 Including theory of extraterrestrial origin of life on earth  
 Class here astrobiology  
 Class extraterrestrial civilization, extraterrestrial intelligence in 999  
*See also 571.0919 for space biology*
- .84 †Evolutionary cycles  
 Class here catastrophes, extinction, radiation
- .85 †Factors affecting evolution  
 Including symbiosis  
 Class here genotype-environment interaction  
 Class comprehensive works on symbiosis in 577.85  
*For role of genetics in evolution, see 576.5; for natural selection, see 576.82*
- .855 †Sexual factors  
 Class here evolution of sexes  
 Class sexual selection in 591.562
- .86 †Speciation  
 Class here role of species in evolution  
 Class role of populations in evolution in 576.58; class comprehensive works on species in 578.012
- .87 †Coevolution  
 Class symbiosis as a factor affecting evolution in 576.85

- .875 †Coevolution of flowering plants and insects  
 Class here coevolution of flowering plants with insect-like pollinators

- .88 †Phylogeny

## 577 Ecology

Including ecotones

Class here biomes, ecosystems, terrestrial ecology

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by \* as follows:

01–08 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 578.01–578.08, e.g., microscopy 0282

09 History, geographic treatment, biography

[0914–0919] Areas, regions, places in general other than polar, temperate, tropical regions

Do not use; class in 577.3–577.7

Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 577 in the number coming last, e.g., grassland swamps 577.684 (not 577.4)

*For paleoecology, see 560.45; for ecology of microorganisms, fungi, algae, see 579.17; for plant ecology, see 581.7; for animal ecology, see 591.7*

*See Manual at 333.7–333.9 vs. 363.1, 363.73, 577; also at 577.3–577.7 vs. 578.73–578.77*

### SUMMARY

- 577.01–.09 Standard subdivisions
- .1 Specific ecosystem processes
  - .2 Specific factors affecting ecology
  - .3 Forest ecology
  - .4 Grassland ecology
  - .5 Ecology of miscellaneous environments
  - .6 Aquatic ecology
  - .7 Marine ecology
  - .8 Synecology and population biology

- .01–.08 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 578.01–578.08, e.g., microscopy 577.0282

- .09 History, geographic treatment, biography

[.0914–.0919] Areas, regions, places in general other than polar, temperate, tropical regions

Do not use; class in 577.3–577.7

#### .1 Specific ecosystem processes

- [.101–.109] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 577.01–577.09

†Add standard subdivisions as instructed under 576

- .13      \*Ecological bioenergetics  
           Class here energy budget, energy flow, physics in ecology
- .14      \*Environmental chemistry  
           Class here biogeochemical cycles, biogeochemistry  
           Class eutrophication in 577.63158; class comprehensive works on  
           biochemistry and biogeochemistry in 572  
           *For ecological bioenergetics, see 577.13; for environmental chemistry of  
           pollution, see 577.27*
- .144     \*Carbon cycle  
           Including carbon dioxide sinks
- .145     \*Nitrogen cycle
- .15      \*Biological productivity  
           Class here primary productivity  
           Class eutrophication in 577.63158
- .16      \*Food chains  
           Class here ecological pyramids, multitrophic reactions
- .18      \*Ecological succession  
           Including biological invasions  
           *See also 578.62 for nonnative species*

**.2      Specific factors affecting ecology**

*For effect of a specific kind of microorganism, fungi, algae on the ecology, see the organism in 579.2–579.8, plus notation 17 from instructions at 579.2–579.8, e.g., effect of red algae on ecology 579.8917; for effect of a specific kind of plant on the ecology, see the plant in 583–588, plus notation 17 from instructions at 583–588, e.g., effect of grasses on ecology 589.917; for effect of a specific kind of animal on the ecology, see the animal in 592–599, plus notation 17 from instructions at 592–599, e.g., effect of wolves on ecology 599.77317*

- [.201–.209]   Standard subdivisions  
           Do not use; class in 577.01–577.09

- .22      \*Biometeorology (Bioclimatology)  
           Including effect of droughts, micrometeorology  
           Class acclimatization and temperature adaptation in 578.42  
           *See also 571.95 for diseases caused by climate and weather*
- .23      \*Seasons  
           Class seasonal adaptation in 578.43

- .24 \*Fire ecology
- .26 \*Autecology  
*For autecology of a specific kind of microorganism, fungi, algae, see the kind of organism in 579.2–579.8, plus notation 17 from instructions at 579.2–579.8, e.g., autecology of fungi 579.517; for autecology of a specific kind of plant, see the kind of plant in 583–588, plus notation 17 from instructions at 583–588, e.g., autecology of orchids 584.417; for autecology of a specific kind of animal, see the kind of animal in 592–599, plus notation 17 from instructions at 592–599, e.g., autecology of insects 595.717*
- .27 \*Effects of humans on ecology  
 Class here effects of pollution on ecology  
 Including fragmented landscapes  
 Class comprehensive works on ecotoxicology, on environmental toxicology in 571.95; class interdisciplinary works on pollution in 363.73  
*For soil pollution, see 577.5727; for water pollution, see 577.627*  
*See also 304.28 for social consequences of pollution; also 577.55 for natural ecology of environments made by humans*  
*See Manual at 363.73 vs. 571.95, 577.27*
- .272 \*Engineering works  
 Including dams, land reclamation, roads
- .272 6 \*Thermal pollution  
 Thermal pollution is primarily about water pollution; class comprehensive works in 577.62726  
 Class interdisciplinary work on thermal pollution in 363.7394
- .273 \*Agricultural pollution  
 Class land reclamation in 577.272
- .274 \*War
- .275 Pollution by acids, by specific elements and groups of elements
- [.275 01–.275 09] Standard subdivisions  
 Do not use; class in 577.2701–577.2709
- .275 2 \*Pollution by acids  
 Class here acidification

.275 3–.275 7 Pollution by specific elements and groups of elements

Add to base number 577.275 the numbers following 546 in 546.3–546.7 for the element or group of elements only, e.g., influence of metals on ecology 577.2753, influence of mercury 577.275663; then to the result add standard subdivision notation as modified under 577.01–577.09, e.g., microscopy in study of pollution by metals 577.27530282

Class comprehensive works in 577.27

.276 \*Air pollution

Including pollution by gases contributing to greenhouse effect (global warming), to ozone layer depletion

Class here pollution by combustion gases

.277 \*Radioactive pollution

Class here radioecology

.278 \*Pollution by organic compounds

.279 \*Pesticide pollution

>

**577.3–577.6 Ecology of specific nonmarine environments**

Add to each subdivision identified by † as follows:

01–08 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 578.01–578.08, e.g., microscopy 0282

09 History, geographic treatment, biography

[0914–0919] Areas, regions, places in general other than polar, temperate, tropical regions

Do not use; class in 577.3–577.7

1 Specific ecosystem processes

Add to base number 1 the numbers following 577.1 in 577.13–577.18, e.g., food chains 16

2 Specific factors affecting ecology

Add to base number 2 the numbers following 577.2 in 577.22–577.27, e.g., effects of pollution 27; however, do not add notation 26 derived from 577.26 for autecology; class in number for the environment in 577.3–577.6 without use of notation 26

Class terrestrial ecology, comprehensive works on ecology in 577; class comprehensive works on biology of specific environments in 578.7

*See Manual at 577.3–577.7 vs. 578.73–578.77; also at 577.3–577.7 vs. 579–590*

**.3 †Forest ecology**

Class here ecology of exploited forests, of woodlands

*For forest wetland ecology, see 577.683*

\*Add standard subdivisions as instructed under 577

†Add as instructed under 577.3–577.6

- .309 13                    Torrid zone (Tropics)  
                                   Class tropical rain forest ecology in 577.34
- .34                    †Rain forest ecology  
                                   Including cloud forest ecology  
                                   Class here ecology of jungles, tropical rain forests
- [.340 913]                    Torrid zone (Tropics)  
                                   Do not use; class in 577.34
- .37                    †Taiga ecology  
                                   Class here ecology of boreal forests, taiga wetlands
- .38                    †Shrubland ecology  
                                   Class here chaparral, heath (dry moor) ecology, Mediterranean-type  
                                   ecosystems  
                                   Class bog ecology, comprehensive works on moor ecology in 577.687
- .4                    †**Grassland ecology**  
                                   Class here ecology of agricultural grasslands, of rangelands, of temperate zone  
                                   grasslands  
                                   Class alpine grassland ecology in 577.538  
                                   *See also 333.74 for management of grasslands by society*
- [.409 12]                    Temperate zones (Middle latitude zones)  
                                   Do not use; class in 577.4
- [.409 13]                    Torrid zone (Tropics)  
                                   Do not use; class in 577.48
- .44                    †Prairie ecology  
                                   Temperate zones (Middle latitude zones)  
                                   Do not use; class in 577.44
- .46                    †Meadow ecology  
                                   Temperate zones (Middle latitude zones)  
                                   Do not use; class in 577.46
- .48                    †Savanna ecology  
                                   Class here tropical grassland ecology
- [.480 913]                    Torrid zone (Tropics)  
                                   Do not use; class in 577.48

†Add as instructed under 577.3–577.6

**.5 Ecology of miscellaneous environments**

Only those named below

Including upland ecology

Class ecology of atmosphere in 579.175

*For ecology of a specific upland environment, see the environment, e.g., upland forest ecology 577.3*

[.501–.509] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 577.01–577.09

.51 †Coastal ecology

*For ecology of a specific environment in coastal zone, see the environment, e.g., coastal forest ecology 577.3, saltwater wetland ecology 577.69, sublittoral ecology 577.78*

.52 †Island ecology

Class island forest ecology in 577.3; class island grassland ecology in 577.4

.53 †Mountain ecology

Class mountain forest ecology in 577.3; class mountain grassland ecology other than alpine grassland ecology in 577.4

.538 †Alpine ecology

Ecology above timber line

Including alpine grassland ecology, paramo ecology

.54 †Desert ecology

Class here ecology in arid lands, in semiarid lands

*For sand dune ecology, see 577.583*

.55 †Ecology of environments made by humans

Including roadside ecology

Class here agricultural ecology

Class meadow ecology in 577.46

*For ecology of exploited forests, see 577.3; for ecology of agricultural grasslands, of rangelands, see 577.4; for urban ecology, see 577.56*

*See also 577.27 for effects of humans on ecology*

.554 †Garden and household ecology

Class here backyard ecology

Subdivisions are added for garden and household ecology together, for garden ecology alone

.555 †Hedgerow ecology

†Add as instructed under 577.3–577.6

- .56 †Urban ecology  
Class here suburban ecology
- .57 †Soil ecology  
Including rhizosphere  
Class sand dune ecology in 577.583
- .58 †Ecology of hostile land environments  
Not provided for elsewhere  
Including cliff ecology  
Class here extreme environments
- .583 †Sand dune ecology  
Desert or seashore dune ecology
- .584 †Cave ecology
- .586 †Tundra, permafrost, glacier, snow cover ecology  
Subdivisions are added for tundra, permafrost, glacier, snow cover ecology together; for tundra ecology alone; for permafrost ecology alone
- .6 †Aquatic ecology**  
Class here biological limnology, freshwater ecology  
Class interdisciplinary works on limnology in 551.48  
*For marine ecology, see 577.7*
- .63 †Lake and pond ecology  
Class here ecology of freshwater lagoons, reservoirs  
Subdivisions are added for lake and pond ecology together, for lake ecology alone  
Class comprehensive works on ecology of lakes, ponds, rivers, streams in 577.6; class comprehensive works on lagoons in 577.78
- .631 5 Biological productivity  
Number built according to instructions under 577.3–577.6
- .631 58 \*Eutrophication  
Class social measures to control eutrophication in 363.73946; class engineering measures to control eutrophication in 628.112. Class eutrophication of a specific environment with the environment in 577.6, plus notation 15 from instructions at 577.3–577.6, e.g., eutrophication of swamps 577.6815
- .636 †Pond ecology

\*Add standard subdivisions as instructed under 577

†Add as instructed under 577.3–577.6

- .639 †Salt lake ecology  
Class here ecology of inland seas
- .64 †River and stream ecology  
Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .66 †Floodplain ecology  
Class ecology of a specific environment on a floodplain with the specific environment, e.g., ecology of floodplain grasslands 577.4
- .68 †Wetland ecology  
Including riparian ecology  
Class here marsh, swamp ecology  
*For saltwater wetland ecology, see 577.69*
- .683 †Forest wetland ecology  
*For taiga, see 577.37*
- .684 †Grass wetland ecology
- .687 †Peat bog ecology  
Class here bog, peatland, wet moor ecology; comprehensive works on moor ecology  
*For heath (dry moor) ecology, see 577.38*
- .69 †Saltwater wetland and seashore ecology  
Class here ecology of coastal wetlands, salt and tide marshes  
Subdivisions are added for saltwater wetland and seashore ecology together, for saltwater wetland ecology alone
- .694 †Sea grass wetland ecology
- .697 †Forest saltwater wetland ecology
- [.697 091 3] Torrid zone (Tropics)  
Do not use; class in 577.698
- .698 †Mangrove swamp ecology  
Class here tropical saltwater wetland forest ecology
- .699 †Seashore ecology  
Including ecology of rock pools, sea caves, tidal flats, tide pools  
*For sand dune ecology, see 577.583*

†Add as instructed under 577.3–577.6

**.7 Marine ecology**

Class here saltwater ecology

Class comprehensive works on marine biology in 578.77

*For salt lake ecology, see 577.639; for saltwater wetland and seashore ecology, see 577.69*

*See Manual at 577.3–577.7 vs. 578.73–578.77; also at 577.3–577.7 vs. 579–590*

**.701–.708 Standard subdivisions**

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 578.01–578.08, e.g., microscopy in marine ecology 577.70282

**.709 History, geographic treatment, biography**

[.709 162] Oceans and seas

Do not use; class in 577.7

[.709 163–.709 165] Atlantic, Pacific, Indian Oceans

Do not use; class in 577.73–577.75

**.71–.72 Specific ecosystem processes; specific factors affecting marine ecology**

Add to base number 577.7 the numbers following 577 in 577.1–577.2, e.g., marine food chains 577.716, marine pollution 577.727; however, for autecology, see 577.7

**.73–.75 Ecology of specific oceans and seas**

Add to base number 577.7 the numbers following —16 in notation 163–165 from Table 2, e.g., Atlantic Ocean ecology 577.73; then add 0 and to the result add the numbers following 577 in 577.01–577.2, e.g., food chains in Atlantic Ocean 577.73016; however, for Sargasso Sea ecology, see 577.76362

*For Antarctic Ocean, see 577.709167*

**> 577.76–577.79 Specific kinds of marine environments**

Add to each subdivision identified by ‡ as follows:

01–08 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 578.01–578.08, e.g., microscopy 0282

09 History, geographic treatment, biography

[09162] Oceans and seas

Do not use; class in base number

[09163–09165] Atlantic, Pacific, Indian Oceans

Do not use; class in 3–5

1–5 Specific ecosystem processes; specific factors affecting marine ecology; ecology of specific oceans and seas

Add to base number the numbers following 577.7 in 577.71–577.75, e.g., food chains 16, pollution 27, the environment in Atlantic Ocean 3

Class comprehensive works in 577.7

- .76 ‡Surface regions  
 Class here ecology of plankton  
*For freshwater plankton ecology, see 577.6*
- .763 62 Sargasso Sea  
 Number built according to instructions under 577.76–577.79
- .77 ‡Marine benthic ecology  
 Relating to floor of oceans and seas  
 Class benthic ecology of abyssal, bathyal, hadal zones in 577.79
- .78 ‡Nearshore ecology  
 Including saltwater lagoons, comprehensive works on lagoons  
 Class here sublittoral ecology  
*For freshwater lagoons, see 577.63; for saltwater wetland and seashore ecology, see 577.69*
- .786 ‡Estuarine ecology
- .789 ‡Reef ecology  
 Class here coral reef ecology
- .79 ‡Deep sea ecology  
 Including ecology of bathyal and hadal zones  
 Class here ecology of abyssal zone
- .799 Hydrothermal vent ecology
- .8 Synecology and population biology**  
 Standard subdivisions are added for synecology and population biology together, for synecology alone  
 Class here ecological aspects of sociobiology, animal-plant relationships  
 Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by † as follows:  
 01–08 Standard subdivisions  
 Notation from Table 1 as modified under 578.01–578.08, e.g.,  
 microscopy 0282  
 09 History, geographic treatment, biography  
 Class ecological succession in 577.18; class rhizosphere in 577.57; class behavioral aspects of sociobiology in 591.5; class predation in 591.53; class comprehensive works on synecology of a specific environment in 577.3–577.7; class interdisciplinary works on sociobiology in 304.5. Class a general relationship between a small taxonomic group and a larger taxonomic group with the smaller group, e.g., plant-microbial relationships 579.178 (*not* 581.78), relationships between mushrooms and dicotyledons 579.6178 (*not* 583.178), between ferns and flowering plants 587.3178 (*not* 581.78)

‡Add as instructed under 577.76–577.79

- .801–.808      Standard subdivisions  
                     Notation from Table 1 as modified under 578.01–578.08, e.g.,  
                     microscopy in study of synecology 577.80282
- .809              History, geographic treatment, biography
- .82                †Ecological communities  
                     Including ecological niches  
                     Class biomes in 577. Class plant associations characteristic of a specific  
                     environment with the environment in 577.3–577.7, e.g., prairie grass  
                     associations 577.44
- .83                †Competition
- .85                †Symbiosis  
                     Class symbiosis as a factor affecting evolution in 576.85; class symbiosis in  
                     the sense limited to mutually beneficial relationships in 577.852
- .852              †Mutualism  
                     Including commensalism
- .857              †Parasitism  
                     Class parasites in 578.65; class pathology of parasitism, comprehensive  
                     works on parasitism in 571.999  
                     When classifying parasitism of specific kinds of organisms in 579 or  
                     580–590, prefer the number for the parasite. Emphasis on the host  
                     organism usually indicates that the work should be classed as a disease in  
                     571.999
- .88                †Population biology  
                     Class here population dynamics  
                     *See also 576.58 for population genetics*

†Add standard subdivisions as instructed under 577.8

## 578 Natural history of organisms and related subjects

Standard subdivisions are added for natural history of organisms and related subjects together, for natural history of organisms alone

Class here descriptive biology, specific nontaxonomic kinds of organisms, comprehensive works on general and external biological phenomena, comprehensive works on taxonomic biology

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by \* as follows:

01–08 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 578.01–578.08, e.g.,  
microscopy 0282

09 History, geographic treatment, biography

*For internal biological processes of specific kinds of organisms, see 571–575; for genetics and evolution, see 576; for ecology, see 577; for natural history of microorganisms, fungi, algae, see 579; for natural history of plants, see 580; for natural history of animals, see 590*

*See Manual at 578 vs. 304.2, 508, 910*

.012

### Classification

Including chemotaxonomy, cladistic analysis, cytotaxonomy, numerical taxonomy, species

Class here systematics, taxonomy

Class speciation in 576.86; class taxonomic nomenclature in 578.014; class comprehensive works on taxonomic biology in 578

.02

### Miscellany

.028

### Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 570.28, e.g., microscopy in descriptive biology 578.0282

.028 8

### Maintenance and repair

Do not use for preservation of biological specimens; class in 578.0752

.07

### Education, research, related topics

.073

### Collections and exhibits of living organisms

Class here history and description, guidebooks; bioparks

Add to base number 578.073 notation 1–9 from Table 2 for area in which collections, exhibits are found, e.g., collections of living plants and animals in China 578.07351

.074

### Museums, collections, exhibits

Do not use for collections and exhibits of living organisms; class in 578.073

.075

### Museum activities and services

.075 2

### Preserving biological specimens

.09

### History, geographic treatment, biography

- [.091 4--091 9] Areas, regions, places in general other than polar, temperate, tropical regions  
Do not use; class in 578.73–578.77
- .099 9 Extraterrestrial worlds  
Class extraterrestrial life in 576.839
- .4 \*Adaptation**  
Class here organisms illustrating specific kinds of adaptation  
Class adaptation of miscellaneous nontaxonomic kinds of organisms in 578.6
- .41 \*Size, weight, shape of organisms
- .42 \*Acclimatization and temperature adaptation  
Standard subdivisions are added for acclimatization and temperature adaptation together, for acclimatization alone  
Including phenology  
Class climate and weather as factors influencing ecology in 577.22  
*For seasonal adaptation, see 578.43*
- .43 \*Seasonal adaptation  
Class seasonal variation as a factor influencing ecology in 577.23
- .46 \*Reproductive adaptation  
Class reproductive physiology in 571.8
- .47 \*Protective adaptation, color  
Standard subdivisions are added for protective adaptation and color together, for protective adaptation alone  
Including mimicry  
Class color of a specific adaptation with the adaptation, e.g., color of reproductive adaptation 578.46  
*For camouflage, see 591.472*
- .6 \*Miscellaneous nontaxonomic kinds of organisms**  
Not provided for elsewhere  
Class here economic biology
- .62 \*Nonnative species  
Class here alien, exotic, introduced, invasive, naturalized species
- .63 \*Beneficial organisms  
*See Manual at 630 vs. 579–590, 641.3*

\*Add standard subdivisions as instructed under 578

.65 \*Harmful organisms

Including parasites

When classifying parasites under a specific kind of organism in 579 or 580–590, prefer number for the parasite. Emphasis on host organism usually indicates that the work should be classed as a disease in 571.999

.68 \*Rare and endangered species

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Including recently extinct species

.7 **Organisms characteristic of specific kinds of environments**

Class here biology of specific kinds of environments

Class specific kinds of adaptation characteristic of specific kinds of environment in 578.4; class miscellaneous nontaxonomic kinds of organisms characteristic of specific kinds of environments in 578.6

*For ecology of specific kinds of environments, see 577*

[.701–.709] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 578.01–578.09

.73–.75 Specific kinds of nonaquatic environments

Add to base number 578.7 the numbers following 577 in 577.3–577.5 for the environment only, e.g., organisms characteristic of grasslands 578.74; then to the result add standard subdivisions as instructed under 578.01–578.09, e.g., collections of living grassland plants and animals 578.74073

Class comprehensive works on terrestrial environments in 578

*For space biology, see 571.0919; for extraterrestrial life, see 576.839*

*See Manual at 577.3–577.7 vs. 578.73–578.77*

.76–.77 Aquatic environments

Add to base number 578.7 the numbers following 577 in 577.6–577.7 for the environment only, e.g., marine organisms, marine biology 578.77; then to the result add standard subdivisions as instructed under 578.01–578.09, e.g., collections of living marine plants and animals 578.77073

*See Manual at 577.3–577.7 vs. 578.73–578.77; also at 578.76–578.77 vs. 551.46, 551.48*

## 579 Natural history of microorganisms, fungi, algae

Standard subdivisions are added for microorganisms, fungi, algae together; for microorganisms alone

Class here microbiology, Protista, protophytes, Thallobionta (Thallophyta); descriptive biology of microorganisms, fungi, algae; taxonomic biology of microorganisms, fungi, algae; comprehensive works on biology of microorganisms, fungi, algae; interdisciplinary works on microorganisms, fungi, algae

*For internal biological processes of microorganisms, fungi, algae, see 571.29.*

*For a specific aspect of microorganisms, fungi, algae, see the aspect, e.g., cooking mushrooms 641.658*

*See Manual at 577.3–577.7 vs. 579–590; also at 579–590; also at 579–590 vs. 571–575; also at 630 vs. 579–590, 641.3*

### SUMMARY

- |                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| 579.01–.09      | <b>Standard subdivisions</b>  |
| .1              | <b>Specific topics in natural history of microorganisms, fungi, algae</b>                                 |
| .2              | <b>Viruses and subviral organisms</b>   |
| .3              | <b>Prokaryotes</b>  |
| .4              | <b>Protozoa</b>   |
| .5              | <b>Fungi</b>  |
| .6              | <b>Mushrooms</b>  |
| .7              | <b>Lichens</b>  |
| .8              | <b>Algae</b>  |
| .01–.08         | <b>Standard subdivisions</b>  |
|                 | Notation from Table 1 as modified under 578.01–578.08, e.g., collections of living microorganisms 579.073 |
| .09             | <b>History, geographic treatment, biography</b>   |
|                 | <i>For history, geographic treatment, biography in specific kinds of environment, see 579.17</i>          |
| [.091 4–.091 9] | <b>Areas, regions, places in general other than polar, temperate, tropical regions</b>                    |
|                 | Do not use; class in 579.17   |

**.1 Specific topics in natural history of microorganisms, fungi, algae**

Class here specific nontaxonomic kinds of organisms

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by † as follows:

- 01–08 Standard subdivisions  
Notation from Table 1 as modified under 578.01–578.08, e.g.,  
microscopy 0282
- 09 History, geographic treatment, biography

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., beneficial marine microorganisms 579.163 (*not* 579.177):

Miscellaneous nontaxonomic kinds of organisms	579.16
Adaptation	579.14
Genetics and evolution	579.13
Organisms characteristic of specific environments, ecology	579.17

Class a specific topic in natural history of microorganisms, fungi, algae with respect to a specific taxonomic group with the group, plus notation 1 as instructed under 579.2–579.8, e.g., useful fungi 579.5163

## [.101–.109] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 579.01–579.09

## .13 †Genetics and evolution

## .135 †Genetics

Class here works on genetic constitution of microorganisms, fungi, algae that elucidate their total function

Class experimental works on genetics of microorganisms, fungi, algae; comprehensive works on genetics in 576.5

*For biochemical genetics in microorganisms, fungi, algae, see 572.829*

## .138 †Evolution

Class here phylogeny

## .14 †Adaptation

## .141–.147 Specific kinds of adaptation

Add to base number 579.14 the numbers following 578.4 in 578.41–578.47, e.g., seasonal adaptation 579.143

## .16 †Miscellaneous nontaxonomic kinds of organisms

Not provided for elsewhere

Including nonnative, rare, endangered species

Class here economic microbiology

Class food microbiology in 664.001579

†Add standard subdivisions as instructed under 579.1

- .163 †Beneficial organisms  
Including edible organisms
- .165 †Harmful organisms  
Class here pathogenic and poisonous organisms  
*See Manual at 579.165 vs. 616.9041*
- .17 Ecology, organisms characteristic of specific environments  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
Class here autecology, biology of specific environments  
Class aerial microorganisms, ecology of atmosphere in 579.175
- .170 1–.170 8 Standard subdivisions  
Notation from Table 1 as modified under 578.01–578.08, e.g.,  
microscopy in study of ecology of microorganisms 579.170282
- .170 9 History, geographic treatment, biography
- [.170 914–.170 919] Areas, regions, places in general other than polar, temperate,  
tropical regions  
Do not use; class in 579.173–579.177
- .171–.178 Specific topics in ecology, specific environments  
Add to base number 579.17 the numbers following 577 in 577.1–577.8,  
e.g., effect of pollution on microorganisms 579.1727, marine  
microorganisms, marine botany 579.177, effect of pollution on marine  
microorganisms 579.17727  
Class comprehensive works on terrestrial microorganisms, fungi, algae in  
579
- .175 Ecology of miscellaneous environments  
Number built according to instructions under 579.171–579.178  
Including aerial microorganisms, ecology of atmosphere

†Add standard subdivisions as instructed under 579.1

> **579.2–579.8 Specific taxonomic groups of microorganisms, fungi, algae**

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by \* as follows:

- 01–08 Standard subdivisions  
Notation from Table 1 as modified under 578.01–578.08, e.g., collections of living organisms 073
- 09 History, geographic treatment, biography
- [0914–0919] Areas, regions, places in general other than polar, temperate, tropical regions  
Do not use; class in 173–176
- 1 General topics of natural history of microorganisms, fungi, algae  
Add to base number 1 the numbers following 579.1 in 579.13–579.17, e.g., beneficial organisms 163

Class comprehensive works in 579

*For internal biological processes of specific kinds of microorganisms, fungi, algae, see 571–575*

**.2 \*Viruses and subviral organisms**

Class here animal viruses, vertebrate viruses, virology

Subdivisions are added for viruses and subviral organisms together, for viruses alone

*See also 579.327 for rickettsias*

**.23 \*Invertebrate viruses**

*For specific kinds of invertebrate viruses, see 579.24–579.25*

> **579.24–579.25 Specific kinds of viruses**

Class comprehensive works in 579.2

*For specific kinds of bacterial viruses, see 579.26; for specific kinds of fungal viruses, see 579.27; for specific kinds of plant viruses, see 579.28*

*See Manual at 579.24–579.25*

**.24 \*DNA viruses**

**.243 \*Double-stranded, enveloped DNA viruses**

**.243 2 \*Poxviridae**

**.243 4 \*Herpesviridae**

**.243 6 \*Baculoviridae**

**.244 \*Double-stranded, nonenveloped DNA viruses**

**.244 3 \*Adenoviridae**

\*Add as instructed under 579.2–579.8

- .244 5        \*Papovaviridae  
                  Including Papillomavirus, Polyomavirus, SV40
- .247        \*Single-stranded, nonenveloped DNA viruses  
                  Class here Parvoviridae
- .25        \*RNA viruses
- .254        \*Double-stranded, nonenveloped RNA viruses  
                  Including Reoviridae
- .256        \*Single-stranded, enveloped RNA viruses  
                  Including Arenaviridae, Filoviridae, Paramyxoviridae
- .256 2       \*Togaviridae  
                  Class here arboviruses
- .256 6       \*Rhabdoviridae  
                  Including Lyssavirus
- .256 9       \*Retroviridae  
                  Class here oncoviruses, comprehensive works on oncogenic viruses  
                  *For a specific nonretrovirus oncogenic virus, see the virus, e.g.,  
                  oncogenic papovaviruses 579.2445*
- .257        \*Single-stranded, nonenveloped RNA viruses
- .257 2       \*Picornaviridae  
                  Including Poliovirus
- .26        \*Bacterial viruses (Bacteriophages)
- .27        \*Fungal viruses
- .28        \*Plant viruses
- .29        \*Subviral organisms  
                  Including prions  
                  Class here viroids
- .3        \*Prokaryotes**  
                  Variant names: Monera, Schizomycetes, Schizophyta, bacteria  
                  Class here bacteriology, Eubacteriales, comprehensive works on bacteria and  
                  viruses  
                  Class bacteria culture for biological research in 571.638293  
                  *For viruses, see 579.2*  
                  *See Manual at 579.3*

\*Add as instructed under 579.2–579.8

- .314           Adaptation  
                   Number built according to instructions under 579.2–579.8
- .314 9           †Anaerobic bacteria
- .32           Minor kinds of bacteria  
                   Not provided for elsewhere  
                   Including chemolithotrophic bacteria, colorless sulfur bacteria,  
                   Myxobacteria, Spirochetes  
                   Class comprehensive works on minor kinds of bacteria in 579.3  
                   *See Manual at 579.3*
- [.320 1–.320 9]   Standard subdivisions  
                   Do not use; class in 579.301–579.309
- .321           \*Archaeobacteria  
                   Including methanogenic bacteria, Halobacteriaceae, halophilic bacteria
- .323           \*Aerobic-microaerophilic, motile, helical-vibrioid gram-negative  
                   bacteria  
                   Including Aquaspirillum, Azospirillum
- .325           \*Anaerobic gram-negative straight, curved, and helical rods  
                   Including Bacteroides
- .327           \*Rickettsias and Chlamydias
- .328           \*Mycoplasmas  
                   Variant names: Mollicutes, Tenericutes
- .33           \*Gram-negative aerobic rods and cocci  
                   Including Acetobacter, Brucella, Legionella, Neisseria  
                   *For Halobacteriaceae, see 579.321*
- .332           \*Pseudomonas  
                   Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual  
                   species
- .334           \*Rhizobium  
                   Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual  
                   species
- .34           \*Facultatively anaerobic gram-negative rods  
                   Including Erwinia, Pasteurella, Photobacterium, Shigella, Yersinia  
                   Class here Enterobacteriaceae

\*Add as instructed under 579.2–579.8

†Add standard subdivisions as instructed under 579.1

- .342      \*Escherichia  
                  Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species
- .344      \*Salmonella  
                  Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species
- .35        \*Gram-positive cocci  
                  Class here lactic acid bacteria  
                  *For Lactobacillus, see 579.37*
- .353      \*Staphylococcus  
                  Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species
- .355      \*Streptococcus  
                  Class here Lactococcus (lactic acid Streptococcus)  
                  Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species
- .36        \*Endospore-forming gram-positive rods and cocci
- .362      \*Bacillus  
                  Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species
- .364      \*Clostridium  
                  Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species
- .37        \*Actinomycetes and related bacteria  
                  Including Frankia, Lactobacillus, Listeria, Nocardia  
                  Subdivisions are added for Actinomycetes and related bacteria together, for Actinomycetes alone  
                  *See Manual at 579.3*
- .373      \*Irregular, nonsporing, gram-positive rods  
                  Including Arthrobacter, Bifidobacterium, Corynebacterium
- .374      \*Mycobacteria
- .378      \*Streptomycetes and related genera  
                  Class here Streptomyces

- .38      **\*Anoxygenic phototrophic bacteria**  
           Including green bacteria  
           Class here purple bacteria; comprehensive works on photosynthetic bacteria,  
           on sulfur bacteria  
           *For colorless sulfur bacteria, see 579.32; for oxygenic photosynthetic  
           bacteria, see 579.39*
- .385     **\*Purple nonsulfur bacteria**  
           Including Rhodobacter, Rhodospseudomonas
- .39      **\*Cyanobacteria and Prochlorales**  
           Oxygenic photosynthetic bacteria  
           Variant name for Cyanobacteria: Cyanophyta, blue-green algae  
           Including Chroococcales, Nostocales, Oscillatoriales  
           Subdivisions are added for Cyanobacteria and Prochlorales together, for  
           Cyanobacteria alone
- .4      \*Protozoa**  
           Class here Sarcomastigophora  
           *For a specific group or organism that may be regarded as either protozoa or  
           algae, see the group or organism in 579.8, e.g., Euglenophyta (Euglenida)  
           579.84*
- 
- >        579.42–579.45 Sarcomastigophora  
           Class comprehensive works in 579.4
- .42     **\*Zoomastigophorea (Zooflagellates)**  
           Class phytoflagellates, comprehensive works on flagellates in 579.82
- .43     **\*Rhizopodea**  
           Including Arcellinida  
           Class here Sarcodina  
           *For Foraminifera, see 579.44*
- .432    **\*Amoebida (Amoebas)**
- .44     **\*Foraminifera**
- .45     **\*Actinopoda**  
           Class here Radiolaria  
           The term Radiolaria is sometimes limited to one of several subtaxa of  
           Actinopoda
- .47     **\*Sporozoa**

\*Add as instructed under 579.2–579.8

- .48      \***Cnidospora**  
           Including Microsporida
- .49      \***Ciliophora (Ciliates)**  
           Class here Ciliata
- .495     \***Hymenostomatida**  
           Including Paramecium
- .5      \*Fungi**  
           Class here Eumycophyta (True fungi), filamentous fungi, mycology  
           Class comprehensive works on molds, on mildew in 579.53  
           *For lichens, see 579.7; for comprehensive works on mushrooms, on  
           macrofungi, see 579.6*
- .52      \***Myxomycotina**  
           Variant names: Mycetozoa, Myxomycetes, Myxomycophyta, Myxomycota,  
           slime molds  
           Including Acrasia (cellular slime molds), Physarales, Stemonitales,  
           Trichiales  
           Class here Myxogastromycetidae  
           *For Plasmodiophoromycetes, see 579.53*
- 
- >        579.53–579.59 Eumycophyta (True fungi)  
           Class comprehensive works in 579.5
- .53      \***Miscellaneous fungi**  
           Not provided for elsewhere  
           Including Chytridiomycetes, Hyphochytridiomycetes,  
           Plasmodiophoromycetes, Trichomycetes, Zygomycetes; Rhizopus (bread  
           molds), uniflagellate molds  
           Class here Mastigomycotina, Phycomycetes; comprehensive works on  
           molds, on mildew  
           Class slime molds in 579.52  
           *For Oomycetes, see 579.54; for ascomycete molds and mildew, see  
           579.56*
- .54      \***Oomycetes**  
           Former name: Biflagellates
- .542     \***Saprolegniales**

- .546        \*Peronosporales (Downy mildew)  
                  Including Phytophthora
- .55         \*Deuteromycotina  
                  Variant names: Deuteromycetes, Fungi Imperfecti  
                  Including Coelomycetes, Hyphomycetes; Melanconiales, Moniliales,  
                  Mycelia Sterilia, Sphaeropsidales  
                  When sexual reproduction of some members of a specific genus of imperfect  
                  fungi has been established with a specific kind of sexually reproducing  
                  fungi, class the genus with the kind of the sexually reproducing fungi,  
                  e.g., *Penicillium* 579.5654, *Fusarium* 579.5677. If, however, members of  
                  the genus are assigned to different families of fungi, class them here, e.g.,  
                  *Septoria* 579.55
- .56         \*Ascomycotina (Ascomycetes)  
                  *For Discomycetes, see 579.57*
- .562        \*Hemiascomycetes  
                  Including Protomycetales, Taphrinales; comprehensive works on  
                  Saccharomycetaceae, on yeasts  
                  Class here Endomycetales  
                  *For Saccharomyces (common yeasts), see 579.563. For a specific  
                  kind of yeasts not in family Saccharomycetaceae, see the kind, e.g.,  
                  basidiomycete yeasts 579.59*
- .563        \*Saccharomyces (Common yeasts)  
                  Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual  
                  species  
                  Class comprehensive works on Saccharomycetaceae in 579.562
- .564        \*Loculoascomycetes  
                  Including Asterinales, Dothideales, Melanommatales, Mycrothyriales,  
                  Myriangiales, Pleosporales
- .565        \*Plectomycetes  
                  Including Gymnascales, Microascales, Onygenales  
                  Class here Eurotiales
- .565 4      \*Penicillium  
                  Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual  
                  species
- .565 7      \*Aspergillus  
                  Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual  
                  species

- .567        \*Pyrenomycetes  
              Including Chaetomiales, Clavicipitales, Diaporthales, Erysiphales,  
              Laboulbeniales, Sordariales, Xylariales
- .567 7        \*Hypocreales  
              Including Fusarium, Nectria, Trichoderma
- .57         \*Discomycetes (Cup fungi)  
              Including Helotiales, Ostropales, Phacidiales, Tuberales (truffles)
- .578         \*Pezizales  
              Including Ascobolus, morels, saddle fungi
- .59         \*Basidiomycotina (Basidiomycetes)  
              Including Exobasidiales, Tremellales (jelly fungi); basidiomycete yeasts  
              Class here Heterobasidiomycetes, Homobasidiomycetes  
              *For Agaricales, comprehensive works on mushrooms, see 579.6*
- .592         \*Uredinales (Rusts)
- .593         \*Ustilaginales (Smuts)
- .597         \*Polyporales  
              Variant name: Aphyllophorales  
              Including club, coral, pore (bracket, shelf) fungi
- .599         \*Gasteromycetes  
              Including Lycoperdales (puffballs), Nidulariales (bird's-nest fungi),  
              Phallales (stinkhorns)
- .6         \*Mushrooms**  
              Including Boletaceae (boletes), Hydnaceae (spine fungi), Thelephoraceae  
              (leather fungi)  
              Class here Agaricales (Agaricaceae, gill fungi), macrofungi, toadstools  
              Class comprehensive works on Basidiomycotina in 579.59  
              *For mushrooms, macrofungi of a specific order other than Agaricales, see  
              the order in 579.5, e.g., morels 579.578*
- .616 3        Beneficial mushrooms  
              Number built according to instructions under 579.2–579.8
- .616 32       Edible mushrooms
- .7         \*Lichens**

\*Add as instructed under 579.2–579.8

- .8 \*Algae**  
 Class here algology, phycology  
*For blue-green algae, see 579.39; for lichens, see 579.7*
- .82 \*Minor divisions of algae**  
 Including Chloromonadophyta, Cryptophyta, Xanthophyta (yellow-green algae)  
 Class here Phytomastigophorea (phytoflagellates); comprehensive works on flagellates, on organisms that may be regarded as either protozoa or algae  
*For a specific kind of flagellate, see the kind, e.g., Zoomastigophorea 579.42, Oomycetes 579.54, dinoflagellates 579.87; for a specific organism that may be regarded as either protozoa or algae, see the kind in 579.8, e.g., euglenoids 579.84*
- .83 \*Chlorophyta (Green algae)**  
 Including Prasinophyceae; Chaetophorales, Siphonocladales  
 Class here Chlorophyceae, green seaweeds
- .832 \*Volvocales**  
 Including Chlamydomonadaceae, Dunaliellaceae
- .833 \*Chlorococcales**
- .835 \*Caulerpales**  
 Variant names: Bryopodales, Codiales, Siphonales
- .836 \*Dasycladales**  
 Including Acetabularia
- .837 \*Zygnematales**  
 Variant name: Conjugales  
 Including Desmidiaceae (desmids)
- .839 \*Charophyceae**  
 Class here Charales, stoneworts
- .84 \*Euglenophyta**  
 Variant names: Euglenida, euglenoids
- .85 \*Bacillariophyceae (Diatoms)**
- .86 \*Chrysophyta (Golden algae)**  
 Including Haptophyceae  
 Class here Chrysophyceae

- .87      \*Pyrrophyta (Dinoflagellates)  
           Including Desmophyceae, Pfiesteriaceae, red tide  
           Class here Dinophyceae
- .88      \*Phaeophyta (Brown algae)  
           Class here Phaeophyceae, comprehensive works on seaweeds  
           *For green seaweeds, see 579.83; for red seaweeds, see 579.89*
- .887     \*Laminariales  
           Including Macrocystis, Saccorhiza, Undaria  
           Class here comprehensive works on kelps  
           *For kelps of order Fucales, see 579.888*
- .888     \*Fucales  
           Including Ascophyllum, Fucus, Sargassum  
           Class here rockweeds
- .89      \*Rhodophyta (Red algae)  
           Including Bangiophycideae, red seaweeds  
           Class here Florideophycideae, Rhodophyceae  
           Class red tide in 579.87

&gt;

## 580–590 Natural history of plants and animals

Class comprehensive works on biology of plants and animals in 570; class comprehensive works on natural history of plants and animals in 578

*For internal biological processes of specific kinds of plants and animals, see 571–575; for natural history of microorganisms, fungi, algae, see 579*

## 580 Plants

Class here botany; Embryophyta, vascular plants (tracheophytes), Spermatophyta (seed plants), Angiospermae (flowering plants); natural history of plants; descriptive biology of plants; taxonomic biology of plants; comprehensive works on biology of plants; interdisciplinary works on plants

Class interdisciplinary works on plants of agricultural importance in 630; class interdisciplinary works on food from plants in 641.303

*For paleobotany, see 561; for internal biological processes and structures of plants, see 571.2; for fungi, see 579.5; for algae, see 579.8. For a specific aspect of plants, see the aspect, e.g., plant cultivation 631.5*

*See Manual at 363 vs. 302–307, 333.7, 570–590, 600; also at 577.3–577.7 vs. 579–590; also at 579–590; also at 579–590 vs. 571–575; also at 580 vs. 582.13; also at 630 vs. 579–590, 641.3*

\*Add as instructed under 579.2–579.8

## SUMMARY

580.1–.9	<b>Standard subdivisions</b>
581	<b>Specific topics in natural history of plants</b>
582	<b>Plants noted for specific vegetative characteristics and flowers</b>
583	<b>Magnoliopsida (Dicotyledons)</b>
584	<b>Liliopsida (Monocotyledons)</b>
585	<b>Pinophyta (Gymnosperms)</b>
586	<b>Cryptogamia (Seedless plants)</b>
587	<b>Pteridophyta</b>
588	<b>Bryophyta</b>

### **.1–.6 Standard subdivisions**

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 578.01–578.06, e.g., microscopy of plants 580.282

### **.7 Education, research, related topics**

#### **.73 Collections and exhibits of living plants**

Class here botanical gardens

Add to base number 580.73 notation 1–9 from Table 2 for area in which collections and exhibits are found, e.g., botanical gardens of Germany 580.7343

#### **.74 Museums, collections, exhibits**

Do not use for collections and exhibits of living organisms; class in 580.73

Class here herbariums, collections of dried plants

#### **.75 Museum activities and services**

#### **.752 Preserving botanical specimens**

### **.8 Groups of people**

### **.9 History, geographic treatment, biography**

[.914–.919] Areas, regions, places in general other than polar, temperate, tropical regions

Do not use; class in 581.73–581.76

#### **.93–.99 Botany by specific continents, countries, localities**

Class plants by specific continents, countries, localities in 581.9

## 581 Specific topics in natural history of plants

Class here specific nontaxonomic kinds of plants

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by † as follows:

- 01–08 Standard subdivisions
  - Notation from Table 1 as modified under 580.1–580.8, e.g., preservation of botanical specimens 0752
- 09 History, geographic treatment, biography

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., beneficial aquatic plants 581.63 (*not* 581.76):

Miscellaneous nontaxonomic kinds of plants	581.6
Adaptation	581.4
Genetics, evolution, age characteristics	581.3
Plant ecology, plants characteristic of specific environments	581.7
Plants by specific continents, countries, localities	581.9

Class a specific topic in natural history of plants with respect to a specific taxonomic group with the group, plus notation 1 from table under 583–588, e.g., useful monocotyledons 584.163

*For plants noted for specific vegetative characteristics and flowers, see 582*

### [.01–.09] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 580.1–580.9

### .3 †Genetics, evolution, age characteristics

Standard subdivisions are added for genetics, evolution, age characteristics together, for genetics and evolution alone

#### .35 †Genetics

Class here works on genetic constitution of plants that elucidate their total function

Class experimental works on plant genetics, comprehensive works on genetics in 576.5

*For biochemical genetics in plants, see 572.82*

#### .38 †Evolution

Class here phylogeny

#### .39 †Age characteristics

Class here age determination

### .4 †Adaptation

Class here plants noted for specific kinds of adaptation

#### .41 †Size, weight, shape

Including silhouettes

†Add standard subdivisions as instructed under 581

- .42 †Acclimatization and temperature adaptation  
 Standard subdivisions are added for acclimatization and temperature adaptation together, for acclimatization alone  
*For seasonal adaptation, see 581.43*
- .43 †Seasonal adaptation
- 
- > 581.46–581.49 Adaptation of specific parts of plants  
 Class comprehensive works in 581.4  
*For physiology of specific parts of plants, see 575*
- .46 †Reproductive adaptation  
 Including buds, stems specialized for reproduction  
*For comprehensive works on flowers and their adaptations, see 582.13*
- .464 †Fruits  
 Including nuts  
*For seeds, see 581.467*
- .467 †Seeds
- .47 †Protective adaptation, color  
 Subdivisions are added for protective adaptation and color together, for protective adaptation alone  
 Including mimicry, thorns  
 Class here bark  
 Class color of a specific adaptation with the adaptation, e.g., color of flowers 582.13
- .48 †Leaves and fronds  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
 Including tendrils
- .49 †Stems and roots
- .495 †Stems  
*For stems specialized for reproduction, see 581.46*
- .498 †Roots
- .6 †Miscellaneous nontaxonomic kinds of plants  
 Not provided for elsewhere  
 Class here economic botany  
 Class carnivorous plants in 583.75

†Add standard subdivisions as instructed under 581

- .62 †Nonnative plants  
Class here alien, exotic, introduced, invasive, naturalized plants
- .63 †Beneficial plants  
Class here herbs
- .632 †Edible plants
- .634 †Medicinal plants
- .636 †Plants of industrial and technological value  
Other than medicinal plants
- .65 †Harmful plants
- .652 †Weeds  
Class interdisciplinary works on weeds in 632.5
- .657 †Allergenic plants
- .659 †Poisonous plants
- .68 †Rare and endangered plants  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
Including recently extinct species
- .7 Plant ecology, plants characteristic of specific environments**  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
Class here autecology, botany of specific environments  
Class plants characteristic of specific environments noted for specific vegetative characteristics and flowers, ecology of such plants in 582
- .701–.708 Standard subdivisions  
Notation from Table I as modified under 580.1–580.8, e.g., microscopy 581.70282
- .709 History, geographic treatment, biography
- [.709 14–.709 19] Areas, regions, places in general other than polar, temperate, tropical regions  
Do not use; class in 581.73–581.76
- .71–.76 Specific topics in plant ecology, specific environments  
Add to base number 581.7 the numbers following 577 in 577.1–577.6, e.g., aquatic plants 581.76, aquatic gardens 581.76073  
Class marine botany in 579.177  
*For synecology and population biology, see 581.78*
- .78 †Synecology and population biology

.782–.788 Specific topics of synecology and population biology

Add to base number 581.78 the numbers following 577.8 in 577.82–577.88, e.g., parasitism 581.7857

**.9 Plants by specific continents, countries, localities**

Add to base number 581.9 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., plants in Argentina 581.982

**582 Plants noted for specific vegetative characteristics and flowers**

Class genetics and evolution, adaptation and parts other than flowers, miscellaneous kinds of plants noted for vegetative characteristics and flowers in 581

*For a specific taxonomic group of plants noted for either specific vegetative characteristics or flowers, see the group in 583–588, e.g., lilies noted for their flowers 584.3*

[.01–.09] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 580.1–580.9

**.1 Herbaceous and woody plants, plants noted for their flowers**

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by ‡ as follows:

01–08 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 580.1–580.8, e.g., botanical gardens 073

09 History, geographic treatment, biography

[0914–0919] Areas, regions, places in general other than polar, temperate, tropical regions

Do not use; class in 7

3–7 Specific topics of natural history of plants

Add the numbers following 581 in 581.3–581.7, e.g., genetics 35, seeds 467, rare and endangered plants 68, aquatic plants 76, aquatic gardens 76073

*See Manual at 635.9 vs. 582.1*

[.101–.109] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 580.1–580.9

**.12 ‡Herbaceous plants**

Including biennials

Class here annuals, forbs

Class herbaceous plants noted for their flowers in 582.13

*For herbaceous vines, see 582.189*

‡Add as instructed under 582.1

- .13 ‡Plants noted for their flowers  
 Class here wild flowers, interdisciplinary works on flowers  
 Class woody plants noted for their flowers in 582.16; class vines noted for their flowers in 582.18; class comprehensive works on Angiospermae (flowering plants) in 580  
*For physiology of flowers, see 575.6. For a specific aspect of flowers, see the aspect, e.g., flower gardening 635.9, flower arrangement 745.92*  
*See Manual at 580 vs. 582.13*
- .16 ‡Trees  
 Class here dendrology; comprehensive works on perennials, on woody plants  
 Class forest ecology in 577.3  
*For herbaceous perennials, see 582.12; for shrubs, see 582.17; for woody vines, see 582.18*
- .17 ‡Shrubs
- .18 ‡Vines  
 Class here woody vines
- .189 ‡Herbaceous vines

&gt;

### 583–588 Specific taxonomic groups of plants

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by \* as follows:

- 01–08 Standard subdivisions  
 Notation from Table 1 as modified under 580.1–580.8, e.g., collections of living plants 073
- 09 History, geographic treatment, biography  
 [0914–0919] Areas, regions, places in general other than polar, temperate, tropical regions  
 Do not use; class in 173–176
- 1 General topics of natural history of plants  
 Add to base number 1 the numbers following 581 in 581.3–581.7, e.g., aquatic plants 176

Class comprehensive works in 580

### 583 \*Magnoliopsida (Dicotyledons)

*See Manual at 583–585 vs. 600; also at 583–584*

\*Add as instructed under 583–588

‡Add as instructed under 582.1

## SUMMARY

- 583.2      **Magnoliidae**
- .3      **Ranunculidae**
- .4      **Hamamelididae**
- .5      **Caryophyllidae**
- .6      **Dilleniidae**
- .7      **Rosidae**
- .8      **Other orders of Rosidae**
- .9      **Asteridae**

.2      **\*Magnoliidae**

    Including Rafflesiales; Rafflesiaceae (Cytinaceae); monster flower

.22      **\*Magnoliales**

    Including Magnoliaceae (magnolia family), Annonaceae (custard apple family), Myristicaceae (nutmeg family), Winteraceae (Winter's bark family)

    Including cherimoya, cucumber tree, lancewoods, mace, michelias, papaws, tulip tree (yellow poplar), wild cinnamon

*See also 583.626 for papaws of family Caricaceae*

.23      **\*Laurales**

    Including Chloranthaceae, Hernandiaceae, Monimiaceae

    Including avocados, cinnamon, Oregon myrtle (California laurel), sassafras, sweet bay (bay laurel); comprehensive works on laurels

    Class here Lauraceae (laurel family)

    Class comprehensive works on myrtles in 583.765

*For laurels of Ericaceae family, see 583.66; for spurge laurel, see 583.67; for hedge laurels, see 583.72*

*See Manual at 579-590*

.25      **\*Piperales**

    Including Saururaceae (lizard's-tail family); black pepper, peperomias

    Class here Piperaceae (pepper family)

    Class peppers of Solanaceae family, comprehensive works on peppers in 583.952

.26      **\*Aristolochiales**

    Class here Aristolochiaceae (birthwort family)

- .29        **\*Nymphaeales**  
             Including Ceratophyllaceae (hornworts)  
             Class here Nymphaeaceae (water lilies)  
             Class Nelumbo in 583.3  
             *See also 588.3 for hornworts of subclass Anthocerotidae (horned liverworts)*
- .3         **\*Ranunculidae**  
             Including Illiciales, Nelumbonales (lotuses); magnolia vine, star anise
- .34        **\*Ranunculales (Ranales)**  
             Including Ranunculaceae (buttercup family), Berberidaceae (barberry family), Menispermaceae (moonseed family), Podophyllaceae  
             Including aconites, anemones, Christmas rose, clematises, columbines, delphiniums (larkspurs), hellebores, lesser celandine, mayapple (mayflower, mandrake), monkshoods (wolfsbanes)  
             *See also 583.952 for mandrakes of family Solanaceae*
- .35        **\*Papaverales (Rheadales)**  
             Including Papaveraceae (poppy family), Fumariaceae (fumitory family); bleeding hearts, bloodroot, celandines, Dutchman's breeches  
             Class Moringaceae in 583.64  
             *See also 583.34 for lesser celandine*
- .36        **\*Sarraceniales**  
             Class here Sarraceniaceae (New World pitcher plant family)  
             Class comprehensive works on carnivorous plants, on pitcher plants in 583.75
- .4         **\*Hamamelididae**
- .43        **\*Minor orders of Hamamelididae**  
             Including Balanopales (Balanopsidales), Barbeyales, Casuarinales (beefwood order), Cercidiphyllales (katsura tree), Didymelales, Eucommiales, Eupteleales, Leitneriales, Myricales (wax myrtle order), Trochodendrales  
             Including bayberries, candleberry, sweet gale (bog myrtle)  
             Class Jamaica bayberry, comprehensive works on myrtles in 583.765  
             *See also 583.93 for bog myrtle (buckbean)*

- .44      **\*Hamamelidales**  
           Including Platanaceae (sycamore family); ironwood, plane trees, sweet gums  
           Class here Hamamelidaceae (witch hazel family)  
           Class comprehensive works on ironwoods in 583.48
- .45      **\*Urticales**  
           Including Urticaceae (nettle family), Cannabaceae (hemp family), Moraceae  
           (mulberry family), Ulmaceae (elm family)  
           Including banyan, breadfruits, figs, hackberries, hops, marijuana, osage  
           orange, pileas, ramie (China grass plant), rubber plant (India rubber tree),  
           West Indian boxwood; comprehensive works on hemsps  
           *For hemsps of a specific family other than Cannabaceae, see the family,*  
           *e.g., aloe and sisil hemsps 584.352*  
           *See also 583.69 for boxwoods of family Buxaceae; also 583.96 for dead*  
           *nettles*
- .46      **\*Fagales**  
           Including Castaneoideae (chestnuts), Fagoideae (beeches), Quercoideae  
           (oaks); chinquapin, cork oak  
           Class here Fagaceae
- .48      **\*Betulales**  
           Including alders, filberts (hazelnuts), hornbeams; comprehensive works on  
           ironwoods  
           Class here Betulaceae (birch family)  
           *For ironwoods of a specific family other than Betulaceae, see the family,*  
           *e.g., ironwoods of family Rhamnaceae 583.86*
- .49      **\*Juglandales**  
           Including butternuts, hickories, pecans  
           Class here Juglandaceae (walnut family)
- .5       **\*Caryophyllidae**  
           Including Plumbaginales (leadwort order), Theligonales (Cynocrabales); sea  
           lavenders, thrifts
- .53      **\*Caryophyllales**  
           Including Caryophyllaceae (pink family), Aizoaceae (carpetweed family),  
           Amaranthaceae (amaranth family), Chenopodiaceae (goosefoot family),  
           Nyctaginaceae, Phytolaccaceae (pokeweed family), Portulacaceae (purslane  
           family)  
           Including beets, bougainvilleas, carnations, four-o'clock, ice plants (sea  
           figs), lithops (living stones), Madeira vine, spinach

- .56      **\*Cactales**  
           Class here Cactaceae (cactus family)
- .57      **\*Polygonales**  
           Including dock, rhubarbs, sorrel  
           Class here Polygonaceae (buckwheat family)
- .6      \*Dilleniidae**
- .62      **\*Miscellaneous orders of Dilleniidae**  
           Only those orders named here and below  
           Including Dilleniales, Paeoniales (peony order)
- .624     **\*Theales**  
           Including Theaceae (Ternstroemiaceae, tea family), Clusiaceae  
           (Guttiferae), Dipterocarpaceae, Elatinaceae, Hypericaceae,  
           Marcgraviaceae, Ochnaceae  
           Including camellias, garcinias, mammee apple, mangosteen, *Stewartia*
- .625     **\*Violales**  
           Including Violaceae (violet family), Bixaceae (annatto tree), Cistaceae  
           (rockrose family), Flacourtiaceae; pansies  
           *See also 583.95 for African violets*
- .626     **\*Passiflorales**  
           Including Caricaceae (papaya family), Turneraceae; granadillas, maypop,  
           papaws  
           Class here Passifloraceae (passionflower family)  
           *See also 583.22 for papaws of family Annonaceae*
- .627     **\*Begoniales**  
           Class here Begoniaceae, begonias
- .628     **\*Tamaricales**  
           Including Fouquieriaceae (candlewood family); alkali heath, ocotillo  
           Class here Tamaricaceae (tamarisk family)
- .63      **\*Cucurbitales**  
           Including cucumbers, melons, pepos, pumpkins, squashes, watermelons  
           Class here Cucurbitaceae (gourd family)

## .64 \*Capparales

Former name: Capparidales

Including Capparaceae (caper family), Moringaceae, Resedaceae (mignonette family)

Including alyssums, cabbages, candytufts, cresses, crucifixion thorns, Nasturtium genus, radishes, rapes, rutabagas, shepherd's purse, spiderflowers, stocks (Matthiola), turnips, wallflowers, watercresses

Class here Brassicaceae (Cruciferae, mustard family)

*See also 583.76 for Brazilian spiderflowers; also 583.79 for nasturtiums of family Tropaeolaceae*

## .65 \*Salicales

Including Populus (poplars and aspens), cottonwoods

Class here Salicaceae (willow family), salix

*See also 583.22 for yellow poplar*

## .66 \*Ericales

Including Clethraceae (pepperbush family), Epacridaceae, Monotropaceae (Indian pipe family), Pyrolaceae, Saurauiceae

Including azaleas, blueberries, cranberries, crowberries, heather, huckleberries, kalmias, kiwi (Chinese gooseberry), mountain laurel, rhododendrons, sourwood, wintergreens

Class here Ericaceae (heath family)

Class comprehensive works on laurels in 583.23

## .67 \*Ebenales, Primulales, Diapensiales, Thymelaeales (mezereum order)

Including daphnes, galax, spurge laurel

## .674 \*Ebenales

Including Ebenaceae (ebony family), Sapotaceae, Styracaceae (storax family), Symplocaceae (sweetleaf family)

Including persimmons, sapodilla, star apples

## .675 \*Primulales

Including Primulaceae (primrose family), Myrsinaceae, Theophrastaceae

Including auriculas, coralberry, cyclamens, loosestrife, primulas, shooting stars

Class evening primroses in 583.76

*See also 583.76 for loosestrife of family Lythraceae*

- .68      **\*Malvales**  
           Including Bombacaceae (silk cotton tree family), Elaeocarpaceae,  
           Sterculiaceae (cacao family), Tiliaceae (linden family)  
           Including balsa, baobabs, basswood, jute, kapok, kola nuts, lime trees
- .685     **\*Malvaceae (Mallow family)**  
           Including cotton, hibiscuses, hollyhock, okra, rose of Sharon
- .69      **\*Euphorbiales**  
           Including Buxaceae (boxwood family), Dichapetalaceae  
           Including cassavas (manioc), castor-oil plant, copperleaves, crotons,  
           crown of thorns, heveas, manchineels, mercuries, poinsettias, rubber tree,  
           snow-on-the-mountain, tallow tree, tung tree  
           Class here Euphorbiaceae (spurge family)  
           *See also 583.45 for India rubber tree, West Indian boxwood*
- .7       **\*Rosidae**  
           *For orders of Rosidae not provided for below, see 583.8*
- .72     **\*Saxifragales**  
           Including Saxifragaceae (saxifrage family), Brunelliaceae, Bruniaceae,  
           Byblidaceae, Cephalotaceae, Crassulaceae, Cunoniaceae, Escalloniaceae,  
           Grossulariaceae (gooseberry family), Hydrangeaceae (hydrangea family),  
           Parnassiaceae, Pittosporaceae (hedge laurel family)  
           Including brexias, currants, deutzias, escallonias, houseleeks (live-forevers),  
           mock oranges (syringas), pickaback plants, Ribes, stonecrops (orpines,  
           sedums), Virginia willow  
           Class comprehensive works on carnivorous plants in 583.75
- .73     **\*Rosales**  
           Including Chrysobalanaceae  
           Including almonds, apples, apricots, blackberries, cane fruits, cherries,  
           chokeberries, cinquefoils, dewberries, stone fruits (drupaceous fruits),  
           hawthorns, loquat, medlar, mountain ashes, peaches, pears, plums,  
           pomaceous fruits, pyracanthas (fire thorns), quince, raspberries, Rubus,  
           serviceberries, spireas, strawberries  
           Class here Rosaceae (rose family)  
           *See also 583.765 for rose apples; also 583.77 for hog plums of family*  
           *Anacardiaceae*
- .734    **\*Rosa (Roses)**  
           Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual  
           species

.74 \*Fabales (Leguminales)

Including alfalfa, beans, beggar's lice, bluebonnet, carob, clovers, indigo plants, kudzu, lentils, lespedezas, locoweeds, locusts, peanuts (groundnuts), Scotch broom, shamrocks, smoke tree, soybean (soja, soya), tamarind, vetches, wisterias

Class here Fabaceae (pea family)

*See also 583.77 for smoke trees of family Anacardiaceae; also 583.79 for shamrock of family Oxalidaceae*

.748 \*Mimosaceae (Mimosa family)

Including acacias, mesquite, sensitive plants, silk tree

.749 \*Caesalpinaceae (Senna family)

Including redbuds

.75 \*Nepenthales

Including Nepenthaceae (Old World pitcher plant family), Droseraceae (sundew family); Venus's flytrap; comprehensive works on pitcher plants

Class here comprehensive works on carnivorous plants

*For Sarraceniaceae (New World pitcher plants), see 583.36; for Byblidaceae, Cephalotaceae, see 583.72; for Lentibulariaceae, see 583.95*

.76 \*Myrtales

Including Anisophylleaceae, Combretaceae, Lecythidaceae (Brazil nut family), Lythraceae (loosestrife family), Melastomataceae (meadow beauty family), Onagraceae (evening primrose family), Trapaceae

Including Brazilian spiderflowers, cigar flower, clarkias, crape myrtle, fireweed, fuchsias, pomegranate

Class mangroves of family Combretaceae in 583.763

*See also 583.64 for spiderflowers of family Capparaceae; also 583.675 for loosestrife of family Primulaceae; also 583.99 for fireweeds of family Asteraceae*

.763 \*Rhizophoraceae and Sonneratiaceae

Including mangroves of family Combretaceae, e.g., button mangrove, white mangrove

Class here comprehensive works on mangroves

Subdivisions are added for Rhizophoraceae and Sonneratiaceae together, for Rhizophoraceae alone

Class mangrove swamp ecology in 577.698

*For mangroves of family Verbenaceae, see 583.96; for mangrove of family Arecaceae (nipa palm), see 584.5*

- .765      \*Myrtaceae (Myrtle family)
- Including allspice (pimento), clove, guavas, Jamaica bayberry (bay rum tree), rose apples, water chestnuts; comprehensive works on myrtles
- For Eucalyptus, see 583.766. For myrtle of a specific family other than Myrtaceae, see the family, e.g., Oregon myrtle 583.23, wax myrtle 583.43, crape myrtle 583.76*
- See also 583.952 for pimientos (peppers); also 584.84 for Chinese water chestnut*
- .766      \*Eucalyptus (Gum trees)
- Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species
- .77        \*Rutales
- Including Rutaceae (orange family), Anacardiaceae (mango family), Burseraceae (incense tree family), Coriariaceae, Meliaceae (mahogany family), Simaroubaceae (ailanthus family)
- Including cashew, chinaberry tree, citrus fruits, cork trees, hog plums (Spanish plums), hop tree, orange jessamine, pistachio, poison ivies, rue, smoke trees, sumacs, tree of heaven, varnish trees; comprehensive works on balms
- Class comprehensive works on ivies in 583.84
- For balm of a specific family other than Burseraceae, see the family, e.g., bee balms 583.96*
- See also 583.46 for cork oak; also 583.73 for hog plums of family Rosaceae; also 583.74 for smoke tree of family Fabaceae; also 583.87 for jasmynes*
- .78        \*Sapindales
- Including Sapindaceae (soapberry family), Aceraceae (maple family), Hippocastanaceae (horse chestnut family), Sabiaceae, Staphyleaceae (bladdernut family)
- Including buckeyes, honey bush, hopbushes, litchis
- .79        \*Geraniales
- Including Geraniaceae (geranium family), Balsaminaceae (balsam family), Erythroxylaceae (coca family), Hugoniaceae, Humiriaceae, Ixonanthaceae, Linaceae (flax family), Malpighiaceae, Oxalidaceae (wood sorrel family), Tropaeolaceae (nasturtium family), Zygophyllaceae (lignum vitae family)
- Including creosote bush, erodiums, impatiens, jewelweeds (touch-me-nots), pelargoniums, shamrock, wild mango (dika)
- See also 583.64 for Nasturtium genus in family Brassicaceae; also 583.74 for shamrocks of family Fabaceae*
- .8        **Other orders of Rosidae**

## [.801–.809] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 583.701–583.709

## .82 \*Minor orders of Rosidae

Including Connarales, Elaeagnales (oleaster order), Hippuridales (Haloragales), Podostemales (riverweed order), Polygalales (milkwort order); Vochysiaceae

Including gunneras, mare's tail

## .84 \*Cornales

Including Cornaceae (dogwood family), Araliaceae (ginseng family, ivy family)

Including Garrya, tupelos (sour gums), wild sarsaparilla; comprehensive works on ivies

*For ivies of a specific family other than Araliaceae, see the family, e.g., poison ivies 583.77*

*See also 584.356 for sarsaparilla of family Smilacaceae*

## .849 \*Umbelliferae

Variant names: Apiaceae, parsley family

Including anise, caraway, carrots, celery, dills, parsnips, poison hemlocks, Queen Anne's lace

## .85 \*Celastrales

Including Celastraceae (staff tree family), Aquifoliaceae (holly family), Hippocrateaceae, Icacinaceae; bittersweet, khat, maté

*See also 583.952 for bittersweet of family Solanaceae*

## .86 \*Rhamnales

Including Rhamnaceae (buckthorn family), Leeaceae, Vitaceae (grape family); Boston ivy, ironwoods, jujubes, Virginia creeper

Class comprehensive works on ironwoods in 583.48

## .87 \*Oleales

Including ashes, forsythias, jasmines, lilacs, privets

Class here Oleaceae (olive family)

*See also 583.77 for orange jessamine*

## .88 \*Santalales

Including Santalaceae (sandalwood family), Balanophoraceae, Loranthaceae (mistletoe family), Olacaceae, Opiliaceae, Viscaceae

Class Rafflesiaceae in 583.2

- .89        \***Proteales**  
               Including banksias, grevilleas, hakeas, macadamias, Persoonia, proteas,  
               Telopea (waratahs)  
               Class here Proteaceae
- .9         \***Asteridae**  
               Including Calycerales
- .92        \***Dipsacales**  
               Including Dipsacaceae (teasel family), Caprifoliaceae (honeysuckle family),  
               Valerianaceae (valerian family)  
               Including elders, snowballs, viburnums
- .93        \***Gentianales**  
               Including Gentianaceae (gentian family), Apocynaceae (dogbane family,  
               Indian hemp family), Asclepiadaceae (milkweed family), Loganiaceae,  
               Potaliaceae, Rubiaceae (madder family)  
               Including bog myrtle (buckbean), buckbeans, buttonbushes, carrion flowers,  
               cinchonas, coffee, gardenias, Indian sarsaparilla, oleanders, partridgeberry,  
               periwinkles, Plumeria, rauwolfias, stephanotises  
               *See also 583.43 for bog myrtle (sweet gale); also 584.356 for carrion  
               flower and sarsaparillas of family Smilacaceae*
- .94        \***Polemoniales**  
               Including Polemoniaceae (phlox family), Boraginaceae (forget-me-not  
               family), Convolvulaceae (morning glory family), Cuscutaceae (dodder  
               family), Hydrophyllaceae (waterleaf family), Loasaceae  
               Including baby blue-eyes, borage, comfrees, dichondras, heliotropes,  
               honeyworts, hound's-tongues, Jacob's ladders, sweet potatoes (yams),  
               Virginia cowslip (bluebell)  
               *See also 583.98 for bluebells of bellflower family; also 584.32 for  
               bluebells of lily family; also 584.357 for yams of family Dioscoreaceae*
- .95        \***Scrophulariales**  
               Including Scrophulariaceae (figwort family, snapdragon family),  
               Acanthaceae (acanthus family), Bignoniaceae (catalpa family),  
               Buddlejaceae, Gesneriaceae, Lentibulariaceae (bladderwort family),  
               Myoporaceae, Nolanaceae, Orobanchaceae (broomrape family), Pedaliaceae  
               (sesame family), Plantaginaceae (plantago family)  
               Including African violets, butterfly bushes, calabash tree, foxglove,  
               mulleins, Penstemon, plantains, trumpet creepers, unicorn plants  
               Class here Personales  
               Class comprehensive works on violets in 583.625; class comprehensive  
               works on carnivorous plants in 583.75  
               *See also 584.39 for plantain of banana family*

## .952 \*Solanaceae

Variant names: nightshade family, potato family

Including belladonna, bittersweet, butterfly flowers (schizanthuses), capsicums, daturas, eggplants, henbane, jimsonweed, mandrakes, paprika, petunias, pimientos, tobacco, tomatoes; cayenne, red, sweet peppers; comprehensive works on peppers

*For pepper of Piperaceae family, see 583.25*

*See also 583.34 for mandrake of family Podophyllaceae (mayapple); also 583.765 for pimento (allspice); also 583.85 for bittersweet of family Celastraceae*

## .96 \*Lamiales

Including Verbenaceae (verbena family)

Including basil, bee balms, black mangrove, catnip, Chinese artichoke, dead nettles, ground ivy, horehound, hyssop, lavenders, lopseed, marjorams, rosemary, sage, teak, thymes, vervains

Class here Lamiaceae (Labiatae, mint family)

Class comprehensive works on mangroves in 583.763; class comprehensive works on balms in 583.77

*See also 583.99 for sagebrushes*

## .98 \*Campanulales

Including Campanulaceae (bellflower family), Goodeniaceae, Lobeliaceae, Stylidiaceae; bluebells, Campanula, Indian tobacco

*See also 583.94 for bluebells of forget-me-not family; also 584.32 for bluebells of lily family*

## .99 \*Asterales

Including artichokes, asters, black-eyed Susans, chamomiles, chicory, chrysanthemums, cornflower, cosmos, dahlias, dandelions, endive, everlasting, fireweeds, fleabanes, gerberas, goldenrods, groundsels (ragworts), guayule, lettuce, marigolds, ragweeds, safflower, sagebrushes, sunflowers, thistles, wormwoods, zinnias

Class here Asteraceae (Compositae)

*See also 583.76 for fireweed of family Onagraceae; also 583.96 for Chinese artichoke*

**584 \*Liliopsida (Monocotyledons)**

*See Manual at 583–585 vs. 600; also at 583–584*

## SUMMARY

- 584.3 Liliidae
- .4 Orchidales
- .5 Arecidae
- .6 Cyclanthales, Arales, Pandanales, Typhales
- .7 Alismidae
- .8 Commelinidae
- .9 Poales

**.3 \*Liliidae**

Class here Liliales, lilies

*For Orchidales, see 584.4*

*See also 583.29 for water lilies*

**> 584.32–584.35 Liliales**

Class comprehensive works in 584.3

**.32 \*Liliaceae (Lily family)**

Including aloes, bluebells, day lilies, Easter lily, hostas (plantain lilies), hyacinths, lily of the valley, trilliums, tulips

Class comprehensive works on lilies in 584.3

*See also 583.94 for bluebells of forget-me-not family; also 583.98 for bluebells of bellflower family; also 584.72 for water hyacinths*

**.33 \*Alliaceae**

Including African lilies, chives, garlics, leeks, onions, shallots

**.34 \*Amaryllidaceae (Amaryllis family)**

Including daffodils, narcissus; atamasco, Peruvian, spider lilies

**.35 Other families of Liliales**

Including Cyanastraceae, Philesiaceae, Philydraceae, Pontederiaceae, Taccaceae, Tecophilacaceae, Xanthorrhoeaceae

Class comprehensive works in 584.3

**[.350 1–.350 9] Standard subdivisions**

Do not use; class in 584.301–584.309

**.352 \*Agavaceae**

Including agaves, aloe hemp, aloes (century plants), dracaenas, sansevierias (snake plants), sisal, tequila, yuccas

Class comprehensive works on hems in 583.45

\*Add as instructed under 583–588

- .353      \*Alstroemeriaceae  
             Including box lily
- .354      \*Haemodoraceae (Bloodwort family), Hypoxidaceae, Velloziaceae  
             (tree lily family)
- .355      \*Asparagaceae  
             Including Ruscaceae, asparagus
- .356      \*Smilacaceae  
             Including carrion flower, cat briers, greenbriers, sarsaparillas  
             *See also 583.84 for wild sarsaparilla of ginseng family; also 583.93  
             for carrion flowers of family Asclepiadaceae, Indian sarsaparilla*
- .357      \*Dioscoreaceae (Yam family)  
             *See also 583.94 for sweet potatoes (yams)*
- .37        \*Triuridales  
             Class here Triuridaceae
- .38        \*Iridales  
             Including Burmanniaceae  
             Including blackberry lily, crocuses, freesias, gladiolus (sword lilies), saffron,  
             tigerflowers  
             Class here Iridaceae (iris family)
- .39        \*Zingiberales  
             Including Zingiberaceae (ginger family), Cannaceae (canna family),  
             Costaceae, Heliconiaceae, Marantaceae (arrowroot family), Musaceae  
             (banana family)  
             Including abaca (Manila hemp), cardamoms, ginger lily, heliconias, plantain,  
             prayer plant, turmeric, zebra plant  
             Class comprehensive works on hems in 583.45  
             *See also 583.95 for plantains of plantago family*
- .4        \*Orchidales  
             Including vanillas  
             Class here Orchidaceae (orchid family)
- .5        \*Arecidae  
             Including coconuts, dates, nipa palm (mangrove), palmettos, rattans  
             Class here Arecales (Palmes), Arecaceae (Palmae, palm family)  
             *For Cyclanthales, Arales, Pandanales, Typhales, see 584.6*
- .6        \*Cyclanthales, Arales, Pandanales, Typhales

\*Add as instructed under 583–588

- .62      **\*Cyclanthales**  
           Including jipijapa (Panama hat palm)  
           Class here Cyclanthaceae
- .64      **\*Arales**  
           Including Lemnaceae (duckweed family)  
           Including anthuriums, caladiums, calla lilies, Chinese evergreen,  
           dieffenbachias, elephant's ears, jack-in-the-pulpits, monstera,  
           philodendrons, skunk cabbages, taro, watermeals  
           Class here Araceae (arum family)  
           Class comprehensive works on lilies in 584.3  
           *See also 583.64 for cabbages of Brassicaceae family*
- .66      **\*Pandanales**  
           Including screw pines  
           Class here Pandanaceae (hala family)
- .68      **\*Typhales**  
           Including Sparganiaceae, Sparganium (bur reeds)  
           Class here Typhaceae, Typha (cattails and bulrushes)  
           Class comprehensive works on bulrushes in 584.84
- .7       **\*Alismidae**
- .72      **\*Alismales (Alismatales)**  
           Including Butomaceae (water poppy family), Limnocharitaceae; arrowheads,  
           water hyacinths  
           Class here Alismaceae (water plantain family)
- .73      **\*Hydrocharitales**  
           Including turtle grass  
           Class here Hydrocharitaceae (frogbit family)
- .74      **\*Najadales (Potamogetonales)**  
           Including Najadaceae (naiad family), Aponogetonaceae (lattice plant  
           family), Juncaginaceae (arrow grass family), Lilaeaceae, Posidoniaceae,  
           Ruppiaceae (widgeon grass family), Scheuchzeriaceae, Zanichelliaceae,  
           Zosteraceae (eelgrass family)
- .742     **\*Potamogetonaceae (Pondweed family)**
- .8       **\*Commelinidae**  
           Including Restionales  
           *For Poales, see 584.9*

- .82      **\*Juncales**  
           Including Thurniaceae  
           Class here Juncaceae (rush family), comprehensive works on rushes  
           *For rushes of cattail family, see 584.68; for rushes of sedge family, see 584.84*
- .84      **\*Cyperales**  
           Including Chinese water chestnut, cotton grasses, papyrus, umbrella plant; beak, spike rushes; comprehensive works on bulrushes  
           Class here Cyperaceae (sedge family)  
           Class comprehensive works on rushes in 584.82  
           *For bulrushes of cattail family, see 584.68*
- .85      **\*Bromeliales**  
           Including Spanish (black) moss  
           Class here Bromeliaceae (pineapple family), bromeliads
- .86      **\*Commelinales**  
           Including Rapateaceae, Xyridaceae (yellow-eyed grass family); boat lily, wandering Jews  
           Class here Commelinaceae (spiderwort family)
- .87      **\*Eriocaulales**  
           Class here Eriocaulaceae (pipewort family)
- .9      \*Poales**  
           Variant names: Graminales, grasses  
           Including Agrostaeae, Anomochloaeae, Arundineae, Arundinelleae, Aveneae (oat tribe), Bambuseae (bamboo tribe), Chlorideae (gama grass tribe), Eragrostaeae, Festuceae (fescue tribe), Hordeaeae (barley tribe), Leptureae, Lygeaeae, Nardeae, Olyreae, Oryzeae (rice tribe), Pappophoreae, Parianeae, Phalarideae (canary grass tribe), Phareae, Sporoboleae, Stipeae, Streptochaeteae, Thysanolaeneae, Zoysiaeae  
           Including bent grasses, bluegrasses, bromegrasses, espartos, orchard grass (cocksfoot), pampas grass, reeds, rye, timothy, wheat  
           Class here Poaceae (Gramineae), Pooideae  
           Class comprehensive works on grassland ecology in 577.4; class Cyperaceae in 584.84

## .92 \*Panicoideae

Including Paniceae (millet tribe), Andropogoneae (sugarcane tribe),  
Maydeae (maize tribe)

Including citronella, corn, crabgrasses, milos, panic grasses, proso,  
sorghums, Sudan grass, thatch grasses

**585 \*Pinophyta (Gymnosperms)**

Class here Coniferales (Conifers), Pinicae

*See Manual at 583–585 vs. 600*

> **585.2–585.5 Coniferales**

Class comprehensive works in 585

## .2 \*Pinaceae (Pine family)

Including firs, hemlocks, larches, piñons, spruces, tamaracks, true cedars;  
comprehensive works on cedars, on pines

*For Huon, dammar, New Zealand red pines, see 585.3; for cypress pine,  
cedars of the cypress family, see 585.4; for China fir, Japanese and  
Tasmanian cedars, see 585.5*

## .3 \*Podocarpaceae, Araucariaceae, Cephalotaxaceae (plum-yew family)

Including Huon pine, kauris (dammar pines), New Zealand red pine,  
podocarpaceae (yellowwoods), Prince Albert's yew

Subdivisions are added for Podocarpaceae, Araucariaceae, Cephalotaxaceae  
together; for Podocarpaceae alone

## .4 \*Cupressaceae (Cypress family)

Including arborvitae, cypress pine, junipers; Chilean, incense, red cedars

Class here comprehensive works on cypresses

*For bald cypresses, see 585.5*

## .5 \*Taxodiaceae

Including bald cypresses, China fir, redwood, sequoias; Japanese, Tasmanian  
cedars

## .6 \*Taxales

Class here Taxaceae (yew family), comprehensive works on yews

*For plum and Prince Albert's yews, see 585.3*

## .7 \*Ginkgoales

Class here Ginkgoaceae; ginkgo (maidenhair tree)

**.8 \*Gneticae**

Including Gnetales, Ephedrales (ephedras), Welwitschiales (tumboa plant);  
Gnetum, Mormon tea

**.9 \*Cycadales (Cycads)**

Class here Cycadaceae

**586 \*Cryptogamia (Seedless plants)**

*For fungi, see 579.5; for algae, see 579.8; for Pteridophyta, see 587; for  
Bryophyta, see 588*

**587 \*Pteridophyta**

Variant names: vascular cryptogams, vascular seedless plants

**.2 \*Sphenopsida**

Variant names: Articulatae, horsetails

Class here Equisetales, Equisetaceae, Equisetum

**.3 \*Polypodiopsida**

Variant names: Filicopsida, ferns

Including Marsiliales (waterclovers), Salviniiales

Including bracken, brakes, spleenworts, water spangles; maidenhair, royal,  
staghorn ferns

Class here Polypodiales (Filicales)

*See also 587.4 for whisk ferns*

**.33 \*Marattiales and Ophioglossales**

Variant name for Marattiales: giant ferns

Including adder's-tongues, moonworts; grape, rattlesnake ferns

**.4 \*Psilopsida (Whisk ferns)**

Class here Psilotales

**.9 \*Lycopsida**

Including Lycopodiales (club mosses), Isoetales (quillworts), Selaginellales  
(spike mosses); resurrection plants

Class here club mosses covering Lycopsida

**588 \*Bryophyta**

**.2 \*Bryopsida**

Variant names: Musci, mosses

Including Andreaeales (granite, rock mosses)

Class here Bryales (true mosses)

*See also 587.9 for club and spike mosses; also 588.3 for scale mosses*

**.29 \*Sphagnales**

Including Sphagnaceae (peat mosses, bog mosses)

**.3 \*Hepatopsida (Liverworts)**

Including Anthocerotidae (horned liverworts, hornworts), Marchantiales (great liverworts)

Class here Hepatidae (Hepaticae), Jungermanniales, leafy liverworts (scale mosses)

*See also 583.29 for hornworts of family Ceratophyllaceae*

**[589] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 20

**590 Animals**

Class here natural history of animals; descriptive biology of animals; taxonomic biology of animals; zoology; comprehensive works on biology of animals, interdisciplinary works on animals

Class interdisciplinary works on food from animals in 641.306

*For paleozoology, see 560; for internal biological processes and structures in animals, see 571.1. For a specific aspect of animals, see the aspect, e.g., animal husbandry 636*

*See Manual at 363 vs. 302–307, 333.7, 570–590, 600; also at 577.3–577.7 vs. 579–590; also at 579–590; also at 579–590 vs. 571–575; also at 630 vs. 579–590, 641.3; also at 800, T3C—362 vs. 398.245, 590, 636*

**SUMMARY**

590.1–9

**Standard subdivisions**

591

**Specific topics in natural history of animals****.3****Genetics, evolution, age characteristics****.4****Physical adaptation****.5****Behavior****.6****Miscellaneous nontaxonomic kinds of animals****.7****Animal ecology, animals characteristic of specific environments****.9****Animals by specific continents, countries, localities**

- 592           **Invertebrates**  
           .3           Worms  
           .4           Platyhelminthes (Flatworms)  
           .5           Aschelminthes (Nemathelminthes)  
           .6           Annelida (Segmented worms)  
           .7           Oncopods (Pararthropoda)
- 593           **Miscellaneous marine and seashore invertebrates**  
           .4           Porifera (Sponges)  
           .5           Cnidaria (Coelenterata)  
           .6           Anthozoa  
           .8           Ctenophora (Comb jellies)  
           .9           Echinodermata and Hemichordata
- 594           **Mollusca and Molluscoidea**  
           .2           Minor classes of Mollusca  
           .3           Gastropoda  
           .4           Bivalvia  
           .5           Cephalopoda  
           .6           Molluscoidea
- 595           **Arthropoda**  
           .3           Crustacea  
           .4           Chelicerata  
           .6           Myriapoda  
           .7           Insecta (Insects)
- 596           **Chordata**  
           .2           Urochordata (Tunicata)  
           .4           Cephalochordata (Lancelets)
- 597           **Cold-blooded vertebrates**  
           .073           Collections and exhibits of living fishes  
           .176-36        Pond ecology  
           .2           Agnatha (Jawless fishes)  
           .3           Selachii, Holocephali, Sarcopterygii  
           .4           Miscellaneous superorders of Actinopterygii  
           .5           Protacanthopterygii  
           .6           Scopelomorpha, Paracanthopterygii, Acanthopterygii  
           .7           Perciformes  
           .8           Amphibia (Amphibians)  
           .9           Reptilia (Reptiles)
- 598           **Aves (Birds)**  
           .072-3        Descriptive research  
           .163-176      [Beneficial and aquatic birds]  
           .3           Gruiformes, Charadriiformes, Ciconiiformes, Phoenicopteriformes  
           .4           Miscellaneous orders of water birds  
           .5           Palaeognathae  
           .6           Galliformes and Columbiformes  
           .7           Miscellaneous orders of land birds  
           .8           Passeriformes (Perching birds)  
           .9           Falconiformes, Strigiformes, Caprimulgiformes
- 599           **Mammalia (Mammals)**  
           .144-163      [Head and beneficial mammals]  
           .2           Marsupialia and Monotremata  
           .3           Miscellaneous orders of Eutheria (placental mammals)  
           .4           Chiroptera (Bats)  
           .5           Cetacea and Sirenia  
           .6           Ungulates  
           .7           Carnivora  
           .8           Primates  
           .9           Homo sapiens (Humans)

**.1–.6 Standard subdivisions**

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 578.01–578.06, e.g., microscopy of animals 590.282

**.7 Education, research, related topics**

.723 Descriptive research

.723 2 Animal marking and census taking

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.723 4 Animal warching

[.723 409 4–.723 409 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Do not use; class in 590.72344–590.72349

.723 44–.723 49 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Add to base number 590.7234 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., animal watching in East Africa 590.7234676

.73 Collections and exhibits of living animals

Class here general zoos; zoos limited to vertebrates in general, to land vertebrates in general, to mammals in general

Add to base number 590.73 notation 1–9 from Table 2 for area in which collections and exhibits are found, e.g., zoos of Germany 590.7343

Class zoos limited to other groups of animals with the group, e.g., insect zoos 595.7073, aquariums for marine vertebrates 596.177073

.74 Museums, collections, exhibits

Do not use for collections and exhibits of living organisms; class in 590.73

.75 Museum activities and services

.752 Preserving zoological specimens

**.8 Groups of people****.9 History, geographic treatment, biography**

[.914–.919] Areas, regions, places in general other than polar, temperate, tropical regions

Do not use; class in 591.73–591.77

.93–.99 Zoology by specific continents, countries, localities

Class animals by specific continents, countries, localities in 591.9

## 591 Specific topics in natural history of animals

Class here specific nontaxonomic kinds of animals

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by † as follows:

- 01-08 Standard subdivisions  
Notation from Table 1 as modified under 590.1-590.8, e.g.,  
preservation of zoological specimens 0752
- 09 History, geographic treatment, biography

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., social behavior of beneficial animals 591.56 (*not* 591.63):

Behavior	591.5
Miscellaneous nontaxonomic kinds of animals	591.6
Physical adaptation	591.4
Genetics, evolution, young animals	591.3
Animal ecology, animals characteristic of specific environments	591.7
Treatment of animals by specific continents, countries, localities	591.9

Class a specific topic in natural history of animals with respect to a specific taxonomic group of animals with the group of animals, plus notation 1 from table under 592-599, e.g., beneficial mammals 599.163

### SUMMARY

- 591.3 Genetics, evolution, age characteristics
- .4 Physical adaptation
- .5 Behavior
- .6 Miscellaneous nontaxonomic kinds of animals
- .7 Animal ecology, animals characteristic of specific environments
- .9 Animals by specific continents, countries, localities

[.01-.09] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 590.1-590.9

.3 †Genetics, evolution, age characteristics

Standard subdivisions are added for genetics, evolution, age characteristics together, for genetics and evolution alone

.35 †Genetics

Class here works on genetic constitution of animals that elucidate their total function

Class experimental works on animal genetics, comprehensive works on genetics in 576.5

*For biochemical genetics in animals, see 572.81*

†Add standard subdivisions as instructed under 591

- .38 †Evolution  
 Class here phylogeny  
 Class sexual selection in 591.562
- .39 †Age characteristics  
 Class here age determination
- .392 †Young animals
- .4 †Physical adaptation**  
 Class here animals noted for specific kinds of physical adaptation,  
 comprehensive works on animal adaptation  
*For behavioral adaptation, see 591.5*
- .41 †Size, weight, shape  
 Including silhouettes
- .42 †Acclimatization and temperature adaptation  
 Standard subdivisions are added for acclimatization and temperature  
 adaptation together, for acclimatization alone  
*For seasonal adaptation, see 591.43*
- .43 †Seasonal adaptation
- .44 †Head  
 Including ears, eyes, mouth  
 Class nose in 599.144  
*For fangs, horns, tusks, see 591.47*
- .46 †Reproductive adaptation  
 Class here sex characteristics, secondary sexual characteristics  
 Class reproductive physiology in 573.6
- .468 †Eggs  
*For physiology of eggs, see 573.68*
- .47 †Protective and locomotor adaptations, color  
 Standard subdivisions are added for protective and locomotor adaptations,  
 color together; for protective adaptation alone  
 Including animal weapons, claws, fangs, horns, tusks; integument  
 Class here animal defenses  
 Class physiology of musculoskeletal system in 573.7  
*For protective behavior, see 591.566*

†Add standard subdivisions as instructed under 591

.472 †Camouflage and color  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
 Class here protective coloration  
 Class physiology of color in 573.5; class mimicry in 591.473

.473 †Mimicry

.477 †Protective covering  
 Class here exoskeletons, shells, armored animals

.479 †Locomotor adaptation  
 Including legs, tracks, wings

**.5 †Behavior**

Class here animal psychology, behavioral adaptation, ethology

Class comparative psychology of humans and animals in 156; class physiology of nervous system in 573.8; class comprehensive works on animal adaptation in 591.4

*See Manual at 302–307 vs. 156*

.51 General topics in behavior  
 Limited to those named below  
 Class general topics related to specific behaviors in 591.53–591.59; class play in 591.563

.512 †Instinct

.513 †Intelligence

.514 †Learning

.518 †Nocturnal behavior  
 Class here nocturnal animals

.519 †Sleep  
 Class hibernation in 591.565  
*For physiology of sleep, see 573.868*

---

> 591.53–591.54 Feeding behavior  
 Class comprehensive works in 591.53

- .53 †Predation  
 Including food storing and hoarding  
 Class here food habits, predator-prey relations; carnivorous animals, predatory animals; comprehensive works on feeding behavior  
 Class physiology of eating in 573.35  
*For herbivorous feeding, see 591.54*
- .54 †Herbivorous feeding  
 Class here browsing, grazing; herbivorous animals
- .56 †Behavior relating to life cycle  
 Class here reproductive behavior, social behavior, comprehensive works on life cycle of animals  
 Class reproductive physiology in 573.6; class physical reproductive adaptation in 591.46; class interdisciplinary works on sociobiology in 304.5  
*For physiology of life cycle of animals, see 571.81; for communication, see 591.59*
- .562 †Sexual behavior  
 Including sexual selection  
 Class here courtship, mating  
 Class grooming in 591.563
- .563 †Family behavior  
 Including grooming, kin recognition, play (regardless of kinship)  
 Class here maternal behavior, parental behavior
- .564 †Making habitations  
 Class here nesting, nests
- .564 8 †Burrowing  
 Class here burrowing animals  
 Class comprehensive works on soil animals in 591.757
- .565 †Hibernation  
 Class physiology of hibernation in 571.787
- .566 †Territoriality  
 Class here comprehensive works on fighting, on protective behavior  
*For fighting during mating, see 591.562; for fighting, protective behaviors during parenting, see 591.563*

†Add standard subdivisions as instructed under 591

- .568 †Migration  
 Class here migratory animals  
 Class physiology of navigation in 573.87
- .57 †Locomotion  
 Including flying, swimming
- .59 †Communication  
*For physiology of communication, see 573.92*
- .594 †Acoustical communication  
 Class here animal sounds  
 Class stridulation in 595.71594; class vocalization in 596.1594
- .6 †Miscellaneous nontaxonomic kinds of animals**  
 Not provided for elsewhere  
 Class here economic zoology  
*See Manual at 630 vs. 579–590, 641.3*
- .62 †Nonnative animals  
 Class here alien, exotic, introduced, invasive, naturalized animals
- .63 †Beneficial animals  
 Including game animals  
*For animals as food source, see 641.306*
- .65 †Harmful animals  
 Class here dangerous and poisonous animals, pests
- .68 †Rare and endangered animals  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
 Including recently extinct, threatened, vanishing species,
- .7 Animal ecology, animals characteristic of specific environments**  
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
 Class here autecology, zoology of specific environments
- .701–.708 Standard subdivisions  
 Notation from Table 1 as modified under 590.1–590.8, e.g., microscopy  
 591.70282
- .709 History, geographic treatment, biography

†Add standard subdivisions as instructed under 591

[.709 14–.709 19] Areas, regions, places in general other than polar, temperate, tropical regions

Do not use; class in 591.73–591.77

.71–.78 Specific topics in animal ecology; specific environments

Add to base number 591.7 the numbers following 577 in 577.1–577.8, e.g., effect of pollution on animals 591.727, marine animals 591.77, effect of pollution on marine animals 591.7727

Class comprehensive works on terrestrial animals in 590

.788 Population biology

Number built according to instructions under 591.71–591.78

*For animal marking and census taking, see 590.7232*

**.9 Animals by specific continents, countries, localities**

Add to base number 591.9 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., animals in Brazil 591.981

## > **592–599 Specific taxonomic groups of animals**

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by \* as follows:

01–08 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 590.1–590.8, e.g., collections of living animals 073

09 History, geographic treatment, biography

[0914–0919] Areas, regions, places in general other than polar, temperate, tropical regions

Do not use; class in 173–177

1 General topics of natural history of animals

Add to base number 1 the numbers following 591 in 591.3–591.7, e.g., beneficial animals 163, marine animals 177

Do not add notation from 591.3–591.7 when redundant or nearly so, e.g., marine sponges 593.4 (*not* 593.4177); however, it is not redundant to add notation to specify area, e.g., marine sponges of Atlantic Ocean 593.41773

Class comprehensive works in 590

### **592 \*Invertebrates**

*For Protozoa, see 579.4; for miscellaneous marine and seashore invertebrates, see 593; for Mollusca and Molluscoidea, see 594; for Arthropoda, see 595*

\*Add as instructed under 592–599

- .3 \*Worms**  
 Including Echiurida (spoonworms), Phoronida (horseshoe worms), Pogonophora (beardworms), Priapulida  
 Class here helminthology  
*For Platyhelminthes, see 592.4; for Aschelminthes, see 592.5; for Annelida, see 592.6*  
*See also 592.7 for oncopods*
- .32 \*Nemertea**  
 Variant names: Nemertina, Rhynchocoela, bootlace worms, proboscis worms, ribbon worms
- .33 \*Acanthocephala (Spiny-headed worms)**
- .35 \*Sipuncula (Peanut worms)**
- .38 \*Chaetognatha (Arrowworms)**  
 Class here Sagitta
- .4 \*Platyhelminthes (Flatworms)**  
 Including Aspidocotylea (Aspidobothria)
- .42 \*Turbellaria**  
 Including Acoela, Allocoela, Rhabdocoela; planarians
- .44 \*Monogenea**
- .46 \*Cestoda (Tapeworms)**  
 Class here Eucestoda
- .48 \*Trematoda (Flukes)**  
 Including Aspidogastrea  
 Class here Digenea
- .5 \*Aschelminthes (Nemathelminthes)**
- .52 \*Rotifera (Rotifers)**
- .53 \*Gastrotricha**
- .55 \*Kinorhyncha (Echinodera)**  
*See also 593.9 for Echinodermata*
- .57 \*Nematoda**  
 Variant names: Nemata, roundworms  
 Including Adenophorea, Secernentea

- .59        \***Nematomorpha**  
               Variant names: horsehair worms, hairworms  
               Class here Gordioida
- .6         \***Annelida (Segmented worms)**
- .62        \***Polychaeta**  
               Including Archannelida, Myzostomida, Phyllococida
- .64        \***Oligochaeta**  
               Including Haplotaxia, Lumbriculida, Moniligastrida  
               Class here earthworms (night crawlers)
- .66        \***Hirudinea (Leeches)**  
               Including Arhynchobdellida, Rhynchobdellida
- .7         \***Oncopods (Pararthropoda)**
- .72        \***Tardigrada (Water bears)**
- .74        \***Onychophora**
- .76        \***Pentastomida**  
               Including Linguatula

### 593        **Miscellaneous marine and seashore invertebrates**

Limited to phyla provided for below

*See also 592.3177 for marine and seashore worms; also 594 for Mollusca and Molluscoidea; also 595.3 for Crustacea*

- [.01–.09]    Standard subdivisions  
               Do not use; class in 592.01–592.09
- .4         \***Porifera (Sponges)**  
               Class here Parazoa
- .42        \***Calcispongiae (Calcarea)**  
               Including Calcaronea, Calcinea
- .44        \***Hyalospongiae (Hexactinellida)**  
               Class here glass sponges
- .46        \***Demospongiae**  
               Including Haplosclerida, Spongillidae
- .5         \***Cnidaria (Coelenterata)**  
               For Anthozoa, see 593.6

\*Add as instructed under 592–599

- .53      **\*Scyphozoa**  
           Including Coronatae, Cubomedusae, Rhizostomeae, Semaestomeae,  
           Stauromedusae  
           Class here comprehensive works on jellyfishes, medusae  
           *For hydrozoan jellyfishes and medusae, see 593.55*
- .55      **\*Hydrozoa**  
           Including Chondrophora, Hydroida, Milleporina, Pteromedusae,  
           Siphonophora, Stylasterina, Trachylina  
           Including hydras, Portuguese man-of-war  
           Class here hydroids
- .6        **\*Anthozoa**  
           Including Alcyonaria, Zoantharia (Hexacorallia); sea anemones, fans, pens  
           Class here corals
- .8        **\*Ctenophora (Comb jellies)**  
           Including Nuda, Tentaculata; sea walnuts
- .9        **\*Echinodermata and Hemichordata**  
           Subdivisions are added for Echinodermata and Hemichordata together, for  
           Echinodermata alone  
           *See also 592.55 for Echinodera*
- 
- >        593.92–593.96 Echinodermata  
           Class comprehensive works in 593.9
- .92      **\*Crinozoa**  
           Class here Crinoidea (sea lilies), Articulata
- .93      **\*Asterozoa (Starfish)**  
           Including Concentricycloidea, Forcipulata, Phanerozoia, Spinulosa,  
           Stelleroidea  
           Class here Asteroidea  
           *For Ophiuroidea, see 593.94*
- .94      **\*Ophiuroidea**  
           Including Phrynophiurida, basket stars  
           Class here Ophiurida, brittle stars

- .95        \*Echinozoa  
             Including Perischoechinoidea; sand dollars, sea urchins  
             Class here Echinoidea, Euechinoidea  
             *For Holothurioidea, see 593.96*
- .96        \*Holothurioidea (Sea cucumbers)  
             Including Apodacea, Aspidochirotacea, Dendrochirotacea
- .99        \*Hemichordata  
             Including Enteropneusta, Planctosphaeroidea, Pterobranchia
- 594        \*Mollusca and Molluscoidea**  
             Class here malacology, comprehensive works on shellfish  
             Subdivisions are added for Mollusca and Molluscoidea together, for Mollusca  
             alone  
             *For crustacean shellfish, see 595.3*
- 
- >         **594.2–594.5 Mollusca (Mollusks)**  
             Class comprehensive works in 594
- .2         **\*Minor classes of Mollusca**  
             Including Aplacophora (Solenogastres), Caudofoveata, Monoplacophora
- .27        \*Polyplacophora  
             Variant names: Amphineura, chitons
- .29        \*Scaphopoda  
             Variant names: tooth shells, tusk shells
- .3         **\*Gastropoda**  
             Including slugs  
             Class here snails
- .32        \*Prosobranchia  
             Variant name: Streptoneura  
             Including Archaeogastropoda, Mesogastropoda, Neogastropoda; abalones,  
             cowries, whelks; comprehensive works on limpets  
             *For pulmonate limpets, see 594.38*

- .34      **\*Opisthobranchia**  
           Including Acochlidacea, Cephalaspidea, Gymnosomata, Notaspidea,  
           Philinoglossacea, Pyramidellacea, Thecosomata  
           Class here sea slugs  
           *For Sacoglossa, see 594.35; for Nudibranchia, sea slugs in the sense of*  
           *Nudibranchia, see 594.36; for Anaspidea, see 594.37*
- .35      **\*Sacoglossa**
- .36      **\*Nudibranchia**
- .37      **\*Anaspidea**  
           Variant name: Tectibranchia  
           Including Pteropoda  
           Class here sea hares
- .38      **\*Pulmonata**  
           Including land slugs  
           Class here land snails  
           Including Basommatophora, Systellommatophora  
           Class here Stylommatophora
- .4        **\*Bivalvia**  
           Including Protobranchia; mussels, oysters, scallops, shipworms  
           Class here Lamellibranchia; clams
- .5        **\*Cephalopoda**  
           Class here Coleoidea
- .52      **\*Nautiloidea**
- .55      **\*Vampyromorpha**
- .56      **\*Octopoda (Octopuses)**
- .58      **\*Decapoda**  
           Including Sepioidea, cuttlefish  
           Class here Teuthoidea, squid  
           *See also 595.38 for crustacean Decapoda*
- .6        **\*Molluscoidea**  
           *See also 592.3 for Phoronida*
- .66      **\*Entoprocta**

- .67        **\*Bryozoa**  
              Variant names: Ectoprocta, Polyzoa, moss animals  
              Including Cyclostomata, Stenolaemata
- .676       **\*Gymnolaemata**  
              Including Ctenostomata  
              Class here Cheilostomata
- .68        **\*Brachiopoda (Lamp shells)**

## 595       **\*Arthropoda**

Class Pararthropoda in 592.7

### SUMMARY

- |       |                          |
|-------|--------------------------|
| 595.3 | <b>Crustacea</b>         |
| .4    | <b>Chelicerata</b>       |
| .6    | <b>Myriapoda</b>         |
| .7    | <b>Insecta (Insects)</b> |

- .3        **\*Crustacea**
- .32       **\*Branchiopoda**  
              Including Anostraca (fairy and brine shrimps), Cladocera (water fleas),  
              Conchostraca (clam shrimps), Notostraca (tadpole shrimps)
- .33       **\*Ostracoda**  
              Variant names: mussel shrimps, seed shrimps  
              Including Cladocopa, Myodocopa, Platycopa, Podocopa
- .34       **\*Copepoda (Copepods)**  
              Including Calanoida, Caligoida, Cyclopoida (cyclops), Harpacticoida,  
              Lemaepodoida, Monstrilloida, Notodelphyoida
- .35       **\*Cirripedia (Barnacles)**  
              Including Acrothoracica, Ascothoracica, Rhizocephala, Thoracica
- .36       **\*Branchiura (Fish lice), Cephalocarida (horseshoe shrimps),  
              Mystacocarida (mustache shrimps)**  
              Including Arguloida
- .37       **\*Malacostraca**  
              Class here Peracarida  
              *For Eucarida, see 595.38*

- 
- > 595.372–595.378 Peracarida  
 Class comprehensive works in 595.37
- .372 \*Isopoda  
 Including pill and sow bugs, wood lice
- .373 \*Thermosbaenacea
- .374 \*Tanaidacea
- .375 \*Mysidacea (Opossum shrimps)
- .376 \*Cumacea
- .378 \*Amphipoda  
 Including beach hoppers, sand fleas, scuds, well shrimps, whale lice
- .379 \*Phyllocarida, Hoplocarida, Syncarida
- .379 2 \*Phyllocarida  
 Class here Leptostraca (Nebaliacea)
- .379 6 \*Hoplocarida  
 Class here Stomatopoda (mantis shrimps)
- .38 \*Eucarida  
 Class here Decapoda, Reptantia  
*See also 594.58 for cephalopod Decapoda*
- 
- > 595.384–595.388 Decapoda  
 Class comprehensive works in 595.38
- .384 \*Macrura  
 Including lobsters, crayfishes
- .386 \*Brachyura (Crabs)  
*See also 595.387 for hermit and king crabs; also 595.492 for horseshoe crabs*
- .387 \*Anomura  
 Including hermit and king crabs
- .388 \*Natantia (Shrimps)  
 Including prawns  
 Class here Caridea
- .389 \*Euphausiacea (Krill)

- .4        **\*Chelicerata**  
           Class here Arachnida
- 
- >        595.42--595.48 Arachnida  
           Class comprehensive works in 595.4
- .42       **\*Acari**  
           Variant names: Acarida, Acarina, mites  
           Including Opilioacariformes, chiggers  
           Class here Acariformes
- .429      **\*Parasitiformes**  
           Including ticks
- .43       **\*Opiliones**  
           Variant names: Phalangida, harvestmen  
           Including daddy longlegs
- .44       **\*Araneida**  
           Variant names: Araneae, spiders
- .45       **\*Minor orders of Arachnida**  
           Including Schizomida
- .452      **\*Palpigradi**
- .453      **\*Uropygi and Amblypygi**
- .453 2     **\*Uropygi (Whip scorpions)**
- .453 6     **\*Amblypygi (Tailless whip scorpions)**
- .455      **\*Ricinulei**
- .46       **\*Scorpiones (Scorpions)**
- .47       **\*Pseudoscorpiones (Book scorpions)**
- .48       **\*Solpugida**  
           Variant names: Solifugae, sun spiders, weasel spiders, wind scorpions
- .49       **\*Xiphosura and Pycnogonida**
- .492      **\*Xiphosura (Horseshoe crabs)**
- .496      **\*Pycnogonida (Sea spiders)**
- .6        **\*Myriapoda**
- .62       **\*Chilopoda (Centipedes)**

- .63 \*Symphyla  
 .64 \*Pauropoda  
 .66 \*Diplopoda (Millipedes)  
 .7 \***Insecta (Insects)**  
 Class here Uniramia, Hexapoda, Pterygota, Endopterygota (Holometabola);  
 entomology  
*For Myriapoda, see 595.6*

### SUMMARY

- 595.72 **Apterygota; Orthoptera and related orders**  
 .73 **Exopterygota (Hemimetabola)**  
 .74 **Mecoptera, Trichoptera, Neuroptera, Megaloptera, Raphidioidea**  
 .75 **Homoptera, Heteroptera, Anoplura, Mallophaga, Thysanoptera**  
 .76 **Coleoptera (Beetles)**  
 .77 **Diptera (Flies) and Siphonaptera**  
 .78 **Lepidoptera**  
 .79 **Hymenoptera**

- .72 \*Apterygota; Orthoptera and related orders  
 Subdivisions are added for Apterygota, Orthoptera and related orders  
 together; for Apterygota alone

- > 595.722–595.725 Apterygota  
 All orders of Apterygota except Thysanura are sometimes regarded as classes  
 coordinate with Insecta  
 Class comprehensive works in 595.72  
 .722 \*Protura  
 .723 \*Thysanura (Bristletails)  
 Including Microcoryphia, silverfish  
 .724 \*Diplura (Entotrophi)  
 .725 \*Collembola (Springtails)

- > 595.726–595.729 Orthoptera and related orders  
 Class comprehensive works in 595.726

- .726      \*Orthoptera and Grylloblattodea (ice bugs)  
             Including crickets, grasshoppers, katydids, locusts  
             Class here comprehensive works on Orthoptera and related orders  
             Subdivisions are added for Orthoptera and Grylloblattodea together, for  
             Orthoptera alone  
             *For Mantodea, see 595.727; for Blattaria, see 595.728; for Phasmida,  
             see 595.729*
- .727      \*Mantodea (Mantises)
- .728      \*Blattaria (Cockroaches)  
             Class here comprehensive works on Dictyoptera  
             *For Mantodea, see 595.727*
- .729      \*Phasmida (Phasmatodea)  
             Including leaf and stick insects, walkingsticks
- .73        \*Exopterygota (Hemimetabola)  
             *For Orthoptera and related orders, see 595.726–595.729; for  
             Homoptera, Heteroptera, Anoplura, Mallophaga, Thysanoptera, see  
             595.75*
- .732      \*Psocoptera  
             Variant names: Corrodentia, book lice
- .733      \*Odonata  
             Including damselflies  
             Class here dragonflies
- .734      \*Ephemeroptera (Mayflies)
- .735      \*Plecoptera (Stone flies)
- .736      \*Isoptera (Termites)
- .737      \*Embioptera
- .738      \*Zoraptera
- .739      \*Dermaptera (Earwigs)
- .74        \*Mecoptera, Trichoptera, Neuroptera, Megaloptera, Raphidioidea
- .744      \*Mecoptera (Scorpion flies)
- .745      \*Trichoptera (Caddisflies)

.747 \*Neuroptera (Lacewings), Megaloptera, Raphidioidea (snakeflies)

Megaloptera consist of Corydalidae (dobsonflies) and Sialidae (alderflies)

Including ant lions

Subdivisions are added for Neuroptera, Megaloptera, Raphidioidea together; for Neuroptera alone

.75 \*Homoptera, Heteroptera, Anoplura, Mallophaga, Thysanoptera

.752 \*Homoptera

Including aphids, cicadas, hoppers, plant lice, scale insects, whiteflies

Class comprehensive works on Homoptera and Heteroptera (sometimes regarded as a single order Hemiptera) in 595.754

.754 \*Heteroptera (True bugs)

Including bedbugs, water striders

Class here Hemiptera whether regarded as a synonym of Heteroptera or as an order including Homoptera and Heteroptera

*For Homoptera, see 595.752*

.756 \*Anoplura

Variant names: Siphunculata, sucking lice, true lice

Class here comprehensive works on Phthiraptera (apterous insects)

*For Mallophaga, see 595.757*

*See also 595.732 for book lice; also 595.752 for plant lice*

.757 \*Mallophaga

Variant names: bird lice, biting lice, chewing lice

.758 \*Thysanoptera (Thrips)

> 595.76–595.79 Endopterygota (Holometabola)

Class comprehensive works in 595.7

*For Mecoptera, Trichoptera, Neuroptera, Megaloptera, Raphidioidea, see 595.74*

.76 \*Coleoptera (Beetles)

Including Strepsiptera

Class here Polyphaga

- .762            \*Adephaga, Archostemata, Myxophaga  
                   Including Carabidae (ground beetles), Cicindelidae (tiger beetles),  
                   Cupedidae (reticulated beetles), Dytiscidae (true water beetles),  
                   Gyrinidae (whirligig beetles), Hydroscaphidae (skiff beetles)  
                   Subdivisions are added for Adephaga, Archostemata, Myxophaga  
                   together; for Adephaga alone

>            595.763–595.769 Polyphaga

Class comprehensive works in 595.76

- .763            \*Minor superfamilies of Polyphaga  
                   Including Bostrychoidea, Buprestoidea (metallic wood-boring beetles),  
                   Byrrhoidea (pill beetles), Cleroidea, Dascilloidea, Dermestoidea,  
                   Histeroidea, Hydrophiloidea (water scavenger beetles), Lymexyloidea  
                   (ship timber beetles), Rhipiceroidea  
                   Including checkered, death watch, hisler, pine, powder post, skin,  
                   soft-winged flower, spider beetles
- .764            \*Staphylinoidea, Cantharoidea, Dryopoidea, Chrysomeloidea,  
                   Scarabaeoidea
- .764 2           \*Staphylinoidea  
                   Including Pselaphidae, Silphidae (carrion beetles, burying beetles);  
                   mammal nest beetles  
                   Class here Staphylinidae (rove beetles)
- .764 4           \*Cantharoidea  
                   Including Cantharidae (soldier beetles), Lampyridae (fireflies and  
                   glowworms), Lycidae (net-winged beetles)
- .764 5           \*Dryopoidea  
                   Including Elminidae (riffle beetles)
- .764 8           \*Chrysomeloidea  
                   Including Chrysomelidae (leaf beetles), Cerambycidae (wood boring  
                   beetles); Diabrotica, flea beetles
- .764 9           \*Scarabaeoidea (Lamellicornia)  
                   Including Lucanidae (stag beetles, pinching bugs); dung, Japanese,  
                   June beetles; chafers, tumble bugs  
                   Class here Scarabaeidae
- .765            \*Elateroidea  
                   Including wireworms  
                   Class here Elateridae (click beetles, snapping beetles)

\*Add as instructed under 592–599

- .768        \*Curculionoidea (Snout beetles)  
               Including Anthribidae (fungus weevils), Scolytidae (bark beetles)  
               Class here Curculionidae (weevils)
- .769        \*Cucujoidea  
               Including Coccinellidae (ladybugs), Colydiidae (cylindrical bark beetles),  
               Meloidea (blister beetles), Mordellidae (tumbling flower beetles),  
               Nitidulidae (sap beetles), Tenebrionidae (darkling beetles)  
               Including flour and oil beetles, mealworms
- .77         \*Diptera (Flies) and Siphonaptera  
               Subdivisions are added for Diptera and Siphonaptera together, for Diptera  
               alone  
               Class maggots in 595.771392

---

>         595.772–595.774 Diptera

Class comprehensive works in 595.77

- .772        \*Nematocera (Long-horned flies)  
               Including Bibionidae (March flies), Cecidomyiidae (gall gnats and  
               midges), Chironomidae, Culicidae (mosquitoes), Psychodidae (moth  
               flies), Sciaridae, Simuliidae (blackflies and buffalo gnats), Tipulidae  
               (crane flies)  
               Including gnats, leatherjackets, midges  
               *See also 595.773 for March flies of family Tabanidae*
- .773        \*Brachycera  
               Variant name: Brachycera-Orthorrhapha  
               Including Asilidae (robber flies), Bombyliidae (bee flies),  
               Dolichopodidae (long-legged flies), Empididae (dance flies),  
               Rhagionidae (snipe flies), Stratiomyidae (soldier flies), Tabanidae  
               (horseflies), Therevidae (stiletto flies)  
               Including deerflies, March flies of family Tabanidae, mydas flies  
               *See also 595.772 for Bibionidae (March flies)*

.774

**\*Cyclorrhapha**

Variant name: Brachycera-Cyclorrhapha

Including Agromyzidae (leaf miner flies), Braulidae (bee lice), Calliphoridae (blowflies), Chamaemyiidae (aphid flies), Chyromyiidae, Diopsidae (stalk-eyed flies), Drosophilidae (small fruit flies), Ephydriidae (shore flies), Glossinidae, Hippoboscidae (louse flies), Muscidae, Oestridae (botflies and warble flies), Phoridae (humpbacked flies, coffin flies), Piophilidae (skipper flies), Sarcophagidae (flesh flies), Scatophagidae (dung flies), Sciomyzidae (marsh flies), Syrphidae (hover flies, flower flies), Tachinidae, Trypetidae (large fruit flies)

Including houseflies; bat, beach, rust, stable, tsetse, vinegar flies

.775

**\*Siphonaptera (Fleas)**

.78

**\*Lepidoptera**

Including Bombycoidea, Geometroidea, Noctuoidea, Pyralidoidea, Tineoidea, Tortricoida

Including armyworms, budworms, cutworms, Heliothis

Class here moths

Class caterpillars in 595.781392

.788

**\*Hesperioidea (Skippers)**

.789

**\*Papilionoidea (Butterflies)**

.79

**\*Hymenoptera**

Including Chalcidoidea, Ichneumonoidea, Scolioidea, Symphyta (sawflies)

Class here Apocrita, wasps, social insects

Class true wasps (Vespoidea) in 595.798

.796

**\*Formicidae (Ants)**

.798

**\*Vespoidea and Sphecoidea**

Class here true wasps

Subdivisions are added for Vespoidea and Sphecoidea together, for Vespoidea alone

Class wasps of superfamilies other than Vespoidea and Sphecoidea in 595.79

.799

**\*Apoidea (Bees)****596 \*Chordata**

Class here Vertebrata (Craniata, vertebrates), Tetrapoda (land vertebrates), amniotes

*For cold-blooded vertebrates, see 597; for Aves, see 598; for Mammalia, see 599*

[.073] Collections and exhibits of living vertebrates

Do not use; class in 590.73

.2 \*Urochordata (Tunicata)

Including Ascidiacea (sea squirts), Larvacea, Thaliacea

.4 \*Cephalochordata (Lancelets)

597 \*Cold-blooded vertebrates

Class here Pisces (Fishes), Osteichthyes (bony fishes), Actinopterygii (ray-finned fishes), Teleostei; ichthyology

Class specific kinds of Osteichthyes in 597.39 or 597.4–597.7; class specific kinds of Actinopterygii in 597.4–597.7; class specific kinds of Teleostei in 597.43–597.49 or 597.5–597.7

### SUMMARY

597.073 Collections and exhibits of living fishes

.176 36 Pond ecology

.2 Agnatha (Jawless fishes)

.3 Selachii, Holocephali, Sarcopterygii

.4 Miscellaneous superorders of Actinopterygii

.5 Protacanthopterygii

.6 Scopelomorpha, Paracanthopterygii, Acanthopterygii

.7 Perciformes

.8 Amphibia (Amphibians)

.9 Reptilia (Reptiles)

.073 Collections and exhibits of living fishes

Class here interdisciplinary works on aquariums

*For fish culture in aquariums, see 639.34*

.176 36 Pond ecology

Number built according to instructions under 592–599

Class fishpond ecosystems in 577.636

> 597.2–597.7 Pisces (Fishes)

Class comprehensive works in 597

.2 \*Agnatha (Jawless fishes)

Class here Cyclostomata (hagfishes and lampreys)

**.3 \*Selachii, Holocephali, Sarcopterygii**

Class here Chondrichthyes (cartilaginous fishes), Elasmobranchii, Lamniformes covering most sharks, Carcharhiniformes; sharks

Subdivisions are added for Selachii, Holocephali, Sarcopterygii together; for Selachii alone

Class typical sharks (family Carcharhinidae) in 597.34; class cartilaginous ganoids in 597.42

**> 597.33–597.36 Selachii**

Class here sharks

Class comprehensive works in 597.3

**.33 \*Lamnidae**

Variant names: Isuridae, mackerel sharks

Including mako sharks

Class here *Carcharodon carcharias* (great white shark)

Class comprehensive works on Lamniformes in 597.3

**.34 \*Carcharhinidae**

Variant name: typical sharks

Including Australian school, blacktip, bull, great blue, lemon, soupfin, tiger, whitetip sharks; tope

Class comprehensive works on Carcharhiniformes in 597.3

**.35 \*Rajiformes (Batoidei)**

Including guitarfishes, sawfishes, skates, torpedoes

Class here rays

**.36 \*Dogfishes**

Including Oxynotidae (Dalatiidae), Triakidae

Class here Squaliformes, Squalidae

**.38 \*Holocephali**

Class here Chimaerae (Chimaeriformes, chimeras, ghost sharks)

**.39 \*Sarcopterygii (Fleshy-finned fishes)**

Including Crossopterygii (coelacanth), Dipnoi (lungfishes); barramunda

**> 597.4–597.7 Actinopterygii (Ray-finned fishes)**

Class comprehensive works in 597

\*Add as instructed under 592–599

**.4 Miscellaneous superorders of Actinopterygii**

Limited to those named below

Class comprehensive works on Actinopterygii in 597

[.401–.409] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 597.01–597.09

**.41 \*Holostei**

Including Amiiformes (bowfins and river dogfishes), Semionotiformes (gars)

Class here bony ganoids

*See also 597.66 for garfish of order Atheriniformes*

**.42 \*Chondrostei**

Including Polypteriformes (bichirs and reedfishes)

Class here Acipenseriformes (sturgeons and paddlefishes); cartilaginous ganoids, comprehensive works on Ganoidei

*For bony ganoids, see 597.41*

**.43 \*Elopomorpha**

Including Elopiformes, Notacanthiformes; Saccopharyngidae (swallowers); congers, morays, tarpons

Class here Anguilliformes (eels), comprehensive works on eels

*For a specific kind of nonanguilliform eel, see the kind, e.g., electric eels 597.48, swamp eels 597.64*

*See also 597.7 for swallowers of family Chiasmodontidae*

**.432 \*Anguillidae (Freshwater eels)**

Class here *Anguilla*

Subdivisions are added for the family as a whole and for individual species

**.45 \*Clupeomorpha**

Including anchovies, menhadens, pilchards, sardines, shads

Class here Clupeiformes, Clupeidae (herring family)

Class sardines in sense of young bristling and herring in 597.452

**.452 \*Clupea**

Class here bristling (sprat), common herring

Young bristling and common herring are often called sardines

Class true sardine in 597.45

## .47 \*Osteoglossomorpha

Including Osteoglossiformes, Mormyriiformes; elephant fishes, freshwater butterfly fishes

*See also 597.72 for marine butterfly fishes*

## &gt; 597.48–597.49 Ostariophysi

Class Gonorhynchiformes in 597.5; class comprehensive works in 597.48

## .48 \*Cypriniformes

Including Characidae (Characins), Citharinidae (moonfishes), Gasteropelecidae (freshwater hatchetfishes), Gymnotidae (knifefishes); electric eels, headstanders, loaches, pencil fishes, piranhas, suckers, tetras, tigerfishes

Class here Characiformes, comprehensive works on Ostariophysi

*For Siluriformes, see 597.49*

*See also 597.5 for marine hatchetfishes; also 597.66 for Cyprinodontoidei; also 597.7 for moonfishes of order Perciformes*

## .482 \*Cyprinidae (Carp family)

Including bighead and grass carps; barbs (barbels), bream, chubs, daces, danios, freshwater zebra fishes, roach, shiners, squawfishes, tench

Class here minnows

*For Cyprinus carpio (common carp), see 597.483; for Carassius (goldfish), see 597.484*

*See also 597.68 for marine zebra fishes*

## .483 \*Cyprinus carpio (Common carp)

Class koi in 639.37483; class interdisciplinary works on carp in 641.392

## .484 \*Carassius (Goldfish)

Class interdisciplinary works on goldfish in 639.37484

## .49 \*Siluriformes (Catfishes)

## .492 \*Ictaluridae (North American freshwater catfishes)

Including Noturus (madtoms)

Class here Ictalurus; bullheads; blue, channel catfishes

Subdivisions are added for Ictaluridae as a whole and for individual species of Ictalurus

**.5 \*Protacanthopterygii**

Including Gonorrhynchiformes, Stomiiformes (Stomiatiiformes); Sternoptychidae (marine hatchetfishes); milkfish, mudminnows, smelts, stomiatooid dragonfishes, viperfishes

Class here Salmoniformes

Class Myctophiformes in 597.61

*See also 597.48 for freshwater hatchetfishes; also 597.64 for dragonfishes of order Pegasiformes*

&gt;

**597.55–597.59 Salmoniformes**

Class comprehensive works in 597.5

**.55 \*Salmonidae**

Including Australian grayling, whitefishes (whitings)

Class brook (speckled), Dolly Varden trout, lake trout in 597.554

*For salmon, see 597.56; for trout of genus Salmo, see 597.57*

*See also 597.633 for whittings of genus Gadus; also 597.72 for rock whiting; also 597.725 for whiting (kingfish)*

**.554 \*Salvelinus (Chars)**

Class here brook (speckled) trout, Dolly Varden trout, lake trout

Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species

**.559 \*Thymallus (Graylings)**

Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species

Class Australian grayling in 597.55

**.56 \*Salmon**

Class here *Salmo salar* (Atlantic salmon), Pacific salmon, comprehensive works on *Oncorhynchus*

Subdivisions are added for salmon as a whole and for individual species of salmon

*For Rhabdofario, see 597.57*

*See also 597.7 for Australian salmon*

- .57        \*Trout  
               Species of subgenus *Rhabdofario* and genus *Salmo* other than *Salmo salar*  
               Class here comprehensive works on *Salmo*  
               Subdivisions are added for trout as a whole and for individual species  
                   *For Salmo salar, comprehensive works on Oncorhynchus, see 597.56*  
                   *See also 597.554 for brook (speckled), Dolly Varden, lake trout*
- .59        \*Esocidae  
               Class here *Esox*; muskellunge (muskie), pickerels, pikes  
               Subdivisions are added for the family as a whole and for individual species  
               Class comprehensive works on *Esociformes* in 597.5  
                   *See also 597.758 for walleyed pike*
- .6         **Scopelomorpha, Paracanthopterygii, Acanthopterygii**  
               Class comprehensive works in 597
- [.601–.609]    Standard subdivisions  
                   Do not use; class in 597.01–597.09
- .61        \*Scopelomorpha  
               Including *Myctophidae* (lantern fishes), *Synodontidae* (lizard fishes);  
               spiderfishes  
               Class here *Myctophiformes*
- .62        \*Paracanthopterygii  
               Including *Batrachoidiformes* (toadfishes), *Gobiesociformes* (clingfishes),  
               *Percopsiformes*, *Polymixiiformes* (beard fishes)  
               Including anglerfishes, batfishes, cavefishes, frogfishes, goosefishes,  
               trout-perches  
               Class here *Lophiiformes*  
                   *For cave fishes of superorder Ostariophysii, see 597.48; for Gadiformes,*  
                   *see 597.63*
- .63        \*Gadiformes  
               Including *Carapidae* (*Carapodidae*, pearlfishes), *Macrouridae* (grenadiers),  
               *Moridae* (deep sea cods), *Ophidiidae* (brotulas and cusk eels), *Zoarcidae*  
               (eelpouts)

- .632      \*Gadidae, Merlucciidae (Merlucciid hakes), Pycidae (Phycid hakes)  
             Including arctic cod, burbot, haddocks, hakes, pollocks  
             Class here Gadoidei  
             Subdivisions are added for Gadidae, Merlucciidae, Pycidae together, for  
             Gadidae alone  
                     *For Gadus (cods), see 597.633*
- .633      \*Gadus (Cods)  
             Class here Atlantic cod, Greenland cod, Pacific cod, whittings  
                     *See also 597.55 for whittings (whitefishes); also 597.63 for deep sea  
                     cods; also 597.632 for arctic cod; also 597.72 for rock whittings; also  
                     597.725 for whittings (kingfish)*
- .64      \*Acanthopterygii (Spiny-rayed fishes)  
             Including Beryciformes, Channiformes (snakeheads), Dactylopteriformes,  
             Lampridiformes, Pegasiformes (dragonfishes, seamoths), Synbranchiformes  
             (swamp eels), Tetraodontiformes, Zeiformes  
             Including alfonsinos, boar fishes, boxfishes, cowfishes, filefishes, John  
             Dories, lantern-eyed fishes, oarfishes, ocean sunfishes, opah, orange  
             roughy, pinecone fishes, porcupine fishes, puffer fishes, squirrelfishes  
             (soldierfishes), triggerfishes, unicorn fishes, whale fishes  
                     *For Atheriniformes, see 597.66; for Gasterosteiformes, see 597.67; for  
                     Scorpaeniformes, see 597.68; for Pleuronectiformes, see 597.69; for  
                     Perciformes, see 597.7*  
                     *See also 597.2 for lampreys; also 597.5 for stomiatooid dragonfishes*
- .66      \*Atheriniformes  
             Including Cyprinodontoidei, Exocoetidae (flying fishes); garfish, halfbeaks,  
             needlefishes, silversides, topminnows  
             Class Cyprinodontidae and topminnows of families Cyprinodontidae and  
             Poeciliidae in 597.665–597.667  
                     *See also 597.41 for gars of order Semionotiformes; also 597.48 for  
                     Cypriniformes*
- .665      \*Cyprinodontidae (Killifishes)
- .667      \*Poeciliidae (Live-bearers)  
             Including guppies, mollies, platy, swordtail
- .67      \*Gasterosteiformes  
             Including ghost pipefishes, trumpet fishes
- .672      \*Gasterosteidae (Sticklebacks)  
             Subdivisions are added for the family as a whole and for individual  
             genera and species

- .679        \*Syngnathidae  
               Class here pipefishes  
               Subdivisions are added for the family as a whole and for individual species of pipefishes  
               Class ghost pipefishes in 597.67
- .679 8       \*Sea horses  
               Class here Hippocampus  
               Subdivisions are added for sea horses as a whole and for individual genera and species
- .68         \*Scorpaeniformes  
               Including gurnards, marine zebra fishes, rockfishes, scorpion fishes  
               *See also 597.482 for freshwater zebra fishes*
- .69         \*Pleuronectiformes  
               Variant names: Heterosomata, flatfishes  
               Including California halibut, soles, turbot  
               Class here flounders  
               Class turbot of family Pleuronectidae in 597.694
- .694         \*Pleuronectidae (Right-eyed flounders)  
               Including Greenland halibut, plaice, winter flounder  
               *For Hippoglossus (halibuts), see 597.695*
- .695         \*Hippoglossus (Halibuts)  
               Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species  
               *See also 597.69 for California halibut; also 597.694 for Greenland halibut*
- .7          \*Perciformes  
               Including Mugilidae (mulletts), Chiasmodontidae (swallowers); Australian salmon, barracudas, betta (Siamese fighting fish), big game fishes, cardinal fishes, goatfishes, gobies, grunts, halfmoons, labyrinth fishes, moonfishes, parrotfishes, spiny eels, stargazers, wrasses  
               Class here Percoidei  
               *See also 597.43 for swallowers of family Saccopharyngidae; also 597.48 for moonfishes of family Citharinidae*

- .72        \*Percoidea
- Including Centropomidae (robalos, snooks), Chaetodontidae (marine butterfly fishes), Latidae (giant perches), Lethrinidae, Lutjanidae (snappers), Pomacanthidae (angelfishes), Pomacentridae (damselfishes), Sparidae (porgies, sea breams)
- Including dolphinfishes, garibaldi, jacks, rock whiting, scups; comprehensive works on angelfishes
- For basses and related fishes, see 597.73; for Cichlidae, angelfishes of cichlid family, see 597.74; for Percidae, see 597.75*
- See also 597.47 for freshwater butterfly fishes*
- .725        \*Sciaenidae
- Variant names: drums, croakers
- Including Sciaenops, red drum (channel bass), weakfish, whiting (kingfish)
- See also 597.55 for whittings (whitefishes); also 597.633 for whittings of genus Gadus; also 597.72 for rock whiting*
- .73        \*Basses and related fishes
- Including Grammatidae (basslets), Percichthyidae (temperate basses, perch trout)
- Including Australian bass; macquarie perch
- Subdivisions are added for basses and related fishes together, for basses alone
- For channel bass, see 597.725*
- .732        \*Moronidae
- Class here Morone; striped, white bass; white perch
- .736        \*Serranidae (Sea basses)
- Including graysby, groupers
- .738        \*Centrarchidae
- Including crappies; calico and rock basses
- Class here sunfishes
- .738 8      \*Micropterus (Black basses)
- Class here largemouth, smallmouth basses
- Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species
- .74        \*Cichlidae
- Including Pterophyllum (angelfishes), Symphysodon (discus fishes); tilapias
- Class comprehensive works on angelfishes in 597.72

- .75        \*Percidae  
             Including perches  
             Class here darters  
             *See also 597.72 for giant perches; also 597.732 for white perch*
- .758       \*Stizostedion  
             Variant names: Lucioperca, pike perches  
             Class here sauger, walleye (walleyed pike), zander
- .77        \*Blennioidei (Blennies)
- .78        \*Scombroidei  
             Including Gempylidae, Istiophoridae, Trichiuridae (cutlass fishes), Xiphiidae (swordfish)  
             Including billfishes, marlins, sailfishes, spearfishes
- .782       \*Scombridae  
             Class here mackerel  
             *For tunas, see 597.783*
- .783       \*Tunas  
             Class here Thunnus; albacore, bonito, skipjack  
             Subdivisions are added for tunas as a whole and for individual species
- .8        \*Amphibia (Amphibians)**  
             Class here Anura (Salientia)  
             Class herpetology, comprehensive works on Amphibia and Reptilia in 597.9
- .82        \*Gymnophiona  
             Variant names: Apoda, Caecilians
- .85        \*Urodela  
             Variant names: Caudata, salamanders  
             Including Sirenidae (sirens); congo eels, hellbender, mud puppies, newts
- .858       \*Ambystomatidae (Mole salamanders)  
             Class here Ambystoma, axolotl  
             Subdivisions are added for the genus Ambystoma and for individual species of Ambystoma
- .859       \*Plethodontidae (Lungless salamanders)
- .859 2     \*Plethodon  
             Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species

\*Add as instructed under 592-599

- > 597.86–597.89 Anura (Salientia)
- Class here frogs and toads
- Class comprehensive works in 597.8
- .86 \*Pipoidea, Discoglossoidea, Pelobatoidea
- Including fire-bellied and midwife toads; spadefoots
- Class comprehensive works on toads in 597.87; class comprehensive works on frogs in 597.89
- .865 \*Pipoidea
- Including burrowing and Surinam toads
- Class here Pipidae (tongueless frogs)
- .865 4 \*Xenopus
- Class here African clawed frog
- Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species
- .87 \*Bufonoidea
- Including Centrolenidae (leaf frogs), Rhinodermatidae (mouth-breeding frogs)
- Class here Bufonidae, comprehensive works on toads
- For a specific kind of toad of a superfamily other than Bufonoidea, see the kind, e.g., midwife toads 597.86*
- .872 \*Bufo
- Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species
- .875 \*Leptodactylidae
- .875 4 \*Eleutherodactylus
- Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species
- .877 \*Dendrobatidae (Poison arrow frogs)
- .878 \*Hylidae (Tree frogs)
- .878 2 \*Hyla
- Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and individual species

- .89        **\*Ranoidea**  
             Including Microhylidae  
             Class here Ranidae, comprehensive works on frogs  
             *For a specific kind of frog of a superfamily other than Ranoidea, see the kind, e.g., tree frogs 597.878*
- .892       **\*Rana**  
             Class here bullfrogs  
             Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species
- .9         **\*Reptilia (Reptiles)**  
             Class here herpetology, comprehensive works on Amphibia and Reptilia  
             *For Amphibia, see 597.8*

### SUMMARY

- |        |                                  |
|--------|----------------------------------|
| 597.92 | <b>Chelonia</b>                  |
| .94    | <b>Lepidosauria</b>              |
| .95    | <b>Sauria (Lizards)</b>          |
| .96    | <b>Serpentes (Snakes)</b>        |
| .98    | <b>Crocodylia (Crocodilians)</b> |
- .92        **\*Chelonia**  
             Variant names: Testudines, turtles  
             Class here Testudinoidea
- [.921 77]        Marine turtles  
                     Do not use; class in 597.928
- .922       **\*Chelydridae (Snapping turtles)**  
             Subdivisions are added for the family as a whole and for individual genera and species
- .923       **\*Kinosternidae**  
             Including musk turtles  
             Class here Kinosternon (mud turtles)  
             Subdivisions are added for the genus Kinosternon as a whole and for individual species of Kinosternon
- .924       **\*Testudinidae**  
             Variant names: terrestrial turtles, tortoises
- .924 6       **\*Geochelone**  
             Including Galapagos tortoise

\*Add as instructed under 592-599

- .925        \*Emydidae  
               Including Terrapene (North American box turtles)  
               Class here terrapins
- .925 7       \*Clemmys  
               Class here bog, spotted, wood turtles  
               Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species
- .925 9       \*Chrysemys, Pseudemys, Deirochelys (Chicken turtle), Graptemys (Map turtles), Malaclemys (Diamond-backed terrapin), Trachemys (Sliders)
- .925 92       \*Chrysemys (Painted turtle)
- .925 94       \*Pseudemys  
               Class here cooters, red-bellied turtles  
               Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species
- .926        \*Trionychidae (Soft-shelled turtles), Carettochelyidae (New Guinea plateless turtle), Dermatemydidae, Platysternidae  
               Subdivisions are added for Trionychidae, Carettochelyidae, Dermatemydidae, Platysternidae together; for Trionychidae alone
- .928        \*Chelonioidea (Sea turtles)  
               Class here Cheloniidae, marine turtles  
               Subdivisions are added for the family Cheloniidae and for individual genera and species of Cheloniidae
- .928 9       \*Dermochelyidae (Leatherback turtle)
- .929        \*Pleurodira (Side-necked turtles)  
               Including Chelyidae (snake-necked turtles), Pelomedusidae
- .94        \*Lepidosauria  
               Class here Squamata (scaly reptiles)  
               For Sauria, see 597.95; for Serpentes, see 597.96
- .945        \*Rhynchocephalia (Beaked reptiles)  
               Class here Sphenodontidae (tuatara)
- .948        \*Amphisbaenia (Worm lizards)  
               Class here Amphisbaenidae
- .95        \*Sauria (Lizards)  
               Class comprehensive works on Sauria and Serpentes in 597.94

- .952        \*Gekkonidea  
              Including Anelytropsidae, Dibamidae, Pygopodidae (flap-footed lizards)  
              Class here Gekkonidae (geckos)
- .954        \*Iguanidae  
              Class here Iguanioidea  
              *For Agamidae, see 597.955*
- .954 2      \*Iguanas
- .954 8      \*Anolis (Anoles)  
              Class here false or New World chameleons
- .955        \*Agamidae  
              Including Draco (flying lizards)
- .956        \*Chamaeleontidae (Chameleons)  
              Subdivisions are added for the family as a whole and for individual  
              genera and species  
              Class here Rhiptoglossidea  
              *See also 597.9548 for false or New World chameleons*
- .957        \*Scincidae (Skinks)  
              Class here Scincomorphoidea  
              *For Teiidae, Cordylidae, Lacertidae, see 597.958*
- .957 3      \*Eumeces
- .958        \*Teiidae, Cordylidae (Girdle-tailed lizards), Lacertidae (Old World  
              runners)
- .958 2      \*Teiidae (New World runners)  
              Including Ameiva
- .958 25     \*Cnemidophorus  
              Variant names: racerunners, whiptails  
              Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual  
              species
- .959        \*Anguinomorphoidea  
              Including Anniellidae (California legless lizards), Xenosauridae
- .959 2      \*Anguidae  
              Including alligator and glass lizards

- .959 5           \*Helodermatidae  
                   Including beaded lizard  
                   Class here Heloderma
- .959 52           \*Heloderma suspectum (Gila monster)
- .959 6           \*Varanidae (Monitor lizards) and Lanthanotidae (Earless monitor lizard)  
                   Class here Varanus  
                   Subdivisions are added for Varanidae and Lanthanotidae together, for  
                   Varanidae alone
- .959 68           \*Varanus komodoensis (Komodo dragon)
- .959 8           \*Xantusiidae (Night lizards)
- .96            \*Serpentes (Snakes)  
                   Class here Colubroidea
- [.961 77]           Marine snakes  
                   Do not use; class in 597.965
- .962            \*Colubridae  
                   Including egg-eating and false coral snakes  
                   Class here Colubrinae  
                   Class false coral snake of family Aniliidae in 597.967
- .963            \*Viperidae (Vipers)  
                   Class here adders  
                   Class death adders in 597.964
- .963 6            \*Vipera  
                   Class here asp; common, Lebanese, Portuguese, sand adders  
                   Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual  
                   species
- .963 8            \*Crotalus (Rattlesnakes) and Sistrurus (Pigmy rattlesnakes)  
                   Subdivisions are added for Crotalus and Sistrurus together, for  
                   Crotalus alone, for individual species of Crotalus
- .964            \*Elapidae  
                   Including death adders
- .964 2            \*Cobras  
                   Class here Naja  
                   Subdivisions are added for the genus Naja and for individual species  
                   of Naja

- .964 4      \***Coral snakes**  
                   Class here *Micrurus*  
                   Subdivisions are added for the genus *Micrurus* and for individual species of *Micrurus*  
                   Class false coral snakes of family Colubridae in 597.962; class false coral snake of family Aniliidae in 597.967
- .965        \***Hydrophiidae (Sea snakes)**  
                   Class here marine snakes
- .967        \***Booidea (Henophidia)**  
                   Including Acrochordidae (wart snakes), Aniliidae (false coral snake), Uropeltidae (pipe and shieldtail snakes), Xenopeltidae (sunbeam snakes); anacondas, wood snakes  
                   Class here Boidae, Boinae (Boas)  
                   Class false coral snakes of family Colubridae in 597.962
- .967 8      \***Pythoninae (Pythons)**  
                   Class here *Python*  
                   Subdivisions are added for the genus *Python* and for individual species of *Python*
- .969        \***Typhlopoidea (Scolecophidia)**  
                   Including Leptotyphlopidae (slender blind snakes), Typhlopidae (blind or worm snakes)
- .98         \***Crocodylia (Crocodilians)**  
                   Including gavial
- .982        \***Crocodylidae (Crocodiles)**  
                   Class here *Crocodylus*  
                   Subdivisions are added for the genus *Crocodylus* and for individual species of *Crocodylus*
- .984        \***Alligatoridae**  
                   Including caimans  
                   Class here alligators, *Alligator mississippiensis*

## 598      \***Aves (Birds)**

Class here land birds, ornithology

Class specific kinds of land birds in 598.5–598.9; class comprehensive works on warm-blooded vertebrates in 599; class interdisciplinary works on species of domestic birds in 636.5

## SUMMARY

- 598.072 3                    Descriptive research  
 .163–.176                [Beneficial and aquatic birds]  
 .3                    Gruiformes, Charadriiformes, Ciconiiformes, Phoenicopteriformes  
 .4                    Miscellaneous orders of water birds  
 .5                    Palaeognathae  
 .6                    Galliformes and Columbiformes  
 .7                    Miscellaneous orders of land birds  
 .8                    Passeriformes (Perching birds)  
 .9                    Falconiformes, Strigiformes, Caprimulgiformes
- .072 3                    Descriptive research
- .072 32                    Bird marking and census taking  
                               Number built according to instructions under 592–599  
                               Class here birdbanding
- [.072 340 94–.072 340 99]                Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
     Do not use; class in 598.072344–598.072349
- .072 344–.072 349                Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world  
     Add to base number 598.07234 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g.,  
     bird watching in East Africa 598.07234676
- .163                    Beneficial birds  
                               Number built according to instructions under 592–599  
                               Including game birds, wildfowl  
                               Class lowland game birds, waterfowl in 598.41; class upland game birds  
                               in 598.6
- .176                    Aquatic birds  
                               Number built according to instructions under 592–599  
                               Class here water birds  
                               Class waterfowl in 598.41  
     *For specific kinds of water birds, see 598.3–598.4*
- 
- >                    **598.3–598.4 Water birds**  
                               Class comprehensive works in 598.176
- .3                    \*Gruiformes, Charadriiformes, Ciconiiformes, Phoenicopteriformes  
                               Class here wading birds

- .32      **\*Gruiformes**  
           Including Gruidae (cranes), Otididae (bustards), Psophiidae (trumpeters),  
           Rallidae (rail family), Turnicidae (button quails)  
           Including coots, gallinules
- .33      **\*Charadriiformes**  
           Including Charadriidae (plovers and lapwings), Alcidae, Haematopodidae  
           (oystercatchers), Jacanidae (jacanas), Phalaropodidae (phalaropes),  
           Scolopacidae  
           Including auks, murres, puffins, sandpipers, snipes, turnstones, woodcocks  
           Class here Charadrii, shore birds
- .338     **\*Lari**  
           Including Rynchopidae (skimmers), Stercorariidae (skuas and jaegers)  
           Class here Laridae (gulls and terns)
- .34      **\*Ciconiiformes**  
           Including Ciconiidae (storks), Ardeidae, Threskiornithidae (ibis and  
           spoonbills)  
           Including bitterns, egrets, herons  
           Class Charadriiformes in 598.33
- .35      **\*Phoenicopteriformes (Flamingos)**  
           Class here Phoenicopteridae  
           Subdivisions are added for the genus Phoenicopterus and for individual  
           species of Phoenicopterus
- .4      Miscellaneous orders of water birds**  
           Limited to those named below  
           Class comprehensive works on water birds in 598.176
- [.401–.409]    Standard subdivisions  
                   Do not use; class in 598.17601–598.17609
- .41      **\*Anseriformes**  
           Including Anhimidae (screamers)  
           Class here Anatidae (waterfowl); ducks; comprehensive works on lowland  
           game birds  
           *For a specific kind of lowland game bird, see the kind, e.g., murres*  
           598.33

- 
- > 598.412–598.415 Ducks
- Class comprehensive works in 598.41
- .412 \*Aix  
Including mandarin duck
- .412 3 \*Aix sponsa (Wood duck)
- .413 \*Anas  
Including black duck, blue-winged teal
- .413 4 \*Anas platyrhynchos (Mallard)
- .414 \*Aythya  
Including canvasback
- .415 \*Mergini  
Including eiders, goldeneyes, mergansers
- .417 \*Anserini (Geese)
- .417 3 \*Anser  
Including greylag and white-fronted geese
- .417 5 \*Chen  
Class here snow, blue goose
- .417 8 \*Branta  
Class here Canada goose
- .418 \*Cygninae (Swans)  
Class here Cygnus
- .418 4 \*Cygnus buccinator (Trumpeter swan)
- .418 7 \*Cygnus olor (Mute swan)
- .42 \*Procellariiformes  
Including Procellariidae, Diomedidae (albatrosses), Hydrobatidae (storm petrels), Pelecanoididae (diving petrels)  
Including fulmars, shearwaters
- .43 \*Pelecaniformes  
Including Pelecanidae (pelicans), Fregatidae (frigate birds), Phaethontidae (tropic birds), Phalacrocoracidae (cormorants), Sulidae (boobies)
- .44 \*Gaviiformes and Podicipediformes  
Class here Colymbiformes

\*Add as instructed under 592–599

- .442        \*Gaviiformes (Loons)  
 .443        \*Podicipediformes (Grebes)  
             Class here Podicipedidae  
 .47         \*Sphenisciformes (Penguins)

---

>        **598.5–598.9 Land birds**

Class comprehensive works in 598

**.5        \*Palaeognathae**

Class here ratites

.52        \*Rheiformes and Struthioniformes

.522       \*Rheiformes

Subdivisions are added for the genus Rhea as a whole and for individual species of Rhea

.524       \*Struthioniformes (Ostrich)

.53        \*Casuariiformes

Including emu

Class here Casuariidae (cassowaries)

Subdivisions are added for the genus Casuarius and for individual species of Casuarius

.54        \*Apterygiformes (Kiwis)

Subdivisions are added for the genus Apteryx and for individual species of Apteryx

Sometimes classed with extinct moas as Dinornithiformes

.55        \*Tinamiformes (Tinamous)

Class here Tinamidae

**.6        \*Galliformes and Columbiformes**

Class here Galli, poultry, upland game birds

Subdivisions are added for Galliformes and Columbiformes together, for Galliformes alone

Class interdisciplinary works on domestic poultry in 636.5

*For a specific kind of upland game bird, see the kind, e.g., crows 598.864*

---

>        **598.62–598.64 Galliformes**

Class comprehensive works in 598.6

\*Add as instructed under 592–599

- .62        \*Phasianidae
- .623        \*Partridges  
            Including francolins
- .623 2      \*Perdix perdix  
            Variant names: common partridge, gray partridge, Hungarian  
                            partridge
- .625        \*Pheasants  
            Including Gallus (chickens, jungle fowl)  
            Class results of experimental studies in internal biological processes  
            using chickens in 571–573, plus notation 18625 from add instructions  
            in 571–573, e.g., embryology in domestic chickens 571.8618625; class  
            interdisciplinary works on Gallus (chickens) in 636.5
- .625 2      \*Phasianus colchicus (Ring-necked pheasant)
- .625 8      \*Pavo (Peafowl)  
            Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole, and for individual  
            species
- .627        \*Quails  
            Including Gambel's quail  
            *See also 598.32 for button quails*
- .627 2      \*Coturnix  
            Including common and Japanese quails  
            *See also 598.6273 for bobwhites*
- .627 3      \*Colinus (Bobwhites)  
            Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual  
            species
- .63        \*Tetraonidae (Grouse)  
            *See also 598.65 for sand grouse*
- .633        \*Lagopus (Ptarmigans)  
            Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual  
            species
- .634        \*Tetrao  
            Including black grouse, capercaillies
- .635        \*Bonasa  
            Class here ruffed grouse
- .636        \*Centrocercus (Sage grouse)

- .637            \*Tympanuchus  
                  Subdivisions are added for either of both species of prairie chickens
- .637 8           \*Tympanuchus phasianellus (Sharp-tailed grouse)
- .64            \*Other families of Galliformes  
                  Including Cracidae, Megapodiidae (brush turkeys, mound builders),  
                  Numididae (Guinea fowl)  
                  Including chachalacas, curassows, guans
- .645           \*Meleagrididae (Turkeys)  
                  Class here Meleagris gallopavo, wild turkeys  
                  Class interdisciplinary works on turkeys in 636.592
- .65            \*Columbiformes  
                  Including Pteroclididae (sand grouse), dodos  
                  Class here Columbidae (doves, pigeons)
- .7            Miscellaneous orders of land birds**  
                  Limited to those named below  
                  Class comprehensive works on land birds in 598
- [.701–.709]    Standard subdivisions  
                  Do not use; class in 598.01–598.09
- .71            \*Psittaciformes  
                  Including budgerigars, cockatoos, kakapo, lorries, macaws, parakeets,  
                  rosellas  
                  Class here Psittacidae, parrots
- .72            \*Piciformes  
                  Including Picidae, Bucconidae (puffbirds), Capitonidae (barbets), Galbulidae  
                  (jacamars), Indicatoridae (honey guides), Ramphastidae (toucans);  
                  woodpeckers  
                  Class here Pici
- .73            \*Trogoniformes (Trogons)  
                  Including quetzals  
                  Class here Trogonidae
- .74            \*Cuculiformes  
                  Including Cuculidae, Musophagidae (touracos), Opisthocomidae (hoatzin);  
                  anis, cuckoos, roadrunners

- .75      \*Coliiformes  
           Class here Coliidae (mousebirds)
- .76      \*Apodiformes
- .762     \*Apodi (Swifts)  
           Including Hemiprocnidae (tree swifts)  
           Class here Apodidae (true swifts)
- .764     \*Trochili (Hummingbirds)  
           Class here Trochilidae
- .78      \*Coraciiformes  
           Including Coraciidae (rollers), Alcedinidae (kingfishers), Bucerotidae (hornbills), Meropidae (bee eaters)
- .8      \*Passeriformes (Perching birds)**  
           Including bell magpies, cuckoo shrikes, honey eaters, magpie larks, vanga shrikes, wattled crows, wood shrikes, wood swallows  
           Class here Oscines (Passeres, songbirds)  
           *See Manual at 598.824–598.88*
- .82      \*Nonoscine Passeriformes, Paridae, Alaudidae, Hirundinidae, Certhiidae, Sittidae  
           Including creepers, nuthatches
- .822     \*Nonoscine Passeriformes  
           Including Cotingidae (cotingas), Dendrocolaptidae (woodcreepers), Eurylaimidae (broadbills), Menuridae (lyrebirds), Pipridae (manakins), Pittidae (pittas)  
           *For Tyrannidae, see 598.823*
- .822 5    \*Fumariidae (Ovenbirds)
- .822 6    \*Formicariidae (Antbirds)
- .823     \*Tyrannidae  
           Variant names: tyrant flycatchers, New World flycatchers  
           *See also 598.848 for Old World flycatchers*
- .824     \*Paridae (Titmice)  
           Including chickadees
- .825     \*Alaudidae (Larks)  
           Class magpie larks in 598.8  
           *See also 598.874 for meadowlarks*

- .826        \*Hirundinidae  
               Including martins  
               Class here swallows  
               Class wood swallows in 598.8
- .83         \*Cinclidae, Troglodytidae, Timaliidae, Chamaeidae
- .832        \*Cinclidae  
               Variant names: dippers, water ouzels
- .833        \*Troglodytidae (Wrens)
- .834        \*Timaliidae (Babblers) and Chamaeidae (wren-tit)  
               Subdivisions are added for Timaliidae and Chamaeidae together, for  
               Timaliidae alone
- .84         \*Turdidae, Sylviidae, Mimidae, Muscicapidae
- .842        \*Turdidae (Thrushes)  
               Including bluebirds, nightingales, Old World blackbird, robins
- .843        \*Sylviidae (Old World warblers)  
               Including kinglets
- .844        \*Mimidae  
               Including catbirds, mockingbirds, thrashers
- .848        \*Muscicapidae (Old World flycatchers)  
               *See also 598.823 for New World flycatchers*
- .85         \*Bombycillidae, Ptilonotidae, Motacillidae
- .852        \*Bombycillidae (Waxwings)
- .853        \*Ptilonotidae (Silky flycatchers)
- .854        \*Motacillidae  
               Including wagtails  
               Class here pipits
- .86         \*Laniidae, Sturnidae, Corvidae, Paradisaeidae
- .862        \*Laniidae (Shrikes)  
               Class cuckoo shrikes, vanga shrikes, wood shrikes in 598.8  
               *See also 598.878 for pepper-shrikes and shrike-vireos*
- .863        \*Sturnidae (Starlings)  
               Including mynas, oxpeckers

- .864        \*Corvidae  
              Including crows, jays, magpies, ravens, rooks  
              Class bell magpies, magpie larks, wattled crows in 598.8
- .865        \*Paradisaeidae (Birds of paradise)
- .87         \*Parulidae, Icteridae, Thraupidae, Tersinidae, Vireonidae, Cyclarhidae,  
              Vireolaniidae
- .872        \*Parulidae (New World warblers)
- .874        \*Icteridae  
              Including New World blackbirds, cowbirds, grackles, meadowlarks,  
              orioles  
              *See also 598.825 for larks of family Alaudidae*
- .875        \*Thraupidae (Tanagers) and Tersinidae (swallow-tanager)  
              Subdivisions are added for Thraupidae and Tersinidae together, for  
              Thraupidae alone
- .878        \*Vireonidae (Vireos), Cyclarhidae (pepper-shrikes), Vireolaniidae  
              (shrike-vireos)  
              Including greenlets  
              Subdivisions are added for Vireonidae, Cyclarhidae, Vireolaniidae  
              together; for Vireonidae alone
- .88         \*Finches and related birds  
              Including Catamblyrhynchidae (plush-capped finch)  
              Subdivisions are added for finches and related birds together, for finches  
              alone
- .883        \*Fringillidae (New World seedeaters)  
              Including Emberizinae (Emberizidae); buntings, cardinals, Darwin's  
              finches, grosbeaks, juncos, towhees, comprehensive works on sparrows  
              *For sparrows of genus Passer, see 598.887*
- .885        \*Carduelidae  
              Including bullfinches, canaries, crossbills, goldfinches, hawfinches,  
              redpolls, rosefinches, siskins
- .886        \*Estrildidae (Waxbills)  
              Including weaver finch  
              Class comprehensive works on weaver finches in 598.887

- .887      **\*Ploceidae**  
             Variant names: weaverbirds, weavers  
             Including queleas; sparrows of genus *Passer*, e.g., English sparrow, house sparrow  
             Class here comprehensive works on weaver finches  
             *For weaver finch of family Estrildidae, see 598.886*
- .9      \*Falconiformes, Strigiformes, Caprimulgiformes**  
             Including Sagittariidae (secretary bird)  
             Class here birds of prey, raptors  
             Subdivisions are added for Falconiformes, Strigiformes, Caprimulgiformes together; for Falconiformes alone
- 
- v      598.92–598.96 Falconiformes  
             Class comprehensive works in 598.9
- .92      **\*Cathartidae (New World vultures)**  
             Including condors, king vulture, turkey vulture (turkey buzzard)  
             Class here comprehensive works on vultures  
             *For Old World vultures, see 598.94*
- .93      **\*Pandionidae (Osprey)**
- .94      **\*Accipitridae**  
             Including true buzzards, harriers, Old World vultures  
             Class comprehensive works on vultures in 598.92  
             *See also 598.92 for turkey buzzard*
- .942      **\*Eagles**  
             *For Haliaeetus leucocephalus (bald eagle), see 598.943*
- .942 3      **\*Aquila chrysaetos (Golden eagle)**
- .943      **\*Haliaeetus leucocephalus (Bald eagle)**
- .944      **\*Hawks**
- .945      **\*Kites**
- .96      **\*Falconidae (Falcons)**  
             Including caracaras, kestrels

- .97      **\*Strigiformes (Owls)**  
           Including Tytonidae (barn and grass owls)  
           Class here Strigidae
- .99      **\*Caprimulgiformes**  
           Including Nyctibiidae (potoos), Podargidae (frogmouths); oilbird,  
           whippoorwill  
           Class here Caprimulgidae (goatsuckers, nighthawks, nightjars)

## **599      \*Mammalia (Mammals)**

Class here warm-blooded vertebrates, Eutheria (placental mammals)

Class interdisciplinary works on species of domestic mammals in 636

*For Aves, see 598*

*See Manual at 599*

### **SUMMARY**

- 599.144--163      **[Head and beneficial mammals]**
- .2      **Marsupialia and Monotremata**
  - .3      **Miscellaneous orders of Eutheria (placental mammals)**
  - .4      **Chiroptera (Bats)**
  - .5      **Cetacea and Sirenia**
  - .6      **Ungulates**
  - .7      **Carnivora**
  - .8      **Primates**
  - .9      **Homo sapiens (Humans)**

[.073]      Collections of living mammals

Do not use; class in 590.73

.144      **Head**

Number built according to instructions under 592--599

Including ears, eyes, mouth, nose

*For fangs, horns, tusks, see 599.147*

.163      **Beneficial mammals**

Number built according to instructions under 592--599

Including game mammals

Class big game animals in 599.6; class fur-bearing animals in 599.7

[.177]      **Marine mammals**

Do not use; class in 599.5

**.2 \*Marsupialia and Monotremata**

Class here Diprotodontia, Metatheria

Subdivisions are added for Marsupialia and Monotremata together, for Marsupialia alone

&gt;

599.22–599.27 Marsupialia

Class comprehensive works in 599.2

&gt;

599.22–599.25 Diprotodonta

Class comprehensive works in 599.2

**.22 \*Macropodidae**

Including rat and tree kangaroos

Class here wallabies

**.222 \*Macropus**

Including gray kangaroos, wallaroos

Class here comprehensive works on kangaroos

Class rat and tree kangaroos in 599.22

**.222 3 \*Macropus rufus (Red kangaroo)****.23 \*Australasian possums**

Including Burramyidae, Petauridae, Tarsipedidae

Class here Phalangeroidea

*For Macropodidae, see 599.22*

*See also 599.276 for American opossums*

**.232 \*Phalangeridae**

Including brush-tailed and scaly-tailed possums

Class here Phalanger (cuscuses)

**.24 \*Vombatidae (Wombats)****.25 \*Phascolarctidae (Koala)****.26 \*Peramelina (Bandicoots)**

Class here Peramelidae

- .27      \***Marsupicarnivora and Paucituberculata**  
           Including *Caenolestidae* (shrew opossums), *Dasyuridae*, *Microbiotheriidae* (monito del monte); marsupial cats, mice, moles, rats; numbat, Tasmanian devil, thylacine (Tasmanian tiger, Tasmanian wolf)  
           Subdivisions are added for Marsupicarnivora and Paucituberculata together, for Marsupicarnivora alone

- .276     \***Didelphidae (American opossums)**  
           *See also 599.23 for Australasian possums*

- .29      \***Monotremata**  
           Including *Ornithorhynchidae* (platypus), *Tachyglossidae* (echidnas, spiny anteaters)  
           Class here Prototheria

>      **599.3–599.9 Eutheria (Placental mammals)**

Class comprehensive works in 599

.3      **Miscellaneous orders of Eutheria (placental mammals)**

Limited to those named below

**SUMMARY**

599.31	<b>Edentata (Xenarthra), Pholidota, Tubulidentata</b>
.32	<b>Lagomorpha</b>
.33	<b>Insectivora and related orders</b>
.35	<b>Rodentia (Rodents)</b>
.36	<b>Sciuridae (Squirrel family)</b>
.37	<b>Castoridae (Beavers)</b>

- [.301–.309]   Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 599.01–599.09

- .31      \***Edentata (Xenarthra), Pholidota, Tubulidentata**  
           Variant names for Pholidota: pangolins, scaly anteaters; for Tubulidentata: aardvark, ant bear  
           Subdivisions are added for Edentata, Pholidota, Tubulidentata together; for Edentata alone

>      **599.312–599.314 Edentata (Xenarthra)**

Class comprehensive works in 599.31

- .312     \***Dasypodidae (Armadillos)**  
           Subdivisions are added for the family as a whole and for individual genera and species

.313        \*Bradypodidae (Sloths)  
                  Subdivisions are added for the family as a whole and for individual  
                  genera and species

.314        \*Myrmecophagidae  
                  Class here comprehensive works on anteaters  
                  Class ant bears, scaly anteaters in 599.31  
                  *For spiny anteaters, see 599.29*

.32         \*Lagomorpha  
                  Class here Leporidae; rabbits  
                  Class interdisciplinary works on domestic rabbits in 636.9322

>            599.322–599.328 Leporidae

                 Class comprehensive works in 599.32

.322        \*Oryctolagus (Old World rabbit)

.324        \*Sylvilagus (Cottontails)  
                  Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual  
                  species

.328        \*Lepus  
                  Class here hares, jackrabbits  
                  Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual  
                  species

.329        \*Ochotonidae  
                  Variant names: conies, pikas  
                  Class here Ochotona  
                  *See also 599.68 for conies of order Hyracoidea*

.33         \*Insectivora and related orders  
                  Including Dermoptera (Cynocephalidae, colugos, flying lemurs); otter  
                  shrews, solenodons, tenrecs  
                  Class here Lipotyphla  
                  Subdivisions are added for Insectivora and related orders together, for  
                  Insectivora alone

>            599.332–599.336 Insectivora

                 Class comprehensive works in 599.33

\*Add as instructed under 592–599

- .332        \*Erinaceidae  
               Including wood shrews  
               Class here hedgehogs
- .332 2       \*Erinaceus  
               Class here European hedgehog  
               Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species
- .335        \*Talpidae and Chrysochloridae  
               Class here moles  
               Subdivisions are added for Talpidae and Chrysochloridae together, for Talpidae alone
- .336        \*Soricidae  
               Class here comprehensive works on shrews  
               Class otter shrews in 599.33  
               *For wood shrews, see 599.332; for elephant shrews, see 599.337; for tree shrews, see 599.338*
- .336 2       \*Sorex (Long-tailed shrews)  
               Class here pigmy shrew  
               Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species
- .337        \*Macroscelidea  
               Variant names: Macroscelididae, elephant shrews
- .338        \*Scandentia  
               Variant names: Tupaiidae, tree shrews
- .35         \*Rodentia (Rodents)  
               Including jerboas; harvest and jumping mice; mole and swamp rats  
               Class here Myomorpha; Muridae covering Cricetidae, Rhizomyidae, Spalacidae; mice; rats  
               Class results of experimental studies on internal biological processes using laboratory mice and rats in 571–573, plus notation 1935 from add instructions in 571–573, e.g., circulation in rats 573.11935  
               *For Sciuridae, see 599.36; for Castoridae, see 599.37*
- 
- >            599.352–599.358 Muridae  
               Class comprehensive works in 599.35

- .352        \*Rattus (Common rats)  
               Class here black rat, Norway (brown) rat  
               Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species  
               Class comprehensive works on rats in 599.35
- .353        \*Mus (Common mice)  
               Class here house mouse  
               Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species  
               Class comprehensive works on mice in 599.35
- .354        \*Voles  
               Including Arvicola (water voles)  
               Class here Microtus (meadow mice)
- .355        \*Peromyscus  
               Variant names: deer mice, white-footed mice
- .356        \*Hamsters  
               Class here Cricetus, Mesocricetus (golden hamsters)  
               Class interdisciplinary works on domestic species of hamsters in 636.9356
- .357        Miscellaneous rats of family Muridae  
               Limited to those named below
- [.357 01--357 09]        Standard subdivisions  
                               Do not use; class in 599.3501-599.3509
- .357 2        \*Sigmodon (Cotton rats)
- .357 3        \*Neotoma (Wood rats)
- .357 9        \*Muskrats  
               Class here Ondatra, Neofiber
- .358        Miscellaneous Muridae  
               Limited to those named below
- [.358 01--358 09]        Standard subdivisions  
                               Do not use; class in 599.3501-599.3509
- .358 2        \*Lemmings  
               Class here Lemmus

- .358 3        \*Gerbils  
                   Class interdisciplinary works on domestic species of gerbils in  
                   636.93583
- .358 5        \*Apodemus  
                   Variant names: field mice, wood mice
- .359         \*Rodentia other than Castoridae, Muridae, Sciuridae  
                   Including agoutis (pacas), capybaras, coypu (nutria), gundis, hutias,  
                   springhaas; African mole rat; cane, rock, spiny rats  
                   Class here Caviomorpha, Hystricomorpha, Phiomorpha
- .359 2        \*Caviidae  
                   Class here Cavia, cavies, guinea pigs  
                   Class interdisciplinary works on Cavia porcellus (domestic guinea  
                   pigs) in 636.93592
- .359 3        \*Chinchillidae  
                   Class here chinchillas  
                   Class interdisciplinary works on chinchillas in 636.93593
- .359 6        \*Gliridae  
                   Variant names: Myoxidae, dormice
- .359 7        \*Porcupines  
                   Including Hystricidae (Old World porcupines)
- .359 74       \*Erethizontidae (New World porcupines)
- .359 8        \*Heteromyidae  
                   Including pocket and kangaroo mice
- .359 87       \*Dipodomys (Kangaroo rats)
- .359 9        \*Geomyidae (Pocket gophers)  
                   *See also 599.365 for gopher of genus Spermophilus*
- .36         \*Sciuridae (Squirrel family)  
                   Class here squirrels
- .362         \*Sciurus (Tree squirrels)  
                   Class here Eurasian red squirrel, fox squirrel, gray squirrel  
                   Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual  
                   species

- .363      **\*Tamiasciurus**  
             Variant names: North American red squirrels, chickarees  
             Class here Douglas squirrel  
             Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species
- .364      **\*Chipmunks**  
             Subdivisions are added for chipmunks as a whole and for individual genera and species
- .365      **\*Ground squirrels**  
             Including gopher, susliks  
             Class here Spermophilus  
             *See also 599.3599 for pocket gophers; also 599.364 for chipmunks*
- .366      **\*Marmota (Marmots)**  
             Class here woodchuck (groundhog)  
             Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species
- .367      **\*Cynomys (Prairie dogs)**  
             Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species
- .369      **\*Flying squirrels**  
             Class here Glaucomys; eastern flying squirrel
- .37        **\*Castoridae (Beavers)**  
             Class here Castor  
             Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species
- .4        \*Chiroptera (Bats)**  
             Class here Microchiroptera
- .45        **\*Phyllostomidae**  
             Including neotropical fruit bats, vampire bats
- .47        **\*Vespertilionidae**  
             Including big brown bats, house bats
- .472      **\*Myotis (Little brown bats)**  
             Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species

\*Add as instructed under 592-599

.49      \*Pteropodidae (Old World fruit bats)

    Including flying foxes

    Class here Megachiroptera

**.5      \*Cetacea and Sirenia**

    Class here marine mammals; whales, great whales; Mysticeti (baleen whales),  
    Odontoceti (toothed whales)

    Subdivisions are added for Cetacea and Sirenia together, for Cetacea alone

*For Pinnipedia, see 599.79*

---

>      599.52–599.54 Cetacea

    Class comprehensive works in 599.5

.52      Specific Mysticeti (baleen whales)

    Including pygmy right whale

    Class comprehensive works on Mysticeti in 599.5

[.520 1–.520 9]      Standard subdivisions

    Do not use; class in 599.501–599.509

.522      \*Eschrichtidae (Gray whale)

.524      \*Balaenopteridae (Rorquals)

    Including Bryde's, minke, sei whales

    Class here Balaenoptera

*For Megaptera, see 599.525*

.524 6      \*Balaenoptera physalus

    Variant names: fin whale, finback whale

.524 8      \*Balaenoptera musculus (Blue whale)

.525      \*Megaptera (Humpback whale)

.527      \*Balaenidae

.527 3      \*Eubalaena (Right whale)

.527 6      \*Balaena

    Variant names: bowhead whale, Greenland right whale

---

>      599.53–599.54 Odontoceti (Toothed whales)

    Class comprehensive works in 599.5

- .53        \*Dolphins and porpoises  
              Including false killer and pilot whales  
              Class here Delphinidae  
              Subdivisions are added for dolphins and porpoises together, for dolphins alone
- 
- >        599.532–599.536 Delphinidae  
              Class comprehensive works in 599.53  
              *For river dolphins of family Delphinidae, see 599.538*
- .532        \*Delphinus (Common dolphin)
- .533        \*Tursiops (Bottle-nosed dolphins)  
              Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species
- .534        \*Stenella  
              Including spinner, spotted, striped dolphins
- .536        \*Orcinus (Killer whale)
- .538        \*River dolphins  
              Including Iniidae, Platanistidae, Pontoporiidae; Orcaella and Sotalia of family Delphinidae
- .539        \*Phocoenidae (Porpoises)  
              Class here Phocoena (harbor porpoises)  
              Subdivisions are added for the genus Phocoena as a whole and for individual species of Phocoena
- .54        \*Other Odontoceti (toothed whales)  
              Other than dolphins and porpoises  
              Class comprehensive works on Odontoceti in 599.5  
              *For false killer, pilot whales, see 599.53; for killer whale, see 599.536*
- .542        \*Delphinapterus  
              Variant names: beluga, white whale  
              Class here Monodontidae  
              *For Monodon, see 599.543*
- .543        \*Monodon (Narwhal)
- .545        \*Ziphiidae (Beaked whales)

- .547      \*Physeteridae  
           Including dwarf and pygmy sperm whales  
           Class here Physeter (sperm whale)
- .55        \*Sirenia (Sea cows)  
           Class here Trichechidae (manatees)  
           Subdivisions are added for the genus Trichechus and for individual species  
           of Trichechus
- .559      \*Dugongidae  
           Class here dugong  
           Class Steller's sea cow in 599.559168
- .6         \*Ungulates  
           Class here hoofed mammals, comprehensive works on big game animals  
           Class Sirenia in 599.55; class big game hunting in 799.26  
           *For a specific kind of nonungulate big game animal, see the kind, e.g., bears*  
           599.78

### SUMMARY

- 599.63     Artiodactyla (Even-toed ungulates)  
     .64     Bovidae  
     .65     Cervidae (Deer)  
     .66     Perissodactyla (Odd-toed ungulates)  
     .67     Proboscidea (Elephants)  
     .68     Hyracoidea
- .63        \*Artiodactyla (Even-toed ungulates)  
           Including Tragulidae (chevrotains, mouse deer)  
           Class here Ruminantia (ruminants)  
           Class comprehensive works on Artiodactyla and Perissodactyla in 599.6  
           *For Bovidae, see 599.64; for Cervidae, see 599.65*
- .633      \*Suidae  
           Variant names: pigs, swine  
           Including African bush pig, babirusa, giant forest hog, warthog  
           Class here comprehensive works on Suiformes  
           *For Tayassuidae, see 599.634; for Hippopotamidae, see 599.635*

- .633 2            \*Sus  
                   Including bearded and Javan pigs  
                   Class here wild boars  
                   Class interdisciplinary works on *Sus scrofa* (domestic swine) in 636.4
- .634            \*Tayassuidae (Peccaries)  
                   Subdivisions are added for the family as a whole and for individual  
                   genera and species
- .635            \*Hippopotamidae (Hippopotamuses)  
                   Including pigmy hippopotamus  
                   Class here *Hippopotamus amphibius*
- .636            \*Camelidae
- .636 2            \*Camelus (Camels)  
                   Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual  
                   species  
                   Class interdisciplinary works on camels in 636.295
- .636 7            \*Lama  
                   Class here guanaco, vicuña  
                   Class interdisciplinary works on guanaco (alpaca, llama) in 636.296
- .638            \*Giraffidae  
                   Including okapi  
                   Class here giraffe
- .639            \*Antilocapridae (Pronghorn)
- .64            \*Bovidae  
                   Including Cephalophinae (duikers)  
                   Class here antelopes  
                   *See also 599.639 for pronghorn antelope*
- .642            \*Bovinae  
                   Including buffalo, elands, four-horned antelopes  
                   *For American buffalo, see 599.643*
- .642 2            \*Bos (Oxen)  
                   Including banteng, gaur, yak  
                   Class interdisciplinary works on *Bos taurus* (domestic cattle) in 636.2

- .642 3           \*Tragelaphus  
                   Including bongo, bushbuck, kudu, nyala
- .643            \*Bison  
                   Including European bison (wisent)  
                   Class here American bison (American buffalo)
- .645            \*Hippotraginae  
                   Including addax, hartebeests, oryx, reedbucks, waterbuck; roan and sable  
                   antelopes  
                   Class here Alcelaphinae
- .645 9           \*Connochaetes  
                   Variant names: gnus, wildebeests  
                   Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual  
                   species
- .646            \*Antilopinae  
                   Including dik-diks, impala, springbok
- .646 9           \*Gazella (Gazelles)  
                   Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual  
                   species
- .647            \*Caprinae  
                   Including chamois, saiga, serows  
                   *For Capra, see 599.648; for sheep, see 599.649*
- .647 5           \*Oreamnos (Mountain goat)
- .647 8           \*Ovibos (Muskox)
- .648            \*Capra  
                   Including ibexes, turs  
                   Class here goats  
                   Class interdisciplinary works on *Capra hircus* (domestic goat) in 636.39  
                   *See also 599.6475 for mountain goat*
- .649            \*Sheep  
                   Including aoudad (Barbary sheep), bharals (blue sheep)  
                   Class here Ovis  
                   Class interdisciplinary works on *Ovis aries* (domestic sheep) in 636.3
- .649 7           \*Ovis canadensis (Bighorn sheep)

- .65        \*Cervidae (Deer)  
              Including chital, muntjacs  
              *See also 599.63 for mouse deer*
- .652        \*Odocoileus  
              Class here white-tailed (Virginia) deer  
              *For Odocoileus hemionus (mule deer), see 599.653*
- .653        \*Odocoileus hemionus (Mule deer)
- .654        \*Cervus  
              Including sambar
- .654 2       \*Cervus elaphus  
              Variant names: American elk, red deer, wapiti  
              *See also 599.657 for elk of genus Alces*
- .655        \*Dama (Fallow deer)
- .657        \*Alces  
              Variant name: moose, elk  
              *See also 599.6542 for American elk*
- .658        \*Rangifer  
              Variant names: caribou, reindeer
- .659        \*Capreolus (Roe deer)  
              Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species
- .66        \*Perissodactyla (Odd-toed ungulates)  
              Including Tapiridae (tapirs)
- .665        \*Equidae  
              Including asses  
              Class here Equus  
              Class interdisciplinary works on asses in 636.18
- .665 5       \*Equus caballus (Horse)  
              Class here mustang, Przewalski's horse, wild horse  
              Class interdisciplinary works on horses in 636.1

.665 7           \*Zebras  
                   Subdivisions are added for zebras as a whole and for individual species

                  Class quagga in 599.6657168

.668            \*Rhinocerotidae (Rhinoceroses)

                  Subdivisions are added for the family as a whole and for individual genera and species

.67             \*Proboscidea (Elephants)

.674            \*Loxodonta (African elephant)

.676            \*Elephas

                  Variant names: Asiatic elephant, Indian elephant

.68             \*Hyracoidea

                  Variant names: conies, dassies, hyraxes

*See also 599.329 for conies of order Lagomorpha*

**.7            \*Carnivora**

                  Class here Fissipedia (Land carnivores), comprehensive works on fur-bearing animals

*For a specific kind of noncarnivorous fur-bearing animal, see the kind, e.g., beavers 599.37*

### SUMMARY

599.74	<b>Feloidea</b>
.75	<b>Felidae (Cat family)</b>
.76	<b>Canoidea</b>
.77	<b>Canidae (Dog family)</b>
.78	<b>Ursidae (Bears)</b>
.79	<b>Pinnipedia (Marine carnivores)</b>

>            599.74–599.78 Fissipedia (Land carnivores)

                  Class comprehensive works in 599.7

.74            \*Feloidea

*For Felidae, see 599.75*

.742            \*Viverridae

                  Including civets, fossa, genets, linsangs, meercat, mongooses

.743            \*Hyaenidae

                  Including aardwolf

                  Class here hyenas

- .75        \*Felidae (Cat family)  
              Including clouded leopard
- .752       \*Felis  
              Including margay, ocelot, serval  
              Class genus *Lynx* in 599.753; class interdisciplinary works on *Felis catus*  
              (domestic cats) in 636.8
- .752 4     \*Felis concolor  
              Variant names: cougar, mountain lion, panther, puma
- .752 6     \*Felis silvestris (European wildcat)  
              *See also 599.7536 for bobcat (wildcat)*
- .753       \*Lynx  
              Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual  
              species other than *Lynx rufus*
- .753 6     \*Lynx rufus  
              Variant name: bobcat, wildcat  
              *See also 599.7526 for European wildcat*
- .755       \*Panthera (Leo)  
              Including jaguar  
              Class here big cats  
              *For Panthera tigris (tiger), see 599.756; for Panthera leo (lion), see*  
              *599.757. For a specific big cat not provided for here, see the cat, e.g.,*  
              *mountain lion 599.7524*
- .755 4     \*Panthera pardus (Leopard)  
              Class here comprehensive works on leopards  
              Class clouded leopard in 599.75  
              *For snow leopard, see 599.7555*
- .755 5     \*Panthera uncia  
              Variant names: ounce, snow leopard
- .756       \*Panthera tigris (Tiger)
- .757       \*Panthera leo (Lion)
- .759       \*Acinonyx (Cheetah)
- .76        \*Canioidea  
              *For Canidae, see 599.77; for Ursidae, see 599.78*

- .763            \*Procyonidae  
                   Including coatis, kinkajou, red (lesser) panda  
                   *See also 599.789 for giant panda*
- .763 2           \*Procyon (Raccoons)  
                   Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species
- .766            \*Mustelidae  
                   Including grisons, marbled polecat, wolverine, zorilla (striped polecat)  
                   Class here Mustelinae  
                   *For Melinae, see 599.767; for Mephitinae, see 599.768; for Lutrinae, see 599.769*
- .766 2           \*Mustela  
                   Including ermine (stoat), comprehensive works on Old World polecats  
                   Class here weasels  
                   Class marbled polecat, zorilla (striped polecat) in 599.766; class European polecat in 599.76628  
                   *For weasels in genera other than Mustela, see 599.7663*  
                   *See also 599.768 for New world polecats (skunks)*
- .766 27          \*Minks  
                   Subdivisions are added for minks as a whole and for individual species
- .766 28          Mustela putorius (European polecat)  
                   Class interdisciplinary works on ferrets (domestic European polecat) in 636.976628
- .766 29          \*Mustela nigripes (Black-footed ferret)
- .766 3           \*Weasels in genera other than Mustela  
                   Including Patagonian and striped weasels
- .766 5           \*Martes  
                   Including fisher, sable  
                   Class here martens
- .767            \*Melinae and Mellivorinae  
                   Class here badgers  
                   Subdivisions are added for Melinae and Mellivorinae together, for Melinae alone

- .767 2            \*Meles (Old World badger)
- .768            \*Mephitinae  
                   Variant names: skunks, polecats  
                   *See also 599.7662 for Old World polecats*
- .769            \*Lutrinae (Otters)  
                   Including clawless and giant otters
- .769 2           \*Lutra (River otters)  
                   Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species
- .769 5           \*Enhydra (Sea otter)
- .77             \*Canidae (Dog family)  
                   Including dhole; dogs and wolves of genera other than *Canis*
- .772            \*Canis  
                   Including dingo, jackals  
                   Class here comprehensive scientific works on dogs  
                   Class dogs of genera other than *Canis* in 599.77; class interdisciplinary works on dogs in 636.7  
                   *For Canis lupus (gray wolf, timber wolf) and Canis rufus (red wolf), see 599.773*
- .772 5           \*Canis latrans (Coyote)
- .773            \*Canis lupus and Canis rufus (red wolf)  
                   Variant names for *Canis lupus*: gray wolf, timber wolf  
                   Class here comprehensive works on wolves  
                   Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
                   Class wolves of genera other than *Canis* in 599.77
- .775            \*Vulpes  
                   Class here red fox, comprehensive works on foxes  
                   Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species  
                   *For foxes of genera other than Vulpes, see 599.776*
- .776            \*Foxes of genera other than Vulpes  
                   Including fennec and gray foxes
- .776 4           \*Alopex (Arctic fox)

- .78        \*Ursidae (Bears)  
            Class here Ursus
- .784        \*Ursus arctos  
            Variant name: grizzly bear, brown bear
- .785        \*Ursus americanus (American black bear)
- .786        \*Ursus maritimus (Polar bear)
- .789        \*Ailuropoda (Giant panda)  
            See also 599.763 for lesser panda
- .79         \*Pinnipedia (Marine carnivores)  
            Class here Phocidae (earless seals, hair seals, true seals); seals  
            See also 599.7695 for sea otters
- 
- > 599.792–599.796 Phocidae  
      Variant names: earless seals, hair seals, true seals  
      Class comprehensive works in 599.79
- .792        \*Phoca  
            Including Baikal, Caspian, ribbon, ringed, spotted seals
- .792 3        \*Phoca vitulina (Harbor seal)
- .792 9        \*Phoca groenlandica (Harp seal)
- .793        \*Halichoerus (Gray seal)
- .794        \*Mirounga (Elephant seals)  
            Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species
- .795        \*Monachus (Monk seals)  
            Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species
- .796        \*Other Phocidae  
            Including bearded, crabeater, hooded, leopard, Ross, Weddell seals
- .797        \*Otariidae (Eared seals)
- .797 3        \*Arctocephalinae (Fur seals)  
            Class here Callorhinus (northern fur seal, Pacific fur seal)
- .797 38        \*Arctocephalus (Southern fur seals)  
            Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species

.797 5            \*Otariinae (Sea lions)  
                          Subdivisions are added for sea lions as a whole and for individual  
                          genera and species

.799            \*Odobenidae (Walrus)

**.8            \*Primates**

                 Class here Anthropeidea, monkeys

.83            \*Prosimii

                 Including Lemuridae (lemurs), Lorisidae, Tarsiidae (tarsiers)

                 Including aye-ayes, bush babies, galagos, indri, lorises, sifakas

                 Class Tupaiidae in 599.338

---

>            599.84–599.88 Anthropeidea  
                  Class comprehensive works in 599.8  
                  *For Homo sapiens, see 599.9*

---

>            599.84–599.86 Monkeys  
                  Class comprehensive works in 599.8

.84            \*Callitrichidae (Marmosets)

                 Including tamarins

.85            \*Cebidae (New World monkeys)

                 Class here Platyrrhini

*For Callitrichidae, see 599.84*

.852            \*Saimiri (Squirrel monkeys)

                 Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual  
                  species

.855            \*Alouatta (Howler monkeys)

                 Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual  
                  species

.858            \*Atelinae

                 Including spider and woolly monkeys

.86            \*Cercopithecidae (Old World monkeys)

                 Class here Catarrhini

.862            \*Cercopithecus (Guenons)

                 Including blue and green monkeys

- .864        \*Macaca (Macaques)
- .864 3       \*Macaca mulatta (Rhesus monkey)
- .864 4       \*Macaca fuscata  
                  Variant names: Japanese macaque, snow monkey
- .865        \*Papio (Baboons)  
                  Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species
- .88         \*Hominidae and Hylobatidae  
                  Variant name for Hominidae: great apes  
                  Class here apes, comprehensive works on Hominoidea  
                  Subdivisions are added for Hominidae and Hylobatidae together, for Hominidae alone  
                  *For Homo sapiens, see 599.9*
- .882        \*Hylobatidae (Gibbons)  
                  Including siamang  
                  Class here Hylobates

>            599.883–599.885    Specific Hominidae (Great apes) other than *Homo sapiens*

                 Class comprehensive works in 599.88

- .883        \*Pongo (Orangutan)
- .884        \*Gorilla
- .885        \*Pan (Chimpanzees)  
                  Subdivisions are added for the genus as a whole and for individual species

**.9         Homo sapiens (Humans)**

                 Class here physical anthropology

                 Class social anthropology, interdisciplinary works on social and physical anthropology in 306

*For psychology, see 150; for prehistoric Homo and related genera, see 569.9; for medicine, see 610*

.93         Genetics, sex and age characteristics, evolution

.935         Genetics

                 Class here heredity

*For variation, see 599.94; for biochemical genetics, see 611.01816*

- .936 Sex characteristics  
Class here secondary sexual characteristics
- .937 Age characteristics  
Class here age determination  
Class longevity in 612.68
- .938 Evolution  
*For paleontology of Homo and related genera, see 569.9*
- .94 Anthropometry  
Class here variation  
*See Manual at 599.94 vs. 611*
- .943 Teeth
- .945 Skin  
Including dermatoglyphics, fingerprints  
Class use of fingerprints in criminal investigation in 363.258
- .947 Bones  
*For craniology, see 599.948*
- .948 Head and face  
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading  
Class here craniology
- .949 Somatotypes  
Including people with abnormal dimensions, e.g., dwarfs, giants  
Class pathological aspects of abnormal dimensions in 616.043
- .95 Environmental effects on physique  
Including effect on pigmentation  
Class here human biological ecology  
Class interdisciplinary works on human ecology in 304.2
- .97 Human ethnic groups  
Class here physical ethnology  
*For specific ethnic groups, see 599.98*
- .972 Origins and causes of physical differences among ethnic groups  
Class nonethnic physical characteristics in 599.9; class origins and causes of physical differences of specific ethnic groups in 599.98
- .98 Specific ethnic groups  
Class extinct ethnic groups in 569.9

- 
- .980 5–.980 9      People of mixed ancestry with ethnic origins from more than one continent; Europeans and people of European descent  
                                 Add to base number 599.98 notation 05–09 from Table 5, e.g., Europeans 599.9809
- .981–.989      Specific ethnic groups with other origins  
                                 Add to base number 599.98 notation 1–9 from Table 5, e.g., Celts 599.98916